DOCKETED	
Docket Number:	21-BSTD-01
Project Title:	2022 Energy Code Update Rulemaking
TN #:	239074
Document Title:	Statewide Utility Codes and Standards Enhancement Team Comments - Statewide CASE Team Support for Adoption of 15-Day Express Terms Part 2
Description:	N/A
Filer:	System
Organization:	Statewide Utility Codes and Standards Enhancement Team
Submitter Role:	Public
Submission Date:	7/28/2021 7:35:42 PM
Docketed Date:	7/29/2021

Comment Received From: Statewide Utility Codes and Standards Enhancement Team
Submitted On: 7/28/2021
Docket Number: 21-BSTD-01

Statewide CASE Team Support for Adoption of 15-Day Express Terms Part 2

Additional submitted attachment is included below.

SUBCHAPTER 7
~~LOW-RISE~~SINGLE-FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS – MANDATORY FEATURES AND DEVICES

SECTION 150.0 – MANDATORY FEATURES AND DEVICES

~~Low-rise~~Single-family residential buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 150(a) through 150.0(~~r~~v).

NOTE: The requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through 150.0(r) apply to newly constructed buildings. Sections 150.2(a) and 150.2(b) specify which requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through 150.0(r) also apply to additions or alterations.

(a) **Roof Deck, Ceiling and Rafter Roof Insulation.** The opaque portions of roof decks separating attic spaces from ambient air, and ceilings ~~and~~ or rafter roofs separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of Items 1 through ~~3~~ 4 below:

1. In climate zones 4 and 8 through 16, ~~R~~roof decks in newly constructed attic systems shall be insulated to achieve an area-weighted average U-factor not exceeding U-0.184.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(a)1: No more than 12 linear feet of supply duct, including the length of the air handler and the plenum, is located in the attic space, with all other portions of the supply ducts and air handler located outside of the attic space.

   Commented [BD1]: Revised to simply the language and expand the exception to be inclusive of scenarios where ducts are located outside of an attic but not in conditioned space, such as a crawlspace.

   i. ~~No roof deck insulation is required when ducts and air handler are located in conditioned space.~~ ~~The space conditioning system air handler and ducts are located entirely in conditioned space below the ceiling separating the occupiable space from the attic; or~~

   ii. ~~The space conditioning system air handler is located in unconditioned space and has 12 linear feet or less of supply duct, including the length of the air handler and the plenum, located in unconditioned space, with all other portions of the supply ducts located in conditioned space below the ceiling separating the occupiable space from the attic.~~

2. Ceilings and rafter roofs ~~Shall~~ shall be insulated to achieve an area-weighted average U-factor not exceeding U-0.043 or shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation resulting in an installed thermal resistance of R-22 or greater for the insulation alone. For vented attics, the mandatory insulation shall be installed at the ceiling level; for unvented attics, the mandatory insulation shall be placed at either ceiling or roof level; and

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(a)2~~1~~: Ceilings and rafter roofs in an alteration shall be insulated to achieve an area-weighted average U-factor not exceeding 0.054 or shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation resulting in an installed thermal resistance of R-19 or greater.

~~2~~3. Attic access doors shall have permanently attached insulation using adhesive or mechanical fasteners. The attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage; and

~~3~~4. Insulation shall be installed in direct contact with a ~~continuous~~ roof or ceiling which is sealed to limit infiltration and exfiltration as specified in Section 110.7, including but not limited to placing insulation either above or below the roof deck or on top of a drywall ceiling.

(b) **Loose-fill Insulation.** When loose-fill insulation is installed, the minimum installed weight per square foot shall conform with the insulation manufacturer's installed design weight per square foot at the manufacturer's labeled R-value.

(c) **Wall Insulation.** Opaque portions of above grade walls separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the following requirements:

1. 2×4 inch framing shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.102.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(c)1: Existing walls already insulated to a U-factor not exceeding U-0.110 or already insulated between framing members with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-11 or greater.

2. 2×6 inch or greater framing shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.071.
3. Opaque nonframed assemblies shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.102.
4. Bay or Bow Window roofs and floors shall be insulated to meet the wall insulation requirements of TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~.
5. Masonry walls shall be insulated to meet the wall insulation requirements of TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~.
6. In wood framed assemblies, compliance with U-factors may be demonstrated by installing wall insulation with an R-value of 13 in 2x4 assemblies, and 20 in 2x6 assemblies.

(d) **Raised-floor Insulation.** Raised floors separating conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient air shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.037. In a wood framed assembly, compliance with the U-factor may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of 19 or greater.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(d): A building with a controlled ventilation or unvented crawl space may omit raised floor insulation if all of the following are met:

A. The foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums as shown in TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~; and

B. A Class I or Class II vapor retarder is placed over the entire floor of the crawl space; and

C. Vents between the crawl space and outside air are fitted with automatically operated louvers that are temperature actuated; and

D. The requirements in Reference Residential Appendix RA4.5.1.

(e) **Installation of Fireplaces, Decorative Gas Appliances and Gas Logs.** If a masonry or factory-built fireplace is installed, it shall comply with Section 110.5, Section 4.503 of Part 11, and shall have the following:

1. Closable metal or glass doors covering the entire opening of the firebox; and
2. A combustion air intake to draw air from the outside of the building, which is at least 6 square inches in area and is equipped with a readily accessible, operable, and tight-fitting damper or combustion-air control device; and

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(e)2: An outside combustion-air intake is not required if the fireplace will be installed over concrete slab flooring and the fireplace will not be located on an exterior wall.

3. A flue damper with a readily accessible control.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(e)3: When a gas log, log lighter, or decorative gas appliance is installed in a fireplace, the flue damper shall be blocked open if required by the CMC or the manufacturer's installation instructions.

(f) **Slab Edge Insulation.** Material used for slab edge insulation shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Water absorption rate for the insulation material alone without facings no greater than 0.3 percent when tested in accordance with Test Method A – 24-Hour-Immersion of ASTM C272.
2. Water vapor permeance no greater than 2.0 perm/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM E96.
3. Concrete slab perimeter insulation shall be protected from physical damage and ultraviolet light deterioration.
4. Insulation for a heated slab floor shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8(g).

(g) **Vapor Retarder.**

1. In Climate Zones 1-16, the earth floor of unvented crawl space shall be covered with a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. This requirement shall also apply to controlled ventilation crawl space for buildings complying with the Exception to Section 150.0(d).
2. In Climate Zones 14 and 16, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder shall be installed on the conditioned space side of all insulation in all exterior walls, vented attics and unvented attics with air-permeable insulation.

(h) **Space-Conditioning Equipment.**

1. **Building Cooling and Heating Loads.** Building heating and cooling loads shall be determined using a method based on any one of the following:
   - A. The ASHRAE Handbook, Equipment Volume, Applications Volume, and Fundamentals Volume; or
   - B. The SMACNA Residential Comfort System Installation Standards Manual; or
   - C. The ACCA Manual J.

   The cooling and heating loads are two of the criteria that shall be used for equipment sizing and selection.

   NOTE: Heating systems are required to have a minimum heating capacity adequate to meet the minimum requirements of the CBC. The furnace output capacity and other specifications are published in the Commission's directory of certified equipment or other directories approved by the Commission.
2. **Design conditions**. For the purpose of sizing the space-conditioning (HVAC) system, the indoor design temperatures shall be 68°F for heating and 75°F for cooling. Outdoor design conditions shall be selected from Reference Joint Appendix JA2, which is based on data from the ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X. The outdoor design temperatures for heating shall be no lower than the Heating Winter Median of Extremes values. The outdoor design temperatures for cooling shall be no greater than the 1.0 percent Cooling Dry Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb values.
3. **Outdoor Condensing Units.**
   - A. **Clearances.** Installed air conditioner and heat pump outdoor condensing units shall have a clearance of at least five (5) feet (1.5 meters) from the outlet of any dryer vent.
   - B. **Liquid Line Drier.** Installed air conditioner and heat pump systems shall be equipped with liquid line filter driers if required, as specified by manufacturer's instructions.
4. **Central Forced-Air Heating Furnaces**.
   - A. **Temperature Rise**. Central forced-air heating furnace installations shall be configured to operate in conformance with the furnace manufacturer's maximum inlet-to-outlet temperature rise specifications.

(i) **Thermostats**. All heating or cooling systems, including heat pumps, not controlled by a central energy management control system (EMCS) shall have a setback thermostat, as specified in Section 110.2(c).

(j) **Insulation for Piping and Tanks.**

1. ~~**Storage tank insulation.** Unfired hot water tanks, such as storage tanks and backup storage tanks for solar water-heating systems, shall be externally wrapped with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-12 4 or greater.~~

~~EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(j)1 or Unfired storage tank withhave internal insulation of at least R-16 and a label on the exterior of the tank showing the insulation R-value.~~

12. **Water piping, solar water-heating system piping, and space conditioning system line insulation thickness and conductivity.** Piping shall be insulated as follows:
   - A. All domestic hot water piping shall be insulated as specified in Section 609.11 of the California Plumbing Code. ~~In addition, the following piping conditions shall have a minimum insulation wall thickness of 1 inch or a minimum insulation R-value of 7.7:~~
   - ~~i. The first 5 feet (1.5 meters) of cold water pipes from the storage tank.~~

~~ii. All hot water piping with a nominal diameter equal to or greater than 3/4 inch (19 millimeter) and less than 1 inch.~~

~~iii. All hot water piping with a nominal diameter less than 3/4 inch that is:~~

~~a. Associated with a domestic hot water recirculation system;~~

~~b. From the heating source to the kitchen fixtures;~~

~~c. From the heating source to a storage tank or between storage tanks; or~~

~~d. Buried below grade.~~

B. Piping for space conditioning systems, solar water-heating system collector loop, and distribution piping for steam and hydronic heating system, shall meet the requirements of Section 120.3(c).

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(j)1~~2~~: Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(j)1~~2~~: Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing. Insulation shall butt securely against all framing members.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.0(j)1~~2~~: Piping installed in interior or exterior walls shall not be required to have pipe insulation if all of the requirements are met for compliance with Quality Insulation Installation (QII) as specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.0(j)1~~2~~: Piping surrounded with a minimum of 1 inch of wall insulation, 2 inches of crawl space insulation, or 4 inches of attic insulation, shall not be required to have pipe insulation.

2~~3~~. **Insulation Protection.** Pipe insulation shall meet the insulation protection requirements of Section 120.3(b).

(k) **Residential Lighting.**

1. **Luminaire Requirements.**

A. **Luminaire Efficacy.** All installed luminaires shall meet the requirements in TABLE 150.0-A.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(k)1A: Integrated device lighting. Lighting integral to exhaust fans, kitchen range hoods, bath vanity mirrors, and garage door openers.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(k)1A: Navigation lighting such as night lights, step lights, and path lights less than 5 watts.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.0(k)1A: Cabinet Lighting. Lighting internal to drawers, cabinetry, and linen closets with an efficacy of 45 lumens per watt or greater.

B. **Screw ~~based~~ Based ~~luminairesBlank~~ Luminaires~~Electrical Boxes~~.** Screw based luminaires shall contain lamps that comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8~~ or contain lamps as specified in Table 150.0-A including qualified colored lamps, dim-to-warm lamps, tunable-white lamps, color-tunable lamps, and Title 20-compliant LED lamps~~~~The number of electrical boxes that are more than 5 feet above the finished floor and do not contain a luminaire or other device shall be no greater than the number of bedrooms. These electrical boxes must be served by a dimmer, vacancy sensor control, or fan speed control~~.

C. **Recessed Downlight Luminaires in Ceilings.** ~~In addition to complying with 150.0(k)1A~~ ,~~ I~~Luminaires recessed into ceilings shall meet all ~~all~~ of the following requirements ~~requirements~~:

i. Shall not contain screw base lamp sockets~~Be listed, as defined in Section 100.1, for zero clearance insulation contact (IC) by Underwriters Laboratories or other nationally recognized testing/rating laboratory~~; and

ii. Have a label that certifies the luminaire is airtight with air leakage less than 2.0 ~~CFM~~ cfm at 75 Pascals when tested in accordance with ASTM E283. An exhaust fan housing with integral light shall not be required to be certified airtight; and

iii. Be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the luminaire housing and ceiling, and have all air leak paths between conditioned and unconditioned spaces sealed with a gasket or caulk, or be installed per manufacturer's instructions to maintain airtightness between the luminaire housing and ceiling; and

iv. Meet the clearance and installation requirements of California Electrical Code Section 410.116 for recessed luminaires. ~~For luminaires with hardwired ballasts or drivers, allow ballast or driver maintenance and replacement to be readily accessible to building occupants from below the ceiling without requiring the cutting of holes in the ceiling; and~~

v. ~~Shall not contain screw base sockets~~.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)1Cii and iii: Recessed luminaires marked for use in fire-rated installations~~ extruded into ceiling space~~ and recessed luminaires installed in non-insulated ceilings.

D. **Light Sources in Enclosed or Recessed Luminaires**~~**Electronic Ballasts for Fluorescent Lamps.**~~ Lamps and other separable light sources that are not compliant with the JA8 elevated temperature requirements, including marking requirements, shall not be installed in enclosed or recessed luminaires~~Ballasts for fluorescent lamps rated 13 watts or greater shall be electronic and shall have an output frequency no less than 20 kHz~~.

E. ~~**Night Lights, Step Lights and Path Lights.** Night lights, step lights and path lights shall not be required to comply with Table 150.0-A or be controlled by vacancy sensors provided they are rated to consume no more than 5 watts of power and emit no more than 150 lumens.~~

F. ~~**Lighting Integral to Exhaust Fans.** Lighting integral to exhaust fans shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 150.0(k).~~

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)1F:** Lighting installed by the manufacturer in kitchen exhaust hoods.~~

G. ~~**Screw based luminaires.** Screw based luminaires shall contain lamps that comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8.~~

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)1G**: Luminaires with hard-wired ballasts for high intensity discharge lamps.~~

H. ~~**Light Sources in Enclosed or Recessed Luminaires.** Lamps and other separable light sources that are not compliant with the JA8 elevated temperature requirements, including marking requirements, shall not be installed in enclosed or recessed luminaires.~~

I. ~~**Light Sources in Drawers, Cabinets, and Linen Closets.** Light sources internal to drawers, cabinetry or linen closets shall not be required to comply with Table 150.0-A or be controlled by vacancy sensors provided that they are rated to consume no more than 5 watts of power and emit no more than 150 lumens, and are equipped with controls that automatically turn the lighting off when the drawer, cabinet or linen closet is closed.~~**Blank Electrical Boxes**. The number of electrical boxes that are more than 5 feet above the finished floor and do not contain a luminaire or other device shall be no greater than the number of bedrooms. These electrical boxes must be served by a dimmer, vacancy sensor control, low voltage wiring or fan speed control.

2. ~~**Interior**~~ **Indoor Lighting** ~~**Switching Devices and**~~ **Controls.**

~~A. All forward phase cut dimmers used with LED light sources shall comply with NEMA SSL 7A.~~

~~B. Exhaust fans shall be controlled separately from lighting systems.~~

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)2B:** Lighting integral to an exhaust fan may be on the same control as the fan provided the lighting can be turned OFF in accordance with the applicable provisions in Section 150.0(k)2 while allowing the fan to continue to operate.~~

~~C~~A. Lighting shall have readily accessible wall-mounted controls that allow the lighting to be manually turned ON and OFF.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)~~2C~~2A: Ceiling fans may provide control of integrated lighting via a remote control.

~~D. Lighting controls and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.~~

~~E~~B. No controls shall bypass a dimmer, occupant sensor or vacancy sensor function where that dimmer or sensor has been installed to comply with Section 150.0(k).

~~F~~C. Lighting controls shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 110.9.

~~G~~D. An Energy Management Control System (EMCS) or a multiscene programmable control may be used to comply with dimming, occupancy, and lighting control requirements in Section 150.0(k)2 if ~~at a minimum~~ it provides the functionality of the specified controls in accordance with Section 110.9, and the physical controls specified in 150.0(k)2A~~, meets the installation certificate requirements in Section 130.4, meets the EMCS requirements in Section 130.0(e), and complies with all other applicable requirements in Section 150.0(k)2~~.

~~H. A multiscene programmable controller may be used to comply with dimmer requirements in Section 150.0(k) if at a minimum it provides the functionality of a dimmer in accordance with Section 110.9, and complies with all other applicable requirements in Section 150.0(k)2.~~

~~I~~E. **Automatic Off Controls.**

i. In bathrooms, garages, laundry rooms, ~~and~~ utility rooms, and walk-in closets, at least one installed luminaire ~~in each of these spaces~~ shall be controlled by an ~~occupant~~ occupancy or vacancy sensor providing automatic-off functionality. ~~If an occupant sensor is installed, it shall be initially configured to manual-on operation using the manual control required under Section 150.0(k)2AC.~~

ii. For lighting internal to drawers and cabinetry with opaque fronts or doors, controls that turn light off when the drawer or door is closed shall be provided.

~~J~~F. **Dimming Controls**. ~~Luminaires that are or contain light sources that meet Reference Joint Appendix JA8 requirements for dimming, and that are not controlled by occupancy or vacancy sensors, shall have dimming controls~~Lighting in habitable spaces, including but not limited to living rooms, dining rooms, kitchens, and bedrooms, shall have readily accessible wall-mounted dimming controls that allow the lighting to be manually adjusted up and down. Forward phase cut dimmers controlling LED light sources in these spaces shall comply with NEMA SSL 7A.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(k)~~2J~~2F: ~~Luminaires in closets less than 70 square feet.~~ Ceiling fans may provide control of integrated lighting via a remote control.

~~**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(k)2J:** Luminaires in hallways.~~

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(k)2F: Luminaires connected to a circuit with controlled lighting power less than 20 watts or controlled by an occupancy or vacancy sensor providing automatic-off functionality.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.0(k)2F: Navigation lighting such as night lights, step lights, and path lights less than 5 watts, and lighting internal to drawers and cabinetry with opaque fronts or doors or with automatic off controls.

~~K~~G. **Independent controls.** Integrated lighting of exhaust fans shall be controlled independently from the fans. ~~Undercabinet lighting~~The following shall be controlled separately from ceiling-installed lighting such that one can be turned on without turning on the other:

   i. Undercabinet lighting
   ii. Undershelf lighting
   iii. Interior lighting of display cabinets
   iv. Switched outlets~~.~~

3. **Residential Outdoor Lighting.** In addition to meeting the requirements of Section 150.0(k)1A, luminaires providing residential outdoor lighting shall meet the following requirements, as applicable:

   A. For single-family residential buildings, outdoor lighting permanently mounted to a residential building or to other buildings on the same lot shall meet the requirement in item i and the requirements in either item ii or item iii:

      ~~i.~~ Controlled by a manual ON and OFF control switch that permits the automatic actions of items ii or iii below; and

      ~~ii.~~ Controlled by a photocell and either a motion sensor or an automatic time switch control; or

      ~~iii.~~ Controlled by an astronomical time clock control~~ or an automatic time switch control. Time switch or time clock controls that override to ON shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns the automatic control to its normal operation within 6 hours~~.

   Controls that override to ON shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns the automatic control to its normal operation within 6 hours. An energy management control system that provides the specified lighting control functionality and complies with all requirements applicable to the specified controls may be used to meet these requirements.

   B. ~~For low-rise residential buildings with four or more dwelling units, outdoor lighting for private patios, entrances, balconies, porches; and residential parking lots and carports with less than eight vehicles per site shall comply with either:~~

   ~~i. Section 150.0(k)3A; or~~

   ~~ii. The applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.2, 130.4, 140.7 and 141.0.~~

   C. ~~For low-rise residential buildings with four or more dwelling units, any outdoor lighting for residential parking lots or carports with a total of eight or more vehicles per site and any outdoor lighting not regulated by Section 150.0(k)3B shall comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.2, 130.4, 140.7 and 141.0.~~

4. **Internally illuminated address signs.** Internally illuminated address signs shall either:

   A. Comply with Section 140.8; or

   B. Consume no more than 5 watts of power.

5. **Residential Garages for Eight or More Vehicles.** Lighting for residential parking garages for eight or more vehicles shall comply with the applicable requirements for nonresidential garages in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.1, 130.4, 140.6, and 141.0.

6. ~~**Interior Common Areas of Low-rise Multifamily Residential Buildings.**~~

   ~~A. In a low-rise multifamily residential building where the total interior common area in a single building equals 20 percent or less of the floor area, permanently installed lighting for the interior common areas in that building shall comply with Table 150.0-A and be controlled by an occupant sensor.~~

   ~~B. In a low-rise multifamily residential building where the total interior common area in a single building equals more than 20 percent of the floor area, permanently installed lighting for the interior common areas in that building shall:~~

      ~~i. Comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.1, 140.6 and 141.0; and~~

~~ii. Lighting installed in corridors and stairwells shall be controlled by occupant sensors that reduce the lighting power in each space by at least 50 percent. The occupant sensors shall be capable of turning the light fully on and off from all designed paths of ingress and egress.~~

(l) RESERVED

(m) **Air-Distribution and Ventilation System Ducts, Plenums, and Fans.**

1. **CMC Compliance.**

A. All air-distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, mechanical closets and air-handler boxes, shall meet the requirements of the CMC Sections 601.0, 602.0, 603.0, 604.0, 605.0 and ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition, incorporated herein by reference.

B. Portions of supply-air and return-air ducts and plenums of a space heating or cooling system shall ~~either~~ be insulated ~~to~~ in accordance with either subsection i or ii below:

i. Ducts shall have a minimum installed level of R-6.0, or

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(m)1Bi: Portions of the duct system located in conditioned space and not in an attic unless it is directly conditioned~~below the ceiling separating the occupiable space from the attic~~ are not required to be insulated if all of the following conditions are met:

i. The non-insulated portion of the duct system is located entirely inside the building's thermal envelope as confirmed by visual inspection.

ii. At all locations where non-insulated portions of the duct system penetrate~~s~~ into unconditioned space, the penetration shall be draft stopped compliant with CFC sections 703.1 and 704.1 and air-sealed to the construction materials that are penetrated, using materials compliant with CMC section E502.4.2 to prevent air infiltration into the cavity. All connections in unconditioned space are insulated to a minimum of R-6.0 as confirmed by visual inspection.

Commented [AG2]: Revising to clarify that buildings without attics can also claim this exception. Also, explicitly not allowing the exception for ducts in an unvented attic

~~ii. Ducts do not require insulation a minimum installed level of R-4.2as specified in subsections a or b below when the duct system is located entirely in conditioned space as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.~~

Commented [BD3]: We don't think this language is necessary and that the exception to 150.0(m)1Bi covers this condition.

~~a. R-1 for ducts with a surface emissivity greater than or equal to 0.8.~~

~~b. R-3 for ducts with a surface emissivity less than 0.8.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)1B:** Portions of the duct system located in wall cavities are not required to be insulated if all of the following conditions are met:~~

~~i. The cavity, duct or plenumcavity containing the non-insulated portion of the duct system is located entirely inside the building's thermal envelope as confirmed by visual inspection.~~

~~ii. The non-insulated portion of the duct system has outer cross-sectional dimensions that are within 0.25 inch of the inner cross-sectional dimensions of the cavity.~~

~~iii. At all locations where non-insulated portions of non-insulated cavities,the duct system, or plenums make a transition into unconditioned space, the transition shall beis air-sealed to prevent air infiltration into the cavity and be insulated to a minimum of R-6 as confirmed by visual inspection.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(m)1B:** Portions of the duct system completely exposed and surrounded by directly conditioned space are not required to be insulated.~~

C. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened.

D. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A or UL 181B or aerosol sealant that meets the requirements of UL

723. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.

E. Building cavities, support platforms for air handlers, and plenums designed or constructed with materials other than sealed sheet metal, duct board or flexible duct shall not be used for conveying conditioned air. Building cavities and support platforms may contain ducts. Ducts installed in cavities and support platforms shall not be compressed to cause reductions in the cross-sectional area of the ducts.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(m)1: Ducts and fans integral to a wood heater or fireplace.

2. **Factory-Fabricated Duct Systems.**

A. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections, and splices, and be labeled as complying with UL 181. UL 181 testing may be performed by UL laboratories or a laboratory approved by the Executive Director.

B. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181A.

C. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181B.

D. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth-back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

3. **Field-Fabricated Duct Systems.**

A. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.

B. Mastic sealants and mesh.

i. Sealants shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.

ii. Sealants for interior applications shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C731 and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.

iii. Sealants for exterior applications shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C731, C732, and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.

iv. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.

C. Pressure-sensitive tape. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.

D. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth-back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

E. Drawbands used with flexible duct.

i. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.

ii. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.

iii. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.

F. Aerosol-sealant closures.

i. Aerosol sealants shall meet the requirements of UL 723 and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.

   ii. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.

4. **Duct Insulation R-value Ratings**. All duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components) and tested C-values at 75°F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C518 or ASTM C177, incorporated herein by reference, and certified pursuant to Section 110.8.

5. **Duct Insulation Thickness**. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:

   A. For duct board, duct liner, and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.

   B. For duct wrap, installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.

   C. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.

6. **Duct Labeling.** Insulated flexible duct products installed to meet this requirement shall include labels, in maximum intervals of 3 feet, showing the thermal performance R-value for the duct insulation itself (excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components), based on the tests in Section 150.0(m)4 and the installed thickness determined by Section 150.0(m)5C.

7. **Backdraft Dampers**. All fan systems, regardless of volumetric capacity, that exchange air between the building conditioned space and the outside of the building shall be provided with backdraft or automatic dampers to prevent unintended air leakage through the fan system when the fan system is not operating.

8. **Gravity Ventilation Dampers.** All gravity ventilating systems that serve conditioned space shall be provided with either automatic or readily accessible, manually operated dampers in all openings to the outside except combustion inlet and outlet air openings and elevator shaft vents.

9. **Protection of Insulation.** Insulation shall be protected from damage, including that due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind but not limited to the following: Insulation exposed to weather shall be suitable for outdoor service, e.g., protected by aluminum, sheet metal, painted canvas, or plastic cover. Cellular foam insulation shall be protected as above or painted with a coating that is water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material.

10. **Porous Inner Core Flex Duct.** Flexible ducts having porous inner cores shall have a non-porous layer or air barrier between the inner core and the outer vapor barrier.

11. **Duct System Sealing and Leakage Testing**. When space conditioning systems utilize forced air duct systems to supply conditioned air to an occupiable space, the ducts shall be sealed~~,~~ as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing~~,~~ in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1, ~~and the leakage compliance criteria specified in Reference Residential Appendix TABLE RA3.1-2,~~ and conforming to one of the following Subsections A, B, or C as applicable.~~:~~ Air handler airflow for calculation of duct leakage rate compliance targets shall be determined according to methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.2.

   A. For single-~~-~~family dwellings and townhouses with the air-handling unit installed and the ducts connected directly to the air handler, the total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 5 percent of the ~~nominal system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1.

   B. For single-~~-~~family dwellings and townhouses at the rough-in stage of construction prior to installation of the dwelling's interior finishing:

      ~~i.~~ **Air-handling unit installed.** If the air-handling unit is installed and the ducts are connected directly to the air handler, the total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 5 percent of the

~~nominal system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.3.2, RA3.1.4.3.2.1 and RA3.1.4.3.3.

~~ii.~~ **Air-handling unit not yet installed.** If the air-handling unit is not yet installed, the total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 4 percent of the ~~nominal system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.3.2, RA3.1.4.3.2.2 and RA3.1.4.3.3.

C. ~~For multifamily dwellings with the air-handling unit installed and the ducts connected directly to the air handler, regardless of duct system location:~~

~~i. The total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 12 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or~~

~~ii. The duct system leakage to outside shall not exceed 6 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4.~~

<u>12.</u> **Air Filtration.**

A. System types specified in subsections i, ii, and iii shall be provided with air filters in accordance with Sections 150.0(m)12B, 150.0(m)12C, and 150.0(m)12D. System types specified in subsection i shall also comply with Section 150.0(m)12E.

i. Mechanical space conditioning systems that supply air to an occupiable space through ductwork exceeding 10 ft (3 m) in length.

ii. Mechanical supply-only ventilation systems <u>and makeup air systems</u> that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

iii. The supply side of mechanical balanced ventilation systems, including heat recovery ventilation systems, and energy recovery ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)12A: Evaporative coolers are exempt from the air filtration requirements in Section 150.0(m)12.

B. **System Design and Installation**.

i. The system shall be designed to ensure that all recirculated air and all outdoor air supplied to the occupiable space is filtered before passing through any system's thermal conditioning components.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)12Bi: For heat recovery ventilators and energy recovery ventilators the location of the filters required by Section 150.0(m)12 may be downstream of a system thermal conditioning component, provided the system is equipped with ancillary filtration upstream of the system's thermal conditioning component.

ii. All systems shall be designed to accommodate the clean-filter pressure drop imposed by the system air filter(s). The design airflow rate, and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate applicable to each air filter shall be determined and reported on labels according to subsection iv below.

Systems specified in Section 150.0(m)12Ai shall be equipped with air filters that meet either subsection a or b below.

a. Nominal two-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be sized by the system designer, or

b. Nominal one-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be allowed if the filter(s) are sized according to Equation 150.0-A, based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft per minute, and according to the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified in Section 150.0(m)12Dii.

$$A_{face} = Q_{filter} / V_{face} \qquad \text{(Equation 150.0-A)}$$

where

A_{face} = air filter face area, the product of air filter nominal length × nominal width, ft^2

Q_{filter} = design airflow rate for the air filter, ft^3/min

V_{face} = air filter face velocity ≤ 150, ft/min

iii. All system air filters shall be located and installed in such a manner as to be accessible for regular service by the system owner.

iv. All system air filter installation locations shall be labeled to disclose the applicable design airflow rate and the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop. The labels shall be permanently affixed to the air filter installation location, readily legible, and visible to a person replacing the air filter.

v. Filter racks or grilles shall ~~be gasketed or sealed~~ use gaskets, sealing, or other means to ~~eliminate any~~ close gaps around ~~the~~ inserted filters ~~to~~ and prevent air from bypassing the filter.

C. **Air Filter Efficiency**. The system shall be provided with air filters having a designated efficiency equal to or greater than MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.30-1.0 µm range, and equal to or greater than 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0 µm range when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680.

D. **Air Filter Pressure Drop**. All systems shall be provided with air filters that conform to the applicable maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified in subsections i, ii, iii, or iv below, when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated using AHRI Standard 680, for the applicable design airflow rates for the system air filters.

i. The maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop shall be determined by the system design for the nominal two-inch minimum depth air filter required by Section 150.0(m)12Biia, or

ii. A maximum of 25 PA (0.1 inches water) clean-filter pressure drop shall be allowed for a nominal one-inch depth air filter sized according to Section 150.0(m)12Biib, or

iii. For systems specified in 150.0(m)12Aii, and 150.0(m)12Aiii, the maximum allowable clean filter pressure drop shall be determined by the system design.

iv. If EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)13B or D is utilized for compliance with cooling system airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements, the clean-filter pressure drop for the system air filter shall conform to the requirements given in TABLE 150.0-B or 150.0-C.

E. **Air Filter Product Labeling**. Systems described in 150.0(m)12)Ai shall be equipped with air filters that have been labeled by the manufacturer to disclose the efficiency and pressure drop ratings that demonstrate conformance with Sections 150.0(m)12C and 150.0(m)12D.

13. **Space Conditioning System Airflow Rate and Fan Efficacy.** Space conditioning systems that utilize forced air ducts to supply cooling to an occupiable space shall:

A. **Static Pressure Probe.** Have a hole for the placement of a static pressure probe (HSPP), or a permanently installed static pressure probe (PSPP) in the supply plenum downstream of the air conditioning evaporator coil. The size, location, and labeling of the HSPP or PSPP shall conform to the requirements specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.1.1 as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing; and

EXCEPTION to 150.0(m)13A: Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for hole location in Reference Residential Appendix Figure RA3.3-1 shall not be required to provide holes as described in Figure RA3.3-1.

B. **Single Zone Central Forced Air Systems**. Demonstrate, in every control mode, airflow greater than or equal to 350 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity through the return grilles, and an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to the maximum W/cfm specified in subsections i or ii below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

i. 0.45 W/cfm for gas furnace air-handling units.

ii. 0.58 W/cfm for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

C. **Zonally Controlled Central Forced Air Systems.** Zonally controlled central forced air cooling systems shall be capable of simultaneously delivering, in every zonal control mode, an airflow from the dwelling, through the air handler fan and delivered to the dwelling, of greater than or equal to 350 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity, and operating at an air-handling unit fan efficacy of less than or equal to the maximum W/cfm specified in subsections i or ii below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

i. 0.45 W/cfm for gas furnace air-handling units.

ii. 0.58 W/cfm for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

D. **Small Duct High Velocity Forced Air Systems.** Demonstrate, in every control mode, airflow greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity through the return grilles, and an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to 0.62 W/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)13B and D: Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE 150.0-B or 150.0-C as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements specified by Section 150.0(m)12Div for the system air filter(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 150.0-B and 150.0-C.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(m)13B and D: Multispeed compressor systems or variable speed compressor systems shall verify airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) for system operation at the maximum compressor speed and the maximum air handler fan speed.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.0(m)13B: Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)13C: Multispeed or variable speed compressor systems, or single speed compressor systems that utilize the performance compliance approach, shall demonstrate compliance with the airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) requirements of Section 150.0(m)13C by operating the system at maximum compressor capacity and system fan speed with all zones calling for conditioning, rather than in every zonal control mode.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(m)13C: Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

(n) **Water Heating System**.

1. Systems using gas or propane water heaters to serve individual dwelling units shall ~~include the following components:~~ designate a space at least 2.5 feet by 2.5 feet wide and 7 feet tall suitable for the future installation of a heat pump water heater (HPWH) by meeting either A or B below. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*:

A. If the designated space is within 3 feet from the water heater, then this space shall include the following:

i. A dedicated 125 volt, 20 amp electrical receptacle that is connected to the electric panel with a 120/240 volt 3 conductor, 10 AWG copper branch circuit, within 3 feet from the water heater and accessible to the water heater with no obstructions; and~~. In addition, all of the following:~~

ii. Both ends of the unused conductor shall be labeled with the word "spare" and be electrically isolated; and

iii. A reserved single pole circuit breaker space in the electrical panel adjacent to the circuit breaker for the branch circuit in A above and labeled with the words "Future 240V Use"; and

B. ~~A Category III or IV vent, or a Type B vent with straight pipe between the outside termination and the space where the water heater is installed; and~~

iv. ~~C.~~ A condensate drain that is no more than 2 inches higher than the base of the installed water heater, and allows natural draining without pump assistance.~~; and~~

~~D. A gas supply line with a capacity of at least 200,000 Btu/hr.~~

B. If the designated space is more than 3 feet from the water heater, then this space shall include the following:

i. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit shall be installed within 3 feet from the designated space. The branch circuit shall be rated at 30 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as "240V ready"; and

ii. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future HPWH installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as "For Future 240V use"; and

iii. Either a dedicated cold water supply, or the cold water supply shall pass through the designated HPWH location just before reaching the gas or propane water heater; and

iv. The hot water supply pipe coming out of the gas or propane water heater shall be routed first through the designated HPWH location before serving any fixtures; and

v. The hot and cold water piping at the designated HPWH location shall be exposed and readily accessible for future installation of a HPWH; and

vi. A condensate drain that is no more than 2 inches higher than the base of the installed water heater, and allows natural draining without pump assistance.

2. Water heating recirculation loops serving multiple dwelling units shall meet the requirements of Section 110.3(c)4.

3. Solar water-heating systems and collectors shall be certified and rated by the Solar Rating and Certification Corporation (SRCC), the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Research and Testing (IAPMO R&T), or by a listing agency that is approved by the Executive Director.

4. Instantaneous water heaters with an input rating greater than 6.8 kBTU/hr (2kW) shall meet the requirements of Section 110.3(c)6.

(o) **Requirements for Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality.** All dwelling units shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.2, Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings subject to the amendments specified in Section 150.0(o)1 below. All dwelling units shall comply with Section 150.0(o)2 below.

Exception to Section 150.0(o): The following sections of ASHRAE 62.2 shall not be required for compliance: Section 4.1.1, Section 4.1.2; Section 4.1.4; Section 4.3; Section 4.6, Section 5, Section 6.1.1, Section 6.5.2, and Normative Appendix A.

1. **Amendments to ASHRAE 62.2 requirements**.

A. **Window Operation.** Window operation is not a permissible method of providing the dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in ~~subsections~~ Section 150.0(o)1C~~, E, or F~~ below.

B. **Central Fan Integrated (CFI) Ventilation Systems**. CFI ventilation systems shall meet the following requirements.

i. **Continuous Operation Prohibition**. Continuous operation of a dwelling unit's central forced air system air handler~~s~~ used in ~~central fan integrated~~CFI ventilation systems is not a permissible method of providing the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow required in Section 150.0(o)1C ~~Section 4 of ASHRAE Standard 62.2~~.

ii. **Outdoor Air Damper(s)**. A motorized damper(s) shall be installed on the connected ventilation duct(s) of CFI systems that prevents all airflow into or out of the space conditioning duct system when the damper(s) is closed.

iii. **Damper Control**. The required motorized damper(s) shall be controlled to be in an opened position when outdoor air ventilation is required for compliance, and shall be in the closed position when ventilation air is not required. The damper(s) shall be closed whenever the space conditioning system air handling unit is not operating. If the outdoor airflow for the CFI ventilation system is fan-powered, then the outdoor air fan shall not operate when the required motorized damper(s) on the outdoor air ventilation duct(s) is closed.

iv. **Variable Ventilation.** CFI ventilation systems shall incorporate controls that track outdoor air ventilation run time, and either open or close the required motorized damper(s) depending on whether or not outdoor air ventilation is required for compliance with section 150.0(o)1C. During periods when comfort conditioning is not called for by the space conditioning thermostat, the CFI ventilation system controls shall operate the space conditioning system central fan and outdoor air damper(s) when necessary to ensure compliance with the minimum outdoor air ventilation required by sections 150.0(o) in accordance with applicable variable mechanical ventilation methods specified in ASHRAE 62.2 section 4.5.

C. **Whole-Dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation for Single-Family Detached and Townhouses.** Single-family detached dwelling units, and attached dwelling units not sharing ceilings or floors with other dwelling units, occupiable spaces, public garages, or commercial spaces shall have mechanical ventilation airflow ~~provided at rates determined in accordance with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 4.1.1 and 4.1.2~~ as specified in subsections i, ii, and iii below.

i. **Total Required Ventilation Rate [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1].**

The total required ventilation rate shall be calculated using Equation 150.0-B

$$Q_{tot} = 0.03A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1)$$ (Equation 150.0-B)

where

Q_{tot} = total required ventilation rate, cfm

A_{floor} = dwelling-unit floor area, ft^2

N_{br} = number of bedrooms (not to be less than 1)

ii. **Effective Annual Average Infiltration Rate.** The effective annual average infiltration rate shall be determined in accordance with subsections a and b:

a. An enclosure leakage rate in cubic feet per minute at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) (Q_{50}) shall be determined by either subsection 1, or subsection 2 below.

1. Q_{50} shall be calculated based on the conditioned volume of the dwelling unit and a default value for dwelling unit envelope leakage of 2 air changes per hour at 50 PA (0.2 inch water) (2 ACH_{50}) as specified by equation 150.0-C below.

$$Q_{50} = V_{du} \times 2\ ACH_{50} / 60\ \text{min}$$ (Equation 150.0-C)

where

Q_{50} = leakage rate at 50 Pa

V_{du} = dwelling unit conditioned volume, ft^3

ACH_{50} = air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water)

2. If dwelling unit envelope leakage less than 2 ACH_{50} is confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing, Q_{50} shall be calculated according to Equation 150.0-D below, using the value for dwelling unit envelope leakage less than 2 ACH_{50} verified by the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.

$Q_{50} = V_{du} \times \mathit{Verified}\ ACH_{50} / 60\ \text{min}$ (Equation 150.0-D)

where

Q_{50} = leakage rate at 50 Pa

V_{du} = dwelling unit conditioned volume, ft^3

ACH_{50} = air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water)

b. The Effective Annual Average Infiltration Rate (Q_{inf}) shall be calculated using Equation 150.0-E [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.2.1].

$Q_{inf} = 0.052 \times Q_{50} \times wsf \times [H/H_r]^z$ (Equation 150.0-E)

where

Q_{inf} = effective annual infiltration rate, cfm (L/s)

Q_{50} = leakage rate at 50 Pa from equation 150.0-C, or equation 150.0-D

wsf = weather and shielding factor from Table 150.0-D

H = vertical distance between the lowest and highest above-grade points within the pressure boundary, ft (m)

H_r = reference height, 8.2 ft (2.5 m)

z = 0.4 for the purpose of calculating the Effective Annual Average Infiltration Rate

iii. **Required Mechanical Ventilation Rate [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.2].**

The Required Mechanical Ventilation Rate (Q_{fan}) shall be calculated using Equation 150.0-F

$Q_{fan} = Q_{tot} - \Phi\ (Q_{inf} \times A_{ext})$ (Equation 150.0-F)

where

Q_{fan} = required mechanical ventilation rate, cfm (L/s)

Q_{tot} = total required ventilation rate, cfm (L/s) from Equation 150.0-B

Q_{inf} = effective annual average infiltration rate, cfm (L/s) from Equation 150.0-E

A_{ext} = 1 for single-family detached homes, or the ratio of exterior envelope surface area that is not attached to garages or other dwelling units to total envelope surface area for attached dwelling units not sharing ceilings or floors with other dwelling units, occupiable spaces, public garages, or commercial spaces.

Φ=1 for balanced ventilation systems and Q_{inf}/Q_{tot} otherwise

D. **Air Filtration.** Air filtration shall conform to the specifications in Section 150.0(m)12. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 6.7 (Minimum Filtration) and 6.7.1 (Filter Pressure Drop) shall not be required.

E. **RESERVED.**~~Multifamily attached dwelling units shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided at rates in accordance with Equation 150.0-B [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1], and comply with one of the following subsections i or ii below. When subsection ii below is utilized for compliance, all dwelling units in the multifamily building shall use the same ventilation system type.~~

i. ~~A balanced ventilation system shall provide the required dwelling-unit ventilation airflow, or~~

ii. ~~Continuously operating supply ventilation systems, or continuously operating exhaust ventilation systems shall be allowed to be used to provide the required dwelling unit ventilation airflow if the dwelling-unit envelope leakage is less than or equal to 0.3 cubic feet per minute at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) per ft^2 of dwelling unit envelope surface area as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.~~

F. **RESERVED.**~~Multifamily building central ventilation systems that serve multiple dwelling units shall be balanced to provide ventilation airflow for each dwelling unit served at a rate equal to or greater than the rate specified by Equation 150.0-B [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1], but no more than twenty percent greater than the specified rate. These systems shall utilize balancing means to ensure the dwelling-unit airflows can be adjusted to meet this balancing requirement. These system balancing means may include but not be limited to constant air regulation devices, orifice plates, and variable speed central fans.~~

G. **Local Mechanical Exhaust.** A local mechanical exhaust system shall be installed in each kitchen and bathroom. Systems shall be rated for airflow in accordance with ASHRAE 62.2 section 7.1.

  i. **Nonenclosed kitchens** shall have a demand-controlled mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 150.0(o)1Giii.

  ii **Enclosed kitchens and all bathrooms** shall have either one of the following alternatives a or b:

    a. A demand-controlled mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 150.0(o)1Giii

    ~~b.~~ A continuous mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 150.0(o)1Giv.

  iii **Demand-Controlled Mechanical Exhaust.** A local mechanical exhaust system shall be designed to be operated as needed.

    a. **Control and Operation.** Demand-controlled mechanical exhaust systems shall be provided with at least one of the following controls:

      1. A readily accessible occupant-controlled ON-OFF control

      2. An automatic control that does not impede occupant ON control

    b. **Ventilation Rate and Capture Efficiency.** The system shall meet or exceed either the minimum airflow in accordance with Table 150.0-E or the minimum capture efficiency in accordance with Table 150.0-E, and Table 150.0-G. Capture efficiency ratings shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E3087 and listed in a product directory approved by the Energy Commission.

  iv. **Continuous Mechanical Exhaust.** A mechanical exhaust system shall be installed to operate continuously. The system may be part of a balanced mechanical ventilation system.

    a. **Control and Operation**. A manual ON-OFF control shall be provided for each continuous mechanical exhaust system. The system shall be designed to operate during all occupiable hours. The ON-OFF control shall be accessible to the dwelling unit occupant.

    ~~**Exception to 150.0(o)1Giva:** For multifamily dwelling units, the manual ON-OFF control shall not be required to be accessible to the dwelling unit occupant.~~

b. **Ventilation Rate.** The minimum delivered ventilation shall be at least the amount indicated in Table 150.0-F during each hour of operation.

v. **Airflow Measurement of Local Mechanical Exhaust by The System Installer.** The airflow required by section 150.0(o)1G is the quantity of indoor air exhausted by the ventilation system as installed in the dwelling unit. When a vented range hood utilizes a capture efficiency rating to demonstrate compliance with 150.0(o)1Giiib, the airflow listed in the approved directory corresponding to the compliant capture efficiency rating point shall be met by the installed system. The as-installed airflow shall be verified by the system installer to ensure compliance by use of either subsection a or b below:

a. The system installer shall measure the airflow by using a flow hood, flow grid, or other airflow measuring device at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals/grilles or outlet terminals/grilles in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.

b. As an alternative to performing an airflow measurement of the system as installed in the dwelling unit, compliance may be demonstrated by installing an exhaust fan and duct system that conforms to the specifications of Table 150.0-H. Visual inspection shall verify the installed system conforms to the requirements of Table 150.0-H.

When using Table 150.0-H for demonstrating compliance, the airflow rating shall be greater than or equal to the value required by Section 150.0(o)1G at a static pressure greater than or equal to 0.25 in. of water (62.5 Pa). When a vented range hood utilizes a capture efficiency rating to demonstrate compliance with 150.0(o)1Giiib, a static pressure greater than or equal to 0.25 in. of water at the rating point shall not be required, and the airflow listed in the approved directory corresponding to the compliant capture efficiency rating point shall be applied to Table 150.0-H for determining compliance.

Use of Table 150.0-H is limited to ventilation systems that conform to all of the following three specifications:

1. total duct length is less than or equal to 25 ft (8 m),
2. duct system has no more than three (3) elbows, and
3. duct system has exterior termination fitting with a hydraulic diameter greater than or equal to the minimum duct diameter and not less than the hydraulic diameter of the fan outlet.

vi. **Sound Ratings for Local Mechanical Exhaust.** Local mechanical exhaust systems ~~Kitchen range hoods~~ shall be rated for sound in accordance with Section 7.2 of ASHRAE 62.2 at no less than the minimum airflow rate required by Section 150.0(o)1G.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(o)1Gvi: Kitchen range hoods may be rated for sound at no less than 100 cfm at a static pressure determined at working speed as specified in HVI 916 section 7.2.

H. **Airflow Measurement of Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation**. The airflow required by sections 150.0(o)1C is the quantity of outdoor ventilation air supplied or indoor air exhausted by the mechanical ventilation system as installed and shall be measured by using a flow hood, flow grid, or other airflow measuring device at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals/grilles or outlet terminals/grilles in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7. Balanced mechanical ventilation system airflow shall be the average of the supply fan and exhaust fan flows.~~Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 6.5.2 (Space Conditioning System Ducts) shall not be required~~.

I. **Sound Ratings for Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation Systems.** Whole-d~~D~~welling unit ventilation systems shall be rated for sound in accordance with Section 7.2 of ASHRAE 62.2 at no less than the minimum airflow rate required by Sections 150.0(o)1C~~ or 150.0(o)1E as applicable~~.

Commented [AG4]: Grammar

~~I~~J. **Label for Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation System On-Off Control**. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 4.4 (Control and Operation) shall require manual ON-OFF control switches associated with whole-dwelling unit ventilation systems to have a label clearly displaying the following text, or equivalent text: "This switch controls the indoor air quality ventilation for the home. Leave ~~it~~ switch in the "on" position at all times unless the outdoor air quality is very poor."

K. **Combustion Air and Compensating Outdoor Air or Makeup Air**

i. All dwelling units shall conform to the applicable requirements specified in California Mechanical Code Chapter 7, Combustion Air.

ii. ~~Atmospherically vented or solid fuel burning appliances shall not be installed inside the pressure boundary in dwelling units with conditioned floor area less than 1,000 ft².~~

ii~~i~~. All dwelling units shall conform to the requirements in ASHRAE 62.2 Section 6.4, Combustion and Solid-Fuel-Burning Appliances.

1. **Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing.**

A. **Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation Airflow Performance**. The whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow required by Section~~s~~ 150.0(o)1C~~, 150.0(o)1E, and 150.0(o)1F~~ shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7. Balanced mechanical ventilation system airflow shall be the average of the supply fan and exhaust fan flows. Ventilation airflow of systems with multiple operating modes shall be tested in all modes designed to comply with the required ventilation airflows.

B. **Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust - Vented Range Hoods**. ~~**Kitchen Range Hoods**. The installed kitchen~~ Vented range hoods installed to comply with local mechanical exhaust requirements specified in 150.0(o)1G shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.4.3 to confirm the model is rated by HVI or AHAM to comply with the following requirements:

i. The minimum ventilation airflow rate as specified ~~in~~ by Section 150.0(o)1G, or alternatively the minimum capture efficiency as specified by Section 150.0(o)1G.~~5 of ASHRAE 62.2.~~

ii The maximum sound rating as specified in Section 150.0(o)1Gvi.

C. **Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) and Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) System Fan Efficacy**. Systems with heat or energy recovery serving a single dwelling unit shall have a fan efficacy of ≤1.0 W/cfm as confirmed by HERS field verification in accordance with Reference Appendix RA3.7.4.4.

(p) **Pool Systems and Equipment Installation.** Any residential pool system or equipment installed shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 110.4, as well as the requirements listed in this section.

1. **Pump sizing and flow rate.**

A. All installed pumps and pump motors ~~installed~~ subject to State or federal appliance standards shall be listed in the Commission's directory of certified equipment and shall comply with the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

B. All pump flow rates shall be calculated using the following system equation:

$$H = C \times F^2$$

WHERE:

H is the total system head in feet of water.

F is the flow rate in gallons per minute (gpm).

C is a coefficient based on the volume of the pool:

0.0167 for pools less than or equal to 17,000 gallons.

0.0082 for pools greater than 17,000 gallons.

C. Filtration pumps shall be sized, or if programmable, shall be programmed, so that the filtration flow rate is not greater than the rate needed to turn over the pool water volume in 6 hours or 36 gpm, whichever is greater; and

D. Pump motors used for filtration~~.~~ ~~with a capacity of 1 hp or more shall be multispeed~~shall meet the applicable federal standard in 10 CFR 431.465; and

E. Each auxiliary pool load shall be served by either separate pumps or the system shall be served by a multispeed pump; and

EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(p)1E: Pumps less than 1 hp may be single speed.

F. Multispeed pumps shall have controls which default to the filtration flow rate when no auxiliary pool loads are operating; and

G. For multispeed pumps, the controls shall default to the filtration flow rate setting within 24 hours and shall have an override capability for servicing.

2. **System piping.**

A. A length of straight pipe that is greater than or equal to at least 4 pipe diameters shall be installed before the pump; and

B. Pool piping shall be sized so that the velocity of the water at maximum flow for auxiliary pool loads does not exceed 8 feet per second in the return line and 6 feet per second in the suction line; and

C. All elbows shall be sweep elbows or of an elbow-type that has a pressure drop of less than the pressure drop of straight pipe with a length of 30 pipe diameters.

3. **Filters.** Filters shall be at least the size specified in NSF/ANSI 50 for public pool intended applications.

4. **Valves.** Minimum diameter of backwash valves shall be 2 inches or the diameter of the return pipe, whichever is greater.

(q) **Fenestration Products.** Fenestration separating conditioned space from unconditioned space or outdoors shall meet the requirements of either Item 1 or 2 below:

1. Fenestration, including skylight products, must have a maximum U-factor of 0.~~58~~45.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(q)1: Up to 10 square feet of fenestration area or 0.5 percent of the Conditioned Floor Area, whichever is greater, is exempt from the maximum U-factor requirement.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(q)1: For dual-glazed greenhouse or garden windows, up to 30 square feet of fenestration area is exempt from the maximum U-factor requirement.

2. The area-weighted average U-factor of all fenestration, including skylight products, shall not exceed 0.~~58~~45.

(r) **Solar Ready Buildings.** Shall meet the requirements of Section 110.10 applicable to the building project.

(s) **Energy Storage Systems (ESS) Ready.** All single-family residences, that include one or two dwelling units shall meet the following. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*:

1. At least one of the following shall be provided:

A. ESS ready interconnection equipment with a minimum backed up capacity of 60 amps and a minimum of four ESS supplied branch circuits, or

B. A dedicated raceway from the main service to a panelboard (subpanel) that supplies the branch circuits in 150.0(s)(2). All branch circuits are permitted to be supplied by the main service panel prior to the installation of an ESS. The trade size of the raceway shall be not less than one inch. The panelboard that supplies the branch circuits (subpanel) must be labeled “Subpanel shall include all backed-up load circuits.”

2. A minimum of four branch circuits shall be identified and have their source of supply collocated at a single panelboard suitable to be supplied by the ESS. At least one circuit shall supply the refrigerator, one lighting circuit near the primary egress, and at least one circuit shall supply a sleeping room receptacle outlet.
3. The main panelboard shall have a minimum busbar rating of 225 amps.
4. Sufficient space shall be reserved to allow future installation of a system isolation equipment/transfer switch within 3 feet of the main panelboard. Raceways shall be installed between the panelboard and the system isolation equipment/transfer switch location to allow the connection of backup power source.

(t) **Heat Pump Space Heater Ready.** Systems using gas or propane furnace to serve individual dwelling units shall include the following:

1. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit wiring shall be installed within 3 feet from the furnace and accessible to the furnace with no obstructions. The branch circuit conductors shall be rated at 30 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.
2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future heat pump space heater installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”.

(u) **Electric Cooktop Ready.** Systems using gas or propane cooktop to serve individual dwelling units shall include the following:

1. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit wiring shall be installed within 3 feet from the cooktop and accessible to the cooktop with no obstructions . The branch circuit conductors shall be rated at 50 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.
2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future electric cooktop installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”.

(v) **Electric Clothes Dryer Ready.** ~~Systems using gas or propane clothes dryer~~Clothes dryer locations with gas or propane plumbing to serve individual dwelling units shall include the following:

1. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit wiring shall be installed within 3 feet from the clothes dryer location and accessible to the clothes dryer location with no obstructions . The branch circuit conductors shall be rated at 30 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.
2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future electric clothes dryer installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”.

TABLE 150.0-A CLASSIFICATION OF HIGH LUMINOUS EFFICACY LIGHT SOURCES

Light sources in this column other that those installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires are classified as high luminous efficacy and are **not** required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8.	Light sources in this column are required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8 and shall be certified and marked as required by JA8.
1. LED light sources installed outdoors. 2. Inseparable Solid State Lighting (SSL) luminaires ~~and~~ containing colored light sources that are installed to provide decorative~~, accent, display, utility, undercabinet or special effect~~ lighting. 3. ~~Dim-to-warm and tunable-white LED light sources with at least one light source controller setting of 4000K or less and color rendering index (CRI) rating of 90 or greater.~~ 4. ~~Color-tunable LED light sources with at least one light source controller setting of 4000K or less.~~ 5. ~~LED lamps compliant with Title 20 as general service lamps and with a correlated color temperature (CCT) of 4000K or less.~~ ~~6~~3. Pin-based linear fluorescent or compact fluorescent light sources using electronic ballasts. ~~7~~4. High intensity discharge (HID) light sources including pulse start metal halide and high pressure sodium light sources. ~~8~~5. Luminaires with hardwired high frequency generator and induction lamp. ~~9~~6. Ceiling Fan Light Kits ~~compliant with Title 20 requirements~~subject to federal appliance regulations.	~~10~~7. All light sources installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires~~ other than those specified in items 3, 4, or 5~~. Note that ceiling recessed downlight luminaires shall not have screw base sockets regardless of lamp type as specified in Section 150.0(k)1C. ~~11~~8. Any light source not otherwise listed in this table.

~~**High Efficacy Light Sources**~~ ~~Light sources shall comply with one of the columns below:~~	
~~Light sources in this column other than those installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires are classified as high luminousefficacy and are **not** required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8~~	~~Light sources in this column are required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8only considered to be high efficacy if they and they are certified to the Commission as High Efficacy Light Sources in accordance withshall be certified to the Commission for complying with Reference Joint Appendix JA8 and marked as required by JA8.~~
~~1. Pin-based linear fluorescent or compact fluorescent light sources using electronic ballasts.~~ ~~2. Pulse-start metal halide light sources.~~ ~~3. High pressure sodium light sources.~~ ~~4. Luminaires with hardwired high frequency generator and induction lamp.~~	~~810. All light sources installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires. Note that ceiling recessed downlight luminaires shall not have screw bases regardless of lamp type as described in Section 150.0(k)1C.~~ ~~911. Any light source not otherwise listed in this table.~~

~~5. LED light sources installed outdoors.~~ ~~6. Inseparable Solid State Lighting (SSL) luminaires containing and colored light sources that are installed to provide decorative, accent, display, or special effect lighting.~~ ~~3. Dim-to-warm and tunable-white LED light sources with at least one light source controller setting of 4000K or less and color rendering index (CRI) rating of 0 or greater.~~ ~~4. Color-tunable LED light sources.~~ ~~5. LED lamps compliant with Title 20 as general service lamps and with a correlated color temperature (CCT) of 4000K or less.~~ ~~6. Pin-based linear fluorescent or compact fluorescent light sources using electronic ballasts.~~ ~~7. High intensity discharge (HID) light sources including pulse start metal halide and high pressure sodium light sources.~~ ~~8. Luminaires with hardwired high frequency generator and induction lamp.~~	

TABLE 150.0-B: Return Duct Sizing for Single Return Duct Systems

Return duct length shall not exceed 30 feet and shall contain no more than 180° of bend. If the total bending exceeds 90°, one bend shall be a metal elbow.

Return grille devices shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements in Section 150.0(m)12Biv to disclose the grille's design airflow rate and a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) for the air filter when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 680 for the design airflow rate for the return grille.

System Nominal Cooling Capacity (Ton)*	**Return Duct Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)**	**Minimum Total Return Filter Grille Nominal Area (inch^2)**
1.5	16	500
2.0	18	600
2.5	20	800

~~*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 2.5 tons or less than 1.5 ton~~

*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 2.5 tons or less than 1.5 ton

TABLE 150.0-C: Return Duct Sizing for Multiple Return Duct Systems

Each return duct length shall not exceed 30 feet and shall contain no more than 180° of bend. If the total bending exceeds 90°, one bend shall be a metal elbow.

Return grille devices shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements in Section 150.0(m)12Biv to disclose the grille's design airflow rate and a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) for the air filter when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 680 for the design airflow rate for the return grille.

System Nominal Cooling Capacity (Ton)*	**Return Duct 1 Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)**	**Return Duct 2 Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)**	**Minimum Total Return Filter Grille Nominal Area (inch^2)**
1.5	12	10	500
2.0	14	12	600
2.5	14	14	800
3.0	16	14	900
3.5	16	16	1000
4.0	18	18	1200
5.0	20	20	1500

*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 5.0 tons or less than 1.5 tons.

TABLE 150.0-D: Infiltration Effectiveness Weather and Shielding Factors [ASHRAE 62.2:Table B1]

TMY3	wsf	Weather Station	Latitude	Longitude	State
690150	0.50	Twentynine Palms	34.30	–116.17	California
722860	0.43	March AFB	33.90	–117.25	California
722868	0.45	Palm Springs Intl	33.83	–116.50	California
722869	0.42	Riverside Muni	33.95	–117.45	California
722880	0.39	Burbank–Glendale–Pasadena AP	34.20	–118.35	California
722885	0.39	Santa Monica Muni	34.02	–118.45	California
722886	0.39	Van Nuys Airport	34.22	–118.48	California
722895	0.55	Lompoc (AWOS)	34.67	–120.47	California
722897	0.51	San Luis Co Rgnl	35.23	–120.63	California
722899	0.45	Chino Airport	33.97	–117.63	California
722900	0.38	San Diego Lindbergh Field	32.73	–117.17	California
722903	0.39	San Diego/Montgomery	32.82	–117.13	California
722904	0.40	Chula Vista Brown Field NAAS	32.58	–116.98	California
722906	0.39	San Diego North Island NAS	32.70	–117.20	California
722926	0.40	Camp Pendleton MCAS	33.30	–117.35	California
722927	0.38	Carlsbad/Palomar	33.13	–117.28	California
722930	0.39	San Diego Miramar NAS	32.87	–117.13	California
722950	0.42	Los Angeles Intl Arpt	33.93	–118.40	California
722956	0.38	Jack Northrop Fld H	33.92	–118.33	California
722970	0.38	Long Beach Daugherty Fld	33.83	–118.17	California
722976	0.34	Fullerton Municipal	33.87	–117.98	California
722977	0.36	Santa Ana John Wayne AP	33.68	–117.87	California
723805	0.51	Needles Airport	34.77	–114.62	California
723810	0.59	Edwards AFB	34.90	–117.87	California
723815	0.58	Daggett Barstow–Daggett AP	34.85	–116.80	California
723816	0.62	Lancaster Gen Wm Fox Field	34.73	–118.22	California
723820	0.57	Palmdale Airport	34.63	–118.08	California
723830	0.68	Sandberg	34.75	–118.72	California
723840	0.43	Bakersfield Meadows Field	35.43	–119.05	California
723890	0.45	Fresno Yosemite Intl AP	36.78	–119.72	California
723895	0.42	Porterville (AWOS)	36.03	–119.07	California
723896	0.43	Visalia Muni (AWOS)	36.32	–119.40	California
723910	0.45	Point Mugu Nf	34.12	–119.12	California
723925	0.44	Santa Barbara Municipal AP	34.43	–119.85	California
723926	0.43	Camarillo (AWOS)	34.22	–119.08	California
723927	0.45	Oxnard Airport	34.20	–119.20	California
723940	0.52	Santa Maria Public Arpt	34.92	–120.47	California

TABLE 150.0-D: Infiltration Effectiveness Weather and Shielding Factors [ASHRAE 62.2:Table B1] (continued)

TMY3	wsf	Weather Station	Latitude	Longitude	State
723965	0.53	Paso Robles Municipal Arpt	35.67	–120.63	California
724800	0.55	Bishop Airport	37.37	–118.35	California
724815	0.46	Merced/Macready Fld	37.28	–120.52	California
724830	0.51	Sacramento Executive Arpt	38.50	–121.50	California
724837	0.45	Beale AFB	39.13	–121.43	California
724838	0.50	Yuba Co	39.10	–121.57	California
724839	0.51	Sacramento Metropolitan AP	38.70	–121.58	California
724915	0.49	Monterey Naf	36.60	–121.87	California
724917	0.54	Salinas Municipal AP	36.67	–121.60	California
724920	0.50	Stockton Metropolitan Arpt	37.90	–121.23	California
724926	0.47	Modesto City–County AP	37.63	–120.95	California
724927	0.53	Livermore Municipal	37.70	–121.82	California
724930	0.54	Oakland Metropolitan Arpt	37.72	–122.22	California
724935	0.47	Hayward Air Term	37.67	–122.12	California
724936	0.53	Concord–Buchanan Field	38.00	–122.05	California
724940	0.60	San Francisco Intl AP	37.62	–122.40	California
724945	0.48	San Jose Intl AP	37.37	–121.93	California
724955	0.55	Napa Co. Airport	38.22	–122.28	California
724957	0.49	Santa Rosa (AWOS)	38.52	–122.82	California
725845	0.44	Blue Canyon AP	39.30	–120.72	California
725846	0.66	Truckee–Tahoe	39.32	–120.13	California
725847	0.64	South Lake Tahoe	38.90	–120.00	California
725905	0.47	Ukiah Municipal AP	39.13	–123.20	California
725910	0.50	Red Bluff Municipal Arpt	40.15	–122.25	California
725920	0.47	Redding Municipal Arpt	40.52	–122.32	California
725945	0.56	Arcata Airport	40.98	–124.10	California
725946	0.60	Crescent City Faa Ai	41.78	–124.23	California
725955	0.55	Montague Siskiyou County AP	41.78	–122.47	California
725958	0.59	Alturas	41.50	–120.53	California
745090	0.45	Mountain View Moffett Fld NAS	37.40	–122.05	California
745160	0.67	Travis Field AFB	38.27	–121.93	California
746120	0.52	China Lake Naf	35.68	–117.68	California
747020	0.50	Lemoore Reeves NAS	36.33	–119.95	California
747185	0.46	Imperial	32.83	–115.58	California
747187	0.46	Palm Springs Thermal AP	33.63	–116.17	California
747188	0.48	Blythe Riverside Co Arpt	33.62	–114.72	California

Table 150.0-E Demand-Controlled Local Ventilation Exhaust Airflow Rates and Capture Efficiency

Application	**Compliance Criteria**
Enclosed Kitchen or Nonenclosed Kitchen	Vented range hood, including appliance-range hood combinations shall meet either the capture efficiency (CE) or the airflow rate specified in Table 150.0-G as applicable.
Enclosed Kitchen	Other kitchen exhaust fans, including downdraft: 300 cfm (150 L/s) or a capacity of 5 ACH
Nonenclosed Kitchen	Other kitchen exhaust fans, including downdraft: 300 cfm (150 L/s)
Bathroom	50 cfm (25 L/s)

Table 150.0-F Continuous Local Ventilation Exhaust Airflow Rates

Application	**Airflow**
Enclosed kitchen	5 ach, based on kitchen volume
Bathroom	20 cfm (10 L/s)

Table 150.0-G Kitchen Range Hood Airflow Rates (cfm) and ASTM E3087 Capture Efficiency (CE) Ratings According to Dwelling Unit Floor Area and Kitchen Range Fuel Type

Dwelling Unit Floor Area (ft^2)	**Hood Over Electric Range**	**Hood Over Natural Gas Range**
>1500	50% CE or 110 cfm	70% CE or 180 cfm
>1000 - 1500	50% CE or 110 cfm	80% CE or 250 cfm
750 - 1000	55% CE or 130 cfm	85% CE or 280 cfm
<750	65% CE or 160 cfm	85% CE or 280 cfm

Table 150.0-H Prescriptive Ventilation System Duct Sizing [ASHRAE 62.2:Table 5-3]

Fan Airflow Rating, cfm at minimum static pressure[f] 0.25 in. water (L/s at minimum 62.5 Pa)	≤50 (25)	≤80 (40)	≤100 (50)	≤125 (60)	≤150 (70)	≤175 (85)	≤200 (95)	≤250 (120)	≤350 (165)	≤400 (190)	≤450 (210)	≤700 (330)	≤800 (380)
Minimum Duct Diameter, in. (mm) [a,b] For Rigid duct	4 [e] (100)	5 (125)	5 (125)	6 (150)	6 (150)	7 (180)	7 (180)	8 (205)	9 (230)	10 (255)	10 (255)	12 (305)	12 [d] (305)
Minimum Duct Diameter, in. (mm) [a,b] For Flex duct [c]	4 (100)	5 (125)	6 (150)	6 (150)	7 (150)	7 (180)	8 (205)	8 (205)	9 (230)	10 (255)	NP	NP	NP

Footnotes for Table 150.0-H:

a. For noncircular ducts, calculate the diameter as four times the cross-sectional area divided by the perimeter.

b. NP = application of the prescriptive table is not permitted for this scenario.

c. Use of this table for verification of flex duct systems requires flex duct to be fully extended and any flex duct elbows to have a minimum bend radius to duct diameter ratio of 1.0.

d. For this scenario, use of elbows is not permitted.

e. For this scenario, 4 in. (100 mm) oval duct shall be permitted, provided the minor axis of the oval is greater than or equal to 3 in. (75 mm)

f. When a vented range hood utilizes a capture efficiency rating to demonstrate compliance with 150.0(o)1Giiib, a static pressure greater than or equal to 0.25 in. of water at the rating point shall not be required, and the airflow listed in the approved directory corresponding to the compliant capture efficiency rating point shall be applied to Table 150.0-H for determining compliance.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SUBCHAPTER 8

~~LOW-RISE~~SINGLE-FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS - PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES

SUBCHAPTER 8

~~LOW-RISE~~SINGLE-FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS - PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES

SECTION 150.1 – PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES FOR ~~LOW-RISE~~SINGLE-FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

(a) **Basic Requirements.** ~~Low-rise~~ Single-family residential buildings shall meet all of the following:

1. The applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.10.
2. The applicable requirements of Section 150.0 (mandatory features).
3. Either the performance standards or the prescriptive standards set forth in this section for the Climate Zone in which the building is located. Climate zones are shown in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 – Weather/Climate Data.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(a)3: If a single contiguous subdivision or tract falls in more than one Climate Zone, all buildings in the subdivision or tract may be designed to meet the performance or prescriptive standards for the Climate Zone that contains 50 percent or more of the dwelling units.

   NOTE: The Commission periodically updates, publishes, and makes available to interested persons and local enforcement agencies precise descriptions of the Climate Zones, as specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 – Weather/Climate Data.

NOTE: The requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through 150.0(r) apply to newly constructed buildings and Sections 150.2(a) and 150.2(b) specifies changes to the requirements of Sections 150.1(a) through 150.1(c) that apply to additions or alterations.

(b) **Performance Standards.** A building complies with the performance standards if the energy consumption calculated for the Proposed Design Building is no greater than the energy budget calculated for the Standard Design Building using Commission-certified compliance software as specified by the Alternative Calculation Methods Approval Manual.

1. **Newly Constructed Buildings.** The Energy Budget for newly constructed buildings is expressed in terms of the Energy Design Ratings, which ~~is~~ are based on source energy and time-dependent valuation (TDV) energy. The Energy Design Rating 1 (EDR1) is based on source energy. The Energy Design Rating 2 (EDR2) is based on TDV energy and has two components, the Energy Efficiency Design Rating, and the Solar Electric Generation and Demand Flexibility Design Rating. ~~The Solar Electric Generation and Demand Flexibility Design Rating shall be subtracted from the Energy Efficiency Design Rating to determine t~~The Total Energy Design Rating shall account for both the Energy Efficiency Design Rating and the Solar Electric Generation and Demand Flexibility Design Rating. The Proposed Building shall separately comply with the Source Energy Design Rating, Energy Efficiency Design Rating and the Total Energy Design Rating.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(b)1. A community shared solar electric generation system, or other renewable electric generation system, ~~and/~~or community shared battery storage system, which provides dedicated power, utility energy reduction credits, or payments for energy bill reductions, to the permitted building and is approved by the Energy Commission as specified in Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-115, may offset part or all of the solar electric generation system and demand flexibility Energy Design Rating required to comply with the Standards, as calculated according to methods established by the Commission in the Residential ACM Reference Manual.

2. **Additions and Alterations to Existing Buildings.** The Energy Budget for additions and alterations is expressed in terms of TDV energy.

3. **Compliance Demonstration Requirements for Performance Standards**.

   A. **Certificate of Compliance and Application for a Building Permit.** The application for a building permit shall include documentation pursuant to Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 which demonstrates, using an approved calculation method, that the building has been designed so that its Energy Efficiency Design Rating and the total EDR meets or exceeds the Standard design EDR for the applicable Climate Zone.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(b)3A: Multiple Orientation: A permit applicant may demonstrate compliance with the energy budget requirements of Section 150.1(a) and (b) for any orientation of the same building model if the documentation demonstrates that the building model with its proposed designs and features would comply in each of the four cardinal orientations.

B. **Field Verification**. When performance of installed features, materials, components, manufactured devices or systems above the minimum specified in Section 150.1(c) is necessary for the building to comply with Section 150.1(b), or is necessary to achieve a more stringent local ordinance, field verification shall be performed in accordance with the applicable requirements in the following subsections, and the results of the verification(s) shall be documented on applicable Certificates of Installation pursuant to Section 10-103(a)3 and applicable Certificates of Verification pursuant to Section 10-103(a)5.

i. **EER/EER2/SEER/SEER2/CEER/HSPF/HSPF2 Rating.** When performance compliance requires installation of a space conditioning system with a ~~SEER~~ rating that is greater than the minimum ~~SEER~~ rating required by TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~ or specified for the standard design, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in the applicable sections of Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4~~.4.1~~.

ii. **Variable Capacity Heat Pump (VCHP) Compliance Option**. When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system that meets all the requirements of the VCHP compliance option specified in the ACM Reference Manual, the system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.3.~~**EER Rating.** When performance compliance requires installation of a space conditioning system with an EER rating greater than the standard design value for EER, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.~~

iii. **Low Leakage Air Handler.** When performance compliance requires installation of a low leakage air-handling unit, the installed air-handling unit shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.9.

iv. RESERVED~~**HSPF Rating.** When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system with a Heating Seasonal Performance Factor (HSPF) rating that is greater than the minimum HSPF rating required by TABLE 150.1-A or B, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.~~

v. **Heat Pump** - **Rated Heating Capacity.** When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system, the heating capacity values at 47° F and 17° F shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4~~.4.2~~.

vi. **Whole-H~~h~~ouse F~~f~~an**. When performance compliance requires installation of a whole-house fan, the whole- house fan ventilation airflow rate and fan efficacy shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.9.

Commented [AG1]: Formatting

vii. **Central Fan Ventilation Cooling System**. When performance compliance requires installation of a central fan ventilation cooling system, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.4.

viii. **Building Enclosure Air Leakage**. When performance compliance requires a building enclosure leakage rate that is lower than the standard design, the building enclosure shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.

ix. **Quality Insulation Installation (QII).** When performance compliance requires field verification of QII, the building insulation system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5.

(c) **Prescriptive Standards/Component Packages.** Buildings that comply with the prescriptive standards shall be designed, constructed, and equipped to meet all of the requirements for the appropriate Climate Zone shown in TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~. In TABLE 150.1-A~~ and TABLE 150.1-B~~, NA (not allowed) means that feature is not permitted in a particular Climate Zone and NR (no requirement) means that there is no prescriptive requirement for that feature in a particular Climate Zone. Installed components shall meet the following requirements:

1. **Insulation.**

   A. Roof and Ceiling insulation shall be installed in a ventilated attic with an R-value equal to or greater than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~ meeting options ii or iii below.

      i. Option A: RESERVED.

      ii. Option B: A minimum R-value of insulation installed between the roof rafters in contact with the roof deck and an additional layer of ceiling insulation located between the attic and the conditioned space when meeting Section 150.1(c)9A; or

      iii. Option C: A minimum R-value of ceiling insulation located between the attic and the conditioned space when meeting Section 150.1(c)9B.

      NOTE: Low rise residential single--family ~~and multifamily~~ buildings with the ducts and air handler located in the conditioned space, as specified by Section 150.1(c)9B, need only comply with insulation requirements of Option C.

   B. **Walls.**

      i. Framed exterior walls shall be insulated such that the exterior wall has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. The U-factors shown are maximum U-factors for the exterior wall assembly.

      ii. Mass walls above grade and below grade shall be insulated such that the wall has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~, or walls shall be insulated with continuous insulation that has an R-value equal to or greater than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. “Interior” denotes continuous insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall, and “exterior” denotes continuous insulation installed on the outside surface of the wall.

      iii. Other unframed exterior walls, excluding mass walls, shall meet the requirements for framed walls shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

   C. Raised-floors shall be insulated such that the floor assembly has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~, or shall be insulated between wood framing with insulation having an R-value equal to or greater than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

      EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)1C: Raised-floor insulation may be omitted if the foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~, and a vapor retarder is placed over the entire floor of the crawl space, and the vents are fitted with automatically operated louvers, and the requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA4.5.1 are met.

   D. Slab floor perimeter insulation shall be installed with a U-factor equal to or less than or R-value equal to or greater than shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. The minimum depth of concrete-slab floor perimeter insulation shall be 16 inches or the depth of the footing of the building, whichever is less.

      EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)1: The insulation requirements of TABLEs 150.1-A ~~and 150.1-B~~ may also be met by ceiling, roof deck, wall, or floor assemblies that meet the required maximum U-factors using a U-factor calculation method that considers the thermal effects of all elements of the assembly and is approved by the Executive Director.

   E. All buildings shall comply with the Quality Insulation Installation (QII) requirements shown in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. When QII is required, insulation installation shall meet the criteria specified in Reference Appendix RA3.5.

2. **Radiant Barrier.** A radiant barrier required in TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~ shall meet the requirements specified in Section 110.8(j), and shall meet the installation criteria specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA4.

3. **Fenestration.**
   - A. Installed fenestration products, including glazed doors, shall have an area-weighted average U-factor and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) meeting the applicable fenestration value in TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~ and shall be determined in accordance with Sections 110.6(a)2 and 110.6(a)3.

     EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)3A: For each dwelling unit up to 3 square feet of new glazing area installed in doors and up to 3 square feet of new tubular skylights area with dual-pane diffusers shall not be required to meet the U-factor and SHGC requirements of TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

     EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)3A: For each dwelling unit up to 16 square feet of new skylight area with a maximum U-factor of 0.55 and a maximum SHGC of 0.30.

     EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.1(c)3A For fenestration containing chromogenic type glazing:

     - i. The lower-rated labeled U-factor and SHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of solar gain and light transmitted into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity;
     - ii. Chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration; and
     - iii. Area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not chromatic shall not be permitted and shall be determined in accordance with Section 110.6(a).

     EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.1(c)3A: For dwelling units containing unrated site-built fenestration that meets the maximum area restriction, the U-factor and SHGC can be determined in accordance with the Nonresidential Reference Appendix NA6 or use default values in TABLE 110.6-A and TABLE 110.6-B.
   - B. The maximum total fenestration area shall not exceed the percentage of conditioned floor area, CFA, as indicated in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. Total fenestration includes skylights and west-facing glazing.
   - C. The maximum west-facing fenestration area shall not exceed the percentage of conditioned floor area as indicated in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. West-facing fenestration area includes skylights tilted in any direction when the pitch is less than 1:12.
4. **Shading.** Where TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~ requires a Maximum SHGC, the requirements shall be met by one of the following:
   - A. Complying with the required SHGC pursuant to Section 150.1(c)3A; or
   - B. An exterior operable shading louver or other exterior shading device that meets the required SHGC; or
   - C. A combination of Items A and B to achieve the same performance as achieved in Section 150.1(c)3A.
   - D. For south-facing glazing only, optimal overhangs shall be installed so that the south-facing glazing is fully shaded at solar noon on August 21 and substantially exposed to direct sunlight at solar noon on December 21.
   - E. Exterior shading devices must be permanently secured with attachments or fasteners that are not intended for removal.

     EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)4E: Where the California Building Code (CBC) requires emergency egress or where compliance would conflict with Health and Safety regulations.
5. **Doors.** Installed swinging door products separating conditioned space from outside or adjacent unconditioned space, but not including glazed door products, shall have an area-weighted average U-factor no greater than the applicable door value in TABLE 150.1-A ~~or B~~ and shall be determined in accordance with Section 110.6(a)2. Glazed door products are treated as fenestration products in Sections 150.1(c)3 and 150.1(c)4.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)5: Swinging doors between the garage and conditioned space that are required to have fire protection are not required to meet the applicable door value in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

6. **Heating System Type.** Heating system types shall be installed as required in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. For climate zones 3, 4, 13 and 14, the space conditioning system shall be a heat pump, or shall meet the performance compliance requirements of Section 150.1(b)1.

   EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)6: A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kW or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.

7. **Space Heating and Space Cooling.** All space heating and space cooling equipment shall comply with minimum Appliance Efficiency Regulations as specified in Sections 110.0 through 110.2 and meet all applicable requirements of Sections 150.0 and 150.1(c)7A. ~~For climate zones 3, 4, 10, 13 and 14, the space conditioning system shall be a heat pump, or shall meet the performance compliance requirements of Section 150.1(b)1.~~

   A. **Refrigerant Charge**. When refrigerant charge verification or fault indicator display is shown as required by TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~, the system shall comply with either Section 150.1(c)7Ai or 150.1(c)7Aii:

      i. air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted packaged systems, small duct high velocity systems, and mini-split systems, shall comply with subsections a, b and c, unless the system is of a type that cannot be verified using the specified procedures:

         a. Have measurement access holes (MAH) installed according to the specifications in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2.3; and

            EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)7Aia: Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for hole location in Reference Residential Appendix Figure RA3.2-1, shall not be required to provide holes as described in Figure RA3.2-1.

         b. System airflow rate in accordance with subsection I or II shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3. 3 or an approved alternative procedure as specified by Section RA1; and

            I. For small duct high velocity systems the system airflow rate shall be greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton; or

            II. For all other air-cooled air conditioner or air-source heat pump systems the system airflow rate shall be greater than or equal to 350 cfm per ton.

            EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)7Aib: Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply with the minimum airflow rate by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE-150.0-B or 150.0-C as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements of Section 150.0(m)12D for the system air filter device(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 150.0-B and 150.0-C.

         c. The installer shall charge the system according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerant charge shall be verified according to one of the following options, as applicable:

            I. The installer and rater shall perform the standard charge procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2 or an approved alternative procedure as specified by Section RA1; or

            II. The system shall be equipped with a fault indicator display (FID) device that meets the specifications of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. The installer shall verify the refrigerant charge and FID device in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.4.2. The HERS Rater shall verify FID device in accordance with the procedures in Section RA3.4.2; or

            III. The installer shall perform the weigh-in charging procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the Section RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure and Section RA3.3 airflow rate verification procedure or approved alternatives in Section RA1. The HERS Rater shall verify the charge using Sections RA3.2.2 and RA3.3 or approved alternatives in Section RA1.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)7Aic: When the outdoor temperature is less than 55° F and the installer utilizes the weigh-in charging procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 to verify the refrigerant charge, the installer may elect to utilize the HERS Rater verification procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2. If the HERS Rater verification procedure in Section RA3.2.3.2 is used for compliance, the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.1(c)7Aib.

ii. Air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted packaged systems, small duct high velocity systems and mini-split systems, which are of a type that cannot comply with the requirements of Section 150.1(c)7Ai shall comply with subsections a and b, as applicable.

a. The installer shall confirm the refrigerant charge using the weigh-in charging procedure specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1, as verified by a HERS Rater according to the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2; and

b. Systems that utilize forced air ducts shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.1(c)7Aib provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedures in Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure in Section RA1.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)7A: Packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirements in Section 150.1(c)7Aib, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative in Section RA1.

8. **Domestic Water-Heating Systems.** Water-heating systems shall meet the requirements of A, B, C, or shall meet the performance compliance requirements of Section 150.1(b)1~~C~~. For recirculation distribution systems~~ serving individual dwelling unit~~, only Demand Recirculation Systems with manual on/off control as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.9 shall be used:

A. ~~A. For systems serving individual dwelling units, the water heating system shall meet the requirement of i, ii, iii, iv, or v:~~

~~A. i. One or more gas or propane instantaneous water heater with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less and no storage tank.~~

~~B. ii. A single gas or propane storage type water heater with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, rated volume less than or equal to 55 gallons and that meets the requirements of Sections 110.1 and 110.3. The dwelling unit shall have installed fenestration products with a weighted average U-factor no greater than 0.24, and in addition one of the following shall be installed:~~

~~C. a. A compact hot water distribution system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.16; or~~

~~D. b. A drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9.~~

i. ~~A single gas or propane storage type water heater with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, rated volume of more than 55 gallons.~~

ii. A single 240 volt heat pump water heater (HPWH). The storage tank shall be located in the garage or conditioned space. In addition, ~~one of~~meet the following:

i~~a~~. A compact hot water distribution system as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.6 ~~and~~ in climate zone 1 and 16; and

ii ~~a~~A drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9 in climate 16~~; or~~

~~b. For Climate Zones 2 through 15, a photovoltaic system capacity of 0.3 kWdc larger than the requirement specified in Section 150.1(c)14; or~~

~~c. For Climate Zones 1 and 16, a photovoltaic system capacity of 1.1 kWdc larger than the requirement specified in Section 150.1(c)14.~~

B. ~~v.~~ A single 240 volt ~~heat pump water heater~~HPWH that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher. ~~The storage tank shall be located in the garage or conditioned space.~~ In addition, for Climate Zones ~~1 and~~ 16, ~~a photovoltaic system capacity of 0.3 kWdc larger than the requirement specified in Section 150.1(c)14 or a compact hot water distribution system as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.6.~~ a drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9 and the storage tank shall be located in the garage or conditioned space.

C. A solar water-heating system with electric backup meeting the installation criteria specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA4 and with a minimum annual solar savings fraction of 0.7.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)8: For climate zones 3, 4, ~~10,~~ 13 and 14, a gas or propane instantaneous water heater with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less and no storage tank may be installed.

NOTE: The space conditioning system shall be a heat pump as specified in Section 150.1(c)~~7~~6.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)8: An instantaneous electric water heater with point of use distribution as specified in RA4.4.5 may be installed for new dwelling units with a conditioned floor area of 500 square feet or less.~~a junior accessory dwelling unit (JADU).~~

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.1(c)8A and B: A 120V HPWH may be installed in place of a 240V HPWH for new dwelling unit with 1 bedroom or less. ~~B. For systems serving multiple dwelling units, a central water-heating system that includes the following components shall be installed:~~

~~i. Gas or propane water heating system.~~

~~ii. A recirculation system that meets the requirements of Sections 110.3(c)2 and 110.3(c)4, includes two or more separate recirculation loops serving separate dwelling units, and is capable of automatically controlling the recirculation pump operation based on measurement of hot water demand and hot water return temperature.~~

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)8Bii:** Buildings with eight or fewer dwelling units may use a single recirculation loop.~~

~~iii. A solar water-heating system meeting the installation criteria specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA4 and with a minimum solar savings fraction of either a or b:~~

~~a. A minimum solar savings fraction of 0.20 in Climate Zones 1 through 9 or a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.35 in Climate Zones 10 through 16.~~

~~b. A minimum solar savings fraction of 0.15 in Climate Zones 1 through 9 or a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.30 in Climate Zones 10 through 16. In addition, a drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9.~~

~~C. A water-heating system serving multiple dwelling units determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in subsection B.~~

9. **Space Conditioning Distribution Systems.** All space conditioning systems shall meet all applicable requirements of A or B below:

   A. High performance attics. Air handlers or ducts are allowed to be in ventilated attic spaces when the roof and ceiling insulation level meet Option B in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~. Duct insulation levels shall meet the requirements in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

B. Duct and air handlers located in conditioned space. Duct systems and air handlers of HVAC systems shall be located in conditioned space, and confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing to meet the criterion of Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.8. Duct insulation levels shall meet the requirements in TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

NOTE: Gas heating appliances installed in conditioned spaces must meet the combustion air requirements of the California Mechanical Code Chapter 7, as applicable.

10. **Central Fan Integrated Ventilation Systems.** Central forced air system fans used to provide outside air, shall have an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to the maximum W/~~CFM~~ cfm specified in A, ~~or~~ B, or C. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3. Central Fan Integrated Ventilation Systems shall be certified to the Energy Commission as Intermittent Ventilation Systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.4.2.

    A. 0.45 W/~~CFM~~ cfm for gas furnace air-handling units.~~; or~~

    B. 0.58 W/~~CFM~~ cfm for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

    C. 0.62 W/cfm for small duct high velocity air-handling units.

EXCEPTION to Section ~~151.0~~150.1(c)10A: Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

11. **Roofing products.** All roofing products shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8 and the applicable requirements of Subsection A or B:

    A. ~~Low-rise~~Single-family residential buildings with steep-sloped roofs, in Climate Zones 10 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

    B. ~~Low-rise~~Single-family residential buildings with low-sloped roofs; in Climate Zones 13 and 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.63 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75 or a minimum SRI of 75.

    EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)11: Building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are exempt from the minimum requirements for aged solar reflectance and thermal emittance or SRI.

    EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)11: Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft^2 are exempt from the minimum requirements for aged solar reflectance and thermal emittance, or SRI.

12. **Ventilation Cooling**. Single~~-~~family homes shall comply with the Whole-house fan (WHF) requirements shown in TABLE 150.1-A. When a WHF is required, comply with Subsections A. ~~through~~ B. and C. below.~~:~~

    A. Have installed one or more WHFs whose total Airflow ~~CFM~~ cfm is equal to or greater than 1.5 ~~CFM~~cfm/ft^2 of conditioned floor area. Airflow ~~CFM~~ cfm for WHF's shall be determined based on the Airflow listed in the Home Ventilating Institute Certified Products Directory. ~~Energy Commission's database of certified appliances, which is available at ; and~~

    B. Have at least 1 square foot of attic vent free area for each 750 ~~CFM~~ cfm of rated whole-house fan Airflow ~~CFM~~cfm, or if the manufacturer has specified a greater free vent area, the manufacturers' free vent area specifications~~; and~~.

    EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)12B: WHFs that are directly vented to the outside.

    C. Provide homeowners who have WHFs with a one page "How to operate your whole-house fan" informational sheet.

Exception to 150.1(c)12: New dwelling units with a conditioned floor area of 500 square feet or less~~A detached JADU~~ shall not be required to comply with the WHF requirements.

13. **HVAC System Bypass Ducts.** Bypass ducts that deliver conditioned supply air directly to the space conditioning system return duct airflow shall not be used.

14. **Photovoltaic Requirements.** All ~~low-rise~~single-family residential buildings shall have a newly installed photovoltaic (PV) system or newly installed PV modules meeting the minimum qualification requirements ~~as~~ specified in Joint Appendix JA11.~~, with annual electrical output equal to or greater than the dwelling's annual electrical usage as determined by Equation 150.1-C.~~The annual electrical output of the PV system shall be no less than the smaller of a PV system size determined using Equation 150.1-C, or the maximum PV system size that can be installed on the building's Solar Access Roof Area (SARA).

    A. SARA includes the area of the building's roof space capable of structurally supporting a PV system, and the area of all roof space on covered parking areas, carports, and all other newly constructed structures on the site that are compatible with supporting a PV system per Title 24, Part 2, Section 1511.2.

    B. SARA does NOT include:

       i. Any roof area that has less than 70 percent annual solar access. Annual solar access is determined by dividing the total annual solar insolation, accounting for shading obstructions, by the total annual solar insolation if the same areas were unshaded by obstructions. For steep slope roofs only shading from existing permanent natural or manmade obstructions that are external to the dwelling, including but not limited to trees, hills, and adjacent structures, shall be considered for annual solar access calculations. For low slope roofs, all obstructions including those that are external to the dwelling unit, and obstructions that are part of the building design and elevation features shall be considered for the annual solar access calculations.

       ii. Occupied roof areas as specified by CBC Section 503.1.4.

       iii. Roof area that is otherwise not available due to compliance with other building code requirements if confirmed by the Executive Director.

    EQUATION 150.1-C ANNUAL PHOTOVOLTAIC ELECTRICAL OUTPUT

    $kW_{PV} = (CFA \times A)/1000 + ($~~NDwell~~ $N_{DU} \times B)$

    WHERE:

    kW_{PV} = kW_{dc} size of the PV system

    CFA = Conditioned floor area

    ~~NDwell~~N_{DU} = Number of dwelling units

    A = CFA a~~A~~djustment factor from Table 150.1-C

    B = Dwelling unit adjustment factor from Table 150.1-C

    EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)14: ~~No PV is required if the effective annual solar access is restricted to less than 80 contiguous square feet by shading from existing permanent natural or manmade barriers external to the dwelling, including but not limited to trees, hills, and adjacent structures. The effective annual solar access shall be 70 percent or greater of the output of an unshaded PV array on an annual basis.~~ For steep slope roofs, SARA shall not consider roof areas with a northerly azimuth that lies between 300 degrees and 90 degrees from true north. No PV system is required if the SARA is less than 80 contiguous square feet.

    EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)14: ~~In climate zone 15, the PV system size shall be the smaller of a size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or a PV system size required by the Equation 150.1-C, but no less than 1.5 Watt DC per square foot of conditioned floor area.~~No PV system is required when the minimum PV system size specified by section 150.0(c)14 is less than 1.8 kW_{dc}.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.1(c)14: Buildings with enforcement-authority-approved roof designs, where the enforcement authority determines it is not possible for the PV system, including panels, modules and components and supports and attachments to the roof structure, to meet the requirements of the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), Standard 7-16, Chapter 7, Snow Loads.

~~**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.1(c)14:** In all climate zones, for dwelling units with two habitable stories, the PV system size shall be the smaller of a size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or a PV system size required by the Equation 150.1-C, but no less than 1.0 Watt DC per square foot of conditioned floor area~~

~~EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.1(c)14: In all climate zones, for low-rise residential dwellings with three habitable stories and single family dwellings with three or more habitable stories, the PV system size shall be the smaller of a size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or the PV system size required by the Equation 150.1-C, but no less than 0.8 Watt DC per square foot of conditioned floor area.~~

~~EXCEPTION 5 to Section 150.1(c)14: For a dwelling unit plan that is approved by the planning department prior to January 1, 2020 with available solar ready zone between 80 and 200 square feet, the PV system size is limited to the lesser of the size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar accessor the size that is required by the Equation 150.1-C.~~ **EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.1(c)14:** For buildings that are approved by the local planning department prior to January 1, 2020 with mandatory conditions for approval:

a. S~~-s~~hading from roof designs and configurations for steep-sloped roofs, which are required by the mandatory conditions for approval, shall be considered for the annual solar access calculations; and

b. ~~r~~Roof areas that are not allowed by the mandatory conditions for approval ~~t~~o have PVs, ~~, which are required by mandatory conditions of approval, may~~shall not be considered in determining the SARA.

EXCEPTION ~~6~~ 5 to Section 150.1(c)14: PV system sizes ~~from~~ determined using Equation 150.1-C may be reduced by 25 percent if installed in conjunction with a battery storage system. The battery storage system shall meet the qualification requirements specified in Joint Appendix JA12 and have a minimum usable capacity of 7.5 kWh.

~~*Table 150.1-C – CFA and Dwelling Unit Adjustment Factors*~~

~~Climate Zone~~	~~A – CFA~~	~~B – Dwelling Units~~
~~1~~	~~0.793~~	~~1.27~~
~~2~~	~~0.621~~	~~1.22~~
~~3~~	~~0.628~~	~~1.12~~
~~4~~	~~0.586~~	~~1.21~~
~~5~~	~~0.585~~	~~1.06~~
~~6~~	~~0.594~~	~~1.23~~
~~7~~	~~0.572~~	~~1.15~~
~~8~~	~~0.586~~	~~1.37~~
~~9~~	~~0.613~~	~~1.36~~
~~10~~	~~0.627~~	~~1.41~~
~~11~~	~~0.836~~	~~1.44~~
~~12~~	~~0.613~~	~~1.40~~
~~13~~	~~0.894~~	~~1.51~~
~~14~~	~~0.741~~	~~1.26~~
~~15~~	~~1.56~~	~~1.47~~
~~16~~	~~0.59~~	~~1.22~~

TABLE 150.1-A COMPONENT PACKAGE – Single--Family Standard Building Design

Single--Family				**Climate Zone**															
				1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**	**16**
Building Envelope Insulation																			
Building Envelope	**Roofs/Ceilings**	**Option B (meets §**	Below Roof Deck Insulation[1,2] (With Air Space)	NR	NR	NR	R 19	NR	NR	NR	R 19	R 19	R 19	R 19	R 19	R 19	R 19	R 19	R 19
			Ceiling Insulation	R 38	R 38	R 30	R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	REQ	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
		Option C (meets §	Ceiling Insulation	R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
	Walls	**Above Grade**	Framed[3]	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.065	U 0.065	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048	U 0.048
			Mass Wall Interior[4,5]	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.059 R 17
			Mass Wall Exterior[4,5]	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.077 R 13
		Below Grade	Below Grade Interior[6]	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.067 R 15
			Below Grade Exterior[6]	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.053 R 19

TABLE 150.1-A COMPONENT PACKAGE – Single-Family Standard Building Design (continued)

				Climate Zone															
				1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**	**16**
Building Envelope	**Floors**		Slab Perimeter	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	U-0.58 R-7.0
			Raised	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U-0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19	U-0.037 R-19	U-0.037 R-19	U-0.037 R-19	U- 0.037 R-19
			Concrete Raised	U 0.092 R-8.0	U 0.092 R-8.0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.269 R-0	U 0.092 R-8.0	U 0.138 R-4.0	U 0.092 R-8.0	U 0.092 R-8.0	U 0.138 R-4.0	U 0.092 R-8.0
	Quality Insulation Installation (QII)			Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Roofing Product	**Low-Sloped**	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	NR	0.63	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	NR	0.72	NR
		Steep-Sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
	Fenestration		Maximum U-factor	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30
			Maximum SHGC	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	NR
			Maximum Total Area	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
			Maximum West Facing Area	NR	5%	NR	5%	NR	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
	Door		Maximum U-factor	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20

TABLE 150.1-A COMPONENT PACKAGE – Single-~~F~~amily Standard Building Design (continued)

				Climate Zone															
				1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**	**16**
HVAC System	**Space Heating**[9]	Electric-Resistance Allowed		No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
		If gas, AFUE		MIN	MIN	~~MIN~~NA	~~MIN~~NA	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	~~MINNA~~ MIN	MIN	MIN	~~MIN~~NA	~~MIN~~NA	MIN	MIN
		If Heat Pump, HSPF [7] /HSPF2		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
	Space Cooling	SEER/SEER2		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
		Refrigerant Charge Verification or Fault Indicator Display		NR	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
		Whole-house fan[8]		NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	NR
	Central System Air Handlers	Central Fan Integrated Ventilation System Fan Efficacy		REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
	Ducts[10]	Roof/Ceiling Options B	Duct Insulation	R-8	R-8	R- 6	R-8	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8
			§150.1(c)9A	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
		Roof/Ceiling Option C	Duct Insulation	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6
			§150.1(c)9B	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
Water Heating	**All Buildings**			System Shall meet Section 150.1(c)8															

Commented [AG2]: Correction to align with 150.1(c)6

Footnote requirements to TABLE 150.1-A:

1. Install the specified R-value with an air space present between the roofing and the roof deck. Such as standard installation of concrete or clay tile.
2. R-values shown for below roof deck insulation are for wood-frame construction with insulation installed between the framing members. Alternatives including insulation above rafters or above roof deck shall comply with the performance standards.
3. Assembly U-factors for exterior framed walls can be met with cavity insulation alone or with continuous insulation alone, or with both cavity and continuous insulation that results in an assembly U-factor equal to or less than the U-factor shown. Use Reference Joint Appendices JA4 Table 4.3.1, 4.3.1(a), or Table 4.3.4 to determine alternative insulation products to be less than or equal to the required maximum U-factor.
4. Mass wall has a heat capacity greater than or equal to 7.0 Btu/h-ft^2. “
5. “Interior” denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall. “Exterior” denotes insulation installed on the exterior surface of the wall.
6. Below grade “interior” denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall, and below grade “exterior” denotes insulation installed on the outside surface of the wall.
7. HSPF means "heating seasonal performance factor."
8. When whole-house fans are required (REQ), only those whole-house fans that are listed in the Home Ventilating Institute Certified Products Directory~~Appliance Efficiency Directory~~ may be installed. Compliance requires installation of one or more WHFs whose total airflow ~~CFM~~ cfm is capable of meeting or exceeding a minimum 1.5 cfm/square foot of conditioned floor area as specified by Section 150.1(c)12.
9. A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kilowatts or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.
10. For duct and air handler location: REQ denotes location in conditioned space. When the table indicates ducts and air handlers are in conditioned space, a HERS verification is required as specified by Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.

TABLE 150.1-B RESERVED ~~COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design~~

~~**Multifamily**~~				~~Climate Zone~~															
				~~1~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	4	~~5~~	~~6~~	~~7~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
~~**Building Envelope Insulation**~~																			
~~**Building Envelope Insulation**~~	~~**Roofs/Ceilings**~~	**Option B (meets §**	Below Roof Deck Insulation [1,2] (With Air Space)	NR	NR	NR	R19	NR	NR	NR	R19	R19	R13	R19	R19	R19	R19	R19	R13
			Ceiling Insulation	R 38	R 38	R 30	R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	REQ	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
		Option C (meets §	Ceiling Insulation	R38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
~~**Building Envelope Insulation**~~	~~**Walls**~~	Above Grade	Framed [3]	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.065	U 0.065	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051	U 0.051
			Mass Wall Interior [4,5]	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.059 R 17
			Mass Wall Exterior [5]	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.077 R 13
		Below Grade[6]	Below Grade Interior	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.067 R 15
			Below Grade Exterior	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.053 R 19

~~TABLE 150.1-B COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design (continued)~~

Building Envelope	Floors		Slab Perimeter	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	U 0.58 R 7.0
			Raised	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19
			Concrete Raised	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0
	Quality Insulation Installation (QII)			Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Roofing Products	Low- Sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	NR	0.63	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	NR	0.75	NR
		Steep - Sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
	Fenestration	Maximum U-factor		0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30
		Maximum SHGC		NR	0.23	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	NR
		Maximum Total Area		20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
		Maximum West Facing Area		NR	5%	NR	5%	NR	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	NR
	Door	Maximum U-factor		0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.2	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.2	0.20

~~TABLE 150.1-B COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design (continued)~~

				Climate Zone															
				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
~~HVAC SYSTEM~~	~~Space Heating~~[8]	**Electric-Resistance Allowed**		No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
		~~**If gas, AFUE**~~		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
		~~**If Heat Pump, HSPF**~~[7]		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
	Space ~~cooling~~	**SEER**		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
		Refrigerant Charge Verification or Fault Indicator Display		NR	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
	~~Central System Air Handlers~~	**Central Fan Integrated Ventilation System Fan Efficacy**		REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
	~~Ducts~~[9]	~~Roof/Ceiling~~	Duct Insulation	R-8	R-8	R- 6	R-8	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8
			§150.1(c)9A	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
		~~Roof/Ceiling~~ Option C	Duct Insulation	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6
			§150.1(c)9B	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
~~Water Heating~~	**All Buildings**			System Shall meet Section 150.1(c)8															

~~Footnote requirements to TABLE 150.1-B:~~

1. ~~Install the specified R-value with an air space present between the roofing and the roof deck. Such as standard installation of concrete or clay tile.~~
2. ~~R-values shown for below roof deck insulation are for wood-frame construction with insulation installed between the framing members. Alternatives including insulation above rafters or above roof deck shall comply with the performance standards.~~
3. ~~Assembly U-factors for exterior framed walls can be met with cavity insulation alone or with continuous insulation alone, or with both cavity and continuous insulation that results in an assembly U-factor equal to or less than the U-factor shown. Use Reference Joint Appendices JA4 Table 4.3.1, 4.3.1(a), or Table 4.3.4 to determine alternative insulation products to be less than or equal to the required maximum U-factor.~~
4. ~~Mass wall has a heat capacity greater than or equal to 7.0 Btu/h-ft^2.~~
5. ~~"Interior" denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall. "Exterior" denotes insulation installed on the exterior surface of the wall.~~
6. ~~Below grade "interior" denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall, and below grade "exterior" denotes insulation installed on the outside surface of the wall.~~
7. ~~HSPF means "heating seasonal performance factor."~~
8. ~~A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kilowatts or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.~~
9. ~~For duct and air-handler location: REQ denotes location in conditioned space. When the table indicates ducts and air handlers are in conditioned space, a HERS verification is required as specified by Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.~~

Table 150.1-C – CFA and Dwelling Unit Adjustment Factors

Climate Zone	A - CFA	B - Dwelling Unit
1	0.793	1.27
2	0.621	1.22
3	0.628	1.12
4	0.586	1.21
5	0.585	1.06
6	0.594	1.23
7	0.572	1.15
8	0.586	1.37
9	0.613	1.36
10	0.627	1.41
11	0.836	1.44
12	0.613	1.40
13	0.894	1.51
14	0.741	1.26

15	1.56	1.47
16	0.59	1.22

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402, 25402.1, and 25605, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, 25605, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

SUBCHAPTER 9

~~LOW-RISE~~ SINGLE-FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS - ADDITIONS AND ALTERATIONS TO EXISTING ~~LOW-RISE~~ RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

SECTION 150.2 – ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS FOR ADDITIONS AND ALTERATIONS TO EXISTING ~~LOW-RISE~~SINGLE-FAMILY RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

(a) **Additions.** Additions to existing ~~low-rise~~single-family residential buildings shall meet the requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Sections 150.0(a) through (n), (p), (q), (t) through (v), and either Section 150.2(a)1 or 2.

Commented [AG1]: Recommend include electric-ready requirements for space heating, cooking, and clothes drying for additions.

~~**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(a):** Additions 1,000 square feet or less are exempt from the requirements to provide dwelling unit mechanical ventilation airflow as specified by Section 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F, however all other applicable requirements specified by Section 150.0(o) shall be met by the addition.~~

EXCEPTION 1~~2~~ to Section 150.2(a): Additions of 300 square feet or less are exempt from the roofing requirements of Section 150.1(c)11.

EXCEPTION 2~~3~~ to Section 150.2(a): Existing inaccessible piping shall not require insulation as defined under Section 150.0(j)1~~2Aiii~~.

EXCEPTION 3~~4~~ to Section 150.2(a): Space-Conditioning System. When heating or cooling will be extended to an addition from the existing system(s), the existing heating and cooling equipment need not comply with Part 6. The heating system capacity must be adequate to meet the minimum requirements of CBC Section 1204.1.

EXCEPTION 4~~5~~ to Section 150.2(a): Space-Conditioning System Ducts. When any length of ducts are extended from an existing duct system to serve the addition, the existing duct system and the extended ducts shall meet the applicable requirements specified in Section 150.2(b)1Di and 150.2(b)1Dii.~~.~~

EXCEPTION 5~~6~~ to Section 150.2(a): Additions 1,000 square feet or less are exempt from the Ventilation Cooling requirements of Section 150.1(c)12.

EXCEPTION 6~~7~~ to Section 150.2(a): Photovoltaic systems, as specified in Section 150.1(c)14, are not required for additions.

EXCEPTION 7 to Section 150.2(a): Space Heating System. New or replacement space heating systems serving an addition may be a heat pump or gas heating system.

1. **Prescriptive approach.** Additions to existing buildings shall meet the following additional requirements:
    A. Additions that are greater than 700 square feet shall meet the requirements of Section 150.1(c), with the following modifications:
        i. Extensions of existing wood-framed walls may retain the dimensions of the existing walls and shall install cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing.
        ii. The maximum allowed fenestration area shall be the greater of 175 square feet or 20 percent of the addition floor area, and the maximum allowed west-facing fenestration area shall be the greater of 70 square feet or the requirements of Section 150.1(c).

iii. When existing siding of a wood-framed wall is not being removed or replaced, cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing shall be installed and continuous insulation is not required.

iv. Additions that consist of the conversion of existing spaces from unconditioned to conditioned space shall not be required to perform the following as part of QII:

   a. Existing window and door headers shall not be required to be insulated.

   b. Air sealing shall not be required when the existing air barrier is not being removed or replaced.

B. Additions that are 700 square feet or less shall meet the requirements of Section 150.1(c), with the following modifications:

i. ~~Roof and Ceiling insulation in an attic shall be insulated to R-38 in climate zones 1 and 11-16 or R-30 in climate zones 2-10.~~Roof and ceiling insulation in a ventilated attic shall meet one of the following requirements:

   a. In Climate Zones 1, 2, 4, and 8 through 16, achieve an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding 0.025. In wood framed assemblies, compliance with U-factors may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of R-38 or greater.

   b. In Climate Zones 3, and 5 through 7, achieve an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding 0.031. In wood framed assemblies, compliance with U-factors may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of R-30 or greater.

ii. Radiant barriers shall be installed in climate zones 2-15.

iii. Extensions of existing wood-framed walls may retain the dimensions of the existing walls and shall install cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2×4 framing and R-21 in a 2×6 framing.

iv. In Climate Zones 2, 4 and 6-15; the maximum allowed west-facing fenestration area shall not be greater than 60 square feet; and shall also comply with either a or b below:

   a. For additions that are 700 square feet or less but greater than 400 square feet, the maximum allowed fenestration area limit is the greater of 120 square feet or 25 percent of the conditioned floor area of the addition; or

   b. For additions that are 400 square feet or less, the maximum allowed fenestration area is the greater of 75 square feet or 30 percent of the conditioned floor area of the addition.

v. Quality Insulation Installation (QII) requirements of Section 150.1(c)1E do not apply.

vi. When existing siding of a wood-framed wall is not being removed or replaced, cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2×4 framing and R-21 in a 2×6 framing shall be installed and continuous insulation is not required.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(a)1B: Insulation in an enclosed rafter ceiling shall meet the requirements of Section 150.0.

C. **Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality**. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with Section 150.0(o) subject to the requirements specified in subsections i and ii below.

i. **Whole-dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**.

   a. Dwelling units that meet the conditions in subsections 1, or 2 below shall not be required to comply with the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F.

      1. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by less than or equal to 1000 square feet.

      2. Junior Accessory Dwelling Units (JADU) that are additions to an existing building.

b. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by more than 1,000 square feet shall have mechanical ventilation airflow in accordance with Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the entire dwelling unit comprised of the existing dwelling unit conditioned floor area plus the addition conditioned floor area.

c. ~~ii.~~ New dwelling units that are additions to an existing building shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided in accordance with Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the new dwelling unit.

ii. **Local Mechanical Exhaust**. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with all applicable requirements specified in 150.0(o)1G and 150.0(o)2.

D. **Water Heater**. When a second water heater is installed as part of the addition, one of the following types of water heaters shall be installed:

i. A ~~water-heating system that meets the requirements of Section 150.1(c)8;~~single heat pump water heater. The storage tank shall not be located outdoors and shall be placed on an incompressible, rigid insulated surface with a minimum thermal resistance of R-10. The water heater shall be installed with a communication interface that meets either the requirements of 110.12(a) or has a ANSI/CTA-2045-B communication port; or

ii. A single heat pump water heater that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher; or

iii. A gas or propane instantaneous water heater with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less and no storage tank; or

iv. For addition that are 500 square feet or less, an instantaneous electric water heater with point of use distribution as specified in RA4.4.5; or

v~~ii~~. A water-heating system determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item i, ii, iii, or iv.~~i.~~

2. **Performance approach.** Performance calculations shall meet the requirements of Section 150.1(a) through (c), pursuant to the applicable requirements in Items A, B, and C below.

A. **For additions alone.** The addition complies if the addition alone meets the energy budgets as specified in Section 150.1(b).

B. **Existing plus alteration plus addition.** The standard design for existing plus alteration plus addition energy use is the combination of the existing building's unaltered components to remain; existing building altered components that are the more efficient, in TDV energy, of either the existing conditions or the requirements of Section 150.2(b)2; plus the proposed addition's energy use meeting the requirements of Section 150.2(a)1. The proposed design energy use is the combination of the existing building's unaltered components to remain and the altered components' energy features, plus the proposed energy features of the addition.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(a)2B: Existing structures with a minimum R-11 insulation in framed walls showing compliance with Section 150.2(a)2 are exempt from showing compliance with Section 150.0(c).

C. **Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality**. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with Section 150.0(o) subject to the requirements specified in subsections i, ii below.

i. **Whole-dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**.

a. Dwelling units that meet the conditions in subsections 1, or 2 below shall not be required to comply with the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F.

1. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by less than or equal to 1000 square feet.

2. Junior Accessory Dwelling Units (JADU) that are additions to an existing building.

~~i~~b. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by more than 1,000 square feet shall have mechanical ventilation airflow in accordance with Section 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the entire dwelling unit comprised of the existing dwelling unit conditioned floor area plus the addition conditioned floor area.

~~ii~~c. New dwelling units that are additions to an existing building shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided in accordance with Section 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the new dwelling unit.

ii. **Local Mechanical Exhaust** . Additions to existing buildings shall comply with all applicable requirements specified in 150.0(o)1G and 150.0(o)2.

(b) **Alterations.** Alterations to existing ~~low-rise~~single-family residential buildings or alterations in conjunction with a change in building occupancy to a ~~low-rise~~ single-family residential occupancy shall meet either Item 1 or 2 below.

1. **Prescriptive approach.** The altered component and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9 and all applicable requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through (l), 150.0(m)1 through 150.0 (m)10, and 150.0(~~o~~p) through (q); and

A. **Added Fenestration**. Alterations that add vertical fenestration and skylight area shall meet the total fenestration area and west facing fenestration area, U-factor, and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient requirements of Section 150.1(c) and TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1A: Alterations that add fenestration area of up to 75 square feet shall not be required to meet the total fenestration area and west-facing fenestration area requirements of Sections 150.1(c)3B and C.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1A: Alterations that add up to 16 square feet of new skylight area with a maximum U-factor of 0.55 and a maximum SHGC of 0.30 area shall not be required to meet the total fenestration area and west-facing fenestration area requirements of Sections 150.1(c)3B and C.

B. **Replacement Fenestration.** New manufactured fenestration products installed to replace existing fenestration products of the same total area shall meet the U-factor and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient requirements of Sections 150.1(c)3A, and 150.1(c)4.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1B: Replacement of vertical fenestration no greater than 75 square feet with a U-factor no greater than 0.40 in Climate Zones 1-16, and a SHGC value no greater than 0.35 in Climate Zones 2, 4, and 6-15.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1B: Replaced skylights must meet a U-factor no greater than 0.55, and a SHGC value no greater than 0.30.

NOTE: Glass replaced in an existing sash and frame or sashes replaced in an existing frame are considered repairs, provided that the replacement is at least equivalent to the original in performance.

C. **Entirely New or Complete Replacement Space-Conditioning Systems** installed as part of an alteration, shall include all the system heating or cooling equipment, including but not limited to: condensing unit~~ and~~, cooling or heating coil, and air handler for split systems; or complete replacement of a packaged unit; plus entirely new or replacement duct system (Section 150.2(b)1Diia)~~; plus a new or replacement air handler~~. Entirely new or complete replacement space-conditioning systems shall~~:~~

~~i.~~ ~~M~~ meet the requirements of Sections 150.0(h), 150.0(i), 150.0(j)1~~2~~, 150.0(j)2~~3~~, 150.0(m)1 through 150.0(m)10; 150.0(m)12; 150.0(m)13~~, 150.1(c)6~~, 150.1(c)7,~~ and 150.1(c)10,~~ 150.2(b)1G, and TABLE 150.2-A.~~; and~~

~~ii. Be limited to natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, or the existing fuel type.~~

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Cii:** When the fuel type of the replaced heating system was natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas, the new or complete replacement space-conditioning system may be a heat pump.~~

D. **Altered Duct Systems - Duct Sealing and Insulation**: In all Climate Zones, when more than ~~40~~ 25 feet of new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts are installed, the ducts shall comply with the applicablerequirements of subsections i and ii below. Additionally, when altered ducts, air-handling units, cooling or heating coils, or plenums are located in garage spaces, the system shall comply with subsection 150.2(b)1Diic regardless of the length of any new or replacement space-conditioning ducts installed in the garage space.

Commented [AG2]: Additions & Alterations

i. New ducts located in unconditioned space shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 150.0(m)1 through 150.0(m)10~~1~~, and the duct insulation requirements of TABLE 150.2-A, and

TABLE 150.2-A DUCT INSULATION R-VALUE

Climate Zone	~~1 through 10, 12&13~~3, 5 through 7	~~11, 14 through 16~~1, 2, 4, 8 through 16
Duct R-Value	R-6	R-8

ii. The altered duct system, regardless of location, shall be sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in ~~the~~ Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1, utilizing the leakage compliance criteria specified in Subsection a or b below.

a. **Entirely New or Complete Replacement Duct System.** If the new ducts form an entirely new or complete replacement duct system directly connected to the air handler, the duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:

I. For single~~-~~family dwellings, the measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 5 percent of the system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1.

~~II. For multifamily dwellings, regardless of duct system location,~~

Commented [AG3]: MF Restructuring

~~A. The total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 12 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1, or~~

~~B. The duct system leakage to outside shall not exceed 6 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4.~~

Entirely new or complete replacement duct systems installed as part of an alteration ~~shall be~~is constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the dwelling unit's existing duct system, including but not limited to registers, grilles, boots, air handler, coil, plenums, duct material; if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

Entirely new or complete replacement duct systems shall also conform to the requirements of Sections 150.0(m)12 and 150.0(m)13. If the air handler and ducts are located within a vented attic, the requirements of Section 150.2(b)1J shall also be met.

b. **Extension of an Existing Duct System**. If the new ducts are an extension of an existing duct system serving single-~~-~~family ~~or multifamily~~ dwellings, the combined new and existing duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:

Commented [AG4]: MF Restructuring

I. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than ~~15~~ 10 percent of ~~nominal~~ system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or

II. The measured duct leakage to outside shall be equal to or less than ~~10~~ 7 percent of ~~nominal~~ system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4; or

III. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of either Section 150.2(b)1DiibI, or 150.2(b)1DiibII, then all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Diib: Duct Sealing. Existing duct systems that are extended, which are constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

c. **Altered Ducts and Duct System Components in Garage Spaces.** When new or replacement space-conditioning ducts, air-handling units, cooling or heating coils, or plenums are located in a garage space, compliance with either I or II below is required.

I. The measured system duct leakage shall be less than or equal to 6 percent of system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1, or

II. All accessible leaks located in the garage space shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

E. **Altered S~~s~~pace-C~~c~~onditioning S~~s~~ystem - D~~d~~uct S~~s~~ealing.** In all Climate Zones, when a space-conditioning system serving a single- family ~~or multifamily~~ dwelling is altered by the installation or replacement of space-conditioning system equipment, including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit of a split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil; the duct system that is connected to the altered space-conditioning system equipment shall be sealed, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1 and the leakagecompliance criteria specified in subsection i, ii, or iii below. Additionally, when altered ducts, air- handling units, cooling or heating coils, or plenums are located in garage spaces, the system shall comply with Section 150.2(b)1Diic regardless of the length of any new or replacement space- conditioning ducts installed in the garage space.

Commented [AG5]: MF Restructuring

i. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than ~~15~~ 10 percent of system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or

ii. The measured duct leakage to outside shall be equal to or less than ~~10~~ 7 percent of system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4; or

iii. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of either Section 150.2(b)1Ei or Section 150.2(b)1Eii, then, all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.5.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1E: Duct sealing. Duct systems that are documented to have been previously sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1E: Duct sealing. Duct systems with less than 40 linear feet as determined by visual inspection.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1E: Duct sealing. Existing duct systems constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

F. **Altered S~~s~~pace-C~~c~~onditioning S~~s~~ystem - M~~m~~echanical C~~c~~ooling.** When a space-conditioning system is an airconditioner or heat pump that is altered by the installation or replacement of refrigerant-containing system components such as the compressor, condensing coil, evaporator coil, refrigerant metering device or refrigerant piping, the altered system shall comply with the following requirements:

i. All thermostats associated with the system shall be replaced with setback thermostats meeting the requirements of Section 110.2(c).

ii. In Climate Zones 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15, air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted package systems, small duct high velocity air systems, and minisplit systems, shall comply with subsections a and b, unless the system is of a type that cannot be verified using the specified procedures. Systems that cannot comply with the requirements of 150.2(b)1Fii shall comply with 150.2(b)1Fiii.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Fii: Entirely new or complete replacement packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.2(b)1Fiia, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in RA3.3 or an approved alternative in RA1.

a. Minimum system airflow rate shall comply with the applicable subsection I or II below as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure as specified in Section RA1.

I. Small duct high velocity systems shall demonstrate a minimum system airflow rate greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity; or

II. All other air-cooled air conditioner or air-source heat pump systems shall demonstrate a minimum system airflow rate greater than or equal to 300 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity; and

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Fiia: Systems unable to comply with the minimum airflow rate requirement shall demonstrate compliance using the procedures in Section RA3.3.3.1.5; and the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1Fiia: Entirely new or complete replacement space conditioning systems, as specified by section 150.2(b)1C, without zoning dampers may comply with the minimum airflow rate by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE-150.0-B or 150.0-C as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements of Section 150.0(m)12C for the system air filter device(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 150.0-B and 150.0-C.

b. The installer shall charge the system according to manufacturer’s specifications. Refrigerant charge shall be verified according to one of the following options, as applicable.

I. The installer and rater shall perform the standard charge verification procedure as specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2, or an approved alternative procedure as specified in Section RA1; or

II. The system shall be equipped with a fault indicator display (FID) device that meets the specifications of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. The installer shall verify the refrigerant charge and FID device in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.4.2. The HERS Rater shall verify FID device in accordance with the procedures in Section RA3.4.2; or

III. The installer shall perform the weigh-in charging procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure and RA3.3 airflow rate verification procedure or approved alternatives in RA1. The HERS Rater shall verify the charge using RA3.2.2 and RA3.3 or approved alternatives in RA1.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Fiib: When the outdoor temperature is less than 55° F and the installer utilizes the weigh-in charging procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1to demonstrate compliance, the installer may elect to utilize the HERS Rater verification procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2. If the HERS Rater verification procedure in Section RA3.2.3.2 is used for compliance, the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12. Ducted systems shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirements in Section 150.2(b)1Fiia.

iii. In climate Zones 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15, air-cooled air conditioners or air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted package systems, small duct high velocity, and minisplit systems, which are of a type that cannot comply with the requirements of 150.2(b)1Fiib shall comply with subsections a and b, as applicable.

a. The installer shall confirm the refrigerant charge using the weigh-in charging procedure specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1, as verified by a HERS Rater according to the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.2.3.2; and

b. Systems that utilize forced air ducts shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.2(b)1Fiia provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedures in Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure in Section RA1.

EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Fiii: Entirely new or complete replacement packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.2(b)1Fiiib, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative in Section RA1.

G. **Altered Space~~-Conditioning~~ Heating System.** Altered or r~~R~~eplacement space~~-conditioning~~ heating systems shall not use electric resistance as the primary heat source~~be limited to natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, or the existing fuel type.comply with Section 150.1(c)6~~.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1G: Non-ducted electric resistance space heating systems, if the existing space heating system is electric resistance.~~When the fuel type of the replaced heating system was natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas, the replacement space-conditioning system may be a heat pump~~

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1G: Ducted electric resistance space heating systems, if the existing space heating system is electric resistance and a ducted space cooling system is not being replaced or installed~~if the electric resistance heating system is the only portion of the building being replaced~~.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1G: Electric resistance space heating systems, if the existing space heating system is electric resistance and the building is located in Climate Zones 7 or 15.

H. **Water-Heating System**. Altered or replacement service water-heating systems or components shall meet the applicable requirements below:

i. **Pipe Insulation.** For newly installed and existing accessible piping, the insulation requirements of Section 150.0(j)1~~2~~ shall be met. ~~For existing accessible piping the applicable requirements of Section 150.0(j)2Ai and iii shall be met.~~

Commented [AG6]: Grammar

ii. **Distribution System.** For recirculation distribution systems serving individual dwelling units, only Demand Recirculation Systems with manual on/off control as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.9 shall be installed.

iii. **Water heating system.** The water heating system shall meet one of the following:

a. A natural gas or propane water-heating system; or

b. ~~For Climate Zones 1 through 15, a~~A single heat pump water heater. The storage tank shall not be located outdoors and be placed on an incompressible, rigid insulated surface with a minimum thermal resistance of R-10. The water heater shall be installed with a communication interface that meets either the requirements of 110.12(a) or has an ANSI/CTA-2045-~~A~~B communication port; or

Commented [AG7]: Grammar

c. ~~For Climate Zones 1 through 15, a~~A single heat pump water heater that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher~~. The storage tank shall not be located outdoors~~; or

d. If ~~no natural gas is connected to the existing water heater location~~the existing water heater is an electric resistance water heater, a consumer electric water heater; or

e. A water-heating system determined by the ~~e~~Executive ~~d~~Director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item a above; or if no natural gas is connected to the existing water heater location, a water-heating system determined by the executive director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item d above.

I. **Roofs.** Replacements of the exterior surface of existing roofs, including adding a new surface layer on top of the existing exterior surface, shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8 and the applicable requirements of Subsections i and ii where more than 50 percent of the roof is being replaced.

i. **~~Low-rise residential buildings with~~ Steep-sloped roofs.** Steep-sloped roofs shall meet the following~~.~~:

New roofing products in Climate Zones ~~10~~4 and 8 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Ii: The following shall be considered equivalent to Subsection i:

~~a. Air-space of 1.0 inch (25 mm) is provided between the top of the roof deck to the bottom of the roofing product; or~~

~~b. The installed roofing product has a profile ratio of rise to width of 1 to 5 for 50 percent or greater of the width of the roofing product; or~~

~~c. Existing ducts in the attic are insulated and sealed according to Section 150.1(c)9; or~~

~~d~~a. Buildings with ceiling assemblies with a U-factor lower than or equal to 0.025 or that are insulated with at least R-38 ceiling insulation; or

~~e~~b. Buildings with a radiant barrier in the attic, where the radiant barrier is not installed directly above spaced sheathing, meeting the requirements of Section 150.1(c)2; or

~~f~~c. In Climate Zones 2, 4, 9, 10, 12 and 14, buildings that have no ducts in the attic; or

~~g~~d. ~~In Climate Zones 10-15,~~Buildings with R-2 or greater continuous insulation above or below the roof deck.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1Ii: Roof area covered by building integrated photovoltaic panels or building integrated solar thermal panels are not required to meet minimum requirements for aged solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1Ii: Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft^2 are exempt from minimum requirements for aged solar reflectance and thermal emittance, or SRI.

ii. **Low-sloped roofs.** Low-sloped roofs shall meet the following~~.~~:

a. New roofing products in Climate Zones ~~13~~4, and 6 through 15 shall have an ~~3-year~~ aged solar reflectance equal or greater than 0.63 and a thermal emittance equal or greater than 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 75.

~~**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Iii:** Buildings with no ducts in the attic.~~

EXCEPTION ~~2~~1 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiia: The aged solar reflectance can be met by using insulation at the roof deck specified in TABLE 150.2-B.

TABLE 150.2-B AGED SOLAR REFLECTANCE INSULATION TRADE OFF TABLE

Minimum Aged Solar Reflectance	**Roof Deck Continuous Insulation R-value (Climate Zones 6-7)**	**Roof Deck Continuous Insulation R-value (Climate Zones ~~2,~~ 4, & 8-15)**
0.60	2	16
0.55	4	18
0.50	6	20
0.45	8	22
No Requirement	10	24

Commented [AG8]: Additions/Alterations

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiia: Roof area covered by building integrated photovoltaic panels or building integrated solar thermal panels are not required to meet the minimum requirements for aged solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiia: Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft^2 are exempt from the minimum requirements for aged solar reflectance and thermal emittance, or SRI.

b. Roofs shall be insulated to the levels specified in Table 150.2-C.

TABLE 150.2-C INSULATION REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF ALTERATIONS

Climate Zone	**Continuous Insulation R-value**	**Roof Assembly U-factor**
3, 5-7	NR	NR
1, 2, 4, 8-16	R-14	0.039

EXCEPTION~~S~~ 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiib:

Existing roofs with R-10 or greater continuous insulation above or below the roof deck; or

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiib: Existing roofs with an assembly U-factor of 0.056 or less or that are insulated with at least R-19 insulation between the roof rafters and in contact with the roof deck in Climate Zones 1, 2, 4, and 8 through 10; or

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiib: The continuous insulation requirements of Table 150.2-C may be reduced to R-4 where the following conditions are met:

i. Mechanical equipment is located on the roof and will not be temporarily disconnected and lifted as part of the roof replacement and the addition of insulation required by Table 150.2-C would reduce the height from the roof surface to the top of the base flashing to less than that set forth in the manufacturer's installation instructions as per the California Residential Code Section R900; or

ii. Replaced roofing abuts sidewall or parapet walls and the addition of insulation required by Table 150.2-C would reduce the height from the roof surface to the top of the base flashing to less than that set forth in manufacturer's installation instructions as per California Residential Code Section R900, provided that the following conditions apply:

    1. The sidewall or parapet walls are finished with an exterior cladding material other than the roof covering membrane material; and

    2. The sidewall or parapet walls have exterior cladding material that must be removed to install the new roof covering membrane to maintain the minimum base flashing height; and

    3. The ratio of the replaced roof area to the linear dimension of affected sidewall or parapet walls is less than 25 square feet per linear foot; or

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.2(b)1Iiib: The continuous insulation requirements per Table 150.2-C may be reduced where increasing the thickness of above deck insulation would reduce the flashing around an existing exterior wall opening below what is permitted by the fenestration or door manufacturer's installation instructions, or registered design professionals approved flashing design, as per the California Residential Code Section R703.4, or by California Residential Code Section R905.2.8.3.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 150.2(b)1Biib: Tapered insulation with thermal resistance less than prescribed at the drains and other low points may be used provided that the thickness of insulation is increased at the high points of the roof so that the average thermal resistance equals or exceeds the required value.

J. **Ceiling.** Vented attics shall meet the following:

i. In Climate Zones 1 through 4, 6, and 8 through 16 insulation shall be installed to achieve a weighted U-factor of 0.020 or insulation installed at the ceiling level shall result in an insulated thermal resistance of R-49 or greater for the insulation alone; and

EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Ji: In Climate Zones 1, 3, and 6, dwelling units with at least R-19 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level~~ with third party verification of existing conditions~~.

ii. In Climate Zones 2, 4, and 8 through 16 air seal all accessible areas of the ceiling plane between the attic and the conditioned space in accordance with Section 110.7; and

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Jii: Dwelling units with at least R-19 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1Jii: Dwelling units with atmospherically vented space heating or water heating combustion appliances located inside the pressure boundary of the dwelling unit.

iii. In Climate Zones 1 through 4 and 8 through 16 recessed downlight luminaires in the ceiling shall be covered with insulation to the same depth as the rest of the ceiling. Luminaires not rated for insulation contact must be replaced or retrofitted with a fire-proof cover that allows for insulation to be installed directly over the cover; and

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Jiii: In Climate Zones 1 through 4 and 8 through 10, dwelling units with at least R-19 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level ~~with third party verification of existing conditions~~.

iv. Attic ventilation shall comply with the California Building Code requirements.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1J: Dwelling units with at least R-38 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1J: Dwelling units where the alteration would directly cause the disturbance of asbestos.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1J: Dwelling units with knob and tube wiring located in the vented attic.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.2(b)1J: Where the accessible space in the attic is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire accessible space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 806.3 of Title 24, Part 2.5.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 150.2(b)1J: Where the attic space above the altered dwelling unit is shared with other dwelling units and the requirements of Section 150.2(b)1J are not triggered for the other dwelling units.

K. **Lighting**. The altered lighting system shall meet the lighting requirements of Section 150.0(k). The altered luminaires shall meet the luminaire efficacy requirements of Section 150.0(k) and TABLE 150.0-A. Where existing screw base sockets are present in ceiling-recessed luminaires, removal of these sockets is not required provided that new JA8 compliant trim kits or lamps designed for use with recessed downlights or luminaires are installed.

L. **Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality - Entirely New or Complete Replacement Ventilation Systems.** Entirely new or complete replacement ventilation systems shall comply with all applicable requirements in Section 150.0(o). An ~~E~~entirely new or complete replacement ventilation system~~s shall~~ includes a new ventilation fan component and an entirely new duct system. An entirely new or complete replacement duct system ~~shall be~~is constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the dwelling unit's existing duct system, including but not limited to registers, grilles, boots, air filtration devices, and duct material, if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

M. **Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality - Altered Ventilation Systems**. Altered ventilation system components or newly installed ventilation equipment serving the alteration shall comply with Section 150.0(o) as applicable subject to the requirements specified in subsections i and ii below.

i. **Whole-dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**.

a. **Whole-dwelling unit airflow**. If the whole-dwelling ventilation fan is altered or replaced, then one of the following subsections 1 or 2 shall be used for compliance as applicable.

1. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to comply with the whole-dwelling unit airflow requirements in 150.0(o) shall meet or exceed the whole-dwelling unit mechanical ventilation airflow specified in Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.

2. Dwellings that were not required by a previous building permit to have a whole-dwelling unit ventilation system shall not be required to comply with the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F.

b. **Replacement Ventilation Fans.** Whole-dwelling unit replacement ventilation fans shall be rated for airflow and sound in accordance with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 7.1 and 7.2. Additionally, when conformance to a specified whole-dwelling unit airflow rate is required for compliance, the replacement fans shall be rated at no less than the airflow rate required for compliance.

c. **Air Filters**. If the air filtration device for a whole-dwelling unit ventilation system is altered or replaced, then one of the following subsections 1 or 2 shall be used for compliance as applicable.

1. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to comply with the ventilation system air filtration requirements in 150.0(m)12 shall comply with the air filtration requirements in 150.0(m)12.
2. Dwellings that were not required by a previous building permit to comply with the ventilation system air filtration requirements in 150.0(m)12 shall not be required to comply with the air filtration requirements specified in Section 150.0(m)12.

ii. **Local Mechanical Exhaust**.

a. **Bathroom Local Mechanical Exhaust**. Altered bathroom local mechanical exhaust systems shall comply with the applicable requirements specified in Section 150.0(o)1G.

b. **Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust**. If the kitchen local ventilation fan is altered or replaced, then one of the following subsections 1, 2, or 3 shall be used for compliance as applicable.

1. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to comply with the kitchen local exhaust requirements in 150.0(o)1G shall meet or exceed the applicable airflow or capture efficiency requirements in Section 150.0(o)1G.
2. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to install a vented kitchen range hood or other kitchen exhaust fan, shall install a replacement fan that meets or exceeds the airflow required by the previous building permit, or 100 cfm, whichever is greater.
3. Dwellings that were not required to have a kitchen local ventilation exhaust system according to the conditions in either subsection 1 or 2 above shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 150.0(o)1G.

c. **Replacement Ventilation Fans.** New or replacement local mechanical exhaust fans shall be rated for airflow and sound in accordance with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.2 Section 7.1 and Title 24, Part 6 Section 150.0(o)1Gvi. Additionally, when compliance with a specified exhaust airflow rate is required, the replacement fan shall be rated at no less than the airflow rate required for compliance.

N. **Exterior doors.** Alterations that add exterior door area shall meet the U-factor requirement of Section 150.1(c)5.

2. **Performance approach.**

The altered component(s) and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of subsections A, B, and C below.

A. The altered components shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Sections 150.0(a) through (l), Sections 150.0(m)1 through 150.0 (m)10, and Sections 150.0(~~o~~p) through (q). Entirely new or complete replacement mechanical ventilation systems as these terms are used in Section 150.2(b)1L, shall comply with the requirements in Section 150.2(b)1L. Altered mechanical ventilation systems shall comply with the requirements of sections 150.2(b)1M. Entirely new or complete replacement space-conditioning systems, and entirely new or complete replacement duct systems, as these terms are used in Sections 150.2(b)1C, and 150.2(b)1Diia, shall comply with the requirements of Sections 150.0(m)12 and 150.0(m)13.

B. The standard design for an altered component shall be the higher efficiency of existing conditions or the requirements stated in TABLE 150.2-~~C~~D. For components not being altered, the standard design shall be based on the existing conditions. When the third party verification option is specified as a requirement, all components proposed for alteration for which the additional credit is taken, must be verified.

~~TABLE 150.2-B AGED SOLAR REFLECTANCE INSULATION TRADE OFF TABLE~~

~~Aged Solar Reflectance~~	~~Roof Deck Insulation R-value~~	~~Aged Solar Reflectance~~	~~Roof Deck Insulation R-value~~
~~0.62-0.60~~	~~2~~	~~0.44-0.40~~	~~12~~
~~0.59-0.55~~	~~4~~	~~0.39-0.35~~	~~16~~
~~0.54-0.50~~	~~6~~	~~0.34-0.30~~	~~20~~
~~0.49-0.45~~	~~8~~	~~0.29-0.25~~	~~24~~

TABLE 150.2-~~C~~D STANDARD DESIGN FOR AN ALTERED COMPONENT

Altered Component	Standard Design Without Third Party Verification of Existing Conditions Shall be Based On	Standard Design With Third Party Verification of Existing Conditions Shall be Based On
Ceiling Insulation, Wall Insulation, and Raised-floor Insulation	The requirements of Sections 150.0(a), (c), and (d)	The existing insulation R-value
Fenestration	The U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35. The glass area shall be the glass area of the existing building.	If the proposed U-factor is £ 0.40 and SHGC value is £ 0.35, the standard design shall be based on the existing U-factor and SHGC values as verified. Otherwise, the standard design shall be based on the U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35. The glass area shall be the glass area of the existing building.
Window Film	The U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35.	The existing fenestration in the alteration shall be based on Table 110.6-A and Table 110.6-B.
Doors	The U-factor of 0.20. The door area shall be the door area of the existing building.	If the proposed U-factor is < 0.20, the standard design shall be based on the existing U-factor value as verified. Otherwise, the standard design shall be based on the U-factor of 0.20. The door area shall be the door area of the existing building.
Space-Heating and Space-Cooling Equipment	TABLE 150.1-A~~ or B~~ for equipment efficiency requirements; Section 150.2(b)1C for entirely new or complete replacement systems; Section 150.2(b)1F for refrigerant charge verification requirements.	The existing efficiency levels.
Air Distribution System – Duct Sealing	The requirements of Sections 150.2(b)1D and 150.2(b)1E	The requirements of Sections 150.2(b)1D and 150.2(b)1E
Air Distribution System – Duct Insulation	The proposed efficiency levels.	The existing efficiency levels.
Water Heating Systems	The requirements of Section 150.2(b)1Hii	The existing efficiency level.
Roofing Products	The requirements of Section 150.2(b)1I.	The requirements of Section 150.2(b)1I
All Other Measures	The proposed efficiency levels.	The existing efficiency levels.

C. The proposed design shall be based on the actual values of the altered components.

NOTES TO SECTION 150.2(b)2:

1. If an existing component must be replaced with a new component, that component is considered an altered component for the purpose of determining the standard design altered component energy budget and must meet the requirements of Section 150.2(b)2B.
2. The standard design shall assume the same geometry and orientation as the proposed design.
3. The “existing efficiency level” modeling rules, including situations where nameplate data is not available, are described in the Residential ACM Approval Manual.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b): Any dual-glazed greenhouse or garden window installed as part of an alteration complies with the U-factor requirements in Section 150.1(c)3.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b): Where the space in the attic or rafter area is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 1203.2 of Title 24, Part 2.

(c) **Whole Building.** Any addition or alteration may comply with the requirements of Title 24, Part 6 by meeting the requirements for the entire building.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, 25910, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SUBCHAPTER 10
MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 160.0 – GENERAL

Multifamily buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.1 through 160.9~~8~~. Sections 160.1 through 160.8 apply to dwelling units and common use areas in multifamily buildings. Nonresidential occupancies in a mixed occupancy building shall comply with nonresidential requirements in Sections 120.0 through 141.1.

NOTE: The requirements of Sections 160.1 through 160.~~8~~ 9 apply to newly constructed buildings. Sections 180.1 through 180.4 specify which requirements of Sections 160.1 through 160.~~8~~ 9 apply to additions or alterations.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.1 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ENVELOPES

(a) **Ceiling and Roof Insulation.** The opaque portions of ceilings and roofs separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of Item1 or 2, and 3 below:

1. Attic Roof. Roofs with an attic space shall meet the requirements of A through C below:

   A. Shall be insulated to achieve an area-weighted average U-factor not exceeding U-0.043 or shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation resulting in an installed thermal resistance of R-22 or greater for the insulation alone. For vented attics, the mandatory insulation shall be installed at the ceiling level; for unvented attics, the mandatory insulation shall be placed at either ceiling or roof level;

   B. Attic access doors shall have permanently attached insulation using adhesive or mechanical fasteners. The attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage; and

   C. When loose-fill insulation is installed, the minimum installed weight per square foot shall conform with the insulation manufacturer's installed design weight per square foot at the manufacturer's labeled R-value.

2. Non Attic Roof. Roofs without attic spaces shall meet the applicable requirements of A through C below:

   A. Metal Building- The area-weighted average U-factor of the roof assembly shall not exceed 0.098.

   B. Wood Framed and Others- The area-weighted average U-factor of the roof assembly shall not exceed 0.075.

   C. Insulation Placement- When insulation is installed at the roof, fixed vents or openings to the outdoors or to unconditioned spaces shall not be installed. When the space between the ceiling and the roof is either directly or indirectly conditioned space, it shall not be considered an attic for the purposes of complying with CBC attic ventilation requirements.

   Exception to Section 160.1(a)2C: Vents that do not penetrate the roof deck and are instead designed for wind resistance for roof membranes are not within the scope of Section 160.1(a)2C.

3. Insulation shall be installed in direct contact with a roof or ceiling which is sealed to limit infiltration and exfiltration as specified in Section 110.7, including but not limited to placing insulation either above or below the roof deck or on top of a drywall ceiling.

(b) **Wall Insulation.** Opaque portions of above grade walls separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the following applicable requirements:

1. Metal Building- The area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed 0.113.

2. Metal Framed- The area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed 0.151.

3. Wood Framed and Others-

   A. Nominal 2x4 inch framing shall have an area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly not exceeding 0.102.

   B. Nominal 2x6 inch framing shall have an area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly not exceeding 0.071.

   C. Other wall assemblies shall have an area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly not exceeding 0.102.

4. Light Mass Walls- A 6 inch or greater Hollow Core Concrete Masonry Unit shall have a U-factor not to exceed 0.440.

5. Heavy Mass Walls- An 8 inch or greater Hollow Core Concrete Masonry Unit shall have a U-factor not to exceed 0.690.

6. Spandrel Panels and Curtain Wall- The area-weighted average U-factor of the spandrel panels and curtain wall assembly shall not exceed 0.280.

7. Demising Walls-. The opaque portions of framed demising walls shall meet the requirements of Item A or B below:

  - A. Wood framed walls shall be insulated to meet a U-factor not greater than 0.099.
  - B. Metal Framed walls shall be insulated to meet a U-factor not greater than 0.151.

8. Bay or Bow Window roofs and floors. Shall be insulated to meet the wall insulation requirements of TABLE 170.2-A.

(c) Floor and Soffit Insulation. The opaque portions of floors and soffits that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items 1 through 3 below:

1. Raised Mass Floors - Shall have a minimum of 3 inches of lightweight concrete over a metal deck or the area-weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed 0.269.
2. Raised Wood Floor - shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.037. In a wood framed assembly, compliance with the U-factor may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of 19 or greater.
3. Other Floors -The area-weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed 0.071.
4. Heated Slab On Grade Floor-A heated slab on grade floor shall be insulated to meet the requirements of Section 110.8(g)

EXCEPTION to Section 160.1(**c**)**:** A building with a controlled ventilation or unvented crawlspace may omit raised floor insulation if all of the following are met:

A. The foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums as shown in Table170.2-A; and

B. A Class I or Class II vapor retarder is placed over the entire floor of the crawlspace; and

C. Vents between the crawlspace and outside air are fitted with automatically operated louvers that are temperature actuated; and

D. The requirements in Reference Residential Appendix RA4.5.1.

(d) Vapor Retarder.

1. In Climate Zones 1-16, the earth floor of unvented crawl space shall be covered with a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. This requirement shall also apply to controlled ventilation crawl space for buildings complying with the Exception to **Section 160.1(c).**
2. In Climate Zones 14 and 16, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder shall be installed on the conditioned space side of all insulation in all exterior walls, vented attics and unvented attics with air-permeable insulation.

(e) Fenestration Products. Fenestration separating conditioned space from unconditioned space or outdoors shall meet the requirements of either Item 1 or 2 below:

1. Fenestration, including skylight products, must have a maximum U-factor of 0.58.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.1(e)1: Up to 0.5 percent of the Conditioned Floor Area is exempt from the maximum U-factor requirement.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.1(e)1: For dual-glazed greenhouse or garden windows, up to 30 square feet of fenestration area per dwelling unit is exempt from the maximum U-factor requirement.

2. The area-weighted average U-factor of all fenestration, including skylight products, shall not exceed 0.58.

(f) Installation of Fireplaces, Decorative Gas Appliances and Gas Logs. If a masonry or factory-built fireplace is installed, it shall comply with Section 110.5, Section 4.503 of Part 11, and shall have the following:

1. Closeable metal or glass doors covering the entire opening of the firebox; and
2. A combustion air intake to draw air from the outside of the building, which is at least 6 square inches in area and is equipped with a readily accessible, operable, and tight-fitting damper or combustion-air control device; and

EXCEPTION to Section 160.1(f)2: An outside combustion-air intake is not required if the fireplace will be installed over concrete slab flooring and the fireplace will not be located on an exterior wall.

3. A flue damper with a readily accessible control.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.1(f)3: When a gas log, log lighter, or decorative gas appliance is installed in a fireplace, the flue damper shall be blocked open if required by the CMC or the manufacturer's installation instructions.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.2 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR VENTILATION AND INDOOR AIR QUALITY

(a) General Requirements.

1. ~~Attached d~~Dwellings units in multifamily buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of subsection 160.2(b) below. Occupiable spaces in multifamily buildings other than ~~attached~~ dwelling units shall comply with the applicable requirements of section 160.2(c). When HERS field verification and diagnostic testing of ~~attached~~ dwelling units is required by Section 160.2, buildings with three habitable stories or less shall use the applicable procedures in the Residential Appendices, and buildings with four or more habitable stories shall use the applicable procedures in Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2.

   NOTE: Section 160.2 is not applicable to townhouses or dwellings that contain two dwelling units.

Commented [NM1]: Not related to a CASE topic

Commented [NM2]: Not related to a CASE topic

Commented [NM3]: Not related to a CASE topic

2. The required outdoor air-ventilation rate and the air-distribution system design shall be clearly identified on the building design plans submitted to the enforcement agency in accordance with Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1.

(b) ~~Attached~~ Dwelling Units. ~~Attached d~~Dwellings units shall comply with the requirements of subsections 1 and 2 below**.**

Commented [NM4]: Not related to a CASE topic

1. Air Filtration.

A. System types specified in Subsections i, ii, and iii shall be provided with air filters in accordance with Sections 160.2(b)1B, 160.2(b)1C, and 160.2(b)1D. System types specified in subsection i shall also comply with Section 160.2(b)1E.

   i. Mechanical space conditioning systems that supply air to an occupiable space through ductwork exceeding 10 ft (3 m) in length.

   ii. Mechanical supply-only ventilation systems ~~and makeup air systems~~ that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

Commented [ME5]: MF IAQ

   iii. The supply side of mechanical balanced ventilation systems, including heat recovery ventilation systems, and energy recovery ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

B. System Design and Installation.

   i. The system shall be designed to ensure that all recirculated air and all outdoor air supplied to the occupiable space is filtered before passing through any system's thermal conditioning components.

   EXCEPTION to 160.2(b)1Bi: For heat recovery ventilators and energy recovery ventilators the location of the filters required by Section 160.2(b)1 may be downstream of a system thermal conditioning component, provided the system is equipped with ancillary filtration upstream of the system's thermal conditioning component.

   ii. All systems shall be designed to accommodate the clean-filter pressure drop imposed by the system air filter(s). The design airflow rate, and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate applicable to each air filter shall be determined and reported on labels according to subsection iv below.

   Systems specified in Section 160.2(b)1Ai shall be equipped with air filters that meet either subsection a or b below:

      a. Nominal two-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be sized by the system designer, or

      b. Nominal one-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be allowed if the filter(s) are sized according to Equation 160.2-A, based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft per minute, and according to the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified in Section 160.2(b)1Dii.

      $A_{face} = Q_{filter} / V_{face}$ (Equation 160.2-A)

      Where:

A_{face} = air filter face area, the product of air filter nominal length x nominal width, ft^2

Q_{filter} = design airflow rate for the air filter, ft^3/min

V_{face} = air filter face velocity ≤ 150, ft/min

iii. All system air filters shall be located and installed in such a manner as to be accessible for regular service by the system owner.

iv. All system air filter installation locations shall be labeled to disclose the applicable design airflow rate and the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop. The labels shall be permanently affixed to the air filter installation location, readily legible, and visible to a person replacing the air filter.

v. Filter racks or grilles shall use gaskets, sealing or other means ~~be gasketed or sealed~~ to close gaps around inserted filters and ~~eliminate any gaps around the filter to~~ prevent air from bypassing the filter.

C. Air Filter Efficiency**. T**he system shall be provided with air filters having a designated efficiency equal to or greater than MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.30-1.0 µm range, and equal to or greater than 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0 µm range when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680.

D. **Air Filter Pressure Drop**. All systems shall be provided with air filters that conform to the applicable maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified in subsections i, ii, iii, or iv below, when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated using AHRI Standard 680, for the applicable design airflow rates for the system air filters.

i. The maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop shall be determined by the system design for the nominal two-inch minimum depth air filter required by Section 160.2(b)1Biia, or

ii. A maximum of 25 PA (0.1 inches water) clean-filter pressure drop shall be allowed for a nominal one-inch depth air filter sized according to Section 160.2(b)1Biib, or

iii. For systems specified in 160.2(b)1Aii, and 160.2(b)1Aiii, the maximum allowable clean filter pressure drop shall be determined by the system design.

iv. If EXCEPTION 1 to **Section** 160.3(b)5Lii or iv is utilized for compliance with cooling system airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements, the clean-filter pressure drop for the system air filter shall conform to the requirements given in TABLE 160.3-A or 160.3-B.

E. Air Filter Product Labeling**.** Systems described in 160.2(b)1Ai shall be equipped with air filters that have been labeled by the manufacturer to disclose the efficiency and pressure drop ratings that demonstrate conformance with Sections 160.2(b)1C and 160.2(b)1D.

EXCEPTION to 160.2(b)1: Evaporative coolers are exempt from the air filtration requirements in Section 160.2(b)1.

2. **Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality for ~~Attached~~ Dwelling Units**. All ~~attached~~ dwelling units shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.2, Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings subject to the amendments specified in Section 160.2(b)2A below. All dwelling units shall comply with Section 160.2(b)2B below.

Commented [NM6]: Not related to a CASE topic

Exception to Section 160.2(b)2 The following sections of ASHRAE 62.2 shall not be required for compliance: Section 4.1.1, Section 4.1.2; Section 4.1.4; Section 4.3; Section 4.6, Section 5, Section 6.1.1, Section 6.5.2, Section 6.8, andNormative Appendix A.

Commented [NM7]: Not related to a CASE topic

A. Amendments to ASHRAE 62.2 Requirements.

i. **Window Operation**. Window operation is not a permissible method of providing the dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in subsections iv or v below.

ii. **Central Fan Integrated (CFI) Ventilation Systems**.

a. Continuous Operation Prohibition. Continuous operation of a dwelling unit's central forced air system air handlers used in CFI ventilation systems is not a permissible method of providing the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow required by Section 160.2(b)2Aiv.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(b)2Aii: The Energy Commission may approve continuous operation of central fan integrated ventilation systems pursuant to Section 10-109(h).

b. Outdoor Air Damper(s). A motorized damper(s) shall be installed on the connected ventilation duct(s) of CFI systems that prevents all airflow into or out of the space conditioning duct system when the damper(s) is closed.

c. Damper Control. The required motorized damper(s) shall be controlled to be in an opened position when outdoor air ventilation is required for compliance, and shall be in the closed position when ventilation air is not required. The damper(s) shall be closed whenever the space conditioning system air handling unit is not operating. If the outdoor airflow for the CFI ventilation system is fan-powered, then the outdoor air fan shall not operate when the required motorized damper(s) on the outdoor air ventilation duct(s) is closed.

d. Variable Ventilation. CFI ventilation systems shall incorporate controls that track outdoor air ventilation run time, and either open or close the required motorized damper(s) depending on whether or not outdoor air ventilation is required for compliance with sections 160.2(b)2Aiv. During periods when comfort conditioning is not called for by the space conditioning thermostat, the CFI ventilation system controls shall operate the space conditioning system central fan and outdoor air damper(s) when necessary to ensure compliance with the minimum outdoor air ventilation required by sections 160.2(b)2Aiv in accordance with applicable variable mechanical ventilation methods specified in ASHRAE 62.2 section 4.5.

iii. **Air Filtration.** Air filtration shall conform to the specifications in 160.2(b)1. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 6.7 (Minimum Filtration) and 6.7.1 (Filter Pressure Drop) shall not be required.

iv. **Whole-Dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**. Multifamily ~~attached~~ dwelling units shall comply with subsections a and b below.

Commented [NM8]: Not related to a CASE topic

a. Mechanical ventilation airflow shall be provided at rates greater than or equal to the value determined in accordance with Equation 160.2-B.

Total Required Ventilation Rate [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1].

$$Q_{tot} = 0.03A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1) \qquad \text{(Equation 160.2-B)}$$

WHERE:

Q_{tot} = total required ventilation rate, cfm

A_{floor} = dwelling-unit floor area, ft^2

N_{br} = number of bedrooms (not to be less than 1)

b. All dwelling units in a multifamily building shall use the same whole-dwelling unit ventilation system type. The system type installed throughout the building shall be only one of the following three types: supply, exhaust, or balanced. The dwelling unit shall comply with one of the following subsections 1 or 2 below.

1. **Balanced Ventilation**. A balanced ventilation system shall provide the required whole-dwelling-unit ventilation airflow. Systems with heat recovery or energy recovery that serve a single dwelling unit shall have a fan efficacy of ≤1.0 W/cfm; or

2. **Supply or Exhaust Ventilation with Compartmentalization Testing**. Continuously operating supply ventilation systems, or continuously operating exhaust ventilation systems shall be

allowed to be used to provide the required whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow only if the dwelling unit envelope leakage is less than or equal to 0.3 cubic feet per minute at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) per ft^2 of dwelling unit envelope surface area as confirmed by HERS field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Appendix RA3.8 or NA2.3 as applicable.

v. **Multifamily Building Central Ventilation System Airflow Rate Tolerance.** Multifamily building central ventilation systems that serve multiple dwelling units shall have airflow rates in each dwelling unit served that meet or exceed a design ventilation airflow rate specification.

a. Designers shall specify a design ventilation airflow rate for each dwelling unit that is equal to or greater than the rate specified by Equation 160.2-B.

b. The design ventilation airflow rate for each dwelling unit shall be stated on the building design plans approved by the enforcement agency.

c. Airflow in each dwelling unit shall be no more than twenty percent greater than the specified design ventilation airflow rate. Ventilation systems shall utilize mechanical or software airflow control means to ensure each of the dwelling-unit airflows can be maintained at the design ventilation airflow within this tolerance at all times. System airflow control-means may include but are not limited to: constant air regulation devices, orifice plates, and variable speed central fans.

vi. **Local Mechanical Exhaust.** A local mechanical exhaust system shall be installed in each kitchen and bathroom. Systems shall be rated for airflow in accordance with ASHRAE 62.2 section 7.1.

a. **Nonenclosed kitchens** shall have a demand-controlled mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 160.2(b)2Avic.

b **Enclosed kitchens and all bathrooms** shall have either one of the following alternatives 1 or 2:

1. A demand-controlled mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 160.2(b)2Avic; or

2. A continuous mechanical exhaust system meeting the requirements of Section 160.2(b)2Avid.

c **Demand-Controlled Mechanical Exhaust.** A local mechanical exhaust system shall be designed to be operated as needed.

1. **Control and Operation.** Demand-controlled mechanical exhaust systems shall be provided with at least one of the following controls:

A. A readily accessible occupant-controlled ON-OFF control.

B. An automatic control that does not impede occupant ON control.

2. **Ventilation Rate and Capture Efficiency.** The system shall meet or exceed either the minimum airflow in accordance with Table 160.2-E or the minimum capture efficiency in accordance with Table 160.2-E, and Table 160.2-G. Capture efficiency ratings shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E3087, and listed in a product directory approved by the Energy Commission.

d. **Continuous Mechanical Exhaust.** A mechanical exhaust system shall be installed to operate continuously. The system may be part of a balanced mechanical ventilation system.

1. **Control and Operation**. A manual ON-OFF control shall be provided for each continuous mechanical exhaust system. The system shall be designed to operate during all occupiable hours. For multifamily dwelling units, the manual ON-OFF control may be accessible to the dwelling unit occupant, however the manual ON-OFF control shall not be required to be accessible to the dwelling unit occupant.

2. **Ventilation Rate.** The minimum delivered ventilation shall be at least the amount indicated in Table 160.2-F during each hour of operation.

e. **Airflow Measurement of Local Mechanical Exhaust by the System Installer.** The airflow required by section 160.2(b)2Avi is the quantity of indoor air exhausted by the ventilation system as installed in the dwelling unit. When a vented range hood utilizes a capture efficiency rating to demonstrate compliance with 160.2(b)2Avic2, the airflow listed in the approved directory corresponding to the compliant capture efficiency rating point shall be met by the installed system. The as-installed airflow shall be verified by the system installer to ensure compliance by use of either subsection 1 or 2 below:

1. The system installer shall measure the airflow by using a flow hood, flow grid, or other airflow measuring device at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals/grilles or outlet terminals/grilles in accordance with the procedures in Reference Appendix RA3.7 or NA2.2 as applicable.

2. As an alternative to performing an airflow measurement of the system as installed in the dwelling unit, compliance may be demonstrated by installing an exhaust fan and duct system that conforms to the specifications of Table 160.2-H. Visual inspection shall verify the installed system conforms to the requirements of Table 160.2-H.

   When using Table 160.2-H for demonstrating compliance, the airflow rating shall be greater than or equal to the value required by Section 160.2(b)2Avi at a static pressure greater than or equal to 0.25 in. of water (62.5 Pa). When a vented range hood utilizes a capture efficiency rating to demonstrate compliance with 160.2(b)2Avic2, a static pressure greater than or equal to 0.25 in. of water at the rating point shall not be required, and the airflow listed in the approved directory corresponding to the compliant capture efficiency rating point shall be applied to Table 160.2-H for determining compliance.

   Use of Table 160.2-H is limited to ventilation systems that conform to all of the following three specifications:

   A. total duct length is less than or equal to 25 ft (8 m),

   B. duct system has no more than three (3) elbows, and

   C. duct system has exterior termination fitting with a hydraulic diameter greater than or equal to the minimum duct diameter and not less than the hydraulic diameter of the fan outlet.

f. **Sound Ratings for Local Mechanical Exhaust**. Local mechanical exhaust systems shall be rated for sound in accordance with Section 7.2 of ASHRAE 62.2 at no less than the minimum airflow rate required by Section 160.2(b)2Avi.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(b)2Avif: Kitchen range hoods may be rated for sound at a static pressure determined at no less than the working speed as specified in HVI 916 Section 7.2.

Commented [ME9]: MF IAQ

vii. **Airflow Measurement of Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation**. The airflow required by Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av is the quantity of outdoor ventilation air supplied or indoor air exhausted by the mechanical ventilation system as installed and shall be measured by using a flow hood, flow grid, or other airflow measuring device at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals/grilles or outlet terminals/grilles in accordance with the procedures in Reference Appendix Section RA3.7.4.1.1 or NA2.2.4.1.1 as applicable for supply and exhaust systems or RA3.7.4.1.2 or NA2.2.4.1.2 as applicable for balanced systems. Balanced mechanical ventilation system airflow shall be the average of the supply fan and exhaust fan flows.

viii. **Sound Ratings for Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation Systems.** Whole-Dwelling unit ventilation systems shall be rated for sound in accordance with Section 7.2 of ASHRAE 62.2 at no less than the minimum airflow rate required by 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av as applicable.

ix. **Label for Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation System On-Off Control**. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 4.4 (Control and Operation) shall require manual ON-OFF control switches associated with whole-dwelling unit ventilation systems to have a label clearly displaying the following text, or equivalent text: “This switch controls the indoor air quality ventilation for the home. Leave switch in the "on" position at all times unless the outdoor air quality is very poor.”

x. **Combustion Air and Compensating Outdoor Air or Makeup Air**

a. All dwelling units shall conform to the applicable requirements specified in California Mechanical Code Chapter 7, Combustion Air.

b. ~~Atmospherically vented or solid fuel burning appliances shall not be installed inside the pressure boundary in dwelling units with conditioned floor area less than 1,000 ft2.~~

b~~c~~. All dwelling units shall conform to the requirements in ASHRAE 62.2 Section 6.4, Combustion and Solid-Fuel-Burning Appliances.

B. **Dwelling Unit HERS Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing.**

i. **Whole-Dwelling Unit Ventilation Airflow Performance**. The whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow required by Section 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av shall be confirmed through HERS field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with Reference Appendix RA3.7.4.1.1 or NA2.2.4.1.1 as applicable for supply and exhaust systems or RA3.7.4.1.2 or NA2.2.4.1.2 as applicable for balanced systems. Balanced mechanical ventilation system airflow shall be the average of the supply fan and exhaust fan flows. Ventilation airflow of systems with multiple operating modes shall be tested in all modes designed to comply with the required ventilation airflows.

ii. **Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust - Vented Range Hoods.** Vented range hoods installed to comply with local mechanical exhaust requirements specified in section 160.2(b)2Avi shall be HERS field verified in accordance with Reference Appendix RA3.7.4.3 or NA2.2.4.1.4 as applicable to confirm the model is rated by HVI or AHAM to comply with the following requirements:

a. The minimum ventilation airflow rate as specified by Section 160.2(b)2Avi, or alternatively the minimum capture efficiency as specified by Section 160.2(b)2Avi; and

b. The maximum sound rating as specified in Section 160.2(b)2Avif.

iii. **Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) and Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) System Fan Efficacy.** At a minimum, systems with heat or energy recovery serving a single dwelling unit shall have a fan efficacy of ≤1.0 W/cfm as confirmed by HERS field verification in accordance with Reference Appendix RA3.7.4.4 or NA2.2.4.1.5 as applicable. If Section 170.2(c)3Bva requirements are applicable to the dwelling unit, then HERS field verification shall instead confirm compliance with the maximum fan efficacy and minimum sensible recovery efficiency specified in Section 170.2(c)3Bva in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Appendix RA3.7.4.4 or NA2.2.4.1.5 as applicable.

C. **Multifamily Building Central Ventilation System Field Verification**

i. **Central Ventilation System Duct Sealing.** Ventilation ducts that conform to subsections a, ~~and~~ b and c below shall meet the duct sealing requirements in the California Mechanical Code Section 603.10 and have leakage that is no greater than six percent of the rooftop fan or central fan design airflow rate as confirmed by field verification in accordance with the procedures in Reference Appendix NA7.18.3. The leakage test shall be conducted using a test pressure of 25 Pa (0.1 inches) for ducts serving six or fewer dwelling units and 50 Pa (0.2 inches) for ducts serving more than six dwelling units, and shall measure the leakage of all ductwork between the central fan and the connection point to the in-unit grille or fan.

Commented [NM10]: MFIAQ

a. The ventilation ducts serve multiple dwelling units.

b. The ventilation ducts provide continuous airflows or airflows to provide balanced ventilation to meet the requirements specified in Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av as applicable.

c. The ventilation duct is in a multifamily building with four or more habitable stories.

Commented [NM11]: MFIAQ

(c) Common ~~Services~~ Use Areas. All occupiable spaces shall comply with the requirements of subsection 1 and shall also comply with either subsection 2 or subsection 3:

1. Air Filtration

A. Mechanical system types specified in subsections i, ii, and iii below shall be designed to ensure that all recirculated air and all outdoor air supplied to the occupiable space is filtered before passing through any system's thermal conditioning components. Air Filters shall conform to the requirements of Sections 160.2(c)1B, 160.2(c)1C and 160.2(c)1D.

i. Mechanical space conditioning systems that supply air to an occupiable space through ductwork exceeding 10 ft (3 m) in length.

ii. Mechanical supply-only ventilation systems and makeup air systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

iii. The supply side of mechanical balanced ventilation systems, including heat recovery ventilation systems and energy recovery ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(c)1A: For heat recovery ventilators and energy recovery ventilators the location of the filters required by Section 160.2(c)1A may be downstream of a system's thermal conditioning component, provided the system is equipped with ancillary filtration upstream of the system's thermal conditioning component.

B. Air Filter Efficiency. The filters shall have a designated efficiency equal to or greater than MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.30-1.0 μm range, and equal to or greater than 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0 μm range when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680; and

C. Systems shall be equipped with air filters that meet either subsection i or ii below.

i. Nominal two inch minimum depth filter(s); or

ii. Nominal one inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be allowed if the filter(s) are sized according to Equation 160.2-A, based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft per minute.

D. Filter racks or grilles shall be gasketed or sealed to eliminate any gaps around the filter to prevent air from bypassing the filter.

2. Natural Ventilation. Naturally ventilated spaces shall be designed in accordance with 160.2(c)2A through 160.2(c)2C and include a mechanical ventilation system designed in accordance with 160.2(c)3:

EXCEPTION 1 to 160.2(c)2: The mechanical ventilation system shall not be required where natural ventilation openings complying with 160.2(c)2 are either permanently open or have controls that prevent the openings from being closed during periods of expected occupancy.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.2(c)2: The mechanical ventilation system shall not be required where the zone is not served by a space conditioning system.

A. Floor area to be ventilated. Spaces or portions of spaces to be naturally ventilated shall be located within a distance based on the ceiling height, as specified in i, ii and iii. The ceiling height (H) to be used in i, ii or iii shall be the minimum ceiling height in the space, or for ceilings that are increasing in height as distance from the operable openings is increased, the ceiling height shall be determined as the average height of the ceiling within 20 ft from the operable opening. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1]

i. Single Side Opening. For spaces with operable opening on one side of the space, the maximum distance from the operable opening shall be not more than 2H. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.1]

ii. Double Side Opening. For spaces with operable openings on two opposite sides of the space, the maximum distance from the operable opening shall be not more than 5H. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.2]

iii. Corner Opening. For spaces with operable openings on two adjacent sides of a space, the maximum distance from the operable openings shall be not more than 5H along a line drawn between the two openings that are the farthest apart. Floor area outside that line shall comply with i or ii. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.3]

iv. Ceiling Height. The ceiling height (h) to be used in Section 160.2(c)2Ai through 160.2 (c)2Aiii shall be the minimum ceiling height in the space.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(c)2Aiv: For ceilings that are increasing in height as distance from the opening is increased, the ceiling height shall be determined as the average height of the ceiling within 20 feet from the operable openings. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.4]

B. **Location and Size of Openings**. Spaces or portions of spaces to be naturally ventilated shall be permanently open to operable wall openings directly to the outdoors. The openable area shall be not less than 4 percent of the net occupiable floor area. Where openings are covered with louvers or otherwise obstructed, the openable area shall be based on the net free unobstructed area through the opening. Where interior rooms, or portions of rooms, without direct openings to the outdoors are ventilated through adjoining rooms, the opening between rooms shall be permanently unobstructed and have a free area of not less than 8 percent of the area of the interior room or less than 25 square feet. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.2]

C. **Control and Accessibility.** The means to open the required operable opening shall be readily accessible to building occupants whenever the space is occupied. Controls shall be designed to coordinate operation of the natural and mechanical ventilation systems. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.3]

3. **Mechanical Ventilation.** Occupiable spaces shall be ventilated with a mechanical ventilation system capable of providing an outdoor airflow rate (V_z) to the zone no less than the larger of A or B as described below:

A. The outdoor airflow rate to the zone (Vz) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 160.2-G; or

$V_z = R_a \times A_z$ (Equation 160.2-G)

Where:

R_a = Outdoor airflow rate required per unit area as determined from Table 160.2-B.

A_z = Zone floor area is the net occupiable floor area of the ventilation zone in square feet.

B. For spaces designed for an expected number of occupants, the outdoor airflow rate to the zone (V_z) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 160.2-H;

$V_z = R_p \times P_z$ (Equation 160.2-H)

Where:

R_p = 15 cubic feet per minute of outdoor airflow per person

P_z = The expected number of occupants. The expected number of occupants shall be the expected number specified by the building designer. For spaces with fixed seating, the expected number of occupants shall be determined in accordance with the California Building Code.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(c)3: Transfer air. The rate of outdoor air required by Section 160.2(c)3 may be provided with air transferred from other ventilated space if:

i. Use of transfer air is in accordance with Section 160.2(c)8; and

ii. The outdoor air that is supplied to all spaces combined, is sufficient to meet the requirements of Section 160.2(c)3 for each space individually.

4. **Exhaust Ventilation.** The design exhaust airflow shall be determined in accordance with the requirements in Table 160.2-C. Exhaust makeup air shall be permitted to be any combination of outdoor air, recirculated air, or transfer air. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.5.1]

5. **Operation and Control Requirements for Minimum Quantities of Outdoor Air**.

A. **Times of occupancy.** The minimum rate of outdoor air required by Section 160.2(c) shall be supplied to each space at all times when the space is usually occupied.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.2(c)5A: Demand control ventilation. In intermittently occupied spaces that do not have processes or operations that generate dusts, fumes, mists, vapors or gasses and are not provided with local exhaust ventilation (such as indoor operation of internal combustion engines or areas designated for unvented food service preparation), the rate of outdoor air may be reduced if the ventilation system serving the space is controlled by a demand control ventilation device complying with Section 160.2(c)5D or by an occupant sensor ventilation control device complying with Section 160.2(c)5E.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.2(c)5A: Temporary reduction. The rate of outdoor air provided to a space may be reduced below the level required by Section 160.2(c) for up to 30 minutes at a time if the average rate for each hour is equal to or greater than the required ventilation rate.

B. **Pre-occupancy.** The lesser of the minimum rate of outdoor air required by Section 160.2(c) or three complete air changes shall be supplied to the entire building during the 1-hour period immediately before the building is normally occupied.

C. **Required Demand Control Ventilation.** Demand ventilation controls complying with 160.2(c)5D are required for a space with a design occupant density, or a maximum occupant load factor for egress purposes in the CBC, greater than or equal to 25 people per 1000 square feet (40 square feet or less per person) if the system serving the space has one or more of the following:

i. an air economizer; or

ii. modulating outside air control; or

iii. design outdoor airflow rate > 3,000 cfm.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.2(c)5C: Where space exhaust is greater than the design ventilation rate specified in Section 160.2(c)3 minus 0.2 cfm per ft² of conditioned area.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.2(c)5C: Spaces that have processes or operations that generate dusts, fumes, mists, vapors, or gases and are not provided with local exhaust ventilation, such as indoor operation of internal combustion engines or areas designated for unvented food service preparation, daycare sickrooms, science labs, barber shops or beauty and nail salons shall not install demand control ventilation.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.2(c)5C: Spaces with an area of less than 150 square feet, or a design occupancy of less than 10 people as specified by Section 160.2(c)3.

D. **Demand Control Ventilation Devices.**

i. For each system with demand control ventilation (DCV), CO_2 sensors shall be installed in each room that meets the criteria of Section 160.2(c)5C with no less than one sensor per 10,000 ft² of floor space. When a zone or a space is served by more than one sensor, a signal from any sensor indicating that CO_2 is near or at the setpoint within the zone or space shall trigger an increase in ventilation.

ii. CO_2 sensors shall be located in the room between 3 ft and 6 ft above the floor or at the anticipated height of the occupants' heads.

iii. Demand ventilation controls shall maintain CO_2 concentrations less than or equal to 600 ppm plus the outdoor air CO_2 concentration in all rooms with CO_2 sensors.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(c)5Diii: The outdoor air ventilation rate is not required to be larger than the design outdoor air ventilation rate required by Section 160.2(c)3 regardless of CO_2 concentration.

iv. Outdoor air CO_2 concentration shall be determined by one of the following:

  a. CO_2 concentration shall be assumed to be 400 ppm without any direct measurement; or

  b. CO_2 concentration shall be dynamically measured using a CO_2 sensor located within 4 ft of the outdoor air intake.

v. When the system is operating during hours of expected occupancy, the controls shall maintain system outdoor air ventilation rates no less than the rate listed in Table 160.2-B for DCV, times the conditioned floor area for spaces with CO_2 sensors, plus the rate required by Section 160.2(c)3 for other spaces served by the system, or the exhaust air rate whichever is greater.

vi. CO_2 sensors shall be certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within plus or minus 75 ppm at a 600 and 1000 ppm concentration when measured at sea level and 25°C, factory calibrated, and certified by the manufacturer to require calibration no more frequently than once every 5 years. Upon detection of sensor failure, the system shall provide a signal which resets to supply the minimum quantity of outside air to levels required by Section 160.2(c)3 to the zone serviced by the sensor at all times that the zone is occupied.

vii. The CO_2 sensor(s) reading for each zone shall be displayed continuously, and shall be recorded on systems with digital direct controls (DDC) to the zone level.

E. Occupant Sensor Ventilation Control Devices. ~~When occupancy sensor ventilation devices are required by Section 160.3(a)2Diii, occupant~~ Occupant ~~sensors~~ sensing ventilation controls are required for space conditioning zones that are both permitted to have their ventilation air reduced to zero while in occupied standby mode per Table 160.2-B and required to install occupant sensors to comply with Section 160.5(b)4Cv, vi and vii. Occupant sensor ventilation control devices ~~shall be~~ used to reduce the rate of outdoor air flow when occupants are not present ~~in accordance~~shall comply with the following:

  i. ~~i.~~ Occupant sensors shall meet the requirements in Section 110.9(b)4 and shall have suitable coverage and placement to detect occupants in the entire space ventilated.

  ii. ~~If~~ When occupant sensors controlling lighting are also used for ventilation, the ventilation signal shall be independent of daylighting, manual lighting overrides or manual control of lighting.

  iii. When a single zone damper or a single zone system serves multiple rooms, there shall be an ~~occupancy~~ occupant sensor in each room and the zone ~~is~~ shall not be considered vacant until all rooms in the zone are vacant.

  iv. ~~ii.~~ One hour prior to normal scheduled occupancy, the ~~occupancy~~ occupant sensor ventilation control shall allow pre-occupancy purge as described in Section 160.2(c)5B.

  v. When the zone is scheduled to be occupied and occupant sensing controls in all rooms and areas served by the zone indicate the spaces are unoccupied, the zone shall be placed in occupied standby mode.

  vi. In 5 minutes or less after entering occupied-standby mode, mechanical ventilation to the zone shall be shut off until the space becomes occupied or until ventilation is needed to provide space heating or conditioning. When mechanical ventilation is shut off to the zone, the ventilation system serving the zone shall reduce the system outside air rate by the amount of outside air required for the zone.

  vii. Where the system providing space conditioning also provides ventilation to the zone, in 5 minutes or less after entering occupied-standby mode, space conditioning zone setpoints shall be reset in accordance with Section 120.2(e)3.

6. Ducting for Zonal Heating and Cooling Units. Where a return plenum is used to distribute outdoor air to a zonal heating or cooling unit which then supplies the air to a space in order to meet the requirements of Section 160.2(c)3, the outdoor air shall be ducted to discharge either:

A. Within 5 feet of the unit; or

B. Within 15 feet of the unit, substantially toward the unit, and at a velocity not less than 500 feet per minute.

7. Design and Control Requirements for Quantities of Outdoor Air.

A. All mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall be designed with and have installed ductwork, dampers, and controls to allow outside air rates to be operated at the minimum levels specified in Section 160.2(c)3 or the rate required for make-up of exhaust systems that are required for an exempt or covered process, for control of odors, or for the removal of contaminants within the space.

B. All variable air volume mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall include dynamic controls that maintain measured outside air ventilation rates within 10 percent of the required outside air ventilation rate at both full and reduced supply airflow conditions. Fixed minimum damper position is not considered to be dynamic and is not an allowed control strategy.

C. Measured outdoor air rates of constant volume mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall be within 10 percent of the required outside air rate.

8. Air Classification and Recirculation Limitations. Air classification and recirculation limitations of air shall be based on the air classification as listed in Table 160.2-B or Table 160.2-D, in accordance with the following:

A. Class 1 Air is air with significant contaminant concentration, significant sensory-irritation intensity, or offensive odor. Recirculation or transfer of Class 1 air to any space shall be permitted; [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.1]

B. Class 2 Air is air with moderate contaminant concentration, mild sensory-irritation intensity, or mildly offensive odors (Class 2 air also includes air that is not necessarily harmful or objectionable but that is inappropriate for transfer or recirculation to spaces used for different purposes). Recirculation or transfer of Class 2 air shall be permitted in accordance with 160.2(c)8Bi through 160.2(c)8Bv:

i. Recirculation of Class 2 air within the space of origin shall be permitted [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.1]:

ii. Recirculation or transfer of Class 2 to other Class 2 or Class 3 spaces shall be permitted, provided that the other spaces are used for the same or similar purpose or task and involve the same or similar pollutant sources as the Class 2 space [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.2]; or

iii. Transfer of Class 2 air to toilet rooms [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.3]; or

iv. Recirculation or transfer of Class 2 air to Class 4 spaces [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.4]; or

v. Class 2 air shall not be recirculated or transferred to Class 1 spaces. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.5]

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(c)8Bv: When using any energy recovery device, recirculation from leakage, carryover, or transfer from the exhaust side of the energy recovery device is permitted. Recirculated Class 2 air shall not exceed 10% of the outdoor air intake flow.

C. Class 3 Air is air with significant contaminant concentration, significant sensory-irritation intensity, or offensive odor. Recirculation or transfer of Class 3 air shall be permitted in accordance with 160.2(c)8Ci and 160.2(c)8Cii:

i. Recirculation of Class 3 air within the space of origin shall be permitted. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.3.1]

ii. Class 3 air shall not be recirculated or transferred to any other space. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.3.2].

EXCEPTION to Section 160.2(c)8Cii: When using any energy recovery device, recirculation from leakage, carryover, or transfer from the exhaust side of the energy recovery device is permitted. Recirculated Class 3 air shall not exceed 5% of the outdoor air intake flow.

D. Class 4 Air is air with highly objectionable fumes or gases or with potentially dangerous particles, bioaerosols, or gases at concentrations high enough to be considered as harmful. Class 4 air shall not be recirculated or transferred to any space or recirculated within the space of origin. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.4]

E. Ancillary spaces. Redesignation of Class 1 air to Class 2 air shall be permitted for Class 1 spaces that are ancillary to Class 2 spaces. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.2.3]

F. Transfer. A mixture of air that has been transferred through or returned form spaces or locations with different air classes shall be redesignated with the highest classification among the air classes mixed. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.2.2]

G. Classification. Air leaving each space or location shall be designated at an expected air-quality classification not less than that shown in Tables 160.2-B, 160.2-C or 160.2-D. Air leaving spaces or locations that are not listed in Tables 160.2-B, 160.2-C or 160.2-D shall be designated with the same classification as air from the most similar space or location listed in terms of occupant activities and building construction.

(d) Parking Garages. Mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages in multifamily buildings shall comply with Section 120.6(c) and Section 160.2(c)4.

Commented [AT12]: MF Restructuring

TABLE 160.2-A: Infiltration Effectiveness Weather and Shielding Factors [ASHRAE 62.2:Table B1]

TMY3	**wsf**	**Weather Station**	**Latitude**	**Longitude**	**State**
690150	0.50	Twentynine Palms	34.30	–116.17	California
722860	0.43	March AFB	33.90	–117.25	California
722868	0.45	Palm Springs Intl	33.83	–116.50	California
722869	0.42	Riverside Muni	33.95	–117.45	California
722880	0.39	Burbank–Glendale–Pasadena AP	34.20	–118.35	California
722885	0.39	Santa Monica Muni	34.02	–118.45	California
722886	0.39	Van Nuys Airport	34.22	–118.48	California
722895	0.55	Lompoc (AWOS)	34.67	–120.47	California
722897	0.51	San Luis Co Rgnl	35.23	–120.63	California
722899	0.45	Chino Airport	33.97	–117.63	California
722900	0.38	San Diego Lindbergh Field	32.73	–117.17	California
722903	0.39	San Diego/Montgomery	32.82	–117.13	California
722904	0.40	Chula Vista Brown Field NAAS	32.58	–116.98	California
722906	0.39	San Diego North Island NAS	32.70	–117.20	California
722926	0.40	Camp Pendleton MCAS	33.30	–117.35	California
722927	0.38	Carlsbad/Palomar	33.13	–117.28	California
722930	0.39	San Diego Miramar NAS	32.87	–117.13	California
722950	0.42	Los Angeles Intl Arpt	33.93	–118.40	California
722956	0.38	Jack Northrop Fld H	33.92	–118.33	California
722970	0.38	Long Beach Daugherty Fld	33.83	–118.17	California
722976	0.34	Fullerton Municipal	33.87	–117.98	California
722977	0.36	Santa Ana John Wayne AP	33.68	–117.87	California
723805	0.51	Needles Airport	34.77	–114.62	California
723810	0.59	Edwards AFB	34.90	–117.87	California
723815	0.58	Daggett Barstow–Daggett AP	34.85	–116.80	California
723816	0.62	Lancaster Gen Wm Fox Field	34.73	–118.22	California
723820	0.57	Palmdale Airport	34.63	–118.08	California
723830	0.68	Sandberg	34.75	–118.72	California
723840	0.43	Bakersfield Meadows Field	35.43	–119.05	California
723890	0.45	Fresno Yosemite Intl AP	36.78	–119.72	California
723895	0.42	Porterville (AWOS)	36.03	–119.07	California
723896	0.43	Visalia Muni (AWOS)	36.32	–119.40	California
723910	0.45	Point Mugu Nf	34.12	–119.12	California
723925	0.44	Santa Barbara Municipal AP	34.43	–119.85	California
723926	0.43	Camarillo (AWOS)	34.22	–119.08	California
723927	0.45	Oxnard Airport	34.20	–119.20	California
723940	0.52	Santa Maria Public Arpt	34.92	–120.47	California

TABLE 160.2-A: Infiltration Effectiveness Weather and Shielding Factors [ASHRAE 62.2:Table B1] (continued)

TMY3	**wsf**	**Weather Station**	**Latitude**	**Longitude**	**State**
723965	0.53	Paso Robles Municipal Arpt	35.67	–120.63	California
724800	0.55	Bishop Airport	37.37	–118.35	California
724815	0.46	Merced/Macready Fld	37.28	–120.52	California
724830	0.51	Sacramento Executive Arpt	38.50	–121.50	California
724837	0.45	Beale AFB	39.13	–121.43	California
724838	0.50	Yuba Co	39.10	–121.57	California
724839	0.51	Sacramento Metropolitan AP	38.70	–121.58	California
724915	0.49	Monterey Naf	36.60	–121.87	California
724917	0.54	Salinas Municipal AP	36.67	–121.60	California
724920	0.50	Stockton Metropolitan Arpt	37.90	–121.23	California
724926	0.47	Modesto City–County AP	37.63	–120.95	California
724927	0.53	Livermore Municipal	37.70	–121.82	California
724930	0.54	Oakland Metropolitan Arpt	37.72	–122.22	California
724935	0.47	Hayward Air Term	37.67	–122.12	California
724936	0.53	Concord–Buchanan Field	38.00	–122.05	California
724940	0.60	San Francisco Intl AP	37.62	–122.40	California
724945	0.48	San Jose Intl AP	37.37	–121.93	California
724955	0.55	Napa Co. Airport	38.22	–122.28	California
724957	0.49	Santa Rosa (AWOS)	38.52	–122.82	California
725845	0.44	Blue Canyon AP	39.30	–120.72	California
725846	0.66	Truckee–Tahoe	39.32	–120.13	California
725847	0.64	South Lake Tahoe	38.90	–120.00	California
725905	0.47	Ukiah Municipal AP	39.13	–123.20	California
725910	0.50	Red Bluff Municipal Arpt	40.15	–122.25	California
725920	0.47	Redding Municipal Arpt	40.52	–122.32	California
725945	0.56	Arcata Airport	40.98	–124.10	California
725946	0.60	Crescent City Faa Ai	41.78	–124.23	California
725955	0.55	Montague Siskiyou County AP	41.78	–122.47	California
725958	0.59	Alturas	41.50	–120.53	California
745090	0.45	Mountain View Moffett Fld NAS	37.40	–122.05	California
745160	0.67	Travis Field AFB	38.27	–121.93	California
746120	0.52	China Lake Naf	35.68	–117.68	California
747020	0.50	Lemoore Reeves NAS	36.33	–119.95	California
747185	0.46	Imperial	32.83	–115.58	California
747187	0.46	Palm Springs Thermal AP	33.63	–116.17	California
747188	0.48	Blythe Riverside Co Arpt	33.62	–114.72	California

TABLE 160.2-B – Minimum Ventilation Rates for Multifamily Common Use Areas

~~*TABLE 160.2-B – Minimum Ventilation Rates for Multifamily Common Use Areas*~~

Occupancy Category^3	**Area Outdoor Air Rate**^{1} R_a cfm/ft^2	**Min Air Rate for DC** cfm/ft^2**V**^{2}	**Air Class**	**Notes**
Daycare (through age 4)	0.21	0.15	2	
Multiuse assembly	0.50	0.15	1	F
Dining rooms	0.50	0.15	2	
Bars, cocktail lounges	0.50	0.20	2	
Kitchen (cooking)	0.15		2	
Break rooms	0.50	0.15	1	F
Coffee stations	0.50	0.15	1	F
Conference/meeting	0.50	0.15	1	F
Corridors	0.15		1	F
Occupiable storage rooms for liquids or gels	0.15		2	B
Laundry rooms, central	0.15		2	
Lobbies/pre-function	0.50	0.15	1	F
Breakrooms	0.50	0.15		
Occupiable storage rooms for dry materials	0.15			
Office space	0.15		1	
Reception areas	0.15		1	F
Telephone/data entry	0.15		1	F
Computer (not printing)	0.15			
Freezer and refrigerated spaces (<50°F)	-		1	F
Shipping/receiving	0.15			
All others	0.15			
~~Gym, sports arena (play area)~~	~~0.50~~	~~0.15~~	~~2~~	~~E~~
~~Swimming (pool)~~	~~0.15~~		~~2~~	~~C~~
~~Swimming (deck)~~	~~0.50~~	~~0.15~~	~~2~~	~~C~~
~~Disco/dance floors~~	~~1.50~~	~~0.15~~	~~2~~	~~E~~
~~Health club/aerobics room/weight rooms~~	~~0.15~~		~~2~~	
~~Game arcades~~	~~0.68~~	~~0.15~~	~~1~~	

~~General:~~

~~1 Ra was determined as being the larger of the area method and the default per person method. The occupant density used in the per person method was assumed to be one half of the maximum occupant load assumed for egress purposes in the CBC.~~

~~2 If this column specifies a minimum cfm/ft^2 then it shall be used to comply with Section160.2(c)5E.~~

~~3 For spaces not included in this table, the spaces in Table 120.1-A shall apply.~~

~~Specific Notes:~~

~~A – RESERVEDB – Rate may not be sufficient where stored materials include those having potentially harmful emissions.~~

~~C – Rate does not allow for humidity control. "Deck area" refers to the area surrounding the pool that is capable of being wetted during poo~~l ~~use or when the pool is occupied. Deck area that is not expected to be wetted shall be designated as an occupancy category.~~

~~D – RESREVED~~.

~~E – Where combustion equipment is intended to be used on the playing surface or in the space, additional dilution ventilation, source control, or both shall be provided.~~

~~F – Ventilation air for this occupancy category shall be permitted to be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode.~~

Gym, sports arena (play area)	0.50	0.15	2	E
Swimming (pool)	0.15		2	C
Swimming (deck)	0.50	0.15	2	C
Disco/dance floors	1.50	0.15	2	F
Health club/aerobics room/weight rooms	0.15		2	
Game arcades	0.68	0.15	1	

General:

1 Ra was determined as being the larger of the area method and the default per person method. The occupant density used in the per person method was assumed to be one half of the maximum occupant load assumed for egress purposes in the CBC.

2 If this column specifies a minimum cfm/ft^2 then it shall be used to comply with Section160.2(c)5E.

3 For spaces not included in this table, the spaces in Table 120.1-A shall apply.

Specific Notes:

A – RESERVED

B – Rate may not be sufficient where stored materials include those having potentially harmful emissions.

C – Rate does not allow for humidity control. “Deck area” refers to the area surrounding the pool that is capable of being wetted during pool use or when the pool is occupied. Deck area that is not expected to be wetted shall be designated as an occupancy category.

D – RESREVED.

E – Where combustion equipment is intended to be used on the playing surface or in the space, additional dilution ventilation, source control, or both shall be provided.

F – Ventilation air for this occupancy category shall be permitted to be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode
.

Commented [ME13]: Line break added.

TABLE 160.2-C – Minimum Exhaust Rates
[ASHRAE 62.1: TABLE 6.5]

~~*TABLE 160.2-C – Minimum Exhaust Rates*~~

~~*[ASHRAE 62.1: TABLE 6.5]*~~

Occupancy Category^3	**Exhaust Rete, cfm/unit**	**Exhaust Rate, cfm/ft^2**	**Air Class**	**Notes**
Copy, printing rooms	-	0.50	2	
Janitor closets, trash rooms, recycling	-	1.00	3	
Kitchenettes	-	0.30	2	
Kitchens – commercial	-	0.70	2	
Locker rooms for athletic or industrial facilities	-	0.50	2	
All other locker rooms	-	0.25	2	
Shower rooms	20/50	-	2	G, H
Parking garages	-	0.75	2	C
Pet shops (animal areas)	-	0.90	2	
Soiled laundry storage rooms	-	1.00	3	F
Storage rooms, chemical	-	1.50	4	F
Toilets – private	25/50	-	2	E
Toilets – public	50/70	-	2	D

~~General:~~
~~[3]For spaces not included in this table, the spaces in Table 120.1-B shall apply.~~
~~Notes:~~
~~A –Reserved~~
~~B –Reserved~~
~~C – Exhaust shall not be required where two or more sides comprise walls that are at least 50% open to the outside.~~
~~D – Rate is per water closet, urinal, or both. Provide the higher rate where periods of heavy use are expected to occur. The lower rate shall be permitted to be used otherwise.~~
~~E – Rate is for a toilet room intended to be occupied by one person at a time. For continuous systems operation during hours of use, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used.~~
~~F – See other applicable standards for exhaust rate.~~
~~G – For continuous system operation, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used.~~
~~H – Rate is per showerhead.~~

General:
[3]For spaces not included in this table, the spaces in Table 120.1-B shall apply.
Notes:
A –Reserved
B –Reserved
C – Exhaust shall not be required where two or more sides comprise walls that are at least 50% open to the outside.
D – Rate is per water closet, urinal, or both. Provide the higher rate where periods of heavy use are expected to occur. The lower rate shall be permitted to be used otherwise.
E – Rate is for a toilet room intended to be occupied by one person at a time. For continuous systems operation during hours of use, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used.
F – See other applicable standards for exhaust rate.
G – For continuous system operation, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used.
H – Rate is per showerhead.

TABLE 160.2-D – Airstreams or Sources
[ASHRAE 62.1:Table 5.16.1]

~~*TABLE 160.2-D – Airstreams or Sources*~~

~~*[ASHRAE 62.1:Table 5.16.1]*~~

Description	Air Class
Commercial kitchen grease hoods	4
Commercial kitchen hoods other than grease	3
Hydraulic elevator machine room	2

Table 160.2-E: Demand-Controlled Local Ventilation Exhaust Airflow Rates and Capture Efficiency

Application	**Compliance Criteria**
Enclosed Kitchen or Nonenclosed Kitchen	Vented range hood, including appliance-range hood combinations shall meet either the capture efficiency (CE) or the airflow rate specified in Table 160.2-G as applicable.
Enclosed Kitchen	Other kitchen exhaust fans, including downdraft: 300 cfm (150 L/s) or a capacity of 5 ACH
Nonenclosed Kitchen	Other kitchen exhaust fans, including downdraft: 300 cfm (150 L/s)
Bathroom	50 cfm (25 L/s)

Table 160.2-F: Continuous Local Ventilation Exhaust Airflow Rates

Application	**Airflow**
Enclosed kitchen	5 ach, based on kitchen volume
Bathroom	20 cfm (10 L/s)

Table 160.2-G: Kitchen Range Hood Airflow Rates (cfm) and ASTM E3087 Capture Efficiency (CE) Ratings According to Dwelling Unit Floor Area and Kitchen Range Fuel Type

Dwelling Unit Floor Area (ft²)	**Hood Over Electric Range**	**Hood Over Natural Gas Range**
>1500	50% CE or 110 cfm	70% CE or 180 cfm
>1000 - 1500	50% CE or 110 cfm	80% CE or 250 cfm
750 - 1000	55% CE or 130 cfm	85% CE or 280 cfm
<750	65% CE or 160 cfm	85% CE or 280 cfm

Table 160.2-H: Prescriptive Ventilation System Duct Sizing [ASHRAE 62.2:Table 5-3]

Fan Airflow Rating, cfm at minimum static pressure[f] 0.25 in. water (L/s at minimum 62.5 Pa)	≤50 (25)	≤80 (40)	≤100 (50)	≤125 (60)	≤150 (70)	≤175 (85)	≤200 (95)	≤250 (120)	≤350 (165)	≤400 (190)	≤450 (210)	≤700 (330)	≤800 (380)
Minimum Duct Diameter, in. (mm) [a,b] For Rigid duct	4[e] (100)	5 (125)	5 (125)	6 (150)	6 (150)	7 (180)	7 (180)	8 (205)	9 (230)	10 (255)	10 (255)	12 (305)	12[d] (305)
Minimum Duct Diameter, in. (mm) [a,b] For Flex duct [c]	4 (100)	5 (125)	6 (150)	6 (150)	7 (150)	7 (180)	8 (205)	8 (205)	9 (230)	10 (255)	NP	NP	NP

Footnotes for Table 150.0-H:

a. For noncircular ducts, calculate the diameter as four times the cross-sectional area divided by the perimeter.b. NP = application of the prescriptive table is not permitted for this scenario.

c. Use of this table for verification of flex duct systems requires flex duct to be fully extended and any flex duct elbows to have a minimum bend radius to duct diameter ratio of 1.0.

d. For this scenario, use of elbows is not permitted.

e. For this scenario, 4 in. (100 mm) oval duct shall be permitted, provided the minor axis of the oval is greater than or equal to 3 in. (75 mm)

f. When a vented range hood utilizes a capture efficiency rating to demonstrate compliance with 160.2(b)2Avic2, a static pressure greater than or equal to 0.25 in. of water at the rating point shall not be required, and the airflow listed in the approved directory corresponding to the compliant capture efficiency rating point shall be applied to Table 160.2-H for determining compliance.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.3 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE CONDITIONING SYSTEMS IN MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS

Space conditioning systems serving multifamily dwelling units and common use areas shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(a) through 160.3(c).

(a) **Controls –** Space conditioning systems serving dwelling units and common use areas in multifamily buildings shall comply with applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(a)1 or 160.3(a)2.

1. **Dwelling Unit ~~and common living area~~ Thermostats.** All heating or cooling systems, including heat pumps, not controlled by a central energy management control system (EMCS) shall have a setback thermostat, as specified in Section 110.2(c).
2. **Common ~~Services~~ Use Area Controls**. Heating or cooling systems serving common ~~services~~ use areas of multifamily buildings shall comply with application requirements of Sections 160.3(a)2A through 160.3(a)2J.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2: Heating or cooling systems exclusively serving dwelling units and common use areas providing shared provisions for living, eating, cooking, or sanitation to dwelling units that would otherwise lack these provisions may instead comply with Section 160.3(a)1.

A. **Thermostatic Controls for Each Zone.** The supply of heating and cooling energy to each space-conditioning zone shall be controlled by an individual thermostatic control that responds to temperature within the zone and that meets the applicable requirements of Section 160.3(a)2B. An Energy Management Control System (EMCS) may be installed to comply with the requirements of one or more thermostatic controls if it complies with all applicable requirements for each thermostatic control.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2A: An independent perimeter heating or cooling system may serve more than one zone without individual thermostatic controls if:

i. All zones are also served by an interior cooling system; and

ii. The perimeter system is designed solely to offset envelope heat losses or gains; and

iii. The perimeter system has at least one thermostatic control for each building orientation of 50 feet or more; and

iv. The perimeter system is controlled by at least one thermostat located in one of the zones served by the system.

B. **Criteria for Zonal Thermostatic Controls.** The individual thermostatic controls required by Section 160.3(a)2A shall meet the following requirements as applicable:

i. Where used to control comfort heating, the thermostatic controls shall be capable of being set, locally or remotely, down to 55°F or lower.

ii. Where used to control comfort cooling, the thermostatic controls shall be capable of being set, locally or remotely, up to 85°F or higher.

iii. Where used to control both comfort heating and comfort cooling, the thermostatic controls shall meet Items i and ii and shall be capable of providing a temperature range or dead band of at least 5°F within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the zone is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2Biii: Systems with thermostats that require manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.

iv. Thermostatic controls for all single zone air conditioners and heat pumps shall comply with the requirements of Section 110.2(c) and 110.12(a) and, if equipped with DDC to the Zone level, with the Automatic Demand Shed Controls of Section 110.12(b).

EXCEPTION Section 160.3(a)2Biv: Package terminal air conditioners, package terminal heat pumps, room air conditioners, and room air-conditioner heat pumps.

C. **Heat Pump Controls.** All heat pumps with supplementary electric resistance heaters shall be installed with controls that comply with Section 110.2(b).

D. **Shut-off and Reset Controls for Space-conditioning Systems.** Each space-conditioning system shall be installed with controls that comply with the following:

i. The control shall be capable of automatically shutting off the system during periods of nonuse and shall have:

a. An automatic time switch control device complying with Section 110.9, with an accessible manual override that allows operation of the system for up to 4 hours; or

b. An occupancy sensor; or

c. A 4-hour timer that can be manually operated.

ii. The control shall automatically restart and temporarily operate the system as required to maintain:

a. A setback heating thermostat setpoint if the system provides mechanical heating; and

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2Diia: Thermostat setback controls are not required in multifamily buildings in areas where the Winter Median of Extremes outdoor air temperature determined in accordance with Section 170.2(c)1C is greater than 32°F.

b. A setup cooling thermostat setpoint if the system provides mechanical cooling.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2Diib: Thermostat setup controls are not required in multifamily buildings in areas where the Summer Design Dry Bulb 0.5 percent temperature determined in accordance with Section 170.2(c)1C is less than 100°F.

iii. **Occupant~~cy~~ Sensing Zone Controls**. ~~Space conditioning system zones serving only space(s) that are required to have occupant sensing controls in accordance with Section 160.5(b)4C, and where the Table 160.2-B occupancy category permits ventilation air to be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode, shall meet the following:~~ Where the system providing space conditioning also provides the ventilation required by Section 160.2(c)3 and includes occupant sensor ventilation control as specified in Section 160.2(c)5E, the occupant sensing zone controls shall additionally comply with the following:

a. Occupancy sensing zone controls shall comply with the Occupant Sensor Ventilation Control Device requirements of Section 160.3(c)5E and allow preoccupancy ventilation requirements of Section 160.3(c)5B; and

b. ~~Occupancy sensing zone controls shall comply with Section 110.9(b)4 and be capable of indicating a space is unoccupied no more than 20 minutes after a space has been vacated; and~~

~~c. When a zone is scheduled to be occupied, and occupancy sensing controls in all space(s) served by the zone indicate the spaces are unoccupied, the zone shall be placed in occupied standby mode; and~~

b~~d~~. In ~~Within~~ 5 minutes or less after ~~of~~ entering occupied-standby mode as described in Section 160.2(c)5:

I. Automatically setup the operating cooling temperature set point by 2°F or more and setback the operating heating temperature set point by 2°F or more; or

II. For multiple zone systems with Direct Digital Controls (DDC) to the zone level, setup the operating cooling temperature setpoint by 0.5°F or more and setback the operating heating temperature setpoint by 0.5°F or more.

ce. In ~~Within~~ 5 minutes or less after ~~of~~ entering occupied-standby mode, ~~all airflow~~ mechanical ventilation to the zone shall ~~be shut~~ remain off whenever the space temperature is between the active heating and cooling setpoints.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2Diii: Zones which are only ventilated by a natural ventilation system in accordance with Section 120.1(c)2.

EXCEPTION 1 to Sections 160.3(a)2Di, ii, and iii: Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that the system serves an area that must operate continuously.

EXCEPTION 2 to Sections 160.3(a)2Di, ii, and iii: Systems with full load demands of 2 kW or less, if they have a readily accessible manual shut-off switch.

E. **Dampers for Air Supply and Exhaust Equipment.** Outdoor air supply and exhaust equipment shall be installed with dampers that automatically close upon fan shutdown.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(a)2E: Equipment that serves an area that must operate continuously.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(a)2E: Gravity and other nonelectrical equipment that has readily accessible manual damper controls.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.3(a)2E: At combustion air intakes and shaft vents.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.3(a)2E: Where prohibited by other provisions of law.

F. **Isolation Area Devices**. Each space-conditioning system serving multiple zones with a combined conditioned floor area of more than 25,000 square feet shall be designed, installed, and controlled to serve isolation areas.

i. Each zone, or any combination of zones not exceeding 25,000 square feet, shall be a separate isolation area.

ii. Each isolation area shall be provided with isolation devices, such as valves or dampers that allow the supply of heating or cooling to be reduced or shut-off independently of other isolation areas.

iii. Each isolation area shall be controlled by a device meeting the requirements of Section 160.3(a)2Di.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2F: Zones designed to be conditioned continuously.

G. **Automatic Demand Shed Controls.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for Automatic Demand Shed Controls.

H. **Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD).** All newly-installed air handlers with a mechanical cooling capacity over33,000 Btu/hr and an installed air economizer shall include a stand-alone or integrated Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) system in accordance with Subsections 160.3(a)2Hi through 160.3(a)2Hviii

i. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation: outside air, supply air, and when required for differential economizer operation, a return air sensor; and

ii. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F over the range of 40°F to 80°F; and

iii. The controller shall have the capability of displaying the value of each sensor; and

iv. The controller shall provide system status by indicating the following conditions:

a. Free cooling available;

b. Economizer enabled;

c. Compressor enabled;

d. Heating enabled, if the system is capable of heating; and

e. Mixed air low limit cycle active.

v. The unit controller shall allow manual initiation of each operating mode so that the operation of cooling systems, economizers, fans, and heating systems can be independently tested and verified; and

vi. Faults shall be reported in one of the following ways:

a. Reported to an Energy Management Control System regularly monitored by facility personnel.

b. Annunciated locally on one or more zone thermostats, or a device within five (5) feet of zone thermostat(s), clearly visible, at eye level, and meeting the following requirements:

I. On the thermostat, device, or an adjacent written sign, display instructions to contact appropriate building personnel or an HVAC technician; and

II. In buildings with multiple tenants, the annunciation shall either be within property management offices or in a common space accessible by the property or building manager.

c. Reported to a fault management application which automatically provides notification of the fault to remote HVAC service provider.

vii. The FDD system shall detect the following faults:

a. Air temperature sensor failure/fault;

b. Not economizing when it should;

c. Economizing when it should not;

d. Damper not modulating; and

e. Excess outdoor air.

viii. The FDD System shall be certified by the Energy Commission as meeting requirements of Sections 160.3(a)2Hi through160.3(a)2Hvii in accordance with Section 110.0 and JA6.3.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2Hviii: FDD algorithms based in Direct Digital Control systems are not required to be certified to the Energy Commission.

I. **Direct Digital Controls (DDC).** Direct Digital Controls to the zone shall be provided as specified by Table 160.3-C.

i. The provided DDC system shall meet the control logic requirements of Sections 160.3(a)2E and 160.3(a)2G, and be capable of the following:

ii. Monitoring zone and system demand for fan pressure, pump pressure, heating and cooling;

iii. Transferring zone and system demand information from zones to air distribution system controllers and from air distribution systems to heating and cooling plant controllers;

iv. Automatically detecting the zones and systems that may be excessively driving the reset logic and generate an alarm or other indication to the system operator;

v. Readily allow operator removal of zones(s) from the reset algorithm;

vi. For new buildings, trending and graphically displaying input and output points; and

vii. Resetting heating and cooling setpoints in all non-critical zones upon receipt of a signal from a centralized contact or software point as described in Section 160.3(a)2G.

J. **Optimum Start/Stop Controls.** Space conditioning systems with DDC to the zone level shall have optimum start/stop controls. The control algorithm shall, as a minimum, be a function of the difference between space temperature and occupied setpoint, the outdoor air temperature, and the amount of time prior to scheduled occupancy. Mass radiant floor slab systems shall incorporate floor temperature onto the optimum start algorithm.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(a)2J: Systems that must operate continuously.

(b) Dwelling Unit Space Conditioning and Air Distribution Systems.

1. **Building Cooling and Heating Loads.** Building heating and cooling loads shall be determined using a method based on any one of the following, using cooling and heating loads as two of the criteria for equipment sizing and selection:

   A. The ASHRAE Handbook, Equipment Volume, Applications Volume, and Fundamentals Volume; or

   B. The SMACNA Residential Comfort System Installation Standards Manual; or

   C. The ACCA Manual J.

   NOTE: Heating systems are required to have a minimum heating capacity adequate to meet the minimum requirements of the CBC.

2. **Design conditions**. Design conditions shall be determined in accordance with the following:

   A. For the purpose of sizing the space-conditioning (HVAC) system, the indoor design temperatures shall be 68°F for heating and 75°F for cooling.

   B. Outdoor design conditions shall be selected from Reference Joint Appendix JA2, which is based on data from the ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X.

   C. The outdoor design temperatures for heating shall be no lower than the Heating Winter Median of Extremes values.

   D. The outdoor design temperatures for cooling shall be no greater than the 1.0 percent Cooling Dry Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb values.

3. **Outdoor Condensing Units**.

   A. **Clearances.** Installed air conditioner and heat pump outdoor condensing units shall have a clearance of at least five (5) feet (1.5 meters) from the outlet of any dryer vent.

   B. **Liquid Line Drier.** Installed air conditioner and heat pump systems shall be equipped with liquid line filter driers if required, as specified by manufacturer's instructions.

4. **Central Forced-Air Heating Furnaces**.

   A. **Temperature Rise**. Central forced-air heating furnace installations shall be configured to operate in conformance with the furnace manufacturer's maximum inlet-to-outlet temperature rise specifications.

5. **Air-Distribution and Ventilation System Ducts, Plenums, and Fans.**

   A. **CMC Compliance.**

      i. All air-distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, mechanical closets and air-handler boxes, shall meet the requirements of the CMC Sections 601.0, 602.0, 603.0, 604.0, 605.0 and ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition, incorporated herein by reference.

      ii. Portions of supply-air and return-air ducts and plenums of a space heating or cooling system shall ~~either~~ be insulated ~~to~~in accordance with either subsection a or b below:

      a~~a. a.~~ Ducts shall have a minimum installed level of R-6.0, or

      ~~b.~~

      EXCEPTION to 160.3(b)5Aiia: Portions of the duct system located in conditioned space and not in an attic unless it is directly conditioned~~below theceiling separating the occupiable space from the attic~~ are not required to be insulated if all of the following conditions are met:

      i. The non-insulated portion of the duct system is located entirely inside the building's thermal envelope as confirmed by visual inspection.

Commented [AG14]: MF Restructuring

Commented [AG15]: MF Restructuring

ii. At all locations where non-insulated portions of the duct system penetrates into unconditioned space, the penetration shall be draft stopped compliant with CFC sections 703.1 and 704.1 and air-sealed to the construction materials that are penetrated, using materials compliant with CMC section E502.4.2 to prevent air infiltration into the cavity. All connections in unconditioned space are insulated to a minimum of R-6.0 as confirmed by visual inspection.

~~b. Ducts do not require insulation a minimum installed level of R-4.2 when the duct system is located entirely in conditioned space. For buildings with three or fewer habitable stories, duct systems located entirely in conditioned space shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(b)Aii:** Portions of the duct system located in wall cavities are not required to be insulated if the following conditions are met:~~

~~a. The cavity, duct or plenum is located entirely inside the building's thermal envelope as confirmed by visual inspection.~~

~~b. At all locations where portions of non-insulated cavities, ducts, or plenums make a transition into unconditioned space, the transition shall be air-sealed to prevent air infiltration into the cavity and be insulated to a minimum of R-6 as confirmed by visual inspection.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(b)Aii:** Portions of the duct system completely exposed and surrounded by directly conditioned space are not required to be insulated.~~

iii. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened.

iv. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A or UL 181B or aerosol sealant that meets the requirements of UL 723. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.

v. Building cavities, support platforms for air handlers, and plenums designed or constructed with materials other than sealed sheet metal, duct board or flexible duct shall not be used for conveying conditioned air. Building cavities and support platforms may contain ducts. Ducts installed in cavities and support platforms shall not be compressed to cause reductions in the cross-sectional area of the ducts.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(b)5A: Ducts and fans integral to a wood heater or fireplace.

B. Factory-Fabricated Duct Systems.

i. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections, and splices, and be labeled as complying with UL 181. UL 181 testing may be performed by UL laboratories or a laboratory approved by the Executive Director.

ii. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181A.

iii. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181B.

iv. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

C. Field-Fabricated Duct Systems.

i. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.

ii. Mastic sealants and mesh.

a. Sealants shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.

  - b. Sealants for interior applications shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C731 and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.
  - c. Sealants for exterior applications shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C731, C732, and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.
  - d. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.
- iii. Pressure-sensitive tape. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.
- iv. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.
- v. Drawbands used with flexible duct.
  - a. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.
  - b. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.
  - c. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.
- vi. Aerosol-sealant closures.
  - a. Aerosol sealants shall meet the requirements of UL 723 and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.
  - b. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.

D. **Duct Insulation R-value Ratings.** All duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components) and tested C-values at 75°F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C518 or ASTM C177, incorporated herein by reference, and certified pursuant to Section 110.8.

E. **Duct Insulation Thickness.** The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:

- i. For duct board, duct liner, and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used**.**
- ii. For duct wrap, installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
- iii. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.

F. **Duct Labeling.** Insulated flexible duct products installed to meet this requirement shall include labels, in maximum intervals of 3 feet, showing the thermal performance R-value for the duct insulation itself (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components), based on the tests in Section 160.3(b)5D and the installed thickness determined by Section 160.3(b)5Eiii**.**

G. **Backdraft Dampers.** All fan systems, regardless of volumetric capacity, that exchange air between the building conditioned space and the outside of the building shall be provided with backdraft or automatic dampers to prevent unintended air leakage through the fan system when the fan system is not operating.

H. **Gravity Ventilation Dampers.** All gravity ventilating systems that serve conditioned space shall be provided with either automatic or readily accessible, manually operated dampers in all openings to the outside except combustion inlet and outlet air openings and elevator shaft vents.

I. **Protection of Insulation.** Insulation shall be protected from damage, including that due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind but not limited to the following: Insulation exposed to weather shall be suitable for outdoor service (e.g., protected by aluminum, sheet metal, painted canvas, or plastic cover).

Cellular foam insulation shall be protected as above or painted with a coating that is water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material.

J. **Porous Inner Core Flex Duct.** Flexible ducts having porous inner cores shall have a non-porous layer or air barrier between the inner core and the outer vapor barrier.

K. **Duct System Sealing and Leakage Testing.** When space conditioning systems utilize forced air duct systems to supply conditioned air to an individual dwelling unit, the ducts shall be sealed, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1. Air handler airflow for calculation of duct leakage rate compliance targets shall be determined according to methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.2.

For multifamily dwellings with the air-handling unit installed and the ducts connected directly to the air handler, regardless of duct system location:

i. The total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 12 percent of the air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or

ii. The duct system leakage to outside shall not exceed 6 percent of the air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(b)5K: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Provider data registry requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not required for multifamily dwelling units in buildings four habitable stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(b)5K: Multifamily dwelling units in buildings four habitable stories and greater in Climate Zone 1, 3, 5, and 7.

L. **System Airflow Rate and Fan Efficacy.** Space conditioning systems that utilize forced air ducts to supply cooling to an individual dwelling unit shall:

i. **Static Pressure Probe.** Have a hole for the placement of a static pressure probe (HSPP), or a permanently installed static pressure probe (PSPP) in the supply plenum downstream of the air conditioning evaporator coil. The size, location, and labeling of the HSPP or PSPP shall conform to the requirements specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.1.1 as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing; and

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(b)5Li: Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for hole location in Reference Residential Appendix Figure RA3.3-1 shall not be required to provide holes as described in Figure RA3.3-1.

ii. **Single Zone Central Forced Air Systems**. Demonstrate, in every control mode, airflow greater than or equal to 350 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity through the return grilles, and an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to the maximum W/cfm specified in subsections a or b below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

a. 0.45 W/cfm for gas furnace air-handling units.

b. 0.58 W/cfm for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(b)5Lii: Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE 160.3-A or 160.3-B as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements specified by Section 160.2(b)1Div for the system air filter(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLE 160.3-A or 160.3-B.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(b)5Lii: Multispeed compressor systems or variable speed compressor systems shall verify airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) for system operation at the maximum compressor speed and the maximum air handler fan speed.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.3(b)5Lii: Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

iii. **Zonally Controlled Central Forced Air Systems.** Zonally controlled central forced air cooling systems shall be capable of simultaneously delivering, in every zonal control mode, an airflow from the dwelling, through the air handler fan and delivered to the dwelling, of greater than or equal to 350 CFM per ton of nominal cooling capacity, and operating at an air-handling unit fan efficacy of less than or equal to the maximum W/cfm specified in subsections a or b below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

a. 0.45 W/cfm for gas furnace air-handling units.

b. 0.58 W/cfm for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(b)5Liii: Multispeed or variable speed compressor systems, or single speed compressor systems that utilize the performance compliance approach, shall demonstrate compliance with the airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) requirements of Section 160.3(b)5Liii by operating the system at maximum compressor capacity and system fan speed with all zones calling for conditioning, rather than in every zonal control mode.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(b)5Liii: Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

iv. **Small Duct High Velocity Forced Air Systems.** Demonstrate, in every control mode, airflow greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity through the return grilles, and an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to 0.62 W/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(b)5Liv: Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE 160.3-A or 160.3-B as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements specified by Section 160.2(b)1Div for the system air filter(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLE 160.3-A or 160.3-B.

EXCEPTION 2 Section to 160.3(b)5Liv: Multispeed compressor systems or variable speed compressor systems shall verify airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) for system operation at the maximum compressor speed and the maximum air handler fan speed.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(b)5L: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Provider data registry requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not required for multifamily dwelling units in buildings four habitable stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(b)5L: Multifamily dwelling units in buildings four habitable stories and greater in Climate Zone 1.

6. Piping for space conditioning systems, solar water-heating system collector loop, and distribution piping for steam and hydronic heating system, shall meet the requirements of Section 160.3(c)1.

(c) Fluid Distribution Systems; Common ~~Services~~ Use Area Space-Conditioning Systems. Multifamily buildings shall complywith the applicable requirements of Section 160.3(a)1. Multifamily common ~~services~~ use areas shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(a)2A through160.3(a)2J.

Commented [ME16]: Multifamily restructuring

1. Pipe Insulation. Multifamily buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(c)1A through 160.3(c)1D.

A. General Requirements. The piping conditions listed below for space-conditioning systems with fluid normal operating temperatures listed in 160.3-D, shall have at least the amount of insulation specified in Section 160.3(c)1C:

i. Space Cooling Systems. All refrigerant suction, chilled water, and brine fluid distribution systems.

ii. Space Heating Systems. All refrigerant, steam, steam condensate and hot water fluid distribution systems.

B. Insulation conductivity shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C335 at the mean temperature listed in 160.3-D, and shall be rounded to the nearest 1/100 Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F. Fluid distribution systems include all elements that are in series with the fluid flow, such as pipes, pumps, valves, strainers, coil u-bends, and air separators, but not including elements that are not in series with the fluid flow, such as expansion tanks, fill lines, chemical feeders, and drains.

C. Insulation Protection. Pipe Insulation shall be protected from damage due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind. Protection shall, at minimum, include the following:

i. Pipe insulation exposed to weather shall be protected by a cover suitable for outdoor service. The cover shall be water retardant and provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be used to provide this protection.

ii. Pipe insulation covering chilled water piping and refrigerant suction piping located outside the conditioned space shall include, or be protected by, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. All penetrations and joints shall be sealed.

iii. Pipe insulation buried below grade must be installed in a water proof and non-crushable casing or sleeve.

D. Insulation Thickness

i. For insulation with a conductivity in the range shown in 160.3-D for the applicable fluid temperature range, the insulation shall have the applicable minimum thickness or R-value shown in 160.3-D.

ii. For insulation with a conductivity outside the range shown in 160.3-D for the applicable fluid temperature range, the insulation shall have a minimum R-value shown in 160.3-D or thickness as calculated with Equation 160.3-A:

$$T = PR\left[\left(1+\frac{t}{PR}\right)^{\frac{K}{k}}-1\right]$$ (Equation 160.3-A)

WHERE:

T = Minimum insulation thickness for material with conductivity K, inches.

PR = Pipe actual outside radius, inches.

t = Insulation thickness from 160.3-D, inches.

K = Conductivity of alternate material at the mean rating temperature indicated in 160.3-D for the applicable fluid temperature range, in Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.

k = The lower value of the conductivity range listed in 160.3-D for the applicable fluid temperature range, Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.3(c)1: Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.3(c)1: Piping that conveys fluids with a design operating temperature range between 60°F and 105°F.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.3(c)1: Where the heat gain or heat loss to or from piping without insulation will not increase building source energy use.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.3(c)1: Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Metal piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing.

2. **Requirements for Air Distribution System, Ducts, and Plenum.** Multifamily common ~~services~~ use areas shall complywith the applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(c)2A through 160.3(c)2F.

Commented [ME17]: Multifamily restructuring

A. **CMC Compliance.** All air distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, building cavities, mechanical closets, air-handler boxes and support platforms used as ducts or plenums, shall meet the requirements of the CMC Sections 601.0, 602.0, 603.0, 604.0, 605.0, and ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition, incorporated herein by reference. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, aerosol sealant, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.

B. Portions of supply-air and return-air ducts conveying heated or cooled air located in one or more of the following spaces shall be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-8:

i. Outdoors; or

ii. In a space between the roof and an insulated ceiling; or

iii. In a space directly under a roof with fixed vents or openings to the outside or unconditioned spaces; or

iv. In an unconditioned crawlspace; or

v. In other unconditioned spaces.

Portions of supply-air ducts that are not in one of these spaces, including ducts buried in concrete slab, shall be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-4.2 or be enclosed in directly conditioned space.

C. Duct and Plenum Materials.

i. Factory-fabricated duct systems.

a. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections, and splices, and be labeled as complying with UL 181. UL 181 testing may be performed by UL laboratories or a laboratory approved by the Executive Director.

b. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181A.

c. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181B.

d. Ductwork and plenums with pressure class ratings shall be constructed to Seal Class A. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.3(c)2Cid: Ductwork located in occupied space and exposed to view.

ii. Field-fabricated duct systems.

a. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.

b. Mastic sealants and mesh.

I. Sealants shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.

II. Sealants for interior applications shall pass ASTM C731 (extrudability after aging) and D2202 (slump test on vertical surfaces), incorporated herein by reference.

III. Sealants for exterior applications shall pass ASTM C731, C732 (artificial weathering test), and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.

IV. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.

c. Pressure-sensitive tape. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.

d. Ductwork and plenums with pressure class ratings shall be constructed to Seal Class A. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

e. Drawbands used with flexible duct.

I. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.

II. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.

III. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.

f. Aerosol-sealant closures.

I. Aerosol sealants shall meet the requirements of UL 723 and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.

II. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.

D. All duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only (excluding air films, vapor retarders, or other duct components) and tested C-values at 75°F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C518 or ASTM C177, incorporated herein by reference, and certified pursuant to Section 110.8.

E. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:

  i. For duct board, duct liner, and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.

  ii. For duct wrap, installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.

  iii. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.

F. Insulated flexible duct products installed to meet this requirement must include labels, in maximum intervals of 3 feet, showing the thermal performance R-value for the duct insulation itself (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components), based on the tests in Section160.3(c)2D and the installed thickness determined by Section 160.3(c)2Eiii.

G. Insulation shall be protected from damage, including that due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind but not limited to the following: Insulation exposed to weather shall be suitable for outdoor service e.g., protected by aluminum, sheet metal, painted canvas, or plastic cover. Cellular foam insulation shall be protected as above or painted with a coating that is water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material.

H. Duct systems shall be tested in accordance with i or ii below

  i. New duct systems that meet the criteria in Subsections a, b and c below or ductwork that is part of a system that meets the criteria of Section 180.2(b)2B shall be sealed to a leakage rate not to exceed 6 percent of the nominal air handler airflow rate as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with the applicable procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2;

    a. The duct system provides conditioned air to an occupiable space for a constant volume, single zone, space-conditioning system; and

    b. The space conditioning system serves less than 5,000 square feet of conditioned floor area; and

    c. The combined surface area of the ducts located in the following spaces is more than 25 percent of the total surface area of the entire duct system:

      I. Outdoors; or

      II. In a space directly under a roof that has a U-factor greater than the U-factor of the ceiling, or if the roof does not meet the requirements of Section 170.2(a)1; or

      III. In a space directly under a roof that has fixed vents or openings to the outside or unconditioned spaces; or

      IV. In an unconditioned crawlspace; or

      V. In other unconditioned spaces.

  ii. All duct systems that do not meet the criteria in Section 160.3(c)2H shall meet the duct leakage testing requirements of CMC Section 603.10.1.

(d)~~3.~~Mechanical Acceptance Testing. ~~Multifamily common services areas shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(c)3A and 160.3(c)3B.~~

1.A. Common Use Areas. Before an occupancy permit is granted, the following ~~equipment~~ systems and ~~systems~~ equipmentserving multifamily common use areas shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. These systems and equipment shall also

Commented [ME18]: Multifamily Restructuring comply with the applicable requirements of Section 160.3(d)3. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements:

A~~i~~. Outdoor air ventilation systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.1

B~~ii~~. Constant volume, single zone air conditioning and heat pump unit controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.2.

C~~iii~~. Duct systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.3 where either:

  a. They are new duct systems; or

  b. They are part of an altered system.

D~~iv~~. Air economizers shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.4.

EXCEPTION to Section160.3(~~c~~d)1D~~3Aiv~~: Air economizers installed by the HVAC system manufacturer and certified to the Commission as being factory calibrated and tested are exempt from the Functional Testing section of the Air Economizer Controls acceptance test as described in NA7.5.4.2.

E~~v~~. Demand control ventilation systems required by Section 160.2(c)3 shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.5

F~~vi~~. Supply fan variable flow controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.6

G~~vii~~.Hydronic system variable flow controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.7 and NA7.5.9

H~~viii~~. Boiler or chillers that require isolation controls as specified by Section 170.2(c)4Iii or 170.2(c)4Iiii shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.7

I~~ix~~. Hydronic systems with supply water temperature reset controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.8

J~~x~~. Automatic demand shed controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.10.

K~~xi~~. Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) for Packaged Direct-Expansion Units shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.11.

L~~xii~~. Automatic Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) for air handling units and zone terminal units shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.12.

M~~xiii~~. Distributed Energy Storage DX AC Systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.13.

N~~xiv~~. Thermal Energy Storage (TES) Systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.14.

O~~xv~~.Supply air temperature reset controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.15.

P~~xvi~~. Water-cooled chillers served by cooling towers with condenser water reset controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.16.

Q~~xvii~~. When an Energy Management Control System is installed, it shall functionally meet all of the applicable requirements of Part 6.

R~~xviii~~. Occupant Sensing Zone Controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.17.

2. Multifamily Dwelling Units. In multifamily buildings with four or more habitable stories, ~~B~~before an occupancy permit is granted, the following systems and equipment servingmultifamily dwelling units shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. These systems and equipment shall also comply with the appliable requirements of Section 160.3(d)3. A certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements:

A.~~xviv Multifamily building In multifamily buildings with four or more habitable stories, d~~Dwelling unit ventilationsystems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.18.1.

B.~~xx. Multifamily building In multifamily buildings with four or more habitable stories, d~~Dwelling unit enclosure leakage shall be tested in accordance with NA7.18.2 when exhaust or supply ventilation systems are used for compliance with whole-~~building~~ dwelling unit ventilation requirements as specified in 160.2(b)2Aivb2.

Commented [GM19]: MF IAQ
Suggest moving up the four or more habitable stories into intro language it's more succinct. Also helps clarify that acceptance testing is only needed in highrise MF for these measures.

C.~~xxi~~ Multifamily building central ventilation ducts ~~in multifamily buildings with four or more habitable stories~~ shall be leak tested in accordance with NA7.18.3.

D.~~xxii~~ Multifamily building central ventilation system heat recovery or energy recovery systems ~~in multifamily buildings with four or more habitable stories~~ shall be tested in accordance with NA7.18.4.

3~~B~~. When certification is required by Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.2, the acceptance testing specified by Section 160.3(~~c~~d)~~3A~~ 1 and 2 shall be performed by a Certified Mechanical Acceptance Test Technician (CMATT). If the CMATT is operating as an employee, the CMATT shall be employed by a Certified Mechanical Acceptance Test Employer. The CMATT shall disclose on the Certificate of Acceptance a valid CMATT certification identification number issued by an approved Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider. The CMATT shall complete all Certificate of Acceptance documentation in accordance with the applicable requirements in Section 10-103(a)4.

TABLE 160.3-A: Return Duct Sizing for Single Return Duct Systems

Return duct length shall not exceed 30 feet and shall contain no more than 180 degrees of bend. If the total bending exceeds 90 degrees, one bend shall be a metal elbow.

Return grille devices shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements in Section 160.2(b)1Biv to disclose the grille's design airflow rate and a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) for the air filter when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 680 for the design airflow rate for the return grille.

System Nominal Cooling Capacity (Ton)*	**Return Duct Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)**	**Minimum Total Return Filter Grille Nominal Area (inch^2)**
1.5	16	500
2.0	18	600
2.5	20	800

*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 2.5 tons or less than 1.5 ton

TABLE 160.3-B: Return Duct Sizing for Multiple Return Duct Systems

Each return duct length shall not exceed 30 feet and shall contain no more than 180 degrees of bend. If the total bending exceeds 90 degrees, one bend shall be a metal elbow.

Return grille devices shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements in Section 160.2(b)1Biv to disclose the grille's design airflow rate and a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) for the air filter when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 680 for the design airflow rate for the return grille.

System Nominal Cooling Capacity (Ton)*	**Return Duct 1 Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)**	**Return Duct 2 Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)**	**Minimum Total Return Filter Grille Nominal Area (inch^2)**
1.5	12	10	500
2.0	14	12	600
2.5	14	14	800
3.0	16	14	900
3.5	16	16	1000
4.0	18	18	1200
5.0	20	20	1500

*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 5.0 tons or less than 1.5 tons.

TABLE 160.3-C DDC Applications and Qualifications

Building Status	**Applications**	**Qualifications**
Newly Constructed Buildings	Air handling system and all zones served by the system	Individual systems supplying more than three zones and with design heating or cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h and larger
Newly Constructed Buildings	Chilled water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Newly Constructed Buildings	Hot water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design heating capacity of 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Additions or Alterations	Zone terminal unit such as VAV box	Where existing zones served by the same air handling, chilled water, or hot water systems that have DDC
Additions or Alterations	Air handling system or fan coil	Where existing air handling system(s) and fan coil(s) served by the same chilled or hot water plant have DDC
Additions or Alterations	New air handling system and all new zones served by the system	Individual systems with design heating or cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h and larger and supplying more than three zones and more than 75 percent of zones are new
Additions or Alterations	New or upgraded chilled water plant	Where all chillers are new and plant design cooling capacity is 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Additions or Alterations	New or upgraded hot water plant	Where all boilers are new and plant design heating capacity is 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger

TABLE 160.3-D PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS

Fluid Operating Temperature Range (°F)	Insulation Conductivity			Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches)				
	Conductivity (in Btu·in/h·ft²·°F)	Mean Rating Temperature (°F)		**< 1**	**1 to <1.5**	**1.5 to < 4**	**4 to < 8**	**8 and larger**
Space heating (Steam, Steam Condensate, Refrigerant, Space Heating)				**Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)**				
Above 350	0.32-0.34	250	Inches	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
			R-value	R 37	R 41	R 37	R 27	R 23
251-350	0.29-0.32	200	Inches	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
			R-value	R 24	R 34	R 35	R 26	R 22
201-250	0.27-0.30	150	Inches	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
			R-value	R 21	R 20	R 17.5	R 17	R 14.5
141-200	0.25-0.29	125	Inches	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
			R-value	R 11.5	R 11	R 14	R 11	R 10
105-140	0.22-0.28	100	Inches	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
			R-value	R 7.7	R 12.5	R 11	R 9	R 8
Fluid Operating Temperature Range (°F)	**Insulation Conductivity**			**Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches)**				
	Conductivity (in Btu·in/h·ft²·°F)	**Mean Rating Temperature (°F)**		**< 1**	**1 to <1.5**	**1.5 to < 4**	**4 to < 8**	**8 and larger**
Space cooling systems (chilled water, refrigerant and brine)				**Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)¹**				
40-60	0.21-0.27	75	Inches	0.75	0.75	1.0	1.0	1.0
			R-value	R 6	R 5	R 7	R 6	R 5
Below 40	0.20-0.26	50	Inches	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
			R-value	R 8.5	R 14	R 12	R 10	R 9
~~Footnote to TABLE 160.3-D:~~ ~~1. These thicknesses are based on energy efficiency considerations only. Issues such as water vapor permeability or surface condensation sometimes require vapor retarders or additional insulation.~~								

Footnote to TABLE 160.3-D:

1. These thicknesses are based on energy efficiency considerations only. Issues such as water vapor permeability or surface condensation sometimes require vapor retarders or additional insulation.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.4 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR WATER HEATING SYSTEMS

(a) Systems using gas or propane water heaters to serve individual dwelling units shall ~~include the following components:~~designate a space at least 2.5 feet by 2.5 feet wide and 7 feet tall suitable for the future installation of a heat pump water heater (HPWH) by meeting either 1 or 2 below. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the California Electrical Code:

1. If the designated space is within 3 feet from the water heater, then this space shall include the following:

   A. A dedicated 125 volt, 20 amp electrical receptacle that is connected to the electric panel with a 120/240 volt 3 conductor, 10 AWG copper branch circuit, within 3 feet from the water heater and accessible to the water heater with no obstructions. ~~In addition, all of the following:~~

   B. Both ends of the unused conductor shall be labeled with the word “spare” and be electrically isolated; and

   C. A reserved single pole circuit breaker space in the electrical panel adjacent to the circuit breaker for the branch circuit in A above and labeled with the words “Future 240V Use”; and

~~2. A Category III or IV vent, or a Type B vent with straight pipe between the outside termination and the space where the water heater is installed; and~~

   D. A condensate drain that is no more than 2 inches higher than the base of the installed water heater, and allows natural draining without pump assistance, and

~~3. A gas supply line with a capacity of at least 200,000 Btu/hr.~~

2. If the designated space is more than 3 feet from the water heater, then this space shall include the following:

   A. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit shall be installed within 3 feet from the designated space. The branch circuit shall be rated at 30 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”; and

   B. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future HPWH installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”; and

   C. Either a dedicated cold water supply, or the cold water supply shall pass through the designated HPWH location just before reaching the gas or propane water heater; and

   D. The hot water supply pipe coming out of the gas or propane water heater shall be routed first through the designated HPWH location before serving any fixtures; and

   E. The hot and cold water piping at the designated HPWH location shall be exposed and readily accessible for future installation of a HPWH; and

   F. A condensate drain that is no more than 2 inches higher than the base of the installed water heater, and allows natural draining without pump assistance.

Commented [ME20]: Multifamily restructuring. Mark-up to align with changes to 150.0(n)

(b) Water heating recirculation loops serving multiple dwelling units shall meet the requirements of Section 110.3(c)4.

(c) Solar water-heating systems and collectors shall be certified and rated by the Solar Rating and Certification Corporation (SRCC), the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Research and Testing (IAPMO R&T), or by a listing agency that is approved by the Executive Director.

(d) Instantaneous water heaters with an input rating greater than 6.8 kBTU/hr (2kW) shall meet the requirements of Section 110.3(c)6.~~7~~

(e) Commercial Boilers

~~1.~~ Combustion air positive shut-off shall be provided on all newly installed boilers as follows:

- A. All boilers with an input capacity of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h) and above, in which the boiler is designed to operate with a nonpositive vent static pressure.
- B. All boilers where one stack serves two or more boilers with a total combined input capacity per stack of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h).

~~2.~~ Boiler combustion air fans with motors 10 horsepower or larger shall meet one of the following for newly installed boilers:

- A. The fan motor shall be driven by a variable speed drive, or
- B. The fan motor shall include controls that limit the fan motor demand to no more than 30 percent of the total design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume.

~~3.~~ Newly installed boilers with an input capacity 5 MMBtu/h (5,000,000 Btu/h) and greater shall maintain excess (stack-gas) oxygen concentrations at less than or equal to 5.0 percent by volume on a dry basis over firing rates of 20 percent to 100 percent. Combustion air volume shall be controlled with respect to firing rate or flue gas oxygen concentration. Use of a common gas and combustion air control linkage or jack shaft is prohibited.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.4(e)3: Boilers with steady state full-load ~~thermal~~ combustion efficiency 90 percent or higher.

(f) Insulation for Piping and Tanks

~~1. **Storage tank insulation.** Unfired hot water tanks, such as storage tanks and backup storage tanks for solar water-heating systems, shall be externally wrapped with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-4 or greater.~~

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 160.4(f)1:** Unfired storage tank with internal insulation of at least R-16 and a label on the exterior of the tank showing the insulation R-value.~~

1~~2~~. Piping for multifamily domestic hot water systems, shall be insulated to meet the requirements of Table 160.4-A.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.4(f)1~~2~~: Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.4(f)1~~2~~: Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing. Insulation shall abut securely against all framing members.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.4(f)1~~2~~: Piping installed in interior or exterior walls shall not be required to have pipe insulation if all of the requirements are met for compliance with Quality Insulation Installation (QII) as specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.4(f)1~~2~~: Piping surrounded with a minimum of 1 inch of wall insulation, 2 inches of crawlspace insulation, or 4 inches of attic insulation, shall not be required to have pipe insulation.

TABLE 160.4-A PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS – Multifamily Domestic Hot Water

Fluid Operating Temperature Range (°F)	**Insulation Conductivity**			**Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches)**				
	Conductivity (in Btu·in/h·ft²· °F)	**Mean Rating Temperature (°F)**		**< 1**	**1 to <1.5**	**1.5 to < 4**	**4 to < 8**	**8 and larger**
Multifamily Domestic Hot Water Systems				**Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)**				
105-140^2	0.22-0.28	100	Inches	1.0	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
			R-value	R 7.7	R 12.5	R 16	R 12.5	R 11

~~Footnote to TABLE 160.4-A:~~

~~1. Multifamily and hotel/motel domestic hot water systems with water temperature above 140°F shall use the row in table 120.3-A for the applicable water temperature.~~

Footnote to TABLE 160.4-A:

1. Multifamily and hotel/motel domestic hot water systems with water temperature above 140°F shall use the row in table 120.3-A for the applicable water temperature.

23. Insulation Protection. Pipe Insulation shall be protected from damage due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind. Protection shall, at minimum, include the following:

A. Pipe insulation exposed to weather shall be protected by a cover suitable for outdoor service. The cover shall be water retardant and provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be used to provide this protection.

B. Pipe insulation covering chilled water piping and refrigerant suction piping located outside the conditioned space shall include, or be protected by, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. All penetrations and joints shall be sealed.

C. Pipe insulation buried below grade must be installed in a water proof and non-crushable casing or sleeve.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.5 – MANDATORY LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS FOR INDOOR AND OUTDOOR SPACES

The design and installation of all lighting systems and equipment in multifamily buildings within the scope of Section 100.0(a) shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 160.5. All functional areas except dwelling units ~~and common living areas~~ shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 160.5(b) through 160.5(e).

Commented [ME21]: Multifamily Restructuring

(a) Dwelling Unit ~~and Common Living Area~~ Lighting.

The design and installation of all lighting systems and equipment in multifamily dwelling units ~~and common living areas~~ shall comply with Section 160.5(a). Multifamily dwelling units include dormitory and senior housing dwelling accommodations. Outdoor lighting attached to multifamily buildings and controlled from the inside of a dwelling unit shall comply with the lighting requirements of Section 160.5(a).

1. Luminaire Requirements.

   A. Luminaire Efficacy. All installed luminaires shall meet the requirements in TABLE 160.5-A.

   EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(a)1A: **Integrated device lighting:** Lighting integral to exhaust fans, kitchen range hoods, bath vanity mirrors, and garage door openers, and non-removable lighting attached to ceiling fans.

   EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(a)1A: Navigation Lighting: Night lights, step lights, path lights less than 5 watts.

   EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(a)1A: Cabinet Lighting: Lighting internal to drawers, cabinetry, and linen closets with an efficacy of 45 lumens per watt or greater.

   B. Screw based luminaires. Screw based luminaires shall contain lamps that comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8~~ or may contain lamps as specified in Table 150.0-A including qualified colored lamps, dim-to-warm lamps, tunable-white lamps, color-tunable lamps, and Title 20-compliant LED lamps~~.

   C. Recessed Downlight Luminaire**s** In addition to complying with Section 160.5(a)1A, luminaires recessed into ceilings shall meet all of the following requirements:

      i. Shall not contain screw base lamp sockets; and

      ii. Have a label that certifies the luminaire is airtight with air leakage less than 2.0 cfm at 75 Pascals when tested in accordance with ASTM E283. An exhaust fan housing with integral light shall not be required to be certified airtight; and

      iii. Be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the luminaire housing and ceiling, and have all air leak paths between conditioned and unconditioned spaces sealed with a gasket or caulk, or be installed per manufacturer's instructions to maintain airtightness between the luminaire housing and ceiling; and

      iv. Meet the clearance and installation requirements of California Electrical Code Section 410.116 for recessed luminaires.

   EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(a)1Cii and Iii: Recessed luminaires marked for use in fire-rated installations, and recessed luminaires installed in non-insulated ceilings.

   D. Light Sources in Enclosed or Recessed Luminaires. Lamps and other separable light sources that are not compliant with the JA8 elevated temperature requirements, including marking requirements, shall not be installed in enclosed or recessed luminaires.

E. Blank Electrical Boxes. The number of electrical boxes that are more than 5 feet above the finished floor and do not contain a luminaire or other device shall be no greater than the number of bedrooms. These electrical boxes must be served by a dimmer, vacancy sensor control, low voltage wiring or fan speed control.

2. Indoor Lighting Controls.

A. Lighting shall have readily accessible wall-mounted controls that allow the lighting to be manually turned ON and OFF.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(a)2A: Ceiling fans may provide control of integrated lighting via a remote control.

B. No controls shall bypass a dimmer, occupant sensor or vacancy sensor function where that dimmer or sensor has been installed to comply with Section160.5(a)2.

C. Lighting controls shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 110.9.

D. An Energy Management Control System (EMCS) or a multiscene programmable controller may be used to comply with dimming, occupancy, and lighting control requirements in Section 160.5(a)2 if it provides the functionality of the specified controls in accordance with Section 110.9, and the physical controls specified in in Section 160.5(a)2A.

E. Automatic Off Controls.

i. In bathrooms, garages, laundry rooms, utility rooms, and walk-in closets, at least one installed luminaire shall be controlled by an occupan~~t~~cy or vacancy sensor providing automatic-off functionality. ~~If an occupant sensor is installed, it shall be initially configured to manual-on operation using the manual control required under Section 160.5(a)2A.~~

ii. For lighting internal to drawers and cabinetry with opaque fronts or doors, controls that turn light off when the drawer or door is closed shall be provided.

F. Dimming Controls. Lighting in habitable spaces, including but not limited to living rooms, dining rooms, kitchens, and bedrooms, shall have readily accessible wall-mounted dimming controls that allow the lighting to be manually adjusted up and down. Forward phase cut dimmers controlling LED light sources shall comply with NEMA SSL 7A.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(a)2F: Ceiling fans may provide control of integrated lighting via a remote control.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(a)2F: Luminaires controlled by an occupancy or vacancy sensor providing automatic-off functionality.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(a)2F: Navigation lighting such as night lights, step lights, and path lights less than 5 watts. Lighting internal to drawers and cabinetry with opaque fronts or doors or with automatic off controls.

G. Independent controls. Integrated lighting of exhaust fans shall be controlled independently from the fans. The following shall be controlled separately from ceiling-installed lighting such that one can be turned on without turning on the other:

i. Undercabinet lighting

ii. Undershelf lighting

iii. Interior lighting of display cabinets

iv. Switched outlets

3. **Outdoor Lighting Controls.** In addition to meeting the requirements of Section 160.5(a)1, luminaires providing residential outdoor lighting shall meet the following requirements, as applicable:

   A. Outdoor lighting attached to a building and separately controlled from the inside of a dwelling unit, shall meet the requirement in item i and the requirements in either item ii or item iii:

      i. Controlled by a manual ON and OFF control switch that permits the automatic actions of items ii or iii below; and

      ii. Controlled by a photocell and either a motion sensor or an automatic time switch control; or

      iii. Controlled by an astronomical time clock control~~ or an automatic time switch control~~. ~~Time switch or time clock controls with manual override to ON shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns the automatic control to its normal operation within 6 hours.~~

   Controls that override to ON shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns the automatic control to its normal operation within 6 hours. An energy management control system that provides the specified lighting control functionality and complies with all requirements applicable to the specified controls may be used to meet these requirements.

TABLE 160.5-A CLASSIFICATION OF DWELLING UNIT HIGH LUMINOUS EFFICACY LIGHT SOURCES

Light sources in this column other than those installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires are classified as high luminous efficacy and are **not** required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8	Light sources in this column are required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8 and shall be certified and marked as required by JA8.
1. LED light sources installed outdoors. 2. Inseparable Solid State Lighting (SSL) luminaires containing ~~and~~ colored light sources that are installed to provide decorative~~, accent, display, utility, undercabinet or special effect~~ lighting. 3. ~~Dim-to-warm and tunable-white LED light sources with at least one light source controller setting of 4000K or less and color rendering index (CRI) rating of 90 or greater.~~ 4. ~~Color-tunable LED light sources with at least one light source controller setting of 4000K or less.~~ 5. ~~LED lamps compliant with Title 20 as general service lamps and with a correlated color temperature (CCT) of 4000K or less.~~ ~~6~~3. Pin-based linear fluorescent or compact fluorescent light sources using electronic ballasts. ~~7~~4. High intensity discharge (HID) light sources including pulse start metal halide and high pressure sodium light sources. ~~8~~5. Luminaires with hardwired high frequency generator and induction lamp. ~~9~~6. Ceiling Fan Light Kits ~~compliant with Title 20 requirements.~~ subject to federal appliance regulations.	~~10~~7. All light sources installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires~~ other than those specified in items 3, 4, or 5~~. Note that ceiling recessed downlight luminaires shall not have screw base sockets regardless of lamp type as specified in Section 150.0(k)1C. ~~11~~8. Any light source not otherwise listed in this table.

(b) Common ~~Services~~ Use Area Lighting. Lighting systems and equipment in multifamily common ~~services~~use areas shall complywith the applicable provisions of Sections 160.5(b)1 through 160.5(b)4.

Commented [ME22]: Multifamily restructuring

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b): Lighting systems in common use areas providing shared provisions for living, eating, cooking, or sanitation to dwelling units that would otherwise lack these provisions may instead comply with Section 160.5(a).

NOTE: The requirements of Section160.5(b) applies to newly constructed buildings. Sections 180.1 and 180.2 specify which requirements of Sections 160.5(b)1 through 160.5(e) also apply to additions and alterations to existing buildings.

1. **Luminaire classification and power**. Luminaires shall be classified and their wattage determined as follows:

   A. Luminaire wattage shall be labeled as follows:

      i. The maximum rated wattage or relamping rated wattage of a luminaire shall be listed on a permanent, preprinted, factory-installed label, as specified by UL 1574, 1598, 2108, or 8750, as applicable; and

      ii. The factory-installed maximum rated wattage or relamping rated wattage label shall not consist of peel-off or peel-down layers or other methods that allow the rated wattage to be changed after the luminaire has been shipped from the manufacturer

      Exception to Section 160.3(b)1Aii: Luminaires with a single lamp and an integrated ballast or transformer may use a peel-down label provided that they are layered such that the rated wattage reduces as successive layers are removed.

      a. Low-voltage luminaires (except low voltage track systems), ≤ 24 volts, with a maximum relamping rated wattage of 50 watts.

      b. Compact fluorescent luminaires, having an integral electronic ballast, with a maximum relamping rated wattage of 42 watts.

      c. High intensity discharge luminaires, having an integral electronic ballast, with a maximum relamping rated wattage of 150 watts.

   A. For luminaires with line voltage lamps not served by drivers, ballasts, or transformers, the wattage of such luminaires shall be determined as the maximum rated wattage as labeled in accordance with Section 160.5(b)1A.

   B. For luminaires with permanently installed or remotely installed ballasts, the wattage of such luminaires shall be the operating input wattage of the rated lamp/ballast combination published in the ballast manufacturer's catalogs based on independent testing lab reports as specified by UL 1598.

   C. For inseparable SSL luminaires and SSL luminaires with remotely mounted drivers, the maximum rated wattage shall be the maximum rated input wattage of the SSL luminaire as specified in Section 160.5(b)1A when tested in accordance with UL 1598, 2108, 8750, or IES LM-79.

   D. For LED tape lighting and LED linear lighting with LED tape lighting components, the maximum rated wattage shall be the sum of the installed length of the tape lighting times its rated linear power density in watts per linear feet, or the maximum rated input wattage of the driver or power supply providing power to the lighting system, with tape lighting tested in accordance with UL 2108, 8750, or IES LM-79,

   E. For modular lighting systems that allow the addition or relocation of luminaires without altering the wiring of the system, shall be determined as follows:

      i. The wattage shall be the greater of:

         a. 30 watts per linear foot of track or plug-in busway; or

         b. the rated wattage of all of the luminaires included in the system, where the luminaire wattage is determined as specified in Section 160.5(b)1A; or

      ii. For line-voltage lighting track and plug-in busway served by a track lighting integral current limiter or a dedicated track lighting supplementary overcurrent protection panel, the wattage shall be determined as follows:

a. The volt-ampere rating of current limiter as specified by UL 1077; or

b. The sum of the ampere (A) rating of all of the current protection devices times the branch circuit voltages for track lighting supplementary overcurrent protection panel.

iii. For other modular lighting systems with power supplied by a driver, power supply or transformer, including but not limited to low-voltage lighting systems, the wattage of the system shall be the maximum rated input wattage of the driver, power supply or transformer published in the manufacturer’s catalogs, as specified by UL 2108 or 8750.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)1F: For power-over-Ethernet lighting systems, power provided to installed non-lighting devices may be subtracted from the total power rating of the power-over-Ethernet system.

F. For all other lighting equipment not addressed by Sections 160.5(b)1B through F, the wattage of the lighting equipment shall be the maximum rated wattage of the lighting equipment, or operating input wattage of the system, labeled in accordance with Section 160.5(b)1A, or published in manufacturer’s catalogs, based on independent testing lab reports as specified by UL 1574, 1598, 2108, 8750, or IES LM-79.

2. **Lighting Controls**. All lighting controls and equipment shall comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 160.5(b) and 160.5(c), and shall be installed in accordance with any applicable manufacturer instructions.

3. **Energy Management Control System (EMCS)**. An EMCS may be installed to comply with the requirements of one or more lighting controls if it meets the following minimum requirements:

A. Provides all applicable functionality for each specific lighting control or system for which it is installed in accordance with Sections 110.9, 160.5(b) and 160.5(c); and

B. Complies with all applicable Lighting Control Installation Requirements in accordance with Section 160.5(e) for each specific lighting control or system for which it is installed; and

C. Complies with all applicable application requirements for each specific lighting control or system for which it is installed, in accordance with Part 6.

4. **Mandatory Indoor Lighting Controls**. Multifamily common use areas shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.5(b)4A through 160.5(b)4F, in addition to the applicable requirements of Sections 110.9.

A. **Manual Area Controls.** Each area enclosed by ceiling-height partitions shall provide lighting controls that allow the lighting in that area to be manually turned on and off. The manual control shall:

i. Be readily accessible; and

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4Ai: Restrooms having two or more stalls, parking areas, stairwells, corridors, and areas of the building intended for access or use by the public may use a manual control not accessible to unauthorized personnel.

ii. Be located in the same enclosed area with the lighting it controls; and

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4Aii: For areas where placement of a manual area control poses a health and safety hazard, the manual area control may instead be located so that a person using the control can see the lights or area controlled by that control, or visually signal or display showing the current state of the controlled lighting.

iii. Provide separate control of general, floor display, wall display, window display, case display, ornamental, and special effects lighting, such that each type of lighting can be turned on or off without turning on or off other types of lighting. Scene controllers may comply with this requirement provided that at least one scene turns on general lighting only, and the control provides a means to manually turn off all lighting.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4A: Up to 0.1 watts per square foot of indoor lighting may be continuously illuminated to allow for means of egress illumination consistent with California Building Code Section 1008. Egress lighting complying with this wattage limitation is not required to comply with manual area control requirements if:

i. The area is designated for means of egress on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a)2 of Part 1; and

ii. The controls for the egress lighting are not accessible to unauthorized personnel.

B. **Multi-Level Lighting Controls.** The general lighting of any enclosed area 100 square feet or larger with a connected lighting load that exceeds 0.5 watts per square foot shall provide multi-level lighting controls that allow the level of lighting to be adjusted up and down. The multi-level controls shall:

i. Provide the number of control steps specified in TABLE 160.5-B; and

ii. Meet the uniformity requirements specified in TABLE 160.5-B.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(b)4B: An area enclosed by ceiling height partitions that has only one luminaire with no more than two lamps or has only one inseparable SSL luminaire.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(b)4B: Restrooms.

C. **Automatic Shut-OFF Controls.** All installed indoor lighting shall be equipped with controls able to automatically reduce lighting power when the space is typically unoccupied.

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4C:** Lighting providing means of egress illumination, as the term is used in the California Building Code, shall be configured to provide no less than the amount of light required by California Building Code Section 1008 while in the partial-off mode.~~

i. In addition to lighting controls installed to comply with Sections 160.5(b)4A and B, all installed indoor lighting shall be equipped with controls that meet the following requirements:

a. Shall be controlled with an occupant sensing control, automatic time-switch control, or other control capable of automatically shutting OFF all of the lighting when the space is typically unoccupied; and

b. Separate controls for the lighting on each floor, other than lighting in stairwells; and

c. Separate controls for a space enclosed by ceiling height partitions not exceeding 5,000 square feet; ~~and~~

d. ~~Separate controls for general, display, ornamental, and display case lighting; and~~

~~e. For automatic time-switch controls, may include a manual-on mode.~~

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(b)4Ci: Where the lighting is serving an area that is in continuous use, 24 hours per day/365 days per year.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(b)4Ci: Lighting complying with Section 160.5(b)4Cv or vii.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(b)4Ci: Up to 0.1 watts per square foot of lighting in any area within a building may be continuously illuminated, provided that the area is designated for means of egress on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a)2 of Part 1. Lighting providing means of egress illumination, as the term is used in the California Building Code, shall be configured to provide no less than the amount of light required by California Building Code Section 1008 while in the partial-off mode.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.5(b)4Ci: Electrical equipment rooms subject to Article 110.26(D) of the California Electrical Code.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 160.5(b)4Ci: Illumination provided by lighting equipment that is designated for emergency lighting, connected to an emergency power source or battery supply, and is intended to function in emergency mode only when normal power is absent.

~~**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 160.5(b)4Ci:** Lighting in stairways provided that the stairway is designated for means of egress on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a)2 of Part 1.~~

ii. Countdown timer switches may be used to comply with the automatic shut-OFF control requirements in **Section 160.5(b)4Ci** only in closets less than 70 square feet. The maximum timer setting shall be 10 minutes for closets.

iii. If an automatic time-switch control, other than an occupant sensing control, is installed to comply with **Section 160.5(b)4Ci**, it shall incorporate a manual override lighting control that:

   a. Complies with 160.5(b)4A; and

   b. Allows the lighting to remain ON for no more than 2 hours when an override is initiated.

iv. If an automatic time-switch control, other than an occupant sensing control, is installed to comply with Section 160.5(b)4Ci, it shall incorporate an automatic holiday "shut-OFF" feature that turns OFF all loads for at least 24 hours, and then resumes the normally scheduled operation.

v. Occupant Sensing Controls are required for specified offices, multipurpose rooms, conference rooms and restrooms. ~~Lighting installed in~~In offices 250 square feet or smaller, multipurpose rooms of less than 1,000 square feet, conference rooms of any size, and restrooms of any size, lighting shall be controlled with occupant sensing controls to automatically shut OFF all of the lighting ~~within~~ in 20 minutes or less after ~~of~~ the control zone ~~being~~ is unoccupied.

   In areas required by Section 160.5(b)4B to have multi-level lighting controls, the occupant sensing controls shall function either as:

   a. a partial-ON occupant sensing control capable of automatically activating between 50-70 percent of controlled lighting power, or

   b. a vacancy sensing control, where all lighting responds to a manual ON input only.

   In areas not required by Section 160.5(b)4B to have multi-level lighting controls, the occupant sensing controls shall function either as:

   a. an occupant sensing control; or

   b. a partial-ON occupant sensing control, or

   c. a vacancy sensing control, where all lighting responds to a manual ON input only.

   In addition, controls shall be provided that allow the lights to be manually shut-OFF in accordance with Section 160.5(b)4A regardless of the sensor status.

vi. Full or Partial OFF occupant sensing controls are required for corridors and stairwells, and offices greater than ~~300~~250 square feet. Lighting installed in the following areas shall meet the ~~following~~ requirements below in addition to complying with Section 160.5(b)~~4A~~4Ci.

   a. ~~Lighting installed in~~In corridors and stairwells, lighting shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls that separately reduce the lighting power in each space by at least 50 percent when the space is unoccupied. The occupant sensing controls shall be capable of automatically turning the lighting fully ON only in the separately controlled space, and shall be automatically activated from all designed paths of egress.

      ~~**EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4Cvia:** In corridors and stairwells in which the installed lighting power is 80 percent or less of the value allowed under the Area Category Method, occupant sensing controls shall reduce power by at least 40 percent.~~

   b. In office spaces greater than 250 square feet, general lighting shall be controlled by occupancy sensing controls that meet all of the following:

      I. The occupancy sensing controls shall be configured so that lighting shall be controlled separately in control zones not greater than 600 square feet. For luminaires with an embedded occupancy sensor that are capable of reducing power independently from other luminaires, each luminaire can be considered its own control zone; and

II. ~~Within~~ In 20 minutes ~~of~~ or less after the control zone ~~being~~ is unoccupied, the occupancy sensing controls shall uniformly reduce lighting power in the control zone to by at least 80 percent of full power. Control functions that switch control zone lights completely off when the zone is vacant meet this requirement; and

III. ~~Within~~ In 20 minutes ~~of~~ or less after the entire office space ~~being~~ is unoccupied, the occupancy sensing controls shall automatically turn off lighting in all control zones in the space; and

IV. In each control zone, lighting shall be allowed to automatically turn on to any level up to full power upon occupancy within the control zone. When occupancy is detected in any control zone in the space, the lighting in other control zones that are unoccupied shall operate at no more than 20 percent of full power.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4Cvi~~130.1(c)6D~~: Under-shelf or furniture-mounted task lighting controlled by a local switch and either a time switch or an occupancy sensor.

vii. **Partial OFF occupant sensing controls are required for parking garages, parking areas, and loading and unloading areas.** ~~General lighting~~ Lighting installed in the following areas shall meet the ~~following~~ requirements below instead of complying with Section 160.5(b)4Ci.

a. (reserved)

b. In parking garages, parking areas and loading and unloading areas, general lighting shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls having at least one control step between 20 percent and 50 percent of design lighting power. No more than 500 watts of rated lighting power shall be controlled together as a single zone. A reasonably uniform level of illuminance shall be achieved in accordance with the applicable requirements in TABLE 160.5-B. The occupant sensing controls shall be capable of automatically turning the lighting fully ON only in the separately controlled space, and shall be automatically activated from all designed paths of egress.

Interior areas of parking garages are classified as indoor lighting for compliance with Section 160.5(b)4Cviib. Parking areas on the roof of a parking structure are classified as outdoor hardscape and shall comply with the (applicable provisions in Section 160.5(c).

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(b)4Cviib: Metal halide luminaires with a lamp plus ballast mean system efficacy of greater than 75 lumens per watt, used for general lighting in parking garages, parking areas and loading and unloading areas, shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls having at least one control step between 20 percent and 60 percent of design lighting power.

D. **Automatic Daylighting Controls.** The general lighting in skylit daylit zones, primary sidelit daylit zones, and secondary sidelit daylit zones, as well as the general lighting in the combined primary and secondary sidelit daylit zones in parking garages, shall be provided with controls that automatically adjust the power of the installed general lighting up and down to keep the total light level stable as the amount of incoming daylight changes. For skylights located in an atrium, the skylit daylit zones shall apply to the floor area directly under the atrium and the top floor area directly adjacent to the atrium.

i. All skylit daylit zones, primary sidelit daylit zones, secondary sidelit daylit zones and the combined primary and secondary sidelit daylit zones in parking garages shall be shown on the plans.

NOTE: Parking areas on the roof of a parking structure are outdoor hardscape, not skylit daylit areas.

ii. The automatic daylighting controls shall provide separate control for general lighting in each type of daylit zone. General Lighting in overlapping skylit daylit zone and sidelit daylit zone shall be controlled as part of the ~~S~~skylit ~~D~~daylit ~~Z~~zone. General lighting in overlapping primary and secondary sidelit daylit zone shall be controlled as part of the primary sidelit daylit zone. Linear LED luminaires and other solid state lighting (SSL) light sources in linear form may be treated as linear lamps in increments of 4 feet segment or smaller, and each segment is separately controlled based on the type of the daylit zone the segment is primarily located.

iii. The automatic daylighting controls shall:

a. For spaces required to install multilevel controls under Section 160.5(b)4B, adjust lighting via continuous dimming or the number of control steps provided by the multilevel controls;

b. For each space, ensure the combined illuminance from the controlled lighting and daylight is not less than the illuminance from controlled lighting when no daylight is available;

c. For areas other than parking garages, ensure that when the daylight illuminance is greater than 150 percent of the illuminance provided by the controlled lighting system when no daylight is available, the controlled lighting power in that daylight zone shall be reduced by a minimum of 90 percent; and

d. For parking garages, ensure that when daylight illuminance levels measured at the farthest edge of the secondary sidelit zone away from the glazing or opening are greater than 150 percent of the illuminance provided by the controlled lighting when no daylight is available, the controlled lighting power in the combined primary and secondary sidelit daylight zones shall be reduced by 100 percent.

iv. Photosensor shall be located so that they are not readily accessible to unauthorized personnel.

v. The location where calibration adjustments are made to the automatic daylighting controls shall be readily accessible to authorized personnel but may be inside a locked case or under a cover which requires a tool for access.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(b)4D: Areas under skylights where it is documented that existing adjacent structures or natural objects block direct sunlight for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8a.m. and 4p.m.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(b)4D Areas adjacent to vertical glazing below an overhang, where the overhang covers the entire width of the vertical glazing, no vertical glazing is above the overhang, and the ratio of the overhang projection to the overhang rise is greater than 1.5 for South, East and West orientations or greater than 1 for North orientations.

~~**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(b)4D:** Rooms in which the total installed general lighting power in the Skylit Daylit Zone and Primary Sidelit Daylit Zone is less than 120 watts do not require automatic daylighting controls in the daylit zones.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.5(b)4D:** Rooms in which the total installed general lighting power in the Secondary Sidelit Daylit Zone is less than 120 watts do not require automatic daylighting controls in the secondary sidelit daylit zones.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 160.5(b)4D:** Rooms in which the total installed wattage of the general lighting in the primary and the secondary sidelit daylit zones is less than 240 watts do not require automatic daylighting controls in the secondary sidelit daylit zones.~~

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(b)4D: Rooms where the combined total installed wattage of the general lighting in the skylit and primary sidelit zones is less than 120 watts are not required to have daylighting controls for those zones. Rooms where the total installed wattage of the general lighting in the secondary sidelit zones is less than 120 watts are not required to have daylighting controls for that zone.

EXCEPTION ~~6~~ 4 to Section 160.5(b)4D: Parking garage areas where the total installed wattage of the general lighting in the primary and the secondary sidelit daylit zones is less than 60 watts do not require automatic daylighting controls in the daylit zones.

EXCEPTION ~~7~~ 5 to Section 160.5(b)4D: Rooms that have a total glazing area of less than 24 square feet, or parking garage areas with a combined total of less than 36 square feet of glazing or opening.

EXCEPTION ~~8~~ 6 to Section 160.5(b)4D: For parking garages, luminaires located in the daylight adaptation zone and luminaires for only dedicated ramps. Daylight adaptation zone and dedicated ramps are defined in Section 100.1.

EXCEPTION ~~9~~ 7 to Section 160.5(b)4D: Luminaires in sidelit daylit zones in retail merchandise sales and wholesale showroom areas.

E. **Demand Responsive Controls.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for demand responsive lighting controls.

F. **Control Interactions.** Each lighting control installed to comply with Section 160.5(b)4 shall permit or incorporate the functions of the other lighting controls required by this Section.

i. For general lighting, the manual area control shall permit the level or amount of light provided while the lighting is on to be set or adjusted by the controls specified in Sections 160.5(b)4B, C, D, and E.

ii. The manual area control shall permit the shutoff control to turn the lighting down or off.

iii. The multi-level lighting control shall permit the automatic daylighting control to adjust the electric lighting level in response to changes in the amount of daylight in the daylit zone.

iv. The multi-level lighting control shall permit the demand responsive control to adjust the lighting during a demand response event and to return it to the level set by the multilevel control after the event.

v. The shutoff control shall permit the manual area control to turn the lighting on. If the on request occurs while an automatic time switch control would turn the lighting off, then the on request shall be treated as an override request consistent with Section160.5(c)4Ciii.

vi. The automatic daylighting control shall permit the multi-level lighting control to adjust the level of lighting.

vii. For lighting controlled by multi-level lighting controls and by occupant sensing controls that provide an automatic-on function, the controls shall provide a partial-on function that is capable of automatically activating between 50-70 percent of controlled lighting power.

viii. (RESERVED)

ix. For space conditioning system zones serving only spaces that are required to have occupancy sensing controls as specified in Section 160.5(b)4Cv, vi, and vii, and where ~~Table 120.1-A~~ Table 160.2-B allows the ventilation airto be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode, the space conditioning system shall be controlled by occupancy sensing controls as specified in Section ~~120.2(e)3~~160.3(a)2Dii.

Commented [ME23]: MF Restructuring

TABLE 160.5-B MULTI-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS AND UNIFORMITY REQUIREMENTS

Luminaire Type	**Minimum Required Control Steps (percent of full rated power[1])**	**Uniform level of illuminance shall be achieved by:**
LED luminaires and LED light source systems	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent
Line-voltage sockets except GU-24	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent
Low-voltage incandescent systems	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent
Fluorescent luminaires	Continuous dimming 20-100 percent	Continuous dimming 20-100 percent
GU-24 sockets rated for fluorescent ≤ 20 watts; Pin-based compact fluorescent ≤ 20 watts[2] Linear fluorescent and U-bent fluorescent ≤ 13 watts	Minimum one step between 30-70 percent	Continuous dimming; or Stepped dimming; or Switching alternate lamps in a luminaire, or Separately switching circuits in multi-circuit track with a minimum of two circuits.
Track Lighting	Minimum one step between 30-70 percent	Continuous dimming; or Stepped dimming; or

		Switching alternate lamps in a luminaire, or Separately switching circuits in multi-circuit track with a minimum of two circuits.
Linear fluorescent and U-bent fluorescent > 13 watts	Minimum one step in each range: 20-40 % 50-70 % 75-85 % 100 %	Stepped dimming; or Continuous dimming; or Switching alternate lamps in each luminaire, having a minimum of 4 lamps per luminaire illuminating the same area and in the same manner
Other light sources, including HID and induction	Minimum one step between 50 - 70 percent	Stepped dimming; or Continuous dimming; or Switching alternate lamps in each luminaire, having a minimum of 2 lamps per luminaire, illuminating the same area and in the same manner.
~~1. Full rated input power of driver, ballast and lamp, corresponding to maximum ballast factor~~ ~~2. Includes only pin based lamps: twin tube, multiple twin tube, and spiral lamps~~		

1. Full rated input power of driver, ballast and lamp, corresponding to maximum ballast factor
2. Includes only pin based lamps: twin tube, multiple twin tube, and spiral lamps

(c) **Outdoor Lighting and Controls Equipment.** Multifamily buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.5(c)1 through 160.5(c)2.

1. **Luminaire Shielding Requirements.** All outdoor luminaires of 6,200 initial luminaire lumens or greater, shall comply with Backlight, Uplight, and Glare (BUG) (in accordance with ANSI/IES TM-15-20, Annex A) requirements in accordance with Title 24, Part 11, Section 5.106.8.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(c)1: Signs.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(c)1: Lighting for building facades, public monuments, public art, statues, and vertical surfaces of bridges.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(c)1: Lighting not permitted by a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation to be a cutoff luminaire.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.5(c)1: Temporary outdoor lighting**.**

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 160.5(c)1: Replacement of existing pole mounted luminaires in hardscape areas meeting all of the following conditions:

A. Where the existing luminaire does not meet the luminaire BUG requirements in Section 160.5(c)1; and

B. Spacing between existing poles is greater than six times the mounting height of the existing luminaires; and

C. Where no additional poles are being added to the site; and

D. Where new wiring to the luminaires is not being installed; and

E. Provided that the connected lighting power wattage is not increased.

EXCEPTION 6 to Section 160.5(c)1: Luminaires that illuminate the public right of way including publicly-maintained or utility-maintained roadways, sidewalks, and bikeways.

EXCEPTION 7 to Section 160.5(c)1: Outdoor lighting attached to a multifamily building and separately controlled from the inside of a dwelling unit.

2. Controls for Outdoor Lighting. Outdoor lighting shall be independently controlled from other electrical loads, and the controls for outdoor lighting shall meet the following functional requirements:

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(c)2: Outdoor lighting not permitted by a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation to be turned OFF or reduced.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(c)2: Lighting in tunnels required to be illuminated 24 hours per day and 365 days per year.

A. Daylight Availability. All installed outdoor lighting shall be controlled by a photo control, astronomical time-switch control, or other control capable of automatically shutting OFF the outdoor lighting when daylight is available.

B. Automatic Scheduling Controls.

i. Automatic scheduling controls shall be installed for all outdoor lighting. Automatic scheduling controls may be installed in combination with motion sensing controls or other outdoor lighting controls.

ii. Automatic scheduling controls shall be capable of reducing the outdoor lighting power by at least ~~60~~ 50 percent and no more than 90 percent, and separately capable of turning the lighting OFF, during scheduled unoccupied periods.

iii. Automatic scheduling controls shall allow scheduling of a minimum of two nighttime periods with independent lighting levels, and may include an override function that turns lighting ON during its scheduled dim or OFF state for no more than two hours when an override is initiated.

C. Motion Sensing Controls.

i. Motion sensing controls shall be installed for the following luminaires. Motion sensing controls may be installed for other outdoor lighting and in combination with other outdoor lighting controls:

a. Outdoor luminaires ~~other than~~other than those providing Building Façade, Ornamental Hardscape, or Outdoor Dining, ~~-~~where the bottom of luminaire is mounted 24 feet ~~or less~~ above grade or lower; and,

b. Outdoor wall mounted luminaires installed for General Hardscape parking lot lighting, located within 1 mounting height of a parking space, mounted 24 feet ~~or less~~ above grade or lower.

ii. Motion sensing controls shall be capable of reducing the outdoor lighting power of each controlled luminaire by at least ~~60~~ 50 percent and no more than 90 percent, and separately capable of turning the luminaire OFF, during unoccupied periods.

iii. Motion sensing controls shall be capable of reducing the lighting to its dim or OFF state no longer than 15 minutes after the area has been vacated, and of returning the lighting to its ON state when the area becomes occupied.

iv. No more than 1,500 watts of lighting power shall be controlled by a single sensor or as a single zone.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.5(c)2C: Luminaires with a maximum rated wattage of 40 watts each are not required to have motion sensing controls.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.5(c)2C: Applications listed as Exceptions to Section 170.2(e)2A are not required to have motion sensing controls.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 160.5(c)2C: Lighting subject to a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation may have a minimum time-out period longer than 15 minutes or a minimum dimming level above 50 percent when necessary to comply with the applicable law.

~~(Draft1) Exception 4 to 160.5(c)2C: Parking lot luminaires installed to provide a light distribution of 4 mounting-height (MH) or greater.~~

~~(or Draft2) Exception 4 to 160.5(c)2C: Parking lot luminaires installed at a mounting height greater than 15 feet and less than 24 feet above grade.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 160.5(c)2C:** For parking lots, luminaires with a maximum rated wattage of 78 watts each are not required to have motion sensing controls.~~

(d) **Sign Lighting Controls.** All sign lighting shall meet the requirements below as applicable:

1. **Indoor Signs.** All indoor sign lighting other than exit sign lighting shall be controlled with an automatic time-switch control or astronomical time-switch control.

2. **Outdoor Signs.** Outdoor sign lighting shall meet the following requirements as applicable:

A. All outdoor sign lighting shall be controlled with a photocontrol in addition to an automatic time-switch control, or an astronomical time-switch control.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(d)2A: Outdoor signs in tunnels, and signs in large permanently covered outdoor areas that are intended to be continuously lit, 24 hours per day and 365 days per year.

B. All outdoor sign lighting that is ON both day and night shall be controlled with a dimmer that provides the ability to automatically reduce sign lighting power by a minimum of 65 percent during nighttime hours. Signs that are illuminated at night and for more than 1 hour during daylight hours shall be considered ON both day and night.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.5(d)2B: Outdoor signs in tunnels and large covered areas that are intended to be illuminated both day and night.

3. **Demand Responsive Electronic Message Center (EMC) Control.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for demand responsive EMC controls.

(e) **Lighting Control Acceptance and Installation Certificate Requirement.** Multifamily common ~~services~~ use areas shallcomply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.5(e)1 through 160.5(e)3.

Commented [ME24]: Multifamily restructuring

1. **Lighting Control Acceptance Requirements.** Before an occupancy permit is granted, indoor and outdoor lighting controls serving the building, area, or site and installed to comply with Section 160.5(b)4D, 160.5(b)4C, 160.5(b)4E, 160.5(c)2, or 170.2(e)1Aiij shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6 and NA7.8. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a) of Part 1, that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements:

A. RESERVED;

B. RESERVED;

C. Automatic daylight controls shall be tested in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.1;

D. Lighting shut-OFF controls shall be tested in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.2;

E. Demand responsive lighting controls shall be tested in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.3; and

F. Outdoor lighting controls shall be tested in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.8; and

G. Lighting systems receiving the Institutional Tuning Power Adjustment Factor shall be tested in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA~~-~~7.6.4.

H. Demand responsive controls required to control controlled receptacles shall be tested in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.5.

2. **Lighting Control Installation Certificate Requirements.** To be recognized for compliance with Part 6 an Installation Certificate shall be submitted in accordance with Section 10-103(a) for any lighting control system, Energy Management Control System, ~~track lighting integral current limiter, track lighting supplementary overcurrent~~

~~protection panel,~~ interlocked lighting system, lighting Power Adjustment Factor, or additional wattage available for a videoconference studio, in accordance with the following requirements, as applicable:

A. Certification that when a lighting control system is installed to comply with lighting control requirements in Part 6 it complies with the applicable requirements of Section 110.9; and complies with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.1.

B. Certification that when an Energy Management Control System is installed to function as a lighting control required by Part 6 it functionally meets all applicable requirements for each application for which it is installed, in accordance with Sections 110.9, 160, 170, and 180; and complies with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.2.

C. Certification that interlocked lighting systems used to serve an approved area comply with Section 170.2(e)~~1A~~2A; and comply with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.4.

D. Certification that lighting controls installed to earn a lighting Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) comply with Section 170.2(e)~~1B~~2B; and comply with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.5.

E. ~~Certification that additional lighting wattage installed for a videoconference studio complies with Section 170.2(e)1CifVI; and complies with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.6~~RESERVED.

3. When certification is required by Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.1, the acceptance testing specified by Section 160.5(e) shall be performed by a Certified Lighting Controls Acceptance Test Technician (CLCATT). If the CLCATT is operating as an employee, the CLCATT shall be employed by a Certified Lighting Controls Acceptance Test Employer. The CLCATT shall disclose on the Certificate of Acceptance a valid CLCATT certification identification number issued by an approved Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider. The CLCATT shall complete all Certificate of Acceptance documentation in accordance with the applicable requirements in Section 10-103(a)4.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.6 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRIC POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

Multifamily buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 160.6(a) through 160.6(e).

(a) **Service Electrical Metering.** Each electrical service or feeder that provides power to the common use areas (interior and exterior) shall have a permanently installed metering system which measures electrical energy use in accordance with TABLE 160.6-A.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.6(a): Service or feeder for which the utility company provides a metering system for the multifamily building that indicates instantaneous kW demand and kWh for a utility-defined period.

TABLE 160.6-A MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR METERING OR SUBMETERING OF ELECTRICAL LOAD

Metering Functionality	**Electrical Services[1] rated 50 kVA or less**	**Electrical Services[1] rated more than 50kVA and less than or equal to 250 kVA**	**Electrical Services[1] rated more than 250 kVA and less than or equal to 1000kVA**	**Electrical Services[1] rated more than 1000kVA**
Instantaneous (at the time) kW demand	Required	Required	Required	Required
Historical peak demand (kW)	Not required	Not required	Required	Required
Tracking kWh for a user-definable period.	Required	Required	Required	Required
kWh per rate period	Not required	Not required	Not required	Required

[1] *"Electrical Services" applies to the building service-entrance rating or to the submetering service. For a building with submetering, this applies to the submetering service size to the common use areas.*

(b) **Separation of Electrical Circuits for Electrical Energy Monitoring**. Electrical power distribution systems shall be designed so that measurement devices can monitor the electrical energy usage of load types according to TABLE 160.6-B.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.6(b): For each separate load type, up to 10 percent of the connected load may be of any type.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.6(b): Submetered electrical power distribution systems that provide power to dwelling units~~ or common living areas~~.

TABLE 160.6-B MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR SEPARATION OF ELECTRICAL LOAD

Electrical Load Type	**Electrical Services^1 rated 50 kVA or less**	**Electrical Services^1 rated more than 50kVA and less than or equal to 250 kVA**	**Electrical Services^1 rated more than 250 kVA and less than or equal to 1000kVA**	**Electrical Services^1 rated more than 1000kVA**
Lighting including exit and egress lighting and exterior lighting	Not required	All lighting in aggregate	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type or area	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type or area
HVAC systems and components including chillers, fans, heaters, furnaces, package units, cooling towers, and circulation pumps associated with HVAC	Not required	All HVAC in aggregate	All HVAC in aggregate and each HVAC load rated at least 50 kVA	All HVAC in aggregate and each HVAC load rated at least 50kVA
Domestic and service water system pumps and related systems and components	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Plug load including appliances rated less than 25 kVA	Not required	All plug load in aggregate Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf	All plug load separated by floor, type or area Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf	All plug load separated by floor, type or area All groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf
Elevators, escalators, moving walks, and transit systems	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Renewable power source (net or total)	Each group	Each group	Each group	Each group
Loads associated with renewable power source	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Charging stations for electric vehicles	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate

[1] "Electrical Services" applies to the building service-entrance rating or to the submetering service. For a building with submetering, this applies to the submetering service size to the common use area.

(c) **Voltage Drop.** The maximum combined voltage drop on both installed feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors to the farthest connected load or outlet shall not exceed 5 percent.

EXCEPTION to Section 160.6(c): Voltage drop permitted by California Electrical Code Sections 647.4, 695.6 and 695.7.

(d) **Circuit Controls for 120-Volt Receptacles and Controlled Receptacles**. In all common ~~services~~ use areas, both controlledand uncontrolled 120 volt receptacles shall be provided in office areas, lobbies, conference rooms, kitchen areas in office spaces, and copy rooms. Controlled receptacles shall meet the following requirements, as applicable:

Commented [ME25]: Multifamily restructuring

1. Install a control capable of automatically shutting OFF the controlled receptacles when the space is typically unoccupied, either at the receptacle or circuit level. When an automatic time switch control is installed it shall incorporate an override control that allows the controlled receptacle to remain ON for no more than 2 hours when an override is initiated and an automatic holiday "shut-OFF" feature that turns OFF all loads for at least 24 hours and then resumes the normally scheduled operation. Countdown timer switches shall not be used to comply with the automatic time switch control requirements; and
2. Install at least one controlled receptacle within 6 feet from each uncontrolled receptacle, or install a splitwired receptacle with at least one controlled and one uncontrolled receptacle. Where receptacles are installed in

modular furniture in open office areas, at least one controlled receptacle shall be installed at each workstation; and

3. Provide a permanent and durable marking for controlled receptacles or circuits to differentiate them from uncontrolled receptacles or circuits; and

NOTE: A hardwired power strip controlled by an occupant sensing control may be used to comply with Section 160.6(d). Plug-in strips and other plug-in devices shall not be used to comply with the requirements of this Section.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 160.6(d): Receptacles that are only for the following purposes:

A. Receptacles specifically for refrigerators and water dispensers in kitchen areas.

B. Receptacles located a minimum of six feet above the floor that are specifically for clocks.

C. Receptacles for network copiers, fax machines, A/V and data equipment other than personal computers in copy rooms.

D. Receptacles on circuits rated more than 20 amperes.

E. Receptacles connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) that are intended to be in continuous use, 24 hours per day/365 days per year, and are marked to differentiate them from other uncontrolled receptacles or circuits.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 160.6(d): Receptacles in common use areas providing shared provisions for living, eating, cooking, or sanitation to dwelling units that would otherwise lack these provisions.

~~F.~~(e)Demand responsive controls and equipment. See Section 110.12 for requirements for demand responsive controls and equipment.

NOTE: Definitions of terms and phrases in Section 160.6 are determined as specified in Section 100.1(b). Terms and phrases not found in Section 100.1(b) shall be defined as specified in Title 24, Part 3, Article 100 of the California Electrical Code.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.7 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR COVERED PROCESSES

(a) **Elevators.** Elevators shall meet the requirements of section 120.6(f).

(b) **Pool and spa systems.** Pool and spa systems available to multiple tenants or to the public shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 110.4. Pool and spa systems installed for exclusive use by a single tenant shall comply with the applicable requirements of 150.0(p).

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 160.8 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SOLAR READY BUILDINGS

(a) **Solar Ready Buildings.** Newly constructed multifamily buildings shall meet the requirements of Section 110.10 applicable to the building project.

SECTION 160.9 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRIC READY BUILDINGS

(a) **Heat Pump Space Heater Ready.** Systems using gas or propane furnaces to serve individual dwelling units shall include the following:

1. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit wiring shall be installed within 3 feet from the furnace and accessible to the furnace with no obstructions. The branch circuit conductors shall be rated at 30 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.

2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future heat pump space heater installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”.

(b) **Electric Cooktop Ready.** Systems using gas or propane cooktops to serve individual dwelling units shall include the following:

1. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit wiring shall be installed within 3 feet from the cooktop and accessible to the cooktop with no obstructions. The branch circuit conductors shall be rated at 50 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.

2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future electric cooktop installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”.

(c) **Electric Clothes Dryer Ready.** ~~Systems using gas or propane c~~Clothes dryer~~s~~ locations with gas or propane plumbing shall include the following:

1. Systems serving individual dwelling units shall include:

    A. A dedicated 240 volt branch circuit wiring shall be installed within 3 feet from the clothes dryer location and accessible to the clothes dryer location with no obstructions. The branch circuit conductors shall be rated at 30 amps minimum. The blank cover shall be identified as “240V ready”. All electrical components shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.

    B. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future electric clothes dryer installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as “For Future 240V use”.

2. Systems in common use areas shall include:

    A. Conductors or raceway shall be installed with termination points at the main electrical panel, via subpanels panels if applicable, to a location no more than 3 feet from each gas outlet or a designated location of future electric replacement equipment. Both ends of the conductors or raceway shall be labelled “Future 240V Use.” The conductors or raceway and any intervening subpanels, panelboards, switchboards, and busbars shall be sized to meet the future electric power requirements, at the service voltage to the point at which the conductors serving the building connect to the utility distribution system, as specified below. The capacity requirements may be adjusted for demand factors in accordance with the California Electric Code. Gas flow rates shall be determined in accordance with the California Plumbing Code. Capacity shall be one of the following:

        i. 24 amps at 208/240 volts per clothes dryer;

ii. 2.6 kVA for each 10,000 Btu per hour of rated gas input or gas pipe capacity; or

iii. The electrical power required to provide equivalent functionality of the gas-powered equipment as calculated and documented by the responsible person associated with the project.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference:Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SUBCHAPTER 11

MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS - PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES

SECTION 170.0 – GENERAL

Multifamily buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 170.0 through 170.2. Sections 170.0 through 170.2 apply to dwelling units and common use areas in multifamily buildings. Nonresidential occupancies in mixed occupancy buildings shall comply with nonresidential requirements in Sections 120, 130, 140 and 141.

(a) Multifamily buildings shall meet all of the following:

1. The applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.10.
2. The applicable requirements of Section 160.0 (mandatory features).
3. Either the performance Standards (170.1) or the prescriptive Standards (170.2) set forth in this Subchapter for the Climate Zone in which the building is located. Climate zones are shown in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 – Weather/Climate Data.

   EXCEPTION to Section 170.0 (a)3: If a single development falls in more than one Climate Zone, all buildings in the subdivision or tract may be designed to meet the performance or prescriptive standards for the Climate Zone that contains 50 percent or more of the dwelling units.

   NOTE: The Commission periodically updates, publishes, and makes available to interested persons and local enforcement agencies precise descriptions of the Climate Zones, as specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 – Weather/Climate Data.

NOTE: The requirements of Sections 170.1(a) through 170.2(e) apply to newly constructed buildings and Sections 180.1 and 180.2 specify changes to the requirements of Sections 170.1(a) through 170.2(e) that apply to additions or alterations.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 170.1 – PERFORMANCE APPROACH

A building complies with the performance approach if the energy budget calculated for the Proposed Design Building under Subsection (b) is no greater than the energy budget calculated for the Standard Design Building under Subsection (a).

(a) **Energy Budget for the Standard Design Building.** The energy budget for the Standard Design Building is expressed in terms of source energy and time-dependent valuation (TDV) energy, and they are determined by applying the mandatory and prescriptive requirements to the Proposed Design Building. The source energy budget and the TDV energy budget is the sum of the TDV energy for space-conditioning, indoor lighting, mechanical ventilation, photovoltaic (PV) and battery storage system, service water heating, and covered process loads.

(b) **Energy Budget for the Proposed Design Building**. The energy budget for a Proposed Design Building is expressed in terms of source energy and time-dependent valuation (TDV) energy, and they are determined by calculating the source energy and TDV energy for the Proposed Design Building. The source energy budget ~~are~~and the TDV energy budget ~~is~~are the sum of the ~~TDV~~ energy for space-conditioning, indoor lighting, mechanical ventilation, photovoltaic (PV) and battery storage system, and service water heating and covered process loads. The Proposed Building shall separately comply with the source energy budget and the TDV energy budget.

Commented [ME1]: MF restructuring

EXCEPTION to Section 170.1(b). A community shared solar electric generation system, or other renewable electric generation system, and/or community shared battery storage system, which provides dedicated power, utility energy reduction credits, or payments for energy bill reductions, to the permitted building and is approved by the Energy Commission as specified in Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-115, may offset part or all of the solar electric generation system or battery storage system TDV energy required to comply with the Standards, as calculated according to methods established by the Commission in the Nonresidential ACM Reference Manual.

(c) **Calculation of Energy Budget**. The TDV energy for both the Standard Design Building and the Proposed Design Building shall be computed by Compliance Software certified for this use by the Commission. The processes for Compliance Software approval by the Commission are documented in the ACM Approval Manual.

(d) **Compliance Demonstration Requirements for Performance Standards.**

1. Certificate of Compliance and Application for a Building Permit. The application for a building permit shall include documentation pursuant to Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 which demonstrates, using an approved calculation method, that the building has been designed so that its ~~EDRs~~ source energy budget and TDV energy budget do not exceed the Standard Design ~~EDRs~~ for the applicable Climate Zone.

2. Field Verification of Individual Dwelling Unit Systems. When performance of installed features, materials, components, manufactured devices or systems above the minimum specified in Section 170.2 is necessary for the building to comply with Section 170.1, or is necessary to achieve a more stringent local ordinance, field verification shall be performed in accordance with the applicable requirements in the following subsections, and the results of the verification(s) shall be documented on applicable Certificates of Installation pursuant to Section 10-103(a)3 and applicable Certificates of Verification pursuant to Section 10-103(a)5.

   A. EER/EER2/SEER/SEER2/CEER/HSPF/HSPF2 Rating. When performance compliance requires installation of a space conditioning system with a ~~SEER~~ rating that is greater than the minimum ~~SEER~~ rating required by TABLE 170.2-K or specified for the standard design, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in the applicable sections of Reference Residential Appendix RA3~~.4.4.1~~.

   B. Variable Capacity Heat Pump (VCHP) Compliance Option. When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system that meets all the requirements of the VCHP compliance option specified in the ACM Reference Manual, the system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.3.~~EER Rating. When performance compliance requires installation of a space conditioning system with an EER rating greater than the standard design value for EER, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.~~

C. Low Leakage Air Handler. When performance compliance requires installation of a low leakage air-handling unit, the installed air handling unit shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.9.

D. ~~HSPF Rating~~RESERVED. ~~When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system with an HSPF rating that is greater than the minimum HSPF rating required in Table170.2-H the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.~~

E. Heat Pump - Rated Heating Capacity. When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system, the heating capacity values at 47 degrees F and 17 degrees F shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.2.

F. Whole House Fan. When performance compliance requires installation of a whole-house fan, the whole house fan ventilation airflow rate and fan efficacy shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.9.

G. Central Fan Ventilation Cooling System. When performance compliance requires installation of a central fan ventilation cooling system, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.4.

H. Dwelling Unit Enclosure Air Leakage. When performance compliance requires a building enclosure leakage rate that is lower than the standard design, the building enclosure shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.

I. Quality Insulation Installation (QII). When performance compliance requires field verification of QII, the building insulation system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5.

J. Pre-Cooling. When performance compliance requires field verification of the installation and programming of a Pre-Cooling Thermostat, it shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.5.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 170.2 – PRESCRIPTIVE APPROACH

Multifamily buildings, including both dwelling units and common use areas, that comply with the prescriptive standards shall be designed, constructed, and equipped to meet all of the requirements for the appropriate Climate Zone shown in TABLE 170.2-A. In TABLE 170.2-A, a NA (not allowed) means that feature is not permitted in a particular Climate Zone and a NR (no requirement) means that there is no prescriptive requirement for that feature in a particular Climate Zone. Installed components shall meet the following requirements:

(a) **Envelope Component Requirements**.

1. **Exterior roofs and ceilings**. Exterior roofs and ceilings shall comply with each of the applicable requirements in this subsection:

    A. Roofing Products. All roofing products shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8 and the applicable minimum aged solar reflectance and thermal emittance requirements, or SRI of Table 170.2-A.

    Commented [ME2]: Multifamily restructuring – roof products

    EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(a)1A: Building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are exempt from the minimum requirements for solar reflectance and thermal emittance or SRI.

    EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(a)1A: Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft² are exempt from the minimum requirements for solar reflectance and thermal emittance or SRI.

    B. Roof Insulation. Roofs shall have an overall assembly U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A, meeting option i, ii, iii, or iv below. Where required by Section 110.8 and 160.1(a), insulation shall be placed in direct contact with a continuous roof or drywall ceiling.

        i. Option A: RESERVED

        ii. Option B: A minimum R-value of insulation installed between the roof rafters in contact with the roof deck and an additional layer of ceiling insulation located between the attic and the conditioned space when meeting Section 170.2(c)3Biia; or

        iii. Option C: A minimum R-value of ceiling insulation located between the attic and the conditioned space when meeting Section 170.2(c)3Biib.

        iv. Option D: A minimum U-factor for roof assemblies above conditioned space without attic space.

    C. Radiant Barrier. A radiant barrier required in TABLE 170.2-A shall meet the requirements specified in Section 110.8(j), and shall meet the installation criteria specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA4.

2. **Wall Insulation**

    A. Exterior walls shall have an overall assembly U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A.

    B. Demising walls shall meet the requirements of 160.1(b)7. Vertical windows in demising walls between conditioned and unconditioned spaces shall have an area-weighted average U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A.

3. **Fenestration.**

    A. Vertical fenestration and glazed doors in exterior walls shall comply with subsections i, ii, and iii:

        i. Percent fenestration area shall be limited in accordance with the applicable requirements of a and b below:

            a. A total fenestration area no greater than 20 percent of the conditioned floor area; and

            b. A total fenestration area no greater than 40 percent of the gross exterior wall area.

            NOTE: Demising walls are not exterior walls, and therefore demising wall area is not part of the gross exterior wall area, and fenestration in demising walls are not part of the fenestration area limitation.

ii. Fenestration Properties. Installed fenestration products, including glazed doors, shall have an area-weighted average U-factor, Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (RSHGC), and Visual Transmittance (VT) meeting the applicable fenestration values in TABLE 170.2-A and shall be determined in accordance with Sections 110.6(a)2 and 110.6(a)3.

Vertical fenestration in demising walls between conditioned and unconditioned spaces are only required to comply with the area-weighted average U-factor requirement in TABLE 170.2-A.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(a)3Aii: For each dwelling unit, up to 3 square feet of new glazing area installed in doors shall not be required to meet the U-factor and RSHGC requirements of TABLE 170.2-A.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(a)3Aii: For fenestration containing chromogenic type glazing:

a. The lower-rated labeled U-factor and SHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of solar gain and light transmitted into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity;

b. Chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration; and

c. Area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not chromatic shall not be permitted and shall be determined in accordance with Section 110.6(a).

EXCEPTION 3to Section 170.2(a)3Aii: For dwelling units containing unrated site-built fenestration that meets the maximum area restriction, the U-factor and SHGC can be determined in accordance with the Nonresidential Reference Appendix NA6 or use default values in TABLE 110.6-A and TABLE 110.6-B.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(a)3ii: Fenestration in dwelling units of buildings that are three habitable stories or fewer in climate zones 1, 3, 5, and 16, are not required to comply with the RSHGC requirements.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 170.2(a)3ii: Fenestration in dwelling units of buildings that are three habitable stories or fewer are not required to comply with the VT requirements.

iii. Shading. Where Table 170.2-A requires a maximum RSHGC, the requirements shall be met with an area-weighted average RSHGC excluding the effects of interior shading, no greater than the applicable value in Table 170.2-A.

For the purposes of this paragraph, the RSHGC of a vertical window is:

a. The Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of the window; or

b. Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient is calculated using EQUATION 170.2-A, if the window has an overhang that extends beyond each side of the window jamb by a distance equal to the overhang's horizontal projection.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(a)3Aiiib: An area-weighted average Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of 0.56 or less shall be used for windows:

I. That are in the first story of exterior walls that form a display perimeter; and

II. For which codes restrict the use of overhangs to shade the windows.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(a)3Aiiib: For vertical glazing containing chromogenic type glazing:

I. the lower-rate labeled RSHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of heat flow into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and

II. chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and

III. area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

NOTE: Demising walls are not exterior walls, and therefore fenestration in demising walls are not subject to SHGC requirements.

$RSHGC = SHGC \times [1 + a \times (2.72^{-PF} - 1) \times (\sin(b \times Az) - c)]$ (Equation 170.2-A)

WHERE:

	a	b	c
Overhang	0.150	0.130	5.67
Exterior Horizontal Slat	0.144	0.133	5.13

RSHGC = Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient.
SHGC = Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of the vertical fenestration.
Az = Azimuth of the vertical fenestration in degrees.
PF = Projection factor as calculated by Equation 140.3-D.

iv. Vertical fenestration shall have an area-weighted average Visible Transmittance (VT) no less than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A, or EQUATION 170.2-B, as applicable.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(a)3Aiv: When the window's primary and secondary sidelit daylit zones are completely overlapped by one or more skylit daylit zones, then the window need not comply with Section 170.2(a)3Aivw.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(a)3Aiv: If the window's VT is not within the scope of NFRC 200, or ASTM E972, then the VT shall be calculated according to Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(a)3Aiv: For vertical windows containing chromogenic type glazing:

a. The higher rated labeled VT shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of light transmitted into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity;

b. Chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and

c. Area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(a)3iv: Fenestration in dwelling units of buildings that are three habitable stories or fewer are not required to comply with the VT requirements.

NOTE: Demising walls are not exterior walls, and therefore windows in demising walls are not subject to VT requirements.

$VT \geq 0.11/ WWR$ (Equation 170.2-B)

WHERE:

WWR = Window Wall Ratio, the ratio of (i) the total window area of the entire building to (ii) the total gross exterior wall area of the entire building. If the WWR is greater than 0.40, then 0.40 shall be used as the value for WWR in EQUATION 170.2-B.

VT = Visible Transmittance of framed window.

B. **Skylights shall**:

i. Have an area no greater than 5 percent of the gross exterior roof area Skylight Roof Ratio (SRR); and

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(a)3Bi: Buildings with an atria over 55 feet high shall have a skylight area no greater than 10 percent of the gross exterior roof area.

ii. Have an Area-Weighted Performance Rating U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(a)3Bii: For each dwelling unit up to 16 square feet of new skylight area with a maximum U-factor of 0.55 and a maximum SHGC of 0.30.

iii. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient. Have an area-weighted performance rating Solar Heat Gain Coefficient no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(a)3Bii and 170.2(a)3Biii: For skylights containing chromogenic type glazing:

a. the lower-rated labeled SHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of heat flow into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and

b. chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and

c. area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

iv. Haze Value. Have a glazing material or diffuser that has a measured haze value greater than 90 percent, determined according to ASTM D1003, or other test method approved by the Energy Commission.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(a)3Biv: Skylights designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles or the geometry of the skylight and light well.

4. All exterior doors, excluding glazed doors, that separate conditioned space from unconditioned space or from ambient air shall have a U-factor not greater than the applicable value in TABLE 170.2-A. Glazed doors must comply with the requirements of Section 170.2(a)3A.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(a)4: Swinging doors that are required to have fire protection are not required to meet the applicable door value in TABLE 170.2-A.

5. Floors shall meet the following requirements:

A. Raised-floors shall be insulated such that the floor assembly has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than shown in TABLE 170.2-A, or shall be insulated between wood framing with insulation having an R-value equal to or greater than shown in TABLE 170.2-A.

B. All buildings with three habitable stories or fewer shall have slab floor perimeter insulation installed with a U-factor equal to or less than or R-value equal to or greater than shown in Table 170.2-A. The minimum depth of concrete slab floor perimeter insulation shall be 16 inches or the depth of the footing of the building, whichever is less.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(a)5: Raised-floor insulation may be omitted if the foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums shown in TABLE 170.2-A.

6. All buildings up to three habitable stories shall comply with the Quality Insulation Installation (QII) requirements shown in TABLE 170.2-A. When QII is required, insulation installation shall meet the criteria specified in Reference Appendix RA3.5.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(a): The insulation requirements of TABLE 170.2-A and TABLE 170.2-B may be met by ceiling, roof deck, wall, or floor assemblies that meet the required maximum U-factors using a U-factor calculation method that considers the thermal effects of all elements of the assembly and is approved by the Executive Director.

TABLE 170.2-A ENVELOPE COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design

Multifamily				Climate Zone															
				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Roof/Ceiling	Option B (meets § 170.2(a)1Bii)	Below Roof Deck Insulation [1,2] (With Air Space)		NR	NR	NR	R19	NR	NR	NR	R19	R19	R13	R19	R19	R19	R19	R19	R13
		Ceiling Insulation		R 38	R 38	R 30	R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38
		Radiant Barrier		NR	REQ	REQ	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
		Low-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	NR	0.63	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	NR	0.75	NR
			Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	75	NR	75	NR
		Steep-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0. 75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
			Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	16	16	16	16	16	16	NR
	Option C (meets § 170.2(a)1Biii)	Ceiling Insulation		R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38	R 38
		Radiant Barrier		NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
		Low-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	NR	0.63	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	NR	0.75	NR
			Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	75	NR	75	NR
		Steep-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0. 75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
			Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	16	16	16	16	16	16	NR
	Option D (Non Attic Roof)	Metal Building U-factor		0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041
		Wood Framed and Other U-factor		0.028	0.028	0.034	0.028	0.034	0.034	0.039	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028
		Low-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	0.63	0.63	NR	0.63	0.63	0.63	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
			Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	75	75	75	NR	75	75	75	NR
		Steep-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0. 75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
			Solar Reflectance Index (SRI)	NR	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	NR

Walls	Metal-Building, any fire rating	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057
	Framed, (wood, metal, and others) >1hr fire rating	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.065	0.065	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.051	0.059	0.059	0.051	0.051	0.051
	Framed (wood, metal and others), ≤1hr fire rating[3]	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.065	0.065	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051	0.051
	Mass Light [4~~,5~~]	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.059 R 17
	Mass Heavy [4]	0.253	0.650	0.650	0.650	0.650	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.650	0.184	0.253	0.211	0.184	0.184	0.160
Floors/Soffits	Slab Perimeter, Three Habitable Stories or less	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	U 0.58 R 7.0
	Wood Framed	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19
	Raised Mass	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U- 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R 4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R 4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0
	Other	0.048	0.039	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.039	0.071	0.071	0.039	0.039	0.039

Quality Insulation Installation (QII) for buildings up to three habitable stories			Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	NR	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Fenestration	Curtain Wall/ Storefront	Maximum U-factor	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.38
		Maximum RSHGC, three or fewer habitable stories	NR	0.26	NR	0.26	NR	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.25	0.26	NR
		Maximum RSHGC, four or more habitable stories	0.35	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.25	0.26	0.25
		Minimum VT, four or more habitable stories	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46
	NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW[5]	Maximum U-factor	0.38	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.38
		Maximum RSHGC, three or less habitable stories	NR	0.24	NR	0.24	NR	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	NR
		Maximum RSHGC, four or more habitable stories	0.35	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24
		Minimum VT, four or more habitable stories	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37
	All Other Fenestration	Maximum U-factor	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.34	0.34	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30
		Maximum RSHGC, three or less habitable stories	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	NR
		Maximum RSHGC, four or more habitable stories	0.35	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23
	Maximum Window to Floor Ratio		20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
	Maximum Window to Wall Ratio		40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%	40%
	Maximum Skylight Roof Ratio		5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
Exterior Doors[6]	Maximum U-factor	Dwelling Unit Entry	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20
		Common Use Area Entry Non-Swinging	0.50	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	0.50
		Common Use Area Entry Swinging	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70

Footnote requirements to TABLE 170.2-A:

1. Install the specified R-value with an air space present between the roofing and the roof deck. Such as standard installation of concrete or clay tile.
2. R-values shown for below roof deck insulation are for wood-frame construction with insulation installed between the framing members. Alternatives including insulation above rafters or above roof deck shall comply with the performance standards.
3. Assembly U-factors for exterior framed walls can be met with cavity insulation alone or with continuous insulation alone, or with both cavity and continuous insulation that results in an assembly U-factor equal to or less than the U-factor shown. Use Reference Joint Appendices JA4 Table 4.3.1, 4.3.1(a), or Table 4.3.4 to determine alternative insulation products to be less than or equal to the required maximum U-factor.
4. As defined in Section 100.0, light mass walls are walls with a heat capacity of at least 7.0 Btu/ft^2-oF and less than 15.0 Btu/ft^2-oF. Heavy mass walls are walls with a heat capacity of at least 15.0Btu/ft^2-oF. ~~Mass wall has a heat capacity greater than or equal to 7.0 Btu/h-ft^2.~~
5. Product must be certified to meet the North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for an Architectural Window (AW).
6. Glazed doors must meet the fenestration requirements.

(b) **Minimum Daylighting Requirement for Large Enclosed Spaces.** In Climate Zones 2 through 15, conditioned enclosed spaces, and unconditioned enclosed spaces, that are greater than 5,000 ft² and that are directly under a roof with ceiling heights greater than 15 feet, shall meet the following requirements:

1. A combined total of at least 75 percent of the floor area, as determined in building floor plan (drawings) view, shall be within one or more of the following:

   A. Primary Sidelight Daylight Zone in accordance with Section 160.5(b)4Dib, or

   B. The total floor area in the space within a horizontal distance of 0.7 times the average ceiling height from the edge of rough opening of skylights.

2. All Skylit Daylit Zones and Primary Sidelit Daylit Zones shall be shown on building plans.

3. General lighting in daylit zones shall be controlled in accordance with Section 160.5(b)4D.

4. The total skylight area is at least 3 percent of the total floor area in the space within a horizontal distance of 0.7 times the average ceiling height from the edge of rough opening of skylights; or the product of the total skylight area and the average skylight visible transmittance is no less than 1.5 percent of the total floor area in the space within a horizontal distance of 0.7 times the average ceiling height from the edge of rough opening of skylights.

5. All skylights shall have a glazing material or diffuser that has a measured haze value greater than 90 percent, tested according to ASTM D1003 (notwithstanding its scope) or another test method approved by the Commission.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(b): In buildings with unfinished interiors, future enclosed spaces for which there are plans to have:

   A. A floor area of less than or equal to 5,000 square feet; or

   ~~B.~~ Ceiling heights of less than or equal to 15 feet. ~~This exception shall not be used for S-1 or S-2 (storage), or for F-1 or F-2 (factory) occupancies.~~

Commented [ME3]: MF restructuring

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(b): Enclosed spaces having a designed general lighting system with a lighting power density less than 0.5 watts per square foot.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(b): Enclosed spaces where it is documented that permanent architectural features of the building, existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on at least half of the roof over the enclosed space for more than 1500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.

(c) **Space Conditioning Systems**. All space heating, space cooling, and ventilation equipment shall comply with minimum Appliance Efficiency Regulations as specified in Sections 110.0 through 110.2 and the applicable requirements of Subsections 1 through 4.

1. Sizing and Equipment Selection – Common Use Areas. Mechanical heating and mechanical cooling equipment serving common use areas of multifamily buildings, shall be the smallest size, within the available options of the desired equipment line, necessary to meet the design heating and cooling loads of the building, as calculated according to Subsection 2 below.

   EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)1: Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that oversizing will not increase building TDV energy use.

   EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)1: Standby equipment with controls that allow the standby equipment to operate only when the primary equipment is not operating.

   EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)1: Multiple units of the same equipment type, such as multiple chillers and boilers, having combined capacities exceeding the design load, if they have controls that sequence or otherwise optimally control the operation of each unit based on load.

2. Calculations – Common Use Areas. In making equipment sizing calculations under Subsection (c)1, all of the following rules shall apply:

   A. Heating and cooling loads. Heating and cooling system design loads shall be determined in accordance with the method in the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals Volume, or as specified in a method approved by the Commission.

B. Indoor design conditions. Indoor design temperature and humidity conditions for comfort applications shall be determined using ASHRAE Standard 55 or the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals Volume, except that winter humidification and summer dehumidification shall not be required.

C. Outdoor design conditions. Outdoor design conditions shall be in accordance with the design conditions from Reference Joint Appendix JA2, which is based on data from the ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X. Heating design temperatures shall be no lower than the Heating Winter Median of Extremes values. Cooling design temperatures shall be no greater than the 0.5 percent Cooling Dry Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb values.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)~~1~~2C: Cooling design temperatures for cooling towers shall be no greater than the 0.5 percent Cooling Design Wet bulb values.

D. Ventilation. Outdoor air ventilation loads shall be calculated using the ventilation rates required in Section 160.2(c)3.

E. Envelope. Envelope heating and cooling loads shall be calculated using envelope characteristics, including square footage, thermal conductance, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient or shading coefficient, and air leakage, consistent with the proposed design.

F. Lighting. Lighting heating and cooling loads shall be based on actual design lighting levels or power densities as specified in Section170.2(e)1.

G. People. Occupant density shall be based on the expected occupancy of the building and shall be the same as determined under Section 160.2(c)3A, if used. Sensible and latent heat gains shall be as listed in the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook- Fundamentals, Chapter 18.

H. Process loads. Loads caused by a process shall be based upon actual information on the intended use of the building.

I. Miscellaneous equipment. Equipment loads other than process loads shall be calculated using design data compiled from one or more of the following sources:

  i. Actual information based on the intended use of the building; or

  ii. Published data from manufacturer's technical publications or from technical societies, such as the ASHRAE Handbook, Applications Volume; or

  iii. Other data based on the designer's experience of expected loads and occupancy patterns.

J. Internal heat gains. Internal heat gains may be ignored for heating load calculations.

K. Safety factor. Calculated design loads based on Sections 170.2(c)2A through K may be increased by up to 10 percent to account for unexpected loads or changes in space usage.

L. Other loads. Loads such as warm-up or cool-down shall be calculated from principles based on the thermal capacity of the building and its contents, the degree of setback, and desired recovery time; or may be assumed to be no more than 30 percent for heating and 10 percent for cooling of the steady-state design loads. In addition, the steady-state load may include a safety factor in accordance with Section 170.2(c)2K.

3. Dwelling Unit Space Conditioning and Ventilation Systems

Commented [ME4]: MF restructuring

A. Heating System Type. Space conditioning systems ~~with direct expansion cooling~~ serving ~~individual~~ dwelling units shall meet i~~,~~ or ii~~, or shall meet the performance compliance requirements of 170.1~~. Systems that cannot meet the requirements of i or ii~~All other system types~~, including multi-zone systems and systems using central boilers or chillers, shall comply with the ~~applicable~~ performance requirements of Section 170.~~2~~1.

  i. Multifamily Buildings three habitable stories or less. For climate zones 1 through 15, the space conditioning system shall be a heat pump. For climate zones 16, the space conditioning system shall be an air conditioner with furnace. Additionally, balanced ventilation systems serving these dwelling units shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 170.2(c)3Bivc.~~for climate zones 4-10, balanced ventilation systems without heat or energy recovery required by Section 160.2(b)2Aivb1 shall have fan efficacy of 0.4 W/cfm or less.~~

ii. Multifamily Buildings four habitable stories or greater. For climate zones 2 through 15, the space conditioning system shall be a heat pump. For climate zones 1 and 16, the space conditioning system shall be a dual-fuel heat pump.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)3A: A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kW or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.

B. Space ~~Heating and Space Cooling~~Conditioning and Ventilation Systems. All space heating and space cooling equipment serving dwelling units shall comply with minimum Appliance Efficiency Regulations as specified in Sections 110.0 through 110.2 and meet all applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(b) and 170.2(c)2.

i. Refrigerant Charge – Systems Serving Individual Dwelling Units. When refrigerant charge verification or fault indicator display is shown as required by TABLE 170.2-K, the system shall comply with either ~~170.2(c),~~ 170.2(c)3Bia or ~~170.2(c)~~170.2(c)3Bib:

Commented [AG5]: MF Restructuring

a. Air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted packaged systems, small duct high velocity systems, and mini-split systems, shall comply with subsections I, II and III, unless the system is of a type that cannot be verified using the specified procedures:

I. Have measurement access holes (MAH) installed according to the specifications in the Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2.3; and

II. System airflow rate in accordance with subsection A or B below, shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3. 3 or an approved alternative procedure as specified by RA1; and

A. For small duct high velocity systems, the system airflow rate shall be greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton; or

B. For all other air-cooled air conditioner or air-source heat pump systems, the system airflow rate shall be greater than or equal to 350 cfm per ton.

III. The installer shall charge the system according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerant charge shall be verified according to one of the following options, as applicable:

A. The installer and rater shall perform the standard charge procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2 or an approved alternative procedure as specified by RA1; or

B. The system shall be equipped with a fault indicator display (FID) device that meets the specifications of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. The installer shall verify the refrigerant charge and FID device in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.4.2. The HERS Rater shall verify FID device in accordance with the procedures in Section RA3.4.2; or

C. The installer shall perform the weigh-in charging procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure and RA3.3 airflow rate verification procedure or approved alternatives in RA1. The HERS Rater shall verify the charge using RA3.2.2 and RA3.3 or approved alternatives in RA1.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)3BiaI: Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for hole location in Reference Residential Appendix Figure RA3.2-1, shall not be required to provide holes as described in Figure RA3.2-1.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)3BiaII: Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply with the minimum airflow rate by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE 160.3-A and TABLE 160.3-B as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements of Section 160.2(b)1D for the system air filter device(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLE 160.3-A and TABLE 160.3-B.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)3BiaIII: When the outdoor temperature is less than 55 degrees F and the installer utilizes the weigh-in charging procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 to verify the refrigerant charge, the installer may elect to utilize the HERS Rater verification procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2. If the HERS Rater verification procedure in Section RA3.2.3.2 is used for compliance, the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12. Ducted systems shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 170.2(c)3BiaII**.**

b. For air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted packaged systems, small duct high velocity systems and mini-split systems, which are of a type that cannot comply with the requirements of 170.2(c)3Bi:

    I. The installer shall confirm the refrigerant charge using the weigh-in charging procedure specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1, as verified by a HERS Rater according to the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2; and

    II. Systems that utilize forced air ducts shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 170.2(c)3BiaII provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedures in RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure in RA1.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)3Bi: Packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in 170.2(c)3Bib, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in RA3.3 or an approved alternative in RA1.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)3Bi: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Provider data registry requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not required for multifamily dwelling units in buildings four habitable stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

ii. Space Conditioning Distribution Systems. All space conditioning systems shall meet all applicable requirements of a or b below:

a. High performance attics. Air handlers or ducts are allowed to be in ventilated attic spaces when the roof and ceiling insulation level meet Option B in TABLE 170.2-~~K~~A and duct insulation levels meet the requirements in TABLE 170.2-K.

b. Duct and air handlers located in conditioned space. Duct systems and air handlers of HVAC systems shall be located in conditioned space, and confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing to meet the criterion of Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.

NOTE: Gas heating appliances installed in conditioned spaces must meet the combustion air requirements of the California Mechanical Code Chapter 7, as applicable.

iii. Central Fan Integrated Ventilation Systems – Systems Serving Individual Dwelling Units. Central forced air system fans used to provide outside air, shall have an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to the maximum W/cfm specified in a or b below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3. Central Fan Integrated

Commented [AG6]: MF Restructuring

Ventilation Systems shall be certified to the Energy Commission as Intermittent Ventilation Systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.4.2.

a. 0.45 W/cfm for gas furnace air-handling units; or

b. 0.58 W/cfm for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

iv. Balanced Ventilation Systems.~~ERV or HRV.~~When balanced ventilation systems are~~is~~ used to meet Section 160.2(b)2Aivb, they shall meet the applicable requirements of a, b, or c below:~~ in Climate Zones 1, 2, and 11-16, the ventilation system shall be a heat recovery ventilator (HRV) or energy recovery ventilator (ERV) system type that meets one of the following subsections a or b as applicable.~~

a. ~~a.~~In Climate Zones 1, 2, and 11-16, balanced ventilation systems serving individual dwelling units shall:

1. Be ~~A~~an energy recovery ventilator (ERV) or heat recovery ventilator (HRV), ~~serving one individual dwelling unit shall~~

2. ~~have~~ Have a minimum sensible recovery efficiency of 67 percent, rated at 32 degrees Fahrenheit (0 degrees Celsius), and

3. Have a ~~minimum~~ fan efficacy ~~of~~ less than or equal to 0.6 W per cfm.

~~as~~ These measures shall be confirmed through HERS field verification in accordance with the procedures in RA3.7.4.4 for buildings with three habitable stories or less, or the procedures in NA2.2.4.1.5 for buildings with four or more habitable stories.

b. ~~b.~~ In Climate Zones 1, 2, and 11-16, balanced ventilation systems serving multiple dwelling units in ~~B~~buildings with four or more habitable stories shall:

1. Be ~~with~~ an ERV or HRV,~~ serving multiple dwelling units shall be field verified in accordance with NA7.18.4 and confirm~~

2. Have a minimum sensible recovery efficiency or effectiveness of 67 percent, rated at 32 degrees Fahrenheit (0 degrees Celsius),

3. Meet the fan power ~~meeting the~~ requirements of~~in~~ Section 170.2(c)4A, and

4. Have recovery bypass or ~~free cooling~~ control ~~capabilities~~ to directly economize with ventilation air based on outdoor air temperature limits ~~that meet the requirements~~ specified in Table 170.2-G.

These measures shall be filed verified in accordance with NA7.18.4.

c. In buildings with three habitable stories or less in Climate Zones 4-10, when a heat pump space conditioning system is installed to meet the requirements of Section 170.2(c)3Ai, balanced ventilation systems without an ERV or HRV shall have a fan efficacy less than or equal to 0.4 W/cfm.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)3B: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Provider data registry requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not required for multifamily dwelling units in buildings four habitable stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

C. HVAC System Bypass Ducts. Bypass ducts that deliver conditioned supply air directly to the space conditioning system return duct airflow shall not be used.

4. Common Use Area Space Conditioning Systems. A building complies with this section by being designed with and having constructed and installed a space-conditioning system that meets the applicable requirements of Subsections A through M.

A. Fan Systems. Each fan system moving air into, out of, or between spaces or circulating air for the purpose of conditioning air within a space shall meet the requirements of Items i, ii, and iii below.

i. Fan Power Budget. For each fan system that includes at least one fan or fan array with fan electrical input power ≥ 1 kW, fan system electrical input power (Fan $kW_{design,system}$) determined per Section 170.2(c)4Aib at the fan system design airflow ~~determined per section 170.2(c)4Aib~~ shall not exceed Fan kW_{budget} as calculated per section 170.2(c)4Aia.

a. Calculation of Fan Power Budget (Fan kW_{budget}). For each fan system:

I. Determine the fan system airflow and choose the appropriate table(s) for fan power allowance.

A. For single-cabinet fan systems, use the fan system airflow and the power allowances in both Tables 170.2-B and Table 170.2-C.

B. For supply-only fan systems, use the fan system airflow and power allowances in Table 170.2-B.

C. For relief fan systems, use the design relief airflow and the power allowances in Table 170.2-C.

D. For exhaust, return, and transfer fan systems, use the fan system airflow and the power allowances in Table 170.2-C.

E. For complex fan systems, separately calculate the fan power allowance for the supply and return/exhaust systems and sum them. For the supply airflow, use supply airflow at the fan system design conditions, and the power allowances in Table 170.2-B. For the return/exhaust airflow, use return/exhaust airflow at the fan system design conditions, and the power allowances in Table 170.2-C.

I. For each fan system determine the components included in the fan system and sum the Fan Power Allowances of those components. All fan systems shall include the System Base Allowance. If, for a given component, only a portion of the fan system airflow passes through the component, calculate the Fan Power Allowance for that component per this equation:

$$FPA_{adj} = \frac{Q_{comp}}{Q_{sys}} X \, FPA_{comp}$$

Where:

FPA_{adj} = The correct/ed fan power allowance for the component in w/cfm

Q_{comp} = The airflow through component in cfm

Q_{sys} = The fan system airflow in cfm

FPA_{comp} = The fan power allowance of the component from Table 170.2-B or Table 170.2-C

II. Multiply the fan system airflow by the sum of the fan power allowances for the fan system.

IV. Divide by 1000 to convert to Fan kW_{budget}.

V. For building sites at elevations greater than 3,000 feet, multiply Fan kW_{budget} by Correction Factor in Table 170.2-D.

b. Determining Fan System Electrical Input Power (Fan $kW_{design,system}$). Fan $kW_{design,system}$ is the sum of Fan kW_{design} for each fan or fan array included in the fan system with Fan kW_{design} ≥ 1 kW. If variable speed drives are used their efficiency losses shall be included. Fan input power shall be calculated with two times the clean~~mid-life~~ filter pressure drop, which is the mean of the clean filter pressure drop and design final filter pressure drop. The Fan kW_{design} for each fan or fan array shall be determined using one of the following methods. There is no requirement to use the same method for all fans in a fan system:

I. Use the default Fan kW_{design} in Table 170.2-E for one or more of the fans. This method cannot be used for complex fan systems.

II. Use the Fan kW_{design} at fan system design conditions provided by the manufacturer of the fan, fan array, or equipment that includes the fan or fan array calculated per a test procedure included in USDOE 10 CFR Part 430, USDOE 10 CFR Part 431, ANSI/AMCA Standard 208-2018, ANSI/AMCA Standard 210-2016, AHRI Standard 430-2020, AHRI Standard 440-2019, or ISO 5801-2017.

III. Use the Fan kW_{design} provided by the manufacturer, calculated at fan system design conditions per one of the methods listed in section 5.3 of ANSI/AMCA 208-2018.

IV. Determine the Fan kW_{design} by using the maximum electrical input power provided on the motor nameplate.

ii. ~~Variable air volume~~ (VAV) systems.

a. Static Pressure Sensor Location. Static pressure sensors used to control variable air volume fans shall be placed in a position such that the controller set point is no greater than one-third the total design fan static pressure, except for systems with zone reset control complying with Section 170.2(c)4Aiib. If this results in the sensor being located downstream of any major duct split, multiple sensors shall be installed in each major branch with fan capacity controlled to satisfy the sensor furthest below its setpoint; and

b. Setpoint Reset. For systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to the central control panel, static pressure setpoints shall be reset based on the zone requiring the most pressure; i.e., the set point is reset lower until one zone damper is nearly wide open.

iii. Fractional HVAC Motors for Fans. HVAC motors for fans that are less than1 hp and 1/12 hp or greater shall be electronically-commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent when rated in accordance with NEMA Standard MG 1-2006 at full load rating conditions. These motors shall also have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. Belt-driven fans may use sheave adjustments for airflow balancing in lieu of a varying motor speed.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Aiii: Motors in fan-coils and terminal units that operate only when providing heating to the space served.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Aiii: Motors in space conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2

EXCEPTION 1 to 170.2(c)4A: fan system power caused solely by process loads.

TABLE 170.2-B: Supply Fan Power Allowances (watts/cfm)

	Multi-Zone VAV Systems ≤5,000 cfm	Multi-Zone VAV Systems >5,000 and ≤10,000 cfm	Multi-Zone VAV Systems >10,000 cfm	All Other Fan Systems ≤5,000 cfm	All Other Fan Systems >5,000 and ≤10,000 cfm	All Other Fan Systems >10,000 cfm
Supply System Base Allowance for AHU Serving Spaces < 6 Floors Away.	0.395	0.453	0.413	0.232	0.256	0.236
Supply System Base Allowance for AHU Serving Spaces > 6 Floors Away	0.508	0.548	0.501	0.349	0.356	0.325
MERV 13 to MERV 16 Filter Upstream of Thermal Conditioning Equipment (two times the clean filter pressure drop~~mid-life~~)[2]	0.136	0.114	0.105	0.139	0.120	0.107
MERV 13 to MERV 16 Final Filter Downstream of Thermal Conditioning Equipment. (two times the clean filter pressure drop~~mid-life~~) [2]	0.225	0.188	0.176	0.231	0.197	0.177
Filtration Allowance for > Merv 16 or HEPA Filter (two times the clean filter pressure drop~~mid-life~~) [2]	0.335	0.280	0.265	0.342	0.292	0.264
Central Hydronic Heating Coil Allowance	0.046	0.048	0.052	0.046	0.050	0.054
Electric Heat Allowance	0.046	0.038	0.035	0.046	0.040	0.036
Gas Heat Allowance	0.069	0.057	0.070	0.058	0.060	0.072
Hydronic/DX Cooling Coil, or Heat Pump Coil (wet) Allowance	0.135	0.114	0.105	0.139	0.120	0.107
Solid or Liquid Desiccant System Allowance	0.157	0.132	0.123	0.163	0.139	0.124
Reheat Coil for Dehumidification Allowance	0.045	0.038	0.035	0.046	0.040	0.036
Allowance for evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with a cooling coil. Value shown is allowed watts/cfm per 1.0 in. wg. Determine pressure loss (in. wg) at 400 fpm or maximum velocity allowed by the manufacturer, whichever is less. *[Calculation required, see note 4]*	0.224	0.188	0.176	0.231	0.197	0.177
Allowance for 100% outdoor air system meeting the requirements of Note 5.	*0.000*	*0.000*	0.000	0.070	0.100	0.107

TABLE 170.2-B (continued)						
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.50 ≤ ERR <0.55 [6]	0.135	0.114	0.105	0.139	0.120	0.107
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.55 ≤ ERR <0.60 [6]	0.160	0.134	0.124	0.165	0.141	0.126
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.60 ≤ ERR <0.65 [6]	0.184	0.155	0.144	0.190	0.163	0.146
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.65 ≤ ERR <0.70 [6]	0.208	0.175	0.163	0.215	0.184	0.165
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.70 ≤ ERR <0.75 [6]	0.232	0.196	0.183	0.240	0.205	0.184
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.75 ≤ ERR <0.80 [6]	0.257	0.216	0.202	0.264	0.226	0.203
Energy Recovery Allowance for ERR ≥ 0.80 [6]	0.281	0.236	0.222	0.289	0.247	0.222
~~Allowance for Sensible-Only Recovery~~Coil Runaround Loop	0.135	0.114	0.105	0.139	0.120	0.107
Allowance for gas phase filtration required by code or accredited standard. Value shown is allowed w/cfm per 1.0 in. wg air pressure drop. *[Calculation required, see note 4]*	0.224	0.188	0.176	0.231	0.197	0.177
Economizer Return Damper	0.045	0.038	0.035	0.046	0.040	0.036
Air Blender Allowance	0.045	0.038	0.035	0.046	0.040	0.036
Allowance for sound attenuation section [fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35].	0.034	0.029	0.026	0.035	0.030	0.027
Deduction for systems that feed a terminal unit with a fan with electrical input power < 1kW.	-0.100	-0.100	-0.100	-0.100	-0.100	-0.100
Low-turndown single-zone VAV fan systems meeting the requirements in note 7.	0.000	0.000	0.000	.070	0.100	0.089
~~1. See FAN SYSTEM, MULTI-ZONE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME (VAV) in definition a Multi-Zone VAV System~~.						
~~2. Filter fan power allowance can only be counted once per fan system.~~						
~~3. RESERVED~~.						
~~4. Power allowance requires further calculation by multiplying the actual in. wg. of the device/ component by the watts/ cfm in Table 170.2-B~~.						
~~5. The 100% outdoor air system must serve 3 or more HVAC zones and airflow during non-economizer operating periods must not exceed 135% of minimum requirements in Section 120.1(c)(3).~~						
~~6. Energy Recovery Ratio (ERR) calculated per ANSI/ASHRAE 84-2020.~~						

1. See FAN SYSTEM, MULTI-ZONE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME (VAV) in definition a Multi-Zone VAV System.
2. Filter fan power allowance can only be counted once per fan system.
3. RESERVED.
4. Power allowance requires further calculation by multiplying the actual in. wg. of the device/ component by the watts/ cfm in Table 170.2-B.
5. The 100% outdoor air system must serve 3 or more HVAC zones and airflow during non-economizer operating periods must not exceed 135% of minimum requirements in Section 120.1(c)(3).

6. Energy Recovery Ratio (ERR) calculated per ANSI/ASHRAE 84-2020.
7. A low-turndown single-zone VAV fan system must be capable of and configured to reduce airflow to 50 percent of design airflow and use no more than 30 percent of the design wattage at that airflow. No more than 10 percent of the design load served by the equipment shall have fixed loads.

TABLE 170.2-C: EXHAUST, RETURN, RELIEF, TRANSFER FAN POWER ALLOWANCES (~~CFM/ WATT~~WATT/CFM)

	Multi-Zone VAV Systems ≤5,000 cfm[1]	Multi-Zone VAV Systems >5,000 and ≤10,000 cfm[1]	Multi-Zone VAV Systems >10,000 cfm[1]	All Other Fan Systems ≤5,000 cfm	All Other Fan Systems >5,000 and ≤10,000 cfm	All Other Fan Systems >10,000 cfm
Exhaust System Base Allowance	0.221	0.246	0.236	0.186	0.184	0.190
Filter (any MERV value)[2]	0.046	0.041	0.036	0.046	0.041	0.035
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.50 ≤ ERR <0.55 [3]	0.139	0.120	0.107	0.139	0.123	0.109
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.55 ≤ ERR <0.60 [3]	0.165	0.142	0.126	0.165	0.144	0.128
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.60 ≤ ERR <0.65 [3]	0.190	0.163	0.146	0.191	0.166	0.148
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.65 ≤ ERR <0.70 [3]	0.215	0.184	0.165	0.216	0.188	0.167
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.70 ≤ ERR <0.75 [3]	0.240	0.206	0.184	0.241	0.209	0.186
Energy Recovery Allowance for 0.75 ≤ ERR <0.80 [3]	0.265	0.227	0.203	0.266	0.231	0.205
Energy Recovery Allowance for ERR ≥ 0.80 [3]	0.289	0.248	0.222	0.291	0.252	0.225
~~Allowance for Sensible-Only Recovery~~Coil Runaround Loop	0.139	0.120	0.107	0.139	0.123	0.109

TABLE 170.2-C (CONTINUED) ~~*TABLE 170.2-C (CONTINUED)*~~

~~Economizer return damper~~			~~0.036~~			~~0.037~~
Return or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.116	0.100	0.089	0.116	0.102	0.091
Return and/or exhaust airflow control devices required for space pressurization control	0.116	0.100	0.089	0.116	0.102	0.091
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings for vertical duct exceeding 75 ft. Value shown is allowed w/cfm per 0.25 in. wg for each 100 feet exceeding 75 feet. [Calculation required, see note 4]	0.058	0.051	0.045	0.058	0.052	0.046
Biosafety cabinet. Value shown is allowed w/cfm per 1.0 in. wg air pressure drop. [Calculation required, see note 4]	0.231	0.198	0.177	0.232	0.202	0.179
Exhaust filters, scrubbers, or other exhaust treatment required by code or standard. Value shown is allowed w/cfm per 1.0 in. wg air pressure drop. [Calculation required, see note 4]	0.231	0.198	0.177	0.232	0.202	0.179
Sound attenuation section [Fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35.]	0.035	0.030	0.027	0.035	0.031	0.028
~~1. For requirements to be classified as a Multi-Zone VAV System see definition for Multi-Zone Variable Air Volume Fan System~~.						
~~2. Filter pressure loss can only be counted once per fan system.~~						
~~3. Energy Recovery Ratio (ERR) calculated per ANSI/ASHRAE 84-2020~~.						
~~4. Power allowance requires further calculation, multiplying the actual pressure drop (in. wg.) of the device/ component by the watts/cfm in the Table 170.2-C~~.						

1. For requirements to be classified as a Multi-Zone VAV System see definition for Multi-Zone Variable Air Volume Fan System.

2. Filter pressure loss can only be counted once per fan system.
3.Energy Recovery Ratio (ERR) calculated per ANSI/ASHRAE 84-2020.
~~1.~~ 4. Power allowance requires further calculation, multiplying the actual pressure drop (in. wg.) of the device/ component by the watts/cfm in the Table 170.2-C.

TABLE 170.2-D AIR DENSITY CORRECTION FACTORS

Altitude (ft)	*Correction factor*
<3,000	*1.000*
≥~~2:~~3,000 and <4,000	*0.896*
≥~~2:~~4,000 and <5,000	*0.864*
≥~~2:~~5,000 and <6,000	*0.832*
≥~~2:~~6,000	*0.801*

TABLE **170.2-E: *Default values for Fan kW$_{design}$ Based on Motor Nameplate HP***

Motor Nameplate HP	Default Fan kW$_{design}$ with variable speed drive (Fan kW$_{design}$)	Default Fan kW$_{design}$ without variable speed drive (Fan kW$_{design}$)
<1	0.96	0.89
≥1 and <1.5	1.38	1.29
≥1.5 and <2	1.84	1.72
≥2 and <3	2.73	2.57
≥3 and <5	4.38	4.17
≥5 and <7.5	6.43	6.15
≥7.5 and <10	8.46	8.13
≥10 and <15	12.47	12.03
≥15 and <20	16.55	16.04
≥20 and <25	20.58	19.92
≥25 and <30	24.59	23.77
≥30 and <40	32.74	31.70
≥40 and <50	40.71	39.46
≥50 and <60	48.50	47.10
≥60 and <75	60.45	58.87
≥75 and ≤100	80.40	78.17
~~1. This table cannot be used for Motor Nameplate Horsepower values greater than 100.~~		
~~2. This table is to be used only with motors with a service factor ≤1.15. If the service factor is not provided, this table may not be used.~~		

1. This table cannot be used for Motor Nameplate Horsepower values greater than 100.
2. This table is to be used only with motors with a service factor ≤1.15. If the service factor is not provided, this table may not be used.

B. Space-conditioning Zone Controls. Each space-conditioning zone shall have controls designed in accordance with i or ii:

i. Each space-conditioning zone shall have controls that prevent:

a. Reheating; and

b. Recooling; and

c. Simultaneous provisions of heating and cooling to the same zone, such as mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously mechanically heated and air that has been previously cooled either by cooling equipment or by economizer systems; or

ii. Zones served by variable air-volume systems that are designed and controlled to reduce, to a minimum, the volume of reheated, recooled, or mixed air are allowed only if the controls meet all of the following requirements:

a. For each zone with direct digital controls (DDC), the volume of primary air that is reheated, recooled or mixed air supply shall not exceed the larger of:

I. 50 percent of the peak primary airflow; or

II. The design zone outdoor airflow rate as specified by Section 160.2(c)3.

b. The volume of primary air in the deadband shall not exceed the design zone outdoor airflow rate as specified by Section 160.2(c)3.

c. The first stage of heating consists of modulating the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint no higher than 95ºF while the airflow is maintained at the dead band flow rate.

d. The second stage of heating consists of modulating the airflow rate from the dead band flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate.

e. For each zone without DDC, the volume of primary air that is reheated, re-cooled, or mixed air supply shall not exceed the larger of the following:

I. 30 percent of the peak primary airflow; or

II. The design zone outdoor airflow rate as specified by Section 160.2(c)3.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4B: Zones with special pressurization relationships or cross-contamination control needs.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4B: Zones served by space-conditioning systems in which at least 75 percent of the energy for reheating, or providing warm air in mixing systems, is provided from a site-recovered or site-solar energy source.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4B: Zones in which specific humidity levels are required to satisfy exempt process loads. Computer rooms or other spaces where the only process load is from IT equipment may not use this exception.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(c)4B: Zones with a peak supply-air quantity of 300 cfm or less.

C. Economizers.

i. Each cooling air handler that has a design total mechanical cooling capacity over 33,000 Btu/hr, or chilled-water cooling systems without a fan or that use induced airflow that has a cooling capacity greater than the systems listed in TABLE 170.2-E, shall include either:

a. An air economizer capable of modulating outside-air and return-air dampers to supply 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as outside-air; or

b. A water economizer capable of providing 100 percent of the expected system cooling load, at outside air temperatures of 50°F dry-bulb and 45°F wet-bulb and below.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Ci: Where special outside air filtration and treatment, for the reduction and treatment of unusual outdoor contaminants, makes compliance infeasible.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Ci: Where the use of outdoor air for cooling will affect other systems, such as humidification or dehumidification, so as to increase overall building TDV energy use.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4Ci: Systems serving dwelling units.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(c)4Ci: Where comfort cooling systems have the cooling efficiency that meets or exceeds the cooling efficiency improvement requirements in TABLE 170.2-F.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 170.2(c)4Ci: Fan systems primarily serving computer rooms. See Section 140.9(a) for computer room economizer requirements.

TABLE 170.2-E CHILLED WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY

Climate Zones	Total Building Chilled Water System Capacity, Minus Capacity of the Cooling units with Air Economizers	
	Building Water-Cooled Chilled Water System	Air-Cooled Chilled Water Systems or District Chilled Water Systems
15	≥ 960,000 Btu/h (280 kW)	≥ 1,250,000 Btu/h (365 kW)
1-14	≥720,000 Btu/h (210 kW)	≥940,000 Btu/h (275 kW)
16	≥1,320,000 Btu/h (385 kW)	≥1,720,000 Bu/h (505 kW)

TABLE 170.2-F ECONOMIZER TRADE-OFF TABLE FOR COOLING SYSTEMS

Climate Zone	**Efficiency Improvement [a]**
1	70%
2	65%
3	65%
4	65%
5	70%
6	30%
7	30%
8	30%
9	30%
10	30%
11	30%
12	30%
13	30%
14	30%
15	30%
16	70%

[a] If a unit is rated with an annualized or part-load metric, then to eliminate the required economizer, only the annualized or part-load minimum cooling efficiency of the unit must be increased by the percentage shown. If the unit is only rated with a full load metric, like EER or COP cooling, then that metric must be increased by the percentage shown. To determine the efficiency required to eliminate economizer, when the unit *equipment efficiency* is rated with an energy-input divided by work-output metric, the metric shall first be converted to COP prior to multiplying by the *efficiency* improvement percentage and then converted back to the rated metric.

ii. If an economizer is required by Section 170.2(c)4Ci, and an air economizer is used to meet the requirement, then it shall be:

a. Designed and equipped with controls so that economizer operation does not increase the building heating energy use during normal operation; and

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)4Ciia: Systems that provide 75 percent of the annual energy used for mechanical heating from site-recovered energy or a site-solar energy source.

b. Capable of providing partial cooling even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load.

c. Designed and equipped with a device type and high limit shut off complying with TABLE 170.2-G.

TABLE 170.2-G AIR ECONOMIZER HIGH LIMIT SHUT OFF CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

Device Type[a]	**Climate Zones**	**Required High Limit (Economizer Off When):**	**Required High Limit (Economizer Off When):**
		Equation[b]	**Description**
Fixed Dry Bulb	1, 3, 5, 11-16	$T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
Fixed Dry Bulb	2, 4, 10	$T_{OA} > 73°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 73°F
Fixed Dry Bulb	6, 8, 9	$T_{OA} > 71°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 71°F
Fixed Dry Bulb	7	$T_{OA} > 69°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 69°F
Differential Dry Bulb	1, 3, 5, 11-16	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
Differential Dry Bulb	2, 4, 10	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}-2°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 2°F
Differential Dry Bulb	6, 8, 9	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}-4°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 4°F
Differential Dry Bulb	7	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}-6°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 6°F
Fixed Enthalpy[c] + Fixed Drybulb	All	$h_{OA} > 28$ Btu/lb[c] or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air[c] or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F

~~[a] Only the high limit control devices listed are allowed to be used and at the setpoints listed. Others such as Dew Point, Fixed Enthalpy, Electronic Enthalpy, and Differential Enthalpy Controls, may not be used in any Climate Zone for compliance with Section 170.2(c)4Ci unless approval for use is provided by the Energy Commission Executive Director.~~

~~[b] Devices with selectable (rather than adjustable) setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.~~

~~[c] At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the Fixed Enthalpy limit value shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50% relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 foot elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.~~

[a] Only the high limit control devices listed are allowed to be used and at the setpoints listed. Others such as Dew Point, Fixed Enthalpy, Electronic Enthalpy, and Differential Enthalpy Controls, may not be used in any Climate Zone for compliance with Section 170.2(c)4Ci unless approval for use is provided by the Energy Commission Executive Director.

[b] Devices with selectable (rather than adjustable) setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.

[c] At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the Fixed Enthalpy limit value shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50% relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 foot elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.

iii. The air economizer and all air dampers shall have the following features:

a. **Warranty.** 5-year Manufacturer warranty of economizer assembly.

b. **Damper reliability testing.** Suppliers of economizers shall certify that the economizer assembly, including but not limited to outdoor air damper, return air damper, drive linkage, and actuator, have been tested and are able to open and close against the rated airflow and pressure of the system for 60,000 damper opening and closing cycles.

c. **Damper leakage.** Economizer outdoor air and return air dampers shall have a maximum leakage rate of 10 cfm/sf at 250 Pascals (1.0 in. of water) when tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500-D. The economizer outside air and return air damper leakage rates shall be certified to the Energy Commission in accordance with Section 110.0.

d. **Adjustable setpoint.** If the high-limit control is fixed dry-bulb or fixed enthalpy + fixed dry-bulb then the control shall have an adjustable setpoint.

e. **Sensor accuracy.** Outdoor air, return air, mixed air, and supply air sensors shall be calibrated within the following accuracies.

I. Drybulb and wetbulb temperatures accurate to ±2°F over the range of 40°F to 80°F;

II. Enthalpy accurate to ±3 Btu/lb over the range of 20 Btu/lb to 36 Btu/lb;

III. Relative humidity (RH) accurate to ±5 percent over the range of 20 percent to 80 percent RH;

f. **Sensor calibration data.** Data used for control of the economizer shall be plotted on a sensor performance curve.

g. **Sensor high limit control.** Sensors used for the high limit control shall be located to prevent false readings, including but not limited to being properly shielded from direct sunlight.

h. **Relief air system.** Relief air systems shall be capable of providing 100 percent outside air without over-pressurizing the building.

iv. The space conditioning system shall include the following:

a. Unit controls shall have mechanical capacity controls interlocked with economizer controls such that the economizer is at 100 percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and does not begin to close until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F.

b. Direct Expansion (DX) units greater than 65,000 Btu/hr that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have a minimum of 2 stages of mechanical cooling capacity.

c. DX units not within the scope of Section 170.2(c)4Ciib shall (i) comply with the requirements in TABLE 170.2-H, and (ii) shall have controls that do not false load the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer or by any other means except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling capacity.

TABLE 170.2-H DIRECT EXPANSION (DX) UNIT REQUIREMENTS FOR COOLING STAGES AND COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT

Cooling Capacity	**Minimum Number of Mechanical Cooling Stages**	**Minimum Compressor Displacement**
≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

v. Systems that include a water economizer to meet Section 170.2(c)4Ci shall include the following:

a. Maximum pressure drop. Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer shall either have a waterside pressure drop of less than 15 feet of water, or a secondary loop shall be installed so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not contributing to pressure drop when the system is in the normal cooling (non-economizer) mode.

b. Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system so that they are capable of providing partial cooling even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not false load the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer or by any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

D. **Supply Air Temperature Reset Controls.** Space-conditioning systems supplying heated or cooled air to multiple zones shall include controls that automatically reset supply-air temperatures. Air distribution systems serving zones that are likely to have constant loads shall be designed for the air flows resulting from the fully reset supply air temperature. Supply air temperature reset controls shall be:

i. In response to representative building loads or to outdoor air temperature; and

ii. At least 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4D: Systems that meet the requirements of Section 170.2(c)3Bi, without using Exception 1 to that section.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4D: Where supply-air temperature reset would increase overall building energy use.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4D: Systems supplying zones in which specific humidity levels are required to satisfy process loads. Computer Rooms or other spaces with only IT equipment may not use this exception.

E. **Electric Resistance Heating.** Electric resistance heating systems shall not be used for space heating.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4E: Where an electric-resistance heating system supplements a heating system in which at least 60 percent of the annual energy requirement is supplied by site-solar or recovered energy.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4E: Where an electric-resistance heating system supplements a heat pump heating system, and the heating capacity of the heat pump is more than 75 percent of the design heating load calculated in accordance with Section 170.2(c)1 at the design outdoor temperature specified in Section 170.2(c)2.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4E: Where the total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the entire building is less than 10 percent of the total design output capacity of all heating equipment serving the entire building.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(c)4E: Where the total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the entire building, excluding those allowed under Exception 2, is no more than 3 kW.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 170.2(c)4E: heating systems serving as emergency backup to gas heating equipment.

F. **Heat Rejection Systems.** Heat rejection equipment used in comfort cooling systems such as air-cooled condensers, open cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers, and evaporative condensers shall include the following:

i. **Fan Speed Control.** Each fan powered by a motor of 7.5 hp (5.6 kW) or larger shall have the capability to operate that fan at 2/3 of full speed or less, and shall have controls that automatically change the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature or pressure of the heat rejection device.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Fi: Heat rejection devices included as an integral part of the equipment listed in TABLE 110.2-A through TABLE 110.2-N~~1~~.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Fi: Condenser fans serving multiple refrigerant circuits.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4Fi: Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(c)4Fi: Up to one third of the fans on a condenser or tower with multiple fans where the lead fans comply with the speed control requirement.

ii. **Tower Flow Turndown.** Open cooling towers configured with multiple condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all cells can be run in parallel with the larger of:

a. The flow that is produced by the smallest pump; or

b. 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

iii. **Limitation on Centrifugal Fan Cooling Towers.** Open cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 900 gpm and greater at 95°F condenser water return, 85°F condenser water supply, and 75°F outdoor wet-bulb temperature, shall use propeller fans and shall not use centrifugal fans.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Fiii: Cooling towers that are ducted (inlet or discharge) or have an external sound trap that requires external static pressure capability.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Fiii: Cooling towers that meet the energy efficiency requirement for propeller fan towers in Section 110.2, TABLE 110.2-~~G~~F.

iv. **Multiple Cell Heat Rejection Equipment.** Multiple cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall:

a. Operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer’s requirements for all system components, and

b. Control all operating fans to the same speed. Minimum fan speed shall comply with the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive as specified by the manufacture’s recommendation. Staging of fans is allowed once the fans are at their minimum operating speed.

v. **Cooling tower efficiency.** Axial fan, open-circuit cooling towers serving condenser water loops for chilled water plants with a total of 900 gpm or greater, shall have a rated efficiency of no less than 60 gpm/hp when rated in accordance with the conditions as listed in Table 110.2-~~G~~F.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Fv: Replacement of existing cooling towers that are inside an existing building or on an existing roof.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Fv: Cooling towers serving buildings in Climate Zone 1 or 16.

G. **Minimum Chiller Efficiency.** Chillers shall meet or exceed Path B from TABLE 110.2-D

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4G**:** Chillers with electrical service > 600V.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4G: Chillers attached to a heat recovery system with a design heat recovery capacity > 40 percent of the design chiller cooling capacity.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4G: Chillers used to charge thermal energy storage systems where the charging temperature is < 40 °F.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(c)4G: In buildings with more than 3 chillers, only 3 chillers are required to meet the Path B efficiencies

H. **Limitation of Air-Cooled Chillers.** Chilled water plants shall not have more than 300 tons provided by air-cooled chillers.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4H: Where the water quality at the building site fails to meet manufacturer’s specifications for the use of water-cooled chillers.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4H: Chillers that are used to charge a thermal energy storage system with a design temperature of less than 40 degrees F (4 degrees C).

I. **Hydronic System Measures**.

i. **Hydronic Variable Flow Systems.** HVAC chilled and hot water pumping shall be designed for variable fluid flow and shall be capable of reducing pump flow rates to no more than the larger of: a) 50 percent or less of the design flow rate; or b) the minimum flow required by the equipment manufacturer for the proper operation of equipment served by the system.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4I: Systems that include no more than three control valves.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4I: Systems having a total pump system power less than or equal to 1.5 hp.

ii. **Chiller Isolation.** When a chilled water system includes more than one chiller, provisions shall be made so that flow through any chiller is automatically shut off when that chiller is shut off while still maintaining flow through other operating chiller(s). Chillers that are piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

iii. **Boiler Isolation.** When a hot water plant includes more than one boiler, provisions shall be made so that flow through any boiler is automatically shut off when that boiler is shut off while still maintaining flow through other operating boiler(s).

iv. **Chilled and Hot Water Temperature Reset Controls.** Systems with a design capacity exceeding 500,000 Btu/hr supplying chilled or heated water shall include controls that automatically reset supply water temperatures as a function of representative building loads or outside air temperature.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)4Iiv: Hydronic systems that use variable flow to reduce pumping energy in accordance with Section 170.2(c)4Ii.

v. **Water-Cooled Air Conditioner and Hydronic Heat Pump Systems.** Water circulation systems serving water-cooled air conditioners, hydronic heat pumps, or both, that have total pump system power exceeding 5 hp shall have flow controls that meet the requirements of Section 170.2(c)4Ivi. Each such air conditioner or heat pump shall have a two-position automatic valve interlocked to shut off water flow when the compressor is off.

vi. **Variable Flow Controls.**

a. Variable Speed Drives. Individual pumps serving variable flow systems and having a motor horsepower exceeding 5 hp shall have controls or devices (such as variable speed control) that will result in pump motor demand of no more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design water flow. The pumps shall be controlled as a function of required differential pressure.

b. Pressure Sensor Location and Setpoint.

c. For systems without direct digital control of individual coils reporting to the central control panel, differential pressure shall be measured at the most remote heat exchanger or the heat exchanger requiring the greatest differential pressure.

d. For systems with direct digital control of individual coils with a central control panel, the static pressure set point shall be reset based on the valve requiring the most pressure, and the setpoint shall be no less than 80 percent open. Pressure sensors may be mounted anywhere.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Ivi: Heating hot water systems.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Ivi: Condenser water systems serving only water-cooled chillers.

vii. **Hydronic Heat Pump (WLHP) Controls.** Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are capable of providing a heat pump water supply temperature deadband of at least 20°F between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)4Ivii: Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is used to determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, dead bands of less than 20°F shall be allowed**.**

J. RESERVED

K. **Fan Control.** Each cooling system listed in TABLE 170.2-H shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:

i. DX and chilled water cooling systems that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall (i) have a minimum of 2 stages of fan control with no more than 66 percent speed when operating on stage 1; and (ii) draw no more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed, when operating at 66 percent speed.

ii. All other systems, including but not limited to DX cooling systems and chilled water systems that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall have proportional fan control such that at 50 percent air flow the power draw is no more than 30 percent of the fan power at full fan speed.

iii. Systems that include an air side economizer to meet 170.2(c)4Ci shall have a minimum of two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)4K: Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water systems with all fan motors <1 HP, or for evaporative systems with all fan motors < 1 HP, if the systems are not used to provide ventilation air and all indoor fans cycle with the load.

L. Mechanical System Shut-off. Any directly conditioned common use area space with operable wall or roof openings to the outdoors shall be provided with interlock controls that disable or reset the temperature setpoint to 55°F for mechanical heating and disable or reset the temperature setpoint to 90°F for mechanical cooling to that space when any such opening is open for more than 5 minutes.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4L: Interlocks are not required on doors with automatic closing devices**.**

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4L: Any space without a thermostatic control (thermostat or a space temperature sensor used to control heating or cooling to the space).

M. Exhaust System Transfer Air. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space with mechanical exhaust shall not exceed the greater of:

i. The supply flow required to meet the space heating or cooling load; or

ii. The ventilation rate required by the authority having jurisdiction, the facility Environmental Health and Safety Department, or by Section 160.2(c)3; or

iii. The mechanical exhaust flow minus the available transfer air. Available transfer air shall be from another conditioned space or return air plenums on the same floor and same smoke or fire compartment, and that at their closest point are within 15 feet of each other.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4M: Spaces that are required by applicable codes and standards to be maintained at a positive pressure differential relative to adjacent spaces.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4M: Spaces where the highest amount of transfer air that could be used for exhaust makeup may exceed the available transfer airflow rate and where the spaces have a required negative pressure relationship.

N. Dedicated Outdoor Air Systems (DOAS). HVAC Systems utilizing a dedicated outdoor air system (DOAS) to condition, temper, or filter 100 percent outdoor air separate from local or central space-conditioning systems serving the same space shall meet the following criteria:

i. Provide each space with one of the following configurations:

a. A DOAS unit and a separate independent space-conditioning system in which the independent space-conditioning system complies with the economizer requirements specified by Section 170.2(c)4Ci and the DOAS unit complies with the exhaust air heat recovery requirements specified in Section 170.2(c)4N.

b. A DOAS unit which meets or exceeds the following criteria and a separate space cooling system:

I. Provides at least the minimum ventilation air flow rate as specified in Section 120.1(c)3 and provides no less than 0.3cfm/ft^2 during economizer operation.

II. Ventilation sensible energy recovery ratio of at least 60 percent or enthalpy recovery ratio of at least 50 percent at full flow cooling design conditions and heating design condition.

III. Energy recovery bypass or control to directly economize with ventilation air based on outdoor air temperature limits specified in TABLE 170.2-G.

c. DOAS units with airflow rate > 1,000 cfm must meet demand ventilation control requirements in accordance with Sections 160.2(c)5C, D, and E**.**

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)4Ni: Systems installed for the sole purpose of providing makeup air for exhausting toxic fumes, flammable materials, paint, corrosive fumes, dust, dryer exhaust, or commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.

ii. Ventilation fan systems shall be capable of modulating fan speed control.

iii. Heating and cooling equipment fans, heating and cooling circulation pumps, and terminal unit fans shall cycle off, and terminal unit primary cooling air shall be shut off when there is no call for heating or cooling in the zone.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(c)4Niii: Fans used for heating and cooling using less than 0.12 watts per cfm may operate when space temperatures are within the thermostat deadband to provide destratification and air mixing in the space.

iv. The DOAS supply air shall be delivered directly to the occupied space or downstream of the terminal heating/or cooling coils.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Niv: Active chilled beam systems.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4Niv: Sensible only cooling terminal units with pressure-independent variable-airflow regulating devices limiting the DOAS supply air to the greater of latent load or minimum ventilation requirements.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4Niv: Terminal heating or cooling units that comply with the low fan power allowance requirements in Exception to Section 170.2(c)4Oiii.

v. DOAS with mechanical cooling providing ventilation to multiple zones and operating in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air above 60°F when representative building loads or outdoor air temperature indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

vi. DOAS with a total fan system power less than 1 kW shall not exceed a total combined fan power of 1.0 W/cfm. DOAS with fan power greater than or equal to 1 kW shall meet the requirements of Section 170.2(c)4A.

O. Exhaust Air Heat Recovery. Fan systems designed to operate to the criteria listed in either Table 170.2-I or Table 170.2-J shall include an exhaust air heat recovery system which meets the following:

i. A sensible energy recovery ratio of at least 60 percent or an enthalpy recovery ratio of at least 50 percent for both heating and cooling design conditions.

ii. Energy recovery bypass or control to disable energy recovery and to directly economize with ventilation air based on outdoor air temperature limits specified in TABLE 170.2-G. For energy recovery systems where the transfer of energy cannot be stopped, bypass shall prevent the total airflow rate of either outdoor air or exhaust air through the energy recovery exchanger from exceeding 10% of the full design airflow rate.

iii. For a DOAS unit and a separate independent space-conditioning system meeting the requirements of 170.2(c)4Nia, the design supply fan airflow rate shall be the total airflow of only the DOAS unit.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(c)4Oii: DOAS units with the capability to shut off when a separate independent space-conditioning system meets the economizer requirements specified by section 170.2(c)4Ci is economizing.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(c)4O: Systems meeting Section 140.9(c) Prescriptive Requirements for Laboratory and Factory Exhaust Systems.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(c)4O: Systems serving spaces that are not cooled and that are heated to less than 60°F.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(c)4O: Where more than 60 percent of the outdoor air heating energy is provided from site-recovered energy in Climate Zone 16.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 170.2(c)4O: Sensible recovery ratio requirements at heating design conditions are exempted for Climate Zone 15.

EXCEPTION 6 to 170.2(c)4O: Sensible recovery ratio requirements at cooling design conditions are exempted for Climate Zone 01.

EXCEPTION 7 to Section 170.2(c)4O: Where the sum of the airflow rates exhausted and relieved within 20 feet of each other is less than 75 percent of the design outdoor airflow rate, excluding exhaust air that is either:

i. used for another energy recovery system;

ii. not allowed by California Mechanical Code (Title 24, Part 4) for use in energy recovery systems with leakage potential; or

iii. of Class 4 as specified in Section 160.2(c)8.

EXCEPTION 8 to Section 170.2(c)4O: Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week.

TABLE 170.2-I: ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENTS BY CLIMATE ZONE AND PERCENT OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW (<8,000 HOURS / YEAR)

% Outdoor Air at Full Design Airflow	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**	**16**
≥10% and <20%	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
≥20% and <30%	≥15,000	≥20,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥18,500	≥18,500	≥18,500	≥18,500	≥18,500	≥18,500
≥30% and <40%	≥13,000	≥15,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥15,000	≥15,000	≥15,000	≥15,000	≥15,000	≥15,000
≥40% and <50%	≥10,000	≥12,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥22,000	≥10,000	≥10,000	≥10,000	≥10,000	≥10,000	≥10,000
≥50% and <60%	≥9,000	≥10,000	NR	≥18,500	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥17,000	≥8,000	≥8,000	≥8,000	≥8,000	≥8,000	≥8,000
≥60% and <70%	≥7,000	≥7,500	NR	≥16,500	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥20,000	≥15,000	≥7,000	≥7,000	≥7,000	≥7,000	≥7,000	≥7,000
≥70% and <80%	≥6,500	≥7,000	NR	≥15,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥17,000	≥14,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000
≥80%	≥4,500	≥6,500	NR	≥14,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥15,000	≥13,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000

TABLE 170.2-J: ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENTS BY CLIMATE ZONE AND PERCENT OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW (≥8,000 HOURS / YEAR)

% Outdoor Air at Full Design Airflow	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**	**16**
≥10% and <20%	≥10,000	≥10,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥40,000	≥40,000	≥20,000	≥10,000	≥10,000	≥10,000	≥10,000
≥20% and <30%	≥2,000	≥5,000	≥13,000	≥9,000	≥9,000	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥15,000	≥15,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥5,000
≥30% and <40%	≥2,000	≥3,000	≥10,000	≥6,500	≥6,500	NR	NR	NR	≥15,000	≥7,500	≥7,500	≥3,000	≥3,000	≥3,000	≥3,000	≥3,000
≥40% and <50%	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥8,000	≥6,000	≥6,000	NR	NR	NR	≥12,000	≥6,000	≥6,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000
≥50% and <60%	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥7,000	≥6,000	≥6,000	NR	NR	≥20,000	≥10,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000
≥60% and <70%	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥6,000	≥6,000	≥6,000	NR	NR	≥18,000	≥9,000	≥4,000	≥4,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000
≥70% and <80%	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥6,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	NR	NR	≥15,000	≥8,000	≥3,000	≥3,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000
≥80%	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥6,000	≥5,000	≥5,000	NR	NR	≥12,000	≥7,000	≥3,000	≥3,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000	≥2,000

(d) **Water Heating Systems.** Water-heating systems shall meet the requirements of either 1, 2, 3 or 4.

For recirculation distribution systems serving individual dwelling units, only Demand Recirculation Systems with manual on/off control as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.9 shall be used. Recirculation system serving multiple dwelling units shall meet the requirements of Sections 110.3(c)2 and 110.3(c)5, and shall be capable of automatically controlling the recirculation pump operation based on measurement of hot water demand and hot water return temperature:

1. For systems serving individual dwelling units, the water heating system shall meet the requirement of either A, B, C, or shall meet the performance compliance requirements of Section 170.1:

   A. A single 240 volt heat pump water heater. In addition, meet the following:

      i. A compact hot water distribution system as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.6. in climate 1 and 16; and

      ii. A drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9 in climate zone 16.

   B. A single heat pump water heater that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher. In addition, for Climate Zones 16, a drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9.

   C. A gas or propane instantaneous water heater with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less and no storage tank.

2. For heat pump water-heating systems serving multiple dwelling units, the water heating system shall be installed according to the manufacturer design and installation guidelines and meet the following requirements:

   A. The hot water return from the recirculation loop shall connect to a recirculation loop tank and shall not directly connect to the primary heat pump water heater inlet or the primary thermal storage tanks.

   B. The fuel source for the recirculation loop tank shall be electricity if auxiliary heating is needed. The recirculation loop heater shall be capable of multi-pass water heating operation.

   C. For systems with single pass primary heat pump water heater, the primary thermal storage tanks shall be piped in series if multiple tanks are used. For systems with multi-pass primary heat pump water heater, the primary thermal storage tanks shall be piped in parallel if multiple tanks are used.

   D. The primary storage tank temperature setpoint shall be at least 135°F.

   E. The recirculation loop tank temperature setpoint shall be at least 10°F lower than the primary thermal storage tank temperature setpoint such that hot water from the recirculation loop tank is used for the temperature maintenance load before engaging the recirculation loop tank heater.

   F. The minimum heat pump water heater compressor cut-off temperature shall be equal to or lower than 40°F ambient air temperature.

   G. A recirculation system.

   H. Design documentation shall be provided in accordance with JA14.4.

   EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(d)2G: Buildings with eight or fewer dwelling units.

3. For gas or propane systems serving multiple dwelling units, a central water-heating system that includes the following components shall be installed:

   A. For Climate Zones 1 through 9, gas service water-heating systems with a total installed gas water-heating input capacity of 1 MMBtu/h or greater shall have gas service water-heating equipment with a minimum thermal efficiency of 90 percent. Multiple units are allowed to meet this requirement with an input capacity-weighted average of at least 90 percent.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(d)3A: Individual gas water heaters with input capacity at or below 100,000 Btu/h shall not be included in the calculations of the total system input or total system efficiency.

EXCPTION 2 TO Section 170.2(d)3A: If 25 percent of the annual water-heating requirement is provided by site-solar energy or site-recovered energy.

B. A recirculation system.

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(d)3B: Buildings with eight or fewer dwelling units.

C. A solar water-heating system meeting the installation criteria specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA4 and with a minimum solar savings fraction of either i or ii below:

  i. A minimum solar savings fraction of 0.20 in Climate Zones 1 through 9 or a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.35 in Climate Zones 10 through 16; or

  ii. A minimum solar savings fraction of 0.15 in Climate Zones 1 through 9 or a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.30 in Climate Zones 10 through 16. In addition, a drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9.

4. A water-heating system serving multiple dwelling units determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in subsection 1, 2, or 3 above.

TABLE 170.2-K MECHANICAL COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design

Multifamily			Climate Zone															
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Unitary (serving one dwelling unit)	If Balanced Ventilation System[1]	HRV or ERV Sensible Recovery Efficiency	0.67	0.67	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.67	0.67	0.67	0.67	0.67	0.67
		HRV or ERV Fan Efficacy (W/cfm)	0.6	0.6	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
		Non-HRV or Non-ERV Fan Efficacy (W/cfm)	NR	NR	NR	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
	If Heat Pump, HSPF[~~7~~2]/HSPF2		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
	If ~~d~~Dual-~~f~~Fuel ~~h~~Heat ~~p~~Pump, AFUE		MIN	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	MIN
	Refrigerant Charge Verification or Fault Indicator Display		NR	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
	SEER/SEER2		MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
Central (serving multiple dwelling units)	If Balanced Ventilation Systems[1]	Sensible Recovery Efficiency or Effectiveness	0.67	0.67	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.67	0.67	0.67	0.67	0.67	0.67
		Bypass Function	REQ~~eq~~	REQ~~eq~~	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ~~eq.~~	REQ~~eq.~~	REQ~~eq.~~	REQ~~eq.~~	REQ~~eq.~~	REQ~~eq.~~
Central System Air Handlers	Central Fan Integrated Ventilation System Fan Efficacy		REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
Duct Insulation	Ducts in Unconditioned Space		R-8	R-8	R-~~-~~6	R-8	R-~~-~~6	R-~~-~~6	R-~~-~~6	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8
Water Heating	All Buildings		System Shall meet Section 170.2(d~~e~~)															

Footnote requirements to TABLE 170.2-K:

~~6~~1. Requirements only apply when using Balanced Ventilation to meet 160.2(b)2Aivb.

~~7~~2. HSPF means "heating seasonal performance factor."

~~8~~3. A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kilowatts or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.

(e) **Lighting.** Dwelling unit ~~and common living area~~ lighting shall meet the applicable mandatory requirements of Section 160.5(a). Common ~~service~~ use area lighting shall meet the following requirements:

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(e): Common use areas providing shared provisions for living, eating, cooking, or sanitation to dwelling units that would otherwise lack these provisions may instead comply with Section 160.5(a).

1. **Interior Common ~~Service~~ Use Area Lighting.** A building complies with Section 170.2(e)1 if:

   A. The Calculation of Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of all proposed building areas combined, calculated under Subsection ~~A~~170.2(e)2 is no greater than the Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power, Specific Methodologies calculated under Subsection 170.2(e)4~~(c)~~; and

   B. The Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power, General Rules comply with Subsection 170.2(e)3~~B~~;

   The prescriptive limits on indoor lighting power are the smaller of the Actual and Allowed Indoor Lighting Power values determined in accordance with item i.

2. **Calculation of Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power.** The adjusted indoor Lighting Power of all proposed building areas is the total watts of all planned permanent and portable lighting systems in all areas of the proposed building; subject to the applicable adjustments under Subdivisions A through D of this subsection.

   A. **Two interlocked lighting systems**: No more than two lighting systems may be used for an area, and if there are two they must be interlocked. Where there are two interlocked lighting systems, the watts of the lower wattage system may be excluded from the Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power if:

      i. An Installation Certificate detailing compliance with Section 170.2(e)~~1A~~2 is submitted in accordance with Section 10-103 and Section 160.5(e); and

      Commented [ME7]: MF restructuring

      ii. The area or areas served by the interlocking systems is an auditorium, a conference room, a multipurpose room, or a theater; and

      iii. The two lighting systems are interlocked with a Nonprogrammable Double-Throw Switch to prevent simultaneous operation of both systems.

      For compliance with Part 6 a Nonprogrammable Double-Throw Switch is an electrical switch commonly called a "single pole double throw" or "three-way" switch that is wired as a selector switch allowing one of two loads to be enabled. It can be a line voltage switch or a low voltage switch selecting between two relays. It cannot be overridden or changed in any manner that would permit both loads to operate simultaneously.

   B. **Reduction of wattage through controls.** In calculating Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power, the installed watts of a luminaire providing general lighting in an area listed in TABLE 170.2-L may be reduced by the product of (i) the number of watts controlled as described in TABLE 170.2-L, times (ii) the applicable Power Adjustment Factor (PAF), if all of the following conditions are met:

      i. An Installation Certificate is submitted in accordance with Section 160.5(e)2; and

      ii. Luminaires and controls meet the applicable requirements of Section 110.9, and Sections 160.5(b) through 160.6; and

      iii. The controlled lighting is permanently installed general lighting systems and the controls are permanently installed nonresidential-rated lighting controls.

         When used for determining PAFs for general lighting in offices, furniture mounted luminaires that comply with all of the following conditions shall qualify as permanently installed general lighting systems:

         a. The furniture mounted luminaires shall be permanently installed no later than the time of building permit inspection; and

         b. The furniture mounted luminaires shall be permanently hardwired; and

  c. The furniture mounted lighting system shall be designed to provide indirect general lighting; and

  d. Before multiplying the installed watts of the furniture mounted luminaire by the applicable PAF, 0.3 watts per square foot of the area illuminated by the furniture mounted luminaires shall be subtracted from installed watts of the furniture mounted luminaires; and

  e. The lighting control for the furniture mounted luminaire complies with all other applicable requirements in Section 170.2(e)~~1Aii~~2B.

Commented [ME8]: MF restructuring

iv. At least 50 percent of the light output of the controlled luminaire is within the applicable area listed in Table 170.2-L. Luminaires on lighting tracks shall be within the applicable area in order to qualify for a PAF.

v. Only one PAF from Table 170.2-L may be used for each qualifying luminaire. PAFs shall not be added together unless allowed in Table 170.2-L.

vi. Only lighting wattage directly controlled in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1Aii~~2B shall be used toreduce the installed watts as allowed by Section 170.2(e)~~1Aii~~2B for calculating the Adjusted IndoorLighting Power. If only a portion of the wattage in a luminaire is controlled in accordance to Section 170.2(e)~~1Aii~~2B, then only that portion of controlled wattage may be reduced in calculating Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power.

vii. Lighting controls used to qualify for a PAF shall be designed and installed in addition to manual, multilevel, and automatic lighting controls required in Section 160.5(b)4, and in addition to any other lighting controls required by any provision of Part 6. PAFs shall not be available for lighting controls required by Part 6.

viii. To qualify for the PAF for daylight continuous dimming plus OFF control, the daylight control and controlled luminaires shall comply with Section 160.5(b)4D, 160.5(e)1C and 160.5(e)1G, and the controls shall be continuous dimming and shall additionally turn lights completely OFF when the daylight available in the daylit zone is greater than 150 percent of the illuminance received from the general lighting system at full power. The PAF shall apply to the luminaires in the primary sidelit daylit zone, secondary sidelit daylit zone, and the skylit daylit zone.

ix. To qualify for the PAF for an occupant sensing control controlling the general lighting in open plan office areas above workstations, in accordance with Table 170.2-L, the following requirements shall be met:u

  a. The open plan office area shall be greater than 250 square feet; and

  b. This PAF shall be available only in office areas which contain workstations; and

  c. Controlled luminaires shall only be those that provide general lighting directly above the controlled area, or furniture mounted luminaires that comply with Section 170.2(e)~~1Aii~~2B andprovide general lighting directly above the controlled area; and

Commented [ME9]: MF restructuring

  d. Qualifying luminaires shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls that meet all of the following requirements, as applicable:

    I. Infrared sensors shall be equipped by the manufacturer, of fitted in the field by the installer, with lenses or shrouds to prevent them from being triggered by movement outside of the controlled area.

    II. Ultrasonic sensors shall be tuned to reduce their sensitivity to prevent them from being triggered by movements outside of the controlled area.

    III. All other sensors shall be installed and adjusted as necessary to prevent them from being triggered by movements outside of the controlled area.

x. To qualify for the PAF for an Institutional Tuning in Table 170.2-L, the tuned lighting system shall comply with all of the following requirements:

  a. The lighting controls shall limit the maximum output or maximum power draw of the controlled lighting to 85 percent or less of full light output or full power draw; and

  b. The means of setting the limit is accessible only to authorized personnel; and

  c. The setting of the limit is verified by the acceptance test required by Section 160.5(e)1G; and

  d. The construction documents specify which lighting systems shall have their maximum light output or maximum power draw set to no greater than 85% of full light output or full power draw.

xi. To qualify for the PAF for a Demand Responsive Control in Table 170.2-L, the general lighting wattage receiving the PAF shall not be within the scope of Section 110.12(c) and a Demand Responsive Control shall meet all of the following requirements:

  a. The controlled lighting shall be capable of being automatically reduced in response to a demand response signal; and

  b. General lighting shall be reduced in a manner consistent with uniform level of illumination requirements in TABLE 160.5-B.

xii. To qualify for the PAFs for clerestory fenestration, horizontal slats, or light shelves in Table 170.2-L, the daylighting design shall meet the requirements in Section 140.3(d). The PAFs shall only apply to lighting in a primary or secondary sidelit daylit zone where continuous dimming daylighting controls meeting the requirements of Section 160.5(b)4D) are installed.

C. **Lighting wattage excluded.** The watts of the following indoor lighting applications may be excluded from Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power:

i. Lighting installed by the manufacturer in walk-in coolers or freezers, vending machines, and food preparation equipment.

ii. Lighting that is required for exit signs subject to the CBC. Exit signs shall meet the requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

iii. Exit way or egress illumination that is normally off and that is subject to the CBC.

iv. Temporary lighting systems.

v. Lighting systems in qualified historic buildings, as defined in the California Historical Building Code (Title 24, Part 8), are exempt from the Lighting Power Density allowances, if they consist solely of historic lighting components or replicas of historic lighting components. If lighting systems in qualified buildings contain some historic lighting components or replicas of historic components, combined with other lighting components, only those historic or historic replica components are exempt. All other lighting systems in qualified historic buildings shall comply with the Lighting Power Density allowances.

vi. Lighting for signs: Lighting for signs shall comply with Section 170.2(e)7.

vii. Lighting in elevators where the lighting meets the requirements in Section 120.6(f).

viii. Lighting connected to a Life Safety Branch or Critical Branch, as specified in Section 517 of the California Electrical Code.

D. **Luminaire Classification and Power Adjustment**

i. Luminaire Classification and Power shall be determined in accordance with Section 160.5(b)1.

ii. Small Aperture Tunable-White and Dim-to-Warm Luminaires Lighting Power Adjustment. For qualifying small aperture tunable-white and dim-to-warm LED luminaires, the adjusted indoor lighting power of these luminaires shall be calculated by multiplying their maximum rated wattage by 0.75. Qualifying luminaires shall meet all of the following:

a. Small Aperture. Qualifying luminaires with a luminaire aperture length longer than 18 inches shall have a luminaire aperture no wider than four inches. Qualifying luminaires with a luminaire aperture length of 18 inches or less shall have a luminaire aperture no wider than eight inches.

b. Color Changing. Qualifying tunable-white luminaires shall be capable of a color change greater than or equal to 2000 Kelvin correlated color temperature (CCT). Qualifying dim-to-warm luminaires shall be capable of color change greater than or equal to 500 Kelvin CCT.

c. Controls. Qualifying luminaires shall be connected to controls that allows color changing of the luminaires.

iii. Tailored Method Display Lighting Mounting Height Lighting Power Adjustment. For wall display luminaires or floor display luminaires meeting Tailored Method Section 170.2(e)~~1Ciig~~4Bvi and ~~h~~vi andwhere the bottom of luminaires are 10 feet 7 inches and greater above the finished floor, the adjusted indoor lighting power of these luminaires shall be calculated by multiplying their maximum rated wattage and the appropriated mounting height adjustment factor from Table 170.2-O. Luminaire mounting height is the distance from the finished floor to the bottom of the luminaire. General lighting shall not qualify for a mounting height multiplier.

Commented [ME10]: MF restructuring

3. Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power: General Rules.

A. The allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for conditioned areas shall be calculated separately from the allowed Lighting Power allotment for unconditioned areas. Each allotment is applicable solely to the area to which it applies, and there shall be no trade-offs between conditioned and unconditioned area allotments.

B. Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment shall be calculated separately from the allowed Outdoor Lighting Power allotment. Each allotment is applicable solely to the area to which it applies, and there shall be no trade-offs between the separate Indoor and Outdoor allotments.

C. The Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting shall be calculated as follows:

i. The Area Category Method, as described in Section 170.2(e)~~1Ci~~4A, shall be used either by itself for all common use areas in the building, or when some areas in the building use the Tailored Method described in Section 170.2(e)~~1Cii~~4B. Under the Area Category Method (either by itself or inconjunction with the Tailored Method), as described more fully in Section 170.2(e)~~1Ci~~4A, and subject to the adjustments listed there, the allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting shall be calculated for each area in the building as follows:

Commented [ME11]: MF restructuring

a. For conditioned areas, by multiplying the conditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in Table 170.2-M (or TABLE 170.2-N if the Tailored Method is used for that area).

b. For unconditioned areas, by multiplying the unconditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in TABLE 170.2-M (or Table 170.2-N if the Tailored Method is used for that area).

The Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for one area for which the Area Category Method was used may be increased up to the amount that the Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for another area using the Area Category Method or Tailored Method is decreased, except that such increases and decreases shall not be made between conditioned and unconditioned space.

D. The Tailored Method, as described in Section 170.2(e)~~1Cii~~4B, shall be used either by itself for all areas inthe building, or when some areas in the building use the Area Category Method described in Section

170.2(e)~~1Ci~~4A. Under the Tailored Method (either by itself or in conjunction with the Area Category Method) as described more fully in Section 170.2(e)~~1Cii~~4B, and subject to the adjustments listed there, allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting shall be calculated for each area in the building as follows:

i. For conditioned areas, by multiplying the conditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in Table 170.2-N (or Table 170.2-M if the Area Category Method is used for that area);

ii. For unconditioned areas, by multiplying the unconditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in TABLE 170.2-L (or TABLE 170.2-M if the Area Category Method is used for that area);

E. The Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for one area for which the Tailored Method was used may be increased up to the amount that the Allowed Indoor Power Lighting for general lighting for another area is decreased, but only if the Tailored Method or Area Category Method was used for the other area, except that such increases and decreases shall not be made between conditioned and unconditioned space.

F. If the Area Category Method is used for an area, the Tailored Method may not be used for that area. If the Tailored Method is used for an area, the Area Category Method may not be used for that area.

4. **Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power: Specific Methodologies.** The allowed indoor Lighting Power for each common use primary function area shall be calculated using only one of the methods in Subsection i, ii, or iii below as applicable.

A. Area Category Method. Requirements for using the Area Category Method include all of the following:

i. The Area Category Method shall be used only for primary function areas, as defined in Section 100.1, that are listed in Table 170.2-M. For primary function areas not listed, selection of a reasonably equivalent type shall be permitted.

i. For purposes of compliance with Section 170.2(e)~~1Ci~~4A, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguousareas that accommodate or are associated with a single primary function area listed in Table 170.2-M.

ii. Where areas are bounded or separated by interior partitions, the floor area occupied by those interior partitions may be included in a Primary Function Area.

iii. The allowed indoor Lighting Power for each primary function area is the Lighting Power Density value in TABLE 170.2-M times the square feet of the primary function area. The total allowed indoor Lighting Power for the building is the sum of all allowed indoor Lighting Power for all areas in the building.

iv. In addition to the allowed indoor Lighting Power calculated according to Sections 170.2(e)~~1Cia~~4Ai through ~~f~~iii, the building may add additional lighting power allowances for qualifying lighting systems as specified in the Qualifying Lighting Systems column in TABLE 170.2-M under the following conditions:

a. Only primary function areas having a lighting system as specified in the Qualifying Lighting Systems column in TABLE 170.2-M and in accordance with the corresponding footnote of the TABLE shall qualify for the additional lighting power allowances; and

b. The additional lighting power allowances shall be used only if the plans clearly identify all applicable task areas and the lighting equipment designed to illuminate these tasks; and

c. Tasks that are performed less than two hours per day or poor quality tasks that can be improved are not eligible for the additional lighting power allowances; and

d. The additional lighting power allowances shall not utilize any type of luminaires that are used for general lighting in the building; and

Commented [ME12]: Should be ii and all others after updated.

Commented [ME13]: MF restructuring

Commented [ME14]: MF restructuring

e. The additional lighting power allowances shall not be used when using the Complete Building Method, or when the Tailored Method is used for any area in the building; and

f. The additional lighting power allowed is the smaller of:

  I. the lighting power density listed in the "Allowed Additional Lighting LPD" column in TABLE 170.2-M, times the square feet of the primary function, or

  II. the Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of the applicable lighting; and

g. ~~In addition to all other additional lighting power allowed under Sections 170.2(e)1CifI through VI, up to 1.0 watts per square foot of additional lighting power shall be allowed in a videoconferencing studio, as defined in Section 100.1, provided the following conditions are met:~~

I. ~~A completed and signed Installation Certificate is prepared and submitted in accordance with Section 160.5(e)1B, specifically detailing compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 170.2(e)1CifVII; and~~

II. ~~The Videoconferencing Studio is a room with permanently installed videoconferencing cameras, audio equipment, and playback equipment for both audio-based and video-based two-way communication between local and remote sites; and~~

III. ~~General lighting is switched in accordance with TABLE 160.5-B; and~~

IV. ~~Wall wash lighting is separately switched from the general lighting system; and~~

V. ~~All of the lighting in the studio, including general lighting and additional lighting power allowed by Section 170.2(e)1CifVII is controlled by a multiscene programmable control system (also known as a scene preset control system)~~RESERVED.

B. Tailored Method. Requirements for using the Tailored Method include all of the following:

i. The Tailored Method shall be used only for primary function areas listed in TABLE 170.2-N as defined in Section 100.1.

ii. Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotments for general lighting shall be determined according to Section 170.2(e)~~1Ciif~~4Bvi, as applicable.

Commented [ME15]: MF restructuring

iii. For compliance with Section 170.2(e)~~1Cii~~4B, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous areas thataccommodate or are associated with a single primary function area listed in TABLE 170.2-N.

Commented [ME16]: MF restructuring

iv. Where areas are bounded or separated by interior partitions, the floor area occupied by those interior partitions may be included in a Primary Function Area.

v. In addition to the allowed indoor Lighting Power allotments for general lighting calculated according to Section 170.2(e)~~1Ciif~~4Bvi, as applicable, the building may add additional lighting power allowances for wall display lighting, task lighting, and decorative/special effects lighting, according to Section 170.20(e)~~1Ciig~~4Bvii through jx.

Commented [ME17]: MF restructuring

Commented [ME18]: MF restructuring

vi. Determine allowed indoor Lighting Power allotments for general lighting for primary function areas listed in TABLE 170.2-N as follows:

  a. Use the General Illumination Level (Lux) listed in Column 2 of TABLE 170.2-N to determine the Allowed General Lighting Power Density allotments for the area.

  b. Determine the room cavity ratio (RCR) for the area. The RCR shall be calculated according to the applicable equation in TABLE 170.2-P.

  c. Find the allowed General Lighting Power Density allotments in TABLE 170.2-Q that is applicable to the General Illuminance Level (Lux) from Column 2 of TABLE 170.2-N (as described in Item i.) and the RCR determined in accordance with TABLE 170.2-P (as described in Item ii).

d. Determine the square feet of the area in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~ 1Ciic~~4Biii and ~~d~~iv.

Commented [ME19]: MF restructuring

e. Multiply the allowed Lighting Power Density allotment, as determined in accordance with Item iii by the square feet of each primary function area, as determined in accordance with Item iv. The product is the Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for the area.

vii. Determine additional allowed power for wall display lighting according to column 3 of TABLE 170.2-N for each primary function area as follows:

a. Qualifying wall lighting shall:

I. Be mounted within 10 feet of the wall having the wall display. When track lighting is used for wall display, and where portions of that lighting track are more than 10 feet from the wall and other portions are within 10 feet of the wall, portions of track more than 10 feet from the wall shall not be used for the wall display allowance.

II. Be a lighting system type appropriate for wall lighting. Lighting systems appropriate for wall lighting are lighting track adjacent to the wall, wall-washer luminaires, luminaires behind a wall valance or wall cove, or accent light. (Accent luminaires are adjustable or fixed luminaires with PAR, R, MR, AR, or luminaires providing directional display light.)

b. Additional allowed power for wall display lighting is available only for lighting that illuminates walls having wall displays. The length of display walls shall include the length of the perimeter walls, including but not limited to closable openings and permanent full height interior partitions. Permanent full height interior partitions are those that (I) extend from the floor to within two feet of the ceiling or are taller than ten feet and (II) are permanently anchored to the floor.

c. For wall display lighting where the bottom of the luminaire is greater than 10 feet 6 inches above the finished floor, the mounting height adjustment factor from TABLE 170.2-O can be used to adjust the installed luminaire wattage as specified in Section 170.2(e)~~1Aivc~~2Diii.

d. The allowed power for wall display lighting shall be the smaller of:

I. the "wall display lighting power density" determined in accordance with TABLE 170.2-N, multiplied by the wall display lengths determined in accordance with Item iii; and

II. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power used for the wall display lighting systems.

e. Lighting internal to display cases that are attached to a wall or directly adjacent to a wall are counted as wall display lighting as specified in Section 170.2(e)~~1Ciig~~4Bvi. All other lighting internalto display cases are counted as floor display lighting as specified in Section.

Commented [ME20]: MF restructuring

viii. Determine additional allowed power allotment for task lighting according to Column 4 of Table 170.2-N for each primary function area as follows:

a. Additional allowed power for task lighting, may be used by qualifying task lighting systems. For floor areas qualifying for task lighting power allowances, the additional allowed power shall be used only once for the same floor area, so that the allowance shall not be additive.

b. Qualifying task lighting shall:

I. Be located immediately adjacent to and capable of illuminating the task for which it is installed.

II. Be of a type different from the general lighting system.

III. Be separately switched from the general lighting system.

c. The square footage of task areas shall be determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1ciic~~4Biii and ~~d~~iv, except that any floor area designed to not have tasks, such as floor areasdesignated as a path of egress, shall not be included for the task lighting allowance.

Commented [ME21]: MF restructuring

d. The allowed power for task lighting for each applicable area shall be the smaller of:

   I. The allowed task lighting power determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1ciih~~4Bviii multiplied by the floor square footage determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1ciihIII~~4Bviiic; and

   II. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power used for the task lighting systems.

ix. Determine additional allowed power for decorative/special effects lighting for each primary function area as follows:

a. Qualifying decorative/special effects lighting includes luminaires such as chandeliers, sconces, lanterns, neon and cold cathode, light emitting diodes, theatrical projectors, moving lights and light color panels when any of those lights are used in a decorative manner that does not serve as display lighting or general lighting.

b. Additional lighting power for decorative/special effects lighting shall be used only if allowed by Column 5 of TABLE 170.2-N.

c. Additional lighting power for decorative/special effects lighting shall be used only in areas having decorative/special effects lighting. The square footage of the floor area shall be determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1ciic~~4Biii and ~~d~~iv, and it shall not include floor areas not having decorative/special effects lighting.

d. The additional allowed power for decorative/special effects lighting for each applicable area shall be the smaller of:

   I. The product of the “allowed decorative/special effects lighting power” determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1CiikII~~4Bixb, multiplied by the floor square footage determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)~~1CiikIII~~4Bixc; and

   II. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of allowed ornamental/special effects lighting.

Commented [ME22]: MF restructuring

Commented [ME23]: MF restructuring

Commented [ME24]: MF restructuring

TABLE 170.2-L LIGHTING POWER ADJUSTMENT FACTORS (PAF)

a. To qualify for any of the Power Adjustment Factors in this table, the installation shall comply with the applicable requirements in Section 170.2(e)~~1Aii~~2B

Commented [ME25]: MF restructuring

b. Only one PAF may be used for each qualifying luminaire unless combined below.

c. Lighting controls that are required for compliance with Part 6 shall not be eligible for a PAF

TYPE OF CONTROL	**TYPE OF AREA**	**FACTOR**
~~a. To qualify for any of the Power Adjustment Factors in this table, the installation shall comply with the applicable requirements in Section 170.2(e)1Aii~~ ~~b. Only one PAF may be used for each qualifying luminaire unless combined below.~~ ~~c. Lighting controls that are required for compliance with Part 6 shall not be eligible for a PAF~~		
1. Daylight Continuous Dimming plus OFF Control	Luminaires in skylit daylit zone or primary sidelit daylit zone	0.10
2. Occupant Sensing Controls in Office Spaces larger than 250 square feet	In open plan offices > 250 square feet: One sensor controlling an area that is: No larger than 125 square feet	0.30
	In open plan offices > 250 square feet: One sensor controlling an area that is: From 126 to 250 square feet	0.20
3.Institutional Tuning	Luminaires in non-daylit areas. Luminaires that qualify for other PAFs in this table may also qualify for this tuning PAF.	0.10
	Luminaires in daylit areas. Luminaires that qualify for other PAFs in this table may also qualify for this tuning PAF.	0.05
4. Demand Responsive Control	General lighting luminaires not in the scope of Section 110.12(c). Luminaires that qualify for other PAFs in this table may also qualify for this demand responsive control PAF	0.05
5. Clerestory Fenestration	Luminaires in daylit areas adjacent to the clerestory. Luminaires that qualify for daylight dimming plus OFF control may also qualify for this PAF.	0.05
6. Horizontal Slats	Luminaires in daylit areas adjacent to vertical fenestration with interior or exterior horizontal slats. Luminaires that qualify for daylight dimming plus OFF control may also qualify for this PAF.	0.05
7.Light Shelves	Luminaires in daylit areas adjacent to clerestory fenestration with interior or exterior light shelves. This PAF may be combined with the PAF for clerestory fenestration. Luminaires that qualify for daylight dimming plus OFF control may also qualify for this PAF	0.10

TABLE 170.2-M AREA CATEGORY METHOD - LIGHTING POWER DENSITY VALUES (WATTS/FT²)

~~TABLE 170.2-M AREA CATEGORY METHOD - LIGHTING POWER DENSITY VALUES (WATTS/FT²)~~

Primary Function Area	**Allowed Lighting Power Density for General Lighting (W/ft²)**	**Additional Lighting Power** **Qualified Lighting Systems**	**Additional Lighting Power** **Additional Allowance (W/ft², unless noted otherwise)**
Storage	0.45	-	-
Conference, Multipurpose and Meeting Area	0.75	Display/Decorative	0.30
Copy Room	0.50	-	-
Corridor Area	0.40	Decorative/Display	0.25
Dining Area Bar/Lounge and Fine Dining	0.45	Display/Decorative	0.35
Dining Area Cafeteria/Fast Food	0.45	Display/Decorative	0.~~35~~25
Dining Area Family and Leisure	0.40	Display/Decorative	0.25
Health Care / Assisted Living Nurse's Station	0.75	Tunable white or dim-to-warm[8]	0.10
Health Care / Assisted Living Physical Therapy Room	0.85	Tunable white or dim-to-warm[8]	0.10
Kitchen/Food Preparation Area	0.95	-	-
Electrical, Mechanical, Telephone Rooms	0.40	Detailed Task Work[1]	0.20
Exercise/Fitness Center and Gymnasium Area	0.50	-	-
Lobby, Main Entry	0.70	Display/Decorative	0.25
Locker Room	0.45	-	-
Lounge, Breakroom, or Waiting Area	0.55	Display/Decorative	0.25
Concourse and Atria Area	0.60	Display/Decorative	0.25

Office Area	> 250 square feet	0.60	Decorative/Display and Portable lighting for office areas[5]	0.20
Office Area	≤ 250 square feet	0.65	Decorative/Display and Portable lighting for office areas[5]	0.20
Parking Garage Area	Parking Zone and Ramps	0.10	First ATM or Ticket Machine	100 W
Parking Garage Area	Parking Zone and Ramps	0.10	Additional ATM or Ticket machine	50 W each
Parking Garage Area	Daylight Adaptation Zones[3]	1.00	-	-
Laundry Area		0.45	-	-
Restrooms		0.65	Decorative/ Display	0.35
Stairwell		0.60	Decorative/ Display	0.35
All other		0.40	-	-
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Lobby, Main Entry	0.85	Display/Decorative	0.30
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Lobby, Main Entry	0.85	Transition Lighting OFF at night[7]	0.95
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Stairwell	0.80	Display/Decorative	0.30
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Corridor Area	0.70	Display/Decorative	0.30
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Lounge/Waiting Area	0.80	Display/Decorative	0.30
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Multipurpose Room	0.85	Display/Decorative	0.30
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Dining	0.80	Display/Decorative	0.30
Aging Eye/Low-vision[6]	Restroom	1.00	Display/Decorative	0.20
~~Footnotes for this table are listed below.~~ ~~1. Detailed task work – Lighting provides high level of visual acuity required for activities with close attention to small elements and/or extreme close up work.~~ ~~2. RESERVED~~ ~~3. Daylight Adaptation Zones shall be no longer than 66 feet from the entrance to the parking garage.~~ ~~4. RESERVED~~ ~~5. Portable lighting in office areas includes under shelf or furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting qualifies when controlled by a time clock or an occupancy sensor.~~ ~~6. Aging Eye/Low-vision areas can be documented as being designed to comply with the light levels in ANSI/IES RP-28 and are or will be licensed by local or state authorities for either senior long-term care, adult day care, senior support, and/or people with special visual needs.~~ ~~7. Transition lighting OFF at night. Lighting power controlled by astronomical time clock or other control to shut off lighting at night. Additional LPD only applies to area within 30 feet of an exit. Not applicable to lighting in daylit zones.~~ ~~8. Tunable white luminaires capable of color change greater than or equal to 2000K CCT, or dim-to-warm luminaires capable of color change greater than or equal to 500K CCT, connected to controls that allows color changing of the luminaires.~~				

Footnotes for this table are listed below.

1. Detailed task work – Lighting provides high level of visual acuity required for activities with close attention to small elements and/or extreme close up work.

2. RESERVED

3. Daylight Adaptation Zones shall be no longer than 66 feet from the entrance to the parking garage.

4. RESERVED

5. Portable lighting in office areas includes under shelf or furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting qualifies when controlled by a time clock or an occupancy sensor.

6. Aging Eye/Low-vision areas can be documented as being designed to comply with the light levels in ANSI/IES RP-28 and are or will be licensed by local or state authorities for either senior long-term care, adult day care, senior support, and/or people with special visual needs.

7. Transition lighting OFF at night. Lighting power controlled by astronomical time clock or other control to shut off lighting at night. Additional LPD only applies to area within 30 feet of an exit. Not applicable to lighting in daylit zones.

8. Tunable white luminaires capable of color change greater than or equal to 2000K CCT, or dim-to-warm luminaires capable of color change greater than or equal to 500K CCT, connected to controls that allows color changing of the luminaires.

TABLE 170.2-N TAILORED METHOD LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES

1	**2**	**3**		**5**
Primary Function Area	**General Illumination Level (Lux)**	**Wall Lighting Power Density (W/ft)**	**Task Lighting Power Density (W/ft)**	**Allowed Decorative/ Special Effect Lighting Power Density (W/ft²)**
Conference, Multipurpose, and Meeting Center Areas	300	2.00	0.25	0.35
Dining Areas	200	1.25	0.25	0.35
Lobby, Main Entry	200	3.50	0.25	0.35

TABLE 170.2-O TAILORED WALL AND FLOOR DISPLAY MOUNTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT FACTORSFACTORS

Height in feet above finished floor and bottom of luminaire(s)	**Wall Display Mounting Height Adjustment Factor**
< 10’-7”	1.00
10’-7” to 14’-0”	0.85
>14’-0” to 18’-0”	0.75
> 18’-0”	0.70

Table 170.2-P ROOM CAVITY RATIO (RCR) EQUATIONS

Determine the Room Cavity Ratio for Table 170.2-Q using one of the following equations.
Room cavity ratio for rectangular rooms $RRRRRR = \frac{5 \times HH \times (LL + WW)}{LL \times WW}$
Room cavity ratio for irregular-shaped rooms $RRRRRR = \frac{2.5 \times HH \times PP}{AA}$
Where: L =Length of room; W = Width of room; H =Vertical distance from the work plane to the centerline of the lighting fixture; P = Perimeter of room, and A = Area of room

TABLE 170.2-Q TAILORED METHOD GENERAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWED – BY ILLUMINANCE *AND ROOM CAVITY RATIO*

General Lighting Power Density (W/ft²) for the following RCR values[b]

	~~General Lighting Power Density (W/ft²) for the following RCR values~~[b]			
General Illuminance Level (lux)[a]	**RCR ≤ 2.0**	**RCR > 2.0 and ≤ 3.5**	**RCR > 3.5 and ≤ 7.0**	**RCR > 7.0**
150	0.35	0.40	0.50	0.65
200	0.40	0.50	0.65	0.85
300	0.55	0.70	0.85	1.20
400	0.65	0.80	1.05	1.25
500	0.80	0.90	1.25	1.55
600	0.90	1.05	1.40	2.00
~~[a] Illuminance values from Column 2 of TABLE 170.2-N.~~ ~~[b] RCR values are calculated using applicable equations in TABLE 170.2-P.~~				

[a] Illuminance values from Column 2 of TABLE 170.2-N.

[b] RCR values are calculated using applicable equations in TABLE 170.2-P.

5. RESERVED.

6. Outdoor Lighting.

A. A multifamily or mixed occupancy outdoor lighting installation complies with this section if it meets the requirements in Subsections 170.2(e)6B and C, and the actual outdoor lighting power installed is no greater than the allowed outdoor lighting power calculated under Subsection 170.2(e)6D. The allowed outdoor lighting shall be calculated according to Outdoor Lighting Zone in Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-114.

EXCEPTIONS to Section 170.2(e)6A: When more than 50 percent of the light from a luminaire falls within one or more of the following applications, the lighting power for that luminaire shall be exempt from Section 170.2(e)6:

i. Temporary outdoor lighting.

ii. Lighting required and regulated by the Federal Aviation Administration, and the Coast Guard.

iii. Lighting for public streets, roadways, highways, and traffic signage lighting, including lighting for driveway entrances occurring in the public right-of-way owned or maintained by local municipality or utility.

iv. Lighting for sports and athletic fields, and children's playgrounds.

v. RESERVED.

vi. Lighting of public monuments.

vii. Lighting of signs complying with the requirements of Sections 160.5(d) and 170.2(e)7.

viii. Lighting of stairs, wheelchair elevator lifts for American with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance, and ramps that are other than parking garage ramps.

ix. Landscape lighting.

x. RESERVED.

xi. Lighting for outdoor theatrical and other outdoor live performances, provided that these lighting systems are additions to area lighting systems and are controlled by a multiscene or theatrical cross-fade control station accessible only to authorized operators.

xii. Outdoor lighting systems for qualified historic buildings, as defined in the California Historic Building Code (Title 24, Part 8), if they consist solely of historic lighting components or replicas of historic lighting components. If lighting systems for qualified historic buildings contain some historic lighting components or replicas of historic components, combined with other lighting components, only those historic or historic replica components are exempt. All other outdoor lighting systems for qualified historic buildings shall comply with Section 170.2(e)6.

B. **Outdoor Lighting Power Trade-offs.** Outdoor lighting power trade-offs shall be determined as follows:

- i. Allowed lighting power determined according to Section 170.2(e)6Di for general hardscape lighting allowance may be traded to specific applications in Section 170.2(e)6Dii, provided the hardscape area from which the lighting power is traded continues to be illuminated in accordance with Section 170.2(e)6Dia.
- ii. Allowed lighting power determined according to Section 170.2(e)2Dii for additional lighting power allowances for specific applications shall not be traded between specific applications, or to hardscape lighting in Section 170.2(e)6Di.
- iii. Trading off lighting power allowances between outdoor and indoor areas shall not be permitted.

C. **Calculation of Actual Lighting Power.** The wattage of outdoor luminaires shall be determined in accordance with Section 160.5(b)1.

D. **Calculation of Allowed Lighting Power.** The allowed lighting power shall be the combined total of the sum of the general hardscape lighting allowance determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)2Di, and the sum of the additional lighting power allowance for specific applications determined in accordance with Section 170.2(e)6Dii.

- **i.** **General Hardscape Lighting Allowance**. Determine the general hardscape lighting power allowances as follows:
  - a. The general hardscape area of a site shall include parking lot(s), roadway(s), driveway(s), sidewalk(s), walkway(s), bikeway(s), plaza(s), bridge(s), tunnel(s), and other improved area(s) that are illuminated. Public roadway(s) that are illuminated by a lighting system owned or maintained by the local municipality or utility shall not be included in the area calculations. In plan view of the site, determine the illuminated hardscape area, which is defined as any hardscape area that is within a square pattern around each luminaire or pole that is ten times the luminaire mounting height with the luminaire in the middle of the pattern, less any areas that are within a building, beyond the hardscape area, beyond property lines, or obstructed by a structure. The illuminated hardscape area shall include portions of planters and landscaped areas that are within the lighting application and are less than or equal to 10 feet wide in the short dimensions and are enclosed by hardscape or other improvement on at least three sides. Multiply the illuminated hardscape area by the Area Wattage Allowance (AWA) from Table 170.2-R for the appropriate Lighting Zone.
  - b. Determine the Initial Wattage Allowance (IWA) for general hardscape lighting from TABLE 170.2-R for the appropriate lighting zone. The hardscape area shall be permitted one IWA per site.
  - c. The general hardscape lighting allowance shall be the sum of the allowed watts determined from a and b above.
- **ii.** **Additional Lighting Power Allowance for Specific Applications.** Additional lighting power for specific applications shall be the smaller of the additional lighting allowances for specific applications determined in accordance with TABLE170.2-S for the appropriate lighting zone, or the actual installed lighting power meeting the requirements for the allowance.

TABLE 170.2-R GENERAL HARDSCAPE MULTIFAMILY LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCE

Type of Power Allowance	**Lighting Zone 0[2]**	**Lighting Zone 1[2]**	**Lighting Zone 2[2]**	**Lighting Zone 3[2]**	**Lighting Zone 4[2]**
Area Wattage Allowance (AWA)	No allowance[1]	0.026 W/ft^2	0.030 W/ft^2	0.038 W/ft^2	0.055 W/ft^2
Initial Wattage Allowance (IWA)	No allowance[1]	300 W	350 W	400 W	450 W
~~1 Continuous lighting is explicitly prohibited in Lighting Zone 0. A single luminaire of 15 Watts or less may be installed at an entrance to a parking area, trail head, fee payment kiosk, outhouse, or toilet facility, as required to provide safe navigation of the site infrastructure. Luminaires installed shall meet the maximum zonal lumen limits as specified in Section 160.5(c)1.~~ ~~2 Narrow band spectrum light sources with a dominant peak wavelength greater than 580 nm – as mandated by local, state, or federal agencies to minimize the impact on local, active professional astronomy or nocturnal habitat of specific local fauna – shall be allowed a 2.0 lighting power allowance multiplier.~~					

[1] Continuous lighting is explicitly prohibited in Lighting Zone 0. A single luminaire of 15 Watts or less may be installed at an entrance to a parking area, trail head, fee payment kiosk, outhouse, or toilet facility, as required to provide safe navigation of the site infrastructure. Luminaires installed shall meet the maximum zonal lumen limits as specified in Section 160.5(c)1.

[2] Narrow band spectrum light sources with a dominant peak wavelength greater than 580 nm – as mandated by local, state, or federal agencies to minimize the impact on local, active professional astronomy or nocturnal habitat of specific local fauna – shall be allowed a 2.0 lighting power allowance multiplier.

TABLE 170.2-S ADDITIONAL MULTIFAMILY LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCE FOR SPECIFIC APPLICATIONS
All area and distance measurements in plan view unless otherwise noted.

Lighting Application		**Lighting Zone 0**	**Lighting Zone 1**	**Lighting Zone 2**	**Lighting Zone 3**	**Lighting Zone 4**
	WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER APPLICATION. Use all that apply as appropriate.					
Building Entrances or Exits. Allowance per door. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 20 feet of the door.		Not applicable	9 watts	15 watts	19 watts	21 watts
Primary Entrances to Senior Care Facilities Allowance per primary entrance(s) only. Primary entrances shall provide access for the general public and shall not be used exclusively for staff or service personnel. This allowance shall be in addition to the building entrance or exit allowance above. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 100 feet of the primary entrance.		Not applicable	20 watts	40 watts	57 watts	60 watts
ATM Machine Lighting. Allowance per ATM machine. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 50 feet of the dispenser.		Not applicable	100 watts for first ATM machine, 35 watts for each additional ATM machine.			
	WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER HARDSCAPE AREA (W/ft²). May be used for any illuminated hardscape area on the site.					
Hardscape Ornamental Lighting. Allowance for the total site illuminated hardscape area. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be rated for 50 watts or less as determined in accordance with Section 160.5(b)1 and shall be post-top luminaires, lanterns, pendant luminaires, or chandeliers.		Not applicable	No Allowance	0.007 W/ft²	0.013 W/ft²	0.019 W/ft²
	WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER SPECIFIC AREA (W/ft²). Use as appropriate provided that none of the following specific applications shall be used for the same area.					
Building Facades. Only areas of building façade that are illuminated shall qualify for this allowance. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be aimed at the façade and shall be capable of illuminating it without obstruction or interference by permanent building features or other objects. This allowance calculation shall not include portions of the building facades within 20 feet of residence bedroom windows.		Not applicable	No Allowance	0.100 W/ft²	0.170 W/ft²	0.225 W/ft²

Canopies and Tunnels. Allowance for the total area within the drip line of the canopy or inside the tunnel. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be located under the canopy or tunnel.		Not applicable	0.057 W/ft²	0.137 W/ft²	0.270 W/ft²	0.370 W/ft²
	Student Pick-up/Drop-off zone. Allowance for the area of the student pick-up/drop-off zone, with or without canopy, for preschool through 12th grade school campuses. A student pick-up/drop off zone is a curbside, controlled traffic area on a school campus where students are picked-up and dropped off from vehicles. The allowed area shall be the smaller of the actual width or 25 feet, times the smaller of the actual length or 250 feet. Qualifying luminaires shall be within 2 mounting heights of the student pick-up/drop-off zone.	Not applicable	No Allowance	0.056 W/ft²	0.200 W/ft²	No Allowance
	Outdoor Dining. Allowance for the total illuminated hardscape of outdoor dining. Outdoor dining areas are hardscape areas used to serve and consume food and beverages. Qualifying luminaires shall be within 2 mounting heights of the hardscape area of outdoor dining.	Not applicable	0.004 W/ft²	0.030 W/ft²	0.050 W/ft²	0.075 W/ft²
	Special Security Lighting for Retail Parking and Pedestrian Hardscape. This additional allowance is for illuminated retail parking and pedestrian hardscape identified as having special security needs. This allowance shall be in addition to the building entrance or exit allowance.	Not applicable	0.004 W/ft²	0.005 W/ft²	0.010 W/ft²	No Allowance
	Security Camera. This additional allowance is for the illuminated general hardscape area. This allowance shall apply when a security camera is installed within 2 mounting heights of the general hardscape area and mounted more than 10 feet away from a building.	Not applicable	No Allowance	0.018 W/ft²	0.018 W/ft²	0.018 W/ft²

7. **Requirements for Signs**. Section 170.2(e)7 applies to all internally illuminated and externally illuminated signs, unfiltered light emitting diodes (LEDs), and unfiltered neon, both indoor and outdoor. Each sign shall comply with either Subsection A or B, as applicable.

A. **Maximum Allowed Lighting Power.**

i. For internally illuminated signs, the maximum allowed lighting power shall not exceed the product of the illuminated sign area and 12 watts per square foot. For double-faced signs, only the area of a single face shall be used to determine the allowed lighting power.

ii. For externally illuminated signs, the maximum allowed lighting power shall not exceed the product of the illuminated sign area and 2.3 watts per square foot. Only areas of an externally lighted sign that are illuminated without obstruction or interference, by one or more luminaires, shall be used.

iii. Lighting for unfiltered light emitting diodes (LEDs) and unfiltered neon shall comply with Section 170.2(e)7B.

B. **Alternate Lighting Sources.** The sign shall be equipped with one or more of the following light sources:

i. High pressure sodium lamps; or

ii. Metal halide lamps that are:

a. Pulse start or ceramic served by a ballast that has a minimum efficiency of 88 percent or greater; or

b. Pulse start that are 320 watts or smaller, are not 250 watt or 175 watt lamps, and are served by a ballast that has a minimum efficiency of 80 percent.

Ballast efficiency is the reference lamp power divided by the ballast input power when tested according to ANSI C82.6-2015.

iii. Neon or cold cathode lamps with transformer or power supply efficiency greater than or equal to following:

   a. A minimum efficiency of 75 percent when the transformer or power supply rated output current is less than 50 mA; or

   b. A minimum efficiency of 68 percent when the transformer or power supply rated output current is 50 mA or greater.

The ratio of the output wattage to the input wattage is at 100 percent tubing load.

iv. Fluorescent lighting systems meeting one of the following requirements:

   a. Use only lamps with a minimum color rendering index (CRI) of 80; or

   b. Use only electronic ballasts with a fundamental output frequency not less than 20 kHz.

v. Light emitting diodes (LEDs) with a power supply having an efficiency of 80 percent or greater; or

EXCEPTION to Section 170.2(e)7Bv: Single voltage external power supplies that are designed to convert 120 volt AC input into lower voltage DC or AC output, and have a nameplate output power less than or equal to 250 watts, shall comply with the applicable requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations (Title 20).

vi. Compact fluorescent lamps that do not contain a medium screw base sockets (E24/E26).

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(e)7: Unfiltered incandescent lamps that are not part of an electronic message center (EMC), an internally illuminated sign, or an externally illuminated sign.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(e)7: Exit signs. Exit signs shall meet the requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

(f) Photovoltaic Requirements – Three Habitable Stories or Less. All multifamily buildings up to three habitable stories shall have a newly installed photovoltaic (PV) system or newly installed PV modules meeting the minimum qualification requirements specified in Joint Appendix JA11. The annual electrical output of the PV system shall be no less than the smaller of a PV system size determined using Equation 170.2-C, or the maximum PV system size that can be installed on the building's Solar Access Roof Area (SARA)~~comply with the photovoltaic requirements of Section 150.1(c)14~~.

A. SARA includes the area of the building's roof space capable of structurally supporting a PV system, and the area of all roof space on covered parking areas, carports, and all other newly constructed structures on the site that are compatible with supporting a PV system per Title 24, Part 2, Section 1511.2.

B. SARA does NOT include:

   i. Any roof area that has less than 70 percent annual solar access. Annual solar access is determined by dividing the total annual solar insolation, accounting for shading obstructions, by the total annual solar insolation if the same areas were unshaded by obstructions. For steep slope roofs only shading from existing permanent natural or manmade obstructions that are external to the dwelling, including but not limited to trees, hills, and adjacent structures, shall be considered for annual solar access calculations. For low slope roofs, all obstructions including those that are external to the dwelling unit, and obstructions that are part of the building design and elevation features shall be considered for the annual solar access calculations.

   ii. Occupied roof areas as specified by CBC Section 503.1.4.

   iii. Roof area that is otherwise not available due to compliance with other building code requirements if confirmed by the Executive Director.

EQUATION 170.2-C ANNUAL PHOTOVOLTAIC ELECTRICAL OUTPUT

$$kW_{PV} = (CFA \times A)/1000 + N_{DU} \times B)$$

WHERE:

kW_{PV} = kW_{dc} size of the PV system
CFA = Conditioned floor area
N_{DU} = Number of dwelling units
A = CFA adjustment factor from Table 170.2-T
B = Dwelling unit adjustment factor from Table 170.2-T

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(f): For steep slope roofs, SARA shall not consider roof areas with a northerly azimuth that lies between 300 degrees and 90 degrees from true north. No PV system is required if the SARA is less than 80 contiguous square feet.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(f): No PV system is required when the minimum PV system size specified by section 170.2(f) is less than 1.8 kW_{dc}.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(f): Buildings with enforcement-authority-approved roof designs, where the enforcement authority determines it is not possible for the PV system, including panels, modules and components and supports and attachments to the roof structure, to meet the requirements of the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), Standard 7-16, Chapter 7, Snow Loads.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(f): For buildings that are approved by the local planning department prior to January 1, 2020 with mandatory conditions of approval:

a. Shading from roof designs and configurations for steep slope roofs shall be considered for the annual solar access calculations; and

b. Roof areas that are not allowed to have PVs by the mandatory conditions of approval shall not be considered in determining the SARA.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 170.2(f): PV system sizes determined using Equation 170.2-C may be reduced by 25 percent if installed in conjunction with a battery storage system. The battery storage system shall meet the qualification requirements specified in Joint Appendix JA12 and have a minimum usable capacity of 7.5 kWh.

Table 170.2-T – CFA and Dwelling Unit Adjustment Factors

Climate Zone	A - CFA	B - Dwelling Units
1	0.793	1.27
2	0.621	1.22
3	0.628	1.12
4	0.586	1.21
5	0.585	1.06
6	0.594	1.23
7	0.572	1.15
8	0.586	1.37
9	0.613	1.36
10	0.627	1.41
11	0.836	1.44
12	0.613	1.40
13	0.894	1.51
14	0.741	1.26
15	1.56	1.47
16	0.59	1.22

(g) **Photovoltaic Requirements - ~~More Than Three~~Four or More Habitable Stories.** ~~All multifamily buildings with more than three habitable stories shall comply with the photovoltaic requirements of Section 140.10(a).~~ All newly constructed building types specified in Table 170.2-U, or mixed occupancy buildings where one or more of these building types constitute at least 80 percent of the floor area of the building, shall have a newly installedphotovoltaic (PV) system meeting the minimum qualification requirements of Reference Joint Appendix JA11. The PV size in kW_{dc} shall be not less than the smaller of the PV system size determined by Equation 170.2-D, orthe total of all available Solar Access Roof Areas (SARA) multiplied by 14 W/ft².

Commented [ME26]: Multifamily restructuring

1. SARA include the area of the building's roof space capable of structurally supporting a PV system, and the area of all roof space on covered parking areas, carports, and all other newly constructed structures on the site that are compatible with supporting a PV system per Title 24, Part 2, Section 1511.2.
2. SARA does not include:
   A. Any area that has less than 70 percent annual solar access. Annual solar access is determined by dividing the total annual solar insolation (accounting for shading obstructions) by the total annual solar insolation if the same areas were unshaded by those obstructions. For all roofs, all obstructions including those that are external to the building, and obstructions that are part of the building design and elevation features may be considered for the annual solar access calculations.

   B. Occupied roofs as specified by CBC Section 503.1.4.

C. Roof space that is otherwise not available due to compliance with other building code requirements if confirmed by the Executive Director.

EQUATION 170.2-D PHOTOVOLTAIC DIRECT CURRENT SIZE

$kW_{PVdc} = (CFA \times A)/1000$

WHERE:

kW_{PVdc} = Size of the PV system in kW

CFA = Conditioned floor area in square feet

A = PV capacity factor specified in Table 170.2-U for the building type

Where the building includes more than one of the space types listed in Table 170.2-U, the total PV system capacity for the building shall be determined by applying Equation 170.2-D to each of the listed space types and summing the capacities determined for each.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(g). No PV system is required where the total of all available SARA is less than three percent of the conditioned floor area.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(g). No PV system is required where the required PV system size is less than 4 kW_{dc}.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(g). No PV system is required if the SARA contains less than 80 contiguous square feet.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(g). Buildings with enforcement-authority-approved roof designs, where the enforcement authority determines it is not possible for the PV system, including panels, modules, components, supports, and attachments to the roof structure, to meet ASCE 7-16, Chapter 7, Snow Loads.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 170.2(g). Multi-tenant buildings in areas where a load serving entity does not provide either a Virtual Net Metering (VNEM) or community solar program.

Table 170.2-U – PV Capacity Factors

Building Type	**Factor A – Minimum PV Capacity (W/ft² of conditioned floor area) Climate Zones 1, 3, 5, 16**	***Factor A – Minimum PV Capacity (W/ft² of conditioned floor area)*** **Climate Zones 2, 4, 6-14**	**Factor A – Minimum PV Capacity (W/ft² of conditioned floor area) Climate Zone 15**
Grocery	2.62	2.91	3.53
High-Rise Multifamily	1.82	2.21	2.77
Office, Financial Institutions, Unleased Tenant Space	2.59	3.13	3.80
Retail	2.62	2.91	3.53
School	1.27	1.63	2.46
Warehouse	0.39	0.44	0.58
Auditorium, Convention Center, Hotel/Motel, Library, Medical Office Building/Clinic, Restaurant, Theater	0.39	0.44	0.58

(h) Battery Storage System Requirements – ~~More Than Three~~Four or More Habitable Stories. ~~All multifamily buildings with more than three habitable stories shall comply with the battery storage system requirements of Section 140.10(b).~~ All buildings that are required by Section 170.2(g) to have a PV system shall also have a battery storage system meeting the minimum qualification requirements of Reference Joint Appendix JA12. The rated energy capacity and the rated power capacity shall be not less than the values determined by Equation 170.2-Eand Equation 170.2-F. Where the building includes more than one of the space types listed in Table 170.2-V, the total battery system capacity for the building shall be determined by applying Equations 170.2-E and 170.2- F to each of the listed space types and summing the capacities determined for each space type and equation.

Commented [ME27]: Multifamily restructuring

EQUATION 170.2-E BATTERY STORAGE RATED ENERGY CAPACITY

$$kWh_{batt} = kW_{PVdc} \text{ x } B / D^{0.5}$$

WHERE:

kWh_{batt} = Rated Useable Energy Capacity of the battery storage system in kWh

kW_{PVdc} = PV system capacity required by section 170.2(g) in kWdc

B = Battery energy capacity factor specified in Table 170.2-V for the building type

D = Rated single charge-discharge cycle AC to AC (round-trip) efficiency of the battery storage system

EQUATION 170.2-F BATTERY STORAGE RATED POWER CAPACITY

$$kW_{batt} = kW_{PVdc} \text{ x } C$$

WHERE:

kW_{batt} = Power capacity of the battery storage system in kWdc

kW_{PVdc} = PV system capacity required by section 170.2(g) in kWdc

C = Battery power capacity factor specified in Table 170.2-V for the building type

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 170.2(h). No battery storage system is required if the installed PV system size is less than 15 percent of the size determined by Equation 170.2-D.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 170.2(h). No battery storage system is required in buildings with battery storage system requirements with less than 10 kWh rated capacity.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 170.2(h). For multi-tenant buildings, the energy capacity and power capacity of the battery storage system shall be based on the tenant spaces with more than 5,000 square feet of conditioned floor area. For single-tenant buildings with less than 5,000 square feet of conditioned floor area, no battery storage system is required.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 170.2(h). In climate zone 1, no battery storage system is required for offices, schools, and warehouses.

Table 170.2-V – Battery Storage Capacity Factors

	Factor B – Energy Capacity	**Factor C – Power Capacity**
Storage-to-PV Ratio	**Wh/W**	**W/W**
Grocery	1.03	0.26
High-Rise Multifamily	1.03	0.26
Office, Financial Institutions, Unleased Tenant Space	1.68	0.42
Retail	1.03	0.26
School	1.87	0.46
Warehouse	0.93	0.23
Auditorium, Convention Center, Hotel/Motel, Library, Medical Office Building/Clinic, Restaurant, Theater	0.93	0.23

NOTE~~1~~: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SUBCHAPTER 12

MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS - ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS TO EXISTING MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS

SECTION 180.0 – GENERAL

Additions, alterations, and repairs to existing attached dwelling units and common use areas in multifamily buildings, existing outdoor lighting for these occupancies, and internally and externally illuminated signs, shall meet the requirements specified in Sections 100.0 through 110.10, and 160.1, and 160.3 through 170.2 that are applicable to the building project, and either the performance compliance approach (energy budgets) in Section 180.1(b) (for additions) or 180.2(c) (for alterations), or the prescriptive compliance approach in Section 180.1(a) (for additions) or 180.2(b) (for alterations), for the Climate Zone in which the building is located. Climate zones are shown in FIGURE 100.1-A.

Covered process requirements for additions, alterations and repairs to existing multifamily buildings are specified in Section 141.1.

Nonresidential occupancies in mixed occupancy buildings shall comply with nonresidential requirements in Sections 120.0 through 141.1.

NOTE: For alterations that change the occupancy classification of the building, the requirements specified in Section 180.2 apply to the occupancy after the alterations.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 180.1 – ADDITIONS

Additions to existing multifamily buildings shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Sections 160.0, 160.1, 160.2(c) and (d), 160.3 through 160.7, and either Section 180.1(a) or 180.1(b).

~~**Exception 1 to Section 180.1:** Additions 1,000 square feet or less are exempt from the requirement to provide dwelling unit mechanical ventilation airflow as specified by Section 180.1(a) or 180.1(b).~~

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.1: Additions of 300 square feet or less are exempt from the roofing product requirements of Section170.2(a)1A.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.1: Existing inaccessible piping shall not require insulation as defined under Section 160.4(f)2Aiii.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 180.1: Space-Conditioning System. When heating or cooling will be extended to an addition from the existing system(s), the existing heating and cooling equipment need not comply with Part 6. The heating system capacity must be adequate to meet the minimum requirements of CBC Section 1204.1.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 180.1: Space-Conditioning System Ducts. When any length of ducts are extended from an existing duct system to serve the addition, the existing duct system and the extended ducts shall meet the applicable requirements specified in Section 180.2~~1~~(b)2Aii~~ai and 180.1(b)2aii~~.

Commented [AG1]: MF Restructuring

EXCEPTION 6 to Section ~~150.2(a)~~180.1: Photovoltaic and battery storage systems, as specified in Section 170.2(f) through 170.2(h), are not required for additions.

EXCEPTION 7 to Section 180.1: Dwelling Unit Space Heating System. New or replacement space heating systems serving an addition may be a heat pump or gas heating system.

(a) **Prescriptive approach.** The envelope and lighting of the addition; any newly installed space-conditioning or ventilation system, electrical power distribution system, or water-heating system; any addition to an outdoor lighting system; and any new sign installed in conjunction with an indoor or outdoor addition shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.12, and 160.0, 160.1, 160.2(c) and (d), 160.3 through 170.2.

1. **Envelope.**

A. Additions that are greater than 700 square feet shall meet the requirements of Section 170.2(a), with the following modifications:

i. Framed Walls Extension. Extensions of existing wood-framed walls may retain the dimensions of the existing walls and shall install cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing.

ii. The maximum allowed fenestration area shall be the greater of 175 square feet or 20 percent of the addition floor area.

iii. When existing siding of a wood-framed wall is not being removed or replaced, cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing shall be installed and continuous insulation is not required.

iv. Additions that consist of the conversion of existing spaces from unconditioned to conditioned space shall not be required to perform the air sealing part of QII when the existing air barrier is not being removed or replaced.

B. Additions that are 700 square feet or less shall meet the requirements of Section 170.2(a), with the following modifications.

i. Roof and Ceiling insulation in a ventilated attic shall meet one of the following requirements:

a. In Climate Zones 1, 2, 4, and 8 through 16, achieve an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding 0.025. In wood framed assemblies, compliance with U-factors may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of R-38 or greater.

b. In Climate Zones 3, and 5 through 7, achieve an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding 0.031. In wood framed assemblies, compliance with U-factors may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of R-30 or greater.

ii. Radiant Barrier – For buildings three habitable stories or less, radiant barriers shall be installed in attics with exposed attic deck undersides in climate zones 2-15.

iii. Extensions of existing wood-framed walls may retain the dimensions of the existing walls and shall install cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing; and

iv. Fenestration products must meet the U-factor, RSGHC, and VT requirements of TABLE 180.2-B

v. Quality Insulation Installation (QII) requirements of Section 170.2(a)6 do not apply.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.1(a)1B: Insulation in an enclosed rafter ceiling shall meet the requirements of Section 160.1(a).

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.1(a)1~~B~~: Additions that increase the area of the roof by 2,000 square feet or less are exempt from the solar ready requirements of Section 160.8.

2. **Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality.** Additions to existing buildings shall comply with Section 160.2 subject to the requirements specified in subsections A and B below. When HERS field verification and diagnostic testing is required by Section 180.1(a)2, buildings with three habitable stories or less shall use the applicable procedures in the Residential Appendices, and buildings with four or more habitable stories shall use the applicable procedures in Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2.

A. **Whole-dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**.

i. Dwelling units that meet the conditions in subsections a or b below shall not be required to comply with the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av.

a. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by less than or equal to 1000 square feet.

b. Junior Accessory Dwelling Units (JADU) that are additions to an existing building.

ii. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase conditioned floor area by more than 1,000 square feet shall have mechanical ventilation airflow in accordance with Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av, as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the entire dwelling unit comprised of the existing dwelling unit conditioned floor area plus the addition conditioned floor area.

iii. New dwelling units that are additions to an existing building shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided in accordance with Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the new dwelling unit.

B. **Local Mechanical Exhaust**. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with all applicable requirements specified in 160.2(b)2Avi and 160.2(b)2B.

3. **Water Heater.** When additional water heating equipment is installed to serve a dwelling unit as part of the addition, one of the following types of water heaters shall be installed:

A. A water-heating system that meets the requirements of Section 170.2(d); or

B. A water-heating system determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item A above.

(b) Performance approach. Performance calculations shall meet the requirements of Section 170.0 through 170.2(a), pursuant to the applicable requirements in Items 1, 2, and 3 below.

1. For additions alone. The addition complies if the addition alone meets the energy budgets as specified in Section 170.1.

2. Existing plus alteration plus addition. The standard design for existing plus alteration plus addition energy use is the combination of the existing building’s unaltered components to remain; existing building altered components that are the more efficient, in TDV energy, of either the existing conditions or the requirements of Section 180.2(c); plus the proposed addition's energy use meeting the requirements of Section 180.1(a). The proposed design energy use is the combination of the existing building’s unaltered components to remain and the altered components’ energy features, plus the proposed energy features of the addition.

EXCEPTION to Section180.1(b)2: Existing structures with a minimum R-11 insulation in framed walls showing compliance with Section 180.1(b) are exempt from showing compliance with Section 160.1(b).

3. **Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality**. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with Section 160.~~1(b)~~2 subject to the requirements specified in subsections A and B below. When HERS field verification and diagnostic testing is required by Section 180.1(b)3, buildings with three habitable stories or less shall use the applicable procedures in the Residential Appendices, and buildings with four or more habitable stories shall use the applicable procedures in Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2.

A. **Whole-dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**.

i. Dwelling units that meet the conditions in subsections a or b below shall not be required to comply with the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av.

a. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by less than or equal to 1000 square feet.

b. Junior Accessory Dwelling Units (JADU) that are additions to an existing building.

ii. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by more than 1,000 square feet shall have mechanical ventilation airflow in accordance with Section 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the entire dwelling unit comprised of the existing dwelling unit conditioned floor area plus the addition conditioned floor area.

iii. New dwelling units that are additions to an existing building shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided in accordance with Section 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the new dwelling unit.

B. **Local Mechanical Exhaust**. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with all applicable requirements specified in 160.2(b)2Avi and 160.2(b)2B.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 180.2 – ALTERATIONS

Alterations to components of existing multifamily buildings, including alterations made in conjunction with a change in building occupancy to a multifamily occupancy shall meet item (a), and either Item (b) or (c) below:

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2: When heating, cooling or service water heating for an alteration are provided by expanding existing systems, the existing systems and equipment need not comply with Sections 110.0 through 110.10, 160.0 through 160.7, and Section 170.2(c) or 170.2(d).

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2: When existing heating, cooling or service water heating systems or components are moved within a building, the existing systems or components need not comply with Sections 110.0 through 110.10, 160.0 through 160.7, and Section 170.2(c) or 170.2(d).

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2: Where an existing system with electric reheat is expanded when adding variable air volume (VAV) boxes to serve an alteration, total electric reheat capacity may be expanded not to exceed 20 percent of the existing installed electric capacity in any one permit and the system need not comply Section 170.2(b)4E. Additional electric reheat capacity in excess of 20 percent may be added subject to the requirements of the Section 170.2(b)4E.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 180.2: The requirements of Section 160.3(a)2H shall not apply to alterations of space-conditioning systems or components.

(a) **Mandatory Requirements.** Altered components in a multifamily building shall meet the minimum requirements in this Section.

1. **Roof/Ceiling Insulation.** The opaque portions of the roof/ceiling that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of Section 180.2(b)1B.

2. **Wall Insulation.** For the altered opaque portion of walls separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items A through D below:

   A. **Metal Building.** A minimum of R-13 insulation between framing members, or the area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.113.

   B. **Metal Framed.** A minimum of R-13 insulation between framing members, or the area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.217.

   C. **Wood Framed and Others.** A minimum of R-11 insulation between framing members, or the area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.110.

   D. **Spandrel Panels and Curtain Walls.** A minimum of R-4, or the area-weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.280.

   EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(a)2: Light and heavy mass walls.

3. **Floor Insulation.** For the altered portion of raised floors that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items A through B below:

   A. **Raised Framed Floors.** A minimum of R-11 insulation between framing members, or the area-weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed the U-factor of U-0.071.

   B. **Raised Mass Floors.** A minimum of R-6 insulation, or the area-weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed the U-factor of U-0.111.

(b) **Prescriptive approach.** The altered component and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9 and all applicable requirements of Section 160.0, 160.1, 160.2(c) and (d), 160.3(a) through 160.3(b)5J, 160.3(b)6, 160.3(c), and 160.5; and

1. **Envelope~~–~~**

   A. **~~Roofing Products~~Roof Alterations**. Existing roofs being replaced, recovered or recoated, of a multifamily building shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8(i). Roofs with more than 50 percent of the roof area or more than 2,000 square feet of roof, whichever is less, being altered the requirements of i through ii~~i~~ below apply:

~~**EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(b)1A:** Roof area covered by building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SR.~~

i. Low-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 2, 4, and 6 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.63 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of ~~64~~75.

EXCEPTION ~~1~~ to Section 180.2(b)1Ai: ~~An~~ The aged solar reflectance requirement ~~less than 0.63 is allowed for low-sloped roofs provided the maximum roof/ceiling U-factor~~ can be met by using insulation at the roof deck specified in TABLE 180.2-A ~~is not exceeded~~.

Table 180.2-A Roof/Ceiling Insulation Tradeoff for Low-Sloped Aged Solar Reflectance

Minimum Aged Solar Reflectance	**Roof Deck Continuous Insulation R-value (Climate Zones 6-7)**	**Roof Deck Continuous Insulation R-value (Climate Zones 2, 4, 8-15)**
0.60	2	16
0.55	4	18
0.50	6	20
0.45	8	22
No requirement	10	24

~~**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Ai:** Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft² are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.~~

ii. Steep-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 4 and 8 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

EXCEPTION ~~1~~ TO 180.2(b)1Aii~~150.2(b)1Ji~~: The following shall be considered equivalent to Subsection ii:

a. Buildings with ceiling assemblies with a U-factor lower than or equal to 0.025 or that are insulated with at least R-38 ceiling insulation in an attic; or

b. Buildings with a radiant barrier in the attic, where the radiant barrier is not installed directly above spaced sheathing, meeting the requirements of Section ~~150.1(c)2~~170.2(a)1C; or

c. Buildings that have no ducts in the attic in Climate Zones 2, 4, 9, 10, 12, and 14; or

d. Buildings with R-2 or greater continuous insulation above or below the roof deck.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Ai and ii: Roof area covered by building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SR.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Ai and ii: Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft² are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.

iii. For low-sloped roofs, the area of the roof recover or roof replacement shall be insulated to R-14 continuous insulation or a U-factor of 0.039 in Climate Zones 1, 2, 4, and 8 through 16.

Commented [ME2]: MF restructuring

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Aiii: Roof recovers with new R-10 insulation added above deck do not need to be insulated to meet R-14.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Aiii: When existing mechanical equipment located on the roof will not be disconnected and lifted, insulation added may be limited to the greater of R-10 or the maximum installed thickness that will allow the distance between the height of the roof membrane surface to the top of the base flashing to remain in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2(b)1Aiii: At the drains and other low points, tapered insulation with a thermal resistance less than R-14 may be used, provided that insulation thickness is increased at the high points of the roof so that the average thermal resistance equals or exceeds R-14

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 180.2(b)1Aiii: The area of the roof recoat is not required to be insulated.

B. **Roof/Ceiling Insulation**.

i. **Attic Roof**. Vented attics shall meet the following:

a. In Climate Zones 1 through 4 and 8 through 16, insulation shall be installed to achieve a weighted U-factor of 0.020 or insulation installed at the ceiling level shall result in an installed thermal resistance of R-49 or greater for the insulation alone; and

EXCEPTION ~~1~~ to Section 180.2(b)1Bia: In Climate Zones 1, 3, 4, and 9, ~~D~~dwelling units with at least R-19 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level ~~with third party verification of existing conditions in Climate Zones 1, 3, 4, and 9~~.

b. In Climate Zones 2 and 11 through 16, air seal all accessible areas of the ceiling plane between the attic and the conditioned space in accordance with Section 110.7; and

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Bib: Dwelling units with at least R-19 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level ~~with third party verification of existing conditions~~.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Bib: Dwelling units with atmospherically vented space heating or water heating combustion appliances located inside the pressure boundary of the dwelling unit.

c. In Climate Zones 1 through 4 and 8 through 16, recessed downlight luminaires in the ceiling shall be covered with insulation to the same depth as the rest of the ceiling. Luminaires not rated for insulation contact must be replaced or fitted with a fire-proof cover that allows for insulation to be installed directly over the cover; and

EXCEPTION ~~1~~ to Section 180.2(b)1Bic: In Climate Zones 1 through 4 and 8 through 10, ~~D~~dwelling units with at least R-19 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level ~~with third party verification of existing conditions in Climate Zones 1 through 4 and 8 through 10~~.

d. Attic ventilation shall comply with ~~CBC~~ the California Building Code requirements.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Bi: Dwelling units with at least R-38 existing insulation installed at the ceiling level ~~with third party verification of existing conditions~~.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Bi: Dwelling units where the alteration would directly cause the disturbance of asbestos, unless the alteration is made in conjunction with asbestos abatement.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2(b)1Bi: Dwelling units with knob and tube wiring located in the vented attic.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 180.2(b)1Bi: Where the accessible space in the attic is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire accessible space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 806.3 of Title 24, Part 2.5.

EXCEPTION 5 to Section 180.2(b)1Bi: Where the attic space above the altered dwelling unit is shared with other dwelling units and the requirements of Section ~~150.2(b)1A~~180.2(b)1Bi are not triggered for the other dwelling units.

ii. ~~**Non Attic Roof**. When low-sloped roofs are replaced and recovered, and meets Section 180.2(b)1A or B, the replaced area shall be insulated to R-14 continuous insulation or a U-factor of 0.055 in Climate Zones 1, 2, 4, and 8 through 16.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Bii:** Roof recovers with new R-10 insulation added above deck do not need to be insulated to meet R-14.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Bii: Roof replacements.** When existing mechanical equipment is located on the roof will not be disconnected and lifted, insulation added may be limited to the maximum insulation thickness that will allow a height in accordance with manufacturers' instructions from the roof membrane surface to the top of the base flashing or R-10, whichever is greater.~~

~~**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 1180.2(b)1Bii:** At the drains and other low points, tapered insulation with a thermal resistance less than R-14 may be used, provided that insulation thickness is increased at the high points of the roof so that the average thermal resistance equals or exceeds R-14~~ C. Fenestration alterations other than repair shall meet the requirements below:

NOTE: Glass replaced in an existing sash and frame or sashes replaced in an existing frame are considered repairs. In these cases, Section 180.2(b) requires that the replacement be at least equivalent to the original in performance.

i. Fenestration products installed to replace existing fenestration products of the same total area shall meet either a or b:

a. The maximum U-factor, RSHGC, and VT requirements of TABLE 180.2-B, or

b. The area-weighted U-factor and RSHGC of TABLE 170.2-A.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Ci: In an alteration, where 150 square feet or less of the entire building's vertical fenestration is replaced, RSHGC and VT requirements of TABLE 180.2-B shall not apply.

ii. Alterations that add fenestration and skylight area shall meet the total fenestration area requirements of Section 170.2(a) and the U-factor, RSHGC, and VT requirements of TABLE 180.2-B.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)1Cii: Alterations that add fenestration area of up to 50 square feet shall not be required to meet the total fenestration area requirements of Sections 170.2(a), nor the U-factor, RSHGC, and VT requirements of TABLE 180.2-B.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)1Cii: Alterations that add up to 16 square feet of new skylight area per dwelling unit with a maximum U-factor of 0.55 and a maximum RSHGC of 0.30 area shall not be required to meet the total fenestration area requirements of Section 170.2(a)3.

D. Exterior doors. Alterations that add exterior door area shall meet the U-factor requirement of Section 170.2(a)4.

Table 180.2-B Altered Fenestration Maximum U-Factor and Maximum SHGC

Climate Zone		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Curtainwall / Storefront / Window Wall and Glazed Doors[1]	**U-factor**	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.38
Curtainwall / Storefront / Window Wall and Glazed Doors[1]	**RSHGC**	0.35	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.25
Curtainwall / Storefront / Window Wall and Glazed Doors[1]	**VT[2]**	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46
NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW Window – Fixed[1]	**U-factor**	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.47	0.47	0.41	0.41	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38
NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW Window – Fixed[1]	**RSHGC**	0.35	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.31	0.31	0.26	0.26	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25
NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW Window – Fixed[1]	**VT[2]**	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37
NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW Window – Operable[1]	**U-factor**	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.47	0.47	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43
NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW Window – Operable[1]	**RSHGC**	0.35	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.31	0.31	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24
NAFS 2017 Performance Class AW Window – Operable[1]	**VT[2]**	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37
All Other Windows and Glazed Doors[1]	**U-factor**	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.34	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30
All Other Windows and Glazed Doors[1]	**RSHGC**	0.35	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23
Skylights, 3 habitable stories and fewer	**U-factor**	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30
Skylights, 3 habitable stories and fewer	**RSHGC**	NA	0.23	NA	0.23	NA	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	NA

Skylights, 4 habitable stories and greater	**U-factor**	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46	0.46
Skylights, 4 habitable stories and greater	**RSHGC**	0.35	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25
Skylights, 4 habitable stories and greater	**VT[2]**	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49	0.49

~~Foot note to Table 180.2-B:~~

~~1. For fenestration installed in buildings with three or fewer habitable stories, there is no SHGC requirement in Climate Zones 1, 3, 5, and 16~~.

~~2. Minimum VT requirements to not apply to multifamily buildings 3 habitable stories or less~~.

Foot note to Table 180.2-B:

3. For fenestration installed in buildings with three or fewer habitable stories, there is no SHGC requirement in Climate Zones 1, 3, 5, and 16.

1. Minimum VT requirements to not apply to multifamily buildings 3 habitable stories or less.

2. Space Conditioning Systems.

A. Space Conditioning Systems Serving Dwelling Units.

i. **Entirely New or Complete Replacement Space-Conditioning Systems** installed as part of an alteration, shall include all the system heating or cooling equipment, including but not limited to: condensing unit, cooling or heating coil, and air handler for split systems; or complete replacement of a packaged unit; plus entirely new or replacement duct system (Section 180.2(b)2AiiaI~~b~~). Entirely new or complete replacement space-conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of Sections 160.2(b~~a~~)1, 160.3(a)1, 160.3(b)1 through 4~~3~~, 160.3(b)5A through J and L, 160.3(b)6, ~~160.3(c)1, and~~ 170.2(c)3Bi~~A~~, 180.2(b)2Av, and TABLE 180.2-C.

EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(b)2Ai: The new or complete replacement space-conditioning system may be a heat pump or gas heating system.

ii. **Altered Duct Systems - Duct Sealing – Systems Serving Individual Dwelling Units**: In all Climate Zones, when more than 25 feet of new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts are installed, the ducts shall comply with the applicable requirements of subsection~~s~~ a~~ and b~~ below. New ducts located in unconditioned spaceshall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 160.3(b)5A through J, and the duct insulation requirements of TABLE 180.2-C, and

a. The altered duct system, regardless of location, shall be sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1, utilizing the leakage compliance criteria specified in subsection I or II below.

TABLE 180.2-C DUCT INSULATION R-VALUE

Climate Zone	3, 5 through 7	1, 2, 4, 8 through 16
Duct R-Value	R-6	R-8

I. Entirely New or Complete Replacement Duct System. If the new ducts form an entirely new or complete replacement duct system directly connected to the air handler, the duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:

A. The total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 12 percent of the ~~nominal system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1, or

B. The duct system leakage to outside shall not exceed 6 percent of the ~~nominal system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4.

Entirely new or complete replacement duct systems installed as part of an alteration ~~shall be~~are constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the dwelling unit's existing duct system, including but not limited to registers, grilles, boots, air handler, coil, plenums, duct material; if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

Entirely new or complete replacement duct systems shall also conform to the requirements of Sections 160.2(a)1 and 160.3(b)5L. If the air handler and ducts are located within a vented attic, the requirements of Section 180.2(b)1Bi shall also be met.

II. Extension of an Existing Duct System**.** If the new ducts are an extension of an existing duct system serving multifamily dwellings, the combined new and existing duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:

A. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 15 percent of ~~system~~ air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or

B. The measured duct leakage to outside shall be equal to or less than 10 percent of

Commented [AG3]: All reference corrections in this section related to **MF Restructuring**. Revised to align with the same subsections as in 150.2 SF language.

Commented [AG4]: Correct reference for subsection on new duct systems and duct leakage requirements.

Commented [AG5]: 160.2(a)1 references ventilation requirements which aren't triggered as part of HVAC replacement. 160.2(b)1 is air filtration.

Commented [AG6]: 160.3(b)4 covers heating furnace temp rise, want to include this as well.

Commented [AG7]: Revised to remove 160.3(b)5K which covers new construction duct leakage. Duct leakage for new systems in existing homes is covered under 180.2(b)2AiiaI.

Commented [AG8]: 160.3(c)1 is referenced by 160.3(b)6 already.

Commented [AG9]: Revise to only reference 170.2(c)3Bi which is refrigerant charge requirements. 170.2(c)3Bii covers the 2 prescriptive options for HPA or DCS. 170.2(c)3Biii refers to central fan integrated ventilation systems. These aren't appropriate to reference for existing buildings.

Commented [ME10]: MF All-electric

Commented [AG11]: MF Restructuring

Commented [AG12]: Suggest moving table up above subsection a.

~~system~~ air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4; or

C. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of either Section 180.2(b)2Aii~~cI~~bIIA or ~~BII~~ then all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methodsspecified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

Commented [AG13]: MF Restructuring

EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(b)2AiibII: Duct Sealing. Existing duct systems that are extended, which are constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

EXCEPTION ~~1~~ to Section 180.2(b)2Aii: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Provider data registryrequirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not required for multifamily dwelling units in buildings four stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

Commented [AG14]: Not specific to any CASE Report

iii. **Altered Space-Conditioning System – Duct Sealing – Systems Serving Individual Dwelling Units:** In all Climate Zones, when a space-conditioning system serving a multifamily dwelling is altered by the installation or replacement of space- conditioning system equipment, including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit ofa split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil; the duct system that is connected to the altered space-conditioning system equipment shall be sealed, as confirmed throughfield verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1 and the leakagecompliance criteria specified in subsections a, b, or c below.

Commented [AG15]: MF Restructuring

a. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 15 percent of ~~system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or

b. The measured duct leakage to outside shall be equal to or less than 10 percent of ~~system~~ air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4; or

c. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of either Section 180.2(b)2Aiiia or b, then, all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2Aiii: ~~**Duct Sealing.**~~ Duct systems that are documented to have been previously sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.

Commented [AG16]: Not specific to any CASE Report

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2Aiii: ~~**Duct Sealing.**~~ Duct systems with less than 40 linear feet as determined by visual inspection.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2(b)2Aiii: ~~**Duct Sealing.**~~ Existing duct systems constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section 180.2(b)2Aiii: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Provider data registry requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not required for multifamily dwelling units in buildings four stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

iv. **Altered Space-Conditioning System Mechanical Cooling.** When a space-conditioning system is an air conditioner or heat pump that is altered by the installation or replacement of refrigerant-containing system components such as the compressor, condensing coil, evaporator coil, refrigerant metering device or refrigerant piping, the altered system shall comply with the following requirements:

a. All thermostats associated with the system shall be replaced with setback thermostats meeting the requirements of Section 110.2(c).

b. In Climate Zones 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15, air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps serving individual dwelling units, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted package systems, small duct highvelocity air systems, and minisplit systems, shall comply

Commented [AG17]: MF Restructuring

with subsections I and II, unless the system is of a type that cannot be verified using the specified procedures. Systems that cannot comply with the requirements of Section 180.2(b)2Aivb shall comply with Section 180.2(b)2Aivc.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2Aivb: Entirely new or complete replacement packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment fromthe factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge.

Commented [AG18]: MF Restructuring: Either move this down to the end of 180.2(b)2Aivb before Exception 2 to 180.2(b)2Aivb or move Exception 2 to 180.2(b)2Aivb up.

Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 180.2(b)2AivbI, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in RA3.3 or an approved alternative in RA1.

I. Minimum system airflow rate shall comply with the applicable subsection A or B below as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure as specified in Section RA1.~~;~~

   A. Small duct high velocity systems shall demonstrate a minimum system airflow rate greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity; or

   B. All other air-cooled air conditioner or air-source heat pump systems shall demonstrate a minimum system airflow rate greater than or equal to 300 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity; and

   EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2AivbI: Systems unable to comply with the minimum airflow rate requirement shall demonstrate compliance using the procedures in Section RA3.3.3.1.5; and the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12.

   EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2AivbI: Entirely new or complete replacement space conditioning systems, as specified by Section 180.2(b)2Ai, without zoning dampers may comply with the minimum airflow rate by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE 160.3-A or 160.3-B as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements of Section160.2(a)1C for the system air filter device(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 160.3-A and 160.3-B.

II. The installer shall charge the system according to manufacturer’s specifications. Refrigerant charge shall be verified according to one of the following options, as applicable.

   A. The installer and rater shall perform the standard charge verification procedure as specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2, or an approved alternative procedure as specified in Section RA1; or

   B. The system shall be equipped with a fault indicator display (FID) device that meets the specifications of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. The installer shall verify the refrigerant charge and FID device in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.4.2. The HERS Rater shall verify FID device in accordance with the procedures in Section RA3.4.2; or

   C. The installer shall perform the weigh-in charging procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure and RA3.3 airflow rate verification procedure or approved alternatives in RA1. The HERS Rater shall verify the charge using RA3.2.2 and RA3.3 or approved alternatives in RA1

   EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2AivbII: When the outdoor temperature is less than 55 degrees F and the installer utilizes the weigh-in charging procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1to demonstrate compliance, the installer may elect to utilize the

HERS Rater verification procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2. If the HERS Rater verification procedure in Section RA3.2.3.2 is used for compliance, the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12. Ducted systems shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirements in Section 180.2(b)2AivbI.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2AivbII: The HERS Rater field verification and HERS Providerdata registry requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and RA3 are not requiredfor multifamily dwelling units in buildings four stories and greater. The installer shall certify that diagnostic testing was performed in accordance with the applicable procedures.

Commented [ME19]: MF restructuring

v. **Altered Space-Heating System.** Altered or replacement space-heating systems shall not use electric resistance as the primary heat source.~~comply with Section 170.2(c)3M.~~

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2Av: ~~A n~~Non-ducted electric resistance space heating systems, if the existing space heating system is electric resistance.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2Av: ~~A d~~Ducted electric resistance space heating systems, if the existing space heating system is electric resistance and a ducted space cooling system is not being replaced or installed~~ where only the electric resistance heating system is being replaced~~.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2(b)2Av: ~~An e~~Electric resistance space heating systems, if the existing space heating system is electric resistance in Climate Zones 6, 7, 8, or 15.

B. Common Use Area Space Conditioning Systems and Central Space Conditioning Systems Serving Multiple Dwelling Units

Commented [ME20]: MF restructuring

i. New or Replacement Space-Conditioning Systems or Components other than new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts shall meet the requirements of Sections 170.2(c)1, 2, and 4, applicable to the systems or components being altered. For compliance with Section 170.2(c)4A, additional fan power adjustment credits are available as specified in TABLE 180.2-D.

TABLE 180.2-D Fan Power Limitation Pressure Drop Adjustment

~~Device~~	~~Adjustment Credits~~
~~Particulate Filtration Credit: MERV 9 through 12~~	~~0.5 in. of water~~
~~Particulate Filtration Credit: MERV 13 through 15~~	~~0.9 in. of water~~

Airflow	**Multi-Zone VAV Systems**[1] **≤5,000 cfm**	**Multi-Zone VAV Systems**[1] **>5,000 and ≤10,000 cfm**	**Multi-Zone VAV Systems**[1] **>10,000 cfm**	**All Other Fan Systems ≤5,000 cfm**	**All Other Fan Systems >5,000 and ≤10,000 cfm**	**All Other Fan Systems >10,000 cfm**
Supply Fan System Additional Allowance	0.135	0.114	0.105	0.139	0.12	0.107
Supply Fan System Additional Allowance In Unit with Adapter Curb	0.033	0.033	0.043	0.000	0.000	0.000
Exhaust/ Relief/ Return/ Transfer Fan System Additional Allowance	0.07	0.061	0.054	0.07	0.062	0.055
Exhaust/ Relief/ Return/ Transfer Fan System Additional Allowance In Unit with Adapter Curb	0.016	0.017	0.022	0.000	0.000	0.000

Footnotes to Table ~~141.0~~180.2-D:

1. See FAN SYSTEM, MULTI-ZONE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME (VAV) for the definition of a Multi-Zone VAV System.

Commented [ME21]: MF restructuring

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2Bi. Section 180.2(b)2Av does not apply to replacement of electric reheat of equivalent or lower capacity electric resistance space heaters, when natural gas is not available.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2Bi. Section 170.2(c)4L is not applicable to new or replacement space conditioning systems.

EXCEPTION 4 to Section ~~141.0(b)2C~~180.2(b)2Bi: Section 140.4(e) is applicable to systems, other than singlepackage air-cooled commercial unitary air conditioners and heat pumps, with cooling capacity less than 54,000 Btu/h.

ii. **Altered Duct Systems.** When new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts are installed to serve an existing building, the new ducts shall meet the requirements of Section 160.3(c)2 and meet a or b below:

a. RESERVED.

b. Entirely new or replacement duct systems installed as part of an alteration shall be leakage-tested in accordance with Section 160.2(c)2H. Entirely new or replacement duct systems installed as part of an alteration shall be constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the building's existing duct system, including registers, grilles, boots, air handlers, coils, plenums, and ducts, if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

c. If the new ducts are an extension of an existing duct system, the combined new and existing duct system meets the criteria in Subsections I, II, and III below. The duct system shall be sealed to a leakage rate not to exceed 15 percent of the nominal air handler airflow rate as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with the applicable procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2:

I. The duct system provides conditioned air to an occupiable space for a constant volume, single zone, space-conditioning system; and

II. The space conditioning system serves less than 5,000 square feet of conditioned floor area; and

III. The combined surface area of the ducts located in the following spaces is more than 25 percent of the total surface area of the entire duct system:

A. Outdoors;

B. In a space directly under a roof that

C. Has a U-factor greater than the U-factor of the ceiling, or if the roof does not meet the requirements of Section 140.3(a)1B, or

D. Has fixed vents or openings to the outside or unconditioned spaces; or

E. In an unconditioned crawlspace; or

F. In other unconditioned spaces.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2Biib: When it is not possible to achieve the duct leakage criteria in Section 180.2(b)2Biib, all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test performed by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.1.4.2.2a.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2Biib: Duct Sealing. Existing duct systems that are extended, which are constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos are exempt from the requirements of subsection 180.2(b)2Biib.

iii. **Altered Space-Conditioning Systems.** When a space-conditioning system is altered by the installation or replacement of space-conditioning system equipment (including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit of a split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil:

a. For all altered units where the existing thermostat does not comply with the requirements for demand responsive controls specified in Section 110.12, the existing thermostat shall be replaced with a demand responsive thermostat that complies with Section 110.12. All newly installed space-conditioning systems requiring a thermostat shall be equipped with a demand responsive thermostat that complies with Section 110.12; and

b. The duct system that is connected to the new or replaced space-conditioning system equipment shall be sealed, if the duct system meets the criteria of Section 170.2(c)4Ji, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with the applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2, and conforming to the applicable leakage compliance criteria in Section 180.2(b)2Bii.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)2Biiib: Duct Sealing. Buildings altered so that the duct system no longer meets the criteria of Section 170.2(c)4Ji are exempt from the requirements of Subsection 180.2(b)2Biiib**.**

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)2Biiib: Duct Sealing. Duct systems that are documented to have been previously sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures in the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2 are exempt from the requirements of Subsection 180.2(b)2Biiib.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2(b)2Biiib: Duct Sealing. Existing duct systems constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos are exempt from the requirements of Subsection 180.2(b)2Biiib.

3. **Hot Water Systems**. Altered or replacement water-heating systems or components serving individual dwelling units shall meet the applicable requirements below:

A. **Pipe Insulation.** For newly installed piping and existing accessible piping, the insulation requirements of Section 160.4(f) shall be met.

B. **Distribution System.** For recirculation distribution system serving individual dwelling units, only Demand Recirculation Systems with manual on/off control as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.9 shall be installed.

C. **Water heating system.** The water heating system shall meet one of the following:

i. A natural gas or propane water-heating system; or

ii. A single heat pump water heater. The storage tank shall not be located outdoors and be placed on an incompressible, rigid insulated surface with a minimum thermal resistance of R-10. The water heater shall be installed with a communication interface that meets either the requirements of 110.12(a) or has a ANSI/CTA-2045-~~A~~ B communication port; or

iii. A single heat pump water heater that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher; or

iv. If the existing water heater is an electric resistance water heater, a consumer electric water heater.

v. A water-heating system determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in Section 180.2(b)3Ci through iii above; or if no natural gas is connected to the existing water heater location, a water-heating system determined by the executive director to use no more energy than the one specified in Section 180.2(b)3Civ above.

4. **Lighting**.

A. **Dwelling Unit ~~L~~ighting.** The altered lighting system shall meet the lighting requirements of Section 160.5(a). The altered luminaires shall meet the luminaire efficacy requirements of Section 160.5(a) and TABLE 160.5-A. Where existing screw base sockets are present in ceiling-recessed luminaires, removal of these sockets is not required provided that new JA8 compliant trim kits or lamps designed for use with recessed downlights or luminaires are installed.

B. **Common Use Area – Lighting, Sign Lighting, and Electrical Power Distribution Systems**.

   i. Spaces with lighting systems installed for the first time shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.9, 160.5(b)1, 160.5(b)2, 160.5(b)3, 160.5(b)4, 160.5(c), 160.5(e), 170.2(b), and 170.2(e)1~~, and ~~thru 170.2(e)6~~2~~.

   ii. When the requirements of Section 160.5(b)4D are triggered by the addition of skylights to an existing building and the lighting system is not recircuited, the daylighting control need not meet the multi-level requirements in Section 160.5(b)4D.

   iii. New internally and externally illuminated signs shall meet the requirements of Sections 110.9, 160.5(d) and 170.2(e)~~3~~7.

   iv. Altered Indoor Lighting Systems. Alterations to indoor lighting systems that include 10% or more of the luminaires serving an enclosed space shall meet the requirements of a, b, or c below:

      a. The alteration shall comply with the indoor lighting power requirements specified in Section 170.2(e)1 thru 4~~A ~~and the lighting control requirements specified in TABLE 180.2-E; or

      b. The alteration shall not exceed 80% of the indoor lighting power requirements specified in Section 170.2(e)1 thru 4, and shall comply with the lighting control requirements specified in TABLE 180.2-~~D~~E; or

      c. The alteration shall be a one-for-one luminaire alteration within a building or tenant space of 5,000 square feet or less, the total wattage of the altered luminaires shall be at least 40% lower compared to their total pre-alteration wattage, and the alteration shall comply with the lighting control requirements specified in TABLE 180.2-E.

   Alterations to indoor lighting systems shall not prevent the operation of existing, unaltered controls, and shall not alter controls to remove functions specified in Section 160.5(b)4.

   Alterations to lighting wiring are considered alterations to the lighting system. Alterations to indoor lighting systems are not required to separate existing general, floor, wall, display, or ~~ornamental ~~decorative lighting on shared circuits or controls. New or completely replaced lighting circuits shall comply with the control separation requirements of Sections 160.5(b)4Aiv and 160.5(b)4Cid**.**

   EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)4Biv. Alteration of portable luminaires, luminaires affixed to moveable partitions, or lighting excluded as specified in Section 170.2(e)2C.

   EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)4Biv. Any enclosed space with only one luminaire.

   EXCEPTION 3 to Section 180.2(b)4Biv. Any alteration that would directly cause the disturbance of asbestos, unless the alteration is made in conjunction with asbestos abatement.

   EXCEPTION 4 to Section 180.2(b)4Biv. Acceptance testing requirements of Section 160.5(e) are not required for alterations where lighting controls are added to control 20 or fewer luminaires.

   EXCEPTION 5 to Section 180.2(b)4Biv. Any alteration limited to adding lighting controls or replacing lamps, ballasts, or drivers.

   EXCEPTION 6 to Section 180.2(b)4Biv. One-for-one luminaire alteration of up to 50 luminaires either per complete floor of the building or per complete tenant space, per annum.

v. Alterations to existing outdoor lighting systems in a lighting application listed in TABLES 170.2- R or 170.2- S shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 160.5(b)1, 160.5(b)2, 160.5(b)3, 160.5(c)1, and 160.5(e), and:

  a. In alterations that increase the connected lighting load, the added or altered luminaires shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 160.5(c)2 and the requirements of Section 170.2(e)~~2~~ 6 for general hardscape lighting or for the specific lighting applications containing the alterations; and

  b. In alterations that do not increase the connected lighting load, where ~~the greater of 5 luminaires or~~ 10 percent or more of the existing luminaires are replaced in a general hardscape or a specific lighting application, the alterations shall meet the following requirements:

    I. In parking lots and outdoor sales lots where the bottom of the luminaire is mounted 24 feet or less above the ground, the replacement luminaires shall comply with Section 160.5(c)2A and Section 160.5(c)2C**;**

    II. For ~~all other lighting applications and~~ parking lots and outdoor sales lots where the bottom of the luminaire is mounted greater than 24 feet above the ground and for all other lighting applications, the replacement luminaires shall comply with Section 160.5(c)2A AND EITHER comply with Section 160.5(c)2B or be controlled by lighting control systems, including motion sensors, that automatically reduces lighting power by at least 40 percent in response to the area being vacated of occupants; and

  EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(b)4Bvb. Alterations where less than 5 existing luminaires are replaced.

  c. In alterations that do not increase the connected lighting load, where ~~the greater of 5 luminaires or~~ 50 percent or more of the existing luminaires are replaced in general hardscape or a specific application, the replacement luminaires shall meet the requirements of subsection b above and the requirements of Section 170.2(e)~~2~~ 6 for general hardscape lighting or specific lighting applications containing the alterations.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(b)4Bvc. Alterations where the replacement luminaires have at least 40 percent lower power consumption compared to the original luminaires are not required to comply with the lighting power allowances of Section170.2(e)~~2~~6.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(b)4Bvc. Alterations where less than 5 existing luminaires are replaced.

EXCEPTION 3 to Section180.2(b)4Bv. Acceptance testing requirements of Section 160.5(e) are not required for alterations where controls are added to 20 or fewer luminaires.

vi. Alterations to existing internally and externally illuminated signs that increase the connected lighting load, replace and rewire more than 50 percent of the ballasts, or relocate the sign to a different location on the same site or on a different site shall meet the requirements of Section 1~~40.8~~70.2(e)7.

EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(b)4Bvi. Replacement of parts of an existing sign, including replacing lamps, the sign face or ballasts, that do not require rewiring or that are done at a time other than when the sign is relocated, is not an alteration subject to the requirements of Section 180.2(b)~~7Evi~~4Bvi**.**

vii. Alterations to existing electrical power distribution systems shall meet the applicable requirements of the following Sections:

  a. Service Electrical Metering. New or replacement electrical service equipment shall meet the requirements of Section 160.6(a) applicable to the electrical power distribution system altered; and

b. Separation of Electrical Circuits for Electrical Energy Monitoring. For entirely new or complete replacement of electrical power distribution systems, the entire system shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 160.6(b); and

c. Voltage Drop. Alterations of feeders and branch circuits where the alteration includes addition, modification, or replacement of both feeders and branch circuits, the altered circuits shall meet the requirements of Section 160.6(c); and

EXCEPTION to Section 180.2(b) 4Bviic: Voltage drop permitted by California Electrical Code Sections 647.4, 695.6 and 695.7.

d. Circuit Controls for 120-Volt Receptacles and Controlled Receptacles. For entirely new or complete replacement of electrical power distribution systems, the entire system shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 160.6(d).

TABLE 180.2-E~~—~~ Control Requirements for Indoor Lighting System Alterations for Common ~~Services~~ Use Areas

Control Specifications	**Projects complying with Section 180.2(b)4Biva**	**Projects complying with Sections 180.2(b)4Bivb ~~and~~ or 180.2(b)4Bivc**
Manual Area Controls 160.5(b)4Ai	Required	Required
Manual Area Controls 160.5(b)4Aii	Required	Required
Manual Area Controls 160.5(b)4Aii	Only required for new or completely replaced circuits	Only required for new or completely replaced circuits
Multi-Level Controls 160.5(b)4B	Required	Not Required
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(c)4Ci	Required; 160.5(b)4Cid only required for new or completely replaced circuits	Required; 160.5(b)4Cid only required for new or completely replaced circuits
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(c)4Cii	Required	Required
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(c)4Cii	Required	Required
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(c)4Civ	Required	Required
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(b)4Cv	Required	Required
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(b)4Cvi	Required	Required
Automatic Shut Off Controls 160.5(b)4Cvii	Required	Required
Daylighting Controls 160.5(b)4D	Required	Not Required
Demand Responsive Controls 160.5(b)4E	Required	Not Required

5. **Mechanical Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality for Dwelling Units.** Alterations to existing buildings shall comply with subsections A and B below as applicable. When HERS field verification and diagnostic testing is required by Section 180.2(b)5, buildings with three habitable stories or less shall use the applicable procedures in the Residential Appendices, and buildings with four or more habitable stories shall use the applicable procedures in Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2.

   A. **Entirely New or Complete Replacement Ventilation Systems.** Entirely new or complete replacement ventilation systems shall comply with all applicable requirements in Section 160.2(b)2. An ~~E~~entirely new or complete replacement ventilation system~~s shall~~ includes a new ventilation fan component and an entirely new duct system. An entirely new or complete replacement duct system ~~shall be~~is constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the dwelling unit's existing duct system, including but not limited to registers, grilles, boots, air filtration devices, and duct material, if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

B. **Altered Ventilation Systems**. Altered ventilation system components or newly installed ventilation equipment serving the alteration shall comply with Sections 160.2(b)2 as applicable subject to the requirements specified in subsections i and ii below.

i. **Whole-dwelling Unit Mechanical Ventilation**.

a. **Whole-dwelling unit airflow**. If the whole-dwelling ventilation fan is altered or replaced, then one of the following subsections 1 or 2 shall be used for compliance as applicable.

1. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to comply with the whole-dwelling unit airflow requirements in 160.2(b)2, 120.1(b), or 150.0(o) shall meet or exceed the whole-dwelling unit mechanical ventilation airflow specified in Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av as confirmed through HERS field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Appendix RA3.7 or NA2.2.

2. Dwellings that were not required by a previous building permit to have a whole-dwelling unit ventilation system to comply with Section 160.2(b)2, 120.1(b), or 150.0(o) shall not be required to comply with the whole-dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in Sections 160.2(b)2Aiv or 160.2(b)2Av.

b. **Replacement Ventilation Fans.** Whole-dwelling unit replacement ventilation fans shall be rated for airflow and sound in accordance with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 7.1 and 7.2. Additionally, when conformance to a specified whole-dwelling unit airflow rate is required for compliance, the replacement fans shall be rated at no less than the airflow rate required for compliance.

c. **Air Filters**. If the air filtration device for a whole-dwelling unit ventilation system is altered or replaced, then one of the following subsections 1 or 2 shall be used for compliance.

1. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to comply with the ventilation system air filtration requirements in 160.2(b)1, 120.1(b)1, or 150.0(m)12 shall comply with the air filtration requirements in 160.2(b)1.

2. Dwellings that were not required by a previous building permit to comply with the ventilation system air filtration requirements in Section 160.2(b)1, 120.1(b)1, or 150.0(m)12 shall not be required to comply with the air filtration requirements specified in Section 160.2(b)1.

ii. **Local Mechanical Exhaust**.

a. **Bathroom Local Mechanical Exhaust**. Altered bathroom local mechanical exhaust systems shall comply with the applicable requirements specified in Section 160.0(b)2Avi.

b. **Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust**. If the kitchen local ventilation fan is altered or replaced, then one of the following subsections 1, 2, or 3 shall be used for compliance.

1. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to comply with the kitchen local exhaust requirements in 160.0(b)2Avi, 120.1(b)2vi, or 150.0(o)1G shall meet or exceed the applicable airflow or capture efficiency requirements in Section 160.0(b)2Avi.

2. Dwellings that were required by a previous building permit to install a vented kitchen range hood or other kitchen exhaust fan, shall install a replacement fan that meets or exceeds the airflow required by the previous building permit, or 100 cfm, whichever is greater.

3. Dwellings that were not required to have a kitchen local ventilation exhaust system according to the conditions in either subsection 1 or 2 above shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 160.0(b)2Avi.

c. **Replacement Ventilation Fans.** New or replacement local mechanical exhaust fans shall be rated for airflow and sound in accordance with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.2 Section 7.1 and Title 24, Part 6 Section 160.0(b)2Avif. Additionally, when compliance with a specified exhaust airflow rate is required, the replacement fan shall be rated at no less than the airflow rate required for compliance.

(c) **Performance approach.** The altered component(s) and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of subsections 1, 2, and 3 below.

1. The altered components shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Section 160.0, 160.1, 160.2(c) and (d), 160.3(a) through 160.3(b)5J, 160.3(b)6, 160.3(c), and 160.5. Entirely new or complete replacement mechanical ventilation systems as these terms are used in Section 180.2(b)5A shall comply with the requirements in Section 180.2(b)5A. Altered mechanical ventilation systems shall comply with the requirements of Sections 180.2(b)5B. Entirely new or complete replacement space-conditioning systems, and entirely new or complete replacement duct systems, as these terms are used in Sections 180.2(b)2Ai and 180.2(b)2Aiia, shall comply with the requirements of Sections 160.2(a)1 and 160.3(b)5L.
2. The standard design for an altered component shall be the higher efficiency of existing conditions or the requirements of Section 180.2(b). For components not being altered, the standard design shall be based on the unaltered existing conditions such that the standard and proposed designs for these components are identical. When the third party verification option is specified, all components proposed for alteration for which the additional credit is taken shall be verified by a qualified third party.
3. The proposed design shall be based on the actual values of the altered components.

NOTES TO SECTION 180.2(c):

1. If an existing component must be replaced with a new component, that component is considered an altered component for the purpose of determining the standard design altered component energy budget and must meet the requirements of Section 180.2(c)2.
2. The standard design shall assume the same geometry and orientation as the proposed design.
3. The "existing efficiency level" modeling rules, including situations where nameplate data is not available, are described in the applicable Residential or Nonresidential ACM Approval Manual.

EXCEPTION 1 to Section 180.2(c): Any dual-glazed greenhouse or garden window installed as part of an alteration complies with the U-factor requirements in Section 170.2.

EXCEPTION 2 to Section 180.2(c): Where the space in the attic or rafter area is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 1203.2 of Title 24, Part 2.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 180.3 – REPAIRS

Repairs shall not increase the preexisting energy consumption of the repaired component, system, or equipment.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

SECTION 180.4 – WHOLE BUILDING

Any addition or alteration may comply with the requirements of Title 24, Part 6 by meeting the requirements for the entire building.

NOTE: Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

APPENDIX 1-A
STANDARDS AND DOCUMENTS REFERENCED IN THE ENERGY CODE

The following documents are incorporated by reference to the extent they are referenced in the Energy Code.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE

AHRI 210/240-~~08~~2017	Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment (~~2008~~ 2017 W/Addendum 1)
AHRI 310/380-~~17~~2017	Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps (2017)
~~AHRI 320-98~~	~~Water-Source Heat Pumps~~
~~AHRI 325-98~~	~~Ground Water-Source Heat Pumps (1998)~~
~~ANSI/~~AHRI 340/360~~-15~~ (I-P)-2019	Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment (~~2015~~2019)
ANSI/AHRI 365 ~~-09~~(I-P)-2009	Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning Condensing Units (2009)
~~ANSI/~~ANSI/AHRI 390-2003	Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps (2003)
ANSI/AHRI 400~~-15~~ (I-P)-2015	Performance Rating of Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers (2015)
AHRI 430 (I-P)-2020	Performance Rating of Central Station Air-handling Unit Supply Fans (2020)
AHRI 440 (I-P)-2019	Performance Rating of Fan-coil Units (2019)
ANSI/AHRI 460-2005	Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-Draft Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condensers (2005)
AHRI 550/590~~-15~~ (I-P)-2020	Performance Rating of Water-chilling and Heat Pump Water-heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle (~~2015~~2020)
~~ANSI/~~AHRI 560-2000	Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages (2000)
AHRI 680 (I-P)-2017	Performance Rating of Residential Air Filter Equipment (~~2015~~2017)
AHRI 920 (I-P)-2020	Performance Rating of ~~DX~~Direct Expansion-Dedicated Outdoor Air System Units (2020)
AHRI 1060 (I-P)-2018	Performance Rating of Air-to-Air Exchangers for Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment (2018)
AHRI 1230-~~14~~2014	Performance Rating of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-Split Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment (w/Addendum 1)
AHRI 1360 (I-P)-2017	Performance Rating of Computer and Data Processing Room Air Conditioners (2017)

Available from:
Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute
2311 Wilson Blvd,, Suite 400
Arlington, VA 22203
(703) 524-8800

ASSOCIATION OF HOME APPLIANCE MANUFACTURERS

AHAM HRH-2-2020	Residential Kitchen Range Hood Performance Test Procedures (2020)
AHAM RKRH-CPPG-2020	Residential Kitchen Range Hood Certification Program Procedural Guide (2020) Version 3.0

Available from: Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers

1111 19th Street, NW, Suite 402
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 872-5955
www.aham.org

AIR-CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS OF AMERICA

ANSI/ACCA 2 Manual J-2016 Manual J - Residential Load Calculation, Eighth Edition (2016)

Available from: Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, Inc.
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300
Arlington, VA 22206
(703) 575-4477
www.acca.org

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION
CANADIAN STANDARDS ASSOCIATION
WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-~~11~~17
~~NAFS 2011 –~~North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors, and Skylights (2017)

Available from:

AAMA
1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268
(847) 303-5664
www.aamanet.org

CSA
5060 Spectrum Way, Suite 100
Mississauga, ON, Canada L4W 5N6
(800) 463-6727
www.csagroup.org

WDMA
2025 M Street, NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309
(202) 367-1157
www.wdma.com

AMERICAN CONFERENCE OF GOVERNMENTAL INDUSTRIAL HYGENISTS

~~2018~~2021 TLVs and BEIs Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents and Biological Exposure Indices

Available from:

ACGIH
1330 Kemper Meadow Drive
Cincinnati, Ohio 45240
(513) 742-2020
www.acgih.org

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE

~~ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 154-2016~~

~~Ventilation For Commercial Cooking Operations (2016)~~

ANSI/AMCA 208-18 Calculation of the Fan Energy Index (2018)

ANSI/AMCA 210-16 Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating (2016)

ANSI/AMCA 500-D-18 Laboratory Methods Of Testing Dampers For Rating (2018)

ANSI/ASABE S640 JUL2017 Quantities and Units of Electromagnetic Radiation for Plants (Photosynthetic Organisms)

ANSI/ASSP~~E~~ Z9.5-2012 Laboratory Ventilation (2012)

ANSI/CTA-2045-B~~A-2018~~2021 Modular Communications Interface for Energy Management (2018)

ANSI C82.6-2015 (R2020) American National Standard for Lamp Ballasts - Ballasts for High-Intensity Discharge Lamps - Methods of Measurement (2020)

ANSI/NEMA WD 6-2016 American National Standard for Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications (2016)

~~ANSI Z21.10.3-1719/CSA 4.3-2019~~

~~Gas Water Heaters, Volume 1, Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings above 75,000 Btu/h (2017)Gas-Fired Water Heaters, Volume III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour, Circulating And Instantaneous (2019)~~

~~ANSI Z21.13-172017/CSA 4.9-2017~~

~~Gas-Fired Low Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers (2017)~~

ANSI Z21.40.4a-1998 (R2017)/CGA 2.94a-M~~19~~98 (R2017)~~-17~~

Performance Testing and Rating of Gas-Fired, Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (2017)

ANSI Z21.47~~-162016~~~~16~~2021/CSA 2.3~~-2016~~:21

Gas-Fired Central Furnaces (~~2016~~2021)

ANSI Z83.8~~-16~~2016/CSA 2.6-2016 (R2021)

Gas Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-Fired Duct Furnaces (2016)

Available from:

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th floor
New York, NY 10036
(212) 642-4900

ANSI/APSP/ICC~~NSPI -~~5a~~-03~~2011 American National Standard For Residential Inground Swimming Pools (~~2003~~2011 w/Addendum A)

~~ANSI C82.6-15 Ballasts for High-Intensity Discharge Lamps—Methods of Measurement (2015)~~

Available from:

Association of Pool & Spa Professionals
2111 Eisenhower Ave.
Alexandria, VA 22314
(703) 838-0083

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (NATIONAL PUBLICATIONS)

ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 52.2-2017

Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size (2017)

ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 55-~~2017~~2020

Thermal Environment Conditions for Human Occupancy (2020)

ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 62.1-2019
Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality (2019)

ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 62.2-~~2016~~2019
Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in ~~Low-~~Residential Buildings (2019)

ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 84-2020 Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat/Energy Exchangers (2020)

ANSI/ASHRAE/IES STANDARDS 90.1-2019
Energy Standards for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings (2019)

ANSI/ASHRAE STANDARD 154-2016
Ventilation For Commercial Cooking Operations (2016)

ANSI/ASHRAE 193-2010 (RA2014)
Method of Test for Determining the Airtightness of HVAC Equipment (RA2014)

ASHRAE Handbooks

HVAC Applications (I-P) (~~2015~~2019)

HVAC Systems and Equipment (I-P) (~~2016~~2020)

Fundamentals (I-P) (2017)

Available from:
American Society of Heating,
Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
(ASHRAE)
1791 Tullie Circle N.E.
Atlanta, GA 30329
www.ashrae.org

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (REGIONAL PUBLICATION)

ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region × Arizona, California, Hawaii, Nevada, Publication SPCDX, 1982, ISBN #20002196 and Supplement, 1994, ISBN #20002596

Available from:
Order Desk
Building News
10801 National Boulevard
Los Angeles, CA 90064
(800) 873-6397 or (310) 474-7771
www.bnibooks.com/

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS

ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19
Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators (2019)

ASME A112.18.1-~~2012~~2018/CSA B125.1-~~12~~18
Plumbing Supply Fittings

~~ASME A17.1-2016 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators (2016)~~

Available from:
ASME
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990
(800) 843-2763
http://www.asme.org/

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS / ASTM INTERNATIONAL

ASTM C55-17 Standard Specification~~s~~ for Concrete Building Brick (2017)

ASTM C177-~~13~~19	Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate Apparatus (~~2013~~2019)
ASTM C272~~-16~~/C272M-18	Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for ~~Structural~~ Sandwich Constructions (~~2016~~2018)
ASTM C335/C335M-17	Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Transfer Properties of Horizontal Pipe Insulation (2017)
ASTM C518-17	Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus (2017)
ASTM C731-15	Standard Test Method for Extrudability, After Package Aging, of Latex Sealants (2015)
ASTM C732-17	Standard Test Method for Aging Effects of Artificial Weathering on Latex Sealants (2017)
ASTM C836/C836M-~~15~~18	Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course (~~2015~~2018)
ASTM C1167-~~11~~11(2017)	Standard Specification for Clay Roof Tiles (~~2011~~2017)
ASTM C1371-15	Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers (2015)
ASTM C1492-~~16~~03(2016)	Standard Specification for Concrete Roof Tile (2016)
ASTM C1549-16	Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer (2016)
ASTM C1583~~-13~~/C1583M-20	Standard Test Method for Tensile Strength of Concrete Surfaces and the Bond Strength or Tensile Strength of Concrete Repair and Overlay Materials by Direct Tension (Pull-off Method) (~~2013~~2020)
ASTM D448-~~17~~12(2017)	Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggrergate for Road and Bridge Construction (2017)
ASTM D522/D522M-17	Standard Test Methods for Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings (2017)
ASTM D822/D822M-~~13~~13(2018)	Standard Practice for Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings (~~2013~~2018)
ASTM D1003-~~13~~21	Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics (~~2013~~2021)
ASTM D1653-~~13~~21	Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Organic Coating Films (~~2013~~2021)
ASTM D1863~~-11~~/D1863M-05(2018)	Standard Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used on Built-Up Roofs (~~2011~~2018)
ASTM D2202-00(2019)	Standard Test Method for Slump of Sealants (2019)
ASTM D2370-~~16~~16	Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Organic Coatings (~~2016~~2016)
ASTM D2824/D2824M-~~13~~18	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered, ~~Asbestos Fibered~~, and Fibered without Asbestos (~~2013~~2018)
ASTM D3468/D3468M-~~13~~99(2020)	Standard Specification for Liquid-Applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfonated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing (~~2013~~2020)
ASTM D3805/D3805M-16	Standard Guide for Application of Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings (2016)
ASTM D4798/D4798M-11(2021)~~16~~	Standard Practice for ~~Test Method~~ Accelerated Weathering Test Conditions and Procedures for Bituminous Materials (Xenon-Arc Method) (~~2016~~2021)
ASTM D5870-16	Standard Practice for Calculating Property Retention Index of Plastics (2016)

ASTM D6083~~-05e1~~/D6083M-21	Standard Specification for Liquid- Applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing (~~2005~~2021)
ASTM D6694/D6694M-15	Standard Specification for Liquid- Applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing Systems (2015)
ASTM E96/E96M-16	Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials (2016)
ASTM E283/E283M-~~12~~19	Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen (~~2012~~2019)
~~ASTM E408-1313(2019)~~	~~Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter~~ Techniques (~~2013~~2019)
ASTM E779-~~10~~19	Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization (~~2010~~2019)
ASTM E903-20	Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres(2020)
ASTM E972-~~13~~96(2021)	Standard Test Method for Solar Photometric Transmittance of Sheet Materials Using Sunlight (~~2013~~2021)
ASTM E1175-87(2015)	Standard Test Method for Determining Solar or Photopic Reflectance, Transmittance, and Absorptance of Materials Using a Large Diameter Integrating Sphere (2015)
ASTM E1677-19	Standard Specification for Air Barrier (AB) Material or Assemblies for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls (2019)
ASTM E1680-16	Standard Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems (2016)
ASTM E1918-16	Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field (2016)
ASTM E1980-~~1~~11(2019)	Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces (~~2011~~2019)
ASTM E2178-~~13~~21	Standard Test Method for ~~Air Permeance of Building Materials~~ Determining Air Leakage Rate and Calculation of Air Permeance of Building Materials (~~2013~~2021)
ASTM E2357-~~17~~18	Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate of Air Barrier Assemblies (~~2017~~2018)
ASTM E3087-18	Standard Test Method for Measuring Capture Efficiency of Domestic Range Hoods (2018)
~~ASTM E779-10~~	~~Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization (2010)~~
~~ASTM E1677-11~~	~~Standard Specification for an Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls (2011)~~
Available from:	ASTM International 100 Barr Harbor Drive West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (800) 262-1373 or (610) 832-9500

CALIFORNIA HISTORICAL BUILDING CODE~~BUILDING STANDARDS COMMISSION~~

2022 California Building Code ~~(2022)~~

2022 California Electrical Code ~~(2022)~~

2022 California Fire Code

2022 California Mechanical Code ~~(2022)~~

2022 California Plumbing Code ~~(2022)~~

~~California Mechanical Code~~

~~California Building Code~~

Available from:
California Building Standards Commission
2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130
Sacramento, CA 95833-2936
(916) 263-0916
www.bsc.ca.gov

CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION

Appliance Efficiency Regulations

Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Manual

Available from:
California Energy Commission
1516 Ninth Street
Sacramento, CA 95814
(916) 654-5106 or
(800) 772-3300 (in California)
www.energy.ca.gov/title24

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS

Standards for Insulating Material

Available from:
California Department of Consumer Affairs
Bureau of ~~Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation~~Household Goods and Services
4244 South Market Court, Suite D
Sacramento, California 95834-1243
(916) 999-2041

CERTIFYING ORGANIZATION

CIE 13.3-1995	Method of Measuring and Specifying Colour Rendering Properties of Light Sources (1995)
CIE 015-2018	Technical Report: Colorimetry ~~Commission Internationale de L'Eclairage~~ (2018)

COOLING TECHNOLOGY INSTITUTE

CTI ATC-105~~-00~~ (19)	Acceptance Test Code for ~~Water~~ Cooling Towers (~~2000~~2019)
CTI ATC-105DS (18)	Acceptance Test Code for Dry Fluid Coolers (2018)
CTI ATC-105S (11)	Acceptance Test Code for Closed-Circuit Cooling Towers (2011)
CTI ATC-106 (11)	Acceptance Test Code for Mechanical Draft Evaporative Vapor Condensers (2011)
CTI STD-201~~-15~~RS (17)	Standard for the Certification of Water Cooling Tower Thermal Performance (~~2015~~2017)

Available from:
Cooling Technology Institute
2611 FM 1960 West, Suite A101
Houston, Texas 77068-3730
PO Box 73383
Houston, TX 77273-3383
(281) 583-4087

COOL ROOF RATING COUNCIL

CRRC-1	Product Rating Program Manual (~~2018~~2021)

Available from:
Cool Roof Rating Council
~~449 15th Street, Suite 400~~2435 N. Lombard Street

~~Oakland, CA 94612~~Portland, OR 97217
(866) 465-2523
www.coolroofs.org

HOME VENTILATING INSTITUE

HVI Publication 915-2020	HVI Loudness Testing and Rating Procedure (2020)
HVI Publication 916-2020	HVI Airflow Test Procedure (2020)
HVI Publication 920-2020	HVI Product Performance Certification Procedure Including Verification And Challenge (2020)

Available from: Home Ventilating Institute
1740 Dell Range Blvd., Suite H, PMB 450
Cheyenne, WY 82009
(855) 484-8368
www.hvi.org

~~**HYDRONICS INSTITUTE**~~

~~HI Heating Boiler Standard 86, 6th Edition (1989)~~

~~Available from:~~ ~~Hydronics Institute~~
~~35 Russo Place, P.O. Box 218~~
~~Berkeley Heights, New Jersey 07922~~
~~(908) 464-8200~~

ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY

The IES Lighting ~~Handbook~~Library™~~, Tenth Edition (2011)~~

ANSI/IES LM-79-19~~08~~	Approved Method: ~~Electrical and Photometric~~Optical and Electrical ~~-~~Measurements of Solid -~~–~~State Lighting Products (~~2008~~2019)
ANSI/IES LS-1-20	Lighting Science: Nomenclature and Definitions for Illuminating Engineering (2020)
ANSI/IES TM-15-20	Technical Memorandum: Luminaire Classification System for Outdoor Luminaires (2020)

Available from: ~~IES~~Illuminating Engineering Society
120 Wall Street, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10005-~~4001~~4026
(212) 248-5000
www.ies.org

INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF PLUMBING AND MECHANICAL OFFICIALS

California Mechanical Code

Available from: International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
4755 E. Philadelphia St.
Ontario, CA 91761
(800) 85-IAPMO (854-2766)
www.iapmo.org

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL

California Building Code

Available from: International Code Council
Western Regional Office
3060 Saturn St.

Brea, CA 92821
(888) 422-7233
www.iccsafe.org

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION

ISO 5801:2017	Fans- Performance testing using standardized airways (2017)
ISO 13256-1:1998 (RA 2012)	Water-Source Heat Pumps-Testing and Rating for Performance-Part 1: Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps (~~1998~~2012)
ISO 13256-2:1998 (RA2012)	Water-Source Heat pumps-Testing and rating for Performance-Part 2: Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps (~~1998~~2012)
ISO/IEC 17025:2017	General Criteria for the Competence of Testing and Calibration Laboratories (2017)

Available from:
ISO
Chemin de Blandonnet 8
CP 401
1214 Vernier
Geneva, Switzerland

INTERNATIONAL WINDOW FILM ASSOCIATION

~~Visual Quality Standard for Applied Window Film~~

~~Visual Quality Standard for Applied Window Film (Re-endorsed 2015)~~Architectural Visual Inspection Standard Window Film (reindorsed 2018)

Available from:
International Window Film Association
P.O. Box 3871
Martinsville, VA 24115-3871
276-666-4932

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION

NEMA LSD 57-2018	Polyurethane Foam Application: Lighting Equipment(2018)
NEMA SSL 7A-2015	~~“~~Phase Cut Dimming for Solid State Lighting: Basic Compatibility~~”~~(2015)

Available from:
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209
708-841-3200
www.nema.org

NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL

ANSI/NFRC 100-2020	Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors (~~2017~~2020)
ANSI/NFRC 200-2020	Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence (~~2017~~2020)
ANSI/NFRC 202-2020	Procedure for Determining Translucent Fenestration Product Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence (~~2017~~2020)
ANSI/NFRC 203-2020	Procedure for Determining Visible Transmittance of Tubular Daylighting Devices (~~2017~~2020)
ANSI/NFRC 400-2020	Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage (~~2017~~2020)

Available from:
National Fenestration Rating Council
6035 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770

(301) 589-1776
www.NFRC.org
Email: info@nfrc.org

NSF INTERNATIONAL (FORMERLY NATIONAL SANITATION FOUNDATION)

NSF/ANSI/CAN 50-~~ (2016)2019~~2020	~~Circulation System Components and Related Materials for Swimming Pools, Spas/Hot Tubs~~ Equipment and Chemicals for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Other Recreational Water Facilities (~~20162019~~2020)
Available from:	NSF International PO Box 130140 Ann Arbor, MI 48113 (735) 769-8010

RESIDENTIAL ENERGY SERVICES NETWORK

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380-~~2016~~2019	Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building Enclosures, Dwelling Unit, and Sleeping Unit Enclosures, Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems; and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems (~~2016~~2019)
Available from:	Residential Energy Services Network, Inc. (RESNET) P.O. Box 4561 Oceanside, CA 92052-4561 https://www.resnet.us/

SAE INTERNATIONAL

SAE J1772 201710	SAE Electric Vehicle and Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicle Conductive Charge Coupler (2017)

SHEET METAL AND AIR-CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

Residential Comfort System Installation Standards Manual, Eighth Edition (2016)

ANSI/SMACNA 006-2006	HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible (2006)
Available from:	Sheet Metal and Air-Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) 4201 Lafayette Center Drive Chantilly, VA 20151-1209 (703) 803-2980 www.smacna.org

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES / UL

UL 181	Standard for Safety for Factory-made Air Ducts and Connectors (2017)
UL 181A	Standard for Safety for Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts ~~and Air Connectors~~ (2017)
UL 18~~I~~1B	Standard for Safety for Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors (2017)
UL 723	Standard for Safety for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials (~~2017~~2018)
UL 727	Standard for Safety for Oil-Fired Central Furnaces (~~2006~~2018)
UL 731	Standard for Safety for Oil-Fired Unit Heaters (~~2012~~2018)
UL 1077	Standard for Safety for Supplementary Protectors for Use in Electrical Equipment (~~2015~~2016)

UL 1574	Standard for Safety for Track Lighting Systems (~~2016~~2020)
UL 1598	Standard for Safety for Luminaires (~~20122020~~2021)
UL 1741	Standard for Safety for Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment for Safety for Use With Distributed Energy Resources (~~2018~~2021)
UL 1973	Standard for Safety for Batteries for Use in Stationary, Vehicle Auxiliary Power and Light Electric Rail (LER) Applications (2018)
UL 2108	Standard for Safety for Low Voltage Lighting Systems (~~2018~~2019)
UL 8750	Standard for Safety for Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products (~~2018~~2021)
UL 9540	Standard for Safety for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment (~~20162020~~2021)

Available from:

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096
(847) 272-8800

APPENDIX 1-B

ENERGY COMMISSION DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE IN THEIR ENTIRETY

The following documents published by the California Energy Commission are incorporated by reference in their entirety into the Energy Code:

Referenced appendices for the Building Energy Efficiency Standards for Residential and Nonresidential Buildings, including the Joint Appendices (JA), the Residential Appendices (RA), and Nonresidential Appendices (NA)

Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual

Available from: California Energy Commission/Publications
1516 Ninth Street
Sacramento, CA 95814
(916) 654-5200
www.energy.ca.gov/title24

DOCKETED	
Docket Number:	21-BSTD-01
Project Title:	2022 Energy Code Update Rulemaking
TN #:	238837
Document Title:	15-Day Express Terms 2022 Energy Code Reference Appendecies
Description:	California Energy Commission revised proposed changes to the 2022 Building Energy Efficiency Standards (Energy Code) Reference Appendices.
Filer:	Amber Beck
Organization:	California Energy Commission
Submitter Role:	Commission Staff
Submission Date:	7/13/2021 4:34:11 PM
Docketed Date:	7/13/2021

Joint Appendix JA1

APPENDIX JA1 – Definitions

Terms, phrases, words and their derivatives in the Reference Appendices shall be defined as specified in Title 24, Part 6, Section 100.1. Below are additional definitions for terms used in the Reference Appendices and not defined in Title 24, Part 6.

ACM See Alternative Calculation Method in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

ACP See Alternative Component Package.

AFUE See Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

AIR LEAKAGE ~~I~~is a measure of how much outside air comes into a home or building through a manufactured fenestration or exterior door products.

AIR POROSITY is a measure of the air-tightness of infiltration barriers in units of cubic feet per hour per square foot per inch of mercury pressure difference.

AIRFLOW ACROSS THE EVAPORATOR is the rate of airflow, usually measured in cfm across a heating or cooling coil. The efficiency of air conditioners and heat pumps is affected by the airflow across the evaporator (or condenser in the case of a heat pump).

ALTERNATIVE CALCULATION METHOD (ACM) REFERENCE MANUAL or ACM REFERENCE MANUAL contains the specific procedures to implement Sections 140.1 and 150.1 of Title 24, Part 6 of the California Code of Regulations in Compliance Software.

ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGE is a set of building measures whose aggregate calculated energy use is less than or equal to the maximum allowed Energy Budget.

ANSI C78.377 is the American National Standards Institute document titled “Specifications for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products.” (ANSI C78.377-~~2011~~2017).

ANSI C79.1 is the American National Standards Institute document titled “Nomenclature for Glass Bulbs Intended for Use with Electric Lamps.” (ANSI C79.1-2002).

ANSI C82.2 is the American National Standard for Lamp Ballasts –Method of Measurement for Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts (ANSI C82.2~~:~~-2002(R2016)).

ANSI C82.77 is the American National Standard for Harmonic Emission Limits - Related Power Quality Requirements for Lighting Equipment (ANSI C82.77-2002).

~~**ANSI Z21.10.3** is the American National Standards Institute document titled “Gas Water Heaters - Volume III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour,” 2017 (ANSI Z21.10.3-2017/CSA 4.3-2017).~~

APPLIANCE STANDARDS are the Standards contained in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

APPROVED as to a home energy rating provider or home energy rating system, ~~is~~ means reviewed and approved by the Commission under Title 20, Section 1675 of the California Code of Regulations.

APPROVED BY THE COMMISSION means approval under Section 25402.1 of the Public Resources Code.

APPROVED CALCULATION METHOD is compliance software, or alternative component packages, or exceptional methods approved under Section 10-109.

AREAL HEAT CAPACITY See Heat Capacity.

AHRI is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute.

AHRI 210/240 is the Air-conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment," 2008 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 210/240-~~2008~~ 2017 with Addenda 1~~ and 2~~).

~~ANSI/~~AHRI~~/CSA~~ 310/380 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Standard for Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps (CSA-C744-~~04~~17)," ~~2004~~ 2017 (~~ANSI/~~AHRI~~/CSA Standard~~ 310/380-~~2004~~2017).

~~**AHRI** 320 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Water-Source Heat Pumps," 1998 (AHRI Standard 320-1998).~~

~~**AHRI** 325 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Ground Water-Source Heat Pumps," 1998 (ARI Standard 325-1998).~~

~~ANSI/~~AHRI 340/360 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment," ~~2007 2015~~ 2019 (~~ANSI/~~AHRI Standard 340/360-(I-P) 2019~~2007 with Addenda 1 and 2~~).

~~ANSI/~~AHRI 365 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning Condensing Units," 2009 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 365 (I-P)-2009).

~~ANSI/~~AHRI 390 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps," 2003 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 390~~-(I-P)~~-2003).

~~ANSI/~~AHRI 400 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers," ~~2001~~ 2015 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 400 (I-P)-~~2001~~2015) ~~with addenda 1 and 2.~~

~~ANSI/~~AHRI 460 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-Draft Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condensers," 2005 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 460-2005).

AHRI 550/590 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled "Performance Rating of Water Chilling Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle," ~~2011~~ 2020 (AHRI Standard 550/590~~-~~(I-P)-~~2011~~2020).

~~ANSI/~~AHRI 560 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages,” 2000 (~~ANSI/~~AHRI Standard 560-2000).

AHRI 680 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Residential Air Filter Equipment,” ~~2009~~ 2017 (~~ANSI/~~AHRI Standard 680~~-~~(I-P)-2017).

AHRI 1230 is the Air-Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-Split Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment,” ~~2010~~ 2014 (AHRI Standard 1230-~~2010~~2014) with Addendum 1.

ASHRAE is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-conditioning Engineers.

ASHRAE CLIMATIC DATA FOR REGION X is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii and Nevada,” Publication SPCDX, 1982 and “Supplement,” 1994.

ASHRAE HANDBOOK, APPLICATIONS VOLUME is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Handbook: Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning Applications" (I-P)(~~2015~~2019).

ASHRAE HANDBOOK, EQUIPMENT VOLUME is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Handbook: Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning Systems and Equipment" (I-P)(~~2016~~2020).

ASHRAE HANDBOOK, FUNDAMENTALS VOLUME is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Handbook: Fundamentals" (I-P)(2017).

ASHRAE STANDARD 52.2 is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size,” ~~2012~~ 2017 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.2-~~2012~~2017).

ASHRAE STANDARD 55 is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled " Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy,” ~~2010~~ 2020 (ASHRAE Standard 55-~~2010~~2020).

ASHRAE STANDARD 62.2 is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Low-Rise Residential Buildings,” ~~2010~~ 2019 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2-~~2010~~ 2019 including ANSI/ASHRAE Addenda v and published in the 2020). ~~b, c, e, g, h, i and l to ANSI/ASHRAE 62.2-2010 published in the 2011 supplement, and ANSI/ASHRAE Addendum j to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2010 published in March, 2012, and ANSI/ASHRAE Addendum n to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2010 published in February, 2012).~~

ASHRAE STANDARD 193 is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Method of Test for Determining the Airtightness of HVAC Equipment," R2014 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 193-RA2014).

ASTM E2357 is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Test Method for determining air leakage Rate of air barrier assemblies" ~~2017~~ 2018 (ASTM E2357-~~17~~18).

AUTO REPAIR See Nonresidential Functional Area or Type of Use.

AUTOMATIC is capable of operating without human intervention.

BACK is the back side of the building as one faces the front façade from the outside (see Front). This designation is used on the Certificate of Compliance (CF-1R form) to indicate the orientation of fenestration (e.g., Back-West).

BATTERY SYSTEM, STATIONARY STORAGE. A rechargeable energy storage system consisting of electrochemical storage batteries, battery chargers, controls, and associated electrical equipment designed to provide electrical power to a building. The system is typically used to provide standby or emergency power, and uninterruptable power supply, load shedding, load sharing or similar capabilities.

BRITISH THERMAL UNIT (BTU) is the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of one pound of water one degree Fahrenheit.

BTU/H is the amount of heat in Btu that is removed or added during one hour. Used for measuring heating and cooling equipment output.

BUILDER is the general contractor responsible for construction.

BUILDING ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS are the California Building Energy Efficiency Standards as set forth in the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 6, also known as the California Energy Code.

BUILDING LOCATION DATA is the specific outdoor design temperatures shown in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 used in calculating heating and cooling loads for the particular location of the building.

BUILDING OWNER is the owner of the building or dwelling unit.

BUILDING PERMIT is an electrical, plumbing, mechanical, building, or other permit or approval, that is issued by an enforcement agency, and that authorizes any construction that is subject to Part 6.

BUILDING TYPES is the classification of buildings defined by the CBC and applicable to the requirements of the Building Energy Efficiency Standards.

CALIFORNIA ELECTRICAL CODE is the ~~2007~~ 2019 California Electrical Code.

CALIFORNIA ENERGY CODE See Building Energy Efficiency Standards.

CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION Is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

CALIFORNIA FLEXIBLE INSTALLATION (CFI) is a set of criteria that allows a PV system to be modeled under the performance method without providing more specific orientations and tilts. In order to meet the requirements of CFI, the PV system must be installed with an azimuth ranging from 150 to 270 degrees from true north, with all modules at the same tilt as the roof pitches between 0:12 and 7:12. Additionally, each system must also meet minimal shading criterion outlined in JA11.3~~.1~~.

CALIFORNIA PUBLIC UTILITIES COMMISSION (CPUC) RULE 21 is the CPUC rule that that describes the interconnection, operating and metering requirements for generation facilities to be connected to a utility's distribution system.

CBC is the ~~2007~~ 2019 California Building Code.

CEILING is the interior upper surface of a space separating it from an attic, plenum, indirectly or directly conditioned space or the roof assembly, which has a slope less than 60 degrees from horizontal.

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE is a document with information required by the Commission that is prepared by the Documentation Author that indicates whether the building includes measures that require field verification and diagnostic testing.

CERTIFICATE OF INSTALLATION is a document with information required by the Commission that is prepared by the builder or installer verifying that the measure was installed to meet the requirements of the Standards.

CERTIFICATE OF VERIFICATION is a document with information required by the Commission that is prepared by the HERS Rater to certify that measures requiring field verification and diagnostic testing comply with the requirements.

CERTIFICATION is certification by the manufacturer to the Commission, as specified the Appliance Efficiency Regulations, that the appliance complies with the applicable standard for that appliance. The term certification is also used in other ways in the standards. Many of the compliance forms are certificates, whereby installers, HERS testers and others certify that equipment was correctly installed and/or tested.

CERTIFIED as to a home energy rater, is having been found by a certified home energy rating provider to have successfully completed the requirements established by that home energy rating provider.

CIE 53 is the International Commission on Illumination (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage) document titled "Methods of Characterizing the Performance of Radiometers and Photometers," (CIE 053-1982).

COLOR RENDERING INDEX (CRI)~~. The ability of a light source to reflect the color of illuminated objects with fidelity relative to ideal or natural light sources of the same color temperature.~~ is a measure of the degree of color shift that objects undergo when illuminated by the lighting source as compared with the color of the same objects when illuminated by a reference source of comparable color temperature. CRI is calculated according to CIE 13.3.

CORRELATED COLOR TEMPERATURE (CCT) is the absolute temperature of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.~~. Description of color of light relative to the chromaticity of the radiative emission of heated black body and reported in temperature units of Kelvin according to CIE 15.~~

CODES, CFR is the ~~2014~~ Code of Federal Regulations.

CLTD is the Cooling Load Temperature Difference.

COMBINATION SPACE-HEATING AND WATER-HEATING APPLIANCE is an appliance that is designed to provide both space heating and water heating from a single primary energy source.

COMBINED HYDRONIC SPACE/WATER HEATING SYSTEM is a system which both domestic hot water and space heating is supplied from the same water heating equipment. Combined hydronic space heating may include both radiant floor systems and convective or fan coil systems.

COMPLIANCE APPROACH is any one of the allowable methods by which the design and construction of a building may be demonstrated to be in compliance with Part 6. The compliance approaches are the performance compliance approach and the prescriptive compliance approach. The requirements for each compliance approach are set forth in §100.0(e)2 of Part 6.

COMPLIANCE DOCUMENTS are any of the documentation specified in §10-103(a) utilized to demonstrate compliance with Part 6 (i.e. Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, and Certificate of Verification).

COMPLIANCE OPTION is a method or procedure for demonstrating compliance with Title 24, Part 6 and Part 11, Division 4.2 and 5.2 of the California Code of Regulations through modifications of approved calculation methods.

CONDITIONED FOOTPRINT is a projection of all conditioned space on all floors to a vertical plane. The conditioned footprint area may be equal to the first floor area, or it may be greater, if upper floors project over lower floors. One way to think of the conditioned footprint area is as the area of the largest conditioned floor in the building plus the conditioned floor area of any projections from other stories that extend beyond the outline of that largest floor.

CONSTRUCTION LAYERS are roof, wall and floor constructions which represent an assembly of layers. Some layers are homogeneous, such as gypsum board and plywood sheathing, while other layers are non-homogeneous such as the combination of wood framing and cavity insulation typical in many buildings.

CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER See Air Barrier.

CONTROLLED VENTILATION CRAWL SPACE (CVC) is a crawl space in a residential building where the side walls of the crawlspace are insulated rather than the floor above the crawlspace. A CVC has automatically controlled crawl space vents. Credit for a CVC is permitted for low-rise residential buildings that use the performance approach to compliance.

COOL ROOF RATING COUNCIL (CRRC) is a not-for-profit organization designated by the Commission as the Supervisory Entity with responsibility to rate and label the reflectance and emittance of roof products.

COOLING COIL AIRFLOW Is the air flow through the evaporator (indoor) coil of a direct expansion air conditioning unit in cooling mode. The air flow is expressed in cubic feet per minute (CFM) or liter per second (L/S) of standard air (standard air has a density of 0.075 lb/ft^3).

COOLING LOAD is the rate at which heat must be extracted from a space to maintain a desired room condition.

COOLING LOAD TEMPERATURE DIFFERENCE (CLTD) is an equivalent temperature difference used for calculating the instantaneous external cooling loads across a wall or roof. The cooling load is the CLTD x U-factor x Area.

COP See Coefficient of Performance in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

COURTYARD is an open space through one or more floor levels surrounded by walls within a building.

CRRC See Cool Roof Rating Council.

CUSTOM ENERGY BUDGET See Energy Budget.

DATA REGISTRY is a web service with a user interface and database maintained by a Registration Provider that complies with the applicable requirements in Reference Joint Appendix JA7, with guidance from the Data Registry Requirements Manual, and provides for registration of residential or nonresidential compliance documentation used for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

> **RESIDENTIAL DATA REGISTRY** is a data registry that is maintained by a HERS Provider that provides for registration when required by Part 6 of all residential compliance documentation and the nonresidential Certification of Verification.
>
> **NONRESIDENTIAL DATA REGISTRY** is a data registry that is maintained by the Registration Provider approved by the Commission that provides for registration, when required by Part 6, of all nonresidential documentation, excluding all Certificates of Acceptance recorded by an acceptance test technician certification provider (10-103.1 and 10-103.2). However, nonresidential data registries may not provide for registration of nonresidential Certificate of Verification.

DATA REGISTRY REQUIREMENTS MANUAL is a document that provides additional detailed guidance regarding the functional and technical aspects of the Data Registry requirements given in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

DEMISING WALL is a wall that is a demising partition.

DENSITY is the mass per unit volume of a construction material as documented in an ASHRAE handbook, a comparably reliable reference or manufacturer’s literature.

DEPLETABLE SOURCES is energy obtained from electricity purchased from a public utility, or energy obtained from burning coal, oil, natural gas, or liquefied petroleum gases.

DIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE is an enclosed space that is provided with wood heating, is provided with mechanical heating that has a capacity exceeding 10 Btu/(hr.×ft.^{2}), or is provided with mechanical cooling that has a capacity exceeding 5 Btu/(hr.×ft.^{2}), unless the space-conditioning system is designed and thermostatically controlled to maintain a process environment temperature less than 55°F or to maintain a process environment temperature greater than 90°F for the whole space that the system serves, or unless the space-conditioning system is designed and controlled to be incapable of operating at temperatures above 55°F or incapable of operating at temperatures below 90°F at design conditions.

DIVIDERS are wood, aluminum or vinyl glazing dividers including mullions, muntins, munnions and grilles. Dividers may truly divide lights, be between the panes, or be applied to the exterior or interior of the glazing.

DOCUMENTATION AUTHOR is a person who prepares a Title 24, Part 6 document that must subsequently be reviewed and signed by a responsible person in order to certify compliance with Part 6.

DOMINANT OCCUPANCY is the occupancy type in mixed occupancy buildings with the greatest percentage of total conditioned floor area.

DUCT LOSSES is heat transfer into or out of a space conditioning system duct through conduction or leakage.

ENTIRELY NEW OR REPLACEMENT DUCT SYSTEMS installed as part of an alteration of a dwelling unit's space conditioning system(s) shall be constructed of at least 75% new duct material and may include reused parts from the dwelling unit's existing duct system (e.g. registers, boots, air handler, coil, plenums, duct material, etc.) but only if the reused parts are accessible and they can be sealed to prevent leakage.

~~**DUV** is the closest distance from the chromaticity coordinate of the light source to the Planckian locus on the CIE (u', 2/3 v') coordinates with "+" sign for above and "-" sign for below the Planckian locus.~~

EDGE OF GLASS is the portion of fenestration glazing that is within two and one half inches of the spacer.

EER See Energy Efficiency Ratio in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

ELECTRIC HEATING is an electrically powered heating source, such as electric resistance, heat pumps with no auxiliary heat or with electric auxiliary heat, solar with electric back-up, etc.

ELECTRIC RESISTANCE HEATING is a heating system that converts electric energy directly into heat energy by passing a current through an electric resistance. Electric resistance heat is inherently less efficient than gas as a heating energy source because it must account for losses associated with generation from depletable fossil fuels and transmission to the building site.

ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS See Building Energy Efficiency Standards.

ENERGY STAR Start Time Test Method is the ENERGY STAR program document entitled “ENERGY STAR Program Requirements for Lamps Version 1.0 – Start Time Test Method – Final” (August-2013).

ENERGY STAR Ambient Temperature Life Test Method is the ENERGY STAR program document entitled “ENERGY STAR Program Requirements for Lamps Version 1.0 - Ambient Temperature Life Test Method – Final” (August-2013).

ENERGY STAR Elevated Temperature Light Output Ratio Test Method is the ENERGY STAR program document entitled “ENERGY STAR Program Requirements for Lamps Version 1.0 – Elevated Temperature Light Output Ratio Test Method – Final” (August-2013).

ENERGY STAR Elevated Temperature Life Test Method is the ENERGY STAR program document entitled “ENERGY STAR Program Requirements for Lamps Version 1.0 – Elevated Temperature Life Test Method – Final” (August-2013).

ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Lamps Noise Recommended Practice is the ENERGY STAR program document entitled, “ENERGY STAR Program Requirements for Lamps Version 1.0 – Noise Recommended Practice – Final” (August-2013).

EVAPORATIVE COOLER provides cooling to a building by either direct contact with water (direct evaporative cooler), no direct contact with water (indirect evaporative cooler), or a combination of direct and indirect cooling (indirect/direct evaporative cooler). The credit offered for evaporative coolers depends on building type and climate.

EXCEPTIONAL METHOD is a method for estimating the energy performance of building features that cannot be adequately modeled using the public domain computer programs and that is approved by the Executive Director.

EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR is the Executive Director of the Commission.

EXPOSED THERMAL MASS is mass that is directly exposed (uncovered) to the conditioned space of the building. Concrete floors that are covered by carpet are not considered exposed thermal mass.

> **CENTER OF GLASS U-FACTOR** is the U-factor for the glass portion only of vertical or horizontal fenestration and is measured at least two and one half inches from the frame. Center of glass U-factor does not consider the U-factor of the frame.
>
> **FAÇADE** is the contiguous exterior of a building surface, but not limited to fenestration products.
>
> > **SIDE FINS** are vertical shading elements mounted on either side of a glazed opening that can protect the glazing from lateral low angle sun penetration.
>
> **LOW-E COATING** is a low emissivity metallic coating applied to glazing in fenestration products. See Soft Coat and Hard Coat.
>
> (a) **HARD COAT** is a low emissivity metallic coating applied to the glass, which will be installed in a fenestration product, through a pyrolytic process (at or near the melting point of the glass so that it bonds with the surface layer of glass). Hard coatings are less susceptible to oxidation and scratching as compared to soft coats. Hard coatings generally do not have as low emissivity as soft coats.
>
> (b) **SOFT COAT** is a low emissivity metallic coating applied to glass, which will be installed in a fenestration product through a sputter process where molecules of metals such as stainless steel or titanium are sputtered onto the surface of glass. Soft coats generally have lower emissivity than hard coats.
>
> **OPERABLE** is fenestration that is designed to be opened or closed.
>
> **SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT, CENTER OF GLAZING (SHGCc)** is the SHGC for the center of glazing area.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT, TOTAL FENESTRATION PRODUCT (SHGC or SHGCT) is the SHGC for the total fenestration product.

U-FACTOR, CENTER OF GLAZING (Uc) is the U-Factor for the center of glazing area.

U-FACTOR, TOTAL FENESTRATION PRODUCT (U_t) is the U-Factor for the total fenestration product.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE, CENTER OF GLAZING (VTC) the VT for the center of glazing area.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE, TOTAL FENESTRATION PRODUCT (VT or VTt) is the VT for the total fenestration product.

WINDOW FILM is fenestration attachment products which consist of a flexible adhesive-backed polymer film which may be applied to the interior or exterior surface of an existing glazing system.

FIELD TECHNICIAN is a person who performs acceptance tests in accordance with the specifications in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA-7 and reports the results of the acceptance tests on the Certificate of Acceptance document, in accordance with the requirements of §10-103(a)4.

FOSSIL FUELS are fuels which are derived from natural gas, coal, oil and liquefied petroleum products. These are generally nonrenewable resources, although natural gas may also be produced by other means, such as biomass conversion.

FRAMED PARTITION OR ASSEMBLY is a partition or assembly constructed using separate structural members spaced not more than 32 inches on center.

FRAMING EFFECTS is the effect on the overall U-factor due to the type and amount of framing in walls, roofs/ceilings and floors. For compliance, fixed values for wood framing percentages are assumed when calculating U-factors.

FRAMING PERCENTAGE is the fraction of the surface of a partition that is framing as compared to that portion which is cavity.

FRONT is the primary entry side of the building (front facade) used as a reference in defining the orientation of the building or unit plan. The orientation of the front facade may not always be the same as that for the front door itself.

FUME HOOD SASH OBSTRUCTION SENSOR detects obstructions in the sash opening and prevents the automatic closing when obstructions are present.

GAP WIDTH is the distance between lites in multi-glazed systems. This is typically measured from inside surface to inside surface, though some manufacturers may report “overall” insulated glass (IG) width, which is measured from outside surface to outside surface.

GAS INFILLS are air, argon, krypton, CO_2, SF6, or a mixture of these gasses between the panes of glass in insulated glass units.

GEOTHERMAL HEAT PUMP See Ground Source Heat Pump.

GLAZING AREA See Fenestration Area in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

GRID HARMONIZATION STRATEGIES are measures that harmonize customer owned distributed energy resource assets with the grid to maximize self-utilization of PV array output, and limit grid exports to periods beneficial to the grid and the ratepayer.

GRILLES See Dividers.

GROUND FLOOR AREA is the slab-on-grade area of a slab-on-grade building and the conditioned footprint area of a raised floor building (for compliance with the low-rise residential standards).

GROUND SOURCE HEAT PUMP is a heat pump that uses the earth as a source of energy for heating and a sink for energy when cooling. Some systems pump water from an aquifer in the ground and return the water to the ground after transferring heat from or to the water. A few systems use refrigerant directly in a loop of piping buried in the ground. Those heat pumps that use either a water loop or pump water from an aquifer have efficiency test methods that are accepted by the Energy Commission. These efficiency values are certified to the Energy Commission by the manufacturer and are expressed in terms of heating Coefficient of Performance (COP) and cooling Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER).

HERS Is the California Home Energy Rating System as described in Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1670 et seq.

HERS PROVIDER is an organization approved by the Commission to ~~that~~ administer~~s~~ a home energy rating system as described in Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1670.

HERS PROVIDER DATA REGISTRY is a residential data registry maintained by an approved HERS provider.

HERS RATER is a person who has been trained, tested, and certified by a HERS Provider to perform the field verification and diagnostic testing required for demonstrating compliance with the Part 6, as described in Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1670 et seq.

~~**HOME ENERGY RATING SYSTEM (HERS) PROVIDER** See HERS Rater.~~

HOOD is a device designed to capture and contain cooking effluent including, grease, smoke, steam, heat, and vapor until it is exhausted through a duct or recirculating system. Hoods are categorized as Type 1 or Type 2:

> **TYPE I HOOD** is a hood used for collecting and removing convective heat, grease particulate, condensable vapor, and smoke. It includes listed grease filters, baffles, or extractors for removing the grease and a fire-suppression system. Type I hoods are installed over cooking appliances, such as ranges, fryers, griddles, broilers, and ovens, that produce smoke or grease-laden vapors. For Type I hoods, the following types of hoods are commonly available:
>
> > **WALL-MOUNTED CANOPY HOOD** is mounted against a wall above a single appliance or a line of appliances, or it may be free-standing with a vertical back panel extending from the rear of the appliance(s) to the hood. It typically extends beyond the front and sides of the appliance(s) on all open sides. The wall acts as a back panel, forcing replacement air to be drawn across the front and/or side(s) of the cooking appliance, thus increasing the

effectiveness of the hood to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operations.

SINGLE ISLAND CANOPY HOOD is placed over a single appliance or line of appliances. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front, rear, and sides of the appliance(s). A single island canopy is more susceptible to cross-drafts and requires a greater exhaust airflow than an equivalent sized wall-mounted canopy to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operations.

DOUBLE ISLAND CANOPY HOOD is placed over back-to-back appliances or lines of appliances. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front and the sides of the appliance(s). It may have a wall panel between the backs of the appliances.

BACKSHELF or PROXIMITY HOOD is a low-proximity hood, or a wall-mounted sidewall hood that:

(a) is positioned lower in height and depth than a canopy hood;

(b) is set back from the front of the appliance;

(c) is closed to the rear of the appliances by (a) a panel when the appliance is freestanding, or (b) a panel or wall when the appliance is wall mounted;~~,~~ and~~;~~

(d) is located above the cooking surface.

This style of hood can be constructed with partial end panels to increase its effectiveness in capturing the effluent generated by the cooking operations.

EYEBROW HOOD is mounted directly to the face or top of an appliance above the opening(s) or door(s) from which effluent is emitted, overhanging the front of the opening(s) to capture the effluent.

PASS-OVER HOOD is a back shelf hood constructed and installed low enough to allow food to be passed over the top.

TYPE II HOOD is a type of hood that collects and removes steam, heat, and products of combustion where grease or smoke is not present. It may or may not have grease filters or baffles and is not required to have a fire-suppression system.

HORIZONTAL GLAZING See ~~“~~Skylight in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.~~”~~

HOTEL/MOTEL is a building or buildings that has six or more guest rooms or a lobby serving six or more guest rooms, where the guest rooms are intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented, or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests, and all conditioned spaces within the same building envelope. Hotel/motel includes all conditioned spaces which are (1) on the same property as the hotel/motel, (2) served by the same central heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning system as the hotel/motel, and (3) integrally related to the functioning of the hotel/motel as such, including, but not limited to, exhibition facilities, meeting and conference facilities, food service facilities, lobbies, and laundries. Hotel/motel also includes the following:

A building of Occupancy Group R-1,

Vacation timeshare properties and hotel or motel buildings of Occupancy Group R-2, and

The following types of Occupancy Group R-3:

Congregate residences for transient use,

Boarding houses of more than 6 guests, and

Alcohol or drug abuse recovery homes of more than 6 guests.

HSPF See Heating Seasonal Performance Factor.

HYDRONIC COOLING SYSTEM is any cooling system which uses water or a water solution as a source of cooling or heat rejection, including chilled water systems (both air and water-cooled) as well as water-cooled or evaporatively cooled direct expansion systems, such as water source (water-to-air) heat pumps.

HYDRONIC SPACE HEATING SYSTEM is a system that uses water-heating equipment, such as a storage tank water heater or a boiler, to provide space heating. Hydronic space heating systems include both radiant floor systems and convective or fan coil systems. See Combined Hydronic Space/Water Heating System.

ANSI/IES ~~RP-16-17~~LS-1-20 is ~~the document coauthored by the~~an American National Standard~~s~~ ~~Institute and the~~ as authored by the Illuminating Engineering Society ~~of North America,~~ ~~Recommended Practice~~and titled "Nomenclature and Definitions for Illuminating Engineering." (ANSI/IES ~~RP-16-17~~LS-1-20).

IES LM-9 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Fluorescent Lamps.” (ANSI/IES LM-9-~~2009~~20)

IES LM-20 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled “Photometric Testing of Reflector-Type Lamps – Incandescent Lamps.” (ANSI/IES LM-20-~~13~~20)

IES LM-45 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Electrical and Photometric Measurements of General Service Incandescent Filament Lamps.” (ANSI/IES LM-45-~~09~~20)

IES LM-46 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Photometric Testing of Indoor Luminaires Using High Intensity Discharge or Incandescent Filament Lamps.” 2004. (ANSI/IES-LM-46-~~12~~20)

IES LM-51 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Electrical and Photometric Measurements of High Intensity Discharge Lamps.” (ANSI/IES LM-51-~~13~~20)

IES LM-66 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Single-Ended Compact Fluorescent Lamps.” (ANSI/IES LM66-~~11~~20)

IES LM-79~~-08~~ is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “~~IES~~ Approved Method: ~~for the~~Optical and Electrical ~~and Photometric~~ Measurement~~s~~ of Solid-State Lighting Products.” (ANSI/IES LM-79-19)

IES LM-80 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Measuring Luminous Flux and Color~~en~~ Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules~~LED Light Sources~~.” (ANSI/IES LM 80-~~1508~~20).

IES TM-21 is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Projecting Long Term Lumen, Photon, and Radiant Flux Maintenance of LED Light Sources.” (ANSI/IES TM-21-19~~1~~).

IG UNIT, See “Insulating Glass Unit.”

INDEPENDENT IDENTITY is having no financial interest in, and not advocating or recommending the use of any product or service as a means of gaining increased business with firms or persons specified in Section 1673(i) of the California Home Energy Rating System Program regulations (California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8). (Financial Interest is an ownership interest, debt agreement, or employer/employee relationship. Financial interest does not include ownership of less than 5 percent of the outstanding equity securities of a publicly traded corporation).

> ***NOTE:*** The definitions of "independent entity" and "financial interest," together with Title 20, Section 1673(i), prohibit conflicts of interest between HERS Providers and HERS Raters, or between Providers/Raters and builders/subcontractors.

INDIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE is enclosed space, including, but not limited to, unconditioned volume in atria, that (1) is not directly conditioned space; and (2) either (a) has a thermal transmittance area product (UA) to directly conditioned space exceeding that to the outdoors or to unconditioned space and does not have fixed vents or openings to the outdoors or to unconditioned space, or (b) is a space through which air from directly conditioned spaces is transferred at a rate exceeding three air changes per hour.

INDUSTRIAL EQUIPMENT is manufactured equipment used in industrial processes.

INFILTRATION CONTROLS are measures taken to control the infiltration of air. (Mandatory Infiltration control measures include weather-stripping, caulking, and sealing in and around all exterior joints and openings).

INSTALLER means the builder’s subcontractor or the person installing the equipment.

INSULATING GLASS UNIT is a self-contained unit, including the glazings (lites or panes of glass), spacer(s), films (if any), gas infills, and edge caulking, installed in fenestration products. It does not include the frame.

INSULATION is a material that limits heat transfer. Insulating material of the types and forms listed in Section 110.8(a) may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the insulation complies with the Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-13 of the California Code of Regulations. (Movable insulation is designed to cover windows and other glazed openings part of the time to reduce heat loss and heat gain.)

INTERIOR PARTITION is an interior wall or floor/ceiling that separates one area of conditioned space from another within the building envelope.

IPLV See Integrated Part Load Value.

ISO/IEC 17011 is the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission document titled “Conformity assessment – General requirements for accreditation bodies accrediting conformity assessment bodies.” (EN ISO/IEC 17011:~~2004~~2017).

ISO/IEC 17020 is the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission document titled “General criteria for the operation of various types of bodies performing inspection.” (EN ISO/IEC 17020:~~2004~~2012).

ISO/IEC 17025 is the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission document titled “General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories.” ~~2005~~ (~~ANS/~~ISO/IEC Standard 17025:~~2005~~2017).

ISOLATION DEVICE is a device that prevents the conditioning of a zone or group of zones in a building while other zones of the building are being conditioned.

KNEE WALL is a sidewall separating conditioned space from attic space under a pitched roof. Knee walls should be insulated as an exterior wall as specified by the chosen method of compliance.

LEFT SIDE is the left side of the building as one faces the front facade from the outside. This designation is used on the Certificate of Compliance and other compliance documentation.

Decorative Lamp is a lamp with a candle-like or globe shape envelope including shapes B, BA, C, CA, DC, G, and F as defined in ANSI C79.1-, and with at least 5 percent of its total flux radiated in the 110 deg – 180 deg zone of vertical angles, as measured from the nadir, when the lamp is oriented in a base up position.

Omnidirectional lamp is a general service replacement lamp with an ANSI standard base that emits the majority of light produced in an even distribution. Omnidirectional lamps shall have 80 percent of the luminous intensity measured values (candelas) vary by no more than 35 percent from the average of all measured values in the 0 deg to 130 deg zone. All measured values (candelas) in the 0 deg to 130 deg zone shall vary by no more than 60 percent from the average of all measured values in that zone. No less than 5 percent of total flux (zonal lumens) shall be emitted in the 130 deg to 180 deg zone. Omnidirectional lamps can be standard; having an ANSI standard lamp shape of A, BT, P, PS, S or T, or omnidirectional lamps can have a non-standard shape, such as a self-ballasted compact fluorescent that utilize a bare spiral.

LIQUID LINE is the refrigerant line that leads from the condenser to the evaporator in a split system air conditioner or heat pump. The refrigerant in this line is in a liquid state and is at an elevated temperature. This line should not be insulated.

LISTED is in accordance with Article 100 of the California Electrical Code.

LOW-GWP REFRIGERANT is a compound used as a heat transfer fluid or gas that is: (A) any compound or blend of compounds, with a GWP Value less than 150; and (B) U.S. EPA Significant New Alternatives Policy (SNAP)-approved; and (C) not an ozone depleting substance as defined in Title 40 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 82, §82.3 (as amended March 10, 2009).

LOW-RISE ENCLOSED SPACE is an enclosed space located in a building with 3 or fewer stories.

LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDING is a building, other than a hotel/motel that is Occupancy Group:

R-2, multifamily, with three stories or less; or

R-3, single family; or

U-building, located on a residential site.

LOW-SLOPED ROOF is a roof that has a ratio of rise to run of 2:12 or less.

LPG is liquefied petroleum gas. Propane is one type of LPG.

MAKEUP AIR is outdoor air deliberately brought into the building from the outside and supplied to the vicinity of an exhaust hood to replace air, vapor, and contaminants being exhausted. Makeup air is generally filtered and fan-forced, and it may be heated or cooled depending on the requirements of the application. Makeup air may be delivered through outlets integral to the exhaust hood or through outlets in the same room. (see Stds.)

MANDATORY MEASURES CHECKLIST is a form used by the building plan checker and field inspector to verify compliance of the building with the prescribed list of mandatory features, equipment efficiencies and product certification requirements. The documentation author indicates compliance by initialing, checking, or marking N/A (for features not applicable) in the boxes or spaces provided for the designer.

MANUAL is capable of being operated by personal intervention.

MANUFACTURED DEVICE is any heating, cooling, ventilation, lighting, water heating, refrigeration, cooking, plumbing fitting, insulation, door, fenestration product, or any other appliance, device, equipment, or system subject to §110.0 through §110.9 of Part 6.

MEDICAL AND CLINICAL CARE See Nonresidential Functional Area or Type of Use.

MIXED OCCUPANCY BUILDING is a building designed and constructed for more than one type of occupancy, such as a three story building with ground floor retail and second and third floor residential apartments.

MODEL is a single floor plan of a dwelling unit design. To be considered the same model; dwelling units shall be in the same subdivision or multifamily housing development and have the same energy designs and features, including the same floor area and volume. For multifamily buildings, variations in the exterior surface areas caused by the location of dwelling units within the building do not cause dwelling units to be considered different models.

> ***NOTE:*** For purposes of establishing HERS sampling groups, variations in the basic floor plan layout, energy design, compliance features, zone floor area, or zone volume, that do not change the HERS features to be tested, the heating or cooling capacity of the HVAC unit(s), or the number of HVAC units specified for each dwelling unit, shall not cause dwelling units to be considered different models.

MOVABLE SHADING DEVICE See ~~“~~Operable Shading Device in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.~~”~~

MULLION is a vertical framing member separating adjoining window or door sections. See Dividers.

MULTIFAMILY BUILDING is any of the following:

A building of Occupancy Group R-2, other than a hotel/motel building or timeshare property;

A building of Occupancy Group R-3 that is a nontransient congregate residence, other than boarding houses of more than 6 guests and alcohol or drug abuse recovery homes of more than 6 guests; or

A building of Occupancy Group R-4.

MULTIFAMILY DWELLING UNIT is a dwelling unit of occupancy type R, as defined by the CBC, sharing a common wall and/or ceiling/floor with at least one other dwelling unit.

MULTIPLE ZONE is a supply fan (and optionally a return fan) with heating and/or cooling heat exchangers (e.g. DX coil, chilled water coil, hot water coil, furnace, electric heater) that serves more than one thermostatic zone. Zones are thermostatically controlled by features including but not limited to variable volume, reheat, recool and concurrent operation of another system.

MUNTINS See Dividers.

NEMA LE 7~~**-2015**~~ is the National Electrical Manufacturers Association document titled “Recessed Luminaires intended for Contact with Expanding Polyurethane Foam Insulation,” ~~2015~~ (NEMA LE 7-2015).

NEMA SSL 7A is the National Electrical Manufacturers Association document titled “Phase Cut Dimming for Solid State Lighting: Basic Compatibility,” 2015 (NEMA SSL 7A-2015).

NFRC is the National Fenestration Rating Council. This is a national organization of fenestration product manufacturers, glazing manufacturers, manufacturers of related materials, utilities, state energy offices, laboratories, home builders, specifiers (architects), and public interest groups.

> ***NOTE*:** This organization is designated by the Commission as the Supervisory Entity, which is responsible for rating the U-factors and solar heat gain coefficients of manufactured fenestration products (i.e., windows, skylights, glazed doors) that must be used in compliance calculations. See also Fenestration Area and Fenestration Product.

NONDEPLETABLE SOURCES is defined as energy that is not obtained from depletable sources. Also referred to as renewable energy, including solar and wind power. See Energy Obtained from Nondepletable Sources.

NONDUCTED SYSTEM Is an air conditioner or heat pump that is designed to be permanently installed equipment and directly heats or cools air within the conditioned space using one or more indoor coils that are mounted on room walls and/or ceilings. The unit may be of a modular design that allows for combining multiple outdoor coils and compressors to create one overall system.

NSHP GUIDEBOOK is the New Solar Homes Partnership Guidebook, currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

OUTDOOR SALES CANOPY is a canopy specifically to cover and protect an outdoor sales area.

OUTSIDE AIR See Outdoor Air.

PACKAGED AIR CONDITIONER OR HEAT PUMP is an air conditioner or heat pump that combines both the condenser and air handling capabilities in a single enclosure or package*.*

PARALLEL FAN-POWERED TERMINAL UNIT is a terminal unit that combines a VAV damper in parallel with a fan that only runs when the terminal unit is providing heating to the space.

PARTY PARTITION is a wall, floor, or ceiling that separates the conditioned spaces of two different tenants.

PERM is equal to 1 grain of water vapor transmitted per 1 square foot per hour per inch of mercury pressure difference.

PLENUM is an air compartment or chamber, including uninhabited crawl space, areas above a ceiling or below a floor, including air spaces below raised floors of computer/data processing centers, or attic spaces, to which one or more ducts are connected and which forms part of either the supply-air, return-air or exhaust air system, other than the occupied space being conditioned.

PROPOSED DESIGN BUILDING is a proposed building being modeled using rules described in the Alternative Calculation Method Manual. In order for a building to comply with the standards, the proposed building energy use must be less than or equal to the Standard Design Building energy use and meet the mandatory requirements in the Title 24 Building Energy Efficiency Standards.

PUBLIC ADVISER is the Public Adviser of the Commission.

REAR See Back.

RECORD DRAWINGS are drawings that document the as installed location and performance data on all lighting and space conditioning system components, devices, appliances and equipment, including but not limited to wiring sequences, control sequences, duct and pipe distribution system layout and sizes, spa*c*e conditioning system terminal device layout and air flow rates, hydronic system and flow rates, and connections for the space conditioning system. Record drawings are sometimes called “as built” drawings.

RECOVERY EFFICIENCY is one measure of the efficiency of water heaters. It is required for water heating energy calculations for some types of water heaters. It is a measure of the percentage of heat from combustion of gas or oil which is transferred to the water. For non-storage type water heaters, the recovery efficiency is really a thermal efficiency.

REFERENCE COMPUTER PROGRAM is the reference method against which other methods are compared. For the Nonresidential Standards, the reference computer program is DOE 2.1E. For the low-rise Residential Standards the reference computer program is CALRES.

REFERENCE JOINT APPENDICES Are the Reference Joint Appendices published by the Commission.

REFERENCE NONRESIDENTIAL APPENDICES Are the Nonresidential Appendices published by the Commission.

REFERENCE RESIDENTIAL APPENDICES Are the Residential Appendices published by the Commission.

REFRIGERANT CHARGE is to the amount of refrigerant that is installed or "charged" into an air conditioner or heat pump. The refrigerant is the working fluid. It is compressed and becomes a liquid as it enters the condenser. The hot liquid is cooled in the condenser and flows to the evaporator where it released through the expansion valve. When the pressure is released, the refrigerant expands into a gas and cools. Air is passed over the evaporator to provide the space cooling. When an air conditioner or heat pump has too much refrigerant (overcharged) the compressor may be damaged. When an air conditioner has too little refrigerant (undercharged), the efficiency of the unit is reduced. A thermostatic expansion valve (TXV) can mitigate the impact of improper refrigerant charge.

REGISTERED DOCUMENT means the document has been submitted to a residential or nonresidential data registry for retention, and the data registry has assigned a unique registration number to the document.

REGISTRATION PROVIDER is an organization that administers a data registry service that conforms to the requirements of Reference Joint Appendix JA-7.

RIGHT SIDE is the right side of the building as one faces the front facade from the outside (see Front). This designation is used to indicate the orientation of fenestration and other surfaces, especially in model homes that are constructed in multiple orientations.

R-VALUE is the measure of the thermal resistance of insulation or any material or building component expressed in (ft^2-hr °F)/Btu.

SASH ZONE PRESENCE SENSOR is an occupancy sensor that detects people in the area near the fume hood sash for automatic closure controls.

SC See Shading Coefficient in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

SHOWER HEAD is a fixture for directing the spray of water in a shower. A shower head may incorporate one or more sprays, nozzles or openings. All components that are supplied standard together and function from one inlet (i.e., after the mixing valve) form a single shower head.

SINGLE FAMILY BUILDING is any of the following:

A residential building of Occupancy Group R-3 with two or less dwelling units;

A building of Occupancy Group R-3, other than a multifamily building or hotel/motel building;

A townhouse;

A building of Occupancy Group R-3.1; or

A building of Occupancy Group U when located on a residential site.

SINGLE ZONE is an HVAC system with a supply fan (and optionally a return fan) and heating and/or cooling heat exchangers (e.g. DX coil, chilled water coil, hot water coil, furnace, electric heater) that serves a single thermostatic zone. This system may or may not be constant volume.

SLAB-ON-GRADE is an exterior concrete floor in direct contact with the earth below the building.

SOLAR REFLECTANCE See Reflectance in Section 100.1 of Title 24, Part 6.

SPACER, ALUMINUM is a metal channel that is used either against the glass (sealed along the outside edge of the insulated glass unit), or separated from the glass by one or more beads of caulk, which is used to separate panes of glass in an insulated glass unit.

SPACER, INSULATING is a non-metallic, relatively non-conductive material, usually of rubber compounds, that is used to separate panes of glass in an insulated glass unit.

SPACER, OTHER is a wood, fiberglass, or composite material that is used as a spacer between panes of glass in insulated glass units.

SPACER, SQUIGGLE is a flexible material, usually butyl, formed around a thin corrugated aluminum strip that is used as a spacer in insulated glass units.

SPECIFIC HEAT is the quantity of heat that must be added to a unit mass of a material to increase its temperature by one degree. Typical units are Btu/°F-lb.

SPLIT SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONER OR HEAT PUMP is an air conditioner or heat pump that has physically separate condenser and air handling units that work together as a single cooling system.

STANDARDS See Building Energy Efficiency Standards.

STANDBY LOSS, BTU/HR is the heat lost per hour from the stored water above room temperature. It is one of the measures of efficiency of water heaters required for water heating energy calculations for some types of water heaters. This standby loss is expressed as Btu/hr.

STANDBY LOSS, PERCENT is the ratio of heat lost per hour to the heat content of the stored water above room temperature. It is one of the measures of efficiency of water heaters required for water heating energy calculations for some types of water heaters. Standby loss is expressed as a percentage.

STORAGE, COOL is a storage area within a refrigerated warehouse where space temperatures are maintained between 32° F and 55° F.

SUBORDINATE OCCUPANCY is any occupancy type, in mixed occupancy buildings, that is not the dominant occupancy. See Dominant Occupancy, Mixed Occupancy.

SUCTION LINE is the refrigerant line that leads from the evaporator to the condenser in a split system air conditioner or heat pump. This line is insulated since it carries refrigerant at a low temperature.

SUSPENDED FILMS are low-e coated plastic films stretched between the elements of the spacers between panes of glazing; acts as a reflector to slow the loss of heat from the interior to the exterior.

SYSTEM is a combination of equipment, controls, accessories, interconnecting means, or terminal elements by which energy is transformed to perform a specific function, such as space conditioning, service water heating, or lighting.

TDV ENERGY See Time Dependent Valuation (TDV) Energy.

THERMAL BREAK WINDOW FRAME is metal fenestration frames that are not solid metal from the inside to the outside, but are separated in the middle by a material, usually urethane, with a lower conductivity.

THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY is the quantity of heat that will flow through a unit area of the material per hour when the temperature difference through the material is one degree.

THERMAL EMITTANCE See Emittance, Thermal.

TITLE 24 is all of the building standards and associated administrative regulations published in Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations. The Building Energy Efficiency Standards are contained in Part 6. Part 1 contains the administrative regulations for the building standards.

U-FACTOR is the overall coefficient of thermal transmittance of a fenestration, wall, floor, or roof/ceiling component, in Btu/(hr × ft² × ºF), including air film resistance at both surfaces.

U-FACTOR, CENTER OF GLAZING (Uc) is the U-factor for the center of glazing area.

U-FACTOR, TOTAL FENESTRATION PRODUCT (Ut) is the U-factor for the total fenestration product.

UIMC See Unit Interior Mass Capacity.

UL 1574 is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Track Lighting Systems,” ~~2000~~2016.

UL 1598 is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Luminaires,” ~~2012~~2020.

UL 181 is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors,” ~~1996~~2017.

UL 181A is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Closure Systems for Use With Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors,” ~~1994~~2017.

UL 181B is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Closure Systems for Use With Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors,” ~~1995~~2017.

UL 723 is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials,” ~~1996~~2018.

UL 2108 is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Low Voltage Lighting Systems,” ~~2008~~2019.

UL DATA ACCEPTANCE PROGRAM (DAP) is an Underwriters Laboratory program that utilizes work conducted by a client as well as third-party test facilities in accordance with national and international accreditation criteria to facilitate the conduct of investigations of products. Among the types UL uses are Witnessed Test Data Program (WTDP) where UL witnesses the tests being conducted, Client Test Data Program (CTDP) which is where the client conducts the test and submits the data for UL review, and Third Party Test Data Program (TPTDP) where testing is conducted by another testing organization for clients and submitted to UL for review.

U-VALUE See U-factor.

VAPOR RETARDER CLASS is a measure of the ability of a material or assembly to limit the amount of moisture that passes through the material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method with Procedure A of ASTM E96 as follows:

Class I: 0.1 perm or less

Class II: 0.1 < perm < 1.0 perm

Class III: 1.0 < perm < 10 perm (see Stds.)

VENTILATION AIR is that portion of supply air which comes from outside plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space. See also Outside Air.

VINYL WINDOW FRAME is a fenestration frame constructed with a polyvinyl chloride (PVC) which has a lower conductivity than metal and a similar conductivity to wood.

VISUAL QUALITY STANDARD FOR APPLIED WINDOW FILM is an International Window Film Association document titled "Visual Quality Standard for Applied Window Film," 2015.

WEATHERSTRIPPING is a specially designed strip, seal or gasket attached to doors and windows to prevent infiltration and exfiltration through cracks around the openings. Weatherstripping is one of the mandatory requirements for all new residential construction. See Infiltration, Exfiltration.

WEIGHTED AVERAGING is an arithmetic technique for determining an average of differing values for the members of a set by weighting each value by the extent to which the value occurs. In some cases when two or more types of a building feature, material or construction assembly occur in a building, a weighted average of the different types may be sufficiently accurate to represent the energy impact of each type considered separately.

WEST-FACING See Orientation.

WINDOW TYPE is a window assembly having a specific solar heat gain coefficient, relative solar heat gain, and U-factor.

ZONAL CONTROL is the practice of dividing a residence into separately controlled HVAC zones. This may be done by installing multiple HVAC systems that condition a specific part of the building, or by installing one HVAC system with a specially designed distribution system that permits zonal control. The Energy Commission has approved an alternative calculation method for analyzing the energy impact of zonally controlled space heating and cooling systems. To qualify for compliance credit for zonal control, specific eligibility criteria specified in the Residential ACM Manual must be met.

Joint Appendix JA2

Appendix JA2 – Reference Weather/Climate Data

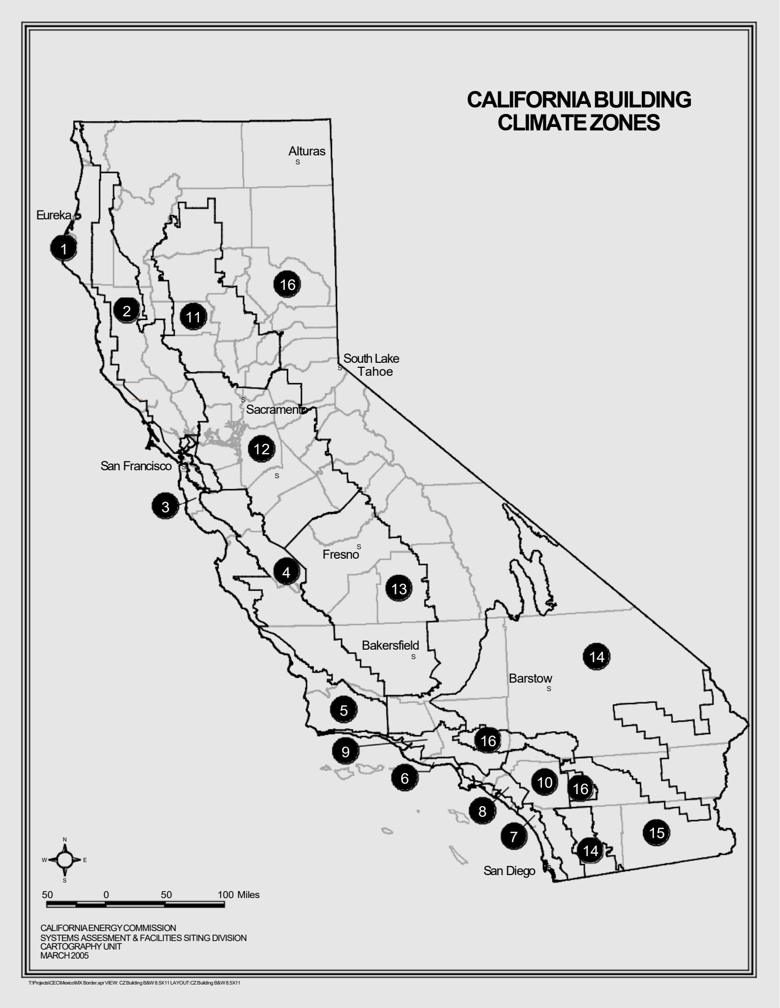


Figure2-1 – Climate Zone Map

JA2.1 Weather Data - General

All energy calculations used for compliance with the Standards must use the Commission's sixteen (16) official hourly weather files ~~or modifications of these files adapted for the design day conditions in Table 2-3. The modified weather files make the HVAC sizing and energy calculations more realistic for energy compliance simulations.~~ These files are available in electronic form from the Commission in ~~CSV (Comma Delimited File) format, TMY2 (Typical Meteorological Year) dataset and~~ EPW (EnergyPlus), BINM, and FIN4 format.

Each weather file contains data on a variety of ambient conditions such as:

(a) Dry bulb temperature

(b) Humidity (Wet bulb or dewpoint temperature)

(c) Wind speed and direction

(d) Direct normal solar radiation

(e) Diffuse horizontal solar radiation

(f) Global horizontal solar radiation

(g) Pressure

(h) Rain fall

Table 2-1 –California Standard Climate Zone Summary

Note: The alternative weather files modified for local design conditions use the specific latitude, longitude and elevation of the selected city.

Climate Zone	City	Latitude	Longitude	Elevation (ft)
1	Arcata	41.0	124.1	203
2	Santa Rosa	38.5	122.8	125
3	Oakland	37.7	122.2	6
4	San Jose-Reid	37.3	121.8	135
5	Santa Maria	34.9	120.4	253
6	Torrance	33.8	118.3	88
7	San Diego-Lindbergh	32.7	117.2	13
8	Fullerton	33.9	118.0	95
9	Burbank-Glendale	34.2	118.3	741
10	Riverside	33.9	117.4	840
11	Red Bluff	40.1	122.2	348
12	Sacramento	38.5	121.5	16
13	Fresno	36.8	119.7	335
14	Palmdale	34.6	118.0	2523
15	Palm Springs-Intl	33.8	116.5	475
16	Blue Canyon	39.2	120.7	5279

JA2.1.1 Counties and Cities with Climate Zone Designations

The climate zone applicable to a building project is determined based on its physical location as it relates to the determinations of climate regions found in the Commission publication *California Climate Zone Descriptions*, which contains detailed survey definitions of the 16 climate zones. The Energy Commission publishes an online Climate Zone Search Tool to assist in providing this determination, which is made available online at:

https://www.energy.ca.gov/programs-and-topics/programs/building-energy-efficiency-standards/climate-zone-tool-maps-and.

Where a ZIP code contains more than one climate region, local jurisdictions may, at their discretion, designate a single climate zone within the ZIP code as applying to the entire ZIP code. ~~The Executive Director will publish a list of California cities, ZIP codes, and counties with climate zone designations for each ZIP code as an aid to local officials. New ZIP codes listing approved by the Executive Director will be published as addenda to this list, and may consist of additional rows or columns to existing tables.~~

JA2.2 California Design Location Data

The data contained in the following table was obtained through a joint effort by the Southern California Chapter and the Golden Gate Chapter of ASHRAE. It is reprinted here with the written permission of Southern California Chapter ASHRAE, Inc. The values for 1.0 percent drybulb and 1.0 percent mean coincident wetbulb (MCWB) are interpolated.[1]

The data in Table 2-3 is developed from ~~A~~a full listing of design location data for California is contained in the ASHRAE publication *SPCDX, Climate Data for Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii, and Nevada* (ISBN 200021, May 1982) and *Supplement to Climatic Data for Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii, Nevada* (ISBN 20002956, November 1994). The publication may be ordered from:

Order Desk
Building News
10801 National Blvd.
Los Angeles, CA 90064
(888) 264-7483 or (310) 474-7771
http://www.bnibooks.com

---

[1] The interpolation formula is 2.0%value + 0.6667 (0.5%Value – 2.0% value + 0.5).

Table 2-3 – Design Day Data for California Cities

City				Cooling											Heating			
				0.10%		0.50%		1.00%		2.00%								
	Latitude	Elevation (ft)	Longitude	DB	MCWB	DB	MCWB	DB	MCWB	DB	MCWB	Design Wetbulb 0.1%	Design Wetbulb 0.5%	Outdoor Daily Range	Winter Median of Extremes	Design Drybulb (0.2%)	Design Drybulb (0.6%)	HDD*
Adelanto	34.6	2865	117.4	105	67	101	65	100	64	97	62	70	68	39	14	24	27	1654
Adin RS	41.2	4195	121	96	61	92	60	91	60	88	59	65	63	43	-7	-2	4	-
Agoura Hills	34.2	700	118.8	103	70	96	68	94	68	90	66	73	71	29	27	31	34	-
Alameda NAS	37.8	15	122.3	88	65	82	64	80	64	76	62	66	64	21	35	38	40	2507
Alamo	37.9	410	122.9	102	69	97	68	96	68	92	66	72	70	30	23	28	31	-
Albany	37.9	40	122.3	88	65	83	64	81	64	77	62	66	64	16	30	35	38	-
Alderpoint	40.2	460	123.6	100	69	95	67	94	67	90	65	70	68	39	21	27	30	3424
Alhambra	34	483	118.1	100	71	96	70	94	70	90	68	73	71	25	30	35	37	-
Aliso Viejo	33.6	50	117.7	91	69	83	68	81	68	76	66	71	69	18	30	33	36	-
Almaden AFS	37.2	3470	121.9	95	62	90	60	89	60	85	59	64	62	20	20	25	29	4468
Alondra Park	33.9	50	118.3	91	69	86	68	85	68	81	66	71	69	17	35	40	42	-
Alpine	32.8	1735	116.8	99	69	95	68	94	68	91	67	72	70	35	27	32	35	-
Alta Sierra	35.7	6500	118.6	87	62	84	61	83	61	80	59	65	63	32	-4	1	8	2428
Altadena	34.2	1200	118.1	99	68	94	67	92	67	88	66	72	70	31	32	37	39	1920
Alturas RS	41.5	4400	120.6	99	62	96	61	95	61	91	59	65	63	43	-10	-4	0	6895
Alum Rock	37.4	70	121.8	95	68	90	66	88	66	84	64	70	68	22	28	33	36	-
American Canyon	37.6	85	122.3	93	67	90	66	88	66	84	64	70	68	23	28	33	36	-
Anaheim	33.8	158	117.9	99	69	92	68	90	68	85	67	73	71	26	32	37	39	-

Anderson	40.5	430	122.3	107	71	103	70	101	70	97	68	72	70	30	26	31	34	-
Angwin	38.6	1815	122.4	98	66	93	64	92	64	88	62	69	66	33	25	30	33	-
Antioch	38	60	121.8	102	70	97	68	95	68	91	66	70	69	34	22	28	31	2627
Apple Valley	34.5	2935	117.2	105	66	101	65	100	65	97	64	70	68	38	14	21	25	-
Aptos	37	500	121.9	94	67	88	66	87	65	83	63	69	67	30	27	32	35	-
Arcadia	34.2	475	118	100	69	96	68	95	68	91	67	73	71	30	31	36	38	-
Arcata	41	218	124.1	75	61	69	59	68	59	65	58	61	60	11	28	31	33	5029
Arden	38.5	80	121.4	104	70	100	69	98	69	94	67	73	71	35	28	33	35	-
Arroyo Grande	35.1	105	120.6	92	66	86	64	84	64	79	62	67	65	18	28	32	35	-
Artesia	33.8	50	118.1	99	71	91	70	89	70	85	68	73	71	23	33	37	40	-
Arvin	35.2	445	118.8	106	71	102	69	101	69	98	68	74	72	30	26	29	32	-
Ash Mtn	36.5	1708	118.8	105	69	101	68	100	68	97	66	72	70	30	25	31	33	2703
Ashland	37.7	45	122.1	92	66	86	65	85	64	81	62	68	66	24	26	31	34	977
Atascadero	35.5	837	120.7	94	66	89	67	88	67	84	65	70	68	42	25	29	32	-
Atherton	37.5	50	122.2	90	66	84	64	82	64	78	62	68	66	27	23	29	33	-
Atwater	37.3	150	120.6	102	72	99	70	98	69	94	67	74	72	38	24	30	34	-
Auberry	37.1	2140	119.5	102	69	98	67	97	66	95	64	71	69	36	21	27	30	3313
Auburn	38.9	1292	121.1	103	69	100	67	99	67	95	66	72	69	33	25	30	33	3089
Avalon	33.4	25	118.3	83	64	75	62	73	62	69	60	68	66	11	37	41	44	2204
Avenal	36	550	120.1	103	70	98	70	97	70	93	69	73	72	34	23	28	31	-
Avocado Heights	34.2	550	118	101	69	97	68	95	68	91	68	74	72	30	28	32	35	741
Azusa	34.1	605	118.2	101	70	97	69	95	69	91	68	74	72	36	31	36	38	-

Baker	35.3	940	116.1	115	73	112	72	111	72	108	70	77	75	29	23	28	31	-
Bakersfield AP	35.4	475	119.1	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	34	26	31	35	2185
Balch PH	36.9	1720	116.0	100	67	97	66	96	66	93	64	71	69	26	26	31	34	-
Baldwin Park	34	394	118	100	69	96	69	94	69	90	68	73	72	32	31	36	38	-
Banning	33.9	2349	116.9	104	69	100	68	99	68	96	67	73	71	34	20	26	30	-
Barrett Dam	32.7	1623	116.7	103	69	97	68	96	68	92	67	73	71	35	22	26	28	2656
Barstow	34.9	2162	117	107	69	104	69	103	69	100	67	74	72	35	16	23	27	2580
Baywood-Los Osos	35.3	100	-	88	65	82	64	80	64	76	62	67	65	14	31	36	38	-
Beale AFB	39.1	113	121.4	105	71	102	70	101	70	97	68	74	72	34	25	28	30	2835
Beaumont	33.9	2605	117	103	68	99	67	98	67	95	66	72	70	38	22	27	30	2628
Bell	33.9	143	118.2	97	70	91	69	89	69	85	67	72	70	22	33	38	41	-
Bell Gardens	33.9	160	118.2	97	70	91	69	87	67	85	67	72	70	22	32	37	40	-
Bellflower	33.8	73	118.1	98	70	91	69	89	69	85	67	72	70	21	32	37	40	-
Belmont	37.5	33	122.3	90	66	84	64	82	64	78	62	68	66	24	29	34	36	-
Ben Lomond	37.1	450	122.1	92	67	85	66	83	65	79	63	69	67	30	25	30	33	-
Benicia	38.1	55	122.1	99	69	93	67	91	67	87	65	70	68	30	28	33	36	
Berkeley	37.9	345	122.3	90	64	83	63	81	63	76	61	66	64	16	33	37	40	2950
Berryessa Lake	38.6	480	122.1	102	70	98	69	96	69	92	67	72	70	35	26	31	34	-
Beverly Hills	34.1	268	118.2	94	69	88	68	87	68	83	66	71	69	20	39	43	46	-
Big Bar RS	40.8	1260	121.8	102	68	98	67	97	67	93	65	70	68	46	19	25	28	-
Big Bear Lake	34.2	6745	116.9	87	59	83	58	82	58	79	56	64	62	32	-3	3	7	6850
Bishop AP	37.4	4108	118.4	103	61	100	60	99	60	97	58	65	63	40	5	12	16	4313
Blackhawk	37.7	10	121.9	88	65	82	64	80	64	76	62	66	64	21	35	38	40	977

Blackwells Corner	35.6	644	119.9	99	68	94	66	93	66	89	65	71	69	31	23	28	32	-
Bloomington	34	980	117.4	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	69	75	73	34	30	35	38	-
Blue Canyon AP	39.3	5280	120.7	88	60	85	59	84	59	81	57	64	62	20	13	20	24	5704
Blythe AP	33.6	395	114.7	115	74	112	73	111	73	108	71	80	78	27	28	33	36	1219
Blythe CO	33.6	268	114.6	115	74	112	73	111	73	108	71	80	78	27	24	29	32	1312
Boca	39.4	5575	120.1	92	58	89	57	88	57	84	55	62	60	46	-18	-13	-10	8340
Bodie	38.2	8370	119	83	50	80	49	79	49	76	48	55	53	42	-21	-16	-13	-
Bonadella Ranchos – Madera Rancho	36.8	270	119.9	105	72	101	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	40		29	32	1273
Bonita	32.7	105	117	91	69	82	67	81	66	78	64	70	68	20	28	32	44	1864
Boron AFS	35.1	3015	117.6	106	70	103	69	102	69	98	68	73	71	35	18	23	26	3000
Borrego Desert PK	33.2	805	116.4	112	76	107	74	105	74	101	72	79	77	36	25	30	33	-
Bostonia	32.8	600	116.9	96	70	91	69	88	69	81	67	72	70	30	29	34	36	-
Boulder Creek	37.2	493	122.1	92	67	85	65	83	65	79	63	69	67	30	25	30	33	1120
Bowman Dam	39.4	5347	120.7	89	59	86	57	85	57	82	55	63	60	26	9	17	22	5964
Boyes Hot Sprgs	38.2	300	122.5	100	70	95	69	93	69	89	67	72	70	40	22	28	31	1289
Brannan Island	38.1	30	121.7	100	69	95	68	93	68	89	67	72	70	10	24	28	31	-
Brawley 2 SW	33	-100	115.6	113	74	110	73	109	73	105	73	81	79	32	25	30	33	1204
Brea Dam	33.9	275	117.9	100	69	94	68	92	68	86	66	73	71	29	30	34	37	-
Brentwood	37.9	71	121.7	102	70	97	68	95	67	89	65	71	68	34	27	32	35	-
Bridgeport	38.2	6470	119.2	89	56	86	54	85	54	82	53	60	57	41	-20	-15	-12	-
Broderick-Bryte	38.6	20	121.5	104	71	100	69	98	69	94	67	72	71	36	25	31	35	-
Brooks Ranch	38.8	294	122.2	104	71	99	70	97	70	93	68	73	71	35	19	25	28	2968

Buena Park	33.9	75	118	98	69	92	68	90	68	85	67	72	70	25	31	35	38	-
Burbank AP	34.2	699	118.4	101	70	96	68	94	68	90	67	72	70	28	29	34	36	1701
Burbank Vly Pump	34.2	655	118.4	101	69	96	68	94	68	90	66	72	70	28	29	34	36	1678
Burlingame	37.6	10	122.4	88	67	82	64	80	64	76	63	68	65	20	30	35	37	-
Burney	40.9	3127	121.7	95	64	92	63	91	63	88	61	67	65	42	0	5	12	6404
Butler Valley (Korbel)	40.7	420	123.9	91	66	86	64	85	64	81	62	67	65	22	20	26	29	-
Buttonwillow	35.4	269	119.5	103	71	99	70	98	70	95	68	74	72	36	20	26	29	2621
Cabrillo NM	32.7	410	117.2	89	69	84	68	83	68	80	67	71	69	12	39	43	45	-
Cachuma Lake	34.6	781	120	97	69	92	67	91	67	87	65	70	68	19	26	31	34	-
Calabasas	34.2	1100	118.6	102	71	98	70	97	70	93	69	73	71	26	26	30	33	2348
Calaveras Big Trees	38.3	4696	120.3	92	61	88	60	87	60	84	58	64	62	33	11	18	23	5848
Calexico	32.7	12	115.5	114	74	110	73	109	73	106	71	81	79	28	26	31	34	-
California City	35.1	2400	118	107	69	104	68	103	68	99	66	72	70	33	10	17	22	2572
Callahan	41.3	3185	122.8	97	63	93	62	92	62	88	60	66	64	35	7	15	20	-
Calwa	36.8	330	119.8	105	73	101	71	100	70	97	68	75	73	34	23	27	29	-
Camarillo	34.2	147	119.2	91	69	84	68	82	68	78	67	71	69	22	28	32	35	
Cambria AFS	35.5	690	121.1	78	62	72	61	70	61	66	59	64	62	16	30	35	38	3646
Cameron Park	38.6	1800	121	101	67	98	66	97	66	93	65	70	68	42	20	26	29	2235
Camp Pardee	38.2	658	120.9	106	71	103	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	36	27	32	35	2812
Camp Pendleton	33.4	50	117.4	88	69	85	68	84	68	80	67	71	69	12	34	38	40	-
Camp Roberts	35.8	765	120.8	106	72	101	71	99	71	95	69	74	72	45	16	24	27	2890
Campbell	37.3	195	121.8	93	69	88	66	87	66	83	65	71	68	30	28	33	36	-
Campo	32.6	2630	116.5	101	67	95	66	94	66	90	66	71	69	41	16	23	27	3303

Canoga Park	34.2	790	118.6	104	71	99	70	97	70	93	69	74	72	38	25	30	33	1884
Cantil	35.3	2010	118	111	71	107	71	106	71	103	70	74	73	32	12	19	24	-
Canyon Dam	40.1	4555	121.1	93	60	90	59	89	59	85	57	64	62	39	1	6	13	6834
Canyon Lake	33.8	1500	117.3	105	70	101	69	100	69	97	68	74	72	39	22	27	30	-
Capitola	37	64	122	94	67	88	66	86	65	81	63	69	67	24	27	32	35	-
Cardiff-by-the-Sea	33	80	117.3	87	68	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	12	35	39	41	-
Carlsbad	33.2	44	117.4	87	68	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	10	34	38	40	-
Carmel Valley	36.5	425	121.7	94	68	88	66	86	66	80	65	69	67	20	25	30	33	-
Carmel-by-the-Sea	36.5	20	121.9	87	65	78	62	76	62	71	61	66	63	20	30	35	38	968
Carmichael	38.6	100	121.5	104	70	100	69	98	69	94	68	73	71	35	25	35	37	1290
Carpinteria	34.4	385	119.5	90	69	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	15	30	34	37	-
Carson	33.8	60	118.3	96	69	88	68	86	68	82	66	71	69	19	33	38	40	-
Casa de Oro-Mount Helix	32.7	530	117.0	96	71	88	69	87	69	84	67	72	70	19	34	38	41	404
Castle AFB	37.4	188	120.6	105	71	101	70	100	70	96	69	73	71	33	24	28	31	2590
Castro Valley	37.6	177	122.2	93	67	87	67	85	67	80	65	69	68	25	24	29	32	-
Castroville	36.8	20	121.8	86	66	77	63	75	63	70	61	67	64	18	32	37	40	1151
Cathedral City	33.8	400	116.5	117	74	113	73	112	73	109	72	79	78	33	26	31	34	374
Catheys Valley	37.4	1000	120.1	102	69	99	68	98	68	94	67	72	70	38	21	27	30	-
Cecilville	41.1	3000	123.1	95	63	89	62	88	61	84	59	65	63	44	13	20	24	-
Cedarville	41.5	4670	120.2	97	61	94	60	93	60	89	58	65	63	35	1	6	13	6304
Centerville PH	39.8	522	121.7	105	70	100	68	99	68	96	67	72	70	40	25	30	33	2895
Ceres	37.6	90	121	101	72	96	70	94	69	90	67	74	72	36	24	30	34	-
Cerritos	33.9	34	118.1	99	71	92	69	90	69	85	68	73	71	23	33	38	40	-

Charter Oak	34.1	600	117.9	101	70	97	69	95	69	91	68	74	72	34	29	34	36	-
Chatsworth	34.2	964	118.6	98	69	93	68	91	68	87	66	72	70	38	26	31	34	664
Cherry Valley Dam	38	4765	119.9	96	62	92	61	91	61	88	59	65	63	32	9	16	21	-
Cherryland	37.5	100	122.1	93	67	86	66	84	66	79	64	69	67	24	26	31	37	-
Chester	40.3	4525	121.2	94	62	91	61	90	61	86	59	65	63	33	-3	2	8	-
Chico Exp Sta	39.7	205	121.8	105	70	102	69	100	69	96	68	72	71	37	22	27	30	2878
China Lake	35.7	2220	117.7	112	70	108	68	107	68	104	68	74	72	33	15	22	25	2560
Chino	34	714	117.7	104	70	100	69	98	69	94	68	74	72	35	27	32	35	-
Chino Hills	34.1	800	117.7	104	70	100	69	98	69	94	68	74	72	35	27	32	35	800
Chowchilla	37	200	120.3	104	72	101	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	38	22	28	31	1250
Chula Vista	32.6	9	117.1	90	70	84	68	83	68	79	66	71	69	9	33	38	40	2072
Citrus Heights	38.7	138	121.5	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	74	72	36	24	26	29	-
Claremont	34.1	1201	117.8	101	69	97	68	95	68	91	66	73	71	34	29	34	36	2049
Clarksburg	38.4	14	121.5	102	70	97	69	95	69	91	67	72	70	35	24	29	32	2971
Clayton	38	60	121.9	102	70	97	68	95	67	89	65	71	68	34	27	32	35	-
Clearlake Highlands	39	1360	122.7	101	69	97	68	95	67	89	65	71	69	36	15	22	26	-
Cloverdale	38.8	320	123	102	70	97	69	95	68	89	66	72	70	37	26	31	34	2763
Clovis	36.8	404	119.7	105	72	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	36	22	28	32	-
Coachella	33.7	-76	116.2	114	74	110	73	109	73	106	73	80	79	28	25	30	34	-
Coalinga	36.2	671	120.4	103	70	98	70	97	70	93	69	73	72	34	23	28	31	2592

Colfax	39.1	2418	121	100	66	97	65	96	65	92	63	69	67	29	22	28	31	3424
Colton	34.1	978	117.3	105	70	102	68	101	68	97	67	74	72	35	28	33	36	-
Colusa	39.2	60	122	103	72	100	70	98	70	94	68	74	71	36	23	29	31	2793
Commerce	33.9	175	118.2	98	69	92	68	90	68	86	67	72	70	23	33	37	39	-
Compton	33.9	71	118.2	97	69	90	68	88	68	83	67	72	70	21	33	37	39	1606
Concord	38	195	112	102	70	97	68	95	67	89	65	71	68	34	27	32	35	3035
Corcoran	36.1	200	119.7	106	72	102	71	101	71	98	70	74	73	36	22	28	31	2666
Corning	39.9	487	122.2	106	71	103	70	102	69	98	67	73	71	33	23	28	31	1330
Corona	33.9	710	117.6	104	70	100	69	98	69	92	67	74	72	35	26	31	34	1794
Coronado	32.7	20	117.2	89	69	82	67	80	67	76	65	70	68	10	36	39	41	1500
Corte Madera	37.9	55	122.5	97	68	91	66	89	66	84	64	69	68	34	28	33	35	-
Costa Mesa	33.7	100	117.9	88	68	81	66	79	66	73	65	70	68	16	31	36	38	1482
Cotati	38.3	100	122.7	99	69	94	68	93	68	89	66	71	69	32	24	28	30	1205
Country Club	37.8	600	121.3	102	69	97	68	96	68	92	66	72	70	30	68	28	31	977
Covelo	39.8	1385	123.3	99	67	93	65	91	65	87	63	69	67	43	15	22	26	4179
Covina	34.1	575	117.9	101	70	97	69	95	69	91	68	74	72	34	29	34	36	-
Crescent City	41.8	40	124.2	75	61	69	59	68	59	65	58	61	60	18	28	33	36	4445
Crestline	34.2	4900	117.3	90	62	86	61	85	61	81	59	66	64	26	13	20	24	3200
Crockett	38	9	122.2	96	68	90	66	89	66	85	64	70	67	23	28	33	36	-
Crows Landing	37.4	140	121.1	101	70	96	68	94	68	89	66	72	70	33	23	28	31	2767
Cucamonga	34.1	1450	117.6	103	69	99	68	97	67	93	65	73	71	31	29	34	36	-
Cudahy	33.9	130	118.2	98	70	91	69	89	69	85	67	72	70	21	33	37	39	-
Culver City	34	106	118.4	96	70	88	69	87	69	83	67	72	70	18	35	40	42	1515

Cupertino	37.3	70	122	96	68	88	67	86	66	80	64	70	68	30	28	33	36	-
Cuyama	34.9	2255	116.6	99	68	96	67	94	67	89	66	72	70	42	13	20	24	-
Cuyamaca	33	4650	116.6	92	64	85	62	84	61	81	59	67	65	29	11	18	23	4848
Cypress	33.8	75	118	98	70	92	69	90	69	85	67	72	70	24	31	35	38	
Daggett AP	34.9	1915	116.8	109	68	106	68	105	68	102	66	73	72	33	21	26	29	2203
Daly City	37.6	410	122.5	84	65	78	62	77	62	73	61	66	63	16	34	37	39	-
Dana Point	33.5	100	117.7	91	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	13	30	33	36	600
Danville	37.8	368	122	102	69	97	68	96	68	92	66	72	70	30	23	28	31	977
Davis	38.5	60	121.8	103	72	99	70	97	70	93	68	74	71	41	24	30	34	2844
De Sabla	39.9	2713	121.6	97	66	94	64	92	64	88	62	68	66	35	18	24	27	4237
Death Valley	36.5	-194	116.9	121	77	118	76	117	76	114	74	81	79	28	27	33	37	1147
Deep Springs Clg	37.5	5225	118	98	60	95	59	94	59	92	58	64	62	35	-3	2	8	
Deer Creek PH	39.3	4455	120.9	93	61	91	60	90	60	87	58	65	63	39	10	17	22	5863
Del Aire	34	100	118.4	91	69	84	67	83	67	79	66	71	69	15	37	40	42	383
Delano	35.8	323	119.3	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	69	74	72	36	22	25	28	-
Denair	37.6	137	120.8	100	70	95	69	93	69	89	67	72	70	38	22	28	31	2974
Desert Hot Springs	34	1060	116.5	115	73	111	72	110	72	107	71	78	77	35	24	29	32	400
Diamond Bar	34	880	117.8	101	69	97	68	96	68	92	66	73	71	33	28	33	35	-
Dinuba	36.5	340	119.4	104	73	101	70	100	70	96	69	75	73	36	24	30	34	-
Discovery Bay	38.1	10	121.6	102	70	97	68	95	67	89	65	71	68	34	27	32	35	-
Dixon	38.4	100	121.9	104	72	99	70	97	70	93	68	74	71	36	24	30	33	2826
Dobbins	39.4	1640	121.2	104	70	101	68	100	68	96	67	72	70	31	24	29	32	-
Donner Mem Stt Pk	39.3	5937	120.3	85	56	82	56	81	56	77	54	60	58	40	-3	3	6	-

Donner Summit	39.4	7239	120.3	80	53	77	53	76	52	72	50	57	55	40	-8	-1	3	8290
Downey	33.9	110	118	98	71	90	70	88	70	84	68	73	71	21	32	37	39	-
Downieville RS	39.6	2895	120.8	98	64	95	63	94	63	90	61	68	66	42	13	20	24	-
Doyle	40	4390	120.1	96	63	93	62	92	61	88	59	66	64	42	0	5	12	-
Dry Canyon Res	34.5	1455	118.5	105	71	100	69	99	69	96	68	74	72	32	24	29	32	-
Duarte	34.1	500	118	100	69	96	68	94	68	90	67	73	71	33	31	36	38	-
Dublin	37.7	200	121.5	99	69	93	67	91	67	86	65	70	68	35	24	29	32	-
Dudleys	37.7	3000	120.1	97	65	94	64	93	64	90	62	68	66	44	10	17	22	4959
Duttons Landing	38.2	20	122.3	96	68	91	66	89	66	84	64	70	68	31	26	31	34	-
Eagle Mtn	33.8	973	115.5	113	72	110	71	109	71	105	69	77	75	24	32	37	39	1138
Earlimart	35.8	283	119.3	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	69	74	72	36	23	26	29	1100
East Compton	34	71	118.2	97	69	90	68	88	68	83	67	72	70	21	33	37	39	436
East Hemet	33.7	1655	116.9	109	70	104	69	103	69	101	67	74	72	40	20	25	28	-
East La Mirada	33.9	115	118.0	99	70	91	69	89	69	85	68	73	71	26	31	36	38	-
East Los Angeles	34	250	118.3	99	69	92	68	90	68	86	67	72	70	21	38	41	43	-
East Palo Alto	37.5	25	122.1	93	66	85	64	83	64	77	62	68	66	25	26	31	34	1103
East Park Res	39.4	1205	122.5	101	69	97	68	96	68	92	66	71	69	38	19	25	28	3455
East Pasadena	34.2	864	118.1	99	69	94	68	92	68	88	67	73	71	30	32	37	40	452
East Porterville	36.1	393	119.0	106	71	102	70	101	70	97	69	74	72	36	25	30	33	1129
East San Gabriel	34.1	450	118.1	99	70	94	69	92	69	88	68	73	71	30	30	35	37	431
Edwards AFB	34.9	2316	117.9	107	69	104	68	103	68	99	66	72	70	35	10	17	22	3123
El Cajon	32.7	525	117	96	70	91	69	90	69	87	67	72	70	30	29	34	36	-
El Capitan Dam	32.9	600	116.8	105	71	98	70	97	70	93	68	74	72	35	29	34	36	1533
El Centro	32.8	-30	115.6	115	74	111	73	110	73	107	73	81	79	34	26	35	38	1212

El Cerrito	37.8	70	122.3	91	66	84	64	81	64	75	62	68	65	17	30	35	38	-
El Dorado Hills	38.6	673	121.1	103	70	100	69	98	69	94	67	72	71	36	24	30	34	-
El Mirage	34.6	2910	117.6	105	69	101	68	100	68	97	66	72	70	31	9	16	21	-
El Monte	34.1	271	118	101	71	97	70	95	70	91	68	73	71	30	31	36	39	-
El Paso de Robles	35.6	721	120.7	102	65	95	65	94	65	90	65	69	67	44	16	20	23	1768
El Rio	34.3	50	119.2	95	69	88	68	86	68	82	66	71	69	20	30	34	37	-
El Segundo	33.9	105	118.4	91	69	84	68	83	68	79	66	71	69	14	37	40	42	-
El Sobrante	37.9	55	122.3	91	66	87	65	86	65	82	64	69	67	25	30	35	38	823
El Toro MCAS	33.7	380	117.7	96	69	89	69	87	69	82	68	73	71	26	34	38	41	1591
El Toro Station	33.7	380	117.7	96	69	89	69	87	69	82	68	73	71	26	34	38	41	560
Electra PH	38.3	715	120.7	106	70	102	69	101	69	98	68	73	71	41	23	28	31	2858
Elk Grove	38.4	50	121.4	104	71	100	69	98	69	94	68	73	71	35	29	34	36	1150
Elk Valley	42	1705	123.7	96	65	90	63	88	63	84	61	67	65	39	16	23	27	5404
Elsinore	33.7	1285	117.3	105	71	101	70	100	70	98	69	74	72	39	22	26	29	2128
Encinitas	33	50	117.3	87	68	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	10	35	39	41	-
Encino	34.2	750	118.5	103	71	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	71	27	28	33	36	664
Enterprise	40.6	470	122.3	107	69	103	68	101	68	97	67	72	70	29	26	31	34	-
Escondido	33.1	660	117.1	97	69	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	29	26	31	34	2005
Eureka	40.8	43	124.2	75	61	69	59	68	59	65	58	61	60	11	30	35	38	4679
Exeter	36.3	350	119.1	104	72	101	71	100	71	97	69	74	72	39	24	29	32	1236
Fair Oaks	38.7	50	121.3	104	70	100	69	98	69	94	69	72	71	36	23	29	33	-
Fairfax	38	110	122.6	96	68	90	66	88	65	83	63	71	68	34	26	31	34	-
Fairfield FS	38.3	38	122	103	69	98	68	96	68	91	66	73	71	34	24	30	33	2686

Fairmont	34.7	3060	118.4	100	67	96	66	95	66	92	65	71	69	22	22	28	31	3330
Fairview	35.9	3519	118.5	97	67	94	66	93	66	90	64	70	68	43	11	18	23	-
Fallbrook	33.6	660	117.3	94	68	89	67	88	67	85	66	71	69	29	26	31	34	2077
Farmersville	36.3	350	119.2	104	72	101	72	100	71	97	69	74	72	39	24	29	32	1236
Felton	37	100	122.1	94	68	88	66	86	66	81	64	69	67	28	27	32	35	1097
Ferndale	40.5	1445	124.3	76	57	66	56	65	56	62	54	59	57	12	28	33	35	-
Fillmore	34.4	435	118.9	100	70	94	69	92	69	87	67	73	71	30	28	32	35	-
Five Points	36.4	285	120.2	103	71	99	70	97	70	93	68	73	71	36	21	27	30	-
Fleming Fish & Game	40.4	4000	120.3	96	62	93	61	92	61	88	59	66	64	40	-3	2	8	-
Florence-Graham	34	175	118.3	98	69	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	19	35	40	43	-
Florin	38.5	100	121.4	104	71	100	69	98	69	94	68	73	71	35	29	34	36	-
Folsom Dam	38.7	350	121.2	104	70	101	69	99	69	95	67	72	71	36	25	31	35	-
Fontana	34.1	1090	117.4	105	70	101	69	100	69	97	67	74	72	33	30	35	38	1530
Foothill Farms	38.6	90	121.3	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	36	24	30	34	-
Forest Glen	40.4	2340	123.3	96	65	92	64	91	64	88	62	67	65	42	12	19	24	-
Fort Baker	37.8	15	122.5	87	66	81	65	79	65	73	65	67	65	12	33	38	40	3080
Fort Bidwell	41.9	4498	120.1	93	60	90	59	89	59	85	57	64	62	38	-2	3	10	6381
Fort Bragg	39.5	80	123.8	75	60	67	59	66	59	62	58	62	61	15	29	34	37	4424
Fort Jones RS	41.6	2725	122.9	98	64	93	63	92	63	88	61	67	65	44	5	13	18	5590
Fort MacArthur	33.7	200	118.3	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	13	35	40	42	1819
Fort Ord	36.7	134	121.8	86	65	77	63	75	62	70	60	67	64	18	24	29	32	3818
Fort Ross	38.5	116	123.3	79	63	74	62	71	61	65	59	64	62	19	30	35	37	4127
Fortuna	40.6	100	124.2	75	61	69	59	68	59	65	58	61	60	11	30	35	38	2000
Foster City	37.5	20	122.7	92	67	84	65	82	65	76	63	68	66	22	29	34	36	-
Fountain Valley	33.7	60	118	97	70	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	18	33	38	40	-

Freedom	37	1495	121.8	89	67	85	64	83	64	79	62	68	65	22	27	32	34	-
Fremont	37.5	56	122	94	67	88	65	86	65	81	63	69	67	24	25	30	33	-
Fresno AP	36.8	328	119.7	104	73	101	71	100	70	97	68	75	73	34	24	28	30	2650
Friant Gov Camp	37	410	119.7	106	72	103	70	102	70	100	68	74	72	40	23	28	31	2768
Fullerton	33.9	340	117.9	100	70	94	69	92	69	87	68	73	71	26	30	35	37	-
Galt	38.2	40	121.3	101	70	97	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	38	23	28	31	1240
Garden Acres	38	20	121.3	103	71	98	69	97	69	93	67	73	71	35	24	28	30	1334
Garden Grove	33.6	85	117.9	98	70	91	68	89	68	84	67	72	70	23	31	36	38	-
Gardena	33.9	40	118.3	92	69	85	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	18	32	37	39	-
George AFB	34.6	2875	117.4	105	67	102	65	101	64	98	62	70	68	31	19	23	26	2887
Georgetown RS	38.9	3001	120.8	98	64	95	63	94	63	90	61	68	66	31	18	24	27	-
Giant Forest	36.6	6412	118.8	84	56	81	55	80	55	77	53	60	58	26	5	13	18	-
Gillespie Field	32.8	385	117.0	98	71	91	70	89	70	85	68	73	71	30	24	29	32	-
Gilroy	37	194	121.6	101	70	93	68	91	67	86	65	72	69	25	23	28	31	-
Glen Avon	34	827	117.5	105	70	101	69	99	69	95	67	74	72	35	28	33	35	-
Glendale	34.2	563	118.3	101	70	96	68	94	68	90	67	73	71	28	30	35	37	-
Glendora	34.1	822	117.9	102	69	98	68	96	68	92	67	73	71	35	30	35	37	-
Glennville	35.7	3140	118.7	97	67	94	66	93	66	90	64	70	68	43	11	18	23	4423
Gold Rock Rch	32.9	485	114.8	113	73	110	72	109	72	106	70	79	77	28	31	36	38	-
Golden Hills	35.1	4000	118.5	97	66	93	65	92	65	89	64	69	67	33	13	20	24	-
Granada Hills	34.4	1032	118.5	100	70	95	68	93	68	89	66	73	70	37	28	31	34	664
Grand Terrace	34.1	1000	117.3	105	70	102	68	101	68	97	67	74	72	35	28	33	36	611

Grant Grove	36.7	6600	119	82	56	78	55	77	54	74	52	59	57	26	6	14	19	7044
Grass Valley	39.2	2400	121.1	99	67	96	65	95	65	91	63	69	67	29	19	25	28	-
Graton	38.4	200	122.9	95	68	91	67	88	66	82	64	70	68	34	22	28	31	3409
Greenacres	35.3	400	119.1	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	34	26	31	35	934
Greenfield	36.2	287	121.2	92	67	88	65	87	65	84	64	70	68	32	22	27	30	1020
Grossmont	32.7	530	117	96	69	89	68	88	68	84	66	71	69	23	31	36	38	-
Grover City	35.1	100	120.6	93	69	86	64	84	64	80	62	67	65	18	30	34	37	-
Guadalupe	35	85	120.6	92	66	86	64	84	64	79	62	67	65	18	28	32	35	1035
Hacienda Hts	34	300	118	100	69	96	68	94	68	90	67	73	71	28	31	36	38	-
Haiwee	36.1	3825	118	102	65	99	64	98	64	95	62	68	66	27	15	22	26	3700
Half Moon Bay	37.5	60	122.4	83	64	76	62	74	61	69	59	65	63	15	32	37	39	3843
Hamilton AFB	38.1	3	122.5	95	69	88	67	86	67	81	65	73	70	28	27	30	32	3311
Hanford	36.3	242	119.7	102	71	99	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	37	22	28	31	2736
Happy Camp RS	41.8	1150	123.4	103	67	97	66	96	66	92	65	69	67	41	18	24	27	4263
Hat Creek PH 1	40.9	3015	121.6	99	65	96	64	95	64	91	62	68	66	48	2	7	17	5689
Hawaiian Gardens	33.8	75	118.1	97	70	91	69	89	69	84	67	72	70	23	32	37	39	-
Hawthorne	33.9	70	118.4	92	69	85	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	16	37	40	42	-
Hayfield Pumps	33.7	1370	115.6	112	71	108	70	107	70	104	68	77	75	31	24	29	32	1529
Hayward	37.7	530	122.1	92	66	86	65	85	64	81	62	68	66	24	26	31	34	2909
Healdsburg	38.6	102	122.9	102	69	95	68	94	68	90	66	71	69	37	26	31	34	2572
Hemet	33.7	1655	117	109	70	104	69	103	69	101	67	74	72	40	20	25	28	-
Henshaw Dam	33.2	2700	116.8	99	68	94	67	93	67	90	66	71	69	38	15	22	26	3708
Hercules	38	15	122.3	91	66	87	65	86	65	82	64	69	67	25	30	35	38	823
Hermosa Beach	33.9	16	118.4	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	12	38	42	45	-
Hesperia	34.4	3191	117.3	105	67	101	65	100	65	97	63	70	68	38	14	21	25	1654

Hetch Hetchy	38	3870	119.8	93	62	89	61	88	61	85	59	65	63	32	14	21	25	4816
Highland	34.1	1315	117.2	106	70	102	69	101	69	97	68	74	72	36	26	31	34	-
Hillcrest Center	35.4	500	-	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	34	26	31	35	-
Hillsborough	37.6	352	122.3	90	66	82	65	80	65	74	64	68	66	23	30	35	37	-
Hilt	42	2900	122.6	97	64	93	62	92	62	89	60	66	64	39	5	13	18	-
Hollister	36.9	280	121.4	96	68	89	67	87	67	81	65	70	68	30	21	27	30	2725
Hollywood	34	384	118.4	96	70	89	69	87	69	83	67	72	70	20	36	41	44	-
Home Gardens	33.9	678	117.5	104	70	100	69	98	69	92	67	74	72	35	26	31	34	-
Hoopa	41	360	123.7	100	67	92	66	91	66	87	64	69	67	25	23	28	31	-
Huntington Beach	33.7	40	117.8	91	69	83	67	81	67	76	66	71	69	14	34	38	41	-
Huntington Lake	37.2	7020	119.2	80	55	77	54	76	53	73	51	58	56	25	3	11	16	7632
Huntington Park	34	175	118	98	70	90	69	88	69	84	67	72	70	20	38	42	45	-
Idlewild	41.9	1250	124	103	68	96	66	95	66	92	65	69	67	40	18	24	27	-
Idria	36.4	2650	120.7	97	66	92	65	91	64	87	62	68	66	27	24	29	32	3128
Idyllwild	33.7	5397	116.7	93	62	89	61	88	61	84	60	67	65	35	9	16	21	-
Imperial AP	32.8	-59	115.6	114	74	110	73	109	73	106	72	81	79	31	26	31	34	1060
Imperial Beach	32.5	23	117.1	87	69	82	68	81	68	78	67	71	69	10	35	39	41	1839
Imperial CO	32.9	-64	115.6	112	73	108	72	107	72	104	71	80	78	31	29	34	36	976
Independence	36.8	3950	118.2	104	61	101	60	100	60	97	60	65	63	31	12	19	24	-
Indio	33.7	11	116.3	115	75	112	75	111	75	107	74	81	79	30	24	29	32	1059
Inglewood	33.9	105	118	92	68	85	67	84	67	80	65	70	68	15	37	40	42	-
Inyokern NAS	35.7	2440	117.8	110	71	106	68	105	68	102	66	75	71	37	15	22	26	2772
Ione	38.3	298	120.9	101	70	97	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	38	23	28	31	-

Iron Mtn	34.1	922	115.1	116	75	112	74	111	74	108	73	80	78	26	29	34	36	1251
Irvine	33.7	50	118	96	69	88	68	86	68	82	67	72	70	27	33	37	40	-
Isla Vista	34.5	40	119.9	90	69	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	20	33	38	40	-
Jess Valley	41.3	5300	120.3	92	59	89	58	88	58	84	56	63	61	35	-7	-2	4	7045
John Wayne AP	33.6	115	117.9	98	70	91	68	89	68	84	67	72	70	26	33	37	39	1496
Julian Wynola	33.1	3650	116.8	96	66	91	64	90	64	87	62	69	67	39	20	24	26	4049
Kentfield	38	120	122.6	97	66	91	65	89	65	84	63	70	68	35	27	32	35	3009
Kerman	36.6	216	120.1	105	73	101	71	100	70	97	68	75	73	34	24	28	30	1262
Kern River PH 1	35.5	970	118.8	106	72	103	71	102	71	99	69	75	73	26	30	35	37	1878
Kern River PH 3	35.8	2703	118.6	103	69	100	68	99	68	96	66	72	70	34	19	25	28	2891
Kettleman Stn	36.1	508	120.1	104	71	100	70	98	70	93	68	74	72	31	26	31	34	2180
King City	36.2	320	121.1	94	67	90	65	89	65	85	64	70	68	36	20	26	29	2639
Kingsburg	36.4	297	119.6	104	73	101	71	100	71	97	69	75	73	36	24	30	34	1300
Klamath	41.5	25	124.1	79	62	71	60	70	60	66	58	64	61	18	26	31	33	4509
Knights Ferry	37.8	315	120.6	103	70	99	68	98	68	94	67	73	71	37	19	25	28	-
La Canada-Flintridge	34.2	1365	118	99	69	95	68	93	68	88	66	72	70	30	32	36	38	-
La Crescenta-Montrose	34.2	1565	118	98	69	94	68	92	68	87	66	72	70	33	31	35	37	-
La Habra	33.9	305	118	100	69	94	68	92	68	87	67	72	70	27	30	35	37	-
La Habra Heights	34	400	118	100	69	94	68	92	68	87	67	72	70	27	30	35	37	
La Mesa	32.8	530	117	94	70	88	69	87	69	84	67	72	70	23	34	39	41	1567
La Mirada	33.9	115	118	99	70	91	69	89	69	85	68	73	71	26	31	36	38	-
La Palma	33.9	75	118	98	69	92	68	90	68	85	67	72	70	25	31	35	38	-
La Puente	34	320	118	101	71	97	70	95	70	91	69	74	72	28	31	36	38	-

La Quinta	33.8	400	116.3	116	74	112	73	111	73	108	72	79	78	34	26	32	34	332
La Riviera	38.6	190	121.3	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	32	30	35	37	1025
La Verne	34.1	1235	118	101	69	97	68	95	68	91	67	73	71	34	29	34	36	-
Ladera Heights	34.1	100	118.4	91	67	84	67	83	67	79	66	71	69	14	37	40	42	383
Lafayette	37.9	535	122.1	100	69	94	67	92	67	87	66	71	69	32	24	29	32	-
Laguna Beach	33.5	35	117.8	91	69	83	68	81	68	76	66	71	69	18	30	33	36	2222
Laguna Niguel	33.6	500	117.7	95	67	87	66	85	65	81	63	71	67	22	33	37	40	-
Lake Arrowhead	34.2	5205	117.2	90	62	86	61	85	61	81	59	66	64	26	13	20	24	5310
Lake Elsinore	33.7	1233	117.3	105	70	101	69	100	69	97	68	74	72	39	22	27	30	827
Lake Los Angeles	34.7	2300	117.8	106	68	102	67	101	67	98	66	72	70	35	12	17	20	1455
Lake Spaulding	39.3	5156	120.6	89	58	86	57	85	57	83	55	62	60	34	3	11	16	6447
Lakeland Village	33.6	1233	117.3	105	70	101	69	100	69	97	68	74	72	39	12	27	30	827
Lakeport	39	1347	122.9	97	67	93	66	92	65	88	63	69	67	41	20	26	29	3728
Lakeshore	40.9	1075	119.2	104	69	100	68	99	68	95	66	71	69	28	29	34	36	-
Lakeside	32.8	690	117	95	69	90	68	89	68	86	66	72	70	20	26	31	34	-
Lakewood	33.9	45	118	98	70	90	68	88	68	84	66	72	70	22	33	37	40	-
Lamont	35.3	500	120	106	72	102	71	101	71	98	69	75	73	34	26	32	35	-
Lancaster	34.7	2340	118.2	106	68	102	67	101	67	98	66	72	70	35	12	17	20	-
Larksfield-Wikiup	38.5	170	122.8	99	69	96	68	95	68	92	66	71	69	35	24	27	29	1249
Larkspur	37.9	20	122.5	97	68	91	66	89	66	84	64	69	68	34	28	33	35	-
Las Plumas	39.7	506	121.4	104	71	101	70	100	70	96	68	73	71	32	24	29	32	-
Lathrop	37.8	22	121.3	103	71	98	69	97	69	93	67	73	71	35	24	28	30	1300
Lava Beds	41.7	4770	121.5	93	59	89	58	88	58	84	56	63	61	41	-1	4	11	-

Lawndale	33.9	66	118	92	69	85	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	16	37	40	42	-
Le Grand	37.2	255	120.3	101	70	96	68	95	68	91	66	72	70	38	23	28	31	2696
Lemon Grove	32.7	437	117.2	96	71	88	69	87	69	84	67	72	70	19	34	38	41	-
Lemoncove	36.4	513	119	105	72	102	70	101	70	98	68	72	70	38	25	38	41	2513
Lemoore NAS	36.3	228	120	104	72	101	71	100	71	97	69	74	72	37	19	25	28	2960
Lennox	33.9	71	117.8	92	69	85	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	16	37	41	44	-
Lincoln Village	38	12	121.3	101	70	96	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	37	24	28	30	1334
Linda	39	60	121.6	105	72	102	70	101	70	97	68	74	72	30	27	32	35	1160
Lindsay	36.2	395	119.1	105	72	101	71	100	71	97	69	74	72	40	24	29	32	2634
Little Panoche	36.8	677	120.7	100	68	94	67	92	67	86	66	71	69	33	23	28	31	-
Live Oak	39.2	75	121.7	105	70	102	69	101	69	97	69	73	71	36	24	29	32	1160
Livermore	37.7	490	122	100	69	95	68	93	68	88	67	71	70	35	22	25	28	3012
Livingston	37.3	165	120.7	103	72	100	70	99	70	95	68	74	72	39	24	30	34	1244
Llano Shawnee	34.5	3820	117.8	104	68	99	67	98	67	95	65	71	69	31	21	27	31	-
Lodgepole	36.6	6735	118.7	84	57	80	56	80	56	78	54	60	58	26	-4	1	7	
Lodi	38.1	40	121.3	101	70	97	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	38	23	28	31	2859
Loma Linda	34	1150	117.5	106	70	103	69	102	69	99	67	74	72	36	27	32	35	-
Lomita	33.8	56	119	95	69	87	68	85	68	81	66	71	69	18	33	38	40	-
Lompoc	34.9	95	120.5	84	63	77	62	76	62	72	60	65	63	18	26	31	34	2888
Long Beach	33.7	34	118.2	97	70	88	68	86	67	82	65	65	63	18	35	31	34	-
Long Beach AP	33.8	25	118.2	99	71	90	69	88	68	84	66	73	71	21	33	38	41	1606
Loomis	38.8	408	121.2	107	71	103	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	39	21	27	30	-

Los Alamitos NAS	33.8	30	118.1	98	71	89	69	87	69	83	68	73	71	23	32	37	39	1740
Los Altos	37.3	163	122	96	68	88	65	86	64	80	62	70	68	26	28	33	35	-
Los Altos Hills	37.3	183	122.1	93	67	85	64	83	64	77	63	68	66	25	28	33	35	1103
Los Angeles AP	33.9	97	118.4	91	67	84	67	83	67	79	66	71	69	14	37	40	42	1819
Los Angeles CO	34	270	118.2	99	69	92	68	90	68	86	67	72	70	21	38	41	43	1245
Los Banos	37	120	120.9	100	70	96	68	94	68	88	67	72	70	42	22	28	31	2616
Los Banos Res	37	407	120.9	101	70	97	68	95	68	89	67	72	70	42	23	29	31	-
Los Gatos	37.2	365	122	98	69	90	67	88	67	82	66	71	69	32	26	31	34	2741
Los Serranos	34.1	714	117.7	104	70	100	69	98	69	94	68	74	72	35	27	32	35	706
Lucas Vly-Marinwood	38.3	20	122.6	79	63	74	62	71	61	65	59	64	62	12	30	35	37	874
Lucerne Valley	34.5	2957	117	105	67	101	66	100	66	98	64	71	69	38	12	19	24	-
Lynwood	33.9	88	118	98	70	90	69	88	69	83	67	72	70	21	32	37	39	-
Madera	37	268	120.1	105	72	101	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	40	24	29	32	2673
Madera Acres	36.9	275	120.1	105	72	101	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	40	24	29	32	1250
Manhattan Beach	33.9	120	118	91	69	84	68	83	68	79	66	71	69	12	38	42	45	-
Manteca	37.8	34	121.2	102	70	97	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	37	24	29	32	-
Manzanita Lake	40.5	5850	121.6	87	58	84	57	83	57	79	55	61	59	34	-3	2	8	7617
March AFB	33.9	1511	117.3	103	70	99	68	98	67	94	65	74	71	34	23	30	33	2089
Maricopa	35.1	675	119.4	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	29	25	30	33	2302
Marina	36.7	20	121.8	86	66	77	63	75	63	70	61	67	64	18	32	37	40	-
Marina del Rey	34.1	40	118.5	91	69	84	68	83	68	79	66	71	69	12	38	42	45	383
Markley Cove	38.5	480	122.1	104	70	99	69	97	69	93	67	72	70	39	23	29	31	-
Martinez FS	38	40	122.1	99	67	94	66	92	66	88	65	71	69	36	28	33	35	-

Marysville	39.2	60	121.6	105	72	102	70	101	70	97	68	74	72	36	27	32	35	2552
Mather AFB	38.6	96	121.3	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	35	28	33	35	-
Maywood	34	170	118	97	70	91	69	89	69	85	67	72	70	21	34	38	41	-
McClellan AFB	38.7	86	121.4	105	71	102	70	100	70	96	68	74	71	35	23	28	21	2566
McCloud	41.3	3300	122.1	96	63	93	62	91	62	87	60	66	64	42	5	13	18	5990
McFarland	35.6	350	119.2	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	69	74	72	36	22	25	28	1162
McKinleyville	40.9	33	124.1	75	61	69	59	68	59	65	58	61	60	11	28	31	33	1995
Mecca FS	33.6	-180	116.1	115	75	111	75	110	75	107	74	81	79	30	24	29	32	1185
Mendota	36.7	169	120.4	105	73	101	71	100	70	97	68	75	73	34	24	28	30	1273
Menlo Park	37.4	65	122.3	94	67	86	65	84	65	78	63	69	67	25	27	32	34	-
Mentone	34.1	1700	117.1	106	70	102	69	101	69	98	67	74	72	34	27	32	35	741
Merced AP	37.3	153	120.6	103	71	100	69	99	69	95	67	73	71	36	21	27	30	2653
Mill Creek	35.1	2940	117	102	67	97	66	96	66	94	65	70	68	28	28	33	36	-
Mill Valley	37.9	80	122.6	97	68	91	66	89	66	84	64	70	68	28	28	33	35	3400
Millbrae	37.6	10	122.4	90	66	82	63	80	63	74	61	67	65	24	30	35	37	-
Milpitas	37.4	15	121.9	94	68	87	65	85	65	79	63	70	67	27	27	32	35	-
Mineral	40.4	4911	121.6	90	60	87	59	86	59	82	57	63	61	38	2	7	14	7257
Mira Loma	34	700	117.5	105	70	101	69	99	68	95	66	74	72	34	25	33	36	600
Miramar AFS	32.9	477	117.1	97	69	91	68	90	68	86	67	72	70	22	32	36	38	1532
Miramonte	34.4	750	119.1	102	71	97	69	95	69	91	68	73	71	38	25	29	32	771
Mission Viejo	33.6	350	118	95	67	87	66	85	65	81	63	71	67	22	33	37	40	-
Mitchell Caverns	34.9	4350	117.0	102	64	98	63	97	63	94	61	69	67	29	21	27	30	-

Modesto	37.6	91	121	102	73	99	70	98	70	95	68	75	72	36	25	30	33	2671
Moffett Field NAS	37.4	39	122.1	89	68	84	66	82	66	78	64	70	68	23	30	34	36	2511
Mojave	35.1	2735	118.2	106	68	102	67	101	67	98	66	71	69	35	16	22	26	3012
Mono Lake	38	6450	119.2	91	58	88	57	87	57	84	55	62	60	32	4	12	17	6518
Monrovia	34.2	562	118.3	100	69	96	68	94	68	90	67	73	71	30	33	38	41	-
Montague	41.8	2648	122.5	99	66	95	65	94	65	90	63	69	67	39	3	11	16	5474
Montclair	34	1220	117	104	69	100	68	98	68	94	66	73	71	35	28	33	35	-
Montebello	34	205	118.1	98	69	93	68	91	68	86	67	72	70	24	33	37	39	-
Monterey AP	36.6	245	121.9	86	65	77	62	75	62	70	61	66	63	20	30	35	38	3556
Monterey CO	36.6	345	121.9	87	65	78	62	76	62	71	61	66	63	20	32	37	40	3169
Monterey Park	34	380	118	99	69	94	68	92	68	87	67	72	70	23	30	35	37	-
Monticello Dam	38.5	505	122.1	105	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	39	26	31	34	-
Moraga	37.8	600	122.2	99	68	93	66	91	66	86	64	70	68	27	21	26	29	
Moreno Valley	33.9	1600	117.2	103	70	99	68	98	67	94	65	74	71	34	27	30	33	611
Morgan Hill	37.1	350	120	100	69	92	68	90	68	85	66	71	69	25	26	31	34	-
Morro Bay FD	35.4	115	120.9	88	65	82	64	80	64	76	62	67	65	14	31	36	38	-
Mount Baldy Notch	34.3	7735	117.6	80	58	76	57	75	56	71	54	61	59	32	4	10	14	-
Mount Diablo	37.9	2100	121.9	101	68	96	66	93	66	87	65	68	59	28	27	32	35	4600
Mount Hamilton	37.3	4206	121.7	95	59	88	58	86	58	81	56	63	61	18	18	24	27	4724
Mount Hebron RS	41.8	4250	122	92	60	88	59	86	59	82	57	63	61	42	-10	-4	0	-
Mount San Jacinto	33.8	8417	116.6	82	56	77	55	76	55	73	53	61	59	35	-1	4	11	-
Mount Shasta	41.3	3535	122.3	93	62	89	61	88	61	84	59	65	63	34	8	15	20	5890
Mount Wilson	34.2	5709	118.1	90	63	85	61	83	60	79	58	66	64	21	15	22	26	4296
Mountain Pass	35.5	4730	115.5	100	65	96	64	95	64	92	63	68	66	29	11	18	23	-
Mountain View	37.5	95	121.9	93	67	85	64	83	64	77	62	68	66	25	28	33	35	-

Muscoy	34.2	1400	117.3	105	71	101	69	100	68	96	66	75	72	37	26	31	34	614
Nacimiento Dam	35.8	770	120.9	100	68	94	66	92	66	88	64	70	68	35	22	28	31	-
Napa State Hospital	37.3	60	122.3	94	67	91	67	90	67	86	66	71	70	29	26	31	34	2749
National City	32.7	34	117	87	70	82	68	81	68	78	66	71	69	10	36	40	42	-
Needles AP	34.8	913	114.6	117	73	114	72	113	72	110	71	77	75	26	27	32	35	1391
Nevada City	39.3	2600	121	97	66	94	64	92	64	88	63	68	66	41	14	21	25	4900
Newark	37.5	10	122	94	68	89	67	87	67	82	65	70	68	24	29	34	36	-
Newhall Soledad	34.4	1243	118.6	104	70	100	68	99	68	95	67	73	71	42	27	33	36	-
Newman	37.3	90	121.1	104	71	99	69	97	69	93	67	73	71	38	22	28	31	-
Newport Beach	33.6	10	117.9	87	68	80	66	78	66	72	65	70	68	12	34	39	41	1952
Nipomo	35	330	120.5	90	66	83	64	82	63	78	61	67	65	23	25	31	33	1035
Norco	33.9	700	117	103	70	99	69	98	69	94	67	74	72	34	27	32	35	-
North Auburn	38.9	1300	121.1	103	69	100	67	99	67	95	66	72	69	33	25	30	33	1518
North Fork RS	37.2	2630	119.5	98	66	95	65	94	64	92	62	69	67	36	15	22	26	-
North Highlands	38.6	45	121.4	104	71	100	69	98	69	94	67	73	71	35	23	28	31	2566
North Hollywood	34.2	619	118.4	102	70	97	69	95	69	91	67	73	71	31	28	33	36	-
Northridge	34.2	875	118.5	101	70	96	69	94	69	90	67	73	71	36	30	35	38	650
Norwalk	33.9	97	118.1	99	69	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	26	31	35	37	-
Novato	38.1	370	122.5	94	64	87	63	85	63	80	61	68	66	30	25	30	32	-
Oakdale	37.8	215	120.9	102	71	99	69	97	69	93	67	73	71	37	22	28	32	-
Oakland AP	37.7	6	122.2	91	66	84	64	82	64	77	62	67	65	20	32	34	37	2909
Oakland Museum	37.8	30	122.2	96	68	89	66	87	65	82	63	69	67	20	31	33	36	-
Oakley	38	20	121.7	102	70	97	68	95	68	91	66	70	69	34	22	28	31	-

Oceano	35.1	20	120.6	93	69	86	64	84	64	80	62	67	65	18	30	34	37	795
Oceanside	33.2	10	117.4	84	69	80	67	78	67	74	65	70	68	10	33	37	39	-
Oildale	35.5	450	119	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	34	26	31	35	-
Ojai	34.5	750	119.3	102	71	97	69	95	69	91	68	73	71	38	25	29	32	2145
Olivehurst	39	64	121.6	105	72	102	70	101	70	97	68	74	72	36	27	32	35	1160
Ontario AP	34	934	117	105	70	101	69	99	68	95	66	74	72	34	26	33	36	1710
Opal Cliffs	37	125	122	94	68	88	66	86	66	81	64	69	67	28	27	32	35	1097
Orange	33.6	194	118	99	70	92	68	90	68	85	67	72	70	27	33	37	40	
Orange Cove	36.6	431	119.3	104	71	100	69	99	69	97	68	73	71	38	25	30	33	2684
Orangevale	38.7	140	121.2	105	72	102	70	100	70	96	68	74	71	36	24	30	34	-
Orick Prairie Creek	41.4	161	124	80	61	75	60	74	60	70	59	63	61	23	25	30	33	4816
Orinda	37.9	550	122.2	99	68	93	66	91	66	86	64	70	68	32	21	26	29	-
Orland	39.8	254	122.2	105	71	102	70	101	70	97	68	73	71	36	22	28	31	2824
Orleans	41.3	403	123.5	104	70	97	68	95	68	91	66	71	69	42	21	27	30	3628
Orosi	36.5	400	119.3	104	73	101	70	100	70	96	69	75	73	36	24	30	34	1130
Oroville East	39.5	171	121.6	106	71	104	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	37	25	30	33	1385
Oroville RS	39.5	300	121.6	106	71	104	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	37	25	30	33	-
Otay-Castle Pk	32.6	500	117	87	68	81	66	79	65	74	63	69	67	10	33	38	40	-
Oxnard AFB	34.2	49	119.2	94	69	86	68	84	68	79	67	71	69	21	30	34	37	2068
Pacific Grove	36.7	114	122	87	66	78	63	76	63	71	61	67	64	19	31	35	37	-
Pacifica	37.6	13	122	87	65	79	62	77	62	71	60	66	64	16	31	35	37	-
Pacoima	34.3	895	118.4	104	71	99	70	98	70	94	68	74	72	35	29	34	37	664

Palermo	39.4	154	121.5	106	71	104	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	37	25	30	33	1170
Palm Desert	33.7	200	116.5	116	74	112	73	111	73	108	72	79	78	34	26	32	34	-
Palm Desert Country	33.7	243	116.3	116	74	112	73	111	73	108	72	79	78	34	26	32	34	374
Palm Springs	33.8	411	116.5	117	74	113	73	112	73	109	72	79	78	35	26	31	34	1109
Palmdale AP	34.6	2517	118.1	107	67	103	67	102	66	98	64	71	69	33	12	20	24	2929
Palmdale CO	34.6	2596	118.1	106	67	102	67	101	66	97	64	71	69	35	13	21	25	2908
Palo Alto	37.5	25	122.1	93	66	85	64	83	64	77	62	68	66	25	26	31	34	2891
Palomar Obsy	33.4	5545	116.9	90	62	85	61	84	61	80	59	66	64	22	16	20	23	4141
Palos Verdes	33.8	216	119	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	14	38	43	46	-
Panorama City	34.2	801	118.5	103	71	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	71	32	28	33	36	664
Paradise	39.8	1750	121.6	102	69	99	67	98	67	94	66	71	69	34	25	30	33	-
Paramount	33.9	70	117	98	70	90	69	88	69	84	67	72	70	22	32	37	40	-
Parker Res	34.3	738	114.2	115	74	112	73	111	73	108	72	79	77	26	32	37	40	1223
Parkway-South Sacramento	38.5	17	121.4	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	32	30	35	37	1150
Parlier	36.6	320	119.5	104	73	101	71	100	70	97	68	75	73	38	24	30	34	1262
Pasadena	34.2	864	118.2	99	69	94	68	92	68	88	67	73	71	30	32	37	40	1551
Paso Robles AP	35.7	815	120.7	104	66	97	66	96	66	92	65	70	68	40	19	23	26	2973
Paso Robles CO	35.6	700	120.7	102	65	95	65	94	65	90	65	69	67	44	16	20	23	2885
Patterson	37.4	97	121.1	101	72	96	70	94	69	90	67	74	72	36	24	30	34	1240
Pedley	34	718	117.5	105	70	101	69	99	68	95	66	74	72	34	26	33	36	600
Pendleton MCB	33.3	63	117.3	92	68	87	67	85	67	81	66	71	69	22	34	39	41	1532

Pendleton MCB Coast	33.2	24	117.4	84	69	80	67	79	67	75	65	70	68	10	39	44	46	1782
Perris	33.8	1470	117.2	105	70	101	69	100	69	97	68	74	72	39	22	27	30	-
Petaluma FS 2	38.2	16	122.6	98	69	92	67	90	67	85	66	72	69	31	24	29	32	2959
Pico Rivera	34	180	118	98	70	91	69	89	69	85	67	72	70	24	31	35	38	-
Piedmont	37.8	325	122	96	68	89	66	87	65	82	63	70	68	23	31	33	36	-
Pinnacles NM	36.5	1307	121.2	98	68	94	67	93	66	89	64	70	68	45	20	26	29	2956
Pinole	38	10	122.3	91	66	87	65	86	65	82	64	69	67	25	30	35	38	-
Pismo Beach	35.1	80	120.6	92	66	85	64	84	64	80	62	67	65	16	30	34	37	2756
Pittsburg	38	50	121.8	102	70	97	68	95	68	90	67	72	70	34	26	32	35	-
Placentia	33.9	323	118	101	69	93	68	91	68	87	67	73	71	28	30	34	37	-
Placerville	38.7	1890	120.8	101	67	98	66	97	66	93	65	70	68	42	20	26	29	4086
Placerville IFG	38.7	2755	120.8	100	66	97	65	96	65	92	64	69	67	42	23	28	31	-
Platina	40.4	2260	122.9	96	65	92	64	91	63	87	61	67	65	36	13	20	24	-
Pleasant Hill	37.9	102	122	96	68	93	67	92	67	88	65	70	68	34	25	30	33	-
Pleasanton	37.6	350	121.8	97	68	94	67	93	67	89	65	70	68	35	24	29	32	-
Point Arena	38.9	100	123.7	76	62	72	60	71	60	67	58	63	61	19	29	32	34	4747
Point Arguello	34.6	76	120.7	75	64	71	63	69	62	65	59	65	63	17	29	32	35	3826
Point Mugu	34.1	14	119.1	88	68	81	67	79	67	75	66	70	68	15	33	37	39	2328
Point Piedras Blancas	35.7	59	121.3	73	60	67	59	65	59	61	57	62	60	10	36	41	43	3841
Pomona Cal Poly	34.1	740	117.8	102	70	98	69	97	69	93	67	74	72	36	27	32	35	1971
Port Chicago ND	38	50	122	98	69	94	68	92	68	88	66	71	69	34	28	33	36	-
Port Hueneme	34.2	13	119	88	68	81	67	79	67	75	66	70	68	15	33	37	39	2334
Porterville	36.1	393	119	106	71	102	70	101	70	97	69	74	72	36	25	30	33	2456
Portola	39.8	4850	120.5	92	63	89	61	88	61	84	59	65	63	48	-9	-3	1	7111
Posey 3 E	35.8	4960	119	89	62	86	61	85	61	82	59	65	63	26	9	16	21	-

Potter Valley PH	39.4	1015	123.1	101	68	96	67	94	67	89	65	70	68	40	20	26	29	3276
Poway Valley	33	500	117	100	70	94	69	93	69	89	68	73	71	26	29	33	35	-
Priest Valley	36.2	2300	120.7	97	66	93	65	92	65	88	63	69	67	34	13	20	24	4144
Prunedale	36.6	260	121.7	86	66	83	65	82	64	79	62	68	66	20	26	31	34	1100
Quartz Hill	34.6	2428	118.2	106	68	102	67	101	67	98	66	72	70	35	12	17	20	1455
Quincy	39.9	3409	120.9	101	64	98	63	97	63	93	62	68	66	45	1	6	13	5763
Ramona Spaulding	33.1	1480	116.8	103	70	97	69	96	69	92	68	73	71	40	22	28	31	-
Rancho Bernardo	33	500	117.1	96	69	91	68	89	68	85	67	72	70	26	29	34	36	-
Rancho Cordova	38.6	190	121.3	104	72	100	69	98	69	94	68	74	71	35	26	31	33	-
Rancho Mirage	33.8	248	116.4	117	74	113	73	112	73	109	72	79	78	33	26	31	34	374
Rancho Palos Verdes	33.7	216	118.2	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	14	38	43	46	-
Rancho San Diego	32.8	300	117.0	94	69	86	68	85	68	82	66	71	69	30	34	38	41	404
Rancho Santa Margarita	33.6	116	117.6	95	67	87	66	85	65	81	63	71	67	22	33	37	40	496
Randsburg	35.3	3570	117.7	105	67	102	66	101	66	97	65	70	68	30	19	25	28	2922
Red Bluff AP	40.2	342	122.3	107	70	104	69	102	68	98	66	73	71	31	24	29	31	2688
Redding FS 4	40.6	470	122.4	107	69	103	68	101	68	97	67	72	70	30	26	31	34	2544
Redlands	34.1	1318	117.2	106	70	102	69	101	69	98	67	74	72	34	27	32	35	1993
Redondo Beach	33.8	45	118.3	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	12	37	42	44	-
Redwood City	37.5	31	122.2	90	67	86	66	85	66	81	64	69	67	28	28	33	35	2599
Reedley	36.6	344	119.7	104	71	101	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	40	24	30	34	-
Reseda	34.2	736	118.5	103	71	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	71	32	28	33	36	664

Rialto	34.1	1254	117	105	70	101	69	100	68	96	66	74	72	35	28	33	35	-
Richardson Grove	40	500	123.8	96	67	92	66	91	66	87	64	69	67	28	25	30	33	-
Richmond	37.9	55	121.6	88	65	84	64	82	64	77	62	67	65	17	31	36	38	2684
Ridgecrest	35.6	2340	117.8	110	70	106	68	105	68	102	66	75	71	35	15	22	26	-
Rio Del Mar	37	50	121.9	94	67	88	66	87	65	83	63	69	67	30	27	32	35	1097
Rio Linda	38.6	86	121.5	104	72	100	70	98	70	94	68	74	71	32	28	33	35	1290
Ripon	37.7	61	121.1	102	70	97	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	37	23	30	33	1240
Riverbank	37.7	133	120.9	102	73	99	70	98	70	95	68	75	72	36	25	30	33	1240
Riverside Exp Sta	34	986	117.4	106	71	102	69	101	69	97	67	75	72	36	29	34	36	-
Riverside FS 3	34	840	117.4	104	70	100	69	99	68	95	65	74	72	37	27	32	35	1818
Rocklin	38.8	239	121.2	108	72	104	70	103	70	99	69	74	72	39	20	26	29	3143
Rodeo	38.1	15	122.3	93	67	90	66	88	66	84	64	70	68	23	28	33	36	823
Rohnert Park	38.4	106	122.6	99	69	96	68	95	68	92	66	71	69	33	24	27	29	-
Rolling Hills	33.6	216	119	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	15	38	43	46	-
Rosamond	34.8	2326	118.2	106	68	102	67	101	67	98	66	71	69	35	16	22	26	1455
Roseland	38.4	167	122.7	99	69	96	68	95	68	92	66	71	69	35	24	27	29	1249
Rosemead	34	275	118	98	70	90	69	88	69	84	67	72	70	27	30	35	37	-
Rosemont	38.3	190	121.4	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	32	30	35	37	1025
Roseville	38.7	160	121.2	105	71	102	70	100	70	96	68	74	71	36	24	30	34	-
Rossmoor	33.8	20	118.1	92	67	85	64	83	64	79	62	71	69	19	32	37	39	-
Rowland Hts	33.9	540	118	99	70	93	69	91	69	86	68	73	71	27	29	34	36	-
Rubidoux	34	792	117	106	71	102	70	101	70	97	68	75	73	36	27	32	35	-

Sacramento AP	38.5	17	121.5	104	72	100	70	98	70	94	68	74	71	35	26	31	33	2843
Sacramento CO	38.6	84	121.5	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	32	30	35	37	-
Saint Helena	38.5	225	122.5	102	70	98	69	97	69	93	67	72	70	40	22	28	31	2878
Saint Mary's College	37.8	623	122.1	98	69	93	68	91	68	86	66	71	69	28	21	27	30	3543
Salinas 3 E	36.7	85	121.6	86	66	83	65	82	64	79	62	68	66	20	26	31	34	-
Salinas AP	36.7	69	121.6	85	67	82	65	81	64	78	62	69	66	20	28	33	35	2959
Salt Springs PH	38.5	3700	120.2	95	62	92	61	91	61	87	59	66	64	27	19	25	28	3857
Salyer RS	40.9	623	123.6	102	69	95	67	93	66	87	64	70	68	33	22	28	31	-
San Anselmo	38	50	122	95	67	89	66	87	66	82	65	70	68	32	26	31	33	-
San Antonio Canyon	34.2	2394	117.7	100	68	96	67	94	67	90	65	72	70	33	29	35	39	-
San Antonio Mission	36	1060	117.7	99	69	94	68	92	68	88	67	71	69	28	19	25	28	-
San Bernardino	34.1	1125	117.3	106	70	102	69	101	69	98	68	75	72	39	27	31	33	1777
San Bruno	37.7	20	122.4	86	66	80	64	78	64	73	62	67	65	23	30	35	38	3042
San Carlos	37.5	26	122.3	92	67	88	65	86	65	82	63	68	66	28	28	33	35	-
San Clemente	33.4	208	118.6	91	68	85	67	84	67	80	66	71	69	12	31	35	37	-
San Diego AP	32.7	13	117.2	88	70	83	69	82	69	78	68	72	70	13	38	42	44	1507
San Dimas	34	955	118.4	102	70	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	72	35	30	35	37	-
San Fernando	34.3	977	118.5	104	71	99	70	98	70	94	68	74	72	37	30	35	37	1800
San Francisco AP	37.6	8	122.4	89	66	83	64	80	63	74	61	67	64	20	31	35	38	3042
San Francisco CO	37.8	52	122.4	84	65	79	63	77	62	71	60	66	63	14	38	41	44	3080
San Gabriel FD	34.1	450	118.1	99	70	94	69	92	69	88	68	73	71	30	30	35	37	1532
San Gregorio 2 SE	37.3	275	122.4	87	66	81	63	79	63	74	61	68	65	30	27	32	35	-
San Jacinto	33.8	1535	117	110	70	105	69	104	69	102	68	75	73	41	20	26	29	2376
San Jose	37.4	67	121.9	94	68	86	66	84	66	78	64	70	68	26	29	34	36	2438
San Leandro	37.7	45	122.2	89	67	83	64	81	64	76	62	69	66	22	28	33	35	-

San Lorenzo	37.7	45	122.1	89	67	83	64	81	64	76	62	69	66	23	28	33	36	-
San Luis Dam	37.1	277	121.1	97	68	91	66	90	66	86	64	70	68	32	25	30	33	-
San Luis Obispo	35.3	320	120.7	94	63	87	63	85	63	81	62	67	65	26	30	33	35	2498
San Marcos	33.1	567	117.2	97	69	98	68	94	68	84	67	72	70	29	26	31	34	662
San Marino	34.2	300	118.1	100	69	95	68	93	68	88	66	73	71	28	30	35	37	-
San Mateo	37.5	21	122.3	92	67	84	65	82	65	76	63	68	66	24	31	36	38	2655
San Nicholas Island	33.2	504	119.5	85	66	78	65	76	65	70	64	69	67	11	39	43	45	2454
San Pablo	37.6	30	122.3	90	65	84	63	82	63	77	61	69	66	17	29	34	37	-
San Pedro	33.7	10	118.3	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	72	70	13	35	31	34	1819
San Rafael	38	40	122.6	96	67	90	65	88	65	83	63	71	68	29	30	35	37	2440
San Ramon	37.7	360	122	99	69	93	67	91	67	86	65	70	68	35	24	29	32	1369
Sandberg	34.8	4517	118.7	95	63	91	61	90	61	87	59	67	65	32	17	21	24	4427
Sanger	36.7	364	119.6	105	72	101	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	37	24	30	34	-
Santa Ana FS	33.8	115	117.8	98	70	91	68	89	68	84	67	72	70	26	33	35	38	1430
Santa Barbara AP	34.4	9	119.8	90	69	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	20	29	34	36	2487
Santa Barbara CO	34.4	5	119.7	91	69	84	67	82	67	78	65	70	68	22	33	38	40	1994
Santa Clara Univ	37.4	88	121.9	90	67	87	65	86	65	82	63	69	67	30	29	34	36	2566
Santa Clarita	34.4	1300	118.5	103	71	98	70	97	70	93	68	74	72	36	30	35	37	-
Santa Cruz	37	125	122	94	68	88	66	86	66	81	64	69	67	28	27	32	35	3136
Santa Fe Springs	33.9	280	118.1	99	69	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	24	31	36	38	-
Santa Maria AP	34.9	236	120.5	90	66	83	64	82	63	78	61	67	65	23	25	31	33	3053
Santa Monica	34	15	118.5	85	67	78	66	76	66	72	64	69	67	15	39	44	46	1873
Santa Paula	34.4	263	119.1	101	71	94	70	92	70	87	68	73	71	28	28	33	35	2030
Santa Rosa	38.5	167	122.8	99	69	96	68	95	68	92	66	71	69	35	24	27	29	2980
Santee	32.8	400	117	96	69	91	68	90	68	87	67	72	70	20	25	30	33	-
Saratoga	37.3	500	122	96	67	88	66	86	66	80	65	70	68	31	27	32	35	-
Sausalito	37.9	10	122.5	85	66	80	65	78	65	73	63	67	65	12	30	34	36	-

Sawyer's Bar RS	41.3	2169	123.1	100	66	95	65	93	64	88	62	68	66	38	14	21	25	4102
Scotia	40.5	139	124.4	78	61	74	60	73	60	69	58	63	61	19	28	33	35	3954
Scotts Valley	37	400	122	94	68	88	66	86	66	81	64	69	67	28	27	32	35	1097
Seal Beach	33.8	21	118.1	94	69	86	68	84	67	80	65	71	69	15	35	40	42	1519
Seaside	36.6	17	122.9	85	66	79	64	77	64	73	62	67	65	20	30	35	37	-
Sebastapol	38.4	102	122.8	99	69	96	68	95	68	92	66	71	69	35	24	27	29	1249
Selma	36.6	305	119.6	104	73	101	71	100	70	97	68	75	73	38	24	30	34	-
Sepulveda	34.2	818	118.5	103	71	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	71	32	28	33	36	664
Shafter	35.5	345	119.2	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	28	24	29	32	2185
Shasta Dam	40.7	1076	122.4	105	69	101	68	99	68	95	67	72	70	27	29	34	36	2943
Shelter Cove	40	110	124.1	80	61	73	60	72	59	68	57	63	61	15	34	39	41	-
Sherman Oaks	34.2	657	118.5	103	71	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	71	28	29	34	37	664
Sierra City	39.6	4230	120.1	96	62	93	61	92	61	89	59	66	64	43	12	19	24	-
Sierra Madre	34.2	1153	118.1	102	69	96	68	94	68	90	67	73	71	27	32	37	39	-
Sierraville RS	39.6	4975	120.4	94	60	91	59	90	59	86	57	64	62	44	-10	-4	0	6893
Signal Hill	33.5	100	118.2	99	70	90	69	88	68	84	66	72	70	19	35	39	42	-
Simi Valley	34.4	500	118.8	98	70	93	68	91	68	87	66	73	71	30	28	33	35	-
Solana Beach	33	15	117.3	87	68	83	67	81	67	77	65	70	68	10	35	39	41	-
Soledad	36.4	200	121.3	90	67	87	65	86	65	82	64	70	67	23	24	29	32	1020
Sonoma	38.3	70	122.5	101	70	96	69	94	69	90	67	72	70	40	22	28	31	2998
Sonora RS	38	1749	120.4	103	68	100	67	99	67	95	66	72	70	34	20	26	29	3537
Soquel	37	50	122	94	67	88	66	86	65	81	63	69	67	24	27	32	35	1097
South El Monte	34	270	118.1	101	72	97	70	95	70	91	68	74	72	28	31	36	38	-
South Entr Yosemite	37.5	5120	119.6	92	61	88	60	87	60	84	59	64	62	36	8	15	20	5789

South Gate	33.9	120	118.2	97	70	90	69	88	69	84	67	72	70	21	32	37	39	-
South Laguna	33.6	100	117.7	91	69	83	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	18	30	33	36	586
South Lake Tahoe	38.9	6200	120	85	56	82	55	79	55	71	54	60	58	33	-2	3	10	-
South Oroville	39.5	174	121.6	106	71	104	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	37	25	30	33	1385
South Pasadena	34	657	118.2	99	69	94	68	92	68	88	67	73	71	30	31	36	38	-
South San Francisco	37.7	10	122.4	87	67	81	64	78	64	72	62	68	65	20	32	36	38	-
South San Gabriel	34.1	450	118.1	99	70	94	69	92	69	88	68	73	71	73	30	35	37	431
South Whittier	33.9	300	118	100	70	92	69	90	69	84	68	73	71	30	31	36	38	-
South Yuba City	39.1	59	121.6	105	69	101	69	100	69	96	68	72	71	36	24	29	32	1160
Spring Valley	32.7	300	117	94	69	86	68	85	68	82	66	71	69	30	34	38	41	-
Squaw Valley	39.2	6235	120.2	88	57	85	56	84	56	80	54	61	59	40	-10	-4	0	-
Squirrel Inn	34.2	5680	117.2	86	61	82	60	81	60	77	58	65	63	23	12	18	22	5175
Stanford	37.5	23	122.1	93	66	85	64	83	64	77	62	68	66	25	26	31	34	1103
Stanton	33.6	45	118	98	69	91	68	89	68	84	67	72	70	24	31	36	38	-
Stockton AP	37.9	22	121.3	103	71	98	69	97	69	93	67	73	71	35	24	28	30	2806
Stockton FS 4	38	12	121.3	101	70	96	68	95	68	91	67	72	70	37	24	28	30	2846
Stony Gorge Res	39.6	791	122.5	104	70	99	69	97	69	93	67	72	70	37	21	27	30	3149
Strawberry Valley	39.6	3808	121.1	96	63	93	62	92	62	88	60	66	64	32	14	21	25	5120
Studio City	34.3	620	118.4	102	70	97	69	95	69	91	67	73	71	31	28	33	36	664
Suisun City	38.2	72	122	103	71	98	69	96	68	91	66	73	70	35	24	29	32	1299
Sun City	33.7	1420	117.2	105	70	101	69	100	69	97	68	74	72	39	22	27	30	827
Sunland	34.3	1460	118.3	107	71	102	70	100	70	96	68	74	72	36	28	33	36	-
Sunnyvale	37.3	97	122	96	68	88	66	86	66	80	64	70	68	26	29	34	36	2511
Susanville AP	40.4	4148	120.6	98	62	95	61	94	61	90	59	66	64	38	-1	4	11	6233

Taft	35.1	987	119.5	106	71	102	70	101	70	98	68	74	72	34	26	31	35	934
Tahoe City	39.2	6230	120.1	84	56	81	55	80	55	76	53	60	58	36	2	7	14	8085
Tahoe Valley AP	38.9	6254	120.0	85	56	82	55	81	55	77	53	60	58	38	-5	2	6	-
Tamalpais-Homestead Valley	37.9	25	122.5	97	68	91	66	89	66	84	64	70	68	28	28	33	35	874
Tarzana	34.2	800	118.6	104	71	99	69	97	69	93	68	74	71	27	27	32	35	664
Tehachapi	35.1	3975	118.5	97	66	93	65	92	65	89	64	69	67	33	13	20	24	4494
Tejon Rancho	35	1425	118.8	107	71	103	70	102	70	99	68	74	72	27	24	29	32	2602
Temecula	33.5	1006	117.2	101	69	96	68	95	68	91	67	73	71	34	24	29	32	-
Temple City	34.1	403	118.1	101	70	95	69	93	69	89	68	73	71	27	30	35	37	-
Termo	40.9	5300	120.5	95	60	92	59	91	59	87	57	64	62	37	-17	-11	-4	-
Thermal AP	33.6	-112	116.1	114	74	110	74	109	74	106	74	80	79	29	26	31	35	1154
Thermalito	37.9	25	121.6	106	71	104	70	102	70	98	69	74	72	37	25	30	33	-
Thousand Oaks	34.2	810	118.8	98	69	93	68	92	68	88	67	72	70	30	27	32	35	-
Three Rivers PH 1	36.5	1140	118.9	105	70	102	69	101	69	98	67	73	71	38	24	30	32	2642
Tiburon	37.9	90	122.5	85	66	80	65	78	65	73	63	67	65	12	30	34	36	-
Tiger Creek PH	38.5	2355	120.5	100	66	96	65	95	65	92	63	69	67	36	20	26	29	3795
Torrance	33.8	110	118.3	93	69	86	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	18	32	37	39	1859
Tracy Carbona	37.7	140	121.4	102	70	97	68	95	68	90	67	72	70	38	24	29	32	2704
Tracy Pumps	37.8	61	121.4	104	71	99	69	97	69	92	68	73	71	39	23	28	31	-
Travis AFB	38.3	72	121.9	103	71	98	69	96	68	91	66	73	70	35	24	29	32	2725
Trinity Dam	40.8	2500	122.8	99	65	94	64	92	64	88	62	68	66	37	17	24	28	-
Trona	35.8	1695	117.4	113	72	109	70	108	70	105	68	76	73	35	18	24	27	2415

Truckee RS	39.3	5995	120.2	90	58	87	57	86	57	82	55	62	60	40	-10	-4	0	8230
Tujunga	34.3	1820	118.3	103	70	99	69	98	69	94	67	73	71	36	20	26	29	-
Tulare	36.2	290	119.4	105	72	101	71	100	71	96	69	74	72	39	24	30	34	-
Tulelake	42	4035	121.5	92	60	88	59	87	59	83	57	63	61	41	-5	0	6	6854
Turlock	37.5	100	120.9	104	72	100	70	99	70	95	68	74	72	40	24	30	34	-
Turntable Creek	40.8	1067	120.9	105	69	101	68	99	68	95	66	72	70	28	24	29	32	-
Tustin Foothills	33.8	500	117.8	99	71	92	69	90	69	85	68	73	71	27	28	31	34	550
Tustin Irvine Rch	33.7	118	117.8	99	71	92	69	90	69	85	68	73	71	27	28	31	34	1856
Twentynine Palms	34.1	1975	116.1	110	71	107	70	106	70	103	69	76	74	31	21	26	29	1973
Twin Lakes	38.7	7829	119.1	73	49	64	47	62	47	57	46	53	50	30	-7	-2	4	9196
Twitchell Dam	35	582	120.3	99	70	93	68	92	68	88	66	71	69	26	26	31	34	-
UCLA	34.1	430	118.4	93	69	86	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	20	39	43	46	1509
Ukiah	39.2	623	123.2	100	70	97	69	96	69	92	68	72	71	42	22	28	31	2958
Union City	37.6	5	122.1	90	67	87	66	85	65	81	63	69	67	20	25	30	33	-
Upland	34.1	1605	117.7	102	69	98	68	96	68	92	66	73	71	31	29	34	36	2175
Upper Lake RS	39.2	1347	123	98	68	95	67	94	66	91	64	73	71	39	18	34	36	-
Upper San Leandro	37.8	394	122.1	93	67	87	66	85	65	80	63	69	67	22	28	33	35	-
Vacaville	38.4	105	122	103	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	40	23	28	31	2788
Valinda	34	340	117.9	102	70	98	69	96	69	92	68	74	72	28	31	36	38	-
Valle Vista	33.8	1655	116.9	109	70	104	69	103	69	101	67	74	72	40	20	25	28	-
Vallejo	38.1	85	122.3	93	67	90	66	88	66	84	64	70	68	23	28	33	36	-
Valyermo RS	34.5	3600	117.9	100	67	96	66	95	66	91	65	70	68	41	12	19	24	3870
Van Nuys	34.2	708	118.5	103	71	98	69	96	69	92	67	74	71	30	28	33	39	664

Vandenburg AFB	34.7	368	122.8	85	62	77	61	75	61	71	60	64	62	16	30	35	37	3451
Ventura	34.3	341	119.3	89	68	82	67	80	67	76	66	70	68	15	29	34	36	-
Victorville Pumps	34.5	2858	117.3	105	67	101	65	100	64	97	62	70	68	39	14	24	27	3191
View Park	34	300	118.3	95	69	88	68	85	68	78	66	71	69	18	36	40	43	-
Villa Park	33.8	300	117.8	99	70	92	68	90	68	85	67	72	70	27	33	37	40	550
Vincent	34.5	3135	118.1	105	67	101	65	100	65	96	64	71	69	33	10	18	22	1455
Visalia	36.3	325	119.3	103	71	100	70	99	70	96	69	73	72	38	25	30	33	2459
Vista	33.2	510	117.2	96	69	90	68	89	68	85	67	72	70	16	30	35	37	-
Volta PH	40.5	2220	120.9	101	66	98	65	97	65	93	63	69	67	33	21	27	30	-
Walnut	34	550	117.9	101	70	97	69	96	69	92	69	74	72	30	28	33	35	-
Walnut Creek	37.9	245	122.1	100	69	94	67	92	67	87	66	71	69	32	23	29	31	-
Walnut Grove	38.2	23	121.5	102	70	98	69	96	69	92	68	72	71	37	24	30	32	-
Walnut Park	33.9	45	118.2	92	69	84	68	82	68	78	66	71	69	12	37	42	44	450
Warner Springs	33.3	3180	116.6	100	67	95	66	94	66	91	65	71	69	40	15	22	26	3591
Wasco	35.6	333	119.3	105	71	101	70	100	70	97	68	74	72	36	23	28	31	2466
Watsonville	36.9	95	121.8	86	66	82	64	81	63	79	61	68	65	22	28	33	35	3418
Weaverville RS	40.7	2050	122.9	100	67	95	66	93	65	89	63	69	67	46	10	17	22	4992
Weed FD	41.4	3590	122.4	92	63	89	62	88	61	84	59	65	63	35	4	12	17	-
West Athens	33.9	25	118.3	92	69	85	68	84	68	80	66	71	69	18	32	37	39	450
West Carson	33.8	100	118.3	92	69	87	68	85	68	81	66	71	69	18	32	37	39	-
West Compton	33.9	71	118.3	97	69	90	68	88	68	83	67	72	70	21	33	37	39	450
West Covina	34	365	117.9	102	70	98	69	96	69	92	68	74	72	34	29	34	36	-
West Hollywood	34	290	118.4	95	70	89	69	87	69	82	67	72	70	20	38	42	45	-

West Pittsburg	38	12	121.9	102	70	97	68	95	68	90	67	72	70	34	26	32	35	-
West Puente Valley	34	500	117.9	101	71	97	70	95	70	91	68	73	71	26	31	36	39	-
West Sacramento	38.6	19	121.5	104	72	100	70	98	70	94	68	74	71	35	26	31	33	1290
West Whittier-Los Nietos	34	320	118.1	99	69	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	24	31	35	38	-
Westlake Village	34.2	750	118.8	103	71	99	70	98	70	94	69	73	71	26	26	30	33	-
Westminster	33.8	38	118	95	70	88	68	86	68	81	67	72	70	23	33	38	41	-
Westmont	33.9	110	118.3	96	70	89	69	87	69	83	67	72	70	20	36	41	44	400
Whiskeytown Res	40.6	1295	122.6	105	69	101	68	100	68	96	67	72	70	31	25	30	33	-
White Mtn 1	37.5	10150	119.3	73	49	69	47	68	47	65	45	53	50	37	-15	-9	-6	-
White Mtn 2	37.6	12470	119.3	61	42	58	41	57	41	54	40	46	43	38	-20	-15	-12	-
Whittier	34	320	118	99	69	90	68	88	68	84	67	72	70	24	31	35	38	-
Wildomar	33.6	1255	117.3	103	70	99	69	98	69	94	68	74	72	36	23	28	30	827
Wildrose RS	36.3	4100		100	64	97	63	96	63	93	61	68	66	33	13	20	24	-
Williams	39.2	85	122.2	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	36	24	29	32	-
Willits	39.4	1350	123.3	95	66	89	65	87	64	82	62	68	66	38	18	24	27	-
Willow Brook	33.9	60	118.2	97	70	90	69	88	69	83	67	72	70	21	35	39	42	-
Willow Creek	41	461	123	104	70	98	68	96	68	92	66	71	69	35	22	28	31	-
Willows	39.5	140	122.2	104	71	100	70	98	70	94	68	73	71	36	22	28	31	2836
Windsor	38.5	130	122.8	99	69	96	68	95	68	92	66	71	69	35	24	27	29	1249
Winters	38.5	135	122	104	71	99	70	97	70	93	68	73	71	38	24	29	32	2593
Winton	37.4	168	120.6	103	71	100	69	99	69	95	67	73	71	36	21	27	30	1244

Woodcrest	33.9	1500	117.4	104	70	100	69	99	68	95	65	74	72	37	27	32	35	611
Woodfords	38.8	5671	119.8	92	59	89	58	88	58	84	56	63	61	32	0	5	12	6047
Woodlake	36.3	500	119.1	103	71	100	70	99	70	96	69	73	72	38	25	30	33	1130
Woodland	38.7	69	121.8	106	72	101	71	100	71	96	69	74	72	40	25	30	33	2708
Woodland Hills	34.2	944	118.6	104	71	99	70	97	70	93	68	74	72	32	26	31	34	664
Woodside	37.5	75	122.3	92	67	84	66	82	65	76	63	69	67	24	22	28	31	-
Yorba Linda	33.9	350	117.8	102	70	94	69	92	69	88	68	73	71	31	30	35	37	1643
Yosemite Park Hq	37.7	3970	119.6	97	63	94	62	93	62	90	60	67	65	38	11	18	23	4785
Yreka	41.7	2625	122.6	99	66	95	65	94	65	90	64	69	67	39	8	15	20	5395
Yuba City	39.1	70	121.6	105	69	101	69	100	69	96	68	72	71	36	24	29	32	-
Yucaipa	34	2600	117	106	68	102	67	101	67	98	65	73	71	35	27	32	35	-
Yucca Valley	34.2	2600	116.4	108	71	105	70	104	70	101	69	75	73	32	19	24	27	862

***Heating Degree Day** is a unit, based on temperature difference and time, used in estimating fuel consumption and specifying nominal annual heating load of a building. For any one day when the mean temperature is less than 65ºF (18ºC), there exist as many degree days as there are Fahrenheit degrees difference in temperature between mean temperature for the day and 65ºF (18ºC).

KEY TO ABBREVIATIONS:

AFB	Air Force Base
AFS	Air Force Station
AP	Airport
CO	City/County Office
FD	Fire Department
FS	Fire Station
MCB	Marine Corps Base
MCWB	Mean Coincident Wet Bulb
NAS	Naval Air Station
NM	National Monument
PH	Power House
RS	Ranger Station

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Joint Appendix JA3

Appendix JA3 – Time Dependent Valuation (TDV)

JA3.1 Scope and Purpose

Time dependent valuation (TDV) is the currency used to compare energy performance when the performance compliance method is used. TDV is also used to evaluate the cost effectiveness of measures and to perform other codes analysis. TDV replaces source energy, which was used to compare performance prior to the 2005 Standards.

TDV consists of large data sets that convert electricity, gas or propane to TDV energy. The rate of conversion varies for each hour of the year, for each climate zone and for each energy type (electricity, natural gas or propane). The conversion factors also vary by building type: low-rise residential and other building types, including nonresidential, hotel/motel and high-rise residential. There are a total of 144 hourly data sets (16 climate zones x 3 fuel types x 3 building types) where the 3 building types are residential 30 year, nonresidential 15 year, nonresidential 30 year. The actual TDV data may be downloaded from the Energy Commission's website.

Because of the length, the actual data is not published in this appendix.

JA3.2 Summary of Data

Table 3-1 through Table 3-3 give a statistical summary of the TDV conversion factors for electricity, natural gas and propane. Each table has the annual minimum, maximum, and average for each climate zone and building type.

(a) Table 3-1 – TDV Statistical Data – Electricity (kBtu/kWh)

(b) Table 3-2 – TDV Statistical Data – Natural Gas (kBtu/therm)

(c) Table 3-3 – TDV Statistical Data – Propane (kBtu/therm)

Table 3-1 – TDV Statistical Data – Electricity (kBtu/kWh)

	Residential			**Nonresidential (15yr)**			**Nonresidential (30 yr)**		
Climate Zone	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**
1	14.13~~21.23~~	27.22~~27.98~~	~~321.56~~309.69	~~20.41~~13.26	~~27.65~~28.21	~~372.38~~423.98	~~20.03~~12.99	~~27.63~~27.21	~~357.81~~333.97
2	13.92~~20.99~~	~~27.74~~26.97	~~653.65~~2755.84	~~20.19~~13.06	~~27.43~~27.97	~~780.03~~334.02	~~19.84~~12.81	~~27.43~~27.00	~~731.37~~2992.60
3	14.07~~21.16~~	~~27.91~~27.15	~~598.95~~2441.14	~~20.34~~13.19	~~27.58~~28.12	~~694.18~~2924.14	~~19.97~~12.93	~~27.57~~27.13	~~669.80~~2648.86
4	13.95~~21.01~~	27.01~~27.76~~	1866.06~~1998.26~~	13.22~~20.32~~	28.16~~27.56~~	2324.98~~2616.99~~	12.97~~19.96~~	27.18~~27.55~~	2028.71~~2243.72~~
5	14.15~~21.14~~	27.25~~27.89~~	669.24~~596.97~~	13.32~~20.32~~	28.27~~27.55~~	873.02~~709.91~~	13.05~~19.95~~	27.28~~27.54~~	724.78~~667.57~~
6	14.14~~19.06~~	26.96~~27.05~~	1501.89~~690.04~~	13.53~~19.10~~	28.11~~27.46~~	1546.57~~817.36~~	13.17~~18.47~~	27.13~~27.45~~	1632.17~~773.10~~
7	14.20~~19.54~~	27.06~~27.54~~	662.28~~564.71~~	13.51~~19.15~~	28.12~~27.54~~	1016.86~~649.76~~	13.15~~18.53~~	27.12~~27.53~~	717.65~~631.66~~
8	13.84~~18.75~~	26.61~~26.74~~	923.37~~1841.36~~	13.63~~19.06~~	28.23~~27.42~~	1103.70~~2184.05~~	13.27~~18.43~~	27.24~~27.42~~	1008.16~~2068.28~~
9	13.82~~18.63~~	26.58~~26.62~~	1878.92~~1710.08~~	13.57~~19.03~~	28.15~~27.40~~	2072.04~~1949.98~~	13.21~~18.41~~	27.17~~27.39~~	2052.46~~1920.73~~
10	13.81~~18.65~~	26.58~~26.64~~	682.02~~2377.82~~	13.52~~19.03~~	28.10~~27.40~~	917.99~~2730.74~~	13.16~~18.41~~	27.12~~27.39~~	743.46~~2671.70~~
11	13.96~~20.94~~	27.02~~27.69~~	1533.26~~2267.46~~	13.16~~20.28~~	28.08~~27.52~~	2162.91~~2749.35~~	12.93~~19.91~~	27.13~~27.50~~	1665.42~~2546.51~~
12	13.95~~20.97~~	27.01~~27.72~~	1507.16~~2750.73~~	13.16~~20.29~~	28.09~~27.52~~	2112.00~~3300.20~~	12.93~~19.92~~	27.14~~27.51~~	1637.22~~3090.01~~
13	13.89~~21.11~~	26.94~~27.86~~	2537.01~~2372.39~~	13.10~~20.58~~	28.02~~27.81~~	3109.71~~2847.17~~	12.86~~20.19~~	27.05~~27.79~~	2757.28~~2664.62~~
14	13.68~~18.80~~	26.42~~26.79~~	1911.10~~424.02~~	13.51~~19.19~~	28.09~~27.55~~	2454.87~~479.67~~	13.16~~18.55~~	27.11~~27.54~~	2090.42~~474.29~~
15	13.73~~18.88~~	26.48~~26.87~~	2068.49~~363.89~~	13.52~~19.19~~	28.10~~27.55~~	2533.73~~430.46~~	13.17~~18.56~~	27.12~~27.54~~	2261.44~~406.58~~
16	14.63~~19.86~~	27.54~~27.85~~	1286.61~~595.47~~	13.99~~19.76~~	28.66~~28.12~~	1591.54~~976.16~~	13.62~~19.06~~	27.65~~28.05~~	1396.28~~666.43~~

Table 3-2 – TDV Statistical Data – Natural Gas (kBtu/therm)

	Residential			Nonresidential (15yr)			Nonresidential (30 yr)		
Climate Zone	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**
1	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
2	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
3	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
4	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
5	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
6	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~
7	330.41~~175.40~~	352.40~~195.56~~	381.47~~221.62~~	226.80~~155.02~~	255.27~~181.49~~	293.31~~216.40~~	259.74~~172.99~~	287.70~~199.42~~	324.97~~234.05~~
8	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~
9	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~
10	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~
11	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
12	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
13	330.15~~175.62~~	351.04~~197.45~~	378.53~~225.86~~	226.53~~154.58~~	253.18~~179.13~~	288.62~~211.28~~	259.47~~172.52~~	285.66~~197.08~~	320.39~~229.02~~
14	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~
15	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~
16	330.33~~175.83~~	351.58~~198.44~~	379.63~~227.97~~	226.75~~154.80~~	254.56~~180.25~~	291.68~~213.70~~	259.69~~172.76~~	287.01~~198.18~~	323.37~~231.39~~

Table 3-3 – TDV Statistical Data – Propane (kBtu/therm)

	Residential			**Nonresidential (15yr)**			**Nonresidential (30 yr)**		
Climate Zone	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**	**Minimum**	**Average**	**Maximum**
1	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
2	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
3	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
4	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
5	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
6	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
7	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
8	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
9	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
10	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
11	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
12	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
13	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
14	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
15	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~
16	567.80~~397.94~~	626.40~~444.54~~	686.90~~492.65~~	451.71~~339.55~~	495.37~~378.87~~	540.44~~419.48~~	462.53~~371.89~~	505.74~~414.55~~	550.36~~458.59~~

Joint Appendix JA4

Appendix JA4 – U-factor, C-factor, and Thermal Mass Data

~~........ 3~~
~~........ 3~~
~~........ 3~~
~~........ 4~~
~~........ 5~~
~~........ 6~~
~~........ 6~~
~~........ 7~~
~~........ 7~~
~~........ 8~~
~~........ 8~~
~~........ 9~~
~~........ 9~~
~~........ 11~~
~~........ 12~~
~~........ 12~~
~~........ *15*Table 4.2.3 – U-factors of Structurally Insulated Panels (SIPS) Roof/Ceilings........ 17~~
~~........ 21~~
~~........23Table 4.2.6 –U-factors for Span Deck and Concrete Roofs........ 25~~
~~........ 27~~
~~........ 29~~
~~........ 30~~
~~........ 32~~
~~........ 32~~

~~38~~

~~41~~

~~43~~

~~*45*Table 4.3.7 – Properties of Concrete Sandwich Panels 44~~

~~52~~

~~54~~

~~56~~

~~57~~

~~58Table 4.3.13 – Thermal Properties of Insulating Concrete Forms 53~~

~~62~~

~~4~~

~~4~~

~~6~~

~~8~~

~~10~~

~~12~~

~~14~~

~~2~~

~~4~~

~~5~~

~~5Table 4.5.2 – Physical Properties of Materials 71~~

~~7~~

~~**Error! Bookmark not defined.**~~

~~35~~

JA4.1 Scope and Purpose

JA4.1.1 Introduction

The values in this appendix must be used for all residential and nonresidential prescriptive compliance calculations. California Energy Commission approved compliance software may make adjustments to the values in these tables using procedures described in this appendix.

The data tables are organized first by roofs, walls, and floors. For each, the data is further organized by construction type, beginning with wood framed construction, followed by metal framed construction, concrete and special construction assemblies. Each table features a letter/number coordinate system (shaded in gray) that can be used as an identifier for each value, i.e. 4.2.1-A10 indicates Table 4.2.1, Column A, Row 10. Construction assembly descriptions shall be concatenated first by row and then by column. For example, the descriptions of 4.2.1.-A20 and 4.3.1-H3 and shall be as follows (abbreviations are acceptable):

> Wood Framed Attic, Trusses@24 inch. OC, R-30 attic insulation, No continuous insulation
> Wood Framed Wall, Wd 2x4 @16 inch OC, R-13 cavity insulation, R-14 continuous insulation

The R-value representing the component(s) of a construction assembly may be rounded to the nearest whole R-value. If a construction assembly is not adequately represented in the tables below, the permit applicant or the manufacturer of the product may request the California Energy Commission approve alternative U-factors for the construction assembly. The California Energy Commission Executive Director will grant such approval, after reviewing submittals and supporting information from the applicant and the merits of the information to support the intended use. Acceptable calculation methods for determining a construction component’s R-value or overall assembly U-factor are based on ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamental* procedures, such as:

(a) Testing: Guarded Hot Plate (ASTM C177)
Heat Flow Meter (ASTM C518)
Hot Box Apparatus (ASTM C1363)

(b) Series/Parallel Path Calculation Method for wood framed assemblies of roof/ceilings, walls (above and below grade), and floors.

(c) Modified Zone Method for roof/ceilings, walls, and floor constructions that have metal framing.

New component(s) of a construction assembly approved by the Executive Director will be published as an addendum to this appendix for use by all compliance authors. Addenda may consist of new tables or additional rows or columns to existing tables.

NOTE: Insulation must be certified in accordance to Section 110.8(a).

JA4.1.2 California Energy Commission Approved Software

California Energy Commission approved software used for performance or prescriptive calculations may make adjustments to the data contained in this appendix to account for the special circumstances of particular constructions. This section defines the rules for making these adjustments. These adjustments may not be made when the tables are used manually. Software may have input screens where the user may choose a construction by entering the cavity insulation (or insulation penetrated by framing); the continuous insulation; and other factors such as framing spacing. To the software user, the process of using these tables may look very much like a traditional U-factor calculation.

JA4.1.2.1 Determining R-value and U-factor of Construction Assemblies

The installer shall provide documentation from the manufacturer supporting the installed R-value. Some products have R-value markings, others do not. For site applied insulation (i.e., loose-fill glass fiber and mineral fiber, cellulose, and spray polyurethane foam insulation), the insulation shall be installed in co~~m~~nformance to the manufacturer’s coverage chart, R-value chart, or similar performance data sheet.

Data presented in the tables is not inclusive of all materials or combinations of materials used in construction of residential and nonresidential buildings. Information presented for framed and nonframed assemblies provides a summary of the reference assembly components representing the R-value and U-factor necessary for determining prescriptive compliance with the Standards. This data is also used by approved compliance software to establish the required thermal efficiencies affecting energy use for the standard design building in performance compliance calculations.

R-value is used to describe insulation effectiveness, but R-value does not describe the overall performance of the complete assembly. Construction assemblies usually have more than one layer and each layer has its own conductance, or rate of heat transfer. The U-factor more fully describes the conductance of every component of the construction assembly.

The prescriptive compliance table values for framed and nonframed assemblies of wood and steel roof and ceilings, walls, and floors are developed from series and parallel path procedures of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE). Approved computer software uses more detailed calculations and must be used for all buildings using mass type construction. Prescriptive compliance can be demonstrated when the insulation’s R-value is equal to or greater than the R-value required for the envelope feature in the climate zone which the building is permitted for construction; or has an overall U-factor equal to or less than the U-factor required for the envelope feature in the climate zone which the building is permitted for construction.

For example, the R-value and U-factor of components within assemblies of wood framing that are not represented in the tables can be calculated using the procedure shown below (i.e., substituting for different components). For example, R-values of different insulation types can be inserted into Table 4.1.1 and the assembly’s overall R-value and U-factor can be determined. Each layer of the assembly is entered in sequence at a cross-section through its cavity, from outside to inside.

For more advanced assemblies, and for steel framed assemblies, within the California Building Code Compliance software (CBECC) for both residential and nonresidential buildings, the Energy Commission has developed an assembly calculator to automate ASHRAE procedures in order to help the building community in calculating R-values and U-factors of wood and metal framed assemblies with a higher degree of accuracy and speed. The output forms of this program can be used as part of a residential or nonresidential building permit submittal.

Table 4.1.1 U-Factor Calculations for Wood Framed Assembly

	Assembly Type: Wall 2x4 16 in. o.c	**R-Value**	**R-Value**	
	Framing Material: Wood			
	Assembly Components	**Cavity (R_c)**	**Frame (R_f)**	
	Outside air film	0.17	0.17	
1	3/8 inch 2-coat stucco	0.08	0.08	
2	1 inch, R-4 EPS insulating sheathing	4.0	4.0	
3	Building paper (felt)	0.06	0.06	
4	R-15 insulation	15	--	
5	2x4 inch doug fir framing @ R-0.99 per inch	--	3.47	
6	0.50 inch gypsum board	0.45	0.45	
	Inside air film	0.68	0.68	
	Subtotal	**20.44**	**8.91**	
	1/Rc X (1–(Frame% / 100))]	+ [(1/Rf)	X (Frame% / 100)]	Assembly U-Factor
	[(1/20.44) X (1- (25/100))]	+ [(1/8.91)	X (25/100)]	**0.065**

[1/Rc x (1 – (Frame% / 100))] + [(1/Rf) x (Frame% / 100)] = Assembly U-Factor
Where: Frame percentage (%) determined by Table 4.1.6

JA4.1.2.2 Accounting for Continuous Insulation R-value

Many of the tables in this appendix have columns for varying levels of continuous insulation. Continuous insulation is insulation that is uninterrupted by framing and provides a continuous insulating layer. Limits on the position of the continuous insulation and other factors are specified in each table. When data from a table is used manually, the R-value of the continuous insulation in the proposed construction shall be equal to or greater than the R-value shown in the column heading; no interpolation is permitted. California Energy Commission approved software used for performance or prescriptive calculations may account for any amount of continuous insulation using Equation 4-1. This adjustment may not be used, however, for continuous insulation with thermal resistance less than R-2.

Equation 4-1

$$U_{With.Cont.Insul} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{U_{Col.A}} + R_{Cont.Insul}}$$

Where:

$U_{With.Cont.Insul}$	Calculated U-factor of the construction assembly with a specific R-value of continuous insulation.
$U_{Col.A}$	A U-factor selected from column A.
$R_{Cont.Insul}$	The R-value of continuous insulation.

If insulation layers are added that are interrupted by furring strips, then the effective R-values from Table

4. 3.13 shall be used in Equation 4-1.

JA4.1.2.3 Accounting for Unusual Construction Layers

The assumptions that are the basis of the U-factors published in this appendix are documented in the paragraphs following each table. California Energy Commission approved software used for prescriptive or performance calculations may be used to make adjustments to these assumptions based on data entered by the software user. Adjustments may only be made, however, when the total R-value of the proposed construction is at least an R-2 greater than the documented assumption. Each table includes the assumptions used to determine the U-factors.

Equation 4-2 shall be used to make these adjustments.

Equation 4-2

$$U_{Proposed} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{U_{With.Cont.Insul}} + \Delta R_{Assumed}}$$

Where:

$U_{Proposed}$	Calculated U-factor of the proposed construction assembly.
$U_{With.Cont.Insul}$	The U-factor adjusted for continuous insulation using Equation 4-1.
$\Delta R_{Assumed}$	The difference in R-value between what was assumed in the table and the proposed construction for a continuous layer.

There are limits, however, on the types of adjustments that can be made.

(a) The difference in resistance shall be at least R-2. When calculating the difference in R-value, no changes in assumptions shall be made to the framing/insulation layer; the proposed construction shall assume the same values as the table.

(b) The thermal resistance of air layers shall be taken from the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, for a mean temperature of 50°F, a temperature difference of 20 °F and an effective emittance of 0.82.

(c) R-values for air layers for roof and ceiling assemblies shall be based on heat flow up. R-values for air layers for floor assemblies shall be based on heat flow down. R-values for other assemblies shall be based on horizontal heat flow. Air layers must be sealed on edges to prevent air layer mixing with ambient air.

(d) One additional air gap may be credited, but not air gaps that are within the framing insulation cavity layer; these are already accounted for in the published data. Air gaps of less than 0.5 inch thickness shall be considered to have an R-value of zero. An example of an acceptable additional air gap would be the space between a brick veneer and the sheathing on the framed wall.

JA4.1.2.4 Double Walls

The U-factor of double walls or other double assemblies may be determined by combining the U-factors from the individual construction assemblies that make up the double wall. The following equation shall be used.

Equation 4-3

$$U_{Combined} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{U_1} + \frac{1}{U_2}}$$

JA4.1.3 Tapered Insulation

If continuous roof insulation is tapered for drainage or other purposes, then the user may determine the overall U-factor in one of two ways:

(a) To determine the U-factor for the roof at the location where the insulation is at a minimum and where it is at a maximum. Take the average of these two U-factors. With the R-value compliance approach (prescriptive method only), calculate the R-value as the inverse of the average U-factor as determined above. R-values may not be averaged.

(b) Divide the roof into sub-areas for each one-inch increment of insulation and determine the U-factor of each sub-area. This approach may only be used with the performance method, and in this case, each sub area shall be modeled as a separate surface.

When roofs have a drain located near the center and when tapered insulation creates a slope to the drain, the surface area at the maximum insulation thickness will be significantly greater than the surface area at the minimum thickness, so the second method will give a more accurate result. The first method yields a conservative estimate for roofs with central drains.

JA4.1.4 Insulating Layers on Mass and Other Walls

The data in Table 4.3.14 may be used to modify the U-factors and C-factors from Table 4.3.5, Table 4.3.6, and Table 4.3.7 when an additional layer is added to the inside or outside of the mass wall. For exterior insulation finish systems (EIFS) or other insulation only systems, values should be selected from row 26 of Table 4.3.14 In these cases, the R-value of the layer is equal to the R-value of the insulation. The other choices from this table represent systems typically placed on the inside of mass walls. The following equations calculate the total U-factor or C-factor, where U_{mass} and C_{mass} are selected from Table 4.3.5, Table 4.3.6, or Table 4.3.7 and $R_{Outside}$ and R_{Inside} are selected from Table 4.3.14. $R_{outside}$ is selected from row 26 while R_{inside} is selected from rows 1 through 25.

$$U_{Total} = \frac{1}{R_{Outside} + \frac{1}{U_{Mass}} + R_{Inside}}$$

Equation 4-4

$$C_{Total} = \frac{1}{R_{Outside} + \frac{1}{C_{Mass}} + R_{Inside}}$$

Equation 4-5

The values from Table 4.3.14 may be used to modify the U-factors of other construction assemblies as well, when non-homogeneous layers are added (see Equation 4-1).

JA4.1.5 Wood Based Sheathing R-values

For the purpose of calculations for the Joint Appendices plywood, particle board, oriented strand board (OSB) and similar sheathing materials will all be considered Wood Based Sheathing. A single R-value will be used for each thickness listed regardless of the material. This approach simplifies calculations yet has little effect on the overall R-value of assemblies since the differences in sheathing R-value are minimal compared to the overall assembly.

R-values for Wood Based Sheathing

Thickness	R-value (ft^2-hr °F/Btu)
3/8 inch	0.36
1/2 inch	0.48
5/8 inch	0.60
3/4 inch	0.72
1 inch	0.96
1 1/4 inch	1.20

JA4.1.6 Framing Percentages for Calculating U-factors

The thermal resistance of framed assemblies is dependent on the assembly's total R-value, and the quality of construction to limit air intrusion within the assembly that can rob the insulation of its effectiveness. A given assembly type is made of several individual layers and components, each having specific resistance values. However, the assembly's R-value and overall U-factor is primarily affected by: (1) the R-value of insulation installed within the cavity, (2) the R-value of continuous insulating sheathing added to the interior or exterior face of the framing, and, (3) the amount of framing that interrupts the plane of insulation separating conditioned from unconditioned space. All framed assemblies shall include the framing percentages indicated in Table 4.1.6.

Advanced wall systems (AWS) reduce the amount of material required for wall framing which increases the insulation within the cavity by:

(a) Use of 24" oc framing

(b) Eliminating intermediate framing for cripple and king studs

(c) Use of single top plates

(d) Use of double stud corners

(e) Use of in-line (i.e., stack) framing to maintain continuity of transferring live loads of roof framing to wall framing, allowing roof sheathing and exterior siding to be installed at full widths

(f) Reducing framing for connections at interior partition walls (i.e., T-walls)

(g) Reducing window and door header size

Table 4.1.6 – Framing Percentages

Assembly Type	Framing Spacing	Framing Percentage
Walls	16"o.c.	25 %
	24"o.c.	22 %
	48"o.c.	4 %
AWS	24" o.c.	17%
Walls Metal	16"o.c.	15%
	24"o.c.	12%
Floors	16"o.c.	10 %
	24"o.c.	7 %
Roofs	16"o.c.	10 %
	24"o.c.	7 %
	48"o.c.	4 %

JA4.1.7 R-values and U-factors for Medium-Density Closed Cell and Low-Density Open Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam (SPF) Insulation:

These procedures apply to two types of SPF used as building insulation: medium-density closed cell SPF (ccSPF) and low-density open cell SPF (ocSPF).

(a) ccSPF: A spray applied polyurethane foam insulation having a closed cellular structure resulting in an installed nominal density of 1.5 to less than 2.5 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

R-value: The total R-value shall be calculated based on the nominal required thickness of the insulation multiplied by an R-value of 5.8 per inch. The R-value of ccSPF insulation shall meet or exceed the installed thickness specified in Table 4.1.7.

Alternatively, the total R-value may be calculated based on the thickness of insulation multiplied by the "tested R-value per inch" as ~~listed~~ certified by Department of Consumer Affairs, Bureau of ~~Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation~~Household Goods and Services~~in the Table of R-values or R-value Chart from the manufacturer's current ICC Evaluation Service Report (ESR) that shows compliance with *Acceptance Criteria for Spray-Applied Foam Plastic Insulation--AC377*~~. Supporting documentation showing the certified R-value per inch shall be made available at the site for verification and noted on the Certificate of Installation. Based on this calculation, the overall assembly U-factor shall be determined by selecting the assembly that matches the assembly type, framing configuration, and cavity insulation from the appropriate Reference Joint Appendix JA4 table or other approved method specified in Section JA4 of the Reference Appendices.

The R-value of the installed insulation shall be based on the verified thickness at an R-value of 5.8 per inch unless ~~an ESR~~supporting documentation is provided ~~with compliance documentation~~ that verifies use of other values. Approved compliance software shall make appropriate adjustments to account for the R-value and U-factor effects of the ccSPF assembly.

Nominal Thickness: ccSPF sprayed into framed cavities or on flat surfaces will expand with variable thicknesses, visibly appearing as undulations on the surface of the insulation. The average thickness of the foam insulation must meet or exceed the required R-value. Depressions in the foam insulation's surface shall not be greater than 1/2-inch of the required thickness at any given point of the surface area being insulated.

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ccSPF insulation is not required to fill the cavities of framed assemblies provided the installed thickness of insulation conforms to compliance documentation and that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 2.0 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Air Barrier: ccSPF installed as an air barrier shall be a minimum of 2.0 inches in thickness; alternatively, ccSPF insulation shall be installed at a thickness that meets an air permeance no greater than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential when tested in accordance to ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

(b) ocSPF: A spray applied polyurethane foam insulation having an open cellular structure resulting in an installed nominal density of 0.4 to less than 1.5 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

R-value: The total R-value shall be calculated based on the nominal required thickness of the insulation multiplied by an R-value of 3.6 per inch. The R-value of ocSPF insulation shall meet or exceed the installed thickness specified in Table 4.1.7.

Alternatively, the total R-value may be calculated based on the thickness of insulation multiplied by the "tested R-value per inch" as certified by Department of Consumer Affairs, Bureau of ~~Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation~~Household Goods and Services~~listed in the Table of R-values or R-value Chart from the manufacturer's current ICC Evaluation Service Report (ESR) that shows compliance with *Acceptance Criteria for Spray-Applied Foam Plastic Insulation--AC377*~~. Supporting documentation showing the certified R-value per inch shall be made available at the site for verification and noted on the Certificate of Installation. Based on this calculation, the overall assembly U-factor shall be determined by selecting the assembly that matches the assembly type, framing configuration, and cavity insulation from the appropriate Reference Joint Appendix JA4 table or other approved method specified in Section JA4 of the Reference Appendices.

The R-value of the installed insulation shall be based on the verified thickness at an R-value of 3.6 per inch unless ~~an ESR~~supporting documentation is provided ~~with compliance documentation~~ that verifies use of other values. Approved compliance software shall make appropriate adjustments to account for the R-value and U-factor effects of the ocSPF assembly.

Nominal Thickness: ocSPF sprayed into framed cavities or on flat surfaces will expand with variable thicknesses, visibly appearing as undulations on the surface of the insulation. The average thickness of the foam insulation must meet or exceed the required R-value. Depressions in the foam insulation surface shall not be greater than 1-inch of the required thickness provided these depressions do not exceed 10% of the surface area being insulated.

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ocSPF insulation shall completely fill cavities of 2x4 inch framing or less. Cavities greater than 2x4 inch framing dimensions may be filled to the thickness that meets the required R-value used for compliance provided that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 5.5 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Air Barrier: ocSPF installed as an air barrier shall be a minimum of 5.5 inches in thickness; alternatively, ocSPF insulation shall be installed at a thickness that meets an air permeance no greater than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential when tested in accordance to ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

Table 4.1.7: Required Thickness of SPF Insulation (inches) to Achieve Specified R-values

Equivalent R-Values for SPF insulation	**11**	**13**	**15**	**19**	**21**	**22**	**25**	**30**	**38**
Required thickness of ccSPF Insulation @ R5.8/inch	2.00	2.25	2.75	3.50	3.75	4.00	4.50	5.25	6.75
Required thickness of ocSPF insulation @ R3.6/inch	3.0	3.5	4.2	5.3	5.8	6.1	6.9	8.3	10.6

NOTE:
A HERS rater shall verify the installation of SPF insulation using the procedures specified in RA3.5.~~5~~6 whenever R-values other than the default R-value per inch listed in Table 4.1.7 are used for compliance (see "*~~R-value~~Thermal Specifications*" in sections RA3.5.~~5.0.1(a) and RA3.5.5.0.1(b)~~6.1).

JA4.2 Roofs and Ceilings

Table 4.2.1 – U-factors of Wood Framed Attic Roofs

~~Truss Spacing~~	~~R-value of Attic Insulation~~	Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation[1]								
			None	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**
Truss Spacing	R-value of Attic Insulation		**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	None	**1**	0.300	0.187	0.136	0.107	0.097	0.088	0.075	0.058
	R-11	**2**	0.079	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.051	0.048	0.044	0.037
	R-13	**3**	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047	0.045	0.041	0.036
	R-19	**4**	0.049	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.029
	R-21	**5**	0.042	0.039	0.036	0.034	0.032	0.031	0.030	0.026
	R-22	**6**	0.043	0.039	0.037	0.034	0.033	0.032	0.030	0.027
	R-25	**7**	0.038	0.035	0.033	0.031	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.025
	R-30	**8**	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.022
	R-38	**9**	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.019
	R-44	**10**	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.018	0.017	0.016
	R-49	**11**	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.018	0.017	0.017	0.016
	R-60	**12**	0.017	0.016	0.016	0.015	0.015	0.015	0.014	0.013
24 in. OC	None	**13**	0.305	0.189	0.137	0.108	0.097	0.089	0.075	0.058
	R-11	**14**	0.076	0.066	0.058	0.052	0.050	0.047	0.043	0.037
	R-13	**15**	0.068	0.060	0.054	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.041	0.035
	R-19	**16**	0.048	0.043	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.034	0.032	0.029
	R-21	**17**	0.043	0.040	0.037	0.034	0.033	0.032	0.030	0.027
	R-22	**18**	0.041	0.038	0.036	0.033	0.032	0.031	0.029	0.026
	R-25	**19**	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.024
	R-30	**20**	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.022
	R-38	**21**	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020	0.018
	R-44	**22**	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.018	0.017	0.016
	R-49	**23**	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.017	0.017	0.017	0.016	0.015
	R-60	**24**	0.016	0.016	0.015	0.015	0.014	0.014	0.014	0.013

Notes:

1. Continuous insulation shall be located at the ceiling, below the bottom chord of the truss and be uninterrupted by framing.

2. In climate zones 1 and 16 the insulating R-value of continuous insulation materials installed above the roofs waterproof membrane shall be multiplied by 0.8 before choosing the table column for determining assembly U-factor.

This table contains thermal performance data (U-factors) for wood framed attics where the ceiling provides the air barrier and the attic is ventilated. Wood trusses are the most common construction for low-rise residential buildings and for Type V nonresidential buildings. While the sketch shows a truss system with a flat ceiling, the data in this table may be used for scissor trusses and other non-flat trusses. If the bottom chord is not flat, then the slope should not exceed 4:12 for nonadhesive binder blown insulation. This table may also be used with composite trusses that have a wood top and bottom chord and metal struts connecting them.

For the majority of cases, values will be selected from column A of this table. Column A shall be used for the common situation where either batt or blown insulation is placed directly over the ceiling (and tapered at the edges). Builders or designers may increase thermal performance by adding a continuous insulation layer at the ceiling. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation. Continuous insulation does not include the blown or batt insulation that is over the bottom chord of the truss (this is already accounted for in the U-factors published in Column A).

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. For instance if the insulation is R-3, the R-2 column shall be used. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is selected manually. CEC approved compliance software, including those used for prescriptive compliance, may accurately account for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

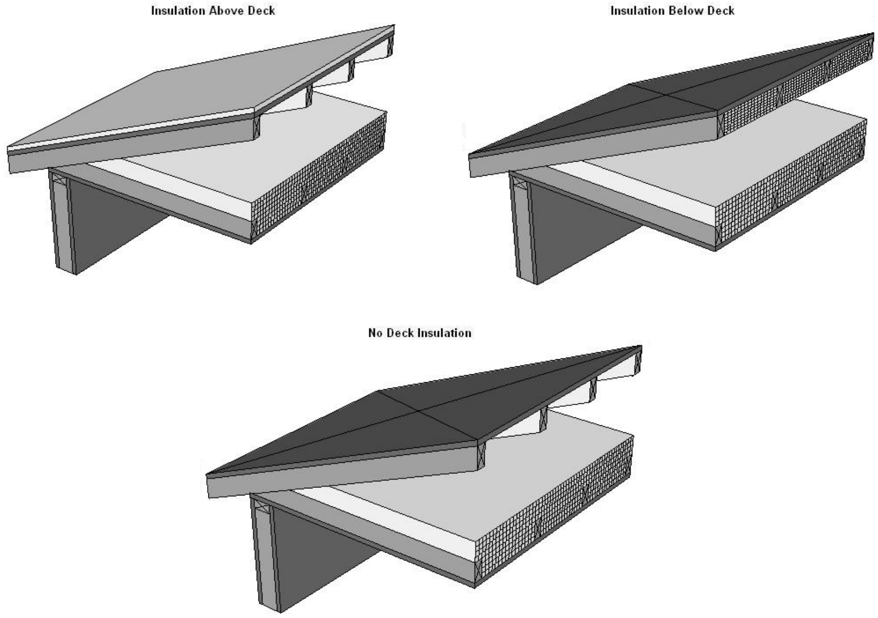


Figure 4.2.1 – Wood Framed Attic Roofs

This table shall not be used for cases where insulation is located at the roof of the attic. There are several situations in which this may be done. For example, in a sealed attic, foamed plastic may be sprayed onto the top chord of the trusses and onto the bottom of the upper structural deck (roof). The foam expands and cures with the intent of providing an airtight barrier and continuous insulation. Another case is where a plastic membrane or netting is installed above the ceiling (hanging below the roof deck) either in a ventilated or sealed (not ventilated) attic, and then either batt or blown insulation is installed over the netting. Since there are a number of issues related to these insulation techniques, special CEC approval is required.

Assumptions: This data is calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, asphalt shingles of R-0.44 (AR02), building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), ½ inch of wood based sheathing (Custom), an attic air space (greater than 3.5 inch) with a R-0.80, the insulation / framing layer, continuous insulation (if any) ½ inch gypsum board (GP01) of R-0.45, and an interior air film (heat flow up) of R-0.61. Wood 2x4 framing is assumed at the ceiling level. R-13 of attic insulation is assumed between the framing members; above that level, attic insulation is uninterrupted by framing. The framing percentage is assumed to be 10 percent for 16 inch on center and 7 percent for 24 inch on center. 7.25 percent of the attic insulation above the framing members is assumed to be at half depth, due to decreased depth of insulation at the eaves.

Table 4.2.2 – U-factors of Wood Framed Rafter Roofs

~~Rafter Spacing~~	~~R-value of Cavity Insulation~~	~~Nominal Framing Size~~	Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation[5]											
				None	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**	**R-17**	**R-20**	**R-23**
Rafter Spacing	R-value of Cavity Insulation	Nominal Framing Size		**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**			
16 in. OC	None	Any	**1**	0.297	0.186	0.136	0.107	0.096	0.088	0.075	0.058	0.049	0.043	0.038
	R-11[2]	2x4	**2**	0.084	0.072	0.063	0.056	0.053	0.050	0.046	0.039	0.035	0.031	0.029
	R-13[2]	2x4	**3**	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.043	0.037	0.033	0.030	0.028
	R-15[2]	2x4	**4**	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.035	0.032	0.029	0.027
	R-19[2]	2x4	**5**	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.043	0.037	0.033	0.030	0.028
	R-19[2,3]	2x4	**6**	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.033	0.030	0.028	0.026
	R-11	2x6	**7**	0.076	0.066	0.058	0.052	0.050	0.047	0.043	0.037	0.033	0.030	0.028
	R-13	2x6	**8**	0.069	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.047	0.044	0.041	0.035	0.032	0.029	0.027
	R-15	2x6	**9**	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.033	0.030	0.028	0.026
	R-19[2]	2x6	**10**	0.056	0.050	0.046	0.042	0.040	0.039	0.036	0.031	0.029	0.026	0.024
	R-21[2]	2x6	**11**	0.052	0.047	0.043	0.040	0.038	0.037	0.034	0.030	0.028	0.025	0.024
	R-19[2]	2x8	**12**	0.051	0.046	0.042	0.039	0.038	0.036	0.034	0.030	0.027	0.025	0.023
	R-21	2x8	**13**	0.048	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.035	0.032	0.029	0.026	0.024	0.023
	R-22	2x10	**14**	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.035	0.034	0.033	0.031	0.027	0.025	0.023	0.022
	R-25	2x10	**15**	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.033	0.032	0.031	0.029	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.021
	R-30[4]	2x10	**16**	0.036	0.034	0.031	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.026	0.024	0.022	0.021	0.020
	R-30	2x12	**17**	0.035	0.033	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.019
	R-38[4]	2x12	**18**	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.024	0.022	0.021	0.019	0.018	0.017
	R-38[4]	2x14	**19**	0.028	0.027	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.020	0.019	0.018	0.017
24 in. OC	None	Any	**25**	0.237	0.161	0.122	0.098	0.089	0.082	0.070	0.055	0.047	0.041	0.037
	R-11[2]	2x4	**26**	0.081	0.070	0.061	0.055	0.052	0.049	0.045	0.038	0.034	0.031	0.028
	R-13[2]	2x4	**27**	0.072	0.063	0.056	0.050	0.048	0.046	0.042	0.036	0.032	0.030	0.027
	R-15[2]	2x4	**28**	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.047	0.045	0.043	0.039	0.034	0.031	0.028	0.026

	R-19^{2}	2x4	**29**	0.072	0.063	0.056	0.050	0.048	0.046	0.042	0.036	0.032	0.030	0.027
	R-19^{2,3}	2x4	**30**	0.059	0.053	0.048	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.037	0.032	0.029	0.027	0.025
	R-11	2x6	**31**	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.043	0.037	0.033	0.030	0.028
	R-13	2x6	**32**	0.067	0.059	0.053	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.035	0.031	0.029	0.026
	R-15^{2}	2x6	**33**	0.060	0.054	0.048	0.044	0.042	0.041	0.038	0.033	0.030	0.027	0.025
	R-19^{2}	2x6	**34**	0.054	0.049	0.044	0.041	0.039	0.038	0.035	0.031	0.028	0.026	0.024
	R-21^{2}	2x6	**35**	0.049	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.029	0.027	0.025	0.023
	R-19^{2}	2x8	**36**	0.049	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.029	0.027	0.025	0.023
	R-21	2x8	**37**	0.046	0.042	0.039	0.036	0.035	0.034	0.032	0.028	0.026	0.024	0.022
	R-22	2x10	**38**	0.043	0.040	0.037	0.034	0.033	0.032	0.030	0.027	0.025	0.023	0.022
	R-25	2x10	**39**	0.039	0.036	0.034	0.032	0.031	0.030	0.028	0.025	0.023	0.022	0.021
	R-30^{4}	2x10	**40**	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.027	0.025	0.023	0.022	0.020	0.019
	R-30	2x12	**41**	0.033	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.023	0.021	0.020	0.019
	R-38 ^{4}	2x12	**42**	0.028	0.027	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.020	0.019	0.018	0.017
	R-38^{4}	2x14	**43**	0.027	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.018	0.017

Notes:

1. Rigid foam board used for cavity insulation must fill the entire cavity between the rafters and be sealed properly to prevent air gaps, and must be secured properly to prevent any future discrepancies in the construction assembly.

2. This assembly is only allowed where ventilation is provided between the bottom of the roof deck and the top of the insulation meeting CBC requirements or with enforcement agency official's approval of rafter attic assemblies with no ventilation air spaces.

3. This assembly requires insulation with an R-value per inch 5.6 or larger (k-factor 1.8 or less). This is board type insulation, mostly Isocyanurate. Medium density spray polyurethane foam may also be used to meet this requirement if the quality installation procedures and documentation in Reference Joint Appendix JA7 are followed, Documentation from Directory of Certified insulation materials must be provided to show compliance with this assembly.

4. Higher density fiberglass batt is needed to achieve the indicated U-factor. R-30 must be achieved with less than 8.25 inch full thickness. R-38 must be achieved with less than 10.25 inch thickness (R-30c, R-38c).

5. Continuous insulation shall be located at the ceiling or at the roof and be uninterrupted by framing. In climate zones 1 and 16 the insulating R-value of continuous insulation materials installed above the roofs waterproof membrane shall be multiplied by 0.8 before choosing the table column for determining assembly U-factor.

This table contains thermal performance data (U-factors) for wood framed rafter roofs. This is a common construction in ~~low-rise~~ residential buildings and in Type V nonresidential buildings. The rafters may be either flat or in a sloped application. Insulation is typically installed between the rafters. With this construction, the insulation is in contact with the ceiling and there is typically a one-inch air gap above the insulation so that moisture can be vented. Whether there is an air space above the insulation depends on local climate conditions and may not be required in some building permit jurisdictions. Filling the entire cavity of framed rafter assemblies with loose-fill mineral fiber and wool, cellulose, or ocSPF requires prior approval by the local building official.

For the majority of cases, U-factors will be selected from Column A of this table; this case covers insulation placed only in the cavity. When continuous insulation is installed either at the ceiling or at the roof, then U-factors from other columns may be selected. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation, but can also include mineral wool or other suitable materials.

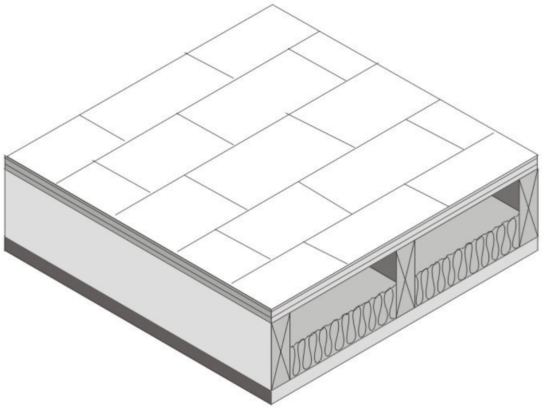


Figure 4.2.2 – Wood Frame Rafter Roof

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. For instance, if the continuous insulation is R-3, the R-2 column shall be used. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. CEC approved software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation and/or for layers using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: These data are calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, asphalt shingles of R-0.44 (AR02), building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), ½ inch of wood based sheathing (Custom), continuous insulation (optional), the insulation / framing layer with an air space of R-0.76 or R-0.80 (except for loose-fill mineral fiber and wool, cellulose, ccSPF, and ocSPF), 1/2 inch gypsum of R-0.45 (GP01), and an interior air film (heat flow up diagonally) of R-0.62. The continuous insulation may also be located at the ceiling, between the drywall and the framing. The framing percentage is assumed to be 10 percent for 16 inch OC and 7 percent for 24 inch. OC. The thickness of framing members is assumed to be the actual size of 3.50, 5.50, 7.25, 9.25, and 11.25 inches for 2x4, 2x6, 2x8, 2x10, and 2x12 nominal sizes. High-density batt insulation is assumed to be 8.5 inch thick for R-30 and 10.5 inch thick for R-38. The R-value of sprayed foam and cellulose insulation is assumed to be R-3.6 per inch.

Table 4.2.3 – U-factors of Structurally Insulated Panels (SIPS) Roof/Ceilings

Wood Framing Connection Type (spline)	***Insulation Core R-value[1]***	***Typical Panel Thickness***		***Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [4,5]***					
				None A	**R-2 B**	**R-4 C**	**R-5 D**	**R-7 E**	**R-8 F**
OSB	R-22	6.5 in	**1**	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.034	0.032	0.031
Single 2x	R-22	6.5 in	**2**	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.033	0.032
Double 2x	R-22	6.5 in	**3**	0.046	0.042	0.038	0.037	0.034	0.033
I-joist	R-22	6.5 in	**4**	0.043	0.039	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.032
OSB	R-28	8.25 in	**5**	0.033	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026
Single 2x	R-28	8.25 in	**6**	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.027	0.027
Double 2x	R-28	8.25 in	**7**	0.037	0.034	0.031	0.030	0.028	0.028
I-joist	R-28	8.25 in	**8**	0.033	0.310	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026
OSB	R-33[2]	6.5 in	**9**	0.030	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023
Single 2x	R-33[2]	6.5 in	**10**	0.031	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024
Double 2x	R-33[2]	6.5 in	**11**	0.034	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.026	0.025
I-joist	R-33[2]	6.5 in	**12**	0.031	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024
OSB	R-36	10.25 in	**13**	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.022
Single 2x	R-36	10.25 in	**14**	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022
Double 2x	R-36	10.25 in	**15**	0.029	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023
I-joist	R-36	10.25 in	**16**	0.027	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.022
OSB	R-44	12.25 in	**17**	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.018
Single 2x	R-44	12.25 in	**18**	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020	0.019
Double 2x	R-44	12.25 in	**19**	0.025	0.023	0.022	0.022	0.021	0.020
I-joist	R-44	12.25 in	**20**	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.019	0.019
OSB	R-55[3]	10.25 in	**21**	0.017	0.016	0.016	0.016	0.016	0.016
Single 2x	R-55[3]	10.25 in	**22**	0.019	0.018	0.018	0.018	0.017	0.016
Double 2x	R-55[3]	10.25 in	**23**	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.017
I-joist	R-55[3]	10.25 in	**24**	0.018	0.017	0.017	0.017	0.016	0.016
Steel Framing	R-14	48 in	**25**	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.055	0.049	0.047
Steel Framing	R-22	48 in	**26**	0.057	0.051	0.046	0.044	0.041	0.039
Steel Framing	R-28	48 in	**27**	0.047	0.043	0.040	0.039	0.035	0.034
Steel Framing	R-36	48 in	**28**	0.043	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.033	0.032

NOTES:

1. The insulation R-value must be at least R-21.7 in order to use this table. This table assumes moulded expanded polystyrene (EPS) unless noted otherwise. Although other insulation types are used by some SIP manufacturers, such as polyurethane and extruded expanded insulation (XPS), EPS is the most common insulation used in SIP construction.
2. R-33.2 is achievable using polyurethane insulation in 6.5" panels.
3. R-55.3 is achievable using polyurethane insulation in 10.25" panels.
4. Continuous insulation shall be at least R-2 and may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the roof/ceiling.
5. In climate zones 1 and 16 the insulating R-value of continuous insulation materials installed above the roof waterproof membrane shall be multiplied times 0.8 before choosing the table column for determining assembly U-factor.

Structural insulated panels (SIPs) consist of a rigid insulation core, securely bonded between two structural facings, to form a structural sandwich panel. SIPs are considered a non-framed assembly usually with little or no structural framing that penetrates the insulation layer, resulting in less thermal bridging across the insulation when compared to a conventional framed assembly.

This table gives U-factors for structurally insulated panels used in ceiling and roof constructions. Data is provided for three variations of this system. The system labeled “Wood Framing” uses wood spacers to separate the plywood or OSB boards and provide a means to connect the panels with mechanical fasteners. The system labeled “Steel Framing” uses steel framing members and mechanical fasteners at the joints. The system labeled “OSB Spline” uses splines to connect the panels so that framing members do not penetrate the insulation.

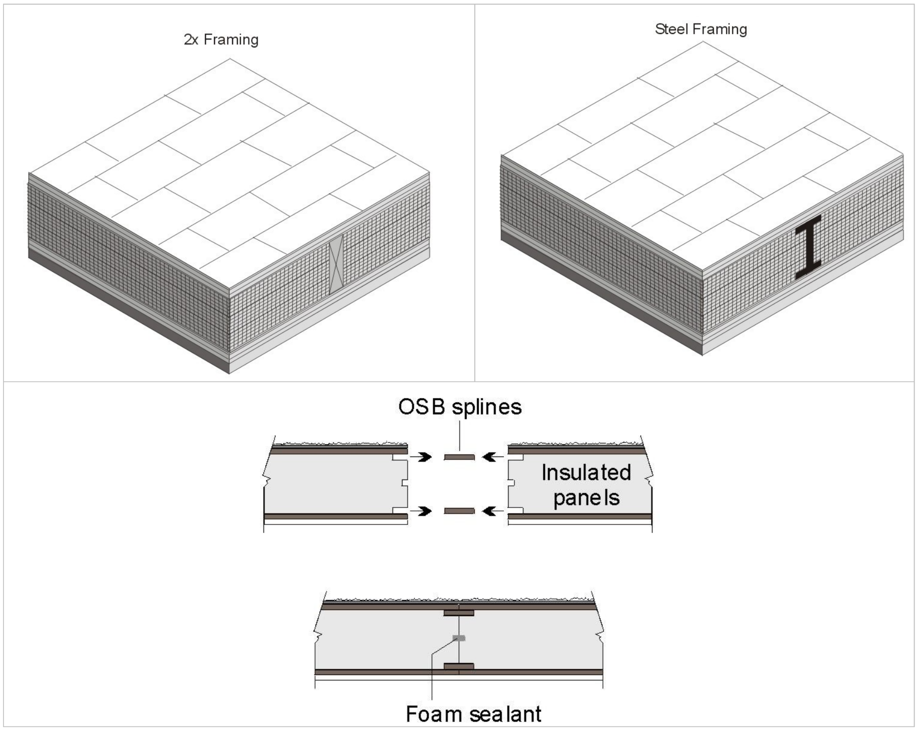


Figure 4.2.3 – SIPS Roof/Ceiling

Data from Column A will be used in most cases, since it is quite unusual to add continuous insulation to a panel that is basically all insulation anyway. If insulation is added, however, then the U-factor is selected from one of the other columns. If the tables are used manually, then the installed insulation shall have a thermal resistance at least as great as the column selected. When the table is used with CEC approved compliance software, then the R-value of any amount of continuous insulation may be accounted for along with the thermal resistance of special construction layers may be accounted for using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: The wood framing and OSB spline data are calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. Assemblies with metal framing are calculated using the ASHRAE Zone Calculation Method which is also documented in the 2005 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, asphalt shingles of R-0.44 (AR02), building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), 7/16 inch of OSB of R-0.69, the rigid insulation of R-3.85 per inch, another layer of 7/16 inch of OSB, ½ inch gypsum board of R-0.45 (GP01), an R-value of 0.99 per inch is assumed for the wood frame and an interior air film (heat flow up diagonally) of R-0.62. If an additional layer of insulation is used, this may be installed on either the interior or exterior of the SIPS panel assembly.

Table 4.2.4 – U-factors of Metal Framed Attic Roofs

Spacing	**Nominal Framing Size**	**Cavity Insulation R-Value:**		**Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation[1]**							
				R-0	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	Any	None	**1**	0.328	0.198	0.142	0.111	0.100	0.091	0.077	0.059
	2 x 4	R-11	**2**	0.126	0.101	0.084	0.072	0.067	0.063	0.056	0.046
	(3.65 in.)	R-13	**3**	0.121	0.097	0.082	0.070	0.066	0.061	0.055	0.045
		R-19	**4**	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047	0.045	0.042	0.036
		R-21	**5**	0.063	0.056	0.050	0046	0.044	0.042	0.039	0.033
		R-22	**6**	0.059	0.053	0.048	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.037	0.032
		R-25	**7**	0.051	0.046	0.042	0.039	0.038	0.036	0.034	0.030
		R-30	**8**	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.033	0.032	0.031	0.029	0.026
		R-38	**9**	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.022
		R-44	**10**	0.027	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020
		R-49	**11**	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.018
		R-60	**12**	0.019	0.018	0.018	0.017	0.017	0.016	0.016	0.015
24 in. OC	Any	None	**13**	0.324	0.197	0.141	0.110	0.099	0.090	0.076	0.059
	2 x 4	R-11	**14**	0.109	0.089	0.076	0.066	0.062	0.058	0.052	0.043
	(3.65 in.)	R-13	**15**	0.103	0.085	0.073	0.064	0.060	0.056	0.051	0.042
		R-19	**16**	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.047	0.045	0.043	0.039	0.034
		R-21	**17**	0.058	0.052	0.047	0.043	0.041	0.040	0.037	0.032
		R-22	**18**	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.041	0.040	0.038	0.035	0.031
		R-25	**19**	0.047	0.043	0.040	0.037	0.035	0.034	0.032	0.028
		R-30	**20**	0.039	0.036	0.034	0.032	0.031	0.030	0.028	0.025
		R-38	**21**	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.021
		R-44	**22**	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.022	0.022	0.022	0.021	0.019
		R-49	**23**	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.017
		R-60	**24**	0.019	0.018	0.018	0.017	0.017	0.016	0.016	0.015

Notes:

1 Continuous insulation shall be located at the ceiling or at the roof and be uninterrupted by framing.

2. In climate zones 1 and 16 the insulating R-value of continuous insulation materials installed above the roofs waterproof membrane shall be multiplied by 0.8 before choosing the table column for determining assembly U-factor.

This table contains U-factors for metal-framed attic roofs, where the ceiling is the air barrier and the attic is ventilated. This construction assembly is similar to those that are covered by Table

4.2.1, except that metal framing members are substituted for the wood-framing members. The top chord of the truss is typically sloped, while the bottom chord is typically flat. Data from this table may be used for cases where the bottom chord of the truss is sloped. If the bottom chord slopes more than 4:12, nonadhesive binder blown insulation must not be used.

For the majority of cases, values will be selected from column A of this table. Column A applies for the common situation where either batt or blown insulation is placed directly over the ceiling. Builders or designers may increase thermal performance by adding a continuous insulation layer at the ceiling. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyurnate foam insulation. Continuous insulation does not include the blown or batt insulation that is over the bottom chord of the truss (this is already accounted for in the first column data).

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. CEC approved software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation and for unusual construction layers using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Equation 4-1

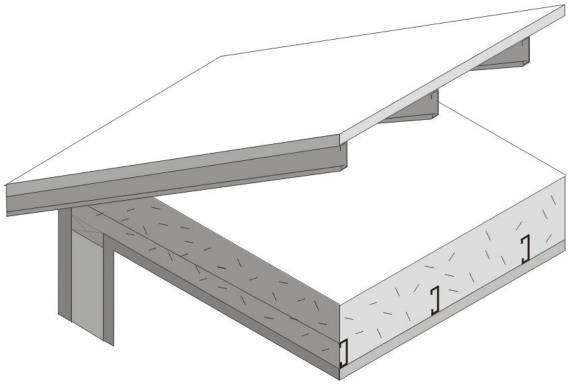


Figure 4.2.4 – Metal Framed Attic Roofs

Assumptions: These data are calculated using the zone method calculation documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, asphalt shingles of R-0.44 (AR02), building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), ½ inch of wood based sheathing (Custom), the attic air space (greater than 3.5 inch) of R-0.80, the insulation / framing layer, continuous insulation (if any) ½ inch gypsum of R-0.45 (GP01), and an interior air film (heat flow up) of R-0.61. The framing percentage is assumed to be 10 percent for 16 inch on center and 7 percent for 24 inch on center 7.25 percent of the attic insulation above the framing members is assumed to be at half depth, due to decreased depth of insulation at the eaves. Steel framing has

1.5 inch flange and is 0.0747 inch thick steel with no knockouts. U-factors calculated using EZ Frame 2.0.

Table 4.2.5 – U-factors of Metal Framed Rafter Roofs

Spacing	**R-Value of Insulation Between Framing**	**Nominal Framing Size**		**Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation**							
				R-0	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	None	Any	**1**	0.325	0.197	0.141	0.110	0.099	0.090	0.076	0.059
	R-11[2]	2x4	**2**	0.129	0.103	0.085	0.073	0.068	0.063	0.056	0.046
	R-13[2]	2x4	**3**	0.121	0.097	0.082	0.070	0.066	0.061	0.055	0.045
	R-15[2]	2x4	**4**	0.115	0.093	0.079	0.068	0.064	0.060	0.053	0.044
	R-19[2,3]	2x4	**5**	0.121	0.097	0.082	0.070	0.066	0.061	0.055	0.045
	R-11	2x6	**6**	0.123	0.099	0.082	0.071	0.066	0.062	0.055	0.045
	R-13	2x6	**7**	0.115	0.093	0.079	0.068	0.064	0.060	0.053	0.044
	R-15[2]	2x6	**8**	0.101	0.084	0.072	0.063	0.059	0.056	0.050	0.042
	R-19[2]	2x6	**9**	0.100	0.083	0.071	0.063	0.059	0.056	0.050	0.042
	R-19[2]	2x8	**10**	0.096	0.081	0.069	0.061	0.057	0.054	0.049	0.041
	R-21	2x8	**11**	0.093	0.078	0.068	0.060	0.056	0.053	0.048	0.040
	R-25	2x10	**12**	0.084	0.072	0.063	0.056	0.053	0.050	0.046	0.039
	R-30[4]	2x10	**13**	0.079	0.068	0.060	0.054	0.051	0.048	0.044	0.038
	R-30	2x12	**14**	0.076	0.066	0.058	0.052	0.050	0.047	0.043	0.037
	R-38 [4]	2x12	**15**	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047	0.045	0.042	0.036
	R-38 [4]	2x14	**16**	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.035
24 in. OC	None	Any	**22**	0.322	0.196	0.141	0.110	0.099	0.090	0.076	0.058
	R-11[2]	2x4	**23**	0.111	0.091	0.077	0.067	0.062	0.059	0.053	0.043
	R-13[2]	2x4	**24**	0.102	0.085	0.072	0.063	0.060	0.056	0.050	0.042
	R-15[2]	2x4	**25**	0.096	0.081	0.069	0.061	0.057	0.054	0.049	0.041
	R-19[2,3]	2x4	**26**	0.102	0.085	0.072	0.063	0.060	0.056	0.050	0.042
	R-11	2x6	**27**	0.107	0.088	0.075	0.065	0.061	0.058	0.052	0.043
	R-13	2x6	**28**	0.099	0.083	0.071	0.062	0.058	0.055	0.050	0.041
	R-15[2]	2x6	**29**	0.086	0.073	0.064	0.057	0.054	0.051	0.046	0.039
	R-19[2]	2x6	**30**	0.083	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.052	0.050	0.045	0.038
	R-19[2]	2x8	**31**	0.080	0.0690	0.061	0.054	0.051	0.049	0.044	0.038
	R-21	2x8	**32**	0.076	0.066	0.058	0.052	0.050	0.047	0.043	0.037
	R-25	2x10	**33**	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.035
	R-30[4]	2x10	**34**	0.063	0.056	0.050	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.039	0.033
	R-30	2x12	**35**	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.033
	R-38[4]	2x12	**36**	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.041	0.040	0.038	0.035	0.031
	R-38[4]	2x14	**37**	0.053	0.048	0.044	0.040	0.039	0.037	0.035	0.030

Notes:

1. Rigid foam board used for cavity insulation must fill the entire cavity between the rafters and be sealed properly to prevent air gaps, and must be secured properly to prevent any future discrepancies in the construction assembly.

2. This assembly is only allowed where ventilation is provided between the bottom of the roof deck and the top of the insulation meeting, CBC requirements or enforcement agency officials approval of rafter attic assemblies with no ventilation air spaces.

3. This assembly requires insulation with an R-value per inch 5.6 or larger (k-factor 1.8 or less). This is board type insulation, mostly Isocyanurate. Medium density spray polyurethane foam may also be used to meet this requirement if the quality installation procedures and documentation in Joint Appendix 7 are followed. Documentation from Directory of Certified insulation materials must be provided to show compliance with this assembly.

4. Higher density fiberglass batt is needed to achieve the indicated U-factor. R-30 must be achieved with less than 8.25 inch full thickness. R-38 must be achieved with less than 10.25 inch thickness (R-30c, R-38c).

This table contains pre-calculated U-factors for metal-framed rafter roofs where the ceiling is the air barrier. This construction assembly is similar to that covered by Table 4.2.2 except that metal framing members are substituted for the wood-framing members. The rafters may be either flat or in a sloped application. Insulation is typically installed between the rafters. With this construction, the insulation is in contact with the ceiling and there is typically a one-inch air gap above the insulation so that moisture can be vented. Whether there is an air space above the insulation depends on local climate conditions and may not be required in some building permit jurisdictions.

U-factors are selected from Column A of this table when there is no continuous insulation. When continuous insulation is installed either at the ceiling or at the roof, then U-factors from other columns may be selected. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation, but can also include mineral wool or other suitable materials.

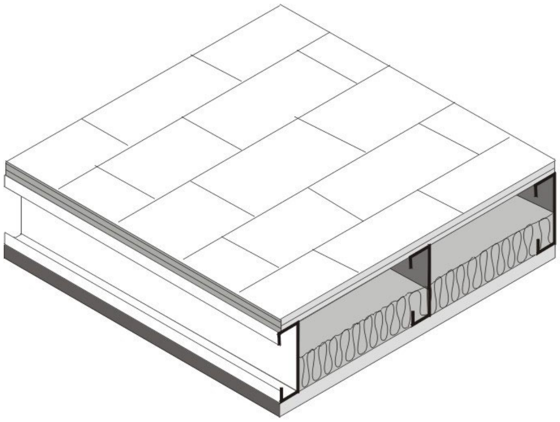


Figure 4.2.5 – Metal Framed Rafter Roof

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. For instance, if the insulation is R-3, the R-2 column shall be used. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation and/or for unusual construction layers using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: These data are calculated using the zone calculation method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-

0.17, asphalt shingles of R-0.44 (AR02), building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), ½ inch of wood based sheathing (Custom), the insulation / framing layer, ½ inch gypsum of R-0.45 (GP01), and an interior air film (heat flow up diagonally) of R-0.62 The continuous insulation may either be located at the ceiling or over the structural deck. The thickness of framing members is assumed to be 3.50, 5.50, 7.25, 9.25, and 11.25 inch for 2x4, 2x6, 2x8, 2x10, and 2x12 nominal sizes. High-density batt insulation is assumed to be 8.5 in. thick for R-30 and 10.5 in thick for R-38. Framing spacing is 10 percent for 16 inches on center and 7 percent for 24 inches on center. Steel framing has 1.5 inch flange and is 0.075 inch thick steel with no knockouts. U-factors calculated using EZ Frame 2.0.

Table 4.2.6 –U-factors for Span Deck and Concrete Roofs

Fireproofing	**Concrete Topping Over Metal Deck**		**R-value of Continuous Insulation**									
			None	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-12**	**R-15**	**R-20**	**R-25**	**R-30**
			A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**	**I**	**J**
Yes	None	**1**	0.348	0.145	0.113	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.056	0.044	0.036	0.030
	2 in.	**2**	0.324	0.141	0.110	0.090	0.076	0.066	0.055	0.043	0.036	0.030
	4 in.	**3**	0.302	0.137	0.107	0.088	0.075	0.065	0.055	0.043	0.035	0.030
	6 in.	**4**	0.283	0.133	0.105	0.087	0.074	0.064	0.054	0.042	0.035	0.030
No	None	**5**	0.503	0.167	0.125	0.100	0.083	0.071	0.059	0.045	0.037	0.031
	2 in.	**6**	0.452	0.161	0.122	0.098	0.082	0.070	0.058	0.045	0.037	0.031
	4 in.	**7**	0.412	0.156	0.119	0.096	0.080	0.069	0.057	0.045	0.036	0.031
	6 in.	**8**	0.377	0.150	0.116	0.094	0.079	0.068	0.057	0.044	0.036	0.031

1. In climate zones 1 and 16 the insulating R-value of continuous insulation materials installed above the roof waterproof membrane shall be multiplied by 0.8 before choosing the table column for determining assembly U-factor.

The constructions in this table are typical of Type I and Type II steel framed or concrete nonresidential buildings. The construction consists of a metal deck with or without a concrete topping. It may also be used for a metal deck or even wood deck ceiling as long as the insulation is continuous. Fireproofing may be sprayed onto the underside of the metal deck; it also covers steel structural members. Insulation is typically installed above the structural deck and below the waterproof membrane. This table may also be used for reinforced concrete roofs that do not have a metal deck. In this case, the fireproofing will typically not be installed and choices from the table should be made accordingly.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation and for unusual construction layers using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2. If the data is adjusted using Equation 4-2, the user shall take credit for a ceiling and the air space above the ceiling only if the ceiling serves as an air barrier. Suspended or T-bar ceilings do not serve as air barriers.

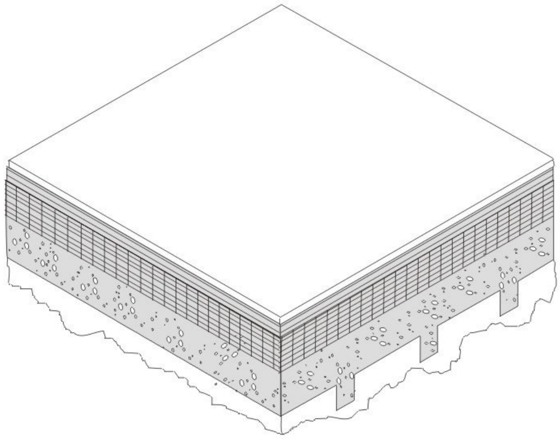


Figure 4.2.6 – Span Deck and Concrete Roof

Assumptions: These calculations are made using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. The assembly is assumed to consist of an exterior air film of R-0.17, a single ply roofing membrane (R-0.15), protective board (R-1.06), continuous insulation (if any), concrete topping with a density of 120 lb/ft and an R-value of 0.11 per inch (if any), metal span deck (negligible), and fireproofing (R-0.88). While a suspended ceiling typically exists below the structure, this is not considered part of the construction assembly therefore the same U-values are used for assemblies with or without suspended ceilings. The fireproofing is assumed to be equivalent to 60 lb/ft^3 concrete with a resistance of 0.44 per inch.

Table 4.2.7 – U-factors for Metal Building Roofs

Insulation System	R-Value of Insulation	Overall U-Factor for Entire Base Roof Assembly		Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation								
				R-6	R-9	R-13	R-15	R-19	R-22	R-25	R-32	R-38
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**	**I**
Screw Down Roofs (no Thermal Blocks)	R-10	0.184	**1**	0.087	0.069	0.054	0.049	0.041	0.036	0.033	0.027	0.023
	R-11	0.182	**2**	0.087	0.069	0.054	0.049	0.041	0.036	0.033	0.027	0.023
	R-13	0.174	**3**	0.085	0.068	0.053	0.048	0.040	0.036	0.033	0.026	0.023
	R-16	0.157	**4**	0.081	0.065	0.052	0.047	0.039	0.035	0.032	0.026	0.023
	R-19	0.151	**5**	0.079	0.064	0.051	0.046	0.039	0.035	0.032	0.026	0.022
Standing Seam Roof with Single Layer of Insulation Draped over Purlins and Compressed. Thermal blocks at supports.[2]	None	1.280	**6**	0.147	0.102	0.073	0.063	0.051	0.044	0.039	0.031	0.026
	R-10	0.115	**7**	0.068	0.057	0.046	0.042	0.036	0.033	0.030	0.025	0.021
	R-11	0.107	**8**	0.065	0.055	0.045	0.041	0.035	0.032	0.029	0.024	0.021
	R-13	0.101	**9**	0.063	0.053	0.044	0.040	0.035	0.031	0.029	0.024	0.021
	R-16	0.096	**10**	0.061	0.052	0.043	0.039	0.034	0.031	0.028	0.024	0.021
	R-19	0.082	**11**	0.055	0.047	0.040	0.037	0.032	0.029	0.027	0.023	0.020
Standing Seam Roof with Double Layer of Insulation.[3]Thermal blocks at supports.[2]	R-10 + R-10	0.088	**12**	0.058	0.049	0.041	0.038	0.033	0.030	0.028	0.023	0.020
	R-10 + R-11	0.086	**13**	0.057	0.048	0.041	0.038	0.033	0.030	0.027	0.023	0.020
	R-11 + R-11	0.085	**14**	0.056	0.048	0.040	0.037	0.033	0.030	0.027	0.023	0.020
	R-10 + R-13	0.084	**15**	0.056	0.048	0.040	0.037	0.032	0.029	0.027	0.023	0.020
	R-11 + R-13	0.082	**16**	0.055	0.047	0.040	0.037	0.032	0.029	0.027	0.023	0.020
	R-13 + R-13	0.075	**17**	0.052	0.045	0.038	0.035	0.031	0.028	0.026	0.022	0.019
	R-10 + R-19	0.074	**18**	0.051	0.044	0.038	0.035	0.031	0.028	0.026	0.022	0.019
	R-11 + R-19	0.072	**19**	0.050	0.044	0.037	0.035	0.030	0.028	0.026	0.022	0.019
	R-13 + R-19	0.068	**20**	0.048	0.042	0.036	0.034	0.030	0.027	0.025	0.021	0.019
	R-16 + R-19	0.065	**21**	0.047	0.041	0.035	0.033	0.029	0.027	0.025	0.021	0.019
	R-19 + R-19	0.060	**22**	0.044	0.039	0.034	0.032	0.028	0.026	0.024	0.021	0.018
Filled Cavity with Thermal Blocks [3,4,5]	R10 + R-19	0.041	**23**	0.033	0.030	0.027	0.025	0.023	0.022	0.020	0.018	0.016

Notes:

1. A roof must have metal purlins no closer than 4 ft on center to use this table. If the roof deck is attached to the purlins more frequently than 12 in oc, 0.008 must be added to the U-factors in this table.

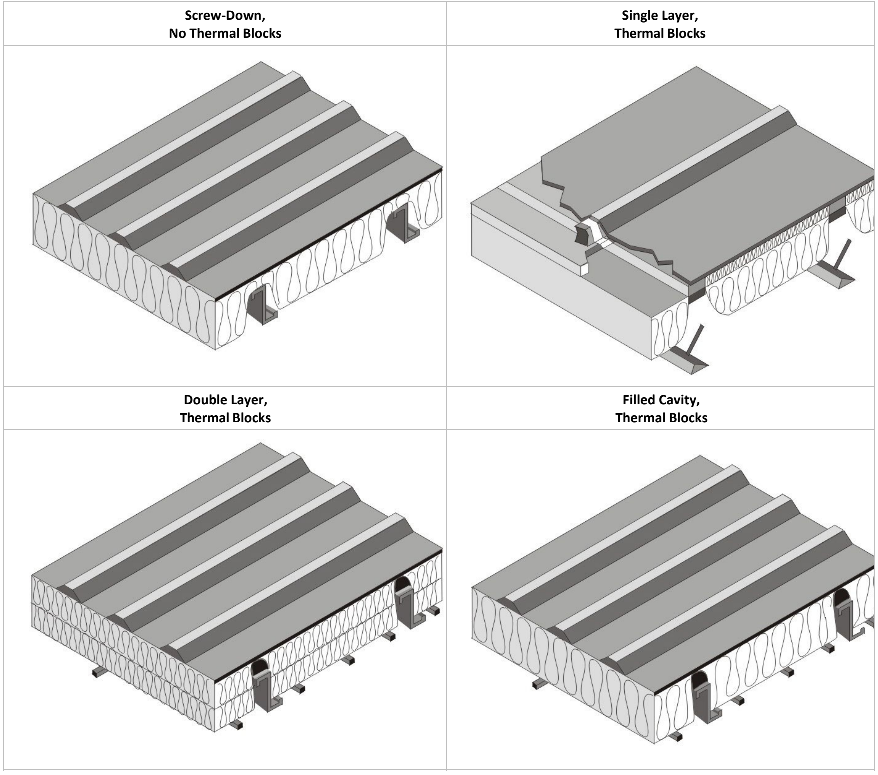
2. Thermal blocks are an R-3 of rigid insulation, which extends 1.5" beyond the width of the purlin on each side.

3. Multiple R-values are listed in order from outside to inside. First layer is parallel to the purlins, and supported by a system; second layer is laid on top of the purlins.

4. Thermal blocks are an R-5 of rigid insulation, which extends 1.5" beyond the width of the purlin on each side.

5. In climate zones 1 and 16 the insulating R-value of continuous insulation materials installed above the roof waterproof membrane shall be multiplied times 0.8 before choosing the table column for determining assembly U-factor.

The U-factors in this table are intended for use with metal building roofs. This type of construction is typical for manufacturing and warehouse facilities, but is used for other building types as well. The typical method of insulating this type of building is to drape vinyl backed fiberglass insulation over the metal purlins before the metal deck is attached with metal screws. With this method, the insulation is compressed at the supports, reducing its effectiveness. The first part of the table contains values for this insulation technique. The second section of the table has data for the case when a thermal block is used at the support. The insulation is still compressed, but the thermal block, which generally consists of an 8 inch wide strip of foam insulation, improves the thermal performance. The third section of the table deals with systems that involve two layers of insulation.



Screw-Down, No Thermal Blocks

Single Layer, Thermal Blocks

Double Layer, Thermal Blocks

Filled Cavity, Thermal Blocks

Figure 4.2.7 – Metal Building Roofs

For the majority of cases, values will be selected from column A of this table. Builders or designers may increase thermal performance by adding a continuous insulation layer between the metal decking and the structural supports. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation using Equation 4-1.

Assumptions: Data in Column A of this table is taken from the ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004, Appendix A. The data is also published in the NAIMA *Compliance for Metal Buildings*, 1997.

Table 4.2.8 – U-factors for Insulated Ceiling with Removable Panels

R-value of Insulation Over Suspended Ceiling		**U-factor A**
~~**R-value of Insulation Over Suspended Ceiling**~~		~~**A**~~
None	**1**	0.304
7	**2**	0.152
11	**3**	0.132
13	**4**	0.126
19	**5**	0.113
21	**6**	0.110
22	**7**	0.109
30	**8**	0.102
38	**9**	0.098
49	**10**	0.094
60	**11**	0.092

This table includes U-factors for the case of insulation placed over suspended ceilings. This situation is only permitted for a combined floor area no greater than 2,000 square feet in an otherwise unconditioned building, and when the average height of the space between the ceiling and the roof over these spaces is greater than 12 feet. The suspended ceiling does not provide an effective air barrier and leakage is accounted for in the calculations.

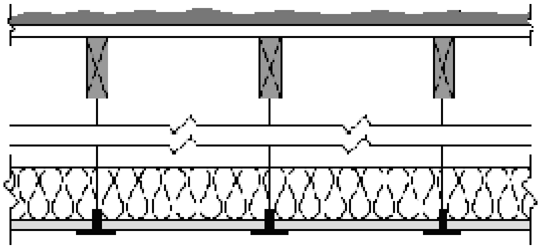


Figure 4.2.8 – Insulated Ceiling with Removable Panels

Assumptions: These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a built-up roof of R-0.33 (BR01), ¾ inch wood based sheathing (Custom), a twelve foot air space of R-0.80, the insulation (for the insulated portion), removable ceiling panels with a R-0.50 and an interior air film (heat flow up) of R-0.61. 75 percent of the ceiling is assumed covered by insulation and the remainder is not insulated. The uninsulated portion includes lighting fixtures and areas where the insulation is not continuous. A correction factor of 0.005 is added to the resulting U-factor to account for infiltration through the suspended ceiling and lighting fixtures.

Table 4.2.9 – U-factors of Insulated Metal Panel Roofs and Ceilings

Panel Thickness		**U-factor (Btu/^{0}F-ft^2)** **A**
~~**Panel Thickness**~~		~~**A**~~
2″	**1**	0.079
2 ½″	**2**	0.064
3″	**3**	0.054
4″	**4**	0.041
5″	**5**	0.033
6″	**6**	0.028

This table contains thermal performance data (U-factors) for foamed-in-place, insulated metal panels consisting of liquid polyurethane or polyisocyanurate injected between metal skins in individual molds or on fully automated production lines. Metal building construction is the most common application for this product where the metal panel is fastened to the frame of the structure. This table can only be used for insulated panels that are factory built. This table does not apply to panels that utilize polystyrene, or to field applied products such as spray applied insulations.

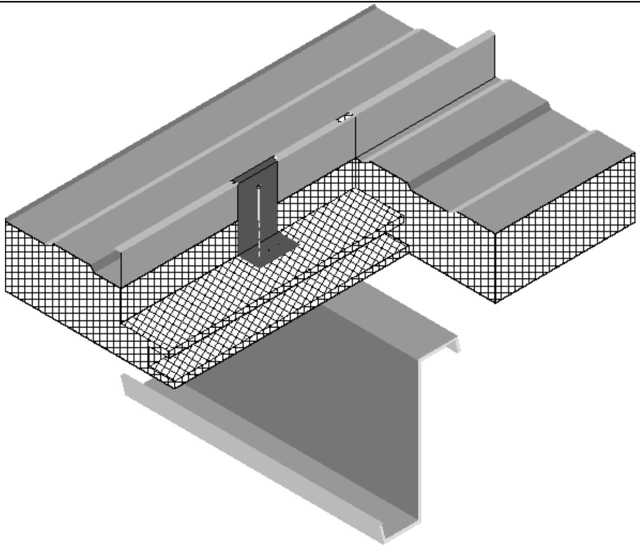


Figure 4.2.9 –Insulated Metal Panel Roofs

Assumptions: These data are calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, light gauge metal exterior of R-0.0747, continuous insulation R-5.9 per inch, light gauge metal interior of 0.0747 inch thickness and an interior air film (heat flow up) of R-0.61. The panels are assumed to be continuous with no framing penetration. The R-value of the light gauge metal is negligible.

JA4.3 Walls

Table 4.3.1 – U-factors of Wood Framed Walls with 1/2-inch Gypsum Board

Spacing	Cavity Insulation	Nominal Framing Size					Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [2]						
				R-0	R-2	R-4	R-5	R-6	R-7	R-8	R-10	R-12	R-15
				A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
16 in. OC	None	Any	1	0.356	0.209	0.146	0.127	0.113	0.101	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.056
	R-11	2x4	2	0.110	0.088	0.074	0.068	0.064	0.060	0.056	0.050	0.045	0.040
	R-13	2x4	3	0.102	0.082	0.069	0.064	0.060	0.056	0.053	0.047	0.043	0.038
	R-15 [1]	2x4	4	0.095	0.077	0.065	0.060	0.056	0.053	0.050	0.045	0.041	0.036
	R-19	2x6	5	0.074	0.063	0.055	0.051	0.049	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.033
	R-20	2x6	6	0.071	0.060	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.044	0.042	0.039	0.036	0.032
	R-21[1]	2x6	7	0.069	0.059	0.051	0.048	0.046	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.031
	R-22	2x6	8	0.072	0.062	0.054	0.051	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.037	0.036	0.033
	R-23	2x6	9	0.067	0.057	0.049	0.047	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.037	0.034	0.030
	R-25	2x6	10	0.065	0.055	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.040	0.039	0.035	0.036	0.032
	R-19	2x8	11	0.065	0.057	0.051	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.032
	R-22	2x8	12	0.061	0.053	0.047	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.036	0.033	0.030
	R-25	2x8	13	0.057	0.050	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.038	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.029
	R-30[1]	2x8	14	0.056	0.049	0.044	0.041	0.040	0.038	0.036	0.033	0.031	0.028
24 in. OC	None	Any	15	0.362	0.211	0.148	0.128	0.114	0.102	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.056
	R-11	2x4	16	0.106	0.086	0.072	0.067	0.062	0.059	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.039
	R-13	2x4	17	0.098	0.079	0.067	0.062	0.058	0.055	0.052	0.047	0.043	0.038
	R-15	2x4	18	0.091	0.074	0.063	0.059	0.055	0.052	0.049	0.044	0.040	0.036
	R-19	2x6	19	0.071	0.061	0.053	0.050	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.040	0.036	0.033
	R-20	2x6	20	0.068	0.058	0.051	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.031
	R-21[1]	2x6	21	0.066	0.057	0.050	0.047	0.045	0.042	0.040	0.037	0.034	0.031
	R-22	2x6	22	0.069	0.060	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.044	0.042	0.036	0.036	0.033
	R-23	2x6	23	0.064	0.054	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.036	0.033	0.030
	R-25	2x6	24	0.061	0.052	0.046	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.037	0.034	0.035	0.031

	R-19	2x8	25	0.063	0.055	0.049	0.047	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.037	0.035	0.031
	R-22	2x8	26	0.058	0.051	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.038	0.035	0.033	0.030
	R-25	2x8	27	0.055	0.048	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.037	0.036	0.033	0.031	0.028
	R-30[1]	2x8	28	0.054	0.047	0.042	0.040	0.038	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.030	0.028

Notes

1. Higher density fiberglass batt is required in these cases.
2. Continuous insulation may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the wall, or both.

This table contains U-factors for wood framed walls, which are typical of low-rise residential buildings and Type V nonresidential buildings. If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. In this case, the insulation is installed in the cavity between the framing members. When continuous insulation is used, this is typically installed on the exterior side of the wall, but can also be used on the inside. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Table 4.3.1(a) – U-factors of Wood Framed Walls with 5/8-inch Gypsum Board[1] (*Only to be used when 5/8 inch gypsum is installed)*

Spacing	**Cavity Insulation**	**Nominal Framing Size**	**Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [3]**								
				R-0	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-5**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	None	Any	1	0.343	0.208	0.145	0.126	0.112	0.100	0.091	0.077
	R-11	2x4	2	0.109	0.087	0.073	0.067	0.063	0.059	0.055	0.050
	R-13	2x4	3	0.101	0.081	0.068	0.063	0.059	0.056	0.052	0.047
	R-15 [2]	2x4	4	0.094	0.076	0.064	0.059	0.055	0.052	0.049	0.045
	R-19	2x6	5	0.073	0.062	0.054	0.050	0.048	0.045	0.043	0.040
	R-21[2]	2x6	6	0.068	0.058	0.050	0.047	0.045	0.041	0.040	0.038
	R-22	2x6	7	0.071	0.061	0.053	0.050	0.047	0.044	0.042	0.039
	R-19	2x8	8	0.064	0.056	0.050	0.047	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.038
	R-22	2x8	9	0.060	0.052	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.038	0.036
	R-25	2x8	10	0.056	0.049	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.037	0.036	0.034
	R-30[2]	2x8	11	0.055	0.048	0.043	0.040	0.039	0.037	0.035	0.033
24 in. OC	None	Any	12	0.361	0.210	0.147	0.127	0.113	0.101	0.091	0.077
	R-11	2x4	13	0.105	0.085	0.071	0.066	0.061	0.058	0.055	0.049
	R-13	2x4	14	0.097	0.078	0.066	0.061	0.057	0.054	0.052	0.046
	R-15	2x4	22	0.090	0.073	0.062	0.058	0.054	0.051	0.049	0.04
	R-19	2x6	15	0.070	0.060	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.044	0.043	0.039
	R-21[2]	2x6	16	0.065	0.056	0.049	0.046	0.044	0.041	0.040	0.037
	R-22	2x6	17	0.068	0.059	0.051	0.048	0.046	0.043	0.042	0.038
	R-19	2x8	18	0.062	0.054	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.041	0.037
	R-22	2x8	19	0.057	0.050	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.038	0.035
	R-25	2x8	20	0.054	0.047	0.042	0.040	0.038	0.036	0.036	0.033
	R-30[1]	2x8	21	0.053	0.046	0.041	0.039	0.037	0.036	0.035	0.033

Notes

1. The 5/8 inch gypsum board must be verified by the enforcement agency. If 5/8 inch gypsum board is not installed use table 4.3.1.
2. Higher density fiberglass batt is required in these cases.
3. Continuous insulation may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the wall, or both.

This table contains U-factors for wood framed walls, which are typical of low-rise residential buildings and Type V nonresidential buildings. If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. In this case, the insulation is installed in the cavity between the framing members. When continuous insulation is used, this is typically installed on the exterior side of the wall, but can also be used on the inside. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

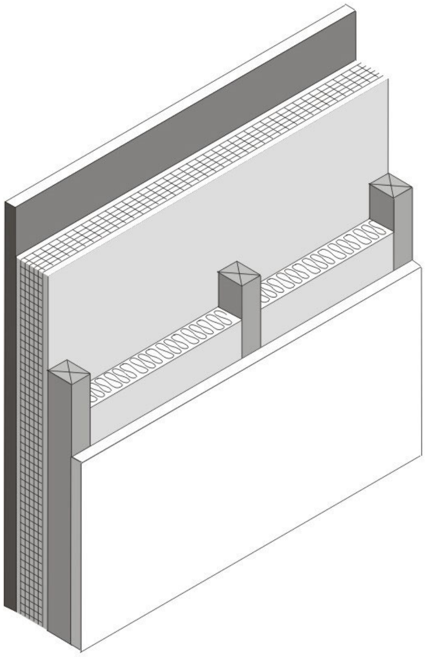


Figure 4.3.1 – Wood Framed Wall

Assumptions: Values in this table were calculated using the parallel heat flow calculation method, documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. The construction assembly assumes an exterior air film of R-0.17, a 7/8 inch layer of stucco of R-0.18 (SC01), building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), continuous insulation (if any), the cavity insulation / framing layer, 1/2 inch gypsum board of R-0.45 (GP01) or 5/8 inch gypsum board of R-0.56, and an interior air film 0.68. The framing factor is assumed to be 25 percent for 16 inch stud spacing and 22 percent for 24 inch spacing. Actual cavity depth is 3.5 inch for 2x4, 5.5 inch for 2x6, 7.25 inch for 2x8, 9.25 inch for 2x10, and 11.25 inch for 2x12. High density R-30 insulation is assumed to be 8.5 inch thick batt and R-38 is assumed to be 10.5 inch thick. The thickness of the stucco is assumed to be reduced to 3/8 inch when continuous insulation is applied.

Table 4.3.2 – U-factors of Structurally Insulated Wall Panels (SIPS)

Wood Framing Connection Type (spline)	Insulation Core R-value[1]	Typical Panel Thickness		Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [5]					
				None	R-2	R-4	R-5	R-6	R-8
				A	B	C	D	E	F
OSB	R-14	4.5 in	**1**	0.061	0.055	0.049	0.047	0.045	0.041
Single 2x	R-14	4.5 in	**2**	0.071	0.061	0.054	0.051	0.048	0.044
Double 2x	R-14	4.5 in	**3**	0.077	0.065	0.057	0.054	0.050	0.046
I-joist	R-14	4.5 in	**4**	0.070	0.060	0.053	0.051	0.048	0.044
OSB	R-18[2]	4.5 in	**5**	0.053	0.045	0.041	0.039	0.037	0.034
Single 2x	R-18[2]	4.5 in	**6**	0.061	0.052	0.047	0.045	0.042	0.039
Double 2x	R-18[2]	4.5 in	**7**	0.066	0.056	0.050	0.048	0.045	0.041
I-joist	R-18[2]	4.5 in	**8**	0.059	0.051	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.038
OSB	R-22	6.5 in	**9**	0.041	0.038	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.031
Single 2x	R-22	6.5 in	**10**	0.050	0.044	0.040	0.039	0.037	0.034
Double 2x	R-22	6.5 in	**11**	0.054	0.048	0.043	0.041	0.039	0.036
I-joist	R-22	6.5 in	**12**	0.048	0.043	0.039	0.038	0.036	0.033
OSB	R-28	8.25 in	**13**	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026
Single 2x	R-28	8.25 in	**14**	0.039	0.036	0.033	0.032	0.031	0.029
Double 2x	R-28	8.25 in	**15**	0.043	0.039	0.035	0.034	0.033	0.030
I-joist	R-28	8.25 in	**16**	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.031	0.030	0.028
OSB	R-33[3]	6.5 in	**17**	0.032	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.023
Single 2x	R-33[3]	6.5 in	**18**	0.038	0.034	0.031	0.030	0.029	0.027
Double 2x	R-33[3]	6.5 in	**19**	0.043	0.038	0.034	0.033	0.031	0.029
I-joist	R-33[3]	6.5 in	**20**	0.036	0.033	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.026
OSB	R-36	10.25 in	**21**	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021
Single 2x	R-36	10.25 in	**22**	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.024
Double 2x	R-36	10.25 in	**23**	0.035	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.026
I-joist	R-36	10.25 in	**24**	0.030	0.028	0.026	0.026	0.025	0.023
OSB	R-44	12.25 in	**25**	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.019	0.018
Single 2x	R-44	12.25 in	**26**	0.027	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021
Double 2x	R-44	12.25 in	**27**	0.028	0.027	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.023
I-joist	R-44	12.25 in	**28**	0.025	0.024	0.022	0.022	0.021	0.020
OSB	R-55[4]	10.25 in	**29**	0.020	0.019	0.017	0.016	0.016	0.016
Single 2x	R-55[4]	10.25 in	**30**	0.024	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020	0.019
Double 2x	R-55[4]	10.25 in	**31**	0.028	0.025	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021
I-joist	R-55[4]	10.25 in	**32**	0.022	0.021	0.019	0.019	0.018	0.018

Notes:

1. The insulation R-value must be at least R-14 in order to use this table. This table assumes moulded expanded polystyrene (EPS) unless noted otherwise. Although other insulation types are used by some SIP manufacturers, such as polyurethane and extruded expanded insulation (XPS), EPS is the most common insulation used in SIP construction.
2. R-18.1 is achievable using extruded expanded polystyrene (XPS) insulation in 4.5" thick panels.
3. R-33.2 is achievable using polyurethane insulation in 6.5" panels.
4. R-55.3 is achievable using polyurethane insulation in 10.25" panels.
5. Continuous insulation shall be at least R-2 and may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the wall.

Structural insulated panels (SIPs) consist of a rigid insulation core, securely bonded between two structural facings, to form a structural sandwich panel. SIPs are considered a non-framed assembly usually with little or no structural framing that penetrates the insulation layer, resulting in less thermal bridging across the insulation when compared to a conventional framed assembly.

This table gives U-factors for structurally insulated panels used in wall construction. This is a construction system that consists of rigid foam insulation sandwiched between two layers of plywood or oriented strand board (OSB). Data is provided for four variations of connecting two panels together.

If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. When continuous insulation is also used, this is typically installed on the exterior side of the wall, but can also be used on the inside. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation. Adding continuous insulation to a SIPS panel is highly unusual since the panel itself is mostly continuous insulation.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

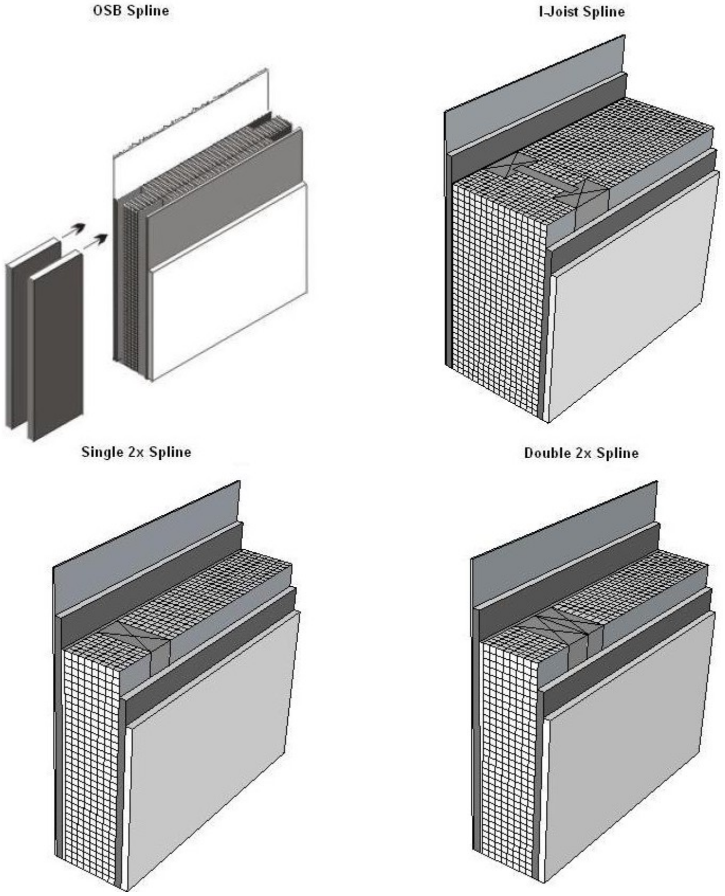


Figure 4.3.2 – Structurally Insulated Wall Panels (SIPS)

This figure shows just one way that panels are connected. Other options exist.

Assumptions: These data are calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals.

These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a 7/8 inch layer of stucco of R-0.18, building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), 7/16 inch of OSB of R-0.44, insulation at carrying R-values (as specified), 7/16 inch of OSB of R-0.44, ½ inch gypsum board of R-0.45 (GP01), and in interior air film of R-0.68. A framing factor of 13 percent is assumed for wood spacers and 7 percent for the OSB spline system. Framing includes the sill plate, the header and framing around windows and doors.

Table 4.3.3 – U-factors of Metal Framed Walls for Nonresidential Construction

Spacing	**Cavity Insulation R-Value:**	**Nominal Framing Size**				**Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [2]**								
				R-0	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-5**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-12**	**R-14**	**R-15**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**	**I**	**J**	**K**
16 in. OC	None	Any	**1**	0.458	0.239	0.162	0.139	0.122	0.109	0.098	0.082	0.071	0.062	0.058
	R-5	2x4	**2**	0.351	0.206	0.146	0.127	0.113	0.102	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.059	0.056
	R-11	2x4	**3**	0.224	0.155	0.118	0.106	0.096	0.087	0.080	0.069	0.061	0.054	0.052
	R-13	2x4	**4**	0.217	0.151	0.116	0.104	0.094	0.086	0.079	0.068	0.060	0.054	0.051
	R-15	2x4	**5**	0.211	0.148	0.114	0.103	0.093	0.085	0.078	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.050
	R-19	2x6	**6**	0.183	0.134	0.106	0.096	0.087	0.080	0.074	0.065	0.057	0.051	0.049
	R-20	2x6	7	0.181	0.133	0.105	0.095	0.087	0.080	0.074	0.064	0.057	0.051	0.049
	R-21[1]	2x6	8	0.178	0.131	0.104	0.094	0.086	0.079	0.073	0.064	0.057	0.051	0.049
	R-19	2x8	9	0.164	0.123	0.099	0.090	0.083	0.076	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047
	R-22	2x8	10	0.160	0.121	0.098	0.089	0.082	0.075	0.070	0.062	0.055	0.049	0.047
	R-25	2x8	11	0.158	0.120	0.097	0.088	0.081	0.075	0.070	0.061	0.055	0.049	0.047
	R-30[1]	2x8	12	0.157	0.119	0.096	0.088	0.081	0.075	0.070	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.047
24 in. OC	None	Any	13	0.455	0.238	0.161	0.139	0.122	0.109	0.098	0.082	0.070	0.062	0.058
	R-5	2x4	14	0.333	0.200	0.143	0.125	0.111	0.100	0.091	0.077	0.067	0.059	0.056
	R-11	2x4	15	0.210	0.148	0.114	0.102	0.093	0.085	0.078	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.051
	R-13	2x4	16	0.203	0.144	0.112	0.101	0.092	0.084	0.077	0.067	0.059	0.053	0.051
	R-15	2x4	17	0.197	0.141	0.110	0.099	0.090	0.083	0.076	0.066	0.059	0.052	0.050
	R-19	2x6	18	0.164	0.123	0.099	0.090	0.083	0.076	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047
	R-20	2x6	19	0.164	0.123	0.099	0.090	0.083	0.076	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047
	R-21[1]	2x6	20	0.161	0.122	0.098	0.089	0.082	0.076	0.070	0.062	0.055	0.049	0.047
	R-19	2x8	21	0.153	0.117	0.095	0.087	0.080	0.074	0.069	0.060	0.054	0.049	0.047
	R-22	2x8	22	0.149	0.115	0.093	0.085	0.079	0.073	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.046
	R-25	2x8	23	0.147	0.114	0.093	0.085	0.078	0.072	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.046
	R-30[1]	2x8	24	0.146	0.113	0.092	0.084	0.078	0.072	0.067	0.059	0.053	0.048	0.046

Notes

1. Higher density fiberglass batt is required in these cases.

2. Continuous insulation may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the wall, or both.

This table contains U-factors for steel or metal-framed walls, which are typical of nonresidential buildings. The table may be used for any construction assembly where the insulation is installed in the cavity of a metal-framed wall, or where continuous insulation is installed on the exterior or interior of the metal framing, or a combination of these two methods of insulating a metal-framed wall.

If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. In this case, the insulation is installed only in the cavity between the framing members. When continuous insulation is used, it is typically installed on the exterior side of the wall, but can also be used on the inside. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

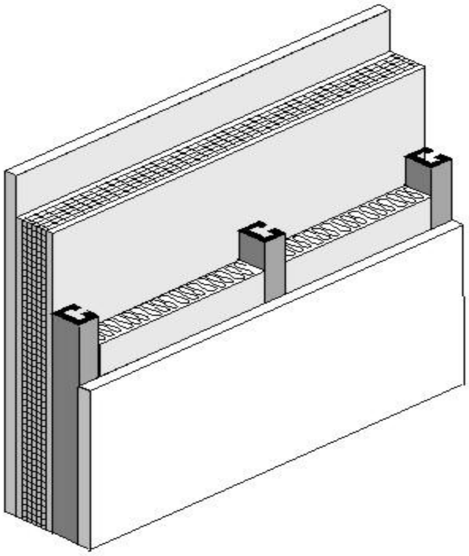


Figure 4.3.3 – Metal Framed Wall

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software programs, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: Values in this table were calculated using the zone calculation method. The construction assembly assumes an exterior air film of R-0.17, a 7/8 inch layer of stucco of R-0.18, building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), continuous insulation (if any), the insulation / framing layer, 1/2 inch gypsum of R-0.45 gypsum board (GP01), and an interior air film 0.68. The steel framing is assumed to be 0.0747 inch thick with a 15 percent knock out. The framing factor is assumed to be 25 percent for 16 inch stud spacing and 22 percent for 24 inch spacing. The EZFrame internal default framing percentages are 15 percent for 16 inch stud spacing and 12 percent for 24 inch spacing. To account for the increased wall framing percentage the frame spacing input to the EZ Frame program is reduced to 13.218 inches for 16 inch stud spacing and 15.231 inches for 24 inch stud spacing. Actual cavity depth is 3.5 inch for 2x4, 5.5 inch for 2x6, 7.25 inch for 2x8, 9.25 inch for 2x10, and 11.25 inch for 2x12. High density R-30 insulation is assumed to be 8.5 inch thick batt and R-38 is assumed to be 10.5 inch thick. The thickness of the stucco is assumed to be reduced to 3/8 inch when continuous insulation is applied.

Table 4.3.4 – U-factors of Metal Framed Walls for Residential Construction

Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [2]

Spacing	**Cavity Insulation R-Value:**	**Nominal Framing Size**		**R-0**	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-5**	**R-6**	**R-7**	R-8	R-10	R-12	R-15
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	G	H	I	J
16 in. OC	None	Any	**1**	0.455	0.238	0.161	0.139	0.122	0.109	0.098	0.082	0.070	0.058
	R-05	2x4	**2**	0.252	0.165	0.124	0.110	0.099	0.090	0.083	0.071	0.062	0.052
	R-11	2x4	**3**	0.200	0.137	0.107	0.097	0.088	0.081	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.049
	R-13	2x4	**4**	0.192	0.132	0.105	0.095	0.087	0.080	0.074	0.064	0.057	0.049
	R-15	2x4	**5**	0.186	0.129	0.102	0.093	0.085	0.078	0.073	0.063	0.056	0.048
	R-19	2x6	**6**	0.154	0.112	0.092	0.084	0.077	0.072	0.067	0.059	0.053	0.046
	R-20	2x6	7	0.151	0.112	0.091	0.084	0.077	0.072	0.067	0.059	0.053	0.046
	R-21[1]	2x6	8	0.151	0.110	0.090	0.083	0.076	0.071	0.066	0.058	0.052	0.045
	R-19	2x8	9	0.134	0.102	0.085	0.078	0.072	0.067	0.063	0.056	0.050	0.044
	R-22	2x8	10	0.129	0.099	0.082	0.076	0.071	0.066	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.043
	R-25	2x8	11	0.125	0.096	0.081	0.075	0.069	0.065	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.043
	R-30[1]	2x8	12	0.120	0.093	0.078	0.073	0.068	0.063	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.042
	R-30	2x10	13	0.109	0.086	0.073	0.068	0.064	0.060	0.057	0.051	0.046	0.041
	R-38[1]	2x10	14	0.104	0.082	0.071	0.066	0.062	0.058	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.040
	R-38	2 x 12	15	0.095	0.077	0.067	0.062	0.059	0.055	0.053	0.048	0.043	0.038
24 in. OC	None	Any	16	0.449	0.236	0.161	0.138	0.121	0.108	0.098	0.082	0.070	0.058
	R-05	2x4	17	0.243	0.161	0.122	0.108	0.098	0.089	0.082	0.070	0.062	0.052
	R-11	2x4	18	0.189	0.131	0.104	0.094	0.086	0.079	0.073	0.064	0.057	0.048
	R-13	2x4	19	0.181	0.127	0.101	0.092	0.084	0.078	0.072	0.063	0.056	0.048
	R-15	2x4	20	0.175	0.123	0.099	0.090	0.082	0.076	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.047
	R-19	2x6	21	0.144	0.107	0.088	0.081	0.075	0.070	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.045

	R-20	2x6	22	0.141	0.106	0.087	0.080	0.074	0.069	0.065	0.057	0.051	0.044
	R-21[1]	2x6	23	0.141	0.105	0.086	0.080	0.074	0.069	0.064	0.057	0.051	0.044
	R-19	2x8	24	0.126	0.097	0.081	0.075	0.070	0.065	0.061	0.055	0.049	0.043
	R-22	2x8	25	0.121	0.094	0.079	0.073	0.068	0.064	0.060	0.054	0.048	0.042
	R-25	2x8	26	0.117	0.091	0.077	0.071	0.067	0.063	0.059	0.053	0.048	0.042
	R-30[1]	2x8	27	0.112	0.088	0.075	0.069	0.065	0.061	0.057	0.052	0.047	0.041
	R-30	2x10	28	0.102	0.081	0.070	0.065	0.061	0.058	0.055	0.049	0.045	0.039
	R-38[1]	2x10	29	0.096	0.077	0.067	0063	0.059	0.056	0.053	0.048	0.044	0.039
	R-38	2 x 12	30	0.088	0.072	0.063	0.059	0.056	0.053	0.050	0.046	0.042	0.037

Notes

1. Higher density fiberglass batt is required in these cases.
2. Continuous insulation may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the wall, or both.

This table contains U-factors for steel or metal framed walls in low-rise residential buildings where the thickness of the framing members is 18 gauge or thinner. Table 4.3.3 in Reference Joint Appendix JA4 must be used for steel-framed or metal-framed walls in nonresidential buildings (including high-rise residential buildings and hotels and motels) and in low rise residential buildings if the thickness of the framing members are thinner than 18 gauge.

If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. In this case, the insulation is installed only in the cavity between the framing members. When continuous insulation is used, it is typically installed on the exterior side of the wall, but can also be used on the inside. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

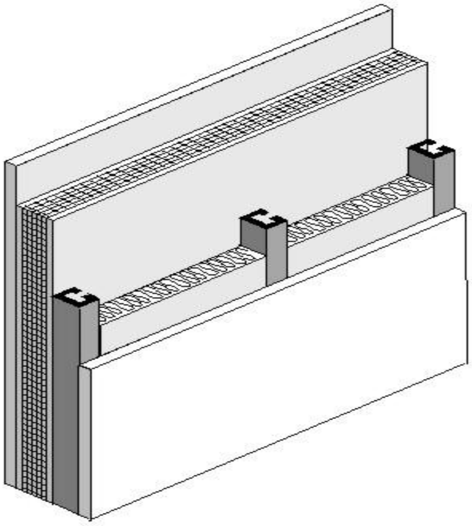


Figure 4.3.4 – Metal Framed Wall

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software programs, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: Values in this table were calculated using the zone calculation method. The construction assembly assumes an exterior air film of R-0.17, a 7/8 inch layer of siding or stucco averaging R-0.18, building paper of R-0.06 (BP01), continuous insulation (if any), the insulation / framing insulation layer, 1/2 inch gypsum of R-0.45 gypsum board (GP01), and an interior air film 0.68. The framing factor is assumed to be 25 percent for 16 inch stud spacing and 22 percent for 24 inch spacing. To account for the increased wall framing percentage, the frame spacing input to the EZ Frame program is reduced to 13.218 inches for 16 inch stud spacing and 15.231 inches for 24 inch stud spacing. The stud web thickness is assumed to be 0.038 inches, which is a 50/50 mix of 18 gauge and 20 gauge C-channel studs. This value was confirmed to be representative of low-rise residential construction by polling several California-based light-gauge steel structural engineers and light-gauge steel framers. Actual cavity depth is 3.5 inch for 2x4, 5.5 inch for 2x6, 8 inch for 2x8, 10 inch for 2x10, and 12 inches for 2x12. High density R-30 insulation is assumed to be 8.5 inch thick batt and R-38 is assumed to be 10.5 inches thick. The thickness of the stucco is assumed to be reduced to 3/8 inch when continuous insulation is applied.

Table 4.3.5 – Properties of Hollow Unit Masonry Walls

Thickness						**Partly Grouted with Ungrouted Cells**					
			Solid Grout			**Empty**			**Insulated**		
	Type		**A**			**B**			**C**		
		1	U-factor	C-factor	HC	U-factor	C-factor	HC	U-factor	C-factor	HC
12"	LW CMU	**2**	0.51	0.90	23	0.43	0.68	14.8	0.30	0.40	14.8
	MW CMU	**3**	0.54	1.00	23.9	0.46	0.76	15.6	0.33	0.46	15.6
	NW CMU	**4**	0.57	1.11	24.8	0.49	0.84	16.5	0.36	0.52	16.5
10"	LW CMU	**5**	0.55	1.03	18.9	0.46	0.76	12.6	0.34	0.48	12.6
	MW CMU	**6**	0.59	1.18	19.7	0.49	0.84	13.4	0.37	0.54	13.4
	NW CMU	**7**	0.62	1.31	20.5	0.52	0.93	14.2	0.41	0.63	14.2
8"	LW CMU	**8**	0.62	1.31	15.1	0.50	0.87	9.9	0.37	0.54	9.9
	MW CMU	**9**	0.65	1.45	15.7	0.53	0.96	10.5	0.41	0.63	10.5
	NW CMU	**10**	0.69	1.67	16.3	0.56	1.07	11.1	0.44	0.70	11.1
	Clay Unit	**11**	0.57	1.11	15.1	0.47	0.78	11.4	0.39	0.58	11.4
6"	LW CMU	**12**	0.68	1.61	10.9	0.54	1.00	7.9	0.44	0.70	7.9
	MW CMU	**13**	0.72	1.86	11.4	0.58	1.14	8.4	0.48	0.81	8.4
	NW CMU	**14**	0.76	2.15	11.9	0.61	1.27	8.9	0.52	0.93	8.9
	Clay Unit	**15**	0.65	1.45	11.1	0.52	0.93	8.6	0.45	0.73	8.6

The walls addressed in this table are rarely used in residential construction, but are common in some types of nonresidential construction. The tables include four types of hollow masonry units: lightweight concrete masonry units (CMU), medium weight CMU, normal weight CMU, and hollow clay masonry units. ASTM C-90 defines these masonry products in more detail.

Masonry used in California must be reinforced to withstand wind loads and earthquakes. This is achieved by installing reinforcing steel and grouting the cells in both a vertical and horizontal direction. Since grouting the cells affects thermal performance, data is provided for three cases: where every cell is grouted, where the cells are partially grouted and the remaining cells are left empty, and where the cells are partially grouted and the remaining cells are filled with perlite or some other insulating material.

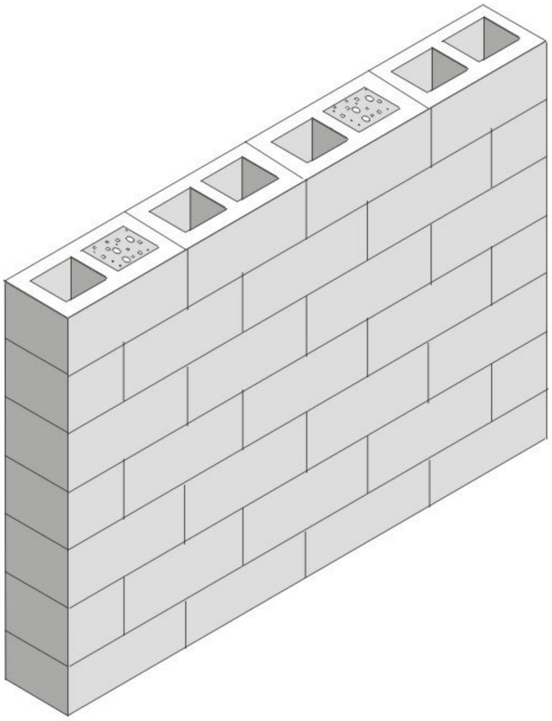


Figure 4.3.5 – Masonry Wall

For each of these conditions the U-factor, C-factor and heat capacity (HC) is published. There are other properties of mass materials that may be needed in compliance calculations, but these values can be determined from the published data using the procedures in Modeling Constructions in the Nonresidential compliance software and in Section 4.6 of this document.

Assumptions: Data is taken from *Energy Calculations and Data*, CMACN, 1986, Berkeley Solar Group; Concrete Masonry Association of California and Nevada. The density of the CMU material (not counting the grouted or hollow cells) is 105 lb/ft³ for lightweight, 115 lb/ft³ for medium weight and 125 lb/ft³ for normal weight. The density of the clay unit material is 130 lb/ft³. For all four types of masonry units, data is provided for thicknesses of 6 in., 8 in., 10 in., and 12 in. For the partially grouted cases, vertical cells are assumed to be grouted at 32 inch on center. Reinforcing in the horizontal direction is at 48 in. on center. Wall thicknesses given in the table are nominal; actual thicknesses are 3/8 in. less. Insulating material inside unit masonry hollow is assumed to be perlite.

Table 4.3.6 – Properties of Solid Unit Masonry and Solid Concrete Walls

			Wall Thickness, inches									
			3	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**
Type	**Property**		**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**	**I**	**J**
LW CMU	U-Factor	**1**	0.79	0.71	0.65	0.59	0.54	0.51	0.47	0.44	0.42	0.39
	C-Factor		2.38	1.79	1.43	1.18	1.01	0.88	0.79	0.71	0.65	0.59
	HC		5.3	7.00	8.80	10.50	12.30	14.00	15.80	17.50	19.30	21.00
MW CMU	U-Factor	**2**	0.84	0.77	0.70	0.65	0.61	0.57	0.53	0.50	0.48	0.45
	C-Factor		2.94	2.22	1.75	1.47	1.25	1.10	0.98	0.88	0.80	0.74
	HC		5.80	7.70	9.60	11.5	13.40	15.30	17.30	19.20	21.10	23.00
NW CMU	U-Factor	**3**	0.88	0.82	0.76	0.71	0.67	0.63	0.60	0.56	0.53	0.51
	C-Factor		3.57	2.70	2.17	1.79	1.54	1.35	1.20	1.03	0.98	0.90
	HC		6.30	8.30	10.40	12.50	14.6	16.70	18.80	20.80	22.90	25.00
Clay Brick	U-Factor	**4**	0.80	0.72	0.66	na	na	na	na	na	na	na
	C-Factor		2.50	1.86	1.50	na	na	na	na	na	na	na
	HC		6.30	8.40	10.43	na	na	na	na	na	na	na
Concrete	U-Factor	**5**	0.96	0.91	0.86	0.82	0.78	0.74	0.71	0.68	0.65	0.63
	C-Factor		5.22	4.02	3.20	2.71	2.31	1.99	1.79	1.61	1.45	1.36
	HC		7.20	9.60	12.00	14.40	16.80	19.20	21.60	24.00	26.40	28.80

This table provides thermal performance information for solid masonry units and solid concrete walls.

The walls addressed in this table are rarely used in residential construction, but are common in some types of nonresidential construction.

There are other properties of mass materials that may be needed in compliance calculations, but these values can be determined from the published data using the procedures in Modeling Constructions in the Nonresidential compliance software and in Section 4.6 of this document.

When insulation is added to the outside of masonry walls and/or when the inside is furred and insulated, the performance data in this table may be adjusted using Equation 4-4 and Equation 4-5 in coordination with Table 4.3.14.

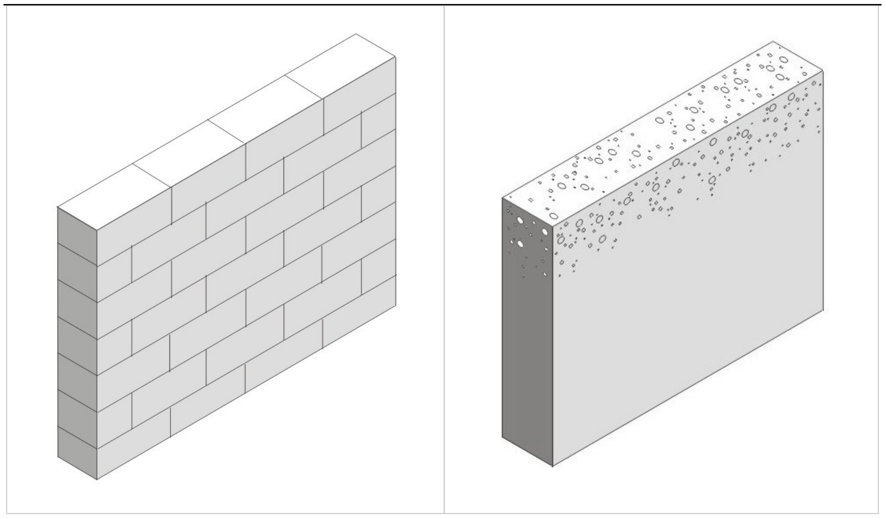


Figure 4.3.6 – Solid Unit Masonry (left) and Solid Concrete (right) Walls

Assumptions: Data is taken from ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004. The density of the CMU material is 105 lb/ft^3 for lightweight, 115 lb/ft^3 for medium weight and 125 lb/ft^3 for normal weight. The density of the clay unit material is 130 lb/ft^3 and the density of the concrete is 144 lb/ft^3. For all five types of masonry walls, the U-factor, C-factor and heat capacity (HC) is provided for thicknesses of 3 inch, 4 inch, and 5 inch ASTM C-90 provides more information on the classification of masonry walls.

Table 4.3.7 – Properties of Concrete Sandwich Panels

Percent Concrete Web	Steel Penetrates Insulation	Performance Factor		**Insulation Thickness (R-value)**				
				1.5 (7.0)	**2.0 (9.3)**	**3.0 (14.0)**	**4.0 (18.6)**	**6.0 (27.9)**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**
0%	No	U-factor	**1**	0.122	0.095	0.066	0.051	0.034
		C-factor		0.136	0.104	0.070	0.053	0.035
		HC		16.13	16.13	16.13	16.13	16.13
	Yes	U-factor	**2**	0.164	0.128	0.091	0.070	0.048
		C-factor		0.190	0.144	0.099	0.074	0.050
		HC		16.13	16.13	16.13	16.13	16.13
10%	No	U-factor	**3**	0.476	0.435	0.345	0.286	0.217
		C-factor		0.800	0.690	0.488	0.377	0.267
		HC		16.53	16.66	16.93	17.20	17.74
	Yes	U-factor	**4**	0.500	0.435	0.357	0.303	0.227
		C-factor		0.870	0.690	0.513	0.408	0.282
		HC		16.53	16.66	16.93	17.20	17.74
20%	No	U-factor	**5**	0.588	0.556	0.476	0.417	0.333
		C-factor		1.176	1.053	0.800	0.645	0.465
		HC		16.93	17.20	17.74	18.28	19.35
	Yes	U-factor	**6**	0.588	0.556	0.476	0.417	0.333
		C-factor		1.176	1.053	0.800	0.645	0.465
		HC		16.93	17.20	17.74	18.28	19.35

This table provides U-factors, C-factors, and heat capacity (HC) data for concrete sandwich panels. Concrete sandwich panels, as the name suggests, consist of two layers of concrete that sandwich a layer of insulation. The wall system can be constructed in the field or in a factory. One method of field construction is where the wall panels are formed in a flat position using the concrete floor slab of the building as the bottom surface. After the panel has set, it is hoisted with a crane into its final vertical position.

Both the percent of concrete web and the percent steel are factors in determining the thermal performance of walls. The insulation layer in this type of concrete sandwich panel generally does not extend over the entire surface of the wall. To provide structural integrity, a certain portion of the wall is solid concrete, which ties together the two concrete layers. This portion is known as the concrete web. The thermal performance of concrete sandwich panels depends on the percent of the wall that is concrete web. Data is provided for concrete webs representing 0 percent, 10 percent and 20 percent of the opaque wall surface. In some cases, the concrete layers are tied together by structural steel that penetrates the insulation layer. Data is provided for the case where this steel is present and for cases where it is not.

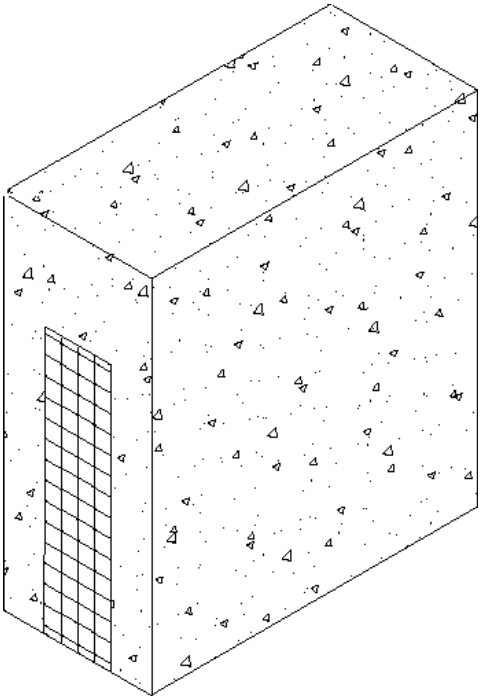


Figure 4.3.7 – Concrete Sandwich Panel

Other properties of mass materials such as density, conductivity, specific heat and wall weight may be needed in compliance calculations and these properties may be determined from the published data in Table 4.3.7 using the procedures in Modeling Constructions in the Nonresidential compliance software and in Section 4.6 of this document.

Values from this table may be combined with values from Table 4.3.14 when a furring layer is added to the inside of the wall and/or continuous insulation is added to the outside of the wall. Adjustments for additional layers shall follow the procedure of Equation 4-4 and Equation 4-5.

Assumptions: U-factors include an inside air film of 0.68 and an exterior air film of 0.17. Conductivity of the concrete is assumed to be 0.215 Btu/h-ºF-f, density is 150 lb/ft³, the thickness of each side of the sandwich panel is 0.5 ft. The data was calculated by Construction Technologies Laboratories, Inc. and published in the Thermal Mass Handbook, Concrete and Masonry Design Provisions Using ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-1989, National Codes and Standards Council of the Concrete and Masonry Industries, 1994.

Table 4.3.8 – U-factors for Spandrel Panels and Curtain Walls

			Rated R-value of Insulation between Framing Members							
			None	**R-4**	**R-7**	**R-10**	**R-15**	**R-20**	**R-25**	**R-30**
Frame Type	**Spandrel Panel**		**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
Aluminum without Thermal Break	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**1**	0.445	0.285	0.259	0.247	0.236	0.230	0.226	0.224
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**2**	0.356	0.273	0.254	0.244	0.234	0.229	0.226	0.223
	Triple or low-e glass	**3**	0.313	0.263	0.249	0.241	0.233	0.228	0.225	0.223
Aluminum with Thermal Break	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**4**	0.429	0.243	0.212	0.197	0.184	0.176	0.172	0.169
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**5**	0.328	0.228	0.205	0.193	0.182	0.175	0.171	0.168
	Triple or low-e glass	**6**	0.277	0.217	0.199	0.189	0.180	0.174	0.170	0.167
Structural Glazing	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**7**	0.428	0.217	0.180	0.161	0.145	0.136	0.130	0.126
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**8**	0.316	0.199	0.172	0.157	0.143	0.135	0.129	0.126
	Triple or low-e glass	**9**	0.257	0.186	0.165	0.152	0.140	0.133	0.128	0.125
No framing or Insulation is Continuous	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**10**	0.445	0.160	0.108	0.082	0.058	0.045	0.037	0.031
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**11**	0.356	0.147	0.102	0.078	0.056	0.044	0.036	0.030
	Triple or low-e glass	**12**	0.313	0.139	0.098	0.076	0.055	0.043	0.035	0.030
Frame Type	**Curtain Wall**									
Aluminum without Thermal Break	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**13**	1.224	0.929	0.427	0.372	0.347	0.326	0.315	0.308
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**14**	0.727	0.611	0.400	0.361	0.341	0.323	0.313	0.307
	Triple or low-e glass	**15**	0.567	0.494	0.380	0.351	0.335	0.320	0.311	0.306
Aluminum with Thermal Break	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**16**	1.110	0.862	0.339	0.282	0.256	0.234	0.222	0.215
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**17**	0.617	0.531	0.311	0.270	0.249	0.230	0.220	0.214
	Triple or low-e glass	**18**	0.458	0.409	0.290	0.260	0.243	0.227	0.218	0.212
Structural Glazing	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**19**	1.106	0.859	0.290	0.228	0.199	0.175	0.162	0.154
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**20**	0.577	0.502	0.260	0.215	0.192	0.171	0.160	0.152
	Triple or low-e glass	**21**	0.407	0.368	0.237	0.204	0.185	0.168	0.158	0.151
No framing or Insulation is Continuous	Single glass pane, stone, or metal panel	**22**	1.224	0.929	0.197	0.124	0.090	0.062	0.047	0.038
	Double glass with no low-e coatings	**23**	0.727	0.611	0.177	0.116	0.086	0.060	0.046	0.038

	Triple or low-e glass	**24**	0.567	0.494	0.166	0.111	0.083	0.059	0.045	0.037

This table has U-factors for the spandrel section of glass and other curtain wall systems. Design factors that affect performance are the type of framing, the type of spandrel panel and the R-value of insulation.

Four framing conditions are considered in the table. The first is the common case where standard aluminum mullions are used. Standard mullions provide a thermal bridge through the insulation, reducing its effectiveness. The second case is for metal framing members that have a thermal break. A thermal break frame uses a urethane or other non-metallic element to separate the metal exposed to outside conditions from the metal that is exposed to interior conditions. The third case is for structural glazing or systems where there is no exposed mullion on the interior. The fourth case is for the condition where there is no framing or the insulation is continuous and uninterrupted by framing. The columns in the table can be used for any specified level of insulation between framing members installed in framed curtain walls or spandrel panels.

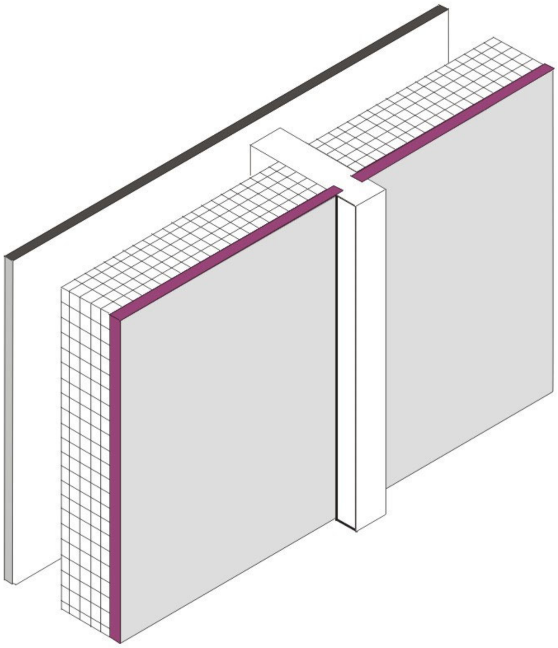


Figure 4.3.8 – Spandrel Panel

There are three cases considered in the table. To determine an appropriate thermal performance value the assumption used to differenciate between spandrel panels and curtain walls is that spandrel panels include an air gap and rigid backing, while curtain walls do not. The first is for a panel that provides little or no insulating value. This includes single pane glass, stone veneer, metal panels, or pre-case concrete less than 2 inches thick. The second case is for insulating glass. Sometimes insulating glass is used so that the spandrel panel looks similar to the vision glass. The third case is for triple glass or double glass that has a low-e coating.

Insulation levels are shown in the columns of the table. When the table is used manually, the R-value of insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is selected manually. California Energy Commission approved compliance software programs, including those used for prescriptive compliance, may accurately account for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2. If the curtain wall has an insulated metal-framed wall on the inside, then values from this table may be combined with values from Table 4.3.4 or Table 4.3.14 using the procedures of Equation 4-2 or Equation 4-3.

Assumptions: The U-factors in Table 4.3.8 were derived from a regression analysis of the values for “Glass Only Center of Glass” and “Curtain Wall” in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, Chapter 15, Table 4, with adaptions to update the values. The U-factors in Table 4.3.8 for curtain walls include an exterior air film with an R-value of 0.17 and an interior air film R-value of 0.68, which are accounted for in the values from the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. For spandrel panels the construction assembly includes an air gap with an R-value of 1.39 (3/4 inch gap, 50 ºF mean temperature and 30 ºF temperature difference), and includes 5/8 inch gypsum board with an R-value of 0.56 that provides the interior finish. The gypsum board is assumed to span between the window sill and a channel at the floor.

Table 4.3.9 – U-factors for Metal Building Walls

Insulation System	**Rated R-Value of Insulation**	**Continuous Rigid Insulation**								
			None	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**
			A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
Single Layer of Batt Insulation	None	**1**	1.18	0.351	0.206	0.146	0.127	0.113	0.092	0.067
	R-6	**2**	0.184	0.135	0.106	0.087	0.080	0.074	0.065	0.051
	R-10	**3**	0.134	0.106	0.087	0.074	0.069	0.065	0.057	0.047
	R-11	**4**	0.123	0.099	0.082	0.071	0.066	0.062	0.055	0.045
	R-13	**5**	0.113	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.063	0.059	0.053	0.044
Double Layer of Batt Insulation	R-6 + R-13	**6**	0.07	0.061	0.055	0.049	0.047	0.045	0.041	0.035
	R-10 + R-13	**7**	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.033
	R-13 + R-13	**8**	0.057	0.051	0.046	0.042	0.041	0.039	0.036	0.032
	R-19 + R-13	**9**	0.048	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.035	0.032	0.029

Double layer or batt insulation may not be able to have continuous rigid insulation added.

The U-factors in this table are intended for use with metal building walls. This type of construction is typical for manufacturing and warehouse facilities, but is used for other building types as well. The typical method of insulating this type of building is to stretch vinyl backed fiberglass insulation over the metal girts before the metal siding is attached with metal screws.

With this method, the insulation is compressed at each girt, reducing its effectiveness. The first part of the table contains values for this insulation technique. The second section of the table has data for systems that have two layers of insulation. In this section layers are listed from inside to outside.

For the majority of cases, values will be selected from column A of this table. Builders or designers may increase thermal performance by adding a rigid continuous insulation layer between the metal siding and the structural supports. When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Energy Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation using Equation 4-1.

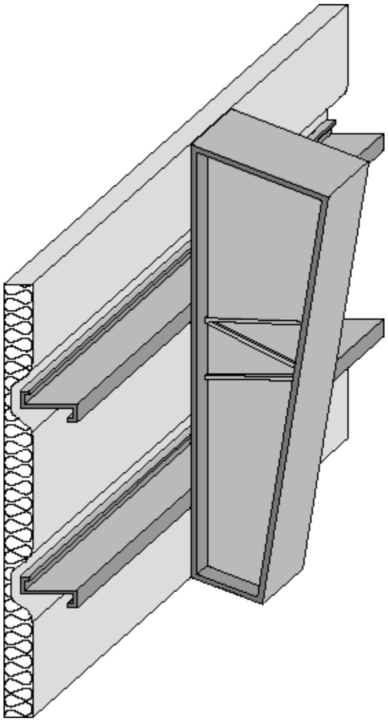


Figure 4.3.9 – Metal Building Wall

Assumptions: Data in Column A of this table is taken from the ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004, Appendix A. The data in columns beyond A are calculated using Equation 4-1.

Table 4.3.10 – U-factors for Insulated Metal Panel Walls

		U-factor (Btu/^{0}F-ft^2)
Panel Thickness		**A**
2”	**1**	0.078
2 ½”	**2**	0.063
3”	**3**	0.053
4”	**4**	0.041
5”	**5**	0.033
6”	**6**	0.027

This table contains thermal performance data (U-factors) for foamed-in-place, insulated metal panels consisting of liquid polyurethane or polyisocyanurate injected between metal skins in individual molds or on fully automated production lines. Metal building construction is the most common application for this product where the metal panel is fastened to the frame of the structure. This table can only be used for insulated panels that are factory built. This table does not apply to panels that utilize polystyrene, or to field applied products such as spray applied insulations.

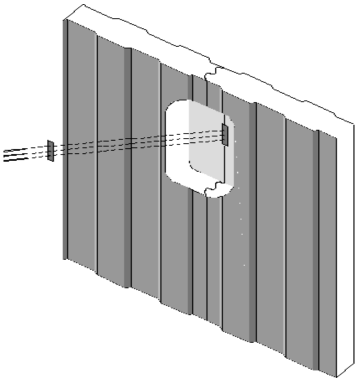


Figure 4.3.10 –Insulated Metal Panel Walls

Assumptions. These data are calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, light gauge metal exterior of 0.0747 inch thickness, continuous insulation R-5.9 per inch, light gauge metal interior of 0.0747 inch thickness, interior air film (heat flow horizontal) of R-0.68. The panels are assumed to be continuous with no framing penetration. The R-value of the metal is negligible.

Table 4.3.11 – Thermal Properties of Log Home Walls

		U-factor	Heat Capacity (HC)
Log Diameter		A	
6”	**1**	0.132	5.19
8”	**2**	0.102	6.92
10”	**3**	0.083	8.65
12”	**4**	0.070	10.37
14”	**5**	0.060	12.10
16”	**6**	0.053	13.83

This table has U-factors and heat capacity data for log homes Data is provided for logs in six thicknesses ranging from 6 in. to 16 in. If other thermal properties are needed such as density, weight, conductivity, etc., use the procedures in Modeling Constructions in the Nonresidential compliance software and contained in Section 4.6 of this document. Energy Commission approved Compliance Software Programs may adjust the data for interior furring using data from Table 4.3.14 and the procedure from Equation 4-2.

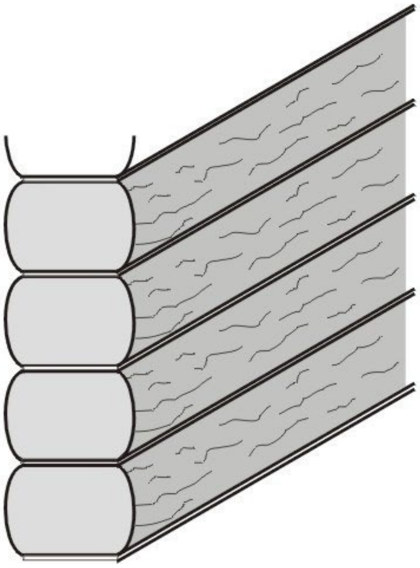


Figure 4.3.11 – Log Home Walls

Assumptions: Calculations are based on ASHRAE series method of calculation, 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. Values assume a log R-value of R-1.25/inch, an average wall thickness of 90 percent of the log diameter, an interior air film of R-0.68 and an exterior air film of R-0.17. Values do not account for presence of windows or doors. Construction assumes no additional siding or insulation. Heat Capacity is based on a softwood density of 26.6 lb/ft³ and a specific heat of 0.39 Btu/lb-ºF. An exterior air film of R-0.17 and an interior film of R-0.68 are assumed.

Table 4.3.12 – Thermal and Mass Properties of Straw Bale Walls

		A
R-value	**1**	30
U-factor		0.033
Heat Capacity Btu/ft²*°F]		6.34

This table has data that may be used for straw bale construction. This is an alternative construction technique used in some rural areas. The technique is not commonly used for production homes.

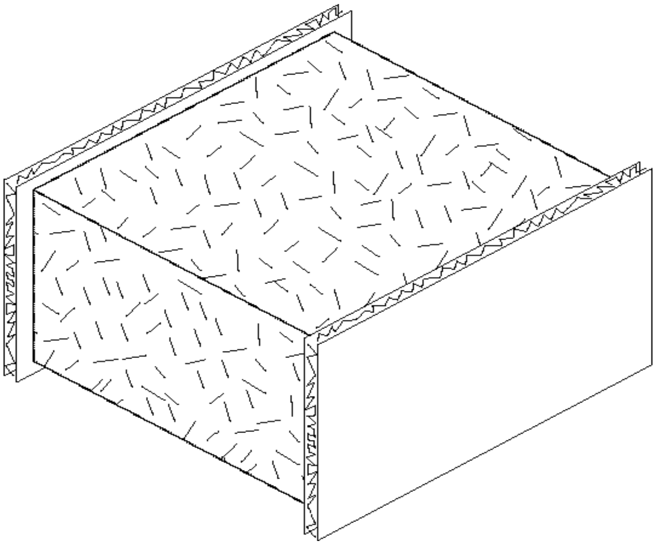


Figure 4.3.12 – Straw Bale Wall

Assumptions: The construction consists of an exterior film of R-0.17, stucco and lath of R-0.18, the straw bale, interior plaster of R-0.47, and an interior air film of 0.68. Straw bale must have a minimum cross section of 22 inch by 16 inch, and shall have a thermal resistance of R-30, whether stacked so the walls are 22 inch wide or 16 inch wide. Due to the higher resistance to heat flow across the grain of the straws, a bale laid on edge with a nominal 16 inch horizontal thickness has the same R-value (R-30) as a bale laid flat. Framing is assumed to not penetrate more than 25 percent of the way through the straw bale.

Table 4.3.13 – Thermal Properties of Insulating Concrete Forms

Insulation Type	Insulation Thickness Per Side (Total R-Value)	Performance Factor		Flat[1]					Waffle Grid[2]		Screen Grid[2]
				Concrete Core Thickness (inches)							
				4	6	8	10	12	6	8	6
				A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
EPS[3]	2.0 (15.4)	U-factor HC	**1**	0.058 12.20	0.057 17.00	0.056 21.80	0.055 26.60	0.055 31.40	0.047 13.90	0.039 15.87	0.041 12.10
	2.25 (18.9)	U-factor HC	**2**	0.052 12.22	0.051 17.02	0.051 21.82	0.050 26.62	0.050 31.42	0.043 13.92	0.036 15.89	0.038 12.11
	2.5 (19.25)	U-factor HC	**3**	0.047 12.24	0.047 17.04	0.046 21.84	0.046 26.64	0.045 31.44	0.040 13.94	0.034 15.91	0.036 12.13
	2.625 (20.2)	U-factor HC	**4**	0.045 12.25	0.045 17.05	0.044 21.85	0.044 26.65	0.043 31.45	0.038 13.95	0.033 15.92	0.035 12.14
	2.75 (21.2)	U-factor HC	**5**	0.043 12.26	0.043 17.06	0.042 21.86	0.042 26.66	0.042 31.46	0.037 13.96	0.032 15.92	0.0323 12.15
	3.0 (23.1)	U-factor HC	**6**	0.040 12.27	0.040 17.07	0.039 21.87	0.039 26.67	0.039 31.47	0.0334 13.98	0.030 15.94	0.031 12.17
	3.5 (27.0)	U-factor HC	**7**	0.035 12.31	0.034 17.11	0.034 21.91	0.034 26.71	0.034 31.51	0.030 14.01	0.027 15.98	0.028 12.21
	4.0 (30.8)	U-factor HC	**8**	0.031 12.35	0.030 17.15	0.030 21.95	0.030 26.75	0.030 31.55	0.027 14.05	0.024 16.02	0.025 12.24
XPS	2.0 (20.0)	U-factor HC	**9**	0.045 12.29	0.045 17.09	0.045 21.89	0.044 26.69	0.044 31.49	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	2.5 (25.0)	U-factor HC	**10**	0.037 12.35	0.037 17.15	0.036 21.95	0.036 26.75	0.036 31.55	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	2.625 (26.3)	U-factor HC	**11**	0.035 12.36	0.035 17.16	0.035 21.96	0.035 26.76	0.034 31.56	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	2.75 (27.5)	U-factor HC	**12**	0.034 12.38	0.034 17.18	0.033 21.98	0.033 26.78	0.033 31.58	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	3.0 (30.0)	U-factor HC	**13**	0.031 12.41	0.031 17.21	0.031 22.01	0.031 26.81	0.030 31.61	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	3.5 (35.0)	U-factor HC	**14**	0.027 12.46	0.027 17.26	0.027 22.06	0.027 26.86	0.026 31.66	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	4.0 (40)	U-factor HC	**15**	0.024 12.52	0.024 17.32	0.024 22.12	0.023 26.92	0.023 31.72	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
Polyurethane	1.5 (9.09)	U-factor HC	**16**	0.050 12.23	0.049 17.03	0.049 21.83	0.048 26.63	0.048 31.43	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	2.0 (10.9)	U-factor HC	**17**	0.042 12.41	0.042 17.21	0.041 22.01	0.041 26.81	0.041 31.61	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
	4.5 (20.95)	U-factor HC	**18**	0.023 12.58	0.023 17.38	0.023 22.18	0.022 26.98	0.022 31.78	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA
Cement/EPS Compound	2.0 (12.0)	U-factor HC	**19**	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	0.059 16.49	0.048 18.46	0.052 14.69
	3.0 (18.0)	U-factor HC	**20**	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	0.043 17.50	0.037 19.47	0.040 15.69
	4.0 (24.0)	U-factor HC	**21**	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	NA NA	0.034 18.51	0.031 20.47	0.032 16.70

Notes:

1. Flat Insulated Concrete Forms utilizes rigid insulation as the form and do not use cement compound as the form.
2. Waffle and screen type Insulated Concrete Forms typically utilize either a cement/EPS compound or EPS insulation as the form. ICF's using the cement/EPS compound do not utilize rigid insulation added to the interior and exterior surfaces.
3. 1.5 lb density EPS insulation at R-3.85 per inch except for the 2.25" insulation thickness which uses 2.0 lb density EPS at R-4.2 per inch.

This table provides thermal performance information for insulating concrete forms.

Insulating Concrete Forms (ICFs) are concrete forming systems that use stay-in-place panels made from a variety of insulating materials for constructing cast-in-place solid concrete walls. There are three basic types of ICFs: flat wall, waffle-grid and screen-grid. A flat wall system is a wall with uniform thickness just like a conventional poured wall made with plywood or metal forms. Waffle-grid wall systems have a solid concrete wall of varying thickness and look like a breakfast waffle. Screen grid wall systems also known as , “post and beam”, have a perforated concrete wall of varying thickness similar to the waffle type wall systems but with a solid form material between the horizontal and vertical members instead of concrete. The insulating panels for all three ICF types are most commonly made from expanded polystyrene (EPS) and extruded polystyrene (XPS) rigid insulation boards. Plastic or metal cross-ties separate the insulating panels and provide structural integrity during the pour. The ICF system is modular and stackable with interlocking edges. The materials can be delivered as pre-assembled blocks or as planks that require the flanges and web to be assembled during construction.

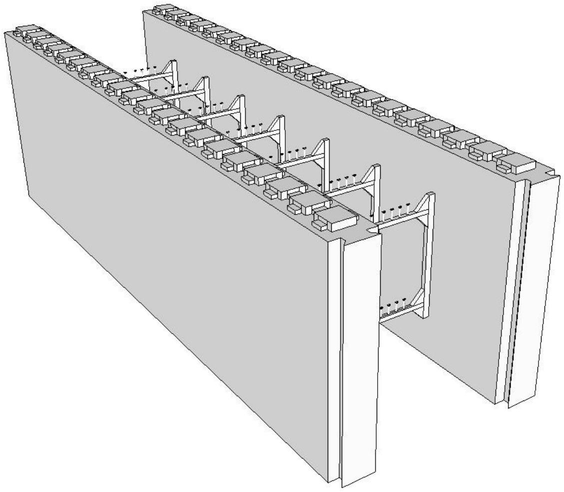


Figure 4.3.13 – Insulating Concrete Forms

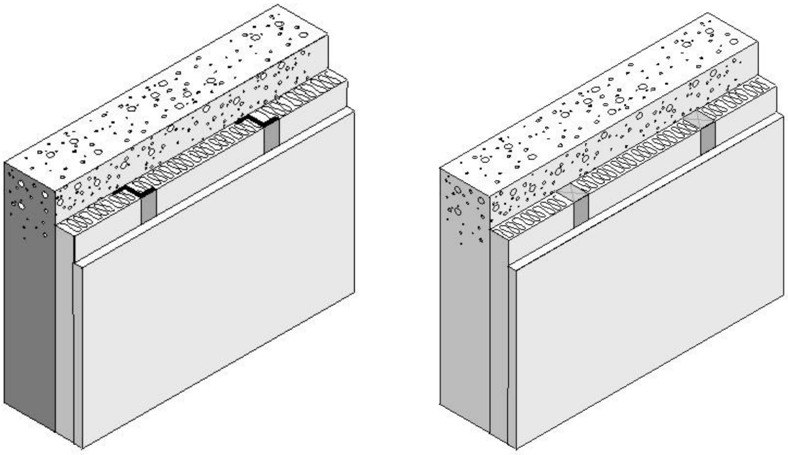
Assumptions: Values in this table were calculated using the one dimensional calculation method documented in 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. The calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a 7/8 inch layer of stucco of R-0.18, building paper of R-0.06, an exterior insulating form of varying resistance, a concrete core of varying thickness at R-0.11 per inch, an interior insulating form of varying resistance, and an interior air film of R-0.68. The R-value of the cement/EPC compound is assumed to be R-3.0 per inch, the XPS insulation assumed to be R-5.0 per inch, and the polyurethane assumed to be aged and dried in 1.5 inch, 2.0 inch, and 4.5 inch thickness.

Table 4.3.14 – Effective R-values for Interior or Exterior Insulation Layers

Thick-ness	Frame Type		R-value of Insulation Installed in Furring Space																					
			0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
			A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V
Any	None	**1**	0.5	1.5	2.5	3.5	4.5	5.5	6.5	7.5	8.5	9.5	10.5	11.5	12.5	13.5	14.5	15.5	16.5	17.5	18.5	19.5	20.5	21.5
0.5"	Wood	**2**	1.3	1.3	1.9	2.4	2.7	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
	Metal	**3**	0.9	0.9	1.1	1.1	1.2	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
0.75"	Wood	**4**	1.4	1.4	2.1	2.7	3.1	3.5	3.8	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
	Metal	**5**	1.0	1.0	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.5	1.6	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
1.0"	Wood	**6**	1.3	1.5	2.2	2.9	3.4	3.9	4.3	4.6	4.9	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
	Metal	**7**	1.0	1.1	1.4	1.6	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.9	1.9	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
1.5"	Wood	**8**	1.3	1.5	2.4	3.1	3.8	4.4	4.9	5.4	5.8	6.2	6.5	6.8	7.1	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
	Metal	**9**	1.1	1.2	1.6	1.9	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.5	2.6	2.6	2.7	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
2"	Wood	**10**	1.4	1.5	2.5	3.3	4.0	4.7	5.3	5.9	6.4	6.9	7.3	7.7	8.1	8.4	8.7	9.0	9.3	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
	Metal	**11**	1.1	1.2	1.7	2.1	2.3	2.5	2.7	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.2	3.2	3.3	3.3	3.4	3.4	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
2.5"	Wood	**12**	1.4	1.5	2.5	3.4	4.2	4.9	5.6	6.3	6.8	7.4	7.9	8.4	8.8	9.2	9.6	10.0	10.3	10.6	10.9	11.2	11.5	n.a.
	Metal	**13**	1.2	1.3	1.8	2.3	2.6	2.8	3.0	3.2	3.3	3.5	3.6	3.6	3.7	3.8	3.9	3.9	4.0	4.0	4.1	4.1	4.1	n.a.
3"	Wood	**14**	1.4	1.5	2.5	3.5	4.3	5.1	5.8	6.5	7.2	7.8	8.3	8.9	9.4	9.9	10.3	10.7	11.1	11.5	11.9	12.2	12.5	12.9
	Metal	**15**	1.2	1.3	1.9	2.4	2.8	3.1	3.3	3.5	3.7	3.8	4.0	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.4	4.4	4.5	4.6	4.6	4.7	4.7	4.8
3.5"	Wood	**16**	1.4	1.5	2.6	3.5	4.4	5.2	6.0	6.7	7.4	8.1	8.7	9.3	9.8	10.4	10.9	11.3	11.8	12.2	12.6	13.0	13.4	13.8
	Metal	**17**	1.2	1.3	2.0	2.5	2.9	3.2	3.5	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.3	4.5	4.6	4.7	4.8	4.9	5.0	5.1	5.1	5.2	5.2	5.3
4"	Wood	**18**	1.4	1.6	2.6	3.6	4.5	5.3	6.1	6.9	7.6	8.3	9.0	9.6	10.2	10.8	11.3	11.9	12.4	12.8	13.3	13.7	14.2	14.6
	Metal	**19**	1.2	1.3	2.0	2.6	3.0	3.4	3.7	4.0	4.2	4.5	4.6	4.8	5.0	5.1	5.2	5.3	5.4	5.5	5.6	5.7	5.8	5.8
4.5"	Wood	**20**	1.4	1.6	2.6	3.6	4.5	5.4	6.2	7.1	7.8	8.5	9.2	9.9	10.5	11.2	11.7	12.3	12.8	13.3	13.8	14.3	14.8	15.2
	Metal	**21**	1.2	1.3	2.1	2.6	3.1	3.5	3.9	4.2	4.5	4.7	4.9	5.1	5.3	5.4	5.6	5.7	5.8	5.9	6.0	6.1	6.2	6.3
5"	Wood	**22**	1.4	1.6	2.6	3.6	4.6	5.5	6.3	7.2	8	8.7	9.4	10.1	10.8	11.5	12.1	12.7	13.2	13.8	14.3	14.8	15.3	15.8
	Metal	**23**	1.2	1.4	2.1	2.7	3.2	3.7	4.1	4.4	4.7	5.0	5.2	5.4	5.6	5.8	5.9	6.1	6.2	6.3	6.5	6.6	6.7	6.8
5.5"	Wood	**24**	1.4	1.6	2.6	3.6	4.6	5.5	6.4	7.3	8.1	8.9	9.6	10.3	11.0	11.7	12.4	13.0	13.6	14.2	14.7	15.3	15.8	16.3
	Metal	**25**	1.3	1.4	2.1	2.8	3.3	3.8	4.2	4.6	4.9	5.2	5.4	5.7	5.9	6.1	6.3	6.4	6.6	6.7	6.8	7.0	7.1	7.2
EIFS		**26**	0.0	1.0	2.0	3.0	4.0	5.0	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0	11.0	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0	16.0	17.0	18.0	19.0	20.0	21.0

Metal Clips

Wood Framing



~~Metal Clips~~ ~~Wood Framing~~

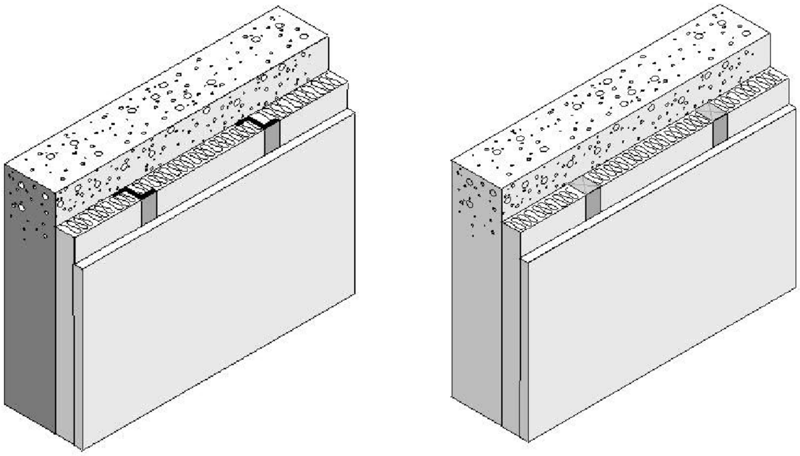


Figure 4.3.14 – Interior or Exterior Insulation Layers

This table is used in combination with other tables and Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2 to account for interior furring and continuous insulation added to other constructions.

Assumptions: Data is taken from ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004 All furring thickness values given are actual dimensions. All values include 0.5 inch gypsum board on the inner surface, interior surface resistances not included. The metal furring is 24 inch on center, 24 gauge, Z-type Metal Furring. The wood furring is 24 inch on center, Douglas-Fir Larch Wood Furring, density = 34.9 lb/ft³. Insulation assumed to fill the furring space.

4.4 Floors and Slabs

Table 4.4.1 – Standard U-factors for Wood-Framed Floors with a Crawl Space

Framing Spacing	**Nominal Framing Size**	**R-Value Cavity Insul.**		**Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation**							
				R-0	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	Any	None	**1**	0.097	0.081	0.070	0.061	0.058			
	2 x 6								0.055	0.049	0.041
		R-11	**2**	0.049	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.029
		R-13	**3**	0.046	0.042	0.039	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.031	0.028
		R-19	**4**	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.029	0.027	0.024
	2 x 8	R-19	**5**	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.029	0.027	0.024
		R-22	**6**	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.027	0.025	0.023
	2 x 10	R-25	**7**	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.022
		R-30	**8**	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.020
	2 x 12	R-38	**9**	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.019	0.018
24 in. OC	Any	None	**10**	0.098	0.082	0.070	0.062	0.058			
	2 x 6								0.055	0.049	0.041
		R-11	**11**	0.049	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.029
		R-13	**12**	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.034	0.033	0.031	0.028
		R-19	**13**	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.024
	2 x 8	R-19	**14**	0.036	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.024
		R-22	**15**	0.033	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.023
	2 x 10	R-25	**16**	0.030	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.021
		R-30	**17**	0.027	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020
	2 x 12	R-38	**18**	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.020	0.019	0.017

Notes:

1. In order to use the U-factors listed in this section, exterior raised-floor insulation shall be installed between floor joists with a means of support that prevents the insulation from falling, sagging or deteriorating. Two approaches that accomplish this are:
2. Nailing insulation hangers 18 inches apart prior to rolling out the insulation. Hangers are heavy wires up to 48 inches long with pointed ends, which provide positive wood penetration.
3. Attaching wire mesh to form a basket between joists to support the insulation. Mesh is nailed or stapled to the underside of the joists.

This table contains U-factors for wood framed floors built over a ventilated crawlspace. This construction is common for low-rise residential buildings and for Type IV nonresidential buildings.

If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. In this case, the insulation is installed only between the framing members. Continuous insulation is not common for wood floors over a crawlspace, but if credit is taken, the insulation may be installed either above or below the framing members. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

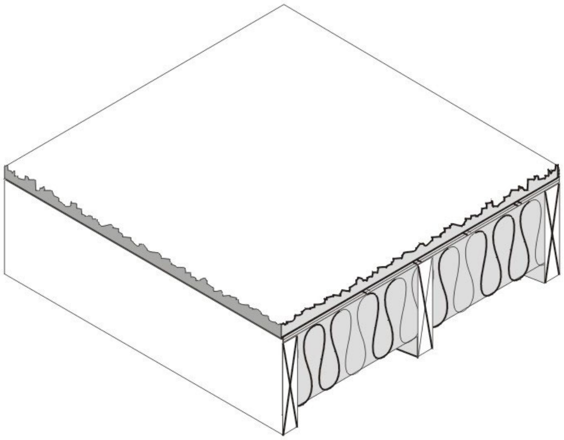


Figure 4.4.1 – Wood Framed Floor with a Crawl Space

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. Continuous insulation of at least R-2 must exist in order to use columns B and beyond. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

If the crawlspace is not ventilated and is modeled as a controlled ventilation crawlspace (CVC), then values from this table shall not be used. Values from Table 4.21 shall be used instead and the crawlspace shall be modeled as a separate and unconditioned zone.

Assumptions: Calculations use the ASHRAE parallel heat flow method documented in the 2005 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a vented crawlspace for an effective R-6, a continuous insulation layer (if any), the insulation / framing layer, 5/8 inch wood based sheathing (Custom), carpet and pad of R-2.08 (CP01), and an interior air film (heat flow down) of R-0.92. The framing factor is assumed to be 10 percent for 16 inch stud spacing and 7 percent for 24 inch spacing.

Table 4.4.2 – Standard U-factors for Wood Framed Floors without a Crawl Space

				Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation							
	Nominal Framing	R-Value of Cavity		R-0	R-2	R-4	R-6	R-7	R-8	R-10	R-14
Spacing	**Size**	**Insul.**		**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	Any	None	**1**	0.238	0.161	0.122	0.098	0.089	0.082	0.070	0.055
	2 x 6	R-11	**2**	0.071	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.047	0.045	0.041	0.036
	(5.50 in)	R-13	**3**	0.064	0.057	0.051	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.039	0.034
		R-19	**4**	0.049	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.035	0.032	0.028
	2 x 8	R-19	**5**	0.048	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.029
	(7.25 in.)	R-22	**6**	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.032	0.030	0.027
	2 x 10	R-25	**7**	0.039	0.036	0.034	0.031	0.030	0.030	0.028	0.025
	(9.25 in.)	R-30	**8**	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.028	0.027	0.025	0.023
	2 x 12	R-38	**9**	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.024	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.020
	(11.25 in.)										
24 in. OC	Any	None	**10**	0.243	0.163	0.123	0.099	0.090	0.083	0.071	0.055
	2 x 6	R-11	**11**	0.070	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.047	0.045	0.041	0.035
	(5.50 in.)	R-13	**12**	0.062	0.055	0.050	0.045	0.043	0.042	0.038	0.033
		R-19	**13**	0.047	0.043	0.039	0.037	0.035	0.034	0.032	0.028
	2 x 8	R-19	**14**	0.047	0.043	0.039	0.037	0.035	0.034	0.032	0.028
	(7.25 in.)	R-22	**15**	0.042	0.039	0.036	0.034	0.033	0.032	0.030	0.026
	2 x 10	R-25	**16**	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.031	0.030	0.029	0.027	0.025
	(9.25 in.)	R-30	**17**	0.033	0.031	0.029	0.027	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.022
	2 x 12	R-38	**18**	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020
	(11.25 in.)										

This table contains U-factors for wood framed floors that are exposed to ambient (outdoor) conditions. This construction is common for low-rise residential buildings and for Type 4 nonresidential buildings.

If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. In this case, the insulation is installed only between the framing members. If credit is taken for continuous insulation, the insulation may be installed either above or below the framing members.

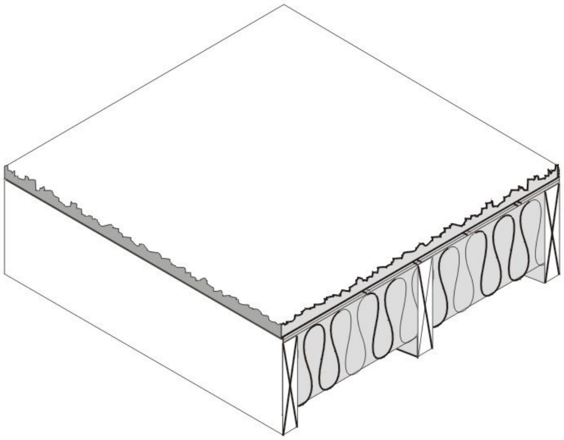


Figure 4.4.2 – Wood Framed Floor without a Crawl Space

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: Calculations use the ASHRAE parallel heat flow method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a continuous insulation layer (if any), the cavity insulation / framing layer, 5/8 inch wood based sheathing (Custom), carpet and pad of R-2.08 (CP01), and an interior air film (heat flow down) of R-0.92.

Table 4.4.3 – Standard U-factors for Wood Foam Panel (SIP) Floors

Crawlspace	Insulation R-value[1]	Wood Framing Spline Connection Type (Splines)	Typical Panel Thickness		Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation [3]						
					None	R-2	R-4	R-6	R-7	R-8	R-10
					A	B	C	D	E	F	G
YES	R-22	Single 2x	6.5 in	**1**	0.033	0.030	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.026	0.024
	R-22	Double 2x	6.5 in	**2**	0.034	0.031	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025
	R-22	I-Joist	6.5 in	**3**	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024
	R-28	Single 2x	8.25 in	**4**	0.027	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021
	R-28	Double 2x	8.25 in	**5**	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022
	R-28	I-Joist	8.25 in	**6**	0.027	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.022	0.021
	R-33[2]	Single 2x	6.5 in	**7**	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020	0.019
	R-33[2]	Double 2x	6.5 in	**8**	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020
	R-33[2]	I-Joist	6.5 in	**9**	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.019
	R-36	Single 2x	10.25 in	**10**	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.018
	R-36	Double 2x	10.25 in	**11**	0.024	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.020	0.020	0.019
	R-36	I-Joist	10.25 in	**12**	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.019	0.019	0.019	0.018
NO	R-22	Single 2x	6.5 in	**13**	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.033	0.031	0.030	0.029
	R-22	Double 2x	6.5 in	**14**	0.043	0.039	0.036	0.034	0.032	0.031	0.029
	R-22	I-Joist	6.5 in	**15**	0.040	0.037	0.034	0.032	0.031	0.030	0.028
	R-28	Single 2x	8.25 in	**16**	0.033	0.030	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.026	0.024
	R-28	Double 2x	8.25 in	**17**	0.034	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025
	R-28	I-Joist	8.25 in	**18**	0.032	0.030	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024
	R-33[2]	Single 2x	6.5 in	**19**	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.024	0.024	0.023	0.022
	R-33[2]	Double 2x	6.5 in	**20**	0.032	0.029	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023
	R-33[2]	I-Joist	6.5 in	**21**	0.028	0.027	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.022
	R-36	Single 2x	10.25 in	**22**	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.022	0.021
	R-36	Double 2x	10.25 in	**23**	0.028	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021
	R-36	I-Joist	10.25 in	**24**	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.021	0.020

Notes:

1. The insulation R-value must be at least R-21.7 in order to use this table. This table assumes molded expanded polystyrene (EPS) unless noted otherwise. Although other insulation types are used by some SIP manufacturers, such as polyurethane and extruded expanded insulation (XPS), EPS is the most common insulation used in SIP construction.
2. R-33.2 is achievable using polyurethane insulation in 6.5" panels.
3. Continuous insulation shall be at least R-2 and may be installed on either the inside or the exterior of the roof/ceiling.

Structural insulated panels (SIPs) consist of a rigid insulation core, securely bonded between two structural facings, to form a structural sandwich panel. SIPs are considered a non-framed assembly usually with little or no structural framing that penetrates the insulation layer, resulting in less thermal bridging across the insulation when compared to a conventional framed assembly.

If continuous insulation is not used, then choices are made from Column A. When continuous insulation is also used, this is typically installed on the exterior side of the floor, but can also be used on the inside. The continuous insulation is typically a rigid polystyrene or polyisocyanurate foam insulation.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation or for unusual construction assemblies using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

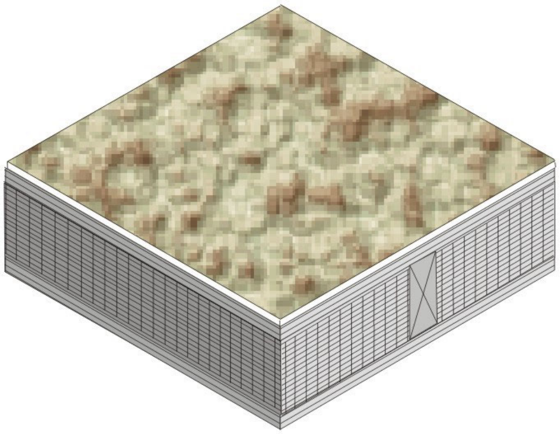


Figure 4.4.3 – Wood Foam Panel (SIP) Floor

Assumptions: These data are calculated using the parallel path method documented in the 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a vented crawlspace of R-6, 7/16 inch of OSB at R-0.44, framing factor of 2%, 7/16 inch of OSB, carpet and pad of R-2.08 and an interior air film of R-0.92.

Table 4.4.4 – Standard U-factors for Metal-Framed Floors with a Crawl Space

Framing Spacing	**Nominal Framing Size**	**Cavity Insulation R-Value:**		**Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation**							
				R-0	**R-2**	**R-4**	**R-6**	**R-7**	**R-8**	**R-10**	**R-14**
				A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**ºF**	**G**	**H**
16 in. OC	Any	None	1	0.094	0.079	0.068	0.060	0.057	0.054	0.048	0.041
	2 x 6	R-11	2	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.047	0.045	0.043	0.039	0.034
		R-13	3	0.063	0.056	0.050	0.046	0.044	0.042	0.039	0.033
		R-19	4	0.059	0.053	0.048	0.044	0.042	0.040	0.037	0.032
	2 x 8	R-19	5	0.058	0.052	0.047	0.043	0.041	0.040	0.037	0.032
		R-22	6	0.056	0.050	0.046	0.042	0.040	0.039	0.036	0.031
	2 x 10	R-30	7	0.051	0.046	0.042	0.039	0.038	0.036	0.034	0.030
	2 x 12	R-38	8	0.048	0.044	0.040	0.037	0.036	0.035	0.032	0.029
24 in. OC	Any	None	9	0.094	0.079	0.068	0.060	0.057	0.054	0.048	0.041
	2 x 6	R-11	10	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.033
		R-13	11	0.058	0.052	0.047	0.043	0.041	0.040	0.037	0.032
		R-19	12	0.053	0.048	0.044	0.040	0.039	0.037	0.035	0.030
	2 x 8	R-19	13	0.051	0.046	0.042	0.039	0.038	0.036	0.034	0.030
		R-22	14	0.049	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.036	0.035	0.033	0.029
	2 x 10	R-30	15	0.045	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.034	0.033	0.031	0.028
	2 x 12	R-38	16	0.041	0.038	0.035	0.033	0.032	0.031	0.029	0.026

Notes:

In order to use the U-factors listed in this table, exterior raised-floor insulation shall be installed between floor joists with a means of support that prevents the insulation from falling, sagging or deteriorating. Two approaches that accomplish this are:

1. Attaching insulation hangers 18 inches apart prior to rolling out the insulation. Hangers are heavy wires up to 48 inches long with pointed ends.
2. Attaching wire mesh to form a basket between joists to support the insulation. Mesh is nailed or stapled to the underside of the joists.

This table contains U-factors for metal-framed floors built over a crawlspace. The constructions represented are similar to those in Table 4.4.1, except that wood framing is replaced with metal framing. Cavity insulation is installed between the framing members. Since the steel is not as large a cross section as wood, the insulation needs to be wider than that used with wood to fit in between the steel framing members.

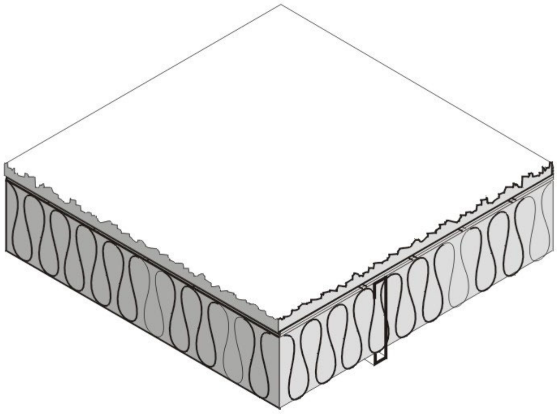


Figure 4.4.4 – Metal Framed Floors with a Crawl Space

For the majority of cases, values will be selected from column A of this table. Column A applies for the common situation where batt insulation is supported between framing members. Builders or designers may increase thermal performance by adding a continuous insulation layer either above or below the framing members.

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation and for unusual construction layers using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: Calculations are based on the ASHRAE Zone Method Calculation, 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a vented crawlspace for an effective R-6, a continuous insulation layer (if any), the insulation / framing layer, 5/8 inch wood based sheathing (Custom), carpet and pad of R-2.08 (CP01), and an interior air film (heat flow down) of R-0.92. The effect of the crawlspace is approximated by an additional R-6 of insulation. The internal default framing percentages are 10 percent for 16 inch on center and 7 percent for 24 inch on center. Steel Framing has a 1.5 inch flange and is 0.075 inch thick steel (14 gauge) with no knockouts. U-factors are calculated using EZ frame 2.0.

Table 4.4.5 – Standard U-factors for Metal-Framed Floors without a Crawl Space

				Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation							
	Nominal	Cavity Insulation R-		R-0	R-2	R-4	R-6	R-7	R-8	R-10	R-14
Spacing	Framing Size	Value		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
16 in. OC	Any	None	**1**	0.253	0.168	0.126	0.100	0.091	0.084	0.072	0.056
	2 x 6	R-11	**2**	0.108	0.089	0.075	0.066	0.062	0.058	0.052	0.043
		R-13	**3**	0.102	0.085	0.072	0.063	0.060	0.056	0.050	0.042
		R-19	**4**	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.059	0.056	0.053	0.048	0.040
	2 x 8	R-19	**5**	0.088	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.054	0.052	0.047	0.039
		R-22	**6**	0.085	0.073	0.063	0.056	0.053	0.051	0.046	0.039
	2 x 10	R-30	**7**	0.075	0.065	0.058	0.052	0.049	0.047	0.043	0.037
	2 x 12	R-38	**8**	0.068	0.060	0.053	0.048	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.035
24 in. OC	Any	None	**9**	0.253	0.168	0.126	0.100	0.091	0.084	0.072	0.056
	2 x 6	R-11	**10**	0.095	0.080	0.069	0.061	0.057	0.054	0.049	0.041
		R-13	**11**	0.087	0.074	0.065	0.057	0.054	0.051	0.047	0.039
		R-19	**12**	0.077	0.067	0.059	0.053	0.050	0.048	0.044	0.037
	2 x 8	R-19	**13**	0.074	0.064	0.057	0.051	0.049	0.046	0.043	0.036
		R-22	**14**	0.07	0.061	0.055	0.049	0.047	0.045	0.041	0.035
	2 x 10	R-30	**15**	0.061	0.054	0.049	0.045	0.043	0.041	0.038	0.033
	2 x 12	R-38	**16**	0.054	0.049	0.044	0.041	0.039	0.038	0.035	0.031

Notes:

In order to use the U-factors listed in this section, exterior raised-floor insulation shall be installed between floor joists with a means of support that prevents the insulation from falling, sagging or deteriorating. Two approaches that accomplish this are:

1. Attaching insulation hangers 18 inches apart prior to rolling out the insulation. Hangers are heavy wires up to 48 inches long with pointed ends.
2. Attaching wire mesh to form a basket between joists to support the insulation. Mesh is nailed or stapled to the underside of the joists.

This table contains U-factors for metal-framed floors built over outdoor conditions. For the majority of cases, values will be selected from column A of this table. Column A applies for the common situation where batt insulation is supported between framing members. Builders or designers may increase thermal performance by adding a continuous insulation layer either above or below the framing members.

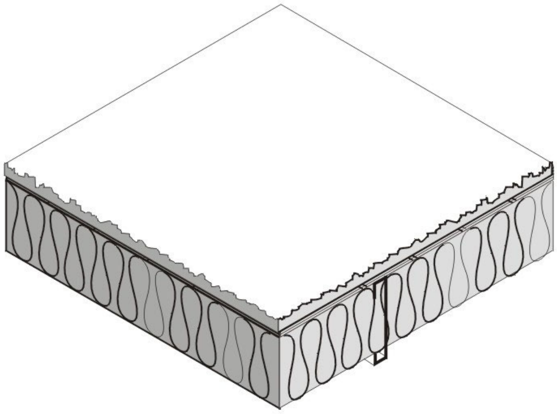


Figure 4.4.5 – Metal Framed Floors without a Crawl Space

When this table is used manually, the R-value of continuous insulation shall be equal to or greater than the R-value published in the continuous insulation columns. No interpolation is permitted when data from the table is used manually. Commission approved compliance software, however, may determine the U-factor for any amount of continuous insulation and for unusual construction layers using Equation 4-1 and Equation 4-2.

Assumptions: Calculations are based on the ASHRAE Zone Method Calculation, 2009 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals Handbook. These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a continuous insulation layer (if any), the insulation / framing layer, 5/8 inch wood based sheathing (Custom), carpet and pad of R-2.08 (CP01), and an interior air film (heat flow down) of R-0.92. The internal default framing percentages are 10 percent for 16 inch on center and 7 percent for 24 inch on center. Steel Framing has a 1.5 inch flange and is 0.075 inch thick steel with no knockouts. U-factors calculated using EZ frame 2.0.

Table 4.4.6 – Standard U-factors for Concrete Raised Floors

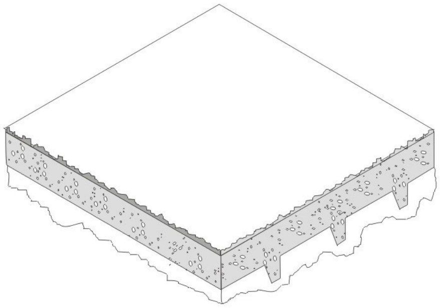
R-value of Insulation		Rated R-value of Continuous Insulation		
		Continuous Insulation Underneath	**Continuous Insulation Above Deck**[1] with no Sleepers	**Continuous Insulation Above Deck**[1] with Sleepers
		A	**B**	**C**
R-0	**1**	0.269	0.234	0.229
R-2	**2**	0.183	0.159	0.157
R-4	**3**	0.138	0.121	0.120
R-6	**4**	0.111	0.097	0.097
R-8	**5**	0.092	0.081	0.081
R-10	**6**	0.079	0.070	0.070
R-12	**7**	0.069	0.061	0.061
R-15	**8**	0.058	0.052	0.052
R-20	**9**	0.045	0.041	0.041
R-25	**10**	0.037	0.034	0.034
R-30	**11**	0.031	0.029	0.029

Notes:

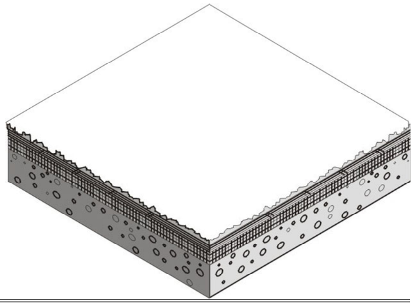
1. Above deck case includes a 5/8 inch layer of plywood between the insulation and the carpet and pad.

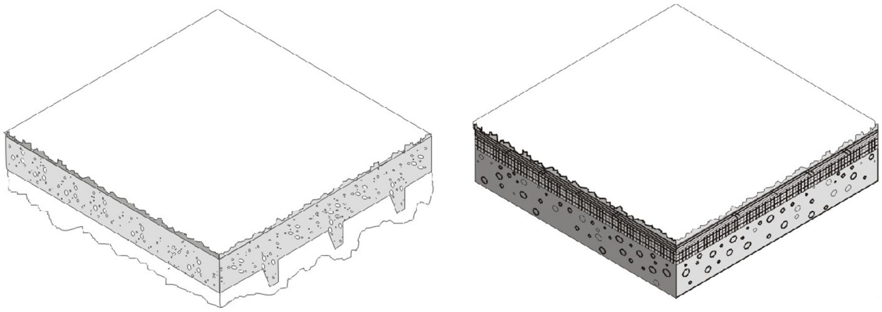
This table may be used only if the HC of the proposed design floor is greater than or equal to 7.0 Btu/ft²-ºF.

Continuous Insulation Underneath



Continuous Insulation Above Deck





~~Continuous Insulation Underneath~~

~~Continuous Insulation Above Deck~~

Figure 4.4.6 – Concrete Raised Floors

Assumptions: These calculations assume an exterior air film of R-0.17, a continuous insulation layer (if any), 4 inches of the lightweight concrete (CC14) over metal deck R-0, a continuous insulation layer (if any), 1.5 x 3.5 inch sleeper of R-0.99 per inch, R-0.80 air space between sleepers (2005 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, Chapter 25, Table 3), 5/8 inches of wood based sheathing (Custom) (if continuous insulation above deck), carpet and pad of R-2.08 (CP01), and an interior air film (heat flow down) of R-0.92. Sleepers have 10 percent framing factor. Below slab insulation assumes 6 inch wide beams 96 inches on center extending 8 inches below the slab.

Table 4.4.7 – F-Factors for Unheated Slab-on-Grade Floors

		Rated R-Value of Insulation												
Insulation Description		R-0	R-5	R-7.5	R-10	R-15	R-20	R-25	R-30	R-35	R-40	R-45	R-50	R-55
		A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**H**	**I**	**J**	**K**	**L**	**M**
None	**1**	0.73												
12 in. horizontal	**2**		0.72	0.71	0.71	0.71								
24 in. horizontal	**3**		0.70	0.70	0.70	0.69								
36 in. horizontal	**4**		0.68	0.67	0.66	0.66								
48 in. horizontal	**5**		0.67	0.65	0.64	0.63								
12 in. vertical	**6**		0.61	0.60	0.58	0.57	0.567	0.565	0.564					
24 in. vertical	**7**		0.58	0.56	0.54	0.52	0.510	0.505	0.502					
36 in. vertical	**8**		0.56	0.53	0.51	0.48	0.472	0.464	0.460					
48 in. vertical	**9**		0.54	0.51	0.48	0.45	0.434	0.424	0.419					
Fully insulated slab	**10**		0.46	0.41	0.36	0.30	0.261	0.233	0.213	0.198	0.186	0.176	0.168	0.161

Note: These values are used for slab edge conditions with and without carpet.

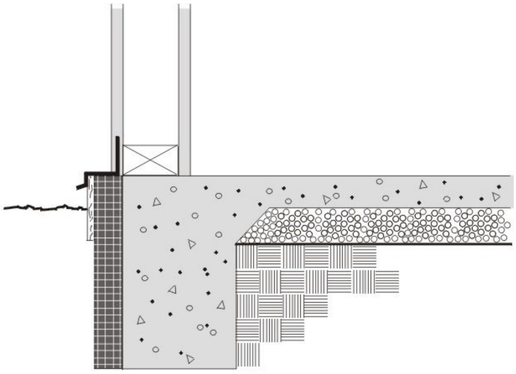


Figure 4.4.7 – Unheated Slab-on-Grade Floor

Horizontal insulation is continuous insulation that is applied directly to the underside of the slab and extends inward horizontally from the perimeter for the distance specified or continuous insulation that is applied downward from the top of the slab and then extends horizontally to the interior or the exterior from the perimeter for the distance specified. *Vertical insulation* is continuous insulation that is applied directly to the slab exterior, extending downward from the top of the slab for the distance specified. *Fully insulated slab* is continuous insulation that extends downward from the top to the slab and along the entire perimeter and completely covers the entire area under the slab.

Assumptions: Data of this table is taken from the ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004, Appendix A.

Table 4.4.8 – F-Factors for Heated Slab-on-Grade Floors

		Rated R-Value of Insulation												
		R-0	R-5	R-7.5	R-10	R-15	R-20	R-25	R-30	R-35	R-40	R-45	R-50	R-55
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
None	**11**	1.35												
12 in. horizontal	**12**		1.31	1.31	1.30	1.30								
24 in. horizontal	**13**		1.28	1.27	1.26	1.25								
36 in. horizontal	**14**		1.24	1.21	1.20	1.18								
48 in. horizontal	**15**		1.20	1.17	1.13	1.11								
12 in. vertical	**16**		1.06	1.02	1.00	0.98	0.968	0.964	0.961					
24 in. vertical	**17**		0.99	0.95	0.90	0.86	0.843	0.832	0.827					
36 in. vertical	**18**		0.95	0.89	0.84	0.79	0.762	0.747	0.740					
48 in. vertical	**19**		0.91	0.85	0.78	0.72	0.688	0.671	0.659					
Fully insulated slab	**20**		0.74	0.64	0.55	0.44	0.373	0.326	0.296	0.273	0.255	0.239	0.227	0.217

Note: These values are used for slab edge conditions with and without carpet.

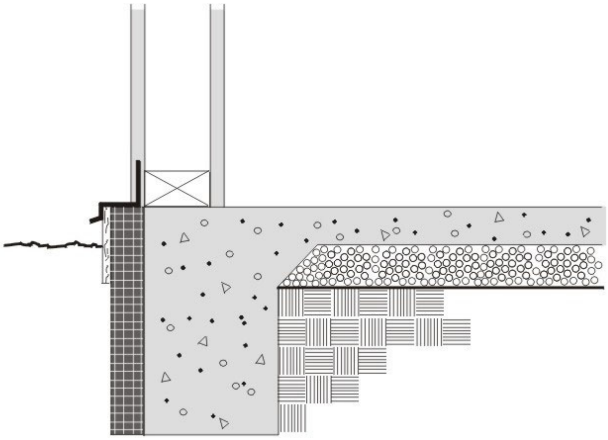


Figure 4.4.8 – Heated Slab-on-Grade Floor

Horizontal insulation is continuous insulation that is applied directly to the underside of the slab and extends inward horizontally from the perimeter for the distance specified or continuous insulation that is applied downward from the top of the slab and then extending horizontally to the interior or the exterior from the perimeter for the distance specified. *Vertical insulation* is continuous insulation that is applied directly to the slab exterior, extending downward from the top of the slab for the distance specified. *Fully insulated slab* is continuous insulation that extends downward from the top to the slab and along the entire perimeter and completely covers the entire area under the slab.

Assumptions: Data of this table is taken from the ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004, Appendix A.

JA4.5 Miscellaneous Construction

Table 4.5.1 – Doors

Description		**U-factor (Btu/ºF-ft²)**
		A
Uninsulated single-layer metal *swinging doors* or *non-swinging doors*, including single-layer uninsulated access hatches and uninsulated smoke vents:	**1**	1.45
Uninsulated double-layer metal *swinging doors* or *non-swinging doors*, including double-layer uninsulated access hatches and uninsulated smoke vents:	**2**	0.70
Insulated metal *swinging doors*, including fire-rated *doors*, insulated access hatches, and insulated smoke vents:	**3**	0.50
Wood *doors*, minimum nominal thickness of 1-3/4 in. (44 mm), including panel *doors* with minimum panel thickness of 1-1/8 in. (28 mm), and solid core flush *doors*, and hollow core flush *doors*:	**4**	0.50
Any other wood *door*:	**5**	0.60
Uninsulated single layer metal *roll up doors* including fire rated *door*	**6**	1.45
Insulated single layer metal *sectional doors,* minimum insulation nominal thickness of 1-3/8 inch; expanded polystyrene (R-4 per inch).	**7**	0.179
Source: ASHRAE 90.1-2007, Section A7.		

Table 4.5.2 – Physical Properties of Materials

Code	Description	R-value	Thickness	Conductivity	Density	Specific Heat
AR02	Asphalt Shingle & Siding	0.44			70.0	0.35
BP01	Building Paper, Permeable Felt	0.06				
PW03	Plywood 1/2 in.	0.63	0.0417	0.0667	34.0	0.29
GP01	Gypsum Board 1/2 in.	0.45	0.0417	0.0926	50.0	0.26
BR01	Built-up Roofing 3/8 in.	0.33	0.0313	0.0939	70.0	0.35
PW05	Plywood 3/4 in.	0.94	0.0625	0.0667	34.0	0.29
PW04	Plywood 5/8 in.	0.78	0.0521	0.0667	34.0	0.29
CP01	Carpet with Fibrous Pad	2.08				0.34
PB01	Particle Board Low Density 3/4 in.	1.39	0.0625	0.0450	75.0	0.31
SC01	Stucco 1 in.	0.20	0.0833	0.4167	116.0	0.20
WD05	Wood, Soft 4 in.	5.00	0.3333	0.0667	32.0	0.33
WD11	Wood, Hard 3/4 in.	0.68	0.0625	0.0916	45.0	0.30
-CC03	Heavy Wt. Dried Aggregate 4 in.	0.44	0.3333	0.7576	140.0	0.20
CC14	Heavy Wt. Undried Aggregate 4 in.	0.32	0.3333	1.0417	140.0	0.20
AC02	1/2 in. Acoustic Tile	1.26	0.0417	0.0330	18.0	0.32
AL33	Air Layer 4 in. or more, Horizontal Roof	0.92	1.0000	0.4167	120.0	0.20
CP01	Carpet with Fibrous Pad	2.08				0.34
Custom	Concrete	0.11			144.0	0.20
Custom	Light Weight CMU	0.35			105.0	0.20
Custom	Medium Weight CMU	0.35			115.0	0.20
Custom	Normal Weight CMU	0.35			125.0	0.20
Custom	Earth (Soil)	3.00	1.5000	0.5000	85.0	0.20
Custom	Logs 6 in.	7.50	0.5000	0.0667	32.0	0.33
Custom	Logs 8 in.	10.00	0.6667	0.0667	32.0	0.33
Custom	Logs 10 in.	12.49	0.8333	0.0667	32.0	0.33
Custom	Logs 12 in.	14.99	1.0000	0.0667	32.0	0.33
Custom	Logs 14 in.	17.49	1.1667	0.0667	32.0	0.33
Custom	Logs 16 in.	19.99	1.3333	0.0667	32.0	0.33
Custom	Earth 12 in.	2.00	1.0000	0.5000	85.0	0.20
Custom	Vented crawlspace	6.00	NA	NA	NA	NA
Custom	7/8" layer of stucco of R-0.18	0.18	0.0729	0.4167	116.0	0.20
Custom	Straw bale	30.00				
Custom	Acoustic tile + Metal	0.50	0.0417	0.0330	18.0	0.32
Custom	OSB 7/16 in.	0.44	0.4375	0.0667	34.0	0.29

Table 4.5.3 – Rules for Calculating Mass Thermal Properties From Published Values

Property	**Units**	**Rule for Calculation**
Heat Capacity (HC)	Btu/ºF-ft²	From Table 4.3.5, Table 4.3.6, or Table 4.3.7
U-factor	Btu/h-ºF-ft²	From Table 4.3.5, Table 4.3.6, or Table 4.14
C-factor	Btu/h-ºF-ft²	From Table 4.3.5, Table 4.3.6, or Table 4.3.7
Thickness (T)	Ft	From Table 4.3.5, Table 4.3.6, or Table 4.3.7
Specific Heat (SH)	Btu/ºF-lb	Assume that the specific heat of all concrete and masonry materials is 0.20 Btu/ºF-lb and that the specific heat of wood or straw (see Table 4.3.11 and Table 4.3.12) is 0.39 Btu/ºF-lb.
Weight (W)	lb/ft²	Divide the HC by the assumed specific heat. Wall weight is used with the low-rise residential standards to define a high mass wall.
Density (D)	lb/ft³	Multiply the weight (as calculated above) by the thickness (T)
Conductivity (C)	Btu/h-ºF-ft	Divide the published C-factor by the thickness (T). When only a U-factor is published, calculate the C-factor by assuming an exterior air film of 0.17 and an interior air film of 0.68.

Joint Appendix JA5

Appendix JA5 – Technical Specifications For Occupant Controlled Smart Thermostats

JA5.1 Introduction

Joint Appendix 5 (JA5) provides the technical specifications for an Occupant Controlled Smart Thermostat (OCST). An OCST can be an independent device or part of a control system comprised of multiple devices.

The requirements in this appendix are intended to be compatible with National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard DC 3-2013 Residential Controls – Electrical Wall Mounted Thermostats and NEMA DC 3 Annex A-2013 Energy-Efficiency Requirements for Programmable Thermostats.

JA5.1.1 Manufacturer Self-Certification

An OCST is compliant with Title 24, Part 6, only if it has been certified to the Energy Commission as meeting all of the requirements in this Appendix. Certification to the Energy Commission shall be as specified in Section 110.0.

JA 5.2 Required Functional Specification

JA5.2.1 Setback Capabilities

An OCST shall meet the requirements of Section 110.2(c). Thermostats for heat pumps shall also meet the requirements of Section 110.2(b).

JA5.2.2 Restart Settings

In the event of a disruption of power to the device that results in power off or restart, upon device restart, the device shall automatically restore the most recently programmed settings, including reconnection to a network, if the device was previously enabled and network connectivity is available.

JA5.2.3 Automatic Rejoin

An OCST shall connect~~,~~ and remain connected in its communication path and control end point. The OCST shall incorporate an automatic rejoin function. When physical and/or logical communication is lost, the OCST shall trigger its automatic rejoin function to restore the physical and/or logical communication.

JA5.2.4 Event Responses

Event response, unless overridden by the occupant or modified by an energy management control system or service, may be triggered by price signals or Demand Response Signals. The OCST shall provide one set of event responses for price signals and one set of event responses for Demand Response Signals. The responses may be common for both types of events. The OCST's default responses shall comply with the following:

(a) A Demand Response Signal shall trigger the OCST to adjust the thermostat setpoint by either the default number of degrees or the number of degrees established by the occupant.

(b) When a price signal indicates a price in excess of a price threshold established by the occupant, the OCST shall adjust the thermostat setpoint by either the default number of degrees or the number of degrees established by the occupant.

(c) In response to price signals or Demand Response signals, the OCST shall default to an event response that initiates setpoint offsets of +4°F for cooling and -4°F for heating relative to the current setpoint.

(d) The OCST shall have the capability to allow occupants or their representative to modify the default event response with occupant defined event responses for cooling and heating relative to the current setpoint in response to price signals or Demand Response Signals.

(e) Override Function: Occupants shall be able to change the event responses and thermostat settings or setpoints at any time, including during price events or Demand Response Periods.

(f) The Demand Response Signal shall start the Demand Response Period either immediately or at a specific start time as specified in the event signal and continue for the Demand Response Period specified in the Demand Response Signal or until the occupant overrides the event setpoint.

(g) The thermostat's price response shall start either immediately or at a specific start time as specified in the pricing signal and continue for the duration specified in the pricing signal or until the occupant overrides the event setpoint.

(h) The OCST shall have the capability to allow occupants to define setpoints for cooling and heating in response to price signals or Demand Response signals as an alternative to the default event response.

(i) At the end of a price event or Demand Response Period, the thermostat setpoint shall be set to the setpoint that is programmed for the point in time that the event ends or to the manually established setpoint that existed just prior to the Demand Response Period.

The OCST shall include the capability to allow the occupant to restore the factory installed default settings.

JA5.2.5 User Display and Interface

The OCST shall have the capability to display information to the user. The following information shall be readily available whenever the OCST display is active:

(a) communications system connection status,

(b) an indication that a Demand Response Period or pricing event is in progress,

(c) the currently sensed temperature,

(d) the current setpoint.

JA5.2.6 Required Functional Behavior

(a) *Normal Operation.* Normal operation of an OCST is defined to be the OCST's prevailing mode of operation as determined by the occupant's prior settings and use of features provided by the OCST manufacturer's design. Aspects of normal operation of an OCST may be modified or interrupted in response to occupant subscribed price signals or when Demand Response Periods are in progress, but only to the extent specified by occupants or their representatives.

Unless an occupant has elected to connect the OCST to an energy management control system or service that provides for alternate strategies, the OCST shall provide a mode of operation whereby it controls temperature by following the scheduled temperature setpoints.

Occupants shall always have the ability to change OCST settings or use other features of an OCST during an event. Those changes may alter what is considered to be the prevailing mode of operation when a Demand Response Period is terminated and the OCST returns to normal operation.

(b) *Demand Responsive Control.* Upon receiving a price signal or a Demand Response Signal, OCSTs shall be capable of automatic event response by adjusting the currently applicable temperature setpoint by the number of degrees indicated in the temperature offset (heating or cooling, as appropriate).

Override: OCSTs shall allow an occupant or their representative to alter or eliminate the default response to price signals or Demand Response Signals, and to override any individual price response or Demand Responsive Control and allow the occupant to choose any temperature setpoint at any time including during a price event or a Demand Response Period.

When the price signal changes to a non-response level or the Demand Response Period is concluded, OCSTs shall return to normal operation. The thermostat setpoint shall be set to the setpoint that is programmed for the point in time that the event ends or to the manually established setpoint that existed just prior to the Demand Response Period.

The OCST shall also be equipped with the capability to allow occupants to define setpoints for cooling and heating in response to price signals or Demand Response Signals as an alternative to the default event response. The default setpoint definitions unless redefined by the occupant shall be as follows:

1. The default price response or Demand Response Period setpoint in the cooling mode for OCSTs shall be 82°F. The OCST shall allow the occupant to change the default event setpoint to any other value.
2. The default price response or Demand Response Period setpoint in the heating mode for OCSTs shall be 60°F. The OCST shall allow the occupant to change the default event setpoint to any other value.
3. The OCST shall ignore price response or Demand Response Period setpoints that are lower (in cooling mode) or higher (in heating mode) than the programmed or occupant selected prevailing setpoint temperature upon initiation of the price event or Demand Response Period.
4. By default, thermostats shall not be remotely set above 90°F or below 50°F. Occupants shall have the ability to redefine these limits. This measure protects occupant premises from extreme temperatures that might otherwise be imposed by event responses, should the occupant already have a very high or low temperature setpoint in effect.

The occupant may still override or change the setpoint during all price events and Demand Response Periods. Price signal response and Demand Responsive Control only modify the operating range of the thermostat. They do not otherwise affect the operation and use of features provided by the manufacturer's design.

JA5.2 HVAC System Interface

HVAC wiring terminal designations shall be clearly labeled. OCSTs shall use labels that comply with Table 5-1 in NEMA DC 3-2013.

Joint Appendix JA6

Appendix JA6 – HVAC System Fault Detection and Diagnostic Technology

~~**Appendix JA6 – HVAC System Fault Detection and Diagnostic Technology .... 1**~~

~~JA6.1 Fault Indicator Display (FID) .... 2~~

~~JA6.1.1 Purpose and Scope .... 2~~

~~JA6.1.2 FID Product Approval .... 2~~

~~JA6.1.3 FID Installation .... 2~~

~~JA6.1.4 FID Product Documentation .... 2~~

~~JA6.1.5 Optional Fault Detection Capabilities .... 3~~

~~JA6.1.6 Requirements for a Fault Indicator Display .... 3~~

~~JA6.2 Saturation Pressure Measurement Sensors .... 8~~

~~JA6.2.1 Purpose and Scope .... 8~~

~~JA6.2.2 SPMS Device Approval .... 8~~

~~JA6.2.3 Standard for Saturation Pressure Measurement Sensors .... 8~~

~~Declaration .... 14~~

JA6.1 Fault Indicator Display (FID)

JA6.1.1 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA6.1 defines required elements for fault indicator display technologies that utilize instrumentation and computer software functionality to monitor and determine the operating performance of vapor compression air conditioning and heat pump systems, to provide visual indication to the system owner/operator if the system's refrigerant charge or metering device performance does not conform to approved target parameters for minimally efficient operation.

JA6.1.6 specifies the required instrumentation, instrumentation accuracy, parameters measured, required calculations, allowable deviations from target values for system operating parameters, and the requirements for system fault indication for a fault indicator display technology that conforms to the methods for verifying refrigerant charge and metering device performance described in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.2.2.

Fault indicator display technologies other than what is described in Section JA6.1are possible, and when vapor compression air conditioner and heat pump system refrigerant charge, metering device and airflow operating performance can be reliably determined by methods and instrumentation other than those specifically defined in section JA6.1 such alternative fault indicator display technologies may be allowed for Fault Indicator Display compliance credit if the manufacturer of the product requests approval from the Energy Commission. The Commission may grant such approval after reviewing submittals from the applicant. Fault indicator display technologies that are approved by the Commission shall be specified in documentation that will be published as an addendum to this appendix.

The applicant shall provide information that specifies the required instrumentation, the instrumentation accuracy, the parameters measured, the required calculations, the allowable deviations from target values for system operating parameters, and the requirements for system fault indication.

JA6.1.2 FID Product Approval

Fault indicator display technology manufacturers shall certify to the Energy Commission that the fault indicator display technology meets the requirements of Reference Joint Appendix JA6.1.

JA6.1.3 FID Installation

Fault indicator display devices shall be factory installed by the space-conditioning system manufacturer, or field installed according to the space-conditioning system manufacturer's requirements and the FID manufacturer's specifications.

JA6.1.4 FID Product Documentation

Manufacturers of FID technologies shall, upon request, provide comprehensive engineering specification documentation, installation and technical field service documentation, and homeowner user instructions documentation to designers, installers, service personnel and homeowners who utilize the technology.

JA6.1.5 Optional Fault Detection Capabilities

The FID may also be used to signal other system operation faults as long as these additional functions do not detract from the proper function of the refrigerant charge, metering device, or airflow operation indications.

JA6.1.6 Requirements for a Fault Indicator Display

This section specifies the required instrumentation, the instrumentation accuracy, the parameters measured, the required calculations, the allowable deviations from target values for system operating parameters, and the requirements for system fault indication for a fault indicator display technology.

JA6.1.6.1 Instrumentation Specifications

Instrumentation for the procedures described in JA6.1.6 shall conform to the following specifications:

JA6.1.6.1.1 Temperature Sensors

The temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of plus or minus1.8°F.

JA6.1.6.1.2 Refrigerant Pressure Sensors

Refrigerant pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.

JA6.1.6.1.3 Parameters Measured

The following parameters shall be measured:

(a) Suction line temperature ($T_{suction,}$).

(b) Liquid line temperature (T_{liquid}).

(c) Evaporator saturation temperature or low side refrigerant pressure ($T_{evaporator, sat}$).

(d) Condenser saturation temperature or high side refrigerant pressure ($T_{condensor, sat}$).

(e) Return air wet bulb temperature or humidity ($T_{return, wb}$).

(f) Return air dry bulb temperature ($T_{return, db}$).

(g) Condenser air entering dry bulb temperature ($T_{condenser, db}$).

(h) Supply air dry bulb temperature ($T_{supply, db}$).

JA6.1.6.2 Refrigerant Charge, Metering Device, and Airflow Calculations

Refrigerant charge, metering device and airflow calculations for determining superheat, subcooling, and temperature split values shall conform to the specifications of this section utilizing the measured parameters data from instrumentation as specified in Section JA6.1.6.1.

JA6.1.6.2.1 Fixed Metering Device Calculations

The fixed metering device calculations are used only for systems equipped with fixed metering devices. These include capillary tubes and piston-type metering devices.

(a) Calculate Actual Superheat as the suction line temperature minus the evaporator saturation temperature. Actual Superheat = $T_{suction,} – T_{evaporator, sat}$.

(b) Determine the Target Superheat using Reference Residential Appendix RA3 Table RA3.2-2, the return air wet-bulb temperature ($T_{return, wb}$) and the condenser air entering dry-bulb temperature ($T_{condenser, db}$). If a dash mark is read from Reference Residential Appendix RA3 Table RA3.2-2, the target superheat is less than 5°F.

(c) Calculate the difference between Actual Superheat and Target Superheat (Actual Superheat - Target Superheat)

JA6.1.6.2.2 Variable Metering Device Calculations

The variable metering device calculations are used only for systems equipped with variable metering devices. These include Thermostatic Expansion Valves (TXV) and Electronic Expansion Valves (EXV).

(a) Calculate Actual Subcooling as the condenser saturation temperature minus the liquid line temperature. Actual Subcooling = $T_{condenser, sat} - T_{liquid}$.

(b) Determine the Target Subcooling specified by the manufacturer.

(c) Calculate the difference between actual subcooling and target subcooling (Actual Subcooling - Target Subcooling.

(d) Calculate Actual Superheat as the suction line temperature minus the evaporator saturation temperature. Actual Superheat = $T_{suction} – T_{evaporator, sat}$.

(e) If possible, determine the Superheat Range specified by the manufacturer.

JA6.1.6.2.3 Minimum Airflow Calculations

The minimum airflow calculations are designed to determine whether the rate of airflow across the evaporator coil is above the minimum airflow rate requirement for a valid refrigerant charge test result.

(a) Calculate the Actual Temperature Split as the return air dry-bulb temperature minus the supply air dry-bulb temperature. Actual Temperature Split = $T_{return, db} - T_{supply, db}$

(b) Determine the Target Temperature Split from Table JA6.1-1 using the return air wet-bulb temperature ($T_{return, wb}$) and return air dry-bulb temperature ($T_{return, db}$).

(c) Calculate the difference between target and actual temperature split (Actual Temperature Split - Target Temperature Split).

JA6.1.6.3 System Fault Indication

Data from instrumentation specified in Section JA6.1.6.1 and calculations specified in Section JA6.1.6.2 shall be processed and interpreted continuously or at sufficiently frequent time step intervals, during normal system operation, to insure that system operating conditions that meet the system fault criteria of this section will be detected, and indicated by the fault indicator display. Data from instrumentation specified in Section JA6.1.6.1 and calculations specified in Section JA6.1.6.2 shall be processed and interpreted in a manner that prevents indication of system faults when system fault criteria are triggered by temporary or transitory operating conditions that are not true indicators of problems with refrigerant charge, metering device, or airflow performance.

The fault indicator display shall:

(a) be clearly visible to occupants of the home during normal operation.

(b) be located on or within one foot of (one of) the thermostat(s) controlling the air conditioner.

(c) display an indication of a system fault requiring service or repair when system normal operation fails to meet the required operating performance criteria specified in this section. These system fault indications shall be displayed for a period of at least 7 days after a system fault is detected unless the fault indicator display is reset by the installing or servicing technician.

1. Refrigerant charge verification criterion for fixed metering device systems.

If the air conditioner has a fixed metering device, runs for 15 minutes, has a Target Superheat value determined by Reference Residential Appendix RA3 Table RA3.2-2 that is greater than or equal to 5°F, the condenser air entering temperature is greater than or equal to 65°F, and the minimum airflow requirement from item d below is satisfied, then the conditions for a valid refrigerant charge test are satisfied.

If the conditions for a valid refrigerant charge test are satisfied, and the air conditioner has an Actual Superheat value that deviates more than plus or minus 10°F from the Target Superheat value determined by Reference Residential Appendix RA3 Table RA3.2-2, then the system fails the refrigerant charge test, and a system fault shall be reported.

2. Refrigerant charge verification criterion for variable metering device systems.

If the air conditioner has a TXV or EXV, runs for 15 minutes, the condenser air entering temperature is greater than or equal to 65°F, and the minimum airflow requirement from item d below is satisfied, then the conditions for a valid refrigerant charge test are satisfied.

If the conditions for a valid refrigerant charge test are satisfied, and the air conditioner has an Actual Subcooling value that deviates more than plus or minus 6°F from the Target Subcooling value listed by the manufacturer, then the system fails the refrigerant charge test, and a system fault shall be reported.

3. Variable metering device function verification criterion.

If the air conditioner has a TXV or EXV, runs for 15 minutes, the condenser air entering temperature is greater than or equal to 65°F, and the minimum airflow requirement from item d below is satisfied, then the conditions for a valid metering device test are satisfied.

If the conditions for a valid metering device test are satisfied, and the air conditioner has an Actual Superheat value outside the range specified by the manufacturer (or outside the range 2°F to 28°F if there is no manufacturer's specification), then the system fails the metering device test, and a system fault shall be reported.

4. Minimum airflow verification criterion.

If the air conditioner runs for 15 minutes, and the condenser air entering temperature is greater than or equal to 65°F, then the conditions for a valid minimum airflow test are satisfied.

If the conditions for a valid minimum airflow test are satisfied, and the air conditioner has an Actual Temperature Split value that deviates more than plus 5°F from the Target Temperature Split value determined by Table JA6.1-1, then the system fails the minimum airflow test, and a system fault shall be reported.

JA6.1.6.4 Optional Functionality

The fault indicator display devices may be set to tighter specifications than those specified in Section JA6.1.6.3. The fault indicator display may also be used to signal other system faults as long as these additional diagnostic functions do not detract from the accuracy of the measurement and reporting of system faults as specified in Section JA6.1.6.3.

JA6.1.6.4.1 Self Diagnostic Reporting

When equipped with self diagnostic reporting functionality, the FID shall check for communication with every sensor and provide an indication when there are any sensor failures.

JA6.1.6.4.2 Data Access

In order to provide for verification of sensor data and FID system functionality, data access shall be provided. The FID manufacturer shall specify the data access method(s), and the minimum data reporting capability including requirements for any data history reporting.

Table JA6.1-1 Target Temperature Split (Return Dry-Bulb – Supply Dry-Bulb)

Return Air Wet-Bulb (ºF) (T return, wb)

-	-	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76
Return Air Dry–Bulb (ºF) (T return, db)	**70**	20.9	20.7	20.6	20.4	20.1	19.9	19.5	19.1	18.7	18.2	17.7	17.2	16.5	15.9	15.2	14.4	13.7	12.8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	71	21.4	21.3	21.1	20.9	20.7	20.4	20.1	19.7	19.3	18.8	18.3	17.7	17.1	16.4	15.7	15.0	14.2	13.4	12.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	72	21.9	21.8	21.7	21.5	21.2	20.9	20.6	20.2	19.8	19.3	18.8	18.2	17.6	17.0	16.3	15.5	14.7	13.9	13.0	12.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	73	22.5	22.4	22.2	22.0	21.8	21.5	21.2	20.8	20.3	19.9	19.4	18.8	18.2	17.5	16.8	16.1	15.3	14.4	13.6	12.6	11.7	-	-	-	-	-	-
	74	23.0	22.9	22.8	22.6	22.3	22.0	21.7	21.3	20.9	20.4	19.9	19.3	18.7	18.1	17.4	16.6	15.8	15.0	14.1	13.2	12.2	11.2	-	-	-	-	-
	75	23.6	23.5	23.3	23.1	22.9	22.6	22.2	21.9	21.4	21.0	20.4	19.9	19.3	18.6	17.9	17.2	16.4	15.5	14.7	13.7	12.7	11.7	10.7	-	-	-	-
	76	24.1	24.0	23.9	23.7	23.4	23.1	22.8	22.4	22.0	21.5	21.0	20.4	19.8	19.2	18.5	17.7	16.9	16.1	15.2	14.3	13.3	12.3	11.2	10.1	-	-	-
	77	-	24.6	24.4	24.2	24.0	23.7	23.3	22.9	22.5	22.0	21.5	21.0	20.4	19.7	19.0	18.3	17.5	16.6	15.7	14.8	13.8	12.8	11.7	10.6	9.5	-	-
	78	-	-	-	24.7	24.5	24.2	23.9	23.5	23.1	22.6	22.1	21.5	20.9	20.2	19.5	18.8	18.0	17.2	16.3	15.4	14.4	13.4	12.3	11.2	10.0	8.8	-
	79	-	-	-	-	-	24.8	24.4	24.0	23.6	23.1	22.6	22.1	21.4	20.8	20.1	19.3	18.5	17.7	16.8	15.9	14.9	13.9	12.8	11.7	10.6	9.4	8.1
	80	-	-	-	-	-	-	25.0	24.6	24.2	23.7	23.2	22.6	22.0	21.3	20.6	19.9	19.1	18.3	17.4	16.4	15.5	14.4	13.4	12.3	11.1	9.9	8.7
	81	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	25.1	24.7	24.2	23.7	23.1	22.5	21.9	21.2	20.4	19.6	18.8	17.9	17.0	16.0	15.0	13.9	12.8	11.7	10.4	9.2
	82	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	25.2	24.8	24.2	23.7	23.1	22.4	21.7	21.0	20.2	19.3	18.5	17.5	16.6	15.5	14.5	13.4	12.2	11.0	9.7
	83	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	25.3	24.8	24.2	23.6	23.0	22.3	21.5	20.7	19.9	19.0	18.1	17.1	16.1	15.0	13.9	12.7	11.5	10.3
	84	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	25.9	25.3	24.8	24.2	23.5	22.8	22.1	21.3	20.4	19.5	18.6	17.6	16.6	15.6	14.4	13.3	12.1	10.8

JA6.2 Saturation Pressure Measurement Sensors

JA6.2.1 Purpose and Scope

Appendix JA6.2 specifies the required instrumentation, and the instrumentation accuracy, for a saturation pressure measurement sensor (SPMS) device intended to provide a means for a HERS Rater to observe space conditioning system refrigerant pressure measurement data without attaching refrigerant gages to the refrigerant system service access ports.

The SPMS device manufacturer shall provide certification to the commission that the SPMS device conforms to the requirements of Reference Joint Appendix JA6.2.

JA6.2.2 SPMS Device Approval

SPMS devices, if approved by the Commission, shall be allowed for use for determining compliance with the refrigerant charge verification requirements in the Standards. The Commission may grant such approval after reviewing submittals from the applicant. SPMS devices that are approved by the Commission shall be listed as approved SPMS devices in directories published by Energy Commission.

Manufacturers of approved SPMS devices shall, upon request, provide comprehensive engineering specification documentation, installation and technical field service documentation, and user instructions documentation to installers and service personnel that utilize the procedure.

JA6.2.3 Standard for Saturation Pressure Measurement Sensors

SPMS devices shall measure and report the refrigerant system pressure for both the high pressure side and the low pressure side of the air conditioner or heat pump refrigerant system within the tolerances given in Section JA6.2.3.1.

JA6.2.3.1 Instrumentation Specifications

The pressure measurement instrumentation shall have accuracy equal to or better than the following:

(a) accuracy: ± 7.0 psi liquid line pressure

(b) accuracy: ± 3.5 psi suction pressure

JA6.2.3.2 Installation

SPMS devices shall be installed by the space-conditioning equipment manufacturer, or installed in the field according to any applicable space-conditioning equipment manufacturer requirements, within 12 inches of the refrigerant system service port.

JA6.3 Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics Certification Submittal Requirements

Title 24, Part 6, Section 120.2(i) requires that economizer FDD functions be installed on air-cooled unitary air conditioning systems with an air handler mechanical cooling capacity over ~~54,000~~33,000 Btu/hr cooling capacity, with the ability to detect the faults specified in Section 120.2(i). Each air conditioning system manufacturer, controls supplier, or FDD supplier wishing to certify that their FDD analytics conform to the FDD requirements of Title 24, Part 6, may do so in a written declaration. This requires that a letter be sent to the California Energy Commission declaring that the FDD conforms to Title 24, Part 6, Section 120.2(i). The declaration at the end of this section shall be used to submit to the California Energy Commission.

JA6.3.1 Information that shall be included with the Declaration

The air conditioning system manufacturer, controls supplier, or FDD supplier provides evidence as shown below:

(a) The following temperature sensors are permanently installed to monitor system operation:
  i. Outside air.
  ii. Supply air.
  iii. Return air, when required for differential economizer operation.

Evidence: Photograph or schematic of all required sensors indicating their recommended mounting instructions.

(b) Temperature sensors have an accuracy of ±2°F over the range of 40°F to 80°F
Evidence: Photocopy of sensor specification.

(c) The controller is capable of providing system status by indicating the following:
  i. Free cooling available.
  ii. Economizer enabled.
  iii. Compressor enabled.
  iv. Heating enabled, if applicable.
  v. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
  vi. The current value of each sensor.

Evidence: Laboratory test: describe how the mode is simulated and the wording used to indicate the status.

(d) The unit controller is capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans, and heating system, if applicable, can be independently tested and verified.

Evidence: Photocopy of controller manual showing instructions for manually initiating each operating mode.

(e) The unit controller is capable of reporting faults one of the following ways:

A. To an Energy Management Control System regularly monitored by facility personnel, or;

B. Annunciated locally on one or more zone thermostats, or on a device within five (5) feet of zone thermostat(s), clearly visible, at eye level, and meeting the following requirements:

i. On the thermostat, device, or an adjacent written sign, display instructions to contact appropriate building personnel or an HVAC technician.

ii. In buildings with multiple tenants, the annunciation shall either be within property management offices, or in common space accessible by the property or building manager.

C. To a fault management application which automatically provides notification of the fault to a remote HVAC service provider.

Evidence: Supplier's description of how they comply, and supporting documentation such as a photocopy of controller manual or photograph of fault management application, zone thermostat, or other device showing indication of a fault.

(f) The unit control is capable of detecting the following faults:
  i. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
  ii. Not economizing when it should.
  iii. Economizing when it should not.
  iv. Damper not modulating.
  v. Excess outdoor air.

JA6.3.2 Fault Detection Test Specifications

To provide evidence that the required faults are detected by the FDD functionality, the FDD Provider shall perform a No-Fault and Fault test for each of the tests in Table 1. A pre-defined Test Procedure such as the one provided in the example shown in Table 2 could be used to fill out Table 1.

Table JA6.3-1 – Sample of a completed fault test

	Faults				
Tests	Air temperature sensor failure/fault	Not Economizing when it should	Economizing when it Should not	Damper not modulating	Excess outdoor air
1. Damper is Stuck Open			X	X	X
2. Damper Stuck at Minimum		X		X	
3. Bad or Unplugged Actuator		X	X	X	
4. Sensor Hard Failure	X	X	X		X
5. Actuator Mechanically Disconnected		X	X	X	X

JA6.3.3 Reporting of Test Results

The results of each test shall be provided in a report using a standard test results reporting format that provides the following information for each test:

a. Organization and individual conducting the test.

b. Time, Date, and Location of test.

c. Make and model of unit/control tested.

d. Range of models represented by test.

e. Test procedure used, including description of the method for imposing fault with repeatability.

f. Test driving Conditions (outdoor air temperature, return air temperature or enthalpy as required by the type of high limit control being used).

g. Results of the test: Alarms generated.

h. Provide a bill of materials for the configuration that is being certified.

i. The FDD supplier shall describe any special field or data verifications that are required for the particular FDD analytics (beyond those included in Acceptance Test requirements).

j. Sample of documentation that would accompany each qualifying set of FDD analytics.

k. Name and contact information of company personnel in charge of certification.

l. A mapping from the manufacturer’s alarm description to what is required by Title 24 similar to Table 1.

Table JA6.3-2 - Sample Test Procedure

Step	Description	Purpose
1	Close the economizer damper fresh air blades, then secure the blades in a manner that prevents opening.	Test alarm response when “Damper Stuck at Minimum”
2	Simulate conditions such that the damper actuator attempts to open the fresh air blades. Verify the damper blades remains secured and that the fault(s) specified in Table 1 are detected. Record the annunciated fault(s) and fault text.	
3	Release the blades and allow the economizer damper to modulate open. Verify the annunciated fault(s) have cleared.	
4	Open fully the economizer damper fresh air blades, then secure the blades in a manner that prevents closing.	Test alarm response when “Damper is Stuck Open”
5	Simulate conditions such that the damper actuator attempts to modulate the fresh air blade closed. Verify the damper remains secured and that the fault(s) specified in Table 2 are detected. Record the annunciated fault(s) and fault text.	
6	Release the blades and allow the economizer damper to modulate. Verify the annunciated fault(s) have cleared.	
7	Disconnect 1 sensor and verify the fault(s) specified in Table 1 are detected. Record the annunciated fault(s) and fault text.	Test alarm response when “Sensor Hard Failure”
8	Reconnect the sensor and verify that the annunciated fault(s) have cleared.	
9	Repeat steps 7 – 8 for each available sensor.	
10	Electrically disconnect the damper actuator and verify the fault(s) specified in Table 1 are detected. Record annunciated fault(s) and fault text.	Test alarm response when “Bad or Unplugged Actuator”
11	Reconnect the damper actuator. Verify the fault(s) have cleared and normal economizer operation has resumed.	
12	Mechanically disconnect the damper actuator from the damper blade assembly.	Test alarm response when “Actuator Disconnected”
13	Simulate conditions such that the damper actuator would be moving the damper blades. Verify the fault(s) specified in Table 2 are detected. Record annunciated fault(s) and fault text.	
14	Reconnect the damper actuator to the damper blade assembly. Verify the fault(s) have cleared and normal economizer operation has resumed.	
15	Simulate conditions necessary to generate system status of “Free cooling available”. Record text of annunciated status.	Test for System Status Capability
16	Simulate system conditions necessary to generate system status of “Economizer enabled”. Record text of annunciated status.	
17	Simulate system conditions necessary to generate system status of “Compressor enabled”. Record text of annunciated status.	
18	If equipped with a heating system, simulate system conditions necessary to generate system status of “Heating enabled”. Record text of annunciated status.	
19	Simulate system conditions necessary to generate system status of “Mixed air low limit cycle active”. Record text of annunciated status.	

JA6.3.4 Declaration

Consistent with the requirements of Title 24, Part 6, Sections 100.0(h) and 120.2(i), companies wishing to certify to the California Energy Commission shall execute a declaration under penalty of perjury attesting that all information provided is true, complete, accurate, and in compliance with the applicable provisions of Part 6. Companies may fulfill this requirement by providing the information, signing the declaration below and submitting to the California Energy Commission as as specified by the instructions in JA6.3.5.

Manufacturer, Model Name and Number of all devices being certified

Manufacturer	**Model Name**	**Model Number**

When providing the information below, be sure to enter complete mailing addresses, including postal/zip codes.

Certifying Company

Contact Person Name *	Phone 1
Certifying Company Name **	Phone 2
Address	Fax
(Address)	E-mail
(Address)	Company Website (URL)

* If the contact person named above is NOT the person whose signature is on the Declaration, then the full contact information for the person whose signature is on the Declaration must also be provided on a separate page.

** If the company named above is: A) a parent entity filing on behalf of a subsidiary entity; B) a subsidiary entity filing on behalf of a parent entity; or C) an affiliate entity filing on behalf of an affiliate entity, the above contact information must be provided for any additional entities on a separate page.

Manufacturer (if different from Certifying Company)

Contact Person Name	Phone 1
Manufacturing Company Name	Phone 2
Address	Fax

(Address)	E-mail
(Address)	Company Website (URL)

Declaration

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the State of California that:

(1) All the information in this statement is true, complete, accurate, and in compliance with all applicable provisions of Section 120.2(i) of Title 24, Part 6 of the California Code of Regulations.

(2) Each Fault Detection and Diagnostic (FDD) system has been tested in accordance with all applicable requirements of Section 120.2(i)1-120.2(i)7 of Title 24, Part 6 of the California Code of Regulations.

(3) [If the party submitting this statement is a corporation, partnership, or other business entity] I am authorized to make this declaration, and to file this statement, on behalf of the company named below.

Certifying Company Name		Date
Name/Title (please print)		Signature

JA6.3.5 Certification

Send declarations and evidence of functionality or test reports to the addresses below. Electronic submittals are preferred.

(1) Electronic submittal:

CertifiedtoCEC@energy.ca.gov

Attn: FDD Certification

(2) Mail:

Attn: FDD Certification
Building Standards Development Office
California Energy Commission
1516 Ninth St., MS 37

Sacramento, CA 95814

Joint Appendix JA7

Appendix JA7 – Data Registry Requirements

~~1~~
~~3~~
~~3~~
~~9~~
~~10~~
~~10~~
~~10~~
~~11~~
~~11~~
~~12~~
~~12~~
~~13~~
~~13~~
~~13~~
~~14~~
~~15~~
~~17~~
~~18~~
~~18~~
~~21~~
~~21~~
~~22~~
~~22~~
~~23~~
~~23~~
~~23~~

~~26~~
~~31~~
~~32~~
~~35~~
~~36~~
~~36~~
~~38~~
~~39~~
~~42~~

JA7.1 Purpose and Scope

Appendix JA7 specifies required functional and technical elements for Data Registries that provide services to authorized users and receive data to produce, register, retain, and distribute both copies of compliance documents and their associated Compliance Registration Packages required for compliance with Title 24, Part 6. The functional and technical elements specified in this document include the following:

(a) Document registration is defined.

(b) Roles and responsibilities for users and administrators of data registries are defined.

(c) Requirements for registered documents are defined.

(d) Requirements for configuration of project documents in the Data Registry are defined.

(e) Requirements for electronic and digital signatures used on registered documents are defined.

(f) Requirements for data exchange between Data Registries and external software tools are defined.

(g) Requirements for transmittal of copies of compliance documents and Compliance Registration Packages to a Commission Compliance Document Repository ~~document repository~~ at time of registration are defined.

(h) Procedures for approval of Data Registries and software used for data input to data registries are defined.

~~A Data Registry Requirements Manual is expected to be approved by the Energy Commission to provide additional detailed guidance regarding functional and technical aspects of the requirements in Appendix JA7.~~Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance regarding functional and technical aspects of the requirements in Appendix JA7, including forms, to assist designers and builders in meeting the standards.

JA7.2 Definitions

For the purposes of the specifications in Appendix JA7, the following definitions shall apply:

Application Programming Interface (API) is any software that serves as an intermediary between a Data Registry and any other software, database, data entry method, or EDDS.

Asymmetric Key Encryption is also known as public key encryption. This type of encryption uses a pair of keys that are mathematically related: one key for encryption and another key for decryption. In digital signature processing, a user is assigned a private key that is not shared with anyone, and a public key that is given to anyone who receives digitally signed material from the user.

From California Code of Regulations, Title 2. Section 22003, List of Acceptable Technologies: “The technology known as Public Key Cryptography is an acceptable technology for use by public entities in California...”

All major development environments such as Microsoft and Adobe support PKCS1 asymmetrical key encryption.

Authorized User is a person who has a user account with a Data Registry and is required to provide their correct ~~user name~~username and password in order to access the Data Registry. Data Registry users may be required to provide professional licensure, certification or credential information, or other qualifying information as condition of receiving authority to provide signatures for certain types of documentation.

Commission means the State of California Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission, commonly known as the California Energy Commission, also referred to as the Energy Commission.

Commission Compliance Document Repository (also known as an electronic document repository) is an electronic database and document storage software application used for retention of registered electronic Compliance Documents generated by Data Registries, and may also contain data and documentation relevant to other regulatory procedures administered by the California Energy Commission. The Commission Compliance Document Repository shall maintain these retained documents in accordance with Evidence Code sections 1530-1532 (in the custody of a public entity).

Compliance Data Exchange File is an XML file that contains compliance data used to populate a Compliance Document. The Compliance Data Exchange File is part of the Compliance Registration Package.

Compliance Document is one of the following documents required for demonstration of compliance with Title 24, Part 6: Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, Certificate of Verification.

Compliance Registration Package means digitally signed or encrypted digital data that is transmitted to or from a Data Registry that contains the data required for registering a Compliance Document with a Data Registry, including the Compliance Data Exchange File. A commonly used method is the Zip file format, a data compression and archiving specification that is in the public domain. Files transmitted to or from a Data Registry using the Zip file format shall be password protected as described in JA7.6.3.2.7.

Compliance Report Generator is a web service maintained by the Commission that receives standardized document data exchange files from third party software approved by the Commission and produces the document registration package required to complete registered compliance documents in data registries that are approved by the Commission.

Compliance Software is software approved by the California Energy Commission for use in demonstrating compliance with the performance standards in Title 24, Part 6.

Cryptographic Hash Function is a mathematical function that creates a unique number that represents the contents of a block of data or text. In digital signature processing the data or text that the user is digitally signing is called the message. The number generated by the cryptographic hash function is called the message digest. To verify a copy of the message, the cryptographic hash function is applied to both the original message and the copy of the message, and the resulting message digests are compared. If they are both the same, then the copy is valid.

There is a number of cryptographic hash functions used in digital signature processing. All major development environments such as Microsoft and Adobe support the most commonly used hash algorithm family, SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512 hash algorithms which were developed by National Security Agency (NSA).

Data Registry is a web service with a user interface and database maintained by a Registration Provider that complies with the applicable requirements in Appendix JA7, with additional guidance from the Data Registry Requirements Manual, and provides for registration of residential or nonresidential compliance documentation used for demonstrating compliance with Title 24, Part 6.

Residential Data Registry is a Data Registry that is maintained by a HERS Provider, that provides for registration, when required by Title 24, Part 6, of all residential compliance documentation and the nonresidential Certificate of Verification.

Nonresidential Data Registry is a Data Registry that is maintained by a Registration Provider approved by the Commission, that provides for registration, when required by Title 24, Part 6, of all nonresidential compliance documentation, excluding all Certificates of Acceptance recorded by an acceptance test technician certification provider (10-103.1 and 10-103.2). However, nonresidential data registries may not provide for registration of nonresidential Certificates of Verification.

Data Registry Requirements Manual is a document that provides additional detailed guidance regarding the functional and technical aspects of the Data Registry requirements given in Appendix JA7.

Digital Certificate is a computer-based record that contains a person's identifying information and the person's digital signature public key, as well as information about the certificate authority that issued the Digital Certificate and the certificate authority's digital signature verifying the authenticity of the person's identity and digital signature. Although California Code of Regulations, title 2, section 22003(a)(2)(C) states "although not all digitally signed communications will require the signer to obtain a certificate, the signer is capable of being issued a certificate to certify that he or she controls the key pair used to create the signature."

External Digital Data Source (EDDS) is a data transfer service approved by the Energy Commission to operate in conjunction with an approved Data Registry that allows authorized users of a Data Registry to transfer data from a digital data source external to the Data Registry as an alternative to the key-in data entry described in JA7.7.1.1 for registering compliance documents as required by Title 24 Part 6.

External Digital Data Source (EDDS) Provider is an organization that administers an EDDS that conforms to the requirements in Appendix JA7 with additional guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

Digital Signature an electronic signature that incorporates cryptographic methods of originator authentication, allowing the identity of the signer and the integrity of the data to be verified. The regulations adopted by the Secretary of State that govern the use of Digital Signatures for use by public entities in California are found in the California Code of Regulations, Title 2, Division 7, Chapter 10 Digital Signatures.

Documentation Author is a person who prepares a Title 24, Part 6 compliance document that must subsequently be reviewed and signed by a responsible person in order to certify compliance with Part 6.

Electronic Signature is a "computer data compilation of any symbol or series of symbols executed, adopted, or authorized by an individual to be the legally binding equivalent of the individual's handwritten signature." (21 C.F.R. § 11.3.)

For the purposes of using electronic signatures to sign compliance documents, the electronic signature shall be an electronic image of the signer's handwritten signature.

Executive Director means the Executive Director of the Energy Commission.

Field Technician is a person who performs acceptance tests in accordance with the specifications in Appendix ~~NA7, and~~NA7 and reports the results of the acceptance tests on the Certificate of Acceptance in accordance with the requirements of Section 10-103(a)4.

HERS is the California Home Energy Rating System as described in California Code of Regulations, title 20, sections 1670 et seq.

HERS Provider is an organization that administers a home energy rating system as described in California Code of Regulations, title 20, sections 1670 et seq.

HERS Rater is a person who has been trained, tested, and certified by a HERS Provider to perform the field verification and diagnostic testing required for demonstrating compliance with the Title 24, Part 6, as described in California Code of Regulations, title 20, sections 1670 et seq.

HERS Provider Data Registry is a Data Registry maintained by a HERS Provider.

Login (see Secure Login).

Message is a block of data or text that has been digitally signed.

Message Digest is the unique number generated when a Cryptographic Hash Function is applied to the Message which is the data or text that is digitally signed.

Password is a string of characters used for authenticating a user on a computer system.

Personal Computing Device includes desktop computers, laptops, smartphones, and tablets

Private Key is one of the keys in Asymmetric Key Encryption used in a Digital Signature. As its name implies, the Private Key should only be known to the owner of the Digital Signature. The private key is used to encrypt the Message Digest of the message that the user digitally signed.

Public Key is one of the keys in Asymmetric Key Encryption used in a Digital Signature. As its name implies, the Public Key must be made public to receivers of digitally signed documents in order to decrypt the Message Digest.

Registered Compliance Document is a compliance document that has been submitted to a residential or nonresidential Data Registry for retention, verified as ~~complete~~ valid with an XML schema approved by the Commission, and has gone through the registration process so that the Registered Document displays all applicable electronic signatures as well as the Registration Provider's digital certificate and the document's unique registration number. The image of the registered document is accessible for printing or viewing by authorized users of the Data Registry via the Registration Provider’s internet website. The registered document’s unique visible registration number is appended onto the document image by the Data Registry.

A Registered Document meets all applicable requirements in Standards Section 10-103(a) and~~,~~ Appendix JA7~~, and may conform to the guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~. Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

Registration is the process applicable to electronic Compliance Documents that are verified as complete by the Data Registry, and are electronically signed by all required Data Registry Authorized Users. Registration is initiated when an authorized Registration Signer signs the Compliance Document electronically where subsequently the Data Registry adds the Registration Signer's Electronic Signature to the signature block, appends a unique Registration Number to each page of the document, and then applies the Registration Provider's Digital certificate issued by a Certificate Authority approved by the California Secretary of State to the Compliance Document and displays the Registration Provider's digital signature appearance following the registration signers signature block. When Registration is complete, the Data Registry immediately and automatically transmits a copy of the completed Registered Compliance Document and Compliance Registration Package to the Commission Compliance Document Repository and also retains a copy of the Registered Compliance Document for use by authorized users for submittals.

Registration Number is an alphanumeric sequence of digits and delimiters appended to a Compliance Document when the document's Registration Signer provides his or her Electronic Signature to the Data Registry to complete Registration for any document. Each Registration Number shall be unique to only one document. The registration numbering convention utilizes specific digits to reference the document type, revision level, and the parent-child relationships between the compliance documents in a specific project.

Registration Provider is an organization that administers a Data Registry service that conforms to the requirements in Appendix JA7, with additional guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual~~ and may conform to the guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~.

Registration Signer is a Responsible Person as defined in Title 24, Part 1, chapter 10, Sections 10-103(a)1, 10-103(a)3, 10-103(a)4, or 10-103(a)5 who has established a user account with a Data Registry and has provided sufficient evidence to the Registration Provider to qualify for the authorization to register applicable compliance documentation by providing an electronic signature. The Documentation Author or Field Technician, and Registration Signer on a compliance document may be one and the same person or they may be different persons.

Secure Login means the unique Username and Password given to an Authorized User for maintaining the security of the Data Registry.

Standards means the California Building Energy Efficiency Standards, codified in the California Code of Regulations, title 24, part 1, chapter 10, and part 6.

Standards Data Dictionary (SDD) is a dictionary that contains all data and technical terms used to describe building components, equipment, attributes and measurements that are regulated by the Standards. The purpose of the SDD is to provide the vocabulary that is used in expressing standards as well as published compliance documentation.

URI stands for Uniform Resource Indicator which is a standard for identifying a name or a resource on the Internet.

URL stands for Uniform Resource Locator is a type of URI used to identify locations on the World Wide Web.

Username is a name that uniquely identifies someone on a computer system. The Username is paired with a Password to create a Secure Login.

W3C stands for World Wide Web Consortium which is an international standards body that develops standards for the World Wide Web.

XML stands for Extensible Markup Language and is a set of rules for encoding documents in machine-readable form to facilitate the electronic transmission of documents. XML standard was developed by the W3C.

XML Schema refers to XML Schema Definition Language, commonly referred to as XSD, which is another standard defined by the W3C. An XML schema uses XSD to define a set of rules to which an XML document must conform in order to be considered valid according to that schema. The rules can include definition of major organizational units, definition of data elements and attributes data types, constraints on valid values such as upper and lower bounds, and whether data is required or optional.

XSL-FO stands for Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects and is a standard of the W3C for representing content from an XML document. It is based on a standard vocabulary of document plus formatting and layout directives that can be interpreted by a computer application called an FO processor. XSL-FO is commonly used as an intermediary to generate PDF and printable documents.

XSLT stands for Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformation which is a standard from the W3C for translating an XML document into another format such as XSL-FO or HTML.

JA7.3 Introduction

A Data Registry is a web service with a user interface and database maintained by a Registration Provider that provides for registration of residential or nonresidential compliance documentation used for demonstrating compliance with Part 6. Data Registries shall conform to the requirements specified in Appendix JA7~~ and may conform to the guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~. Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

A Data Registry shall include the minimum functional features specified by Appendix JA7. ~~Additional guidance on functional features may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~

Document registration is the process for verifying, serializing, and signing electronic compliance documents produced using a method approved by the Commission. Approved Data Registries are the entities that implement and manage the procedures for registering documents. The procedures include authenticating and approving users to submit or sign electronic documents and data for registration, validating that these data and documents are completed in conformance with the requirements defined by the Standards Section 10-103(a) and Appendix JA7, and affixing the electronic signature of the Documentation Author. The registration process is completed only when an authorized registration signer signs the compliance document electronically; whereupon the Data Registry automatically performs the following actions:

(a) Adds the registration signer's electronic signature to the document's signature block.

(b) Appends a unique registration number to each page of the document.

(c) Applies the Registration Provider's digital certificate containing their digital signature to the entire compliance document.

(d) Displays the Registration Provider's digital signature in the signature block that includes a date and time stamp corresponding to the date and time of the document registration process conclusion.

(e) When the document registration process has concluded, the Data Registry shall immediately and automatically transmit a copy of the completed ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document and Compliance Registration Package to the Commission Compliance Document Repository.

(f) The Data Registry shall also retain a copy of the ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document for use by authorized users for submittals.

Paper copies of ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents printed directly from the Data Registry website, or electronic copies downloaded from the Data Registry website shall be used for submittal to enforcement agencies or other parties to the building construction project.

The Registration Provider's digital signature provides for automatic electronic verification of the authenticity of electronic copies of registered documents.

The electronic copies of the registered documents and Compliance Registration Packages retained by the Commission Compliance Document Repository shall be utilized to satisfy public information requests, perform research, and shall be maintained in a manner conforming to Evidence Code sections 1530-1532 (in the custody of a public entity) for use in enforcement of the Standards.

Any person or entity wishing to have a Data Registry approved shall submit an application to the Energy Commission. Data Registries may be approved by the Energy Commission or by the Executive Director to provide document Registration services. Data Registries shall conform to the requirements of Appendix JA7. ~~Detailed guidance for implementation of the requirements in Appendix JA7 may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional implementation guidance.

JA7.4 Roles and Responsibilities, and Authorized Users

This section summarizes the roles and responsibilities for the individuals who participate in the document registration procedures administered by a Data Registry. However, this section is not a complete accounting of the responsibilities of the respective parties.

JA7.4.1 Registration Provider

A Registration Provider is an entity that has been approved by the Energy Commission to provide Data Registry services. Registration Providers maintain Data Registries that conform to the requirements in Appendix JA7~~ and utilize the guidance in the Data Registry Requirements Manua~~, with additional guidance specified in the Data Registry Requirements Manual~~l~~. Registration Providers are required to retain completed ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages and make copies of the registered documents available to authorized users for submittals to enforcement agencies or to other parties to the building project that require the documents. Registration Providers make services available that enable authorized users of their Data Registry to verify the authenticity of paper and electronic copies of the retained registered documents.

In order to facilitate Commission oversight of a Registration Provider's documentation processes, the Registration Providers shall grant authorization to Energy Commission staff to view the data and documents retained in the Data Registry, and shall provide functionality that allows Energy Commission staff to query and download retained data or documents.

For residential compliance document registration, the Registration Provider shall be approved in accordance with the requirements in Section JA7.8, and shall also be a HERS Provider approved by the Energy Commission.

For nonresidential compliance document registration, the Registration Provider shall be approved in accordance with the requirements in Section JA7.8.

The Registration Provider shall only use ~~data ~~XML ~~s~~Schema approved by the Commission in a nonresidential data registry.

JA7.4.2 Authorized Users

Authorized users are persons who have established a user account with a Data Registry and are required to provide their correct ~~user name~~username and password in order to access the secured information in that Data Registry. Data Registry authorized users may be required to provide proof of professional licensure, professional certification, or other qualifying information as a condition for receiving authority to access records or provide signatures for certain types of documentation. User accounts shall be established for each Data Registry for which a user must gain access.

The information required to establish a user account with a Data Registry shall be determined by the Registration Provider who shall gather and verify any and all information necessary to validate a user applicant's identity or applicable professional qualifications as prerequisite to authorizing assignment to a user applicant an electronic signature, or permissions as a documentation author, or permissions as a registration signer.

Authorized Users may not share their Secure Login with any other individual for any purpose. Violation of this policy may constitute fraud, and can be cited as a reason for denial of access for all the persons involved, including the user who releases their Secure Login to another person or persons, and the person or persons who use the Secure Login to gain access the Data Registry.

~~Additional guidance for establishing user accounts may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~

The roles and responsibilities in the remainder of this section JA7.4 describe specific types of authorized users of the Data Registry. ~~Additional guidance describing roles and responsibilities of Registration Providers and authorized users may be described in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~

Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance regarding user accounts and authorized users.

JA7.4.3 View-Only Authorized User

Data Registries may provide user accounts that allow users to view only certain records. These types of accounts may allow access to records to view, print or download copies of compliance documents in order to validate the information submitted to enforcement agencies on paper copies of registered documents, and for determining the status of completion of the full documentation package for a project.

JA7.4.4 Documentation Author

Documentation Authors are persons who prepare Title 24, Part 6 compliance documents that must subsequently be reviewed and signed by a Registration Signer (responsible person) in order to certify compliance with Part 6.

Documentation Authors assist with input of information required to complete the compliance documents required for the registration procedures in a Data Registry. Documentation authors who provide support for preparation of compliance documents in a Data Registry shall establish a user account and an electronic signature authority with the Data Registry. Documentation Authors shall sign the documents they prepare, but documentation author signatures do not indicate or assume responsibility for the truth or validity of the information reported on a compliance document. Documentation Authors may engage in business relationships with the Registration Signers they assist, or they may be employees of the Registration Signers they assist.

JA7.4.5 Field Technician

The Field Technician is responsible for performing the acceptance test procedures and documenting the results of the acceptance tests on a Certificate of Acceptance. The Field Technician shall sign the Certificate of Acceptance to certify that the information he reports on the Certificate of Acceptance is true and correct. When registration of a Certificate of Acceptance is required, the Field Technician shall establish a user account and an electronic signature authority with the Data Registry in order to provide electronic signatures to complete the Certificate of Acceptance. When a Field Technician also performs the data input to prepare the Certificate of Acceptance documentation, the Field Technician shall also provide the documentation author signature on the Certificate of Acceptance. The Field Technician may be, but is not required to be the installer of the system that requires Acceptance Testing. Field Technicians shall be certified Acceptance Test Technicians (ATT) when required by Sections 10-103.1 or 10-103.2.

JA7.4.6 Registration Signer (Responsible Person)

The Registration Signer is the person responsible for the work identified on a compliance document (Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, or Certificate of Verification).

(a) **For Certificate of Compliance documentation**, the Registration Signer shall be eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the building design.

(b) **For Certificate of Installation documentation**, the Registration Signer shall be eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the building construction or installation in the applicable classification for the scope of work identified on the document.

(c) **For Certificate of Acceptance documentation**, the Registration Signer shall be eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the system design, construction or installation in the applicable classification for the scope of work identified on the document.

(d) **For Certificate of Verification documentation**, the Registration Signer shall be a certified HERS Rater.

The Registration Signer shall provide a signature to certify that the information reported on a compliance document for which he is responsible is true and correct. When registration of a compliance document is required, the Registration Signer shall establish a user account and an electronic signature authority with the Data Registry. When a Registration Signer also performs the data input to prepare a compliance document, the Registration Signer shall also provide the documentation author signature on the compliance document.

JA7.4.7 Enforcement Agency

Standards Section 10-103(d) requires the Enforcement Agency to verify that all required compliance documents for a project are completed, signed, and submitted or posted as required by Standards Section 10-103(a). Thus, when Section 10-103(a) requires that a compliance document be registered with a Data Registry, the Enforcement Agency must verify that compliance documents submitted when applying for a permit, or posted in the field are registered documents. Such enforcement agency verification shall be by any valid means the Enforcement agency considers satisfactory.

Enforcement Agency persons may establish user accounts with data registries to enable viewing the compliance documents for projects for which their jurisdiction has enforcement authority.

Enforcement Agencies may be authorized to enter notations into project records in data registries to communicate plan check and field inspection information to builders, designers, installers, raters, and other parties to the project.

JA7.4.8 Commission Oversight

At any time, Commission staff may request access to those documents and associated Compliance Registration Package that a Registration Provider is required to maintain pursuant to Title 24, Part 1; Title 24, Part 6; or Appendix JA7. Upon receipt of a request for access, a Registration Provider shall provide Commission staff with copies of, or access to, those documents and associated Compliance Registration Package specified in the request within 30 days of receipt of the request, unless granted an extension by Commission staff.

If a Registration Provider fails to provide Commission staff with copies of, or access to, those documents and associated Compliance Registration Package, the Registration Provider shall explain in writing, fully and concisely, the basis for their failure to provide access or copies of those documents and associated Compliance Registration Package.

If a Registration Provider fails to comply with this or any other provision of Appendix JA7, Commission staff may initiate a review of the Registration Provider’s Data Registry approval pursuant to JA 7.8.4.2.

This subsection shall not be construed to limit existing enforcement oversight authority by Commission staff pursuant to any other provision of Appendix JA7.

JA7.5 Document Registration Requirements

JA7.5.1 Overview

All compliance documents for which registration is required shall be produced by a method approved by the Commission and then registered with an approved Data Registry by authorized users of the Data Registry. Procedures for submittal of required documentation to enforcement agencies and other parties to the building construction project are given in Reference Residential Appendix RA2, and Reference Nonresidential Appendices NA1. Standards Section 10-103(a) defines the administrative requirements for the compliance documents (Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, and Certificate of Verification).

Compliance document layouts shall be defined by standardized data structures implemented according to the requirements given in JA7.7. Compliance documents produced by the Data Registry shall conform to the applicable informational content and graphical layout formatting approved by the Energy Commission.

The Data Registry shall be capable of tracking all compliance documentation and maintaining the correct associations between related documents within a building project. Any revisions to compliance documents shall be tracked and reported.

The Data Registry shall ensure that registered documents are retained such that they are available to authorized users for submittals to enforcement agencies or other parties to the building construction project that require copies of the ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents.

Contingent upon the availability of a Commission Compliance Document Repository, the Data Registry shall immediately and automatically, upon concluding the registration of compliance documents, transmit a copy of each ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document and Compliance Registration Package to the Commission Compliance Document Repository in a manner prescribed by the Energy Commission.

JA7.5.2 Document Appending

The compliance document informational content, graphical layout, and formatting used by the Data Registry shall conform to the standardized document layouts and data structures approved by the Energy Commission as further described in Section JA7.7. ~~and in the~~Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance. The Data Registry shall be capable of receiving electronic compliance document images and data produced by the methods approved by the Energy Commission such as by approved performance compliance software, and shall be capable of appending the received compliance document images and data with additional information received from authorized users according to the requirements in Sections JA7.5, JA7.6, JA7.7, and with additional guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

Electronic document layout designs implemented according to the requirements in JA7 ~~and the guidance in the Data Registry requirements manual~~ shall include specifications for coordinate locations and positions where the Data Registry will affix the Registration Signer's Electronic Signatures, registration numbers, registration date and time record information and Registration Provider's logos and watermarks. Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

The following conventions shall be enforced:

JA7.5.2.1 Registration Number

The registration number for a multiple-page document shall be visible on all pages of the document.

JA7.5.2.2 Registration Date and Time

The registration date and time shall reflect the point in time corresponding to the submittal of the electronic certification signature by the person responsible for the information on the document. The format for the registration date and time record shall be calendar date (year-month-day) with time of day (hour-minutes-seconds). Hour of the day shall utilize 24-hour format. ~~Additional guidance describing the formatting and location for these features may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

JA7.5.2.3 Performance Compliance Software Calculation Date and Time

The performance compliance calculation date and time information that is generated by the compliance software tool shall be retained as data in the record for the registered Certificate of Compliance document in the Data Registry.

The date and time information for the compliance calculation for a multiple-page performance Certificate of Compliance document shall be visible on all pages of the compliance document.

JA7.5.2.4 Electronic Signatures

Registered documents shall be electronically signed by the documentation authors, and by the persons who are eligible to assume responsibility for the documentation as specified by Standards Section 10-103(a) and who are authorized users of the Data Registry who have established an electronic signature authority with the Data Registry. The Registration Provider shall ensure that all required electronic signature features and procedures specified in Section JA7.6 are implemented and enforced. The electronic signature layouts and locations shall be consistent with the document layouts approved by the Energy Commission. ~~Additional guidance on the location and formatting may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

JA7.5.2.5 Digital Signatures

The Registration Provider shall ensure that the required digital signature procedures specified in Section JA7.6 are enforced. ~~Guidance for the location for the visible aspects of the Registration Provider's digital signature may be described in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

JA7.5.3 Data Validation for Compliance Document Registration

Data Registries shall have the capability to automatically perform validation of data entered by a documentation author to complete a compliance document as required by the document data validation procedures in Section JA7.6.3.2.2.

There shall be a data validation rule set specific to each compliance document.

~~Detailed guidance for the data validation rules may be provided in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

Compliance document data validation rules may be implicit in the formatting of the data elements that define a compliance document for data exchange processes, or data validation rules may be implemented by the Data Registry software.

Data validation rules or specifications may be defined in the XML schema that represents the compliance data for a compliance document as further described in Section JA7.7. Validation criteria such as whether data is required or optional, the required data type, the data numeric upper and lower bounds, acceptable enumeration values, calculations that must be performed, etc., shall be defined in the XSD file.

~~The Data Registry Requirements Manual will provide guidance for~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on the methods for validation of the data taking into consideration the specifications for the data elements for the data exchange processes described in Section JA7.7.

The Data Registry may flag data entry errors at any time during data entry, however all data validation shall be completed prior to allowing a documentation author signature action to be completed. Documents shall not be marked as ready for registration signing unless all required data validation errors have been corrected, and a documentation author signature action has been completed successfully.

The following conventions shall be enforced as a condition for registration of a document:

JA7.5.3.1 Null Entries

When completion of a compliance document requires data entry for an information field, the data shall be entered, otherwise registration shall not be allowed. However, if data entry for a particular information field is optional, use of a null entry or symbol such as n/a that is allowed by the document schema shall not prevent registration from concluding.

JA7.5.3.2 Calculated Values

Whenever possible or practical, the Data Registry shall perform the calculations required for determining compliance results. ~~Guidance for calculations may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on these calculations.

JA7.5.3.3 Look-up Functions for Calculations

Whenever possible or practical, the Data Registry shall use lookup functions that provide values needed for completing calculations as referenced from the applicable protocols in the Reference Appendices or from Standards compliance criteria. Guidance for application of lookup functions may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.5.4 Registration Numbering Conventions

Registration numbers used for the document registration procedures described in Appendix JA7 are alphanumeric sequences of digits and delimiters that shall be appended to a compliance document when the document's registration signer performs an electronic signature action in the Data Registry to conclude the registration procedure for a document. Each registration number shall be unique to only one document. The registration numbering convention assigns significance to certain digits in order to define the document type, document revision level, and the parent-child relationships between the compliance documents contained in a project. As the compliance document types required for residential projects are different than those required for nonresidential projects, the numbering conventions used shall conform to the conventions specified in sections JA7.5.4.1 and JA7.5.4.2 respectively.

Registration numbering conventions for other documentation processes are possible. Any new document process for which the Commission requires the documents to be registered shall use a registration numbering convention that is approved by the Commission.

JA7.5.4.1 Nonresidential Registration Numbering Convention

Contingent upon approval of nonresidential Data Registries, a nonresidential registration numbering convention shall be determined and approved by the Commission in conjunction with the approval of the first nonresidential Data Registry, and shall be used by all nonresidential data registries thereafter. The nonresidential registration numbering convention specification shall use a similar design concept as used in the residential registration numbering convention described in Section JA7.5.4.2 which assigns significance to digits in order to define the document type, document revision level, and the relationships between the compliance documents contained in a project. ~~Guidance for~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on the layout, configuration, and application of the approved nonresidential ~~resigistration~~registration numbering convention ~~shall be maintained in the Data Registry Requirements Manual approved by the Energy Commission.~~.

JA7.5.4.2 Residential Registration Numbering Convention

The registration numbers assigned to residential compliance documents by the Data Registry at the conclusion of the registration process shall use ~~the~~ standardized numbering convention ~~published in the Data Registry Requirements Manual approved by the Energy Commission,~~ to assign the applicable significance to the alphanumeric digits to define the unique document designation, document revision level, and establish the parent/child relationships between the documents contained in a project.

~~Guidance for~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on this standardized convention, as well the layout, configuration, and application of the approved residential ~~resigistration~~registration numbering convention ~~shall be maintained in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~.

JA7.5.5 Verification of Authenticity of Copies of Registered Documents

For projects for which Standards Section 10-103(a) requires the documents to be registered, compliance requires that documents shall first be registered with a Data Registry before being submitted to an enforcement agency for approval. Additionally, when revisions to the compliance documents are necessary, compliance requires the revised documents to be registered with the Data Registry prior to re-submittal to the enforcement agency for approval. Thus, the current revision of a registered document in the Data Registry shall be the reference document for validation of the authenticity of a document submitted to an enforcement agency or to another party to the construction project.

Registration Providers shall make available document verification services to authorized users of their Data Registry.

Methods for verification of a document's authenticity shall include basic visual comparison of a copy of a registered document to the current version of the registered document on file in the Data Registry.

Additionally, the automated document validation utility that is made possible by digital signature technology shall make it possible for a document recipient to automatically verify an electronic copy of a registered compliance document without having to manually inspect it against the registered document in the Data Registry. As described in Section JA7.3, the last step in the document registration procedure in the registry applies the Registration Provider's digital certificate containing their digital signature to the entire compliance document, thus providing the capability for automated verification of authenticity of electronic copies of the registered document.

~~Additional guidance for use of the Data Registry~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on ~~d~~digital signature technology for verification of document authenticity ~~may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual, and in the Residential and Nonresidential Compliance Manuals.~~.

JA7.5.6 Project Document Configuration

Data Registries shall be capable of tracking all compliance documentation and maintaining the correct associations between related documents, including revisions and completion statuses for all documents within a building project.

A certificate of compliance establishes the requirements for project documentation for prescriptive and performance compliance methods.

The Standards specify mandatory HERS verification for residential projects for which there are options for compliance with the mandatory requirement. Thus, indication of the option selected for compliance with a residential mandatory measure may not be known until after a Certificate of Installation is submitted to a Data Registry to demonstrate compliance with the mandatory requirement. The Data Registry shall track when Certificate of Installation documents are registered for any mandatory measure that has an option for compliance; shall report any HERS verification requirement that is triggered by the mandatory measure; and ensure that any required HERS verification is completed as a condition of compliance. ~~Additional guidance~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance describing residential Data Registry tracking of mandatory measure options and the required documentation for the mandatory options~~ may be provided in the Data Registry Requirements Manual. ~~.

JA7.5.6.1 Project Status Reports

The status of completion of a project shall be reported by the Data Registry.

The Data Registry shall determine the documents required for a project based on the Certificate of Compliance and maintain a project status report with a summary of the current status of completion of the required documents for the project. The project status report shall be readily accessible to authorized users of the Data Registry. Access to the report shall be facilitated by use of search parameters relevant to the project as listed in Sections JA7.5.6.1.1 and JA7.5.6.1.2.

Enforcement Agencies may be authorized to enter notations into project records in data registries to communicate plan check and field inspection information to builders, designers, installers, raters and other parties to the construction project.

The project status report shall be made available in a printable format.

Minimum information requirements for the project status report shall include the following:

JA7.5.6.1.1 Project Status Report Information for Residential Projects:

(a) Project name

(b) Project location (or address)

(c) Listing of the Certificate of Compliance documents required; date registered (or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number

(d) Listing of the Certificate of Installation documents required; date registered (or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number

(e) Listing of the Certificate of Verification documents required; date registered or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number

(f) Listing of the mandatory measure options required; options selected (refers to the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Verification documentation).

JA7.5.6.1.2 Project Status Report Information for Nonresidential Projects:

Note: Nonresidential Document registration is contingent upon approval of a nonresidential Data Registry by the Commission~~, and the requirement for nonresidential document registration is not effective until January 1, 2015~~.

(a) Project name

(b) Project location (or address)

(c) Listing of the Certificate of Compliance documents required; date registered (or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number

(d) Listing of the Certificate of Installation documents required; date registered (or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number

(e) Listing of the Certificate of Acceptance documents required; date registered (or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number

(f) Listing of the Certificate of Verification documents required; date registered (or indicate not complete if the document record has been started but is not yet registered); registration number.

JA7.5.6.2 Revision Control

When a revision to a compliance document is made, the revised version of the compliance document shall also be registered (a registration signer must sign again to register the revision), and the revision digit for the compliance document shall be incremented. Thus a copy of each registered revision of each ~~r~~Registered Compliance ~~d~~Document and the associated Compliance Registration Package shall be transmitted to the Commission Compliance Document Repository.

When a revision is made to a compliance document that is associated with one or more registered dependent (child) documents, the dependent documents shall have their registered status revoked, and their status shall be reported as incomplete (orphaned) until signed again by the registration signer subsequent to making any necessary changes to the "orphaned child" document made necessary by the revision of the applicable dominant (parent) document. A new registration signature is required for the orphaned child document in order to update the registration number such that the new revision level of both the parent and the child documents is shown.

A copy of the new revision of a document shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for all applicable approvals or inspections.

The data that was used to create obsolete versions of Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and the associated Compliance Registration Package shall not be required to be retained in the Data Registry history or memory. However, a copy of each revision of each registered electronic document shall be retained.

The current revision of any document in the registry shall be considered to be the only valid version of that document. All previous revisions of that document shall be considered obsolete, thus not valid for use for submittal to enforcement agencies to demonstrate compliance.

JA7.5.7 Certificate of Compliance Requirements

JA7.5.7.1 Prescriptive Certificate of Compliance Document

Procedures for submittal of prescriptive Certificate of Compliance data shall conform to the requirements in Section JA7.7.1. ~~Guidance for the~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on procedures and requirements for Data Registry features for prescriptive certificate of compliance document registration ~~may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~.

JA7.5.7.2 Performance Certificate of Compliance Document:

Procedures for submittal of the performance Certificate of Compliance shall use Compliance Software approved by the Commission pursuant to all applicable procedures in Title 24 Part 1, Section 10-109, and shall conform to all applicable data exchange requirements given in Section JA7.7.

JA7.5.7.3 Multiple Orientation Plans (Residential)

The Data Registry shall ensure that multiple orientation performance Certificate of Compliance documents are configured in the Data Registry such that the registered multiple orientation Certificate of Compliance document is referenced for all build-outs of that master plan. The registered Certificate of Compliance that was approved by the enforcement agency shall be the Certificate of Compliance document that is the parent document for each and every dwelling unit built from that master plan.

~~Detailed guidance~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance describing the procedures for tracking revisions to multiple orientation Certificate of Compliance Documents ~~may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~.

JA7.5.7.4 Multifamily Dwelling units

The Data Registry shall ensure that multifamily whole-building performance Certificate of Compliance documents are configured in the Data Registry such that the registered multifamily Certificate of Compliance document is referenced for all dwelling units in the multifamily building. The registered Certificate of Compliance that was approved by the enforcement agency shall be the Certificate of Compliance document that is the parent document for each and every dwelling unit specified by that whole-building certificate of Compliance document.

Detailed guidance describing the procedures for tracking revisions to multifamily whole-building Certificate of Compliance Documents may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.5.8 Certificate of Installation Requirements

JA7.5.8.1 Residential Certificate of Installation

Procedures for submittal of residential Certificate of Installation data shall conform to the requirements in Section JA7.7.1. Detailed guidance for the functional and technical elements necessary for registration of residential Certificate of Installation documents for a Data Registry may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.5.8.2 Nonresidential Certificate of Installation

Nonresidential Certificate of Installation document registration is contingent upon the approval of nonresidential Data Registries.

Procedures for submittal of Nonresidential Certificate of Installation data shall conform to the requirements in Section JA7.7.1. Detailed guidance for the functional and technical elements necessary for registration of Nonresidential Certificate of Installation documents for a Data Registry may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.5.9 Certificate of Verification Requirements

Certificate of Verification documents are always registered documents.

Procedures for submittal of Certificate of Verification shall conform to the requirements in Section JA7.7.1. Detailed guidance for the required functional and technical elements necessary for registration of Certificate of Verification documents for a Data Registry may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.5.9.1 Managing Sample Groups

HERS Provider Data Registries are required to manage the group sampling procedures. Details that describe the requirements for managing sample groups are given in Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.

JA7.5.9.2 Group Numbering Convention

Group number is a HERS Provider-designated identification number unique to the sample group to which a dwelling has been assigned. The group numbers assigned to residential compliance documents by the Data Registry at the conclusion of the registration process shall use the standardized numbering convention published in the Data Registry Requirements Manual approved by the Energy Commission. The group number shall be reported on all Certificate of Verification documents that utilize group sampling for compliance. Guidance for the layout, configuration, and application of the approved residential group numbering convention shall be maintained in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.5.10 Certificate of Acceptance Requirements

Certificate Acceptance document registration is contingent on the approval of nonresidential Data Registries.

Procedures for submittal of Certificate Acceptance data shall conform to the requirements in Section JA7.7.1. Detailed guidance for the required functional and technical elements necessary for registration of Certificate of Acceptance documents for a Data Registry may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6 Electronic and Digital Signature Requirements

JA7.6.1 Introduction

This section defines the functional and technical requirements for the use of electronic and digital signatures in the registration of compliance documents. These specifications shall be implemented by a Data Registry as a condition of approval of the Data Registry by the Commission.

JA7.6.2 Overall Description

JA7.6.2.1 Interfaces - Main Users

(a) **Authorized Users** of Data Registries who must sign Compliance Documents either as the Documentation Author, or Field Technician, or as the Registration Signer (responsible person).

(b) **Registration Providers** who must implement the electronic and digital signature specifications into the Data Registry user interface to provide Electronic Signature capabilities to the Authorized Users of the Data Registry, and must append their digital signature to all registered compliance documents created in their Data Registry.

(c) **Commission Compliance Document Repository** which must receive ~~r~~Registered Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages transmitted from the Data Registries and will process the digital signature to validate the sender and the contents.

(d) **Persons or Software Entities who Validate Electronic Documents** who may receive electronic copies of registered documents made available by the Data Registries and will process the digital signature to validate the sender and the contents.

(e) **Compliance Software Tools** that export ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages for transmittal to the Data Registries that must subsequently be electronically signed and registered in the Data Registry.

JA7.6.2.2 Major Functions

The electronic and digital signature requirements of the Data Registry consist of the following major functions:

JA7.6.2.2.1 Electronic Signature Capability

The Data Registry shall provide electronic signature capability to authorized users.

JA7.6.2.2.2 Document Data Validation

The Data Registry shall ensure that compliance documents are complete and the data entered conforms to the data validation rules for the applicable document prior to making the documents available for registration signing.

JA7.6.2.2.3 Signer Review and Signature Actions

The Data Registry shall provide functionality for authorized users to select, review, and sign compliance documents as a Documentation Author, Field Technician, or Registration Signer.

JA7.6.2.2.4 Digital Signatures

The Data Registry shall apply the Registration Provider's Digital Signature to compliance documents electronically signed by the registration signer when concluding the document registration procedure in the Data Registry. The Registration Provider's digital signature shall be based on a digital certificate issued by a certificate authority approved by the California Secretary of State.

The function of the Registration Provider's digital certificate is to provide verification from an approved certificate authority that the document came from the Registration Provider's Data Registry and to provide automated document verification to persons or agencies that receive electronic submittals of these registered documents.

Additional guidance for use of digital signatures and digital certificates shall be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6.2.2.5 Transmittal to Commission Compliance Document Repository

The Data Registry, upon completion of the registration procedure, shall immediately and automatically transmit a copy of the completed ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document and Compliance Registration Package to the Commission Compliance Document Repository, which will process the Registration Provider's digital signature to validate the sender and the compliance document contents.

Additional guidance for use of digital certificates for validation of document authenticity shall be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6.2.2.6 Document and Data Retention

The Data Registry shall retain a copy of the completed Registered Compliance Document and Compliance Registration Package~~registered electronic compliance document~~ and make the Registered Compliance Document~~document~~ available for use by authorized users of the registry who may access a copy of the registered document and may subsequently process the Registration Provider's digital signature to verify the sender and the compliance document contents.

JA7.6.2.2.7 Receive and Process Output From Compliance Software and External Digital Data Sources

The Data Registry shall process the completed Compliance Registration Package from Compliance software tools approved by the Energy Commission for use in the Compliance Document Registration process in accordance with the specifications in Section JA7.7.1.6.

If the Data Registry allows use of External Digital Data Sources (EDDS) as an alternative to keyed-in data input for document registration procedures, the requirements in Section JA7.7.1.2 shall be met.

Additional guidance for receiving and processing output from compliance software and EDDS ~~shall~~ may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6.2.3 User Characteristics

There are four categories of users who will participate in the electronic and digital signature functionality:

JA7.6.2.3.1 Users who will use electronic signatures to sign and register compliance documents.

This is a heterogeneous category composed of HERS Raters, building designers, building contractors, installation contractors, energy consultants, homeowners, and others.

JA7.6.2.3.2 Users who use a digital certificate to secure registered compliance documents.

This category consists of each approved Registration Provider.

JA7.6.2.3.3 Users who will receive the electronically transmitted ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages

These users will need to apply decryption processing using the digital certificate to identify the sender and verify the contents of the received Registered Compliance Document and Compliance Registration Package~~document~~. The Commission Compliance Document Repository is a main user in this category. Also, users who take advantage of digital signature automated verification capabilities to verify the authenticity of Registered Compliance Document and Compliance Registration Package ~~registered compliance documents~~ received as electronic submittals from various other participants in the compliance documentation process will be another main user in this category.

JA7.6.2.3.4 Users who transmit electronic compliance documentation to the Data Registry.

Title 24 compliance software tools are the main users in this Category.

The electronic compliance documents exported from the compliance software tools that are approved by the Energy Commission must be formatted to provide a standardized location for the visible aspects of electronic signatures, digital signature appearances, and other aspects of registration information such as registration numbering, and registration date/time stamps.

The Data Registry shall be capable of appending the visible aspects of electronic and digital signatures and other required registration information to the correct locations in the signature blocks and footers on the imported compliance documents during the subsequent electronic signature and registration procedures.

The Data Registry shall implement the capability to append the visible aspects of the required document registration information to the signature blocks and footers on compliance documents in these locations.

Detailed guidance for appending the required document registration information may be described in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6.2.4 Constraints

JA7.6.2.4.1 Software Constraint:

The digital signature technology including the hash algorithm and asymmetric key encryption used shall be consistent across all Data Registries because the Commission Compliance Document Repository will not support multiple approaches.

Detailed guidance for use of digital signature technology and digital certificates shall be given in the Data Registry Requirements manual.

JA7.6.3 Specific requirements

JA7.6.3.1 Interface Requirements

JA7.6.3.1.1 User interfaces

All Data Registries shall utilize the same informational content, graphical layout and formatting unique to the applicable type of compliance document when displaying the completed compliance documents for review and signing as part of the registration process. These document layouts shall conform to the informational content, graphical layout and formatting approved by the Commission. Additional detailed guidance regarding informational content, graphical layout and formatting will be presented in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6.3.1.2 Software interfaces

JA7.6.3.1.2.1 All ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages transmitted from any Data Registry shall be secured with the Registration Provider digital signature.

JA7.6.3.1.2.1.1 All Data Registries shall use the same hash algorithm to generate the document's message digest for the digital signature.

JA7.6.3.1.2.1.2 All Data Registries shall use the same asymmetrical key encryption for generating the digital signature private and public keys used to encrypt and decrypt the message digest.

JA7.6.3.1.2.1.3 Registration Providers shall provide their digital certificate which contains their digital signature public key to any other software entity that receives ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages from their Data Registry, in particular the Commission document repository.

JA7.6.3.1.2.1.4 The Commission Compliance Document Repository, which will receive ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents and Compliance Registration Packages electronically from Data Registries, will implement digital signature processing capability in order to perform automatic verification and validation processing on received documents.

JA7.6.3.1.2.1.5 Users who take advantage of automated software capabilities to verify the authenticity of ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Documents received from Data Registries will have to implement digital signature processing capability in order to perform automatic digital signature verification processing on received documents. Numerous PDF reader freeware tools are available that have the capability to process digital signatures that utilize standardized digital signature technology.

JA7.6.3.1.2.2 All Data Registries shall implement the same security protocol for importing completed compliance document transmittals as described in Section JA7.7.1.6.

JA7.6.3.2 Functions

JA7.6.3.2.1 Electronic Signature Capability

The Data Registry shall provide electronic signature capability to authorized users who have the role of Documentation Author, Field Technician, or Registration Signer. A Field Technician Signature is required only on registered Certificate of Acceptance Documentation. A Certificate of Acceptance document requires that there be both a Documentation Author signature and a Field Technician signature prior to registration signing. The Data Registry shall not register a Certificate of Acceptance document that has been recorded (or is expected to be recorded) by an Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider.

JA7.6.3.2.1.1 Any authorized user of a Data Registry can request an electronic signature in order to sign compliance documents as the documentation author, Field Technician, or as the registration signer.

JA7.6.3.2.1.2 Registration Providers shall gather and verify any and all information necessary to validate a user applicant's identity and applicable qualifications as prerequisite to authorizing assignment to a user applicant an electronic signature, or permissions as a documentation author, Field Technician, or Registration Signer.

JA7.6.3.2.1.3 Authorized users shall provide to the Registration Provider an electronic image of their handwritten signature for use in displaying their electronic signature. The Registration Provider may make available alternative methods for creating an electronic image for displaying electronic signatures.

JA7.6.3.2.2 Document Data Validation

The Data Registry shall check that compliance documents are complete and shall perform the required data validation for the document before making them available for signing and/or registering. Data must be validated with an XML schema approved by the Commission. Additional

~~The~~ guidance for the data validation for each document shall be provided in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

Any applicable error messages shall be posted indicating the actions necessary as prerequisite to completion of the registration process.

JA7.6.3.2.2.1 When a documentation author indicates that the compliance document is complete and he/she is ready to sign it, the Data Registry shall verify that all information necessary to complete the document has been provided as prerequisite to making the signing functionality available to the documentation author.

JA7.6.3.2.2.2 The Data Registry shall verify that a compliance document is complete and has received the documentation author’s signature as prerequisite to making the compliance document available for registration signing. For Certificate of Acceptance documents, both the Documentation Author and the Field Technician signatures shall be provided as prerequisite to making the document available for registration signing. The Data Registry shall not register a Certificate of Acceptance document that has been recorded (or is expected to be recorded) by an Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider.

JA7.6.3.2.3 Signer Review and Signature Actions

The Data Registry shall provide functionality for authorized users to select, review and sign compliance documents as a documentation author, field technician, or registration signer.

JA7.6.3.2.3.1 The documentation author can electronically sign a compliance document if it has been verified as complete by the Data Registry.

JA7.6.3.2.3.2 The Field Technician can electronically sign a Certificate of Acceptance document if it has been verified as complete by the Data Registry and has the documentation author’s signature.

JA7.6.3.2.3.3 The registration signer can electronically sign a compliance document if it has been verified as complete by the Data Registry and has the documentation author’s signature. For Certificate of Acceptance documents both the Documentation Author signature and the Field Technician signature are prerequisite to allowing registration signing.

JA7.6.3.2.3.4 When an authorized user selects to sign a compliance document, the Data Registry provides a display of the compliance document layout that allows the user access to any part of the compliance document for review, as well as a display of the declaration statement.

JA7.6.3.2.3.4.1 All compliance documents shall include a declaration statement applicable to the documentation author signature. The declaration statement language shall be approved by the Commission.

JA7.6.3.2.3.4.2 All Certificate of Acceptance documents shall include a declaration statement applicable to the field technician signature. The declaration statement language shall be approved by the Commission.

JA7.6.3.2.3.4.3 All compliance documents shall include a declaration statement applicable to the registration signer signature. The declaration statement language shall be approved by the Commission.

JA7.6.3.2.3.4.4 All compliance document layouts displayed shall conform to the same format, informational order, and content approved by the Commission. Guidance for data and layout specifications shall be published in the Data Registry requirements manual.

JA7.6.3.2.3.5 When the documentation author activates the signing control to sign the compliance document, the Data Registry shall display the completed documentation author signature block including the documentation author's electronic signature utilizing the visible image of his or her hand written signature, applicable professional qualifications, licenses and/or certificates the documentation author holds, and the date and time the document was signed.

JA7.6.3.2.3.6 When the Field Technician activates the signing control to sign the Certificate of Acceptance document, the Data Registry shall display the completed field technician's signature block including the Field Technician's electronic signature utilizing the visible image of his or her hand written signature, applicable professional qualifications, licenses and/or certificates the Field Technician holds, and the date and time the document was signed.

JA7.6.3.2.3.7 When the registration signer activates the signing control to register the compliance document, the Data Registry shall display the completed signature block including the registration signer's electronic signature utilizing the visible image of his or her hand written signature, applicable professional qualifications, licenses or certificates the registration signer holds, the date and time the document was signed, with the newly generated registration number appended to the footer of each of the pages of the document. The registration numbering convention shall conform to the requirements in Appendix JA7.5.4.

JA7.6.3.2.4 Digital Signatures

The Data Registry shall apply the Registration Provider digital signature to compliance documents electronically signed by the registration signer.

The Registration Provider shall ensure that PDF reader freeware can verify the digital signature of the registered PDF documents. The Registration Provider shall make available a procedure that allows users to securely acquire the digital certificate issued by the Data Registry's approved certificate authority. The procedure may add the certificate to the user's local root certificate store if necessary.

JA7.6.3.2.4.1 When a compliance document is electronically signed by the registration signer, the Data Registry shall apply a visible indication of the Registration Provider's digital signature (digital signature appearance) to the document which shall include the following statement:

“Digitally signed by [Data Registry Provider’s name]. This digital signature is provided in order to secure the content of this registered document, and in no way implies Registration Provider responsibility for the accuracy of the information".

Other information such as graphic(s), watermark(s), date, or time stamps are not required for the digital signature appearance.

JA7.6.3.2.4.1.1 The Data Registry digital signature software generates a hash number from the contents of the registered compliance document to create the message digest part of the digital signature.

JA7.6.3.2.4.1.2 The Data Registry digital signature software encrypts the message digest using the Registration Provider's digital signature private key to produce the digital signature.

JA7.6.3.2.4.1.3 The Data Registry digital signature software attaches the Registration Provider's digital certificate which contains their digital signature public key to the compliance document.

JA7.6.3.2.4.1.4 The digital signature appearance shall be placed at the end of the compliance document in a location that is just after the responsible person’s signature block.

JA7.6.3.2.5 Transmittal to Commission Compliance Document Repository

The Data Registry, upon completion of the registration procedure, shall immediately and automatically transmit a copy of the completed ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document and Compliance Registration Package to the Commission Compliance Document Repository which will process the Registration Provider's digital signature using the Registration Provider's digital certificate to verify the sender and the compliance document contents.

JA7.6.3.2.5.1 The Data Registry shall transmit the digitally signed and ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document and Compliance Registration Package to the Commission document repository using a secure transmission protocol. Detailed guidance for the secure transmission protocol may be specified in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.6.3.2.6 Document Retention

The Registration Provider shall retain a copy of the completed Registered Compliance Document and Compliance Registration Package. ~~registered compliance document and~~ The Registration Provider shall make the Registered Compliance Document ~~document~~ available for use by authorized users of the registry who may print a hard copy, or access an electronic copy of the registered document and may subsequently process the Registration Provider's digital signature using their digital certificate to verify the sender and the compliance document contents.

JA7.6.3.2.6.1 The Data Registry shall provide users the functionality to either view registered documents in their web browser or download the document file to their personal computer.

JA7.6.3.2.6.2 The Data Registry shall provide functionality to transmit electronic copies of registered compliance documents to enforcement agencies or other parties to the construction project.

JA7.6.3.2.6.3 The Data Registry shall make their digital signature public key available for use for electronic validation of the authenticity of the registered documents.

JA7.6.3.2.7 Receive and Process Output From Compliance Software or External Digital Data Sources

The Data Registry shall process the Compliance Registration Package transmitted from Title 24, Part 6 performance compliance software tools approved by the Energy Commission, and shall process transmittals from external digital data sources described in Section JA7.7.1.2 when approved in accordance with the requirements in Section JA7.8 for use in compliance document registration processes.

JA7.6.3.2.7.1 The Data Registry shall have functionality to receive data containing electronic documents and data exported from performance compliance software tools approved by the Energy Commission in accordance with the specifications in Section JA7.7.1.6. If the Data Registry makes available use of External Digital Data Sources (EDDS) as an alternative to keyed-in data input for document registration procedures, the requirements in Section JA7.7.1.2 shall be met.

There may be alternate means by which Compliance Software tools or other external digital data sources communicate with Data Registries, such as by data streaming. Use of such alternate means shall not be allowed unless approved by the Energy Commission.

JA7.6.3.2.7.2 The Data Registry shall have functionality to decrypt data files it receives that contain completed compliance documents exported from compliance software tools that are approved by the Energy Commission in accordance with the requirements in Section JA7.7.1.6..

JA7.6.3.2.7.3 The Data Registry shall only allow the transmission of data between compliance software tools or external data sources approved by the Energy Commission using secure data transfer protocols. Detailed guidance for secure data transfer protocols may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.7 Data Exchange Requirements

Compliance documents required by the Administrative Regulations (Title 24, Part 1, §10-103) shall be based on standardized data structures that define their informational content and graphical layout. These data structures shall be represented using the XML data exchange standard developed by the World Wide Web Consortium. The XML data that represents the information entered by users and subsequently displayed in information fields on compliance document images shall be validated against an XML schema that is published in the Data Registry Requirements Manual that is approved by the Energy Commission. The XML schema(s) shall standardize the organization of the data, the terminology, and the data types, thus support data integrity and provide built-in data validation. All electronic data transmittals used for producing compliance documents in Data Registries shall be based on XML technology.

The compliance document images rendered from XML data submitted to the Data Registry shall be consistent with the informational content, graphical layout, and graphical formatting for the compliance documents approved by the Energy Commission.

Detailed Guidance for use of the data definitions defined in the XML schema, and the data formats used to render each of the registered compliance documents shall be provided in the Data Registry Requirements Manual. Consideration shall be given to use of two complimentary XML technologies, Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformation (XSLT) and Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects (XSL-FO) which shall work directly with the data in the Compliance Data Exchange File to transform the data into the required graphical layout and formatting for the completed compliance document image.

Data registries shall provide web-based services to authorized users to enable user data exchange in accordance with JA7.7.1.

JA7.7.1 Data Exchange for Document Registration Procedures

Data exchange transactions with a Data Registry for document registration procedures shall utilize keyed-in data entry as described in Section JA7.7.1.1; output from approved Title 24, Part 6 Performance Compliance Software as described in Section JA7.7.1.6; or data exchange from an external digital data source as described in Section JA7.7.1.2 that has been approved by the Energy Commission in accordance with applicable requirements specified in Section JA7.8.

Data exchange utilizing software tools/technology or external digital data sources (EDDS) that have not been approved by the Energy Commission shall not be used for the document registration processes required by Title 24, Part 6.

JA7.7.1.1 Keyed-in Data Entry

Data Registries shall have the capability to receive data entry from an authorized user's personal computing device when the authorized user has logged-on to the Data Registry web service using the personal computing device.

JA7.7.1.2 Digital Data Sources External to a Data Registry

As an alternative to the data entry described in JA7.7.1.1, digital data sources external to a Data Registry may be used by an authorized user of a Data Registry for transmitting information to a Data Registry during document registration procedures. External Digital Data Sources (EDDS) shall be approved by the Energy Commission in accordance with the applicable requirements specified in Sections JA7.8.

JA7.7.1.2.1 EDDS Data Exchange Requirements

The data uploads to an EDDS, and the data exchange between a Data Registry and an EDDS, including data upload and data exchange that is facilitated by an API, shall conform to the following:

(a) The data exchange from an EDDS to a Data Registry shall be initiated only by an authorized user of the Data Registry; only while the user is logged into his Title 24, Part 6 Data Registry user account; and only by use of a data exchange feature managed and made available to the user by the Data Registry user interface.

(b) The data exchange from an EDDS to a Data Registry shall not be an unattended automatic electronic data exchange transaction.

(c) The Registration Provider shall ensure the authorized user has the opportunity to review and revise the information transmitted to the data registry by use of an EDDS prior to making electronic signature controls available to the user.

(d) The Registration Provider shall be responsible for managing the security and integrity of the data exchange with the EDDS.

(e) The Registration Provider shall ensure that user data uploads to the EDDS, and subsequent storage and maintenance of compliance data in the EDDS are done using best practices for secure data exchange and secure data storage.

(f) The Registration Provider shall ensure that the data exchange processes that import data into the Data Registry from the EDDS are performed using best practices for secure data exchange.

(g) The user's compliance data may be uploaded automatically to an EDDS datastore, such as by network-connected diagnostic field verification instruments, or it may be keyed in by the user using an EDDS services software user interface.

(h) The data transmitted from an EDDS to a Data Registry shall conform to the XML schema for each respective Title 24, Part 6 compliance document for which the data is to be used. All data provided to complete compliance documents shall be subjected to data validation by the Data Registry software after the data is transmitted to the Data Registry.

(i) The current compliance document schemas approved by the Energy Commission shall be made available to the EDDS services providers as needed in order to clarify the Title 24 Part 6 compliance document data requirements.

(j) ~~Additional~~ Examples and additional guidance for how to comply with Joint Appendix JA7 regarding interfacing with and managing EDDS technical features ~~may be~~are ~~given~~ included in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.7.1.2.2 EDDS Types

EDDS types may include but are not limited to:

(a) Diagnostic instrument manufacturer services that incorporate wireless or web-based data logging capabilities into their products, capture and store relevant information from field diagnostic testing procedures, and provide digital access to the stored data to the diagnostic tool owners and other parties to the field verification procedure.

(b) Third party quality control program~~s~~ (TPQCP) services that verify the work of participating installers, collect and evaluate more detailed data than necessary for compliance, identify in real-time during the installation invalid and inaccurate installer testing and noncompliant installations, and enable corrected testing with the goal of bringing installations into compliance before the installer leaves the job site. TPQCP descriptions and requirements are specified in Appendix RA2.7.

(c) Internet-based datastore~~s~~ services that are administered by an EDDS Provider ~~to~~ who ensures the security and integrity of data input to the datastore service. ~~by a~~Authorized users of Title 24, Part 6 Data Registries may elect to use EDDS datastore services for data input, ~~who~~ and subsequently transmit the stored data to a Title 24, Part 6 Data Registry while logged-in to the Data Registry during Title 24, Part 6 document registration procedures.

JA7.7.1.3 Image File Format Specification for Document Registration

Image files transmitted to a Data Registry that originate from an Energy Commission-managed compliance Report Generator or approved compliance software as part of document registration procedures shall be non-editable "flat" image files in PDF format. Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document images produced by a Data Registry shall be non-editable "flat" image files in PDF format. The PDF image of a ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document shall not be recreated from data when a user subsequently wishes to view a copy of the registered document or download a PDF file copy of the document. Thus, the image shall be generated only once~~,~~ and stored in the Data Registry as a "non-editable" image file.

JA7.7.1.4 Export to Commission Compliance Document Repository

Contingent upon approval of a document repository by the Commission, upon conclusion of the registration of a document, the Data Registry shall immediately and automatically export a copy of the ~~r~~Registered C~~c~~ompliance ~~d~~Document and Compliance Registration Package ~~transmission package~~ to the Energy Commission Document Repository.

The Compliance Registration Package~~transmission package~~ export shall conform to the specifications for data exchange described in JA7.6 and JA7.7.

Compliance ~~Transmission~~ Registration Package exports to the Commission Compliance Document Repository shall contain the Compliance Data Exchange File that includes the XML data representation of the information displayed on the ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document, and the Registration Provider's digitally signed image file that represents the completed ~~r~~Registered ~~c~~Compliance ~~d~~Document.

Detailed guidance for how to comply with requirements in JA7 concerning data and document exports to the document repository are~~may be~~ included in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.7.1.5 Electronic Copies of Registered Compliance Documents for Submittals

Registered document files retained by a Data Registry shall be made available to authorized users of the Data Registry for download for use for electronic submittals. These electronic copies of the registered compliance documents shall have the Registration Provider's digital signature which provides for automatic electronic verification of the authenticity of the document. Refer to Section JA7.5.5 for more information about automatic verification of document authenticity using digital certificates.

JA7.7.1.6 Security and Authentication for the Performance Certificate of Compliance

The Title 24, Part 6 residential and nonresidential compliance manager-based performance compliance software (compliance software) utilizes digital signing when generating analysis data for submission to the Compliance Report Generator (RG) for creating the Certificate of Compliance. Subsequently, the RG utilizes digital signing of the Certificate of Compliance Registration Package returned to the compliance software user making available the capability for Data Registries to verify the authenticity of the compliance software output and confirm the data has not been tampered with.

Data Registries shall digitally inspect all Certificate of Compliance Registration Packages submitted for registration to ensure both the Certificate of Compliance data and PDF image components of the compliance software output are authentic and have not been tampered with. Data Registries shall ensure that Certificate of Compliance Registration Packages that are not authentic or have been tampered with shall not be used for document registration for demonstrating compliance with Title 24 Part 6.

Detailed guidance for how to comply with requirements in JA7 concerning Data Registry use of the digital signing technologies employed by the compliance software and the RG ~~shall be given~~are included in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.8 Data Registry Approval

This section explains the requirements for approval of Data Registries that provide services to authorized users for creating and registering documents required for compliance with Title 24, Part 6.

The Commission shall perform acceptance testing of Data Registries when a Registration Provider submits an application for approval in order to confirm the requirements in Appendix JA7 have been met.

When an application for approval includes use of external digital data sources (EDDS) described in Section JA7.7.1, the Energy Commission shall perform acceptance testing of the EDDS proposed to be used for data input by authorized users of the Data Registry.

Detailed examples and guidance for how to comply with requirements in JA7 concerning acceptance testing and approval procedures for data registries and EDDS ~~may be~~are included ~~provided~~ in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

JA7.8 is not applicable to approval of compliance software used for the performance compliance method for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

JA7.8.1 Overview

The approval procedure requires the Registration Provider applicant to perform self-testing of the required document registration capabilities.

When the application for approval includes use of an EDDS, the EDDS services provider and the Registration Provider shall perform self-testing of the data exchange features proposed for approval, and confirm that the data exchange from the EDDS to the Data Registry provides accurate information to all applicable compliance document data fields for each compliance document for which the EDDS is proposed to be used for data input.

The Commission shall subsequently perform acceptance tests to verify that the proposed Data Registry is suitable for use for providing the compliance document registration functionality required by the Standards.

Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on

~~Guidance for~~ alternative procedures for the Energy Commission staff to perform acceptance testing of the document registration capabilities~~ may be described in the Data Registry Requirements Manual~~.

The Registration Provider shall develop a user manual or online help screens that explain how to perform the document registration procedures offered by the Data Registry. The user manual or online help screens shall be reviewed by the Commission for accuracy and ease of use.

JA7.8.2 *Application Checklist*

Application for approval shall conform to all applicable requirements given in Standards Sections 10-109 and 10-110. The following is a list of the items that shall be included in an application package:

JA7.8.2.1 Registration Provider Applicant Certification Statement.

A statement from the Registration Provider applicant certifying the reliability and accuracy of the Data Registry when used for registration of Compliance Documents in accordance with the requirements of Standards Section 10-103(a), Appendix JA7~~, and may reference the guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual. ~~. Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance.

The template for the Registration Provider Certification Statement document may be published in the Data Registry Requirements Manual, and electronic versions of the Registration Provider Certification Statement template shall be made available to the Registration Provider applicant upon request.

JA7.8.2.2 Compliance Document Registration Self-Test Results.

Electronic copies of the results from the Registration Provider's document registration self-tests shall be provided.

Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance on performing and reporting self-tests.

~~Detailed guidance to assist the applicant in performing and reporting the self-tests may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~

JA7.8.2.3 User Manual

A copy of the user manual for the Data Registry shall be provided in an electronic format that can be utilized by word processing software. Help screens from the Data Registry user interface, organized into an electronic document file with a table of contents is an acceptable alternative to the requirement for a user manual.

JA7.8.2.4 Data Registry User Account Access.

~~User name~~Username and password information shall be provided to allow access to the Data Registry for Energy Commission staff to perform acceptance testing of Data Registry functionality.

The Registration Provider's digital signature public key shall be made available such that the digital signature on registered documents produced by the Data Registry can be tested.

JA7.8.2.5 Application Fee and Other Administrative Requirements

Data Registry approvals shall conform to all applicable requirements and procedures specified in Standards Section 10-109 and 10-110.

JA7.8.2.6 Disclosure of Contractual Agreements with External Digital Data Sources (EDDS)

A working agreement document or contract shall be executed between a Registration Provider and an External Digital Data Source (EDDS) services provider as prerequisite to approval of the EDDS for use for transmittal of data to the Data Registry for Title 24, Part 6 document registration. The agreement shall describe the specifications of any Internet-based EDDS services or EDDS software utilized to store the compliance document data on behalf of authorized users of the Data Registry, including description of any Internet-based data gateway interfaces (such as an API) used for sharing the compliance data with third parties.

Applications for approval of a Data Registry to use EDDS services shall include documentation to disclose the details of the working agreement(s) or contract(s) between the Registration Provider and EDDS services ~~entity~~Provider. This documentation shall include descriptions of the parties involved, and the technologies used for the data exchanges between the EDDS and the Data Registry.

A separate agreement is required for each working relationship between a Data Registry and an EDDS. EDDS services providers may be approved to provide services to any number of approved Registration Providers. Registration Providers may be approved for use of any number of EDDS services providers.

JA7.8.3 Where a Registration Provider makes use of an Application Programming Interface (API), each EDDS that the API interfaces with must be approved. Types of Approval

There are two Data Registry approval procedures: full approval as described in Section JA7.8.3.1, and streamlined approval of amendments and revisions as described in Section JA7.8.3.2. Approval of an EDDS services provider shall conform to the requirements of either Section JA7.8.3.1 or Section JA7.8.3.2, as applicable. Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance ~~Detailed guidance to assist with~~on approval procedures.~~ may be given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.~~

JA7.8.3.1 Full Approval

Full approval by the Energy Commission shall be required when an applicant Registration Provider has not previously been approved by the Energy Commission.

Full approval by the Energy Commission shall be required whenever major changes are made to a Data Registry's functionality, security, or technology features that necessitate acceptance testing of more than 30% of the compliance document templates used in the applicant's Data Registry library.

Full approval by the Energy Commission shall be required when the Standards are updated (re-approval). When Data Registry re-approval is mandated by the Energy Commission, all Registration Providers shall be notified of the re-approval timetable. ~~A revised Data Registry Requirements Manual may be published to provide guidance~~ Refer to the Data Registry Requirements Manual for additional guidance ~~for~~ on the re-approval process.

Full approval shall ensure the Data Registry conforms to all applicable requirements for functionality and security in Appendix JA7 including but not limited to:

(a) Capability to produce and manage registered documents (JA7.5).

(b) Electronic signature capability, and manage authorization of users (JA7.6.3.2.1).

(c) Document data validation (JA7.6.3.2.2).

(d) Signer review and signature actions (JA7.6.3.2.3).

(e) Digital signature and digital certificate actions (JA7.6.3.2.4).

(f) Capability to transmit secured documents and data to the Commission Compliance Document Repository (JA7.6.3.2.5).

(g) Document retention capability (JA7.6.3.2.6).

(h) Capability to receive and process electronic data using best practices for secure data exchange, using data sources and procedures approved by the Energy Commission for registering compliance documents (JA7.6.3.2.7; JA7.7).

(i) Capability for data exchange with the compliance report generation services made available by the Energy Commission to generate formatted electronic documents (JA7.2, JA7.7).

JA7.8.3.2 Streamlined Approval of Amendments and Revisions

Amendments and revisions to existing Data Registry software and services for which full approval by the Energy Commission is not required, may be approved by the Executive Director through a streamlined process.

Changes that qualify for streamlined approval include minor changes to the Data Registry document registration procedures, data input specifications and procedures, or registered compliance document output.

Any application for amendment or revision to existing Data Registry software and services shall be accompanied by a cover letter explaining the type of amendment or revision requested, and copies of any applicable documents that are necessary to fully describe and justify the proposed amendment or revision.

All items on the application checklist in section JA7.8.2 that are applicable to the proposed amendment or revision shall be submitted.

When Data Registry modifications qualify for streamlined approval, the following procedure shall be followed:

(a) The Registration Provider applicant shall notify the Executive Director in writing to provide a description of the change and the reason for making the change.

(b) The Registration Provider applicant shall prepare an addendum to the user manual describing the change to the Data Registry if applicable.

(c) The Executive Director shall respond to the Registration Provider applicant in accordance with the procedures specified in Standards Section 10-110. The Executive Director response to the applicant may:

   1. Approve the modification;
   2. Request additional information;
   3. Refuse to approve the modification;
   4. Require the Registration Provider to submit results of additional acceptance tests applicable to the modification; or
   5. Require that the Registration Provider make specific changes to either the User Manual addendum or the Data Registry functionality.

(d) Subject to approval by the Executive Director, the Registration Provider may make the modified Data Registry available for use for registration of compliance documentation, along with the modified user manual or addendum to the user manual, and shall notify authorized users of the Data Registry when modifications to the Data Registry have been made available.

JA7.8.4 Rescinding Approval (Deactivation) of Data Registries

The Commission may rescind approval of Data Registries through various means as described in this section.

A revision to the functionality of a Data Registry to discontinue a working or contractual relationship between the Data Registry and an External Digital Data Source Provider:

(a) Shall not be a procedure that initiates deactivation of the Data Registry.

(b) Shall use the approval procedures specified in Sections JA7.8.3.1 or JA7.8.3.2, as applicable.

JA7.8.4.1 Procedures that Initiate Deactivation

(a) All Data Registries are deactivated when the Standards undergo substantial changes, usually occurring with each Standards update. However, the Data Registry shall remain approved to provide document registration for projects that have been permitted under the prior versions of the Standards.

(b) Any Data Registry can be deactivated by a letter from the Registration Provider requesting that the Data Registry be deactivated. The deactivation request shall briefly describe the reasons that justify the need for deactivation.

(c) The Executive Director may at any time, including upon petition by any party or recommendation by Commission staff, initiate a review of a Data Registry approval ~~Any "initiating party" may commence a procedure to deactivate a Data Registry~~ according to the steps outlined in Section JA7.8.4.2 below. The intent is to provide a means whereby serious Data Registry errors, violations of JA7, flawed numeric results, or improper registered document output not discovered in the Data Registry approval process can be verified, and a corrective course of action determined. Also, the intent is to provide ample opportunity for the Commission, the Registration Provider, and all interested parties to evaluate any alleged errors in the Data Registry functionality.

JA7.8.4.2 Challenging a Data Registry and Initiating Deactivation

A description of the process for challenging a Data Registry or initiating a deactivation procedure follows:

(a) Any party may ~~initiate~~ request a review of a Data Registry approval by ~~sending~~ submitting a ~~written communication~~ petition to the Energy Commission's Executive Director. ~~(The Commission may be the initiating party for this type of review by noticing the availability of the same information listed here.)~~ The ~~initiating party~~ petition shall:

1. State the name of the Data Registry that contains the alleged errors or violations of the Registration Provider's obligations under JA7;

2. Identify concisely the nature of the alleged errors or violations of the Registration Provider's obligations under JA7 in the Data Registry that require review;

3. Explain why the alleged errors are serious enough in their effect on document registration compliance to justify a deactivation procedure; and

4. Include appropriate data electronically (in a format agreed to by the *Executive Director*) and/or information sufficient to evaluate the alleged errors or violations of JA7.

(b) The Executive Director shall make a copy or copies of the ~~initial written communication~~ petition or Commission Staff's recommendation report available to the Registration Provider and interested parties within 30 days. Comments from interested parties shall be received within 60 days of the acceptance of the original application.

(c) Within 75 days of receipt of the ~~written communication~~petition or recommendation report, the Executive Director may request any additional information needed to evaluate the alleged Data Registry errors or violations of the Registration Provider's obligations under JA7 from the party who initiated the deactivation review process. If the additional information is incomplete, this procedure will be delayed until the initiating party submits complete information.

(d) Within 75 days of receipt of the ~~initial written communication~~petition or recommendation report, the Executive Director may convene a workshop to gather additional information from the initiating party, the Registration Provider and interested parties. All parties will have 15 days after the workshop to submit additional information regarding the alleged Data Registry errors or alleged violations of the Registration Provider's obligations under JA7.

(e) Within 90 days after the Executive Director receives the ~~application~~ petition or recommendation report or within 30 days after receipt of complete additional information requested of the initiating party, whichever is later, the Executive Director shall either:

1. Determine that the Data Registry need not be deactivated; or

2. Submit to the Energy Commission a written recommendation that the Data Registry be deactivated.

(f) If the Energy Commission approves the Data Registry deactivation, it shall take effect 60 days later. During the first 30 days of the 60 day period, the Executive Director shall send out a Notice to Enforcement Agencies and Interested Parties announcing the deactivation.

JA7.8.4.3 Burden of Proof

All initiating parties have the burden of proof to establish that the review of alleged Data Registry errors should be granted. The deactivation process may be terminated at any time by mutual written consent of the initiating party and the Executive Director.

The Registration Provider may use the 180 to 210-day period outlined here to update the Data Registry, get it re-approved by the Commission, and make available for use by authorized users the revised version of the Data Registry that does not contain the errors or violations initially brought to the attention of the Commission.

JA7.8.5 Data Registry User Manual

Each Registration Provider is required to publish a Data Registry User Manual. This requirement may be met by incorporating help screens into the Data Registry user interface, or making electronic tutorials readily available to users. A printed or electronic version which includes all help screen items or tutorials must be submitted with the application. The Data Registry User Manual shall provide guidance for building permit applicants and enforcement agency officials to enable correct use of the Data Registry, and assists with preparation of registered documentation used for submittals to enforcement agencies and other parties to the construction project.

The Document Registration Manual shall describe the specific Data Registry procedures for completing registered compliance documents. The manual shall provide instructions for preparing the data input and for utilizing the registered documents for submittals. An example of a full set of compliance documents for a building project shall be included.

Data Registry User Manuals shall be written in a clear and concise manner and with an organization and format that will allow users to quickly locate the topic and understand the instructions. Also, Registration Providers shall make electronic copies of their user manual available from their Data Registry website to all building departments in California.

Portions of a Data Registry User Manual that are incorporated as help screens into the Data Registry user interface do need not be published separately; their inclusion into the user interface satisfies the requirements of this subsection.

The following sections describe the information that shall be included in all Data Registry User Manuals. It also presents the required organization for that information.

JA7.8.5.1 Data Registry Capabilities

This section shall discuss the Data Registry capabilities, providing explanation of how to access these capabilities, and the purpose for each of these features.

JA7.8.5.2 Preparing Basic Documents

This section shall cover the basic use of the Data Registries to prepare each of the basic Compliance Document types, and should include a complete summary of all document creation methods or commands necessary to complete the required registered documents.

JA7.8.5.3 Instruction for Submittal of the Registered Document(s)

This section shall contain instruction for completing submittals of completed registered documents to enforcement agencies or other persons who require copies of completed registered documents. Instruction shall be given for all methods of submittal the Data Registry supports, including various methods for submittal of electronic copies of the registered documents, as well as for printing of paper copies.

JA7.8.5.4 Sample Compliance Documentation

This section shall include an example of a complete set of compliance documentation for a sample building. The building need not be overly complex, nor need it include every document type possible. The example should, however, include example documentation for all compliance document types that would normally be submitted for typical occupancy types administered by the Data Registry.

JA7.8.5.5 Instruction for Use of EDDS for Data Input for Document Registration

When a Data Registry is approved to make available use of EDDS features to authorized users of the Data Registry for data input during document registration procedures, the Data Registry user manual shall include instructions for use of those features. The instructions shall describe use of the Data Registry user interface for EDDS data input procedures. Additionally, if the EDDS services provider has a user interface or software application that the user is expected to access and operate that is independent of the Data Registry user interface, a copy of the EDDS service or software user instructions shall be included in the Data Registry User Manual. If the EDDS service or software user instructions contain proprietary information or intellectual property, the EDDS service or software user instructions do not need to be included in the Data Registry User Manual. However, the EDDS service or software user instructions must be made available to all authorized users that use the EDDS service or software.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Joint Appendix JA8

Appendix JA4 – Qualification Requirements for High Luminous Efficacy Light Sources

JA4.5 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA8 provides the qualification requirements for high luminous efficacy light sources installed to comply with Section 150.0(k). For the purposes of this Section, high luminous efficacy light sources include ballasts or LED drivers if needed for operation of the light source: light sources shall be certified together with a driver or ballast. If the light source is inseparable from the luminaire the entire luminaire shall meet the requirements of this section. All qualifying light sources shall be certified to the Energy Commission according to all of the requirements in this Appendix.

JA4.6 Certification of Test Labs

The light source under test shall be tested at a testing laboratory ~~participating in the~~accredited to ISO/IEC 17025:2017, by the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) or other laboratory accreditation body operating in accordance with ISO/IEC 17011 and produced under an ongoing inspection program carried out by a Type A inspection body in accordance with ISO/IEC 17020.

JA4.7 Tests to be performed

Compliance with the requirements of this Appendix shall be determined by performance of the following test procedures, as applicable to the type of light source.

Sample group size shall be as specified in the referenced test procedures. Where a sample group is not specified for a test, a single unit shall be tested.

JA4.7.1 Luminous Efficacy Test

For federally regulated light sources, luminous efficacy shall be determined by the test procedures specified in 10 CFR 429 Subpart B and 10 CFR 430.23(gg).

For non-federally-regulated light sources, luminous efficacy at full light output shall be determined by the following test procedures, as applicable to the type of light source:

a) For incandescent and incandescent reflector lamps: 10CFR 430.23(r).
b) For medium base compact fluorescent lamps: 10CFR 430.23(w).
c) For general service fluorescent lamps: 10CFR 430.23(r).
d) For fluorescent lamps that are not Medium base compact fluorescent lamps and general service fluorescent lamps: IES LM-9.
e) For LED light sources, IES LM-79.

f) For high intensity discharge lamps, IES LM-51.
g) For induction lamps, IES LM-66.

The reported value shall be the minimum luminous efficacy of the tested units and be rounded to the nearest tenth.

JA4.7.2 Power Factor Test

Power factor shall be measured at full light output in accordance with ANSI C82.77, Section 6 and 7.

For lamps, the reported value shall be the average measured values of the tested units rounded to be the nearest tenth.

For all other sources, the reported value shall be the minimum power factor of the tested units rounded to the nearest tenth.

JA4.7.3 Start Time Test

Start time shall be measured in accordance with the ENERGY STAR Program Requirements Product Specifications for Lamps 2.1: Start Time Test Method, notwithstanding the scope of the test, subject to the following modifications:

For lamps the reported value shall be the average start time of the tested units rounded to the nearest millisecond.

For all other light sources the reported value shall be the maximum start time of the tested units rounded to the nearest millisecond.

For light sources that provide a fade-in feature, the initial plateau shall be the point specified in the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency ENERGY STAR Program Requirements for Lamps and Luminaires Start Time Test Method dated October 2017.

For light sources with a standby mode consuming no more than 0.2 watts of power, the start time test may be performed with the product receiving power and in this mode. In this case, the start time shall be the time between the sending of an on signal to the device via an appropriate control and the initial plateau.

JA4.7.4 Color Characteristics Tests

Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) and Color Rendering Index of federally-regulated light sources shall be determined by the test procedures specified in 10 CFR 429 Subpart B and 10 CFR 430.23(gg).

Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) and Color Rendering Index of non-federally-regulated light sources shall be determined by the following test procedures, as applicable to the type of light source:

a) Incandescent and halogen reflector lamps: IES LM-20.
b) Incandescent non-reflector lamps: IES LM-45.
c) Single ended compact fluorescent lamps: IES LM-66.

d) Fluorescent lamps that are not single ended compact fluorescent lamps: IES LM-9.

e) Induction lamps: IES LM-66.

f) LED light sources: IES LM 79.

g) High intensity discharge lamps: IES LM-51.

h) Other equipment: other applicable test procedure approved by the Executive Director

Nominal Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) shall be calculated in accordance with CIE 15 (reference document ANSI C78.377). Color Rendering Index (CRI) shall be calculated in accordance with CIE 13.3.

The reported value shall be the average measured values of units tested rounded to be the nearest whole number for CRI.

JA4.7.5 ~~Lumen Maintenance and Rated Life Test~~RESERVED

~~Light sources within the scope of the ENERGY STAR® Product Specification for Luminaires Version 2.1 shall be tested as specified in Section 10 of the Specification. Light sources within the scope of the ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Lamps Version 2.1 shall be tested as specified in Section 10 of the Specification. Linear or tubular lamps shall be tested as specified in Section 10 of the ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Lamps Version 2.1, with the exception that the lamps shall be tested in the horizontal position. All other light sources shall be tested as specified in Section 10 of the ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Luminaires Version 2.1, notwithstanding scope.~~

~~Light sources tested using the ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Lamps Version 2.1 may perform either the Ambient Temperature Life Test Method or the Elevated Temperature Life Test Method. See Section JA8.5, Marking.~~

JA4.7.6 RESERVED

JA4.7.7 Tests for Minimum Dimming Level, Flicker, and Audible Noise

Light sources shall be tested for flicker using Joint Appendix 10.

The audible noise test shall be performed as specified in the ENERGY STAR Program Requirements Product Specification for Lamps Version 2.1: Test Method – Noise, notwithstanding scope.

Minimum dimming level is measured by comparing the stabilized light output of the light source with the dimming control set to full light output with the dimming control being set to the manufacturer's minimum rated output. Full light output and minimum light output is measured after the light output has stabilized according to the test procedures specific to light source type in Section JA 8.3.1.

In addition to the reporting of flicker results as described in Section JA8.6, flicker test data for each combination of light source, ballast or driver (if applicable), transformer type and dimmer type claiming compliance with JA8 shall be submitted to the California Energy Commission.

Testing for minimum dimming level, flicker, and audible noise is required for each combination of light source, ballast or driver (if applicable), transformer type and dimmer type as follows:

1. Low voltage light sources shall be tested with a representative transformer for each transformer type that the light source is claiming compatibility.
2. Light sources claimed as compatible with forward phase-cut dimmers shall be tested in combination with a NEMA SSL 7A compliant dimmer.
3. Light sources claimed as compatible with dimmers other than forward phase-cut dimmers, dimmability, low noise and low flicker operation shall be tested for each ballast or driver combination (if applicable) with at least one representative dimmer for each dimmer type for which compatibility is claimed.

JA4.8 Qualification Requirements

The following qualification requirements must be met for the light source to be considered High Luminous Efficacy as specified in Section 150(k) and Table 150.0-A.

JA4.8.1 Luminous Efficacy

The light source shall meet the following requirements when measured in accordance with the test method of Section JA8.3.1:

The luminous efficacy of the light source shall be equal to or greater than either the applicable State or federal appliance efficiency standard or 45 lumens/Watt, whichever is higher, when tested at its full light output.

JA4.8.2 Power Factor

The light source shall meet the following requirements when measured in accordance with the test method of Section JA8.3.2:

The light source shall have a power factor equal to or greater than 0.90 when tested at its full light output.

JA4.8.3 Start Time

The light source shall meet the following requirements when measured in accordance with the test method of Section JA8.3.3:

The light source shall have a start time no greater than 0.5 seconds.

JA4.8.4 Color Characteristics

The light source shall meet the following CCT and color rendering requirements when measured in accordance with the test method of Section JA8.3.4:

(a) LED lamps regulated by the Title 20 Appliance Efficiency Regulations and subject to Color Rendering Index requirements under Title 20 shall comply with the Color Rendering Index requirements in Title 20.

(b) All other light sources shall provide a Color Rendering Index (CRI) of 90 or higher and color rendering R9 value of 50 or higher.

(c) All light sources shall be capable of providing a nominal Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) of 4000 Kelvin or less.

JA4.8.5 ~~Lumen Maintenance, Rated Life and Survival Rate~~RESERVED

~~The light source shall meet the lumen maintenance, rated life, and survival rate criteria when measured in accordance with the test method of Section JA8.3.5 and JA8.3.6.~~

~~(a) Lumen Maintenance: The percentage of initial light output shall either be 86.7 percent after 6,000 hours or 93.1 percent after 3,000 hours, based on whether the product is reporting final or interim test data. Light sources tested using LM-80 and TM-21, as specified in the ENERGY STAR product specifications, may use the ENERGY STAR TM-21 calculator to determine lumen maintenance at 3,000 or 6,000 hours.~~

~~(b) Rated Life: The light source shall have a minimum rated lifetime of 15,000 hours.~~

~~(c) Survival Rate: For tests using a sample group of ten units, 90 percent of tested units shall be operational for the duration of the test. For tests using a sample size less than ten, all tested units shall be operational for the duration of the test.~~

~~**Exception to Section JA8.4.6(c):** For products reporting interim test data, the survival rate must be met at the time the interim data is recorded.~~

JA4.8.6 Dimming, Reduced Flicker Operation and Audible Noise

The light source shall meet the following dimming, reduced flicker operation, and audible noise requirements when measured in accordance with the test method of Section JA8.3.7:

(a) The light source shall be dimmable down to 10 percent light output where 100 percent full light output is defined as operating the light source at the maximum setting provided by the control.

(b) LED-based light sources designed to be connected with or dimmed by forward phase cut dimmers shall meet the requirements of NEMA standard SSL 7A.

(c) Light source in combination with specified control shall provide “reduced flicker operation” when tested at full light output as specified in JA10, where reduced flicker operation is defined as having percent amplitude modulation (percent flicker) less than 30 percent at frequencies less than 200Hz.

(d) Light source shall not emit audible noise above 24dBA measured at 1 meter from the light source when tested at full light output.

(e) Light sources shall also be tested and shown to comply with (c) and (d) while at 20% light output.

JA4.9 Marking

Light sources meeting the requirements of this Appendix shall be marked with “JA8-~~2019~~2022” to indicate their compliance with the criteria of this Appendix. Light sources that have passed the Elevated Temperature Life Test specified in the ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Lamps Version 2.1, or that have passed the rated life test specified in the ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Luminaires Version 2.1, shall instead be marked with “JA8-~~2019~~2022-E” to indicate that they comply with this Appendix and may additionally be installed in elevated temperature applications such as enclosed fixtures. Light sources that do not comply with this Appendix shall not be marked with “JA8-~~2019~~2022” or “JA8-~~2019~~2022-E”.

JA4.10 Data Reporting

The following test data shall be submitted to the California Energy Commission in the format specified in Table JA-8. The entity submitting the filing shall keep all test data and documentation required for compliance for at least two years from the date of certification and shall provide copies of this documentation to the Energy Commission within 10 days of written request received from the Energy Commission.

TABLE JA-8. DATA TO BE RECORDED AND SUBMITTED TO THE CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION

Required Information	Permissible Answers	Compliance Threshold
Manufacturer, Model number, Description		
Light Source Type	LED, OLED, Fluorescent, HID, Incandescent, Other	
Product type	Omnidirectional lamp, Directional lamp, Decorative lamp, LED light engine, inseparable SSL luminaire, T20 lamp, other	
Lab accredited by NVLAP or accreditation body operating in accordance with ISO/IEC 17011?	Yes/No	Yes
Initial Luminous Efficacy	Value (lumens/Watt)	≥ 45 lumens/Watt
Power Factor at Full Rated Power	0 – 1 Fraction	≥ 0.90
Start time	Value (seconds)	≤ 0.5 sec
Correlated Color Temperature (CCT)	Number Kelvin	≤4000 Kelvin.
Color Rendering Index (CRI)	0-100	≥ 90 for all products other than T20 lamps, ≥ 82 for T20 lamps
Color Rendering R9 (red)	0-100 or below 0	≥ 50 for all products other than T20 lamps

Ambient or elevated temperature ~~test for rated life, lumen maintenance, and survival rate~~	Ambient or Elevated	
~~Lumen maintenance~~	~~Value (percent), N/A~~	~~≥ 86.7% after final testing, or 93.1 if reporting interim data~~
~~Interim or Final reporting~~	~~Interim or Final~~	
~~Rated life~~	~~Value (hours)~~	~~≥ 15,000 hours~~
~~survival rate~~	~~Value (percent)~~	~~≥ 90%~~
Minimum dimming level	Value (percent)	≤ 10%
Dimming control compatibility	Forward Phase cut control, reverse phase cut, powerline carrier, digital, 0-10 VDC, other.	At least one type must be listed
NEMA SSL 7A compatible?	Yes/No, NA	If compatible with forward phase cut dimmer control, "Yes". If not, "NA".
Flicker:	**Flicker:**	**Flicker:**
See JA10 Table 10-1 for flicker data requirements and permissible answers		<30% for frequencies of 200 Hz or below, at 100% light output
See JA10 Table 10-1 for flicker data requirements and permissible answers		<30% for frequencies of 200 Hz or below, at 20% light output
Audible Noise:	**Audible Noise:**	**Audible Noise:**
100% light output: Audible Noise	Value (dBA)	≤ 24 dBA
20% light output: Audible Noise	Value (dBA)	≤ 24 dBA
Marking:	**Marking:**	**Marking:**
Marked in accordance with JA8.5	Yes/No	Yes

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Joint Appendix JA9

Appendix JA9 – Qualification Requirements for Low Leakage Air-Handling Units

~~JA9.1 Purpose and Scope~~ .... ~~1~~
~~JA9.2 Qualification Requirements~~ .... ~~1~~
~~JA9.2.1 Method of Test~~ .... ~~1~~
~~JA9.2.2 Testing Laboratory Requirements~~ .... ~~2~~
~~JA9.2.3 Nominal Air-Handling Unit Airflow~~ .... ~~2~~
~~JA9.2.4 Leakage Criterion for Qualification~~ .... ~~2~~

JA9.1 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA9 provides the qualification requirements for air-handling units to meet the requirements for low leakage air-handling unit compliance credit(s) available in the performance standards set forth in Title 24, Part 6, Sections 150.1(b) and 140.1. Joint Appendix JA9 is applicable to air-handling units intended for installation in ducted forced-air space conditioning systems. Joint Appendix JA9 is applicable to air-handling units that are rated by the manufacturer to move less than 3,000 cfm (1400 L/s) of air.

Air-handling unit equipment types include:

(a) furnaces
(b) heat pumps
(c) air conditioners

Joint Appendix JA9 does not apply to coil boxes, filter boxes, or other duct system components that are not an integral part of the air-handling unit cabinet or enclosure certified by the manufacturer.

Joint Appendix JA9 does not apply to ducts, plenums, or other field-constructed components.

JA9.2 Qualification Requirements

To qualify as a low leakage air-handling unit for use for compliance with applicable performance compliance credits, the air-handling unit shall be certified to the Energy Commission according to the following requirements:

JA9.2.1 Method of Test

The air-handling unit shall be tested in accordance with the requirements given in ASHRAE Standard 193.

JA9.2.2 Testing Laboratory Requirements

The Air-Handling Unit shall be tested in a laboratory that has demonstrated compliance with ISO Standard 17025, General Criteria for the Competence of Testing and Calibration Laboratories, and is accredited for the ASHRAE Standard 193 test methods. The accreditation body shall be a signatory to the International Laboratory Accreditation Cooperation Mutual Recognition Arrangement (ILAC MRA) www.ilac.org.

JA9.2.3 Nominal Air-Handling Unit Airflow

The nominal air-handling unit airflow used for determining the leakage criterion for qualification shall be as follows:

(a) For heating-only systems the nominal air-handling unit airflow shall be 21.7 cfm per kBtu/hr of rated heating output capacity.

(b) For systems that provide space cooling, the nominal air-handling unit airflow shall be 400 cfm per nominal ton of cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer, or the heating-only value, whichever is greater.

JA9.2.4 Leakage Criterion for Qualification

Allowable leakage for qualification as a Low Leakage Air-Handling Unit shall be equal to or less than 1.4 percent of the nominal air-handling unit airflow determined by Section JA9.2.3.

Joint Appendix JA10

Appendix JA10 – Test Method for Measuring Flicker of Lighting Systems and Reporting Requirements

JA10.1 Introduction

This test method quantifies flicker from lighting systems which may include all of the following components: lamps, light sources, transformers, ballasts or drivers, and dimming controls. This test method measures the fluctuation of light from lighting systems and processes this signal to quantify flicker as a percent amplitude modulation (percent flicker) below a given cut-off frequency. Signal processing is used to remove high frequency components above the cut off-frequency.

JA10.2 Equipment Combinations

The test results measured using this method are specific to each combination of:

- Light source and a representative dimmer; or
- Low voltage lamp together with a representative transformer and a representative dimmer (if applicable); or
- Light source and a representative dimming control (if applicable); or
- Light source together with a representative driver, and a representative dimming control (if applicable); or
- Light source together with a representative ballast, and a representative dimming control (if applicable).

If the control or transformer requires a greater load than what is provided by a single sample of the unit under test, additional load will be created by adding quantities of the identical light source, and ballast or driver if applicable on the same circuit receiving the control signal.

Flicker measurements of a phase cut dimmer controlling an incandescent line voltage lamp shall be considered representative for that dimmer with any line voltage incandescent lamp.

Flicker measurements of a phase cut dimmer controlling a transformer for low voltage incandescent lamps shall be representative only for that combination of dimmer and transformer with any incandescent lamp.

Flicker measurements of all non-incandescent lamp sources controlled by a phase cut dimmer represents only the specific combination of phase cut dimmer, ballast or driver, and lamp. These results cannot be applied to other combinations of dimmer, ballast, driver or lamp.

Flicker measurements of light sources controlled by 0-10 volt control, digital control, wireless control or powerline carrier control, the flicker measurement is specific to that combination of control type and ballast or driver and lamp. Test results of the lamp and ballast or driver combination can be applied to other systems that have another control of the same type (0-10 volt, digital, etc.) providing the control signal.

JA10.3 Test Equipment Requirements

Test Enclosure: The test enclosure does not admit stray light to ensure the light measured comes only from the UUT (unit under test). Provision shall be made so the test enclosure is able to maintain a constant temperature of 25°C ±5°C.

Device for data collection: Light output waveform shall be measured with a photodetector with a rise time of 10 microseconds or less, transimpedance amplifier and oscilloscope. An alternate measurement system providing the same accuracy and function as the specified equipment may be used.

Temporal response, amplification and filtering characteristics of the system shall be designed to capture the photometric data at intervals of 50 microseconds or less, corresponding to a data recording rate of no less than 20 kHz, and shall be capable of capturing at least 1 second of data.

JA10.4 Flicker Test Conditions

Product wiring setup: Fluorescent ballasts shall be wired in accordance to the guidelines provided in the DOE ballast luminous efficiency test procedure in 10 CFR 430.23(q).

Product pre-conditioning: All fluorescent lamps shall be seasoned (operated at full light output) at least 100 hours before initiation of the test. Seasoning of other lamps types is not required.

Input power: Input power to UUT (unit under test), shall be provided at the rated primary voltage and frequency within 0.5 percent for both voltage and frequency. When ballasts are labeled for a range of primary voltages, the ballasts should be operated at the primary application voltage. The voltage shall have a sinusoidal wave shape and have a voltage total harmonic distortion (THD) of no greater than 3 percent.

Temperature: Temperature shall be maintained at a constant temperature of 25°C ±5°C.

Dimming levels: Measurements shall be taken within 2 percent of the following increments of full light output: 100 percent, 20 percent, and minimum dimming level where 100 percent full light output is defined as operating the light source at the maximum setting provided by the control. When the minimum light output of the systems is greater than 20 percent of full light output, then the flicker measurements are taken at the minimum light output. For dimming fluorescent ballasts, lamp arc power may be used as a proxy for light output for the purpose of setting dimming levels for collecting test measurements.

JA10.5 Test Procedure

Lamp stabilization: Lamp stabilization shall be determined in accordance with:

IES-LM-9 for circleline, and U-tube fluorescent systems;

Code of Federal Regulations - 10 CFR 430.23(q) for linear fluorescent systems;

IES-LM-66 for compact fluorescent systems and induction lighting systems;

IES-LM-79 for light emitting diode systems; and

IES-LM-46 for high intensity discharge systems.

Lamp light output shall be stabilized in advance of taking measurements at each dimming level. Light output shall be considered stabilized when consecutive measurements taken at one minute intervals deviate by no more than 0.5%.

Recording interval: Measured data shall be recorded to a digital file with an interval between each measurement no greater than 0.00005 sec (50 microseconds) corresponding to an equipment measurement rate of no less than 20kHz, and capture at least 1 second of data.

For each dimming level after the lamps have stabilized, record lighting measurements (in footcandles or volts) from test equipment with readings taken at intervals of no greater than 50 microseconds. These readings shall be recorded for a test period of no less than one second.

JA10.6 Calculations

Perform the following data manipulation and calculation tasks for each dimming level (100 percent, 20 percent and minimum dimming level claimed by the manufacturer):

Calculate percent amplitude modulation (percent flicker) of unfiltered data over the duration of the test for a given dimming level using the following equation:

Percent Amplitude Modulation =	**(Max – Min)** **Max + Min)**	**x 100**

Where:

Max is the maximum recorded light level or voltage from the test apparatus during the duration of the test for a given dimming level.

Min is the minimum recorded light level or voltage from the test apparatus during the duration of the test for a given dimming level.

Conduct a Fourier analysis to transform data for each dimming level into the frequency domain.

Filter frequency data to evaluate the data under four additional different conditions: frequencies under 40 Hz (data above 40 Hz is set to 0), and frequencies under 90 Hz, 200 Hz, 400 Hz, and 1,000 Hz.

Perform inverse Fourier transform to place data back in time domain.

Calculate percent amplitude modulation on resulting time domain data for each filtered dataset over the full sampling duration.

JA10.7 Test Report and Data Format

For all systems where reporting of flicker is required, the test data shall be submitted to the California Energy Commission in the format specified in Table JA-10. For two years from the date of certification, the entity submitting the test report shall keep all documentation required for compliance, stored and shall provide copies of this documentation to the Energy Commission within 10 days of written request received from the Commission. This documentation shall also include for each measured system, a digital file containing the raw photometric data as described in Section JA10.5.

Data	Units/Format
Test Date	
Test Operator	Company Name, Contact Name, Address, Phone Number, e-mail address
Entity submitting results	Company Name, Contact Name, Address, Phone Number, e-mail address
	Manufacturer or Brand
Tested lighting system component: Dimmer	Dimmer type, Manufacturer or Brand, model number
Tested lighting system component: light source (lamp or light engine)	Light source type (lamp, light engine, etc), Manufacturer or Brand, model number
Tested lighting system component: Ballast or Driver	Ballast or Driver, Manufacturer or Brand, model number
Recording interval	seconds (no greater than 0.00005 seconds)
Equipment Measurement Period	seconds (no less than 1 second)
Fraction of rated light output integrated over measurement period at 100%, 20% and minimum fraction of light output.	Fraction of rated light output integrated over measurement period at 100%, 20% and minimum fraction of light output.
Amplitude modulation unfiltered	calculated percent amplitude modulation unfiltered for each dimming level (100%, 20% and minimum fraction of light output)
Percent amplitude modulation with 1,000 Hz cut-off	calculated percent amplitude modulation, data filtered with a 1,000 Hz cut-off frequency for each dimming level: (100%, 20%, and minimum fraction of light output)
Percent amplitude modulation with 400 Hz cut-off	calculated percent amplitude modulation, data filtered with a 400 Hz cut-off frequency for each dimming level: (100%, 20%, and minimum fraction of light output)

Percent amplitude modulation with 200 Hz cut-off	calculated percent amplitude modulation, data filtered with a 200 Hz cut-off frequency for each dimming level: (100%, 20% and minimum fraction of light output)
Percent amplitude modulation with 90 Hz cut-off	calculated percent amplitude modulation, data filtered with a 90 Hz cut-off frequency for each dimming level: (100%, 20% and minimum fraction of light output)
Percent amplitude modulation with 40 Hz cut-off	calculated percent amplitude modulation, data filtered with a 40 Hz cut-off frequency for each dimming level: (100%, 20% and minimum fraction of light output)

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Joint Appendix JA11

Appendix JA11 – Qualification Requirements for Photovoltaic System

JA11.1 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA11 provides the qualification requirements for photovoltaic (PV) system to meet the prescriptive or performance standards set forth in Title 24, Part 6, Sections 140.1, 140.10, 150.1(b), ~~and~~ 150.1(c), 170.1, 170.2(f), and 170.2(g).

JA11.2 System Orientation

JA11.2.1 **Prescriptive compliance**

~~No~~ PV systems or strings with module pitches greater than 2:12 or 10 degrees shall be installed with ~~outside of the~~ azimuth range between 90 to 300 degrees measured clockwise from true north. PV systems or strings with module pitches smaller than 2:12 or 10 degrees can be installed with any azimuth range. ~~If the PV array does not meet this orientation requirement, then the actual orientation of the PV array shall be described in the performance method.~~

JA11.2.1 **Performance compliance**

When the California Flexible Installation (CFI) 1 is selected in the performance calculation, the PV array shall be installed with an azimuth range between 150 to 270 degrees from true north, and with all modules at the same tilt as the roof for pitches up to 7:12.

When the CFI2 is selected in the performance calculation, the PV array shall be installed with an azimuth range between 105 to 300 degrees from true north, and with all modules at the same tilt as the roof for pitches up to 7:12.

If the PV array does not meet either CFI1 or CFI2, then the actual orientation of the PV array shall be described.

JA11.3 Shading

~~JA11.3 The PV array shall meet either JA11.3.1 or JA11.3.2.~~

~~*Minimal Shading Criterion*~~

~~The minimal shading criterion is that no obstruction is closer than a distance ("D") of twice the height ("H") it extends above the PV array. (See Figure JA11-1 for an artistic depiction of "H" and "D.") As Figure JA11-1 illustrates, the distance "D" must be at least two times greater than the distance "H." All obstructions that project above the point on the array that is closest to the~~

~~obstruction shall meet this criterion for the array to be considered minimally shaded.~~ Shading on the PV array from obstructions shall be eliminated or avoided ~~possible~~as necessary to meet performance requirements under the performance approach or the prescriptive limit on shading under the prescriptive approach (stated in JA11.3.1). Any obstruction located north of all points on the array need not be considered as shading obstructions. Obstructions ~~that~~ to consider ~~are subject to this criterion~~ include:

(a) Any vent, chimney, architectural feature, mechanical equipment, or other obstruction that is on the roof or any other part of the building.

(b) Any part of the neighboring terrain.

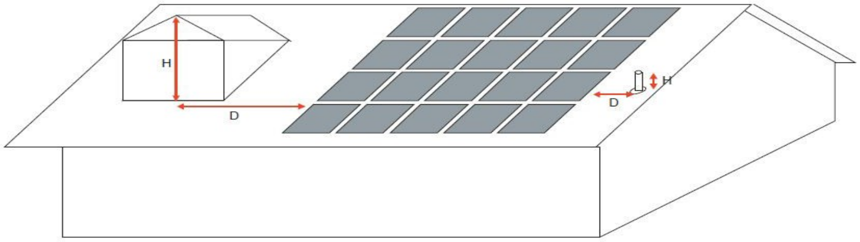
(c) Any tree that is mature at the time of installation of the PV system.

(d) Any tree that is planted on the building lot or neighboring lots or planned to be planted as part of landscaping for the building. (The expected shading shall be based on the mature height of the tree.)

(e) Any existing neighboring building or structure.

(f) Any planned neighboring building or structure that is known to the applicant or building owner.

(g) Any telephone or other utility pole that is closer than 30 feet from the nearest point of the array.



~~*Figure JA11-1: The Minimal Shading Criterion Artistic Depiction of "H" and "D"*~~

JA11.3.1 ~~**PV Array Geometries Performance Input**~~**Prescriptive Minimum Shading Requirement**

~~If the PV array does not meet the minimal shading criterion as specified in JA11.3.1, then the detailed geometries of the PV array shall be described in the performance method.~~ If the PV system does not qualify for exception 1 of section 150.14, then the weighted average annual solar access by panel count shall be equal or greater than 98 percent.

JA11.4 Solar Access Verification

A certified solar assessment tool shall be used to ~~The installer shall provide documentation that~~ demonstrate~~s~~ the shading condition of the actual installation of the PV module is consistent with compliance with ~~either~~ JA11.3.1~~, or JA11.3.2~~ the shading condition modeled in the performance method as indicated on the CF1R-PRF-01, and qualification to exceptions in 150.1(c)14. ~~one of the following methods:~~

JA11.4.1 **Solar Assessment Tool Certification Requirement**

Solar assessment tools shall be certified to the Executive Director according to the following requirements:

a) The solar assessment tool shall calculate the annual solar access percentage of each individual solar array and a weighted average of the PV system as a whole. The calculation shall include all known obstructions, including any tree that is planted on the building lot or neighboring lots or planned to be planted as part of landscaping for the building.

b) The solar assessment tool shall not include horizon shading in the calculation by default.

c) The solar assessment tool shall produce a shade report with a summary of the PV system, including the address of the project, individual array panel count, orientation, annual solar access percentage, and a weighted average of the PV system as a whole.

d) If the solar assessment tool model shading condition based on satellite or aerial~~drone~~ images, the annual solar access percentage values shall be comparable to on-site measurements. Documentation shall be provided to CEC as proof.

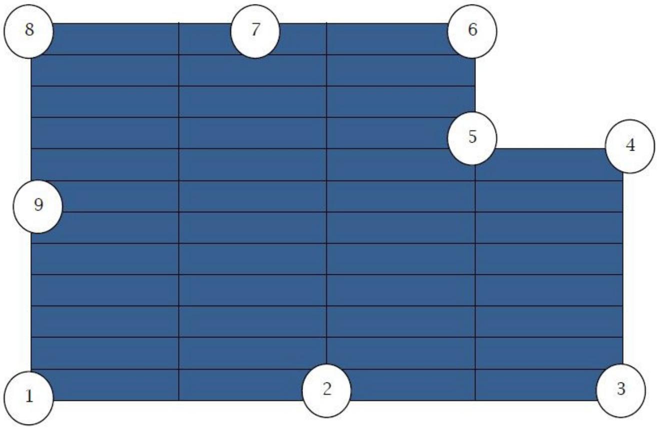
~~a) Solar Assessment Tool. Use a solar assessment tool approved by the Executive Director to ascertain the extent of the shading conditions on the PV system from existing obstructions. At each measurement point, the tool placed on the PV array, leveled, and oriented consistent with the manufacturer's instructions.~~

~~Measurements shall be made at all the major corners of the array with no adjacent measurement being more than 40 feet apart. (See example in Figure JA12-2.) The points of measurement shall be distributed evenly between two major corners if they are more than 40 feet apart such that the linear distance between any sequential points is no more than 40 feet. However, if any linear edge of the array has no obstructions that are closer than two times the height they project above the closest point on the array, then the intermediate measurements along that edge do not need to be made. Measurements made at each major corner and intermediate point shall be documented in the CF-2R Certificate of Installation.~~

~~The measurements shall be made either after the array has been installed or after the roof sheathing has been installed but prior to installation of the array. If the measurements are made prior to actual installations, the location of the array shall be marked on the roof plans and the measurement points shall be located on the roof and the measurements shall be made. The location of the array shall be marked on the roof so that the actual installation is made consistent with the measurements. If the location of the array is changed during the construction process or new obstructions are introduced~~

~~that did not exist at the time of the original measurements, the measurements will be re-determined after the actual installation.~~

~~**Alternative Methods.** Alternatively, for verification of solar access, the installer shall verify by an aerial satellite image(s), drone image(s), or other digital image(s) along with supporting documents showing the height of shading obstructions as well as the horizontal distance on the actual roof, and surrounding structures and trees, or by using an alternate method approved by the Executive Director to evaluate the solar access availability of the building location.~~



~~Figure JA12-2: Example of Points Where Measurement Shall Be Made Using a Solar Assessment Tool~~

JA11.5 -System Monitoring Requirements

JA11.5.1 Remote Monitoring Capability

The PV system shall have a web-based portal and a mobile device application that at a minimum provide the building owner, manager, or dwelling occupants access to the following information:

(a) The nominal kW rating of the PV system.

(b) Number of PV modules and the nominal watt rating of each module.

(c) Hourly (or 15-minute interval), daily, monthly, and annual kWh production in numeric and graphic formats.

(d) Running total of daily kWh production.

(e) Daily kW peak power production.

(f) Current kW production of the entire PV system.

JA11.6 Interconnection Requirements

The installed inverters shall be tested in accordance with the applicable requirements in UL1741 and UL1741 Supplement A. The PV system and the associated components, including inverters, shall comply with all applicable requirements specified in Rule 21 as adopted by the California Public Utilities Commission (CPUC).

JA11.7 Certificates and Availability

The PV installer shall certify on the CF2R-PVB-01-E, Certificate of Installation for Photovoltaic System that all provisions of JA11 are met and provide ~~PV array geometries used in the performance calculation if applicable~~a solar assessment report meeting one of the following conditions:

a) The satellite, drone or other digital image used in the solar assessment report must be created and dated after the installation of the photovoltaic system.

b) If the satellite, drone or other digital image used in the solar assessment report is dated before the installation of the photovoltaic system, additional on-site pictures must be attached to clearly show that the installed system matches the system modeled in the solar assessment report.

~~. ~~The Certificate of Installation shall be available on the building site for inspections.

JA11.8 Enforcement Agency

The local enforcement agency shall verify that the CF2R-PVB-01-E Certificate of Installation is complete and correct, and uploaded into a Commission-approved registry.

Joint Appendix JA12

Appendix JA12 – Qualification Requirements for Battery Storage System

JA12.1 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA12 provides the qualification requirements for battery storage system to meet the requirements for battery storage compliance credit(s) available in the ~~performance~~ standards set forth in Title 24, Part 6, Sections 150.1(b) and 140.10 in combination with an on-site or community solar photovoltaic system, or a separate battery storage system. The primary function of the battery storage system is daily cycling for the purpose of load shifting, maximized solar self-utilization, and grid-~~-~~harmonization.

JA12.2 Qualification Requirements

To qualify as a battery storage system for use for compliance with applicable performance compliance credits, the battery storage system shall be certified to the Energy Commission to meet the following requirements:

JA12.2.1 Safety Requirements

The battery storage system shall be tested in accordance with the applicable requirements given in UL1973 and UL9540. Inverters used with battery storage systems shall be tested in accordance with the applicable requirements in UL1741 and UL1741 Supplement A.

JA12.2.2 Minimum System Performance Requirements

JA12.2.2.1 Prescriptive Compliance

The installed battery storage system ~~should~~ shall meet or exceed the following ~~performance~~ specifications:

(a) Usable capacity of at least 5 kWh.

(b) Single Charge-discharge cycle AC to AC (round-trip) efficiency of at least 80 percent.

(c) Energy capacity retention of 70 percent of nameplate capacity after 4,000 cycles covered by a warranty, or 70 percent of nameplate capacity under a 10-year warranty.

JA12.2.2.2 Performance Compliance

The installed battery storage system shall meet or exceed the following specifications:

(a) Usable capacity of at least 5 kWh.

(b) Energy capacity retention of 70 percent of nameplate capacity after 4,000 cycles covered by a warranty, or 70 percent of nameplate capacity under a 10-year warranty.

JA12.2.3 Control Requirements for Prescriptive and Performance Compliance Paths

The requirements below are applicable to all control strategies.

(a) The battery storage system shall have the capability of being remotely programmed to change the charge and discharge periods.

(b) During discharge, the battery storage system shall be programmed to first meet the electrical load of the dwelling unit(s). If during the discharge period the electrical load of the dwelling unit(s) is less than the maximum discharge rate, the battery storage system shall have the capability to discharge electricity into the grid upon receipt of a demand ~~response~~ flexibility signal from the local utility or a third-party aggregator.

(c) The battery storage system shall operate in one of the control strategies listed in JA12.2.3.1, JA12.2.3.2, ~~and~~ JA12.2.3.3, and JA12.2.3.4 except during a power interruption, when it may switch to backup mode. If the battery system switches to backup power mode during a power interruption, upon restoration of power the battery system shall immediately revert to the previously programmed JA12 control strategy.

(d) The battery storage system shall perform a system check on the following dates, to ensure the battery is operating in one of the control strategies listed in JA12.2.3.1, JA12.2.3.2, ~~and~~ JA12.2.3.3, and JA12.2.3.4:

1) Within 10 calendar days before the onset of summer TOU schedule, and
2) Within 10 calendar days before the onset of winter TOU schedule.

At the time of inspection, the battery storage system shall be installed to meet one of the following control strategies. The battery storage system also shall have the capability to remotely switch to the other control strategies.

JA12.2.3.1 Basic Control

When combined with an on-site solar photovoltaic system, ~~T~~to qualify for the Basic Control, the battery storage system shall be installed in the default operation mode to allow charging only from an on-site photovoltaic system when the photovoltaic system production is greater than the on-site electrical load. The battery storage system shall discharge only when the photovoltaic system production is less than the on-site electrical load.

JA12.2.3.2 Time-of-Use (TOU) Control

When combined with an on-site solar photovoltaic system, ~~T~~to qualify for the TOU Control, the battery storage system shall be installed in the default operation mode to allow charging only from an on-site photovoltaic system. The battery storage system shall begin discharging during the highest priced TOU hours of the day. The operation schedule shall be preprogrammed from factory, updated remotely, or programmed during the installation/commissioning of the system. At a minimum, the system shall be capable of programming three separate seasonal TOU schedules, such as spring, summer, and winter.

JA12.2.3.3 Advanced Demand ~~Response~~ Flexibility Control

When combined with an on-site solar photovoltaic system, ~~T~~to qualify for the Advanced Demand ~~Response~~ Flexibility Control, the battery storage system shall be programmed by default as Basic Control as described in JA12.2.3.1 or TOU control as described in JA12.2.3.2. The battery storage control shall meet the demand ~~responsive~~ flexibility control requirements specified in Section 110.12(a). Additionally, the battery storage system shall have the capability to change the charging and discharging periods in response to signals from the local utility or a third-party aggregator.

JA12.2.3.4 Controls for Separate Battery Storage Systems

When installed separate from (not in combination with) an on-site solar photovoltaic system, including when the building is served by a community solar PV system, to qualify for the compliance credit, the battery storage system shall be programmed by default to:

1. Start Charging from the grid at the onset of lowest priced TOU hours of the day and start discharging at the onset of highest priced TOU hours of the day, or
2. Meet the demand flexibility control requirements specified in Section 110.12(a), and shall have the capability to change the charging and discharging periods in response to signals from the local utility or a third-party aggregator.

JA12.2.3.5 Alternative Control Approved by the Executive Director

The Executive Director may approve alternative control strategies that demonstrate equal or greater benefits to one of the JA12 control strategies. To qualify for Alternative Control, the battery storage system shall be operated in a manner that increases self-utilization of the PV array output, responds to utility rates, responds to demand response signals, minimizes greenhouse gas emissions from buildings, and/or other strategies that achieve equal or greater benefits than specified in Sections JA12.2.3.1, JA12.2.3.2, JA12.2.3.3, or JA12.2.3.4. This alternative control option shall be accompanied with clear and easy to implement algorithms for incorporation into the compliance software for compliance credit calculations.

JA12.3 Interconnection and Net Energy Metering Requirements

The battery storage system and the associated components, including inverters, shall comply with all applicable requirements specified in Rule 21 and Net Energy Metering (NEM) rules as adopted by the California Public Utilities Commission (CPUC).

JA12.4 Enforcement Agency

The local enforcement agency shall verify that all Certificate of Installations are valid. The battery storage systems shall be verified as a model certified to the Energy Commission as qualified for credit as a battery storage system. In addition, the enforcement agency shall verify that the battery storage system is programmed and operational with one of the controls listed in JA12.2.3.1, JA12.2.3.2, JA12.2.3.3, ~~or~~ JA12.2.3.4., JA12.2.3.4.5. The programmed control strategy at system final inspection and commissioning shall be the strategy that was used in the Certificate of Compliance.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Joint Appendix JA13

Appendix JA13 – Qualification Requirements for Heat Pump Water Heater Demand Management Systems

JA13.1 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA13 provides the qualification requirements for a heat pump water heater (HPWH) demand management system (System) to meet the requirements for HPWH demand flexibility compliance credit available in the performance standards specified in Title 24, Part 6, Sections 150.1(b).

User interfaces referenced in these requirements shall be designed for use by a typical residential user.

JA13.2 Definitions

Heat Pump Water Heater Demand Management System

The HPWH Demand Management System means the following components connected to a water heater, but not the water heater itself, all of which are necessary to fulfill the primary function of the System:

(a) Any hardware or software contained inside the water heater;
(b) Any hardware or software installed on premise (including a module); and
(c) Any software contained in applications or in the cloud.

The primary function of the System is to interface with the HPWH to serve the users' domestic hot water needs and provide daily load shifting, as applicable, for the purpose of user bill reductions, maximized solar self-utilization, and grid harmonization.

Local and Remote Methods

A Local Method means a method that can be performed from within the building that does not require the System to have a live connection to an off-premise source. A temporary connection to a live off-premise source such as via a smart phone, may be used for local setup and updates.

A Remote Method means a method that is performed via a live connection to an off-premise source, such as the internet, advanced metering infrastructure (AMI), or cellular communication.

JA13.3 Qualification Requirements

To qualify for the HPWH Demand Management System performance compliance credit, the System shall be certified to the Energy Commission to meet the following requirements:

JA13.3.1 Safety Requirements

The System shall comply with applicable installation standards in the California electrical, mechanical, and plumbing codes.

A thermostatic mixing valve conforming to ASSE 1017 shall be installed on the hot water supply line following all manufacturer installation instructions or the water heater shall conform to UL 60730-1, ASSE 1082, or ASSE 1084.

JA13.3.2 Minimum Performance Requirements

The installed System shall meet or exceed the following performance specifications:

(a) **Efficiency**: meet all requirements of version 7.0 of the Northwest Energy Efficiency Alliance (NEEA) Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher, excluding Appendix A.

(b) **Thermal storage**: comply with the first hour rating requirements in the following table (Chapter 5, Table 501.1(2) in 2022 California Plumbing Code):

Number of bathrooms	1 to 1.5	1 to 1.5	1 to 1.5	2 to 2.5	2 to 2.5	2 to 2.5	2 to 2.5	3 to 3.5	3 to 3.5	3 to 3.5	3 to 3.5
Number of bedrooms	1	2	3	2	3	4	5	3	4	5	6
First Hour Rating (gallons)	38	49	49	49	62	62	74	62	74	74	74

JA13.3.3 Control Requirements

The requirements below are applicable to all control strategies:

(a) **Time-of-use schedules:** The System shall have the capability of storing a minimum of five time-of-use schedule(s) locally, each supporting a minimum of five distinct time periods for both weekdays and weekends, at least three separate seasonal schedules, and daylight savings time changes. The System shall support both local and remote setup, selection, and update of time-of-use schedules. Local and remote setup, selection, and update shall be possible through a user interface (such as an app).

(b) **Demand management functionality**

Upon receiving a demand management price or dispatch signal, the System shall be capable of all the following automatic event responses:

1. **Basic Load Up**: The System will store extra thermal energy without exceeding the user set point temperature. It will avoid use of electric resistance elements unless user needs cannot be met;
2. **Advanced Load Up**: The System stores extra thermal energy, where some or all of the tank may exceed the set point temperature chosen by the user, within safe operating conditions. Advanced Load Up must only be enabled after agreement by the user and utility as defined below. It will avoid use of electric resistance elements unless user needs cannot be met. Advanced Load Up will only be available in Advanced Demand Response Control mode as defined in JA13.3.3.2;
3. **Return to Standard Operation**: The System terminates any demand management function and returns to user-selected standard operation mode until the next demand management function is activated;
4. **Light Shed**: The System will defer complete recovery for the duration of the shed event unless user needs cannot be met; The water heater shall avoid use of electric resistance elements during and immediately after the event unless user needs cannot be met;
5. **Deep Shed**: same as Light Shed, but the System will completely avoid use of electric resistance elements during the event; and
6. **Full Shed**: same as Light Shed, but the System will completely avoid use of both compressor and electric resistance element during the event.

The demand management signals may be sent from a local utility, a remote aggregator, a local demand manager (e.g. local time-of-use demand manager) or be internal to the System (e.g. internal schedule- or price-based demand management).

The “Advanced Load Up” function shall only be enabled by a deliberate action of the user through the system’s physical or remote interface upon enrolling in a utility’s demand response program. The “Advanced Load Up” function shall be capable of being disabled deliberately by the user, or remotely by the utility or third-party service provider without deliberate action by the user.

For a water heater sized in accordance with JA13.3.2(b) and with the default set point as shipped from the manufacturer, the System shall be able to shift:

- A minimum of 0.5 kWh of user electrical energy per (Basic Load Up + Light Shed) event; and
- A minimum of 1 kWh of user electrical energy per (Advanced Load Up + Light Shed) event, including at least 0.5 kWh on Advanced Load Up.

(c) **Non-standard mode exception:** The demand management functionality shall be achieved in all user-selected modes except for vacation and off modes, which are deemed non-standard modes. The System shall return to the previous standard operation mode once the water heater exits from a non-standard mode.

(d) **Local time management**: In the event of a loss of power, the System settings, including operating mode, time-of-use schedules, and local clock, shall be retained, or reacquired, for at least three months. The local clock shall have a maximum drift of less than 5 minutes per year under standard operating conditions and without requiring remote connectivity.

(e) **Override and permanent disabling:** The System shall provide local and remote means for the user to override or permanently disable the demand management functions. The override shall be temporary and have a maximum duration of 72 hours. Permanent disabling shall not be available as an operating mode or as an option in the primary menu.

(f) **User interface**: The System shall provide both a remote and local user interface, such as a web-based portal or a mobile device application, that at a minimum provides the dwelling occupants access to the following information: control strategy that is currently active, remote or local demand management mode, selected time-of-use schedule if applicable, and confirmation of any settings change.

(g) **Measurement and validation**: When connected remotely, the System shall make the following data available to the local utility, remote aggregator, or local demand manager: Demand Management Override Status, Demand Management Disabled Status; power demand (watts); cumulative energy consumption (watt-hours); total energy storage capacity (watt-hours), available energy storage capacity (watt-hours).

The System shall be capable to use one of the following control strategies at the time of installation. The System also shall have the capability to switch to other control strategies if available. The “Advanced Load Up” function shall not be enabled at time of installation.

JA13.3.3.1 Time-of-Use (TOU) Control

To qualify for the TOU Control, the System shall be installed in the default operation mode to serve domestic hot water user needs while optimizing System operation to reduce user bills under the selected time-of-use schedule. The System shall load up (charge) during the lowest priced TOU hours of the day and shed (minimize charging while serving user needs) during the highest priced TOU hours.

JA13.3.3.2 Advanced Demand Response Control

To qualify for the Advanced Demand Response Control, the System shall meet the demand responsive control requirements specified in Section 110.12(a) of the 2022 Building Energy Efficiency Standards. Additionally, the System shall be capable of changing the load-up and shed periods in response to real-time or day-ahead dispatch or price signals from the local utility, a remote aggregator, or a local demand manager. If remote communication is lost for more than 12 hours while the water heater is under Advanced Demand Response Control, the water heater shall revert to TOU Control until remote communication is reestablished, and then revert back to Advanced Demand Response Control.

JA13.3.3.3 Alternative Control Strategy Approved by the Executive Director

Any party may submit a request to the Executive Director, in writing, for approval of an Alternative Control Strategy that demonstrates equal or greater benefits to one of the JA13 control strategies. To qualify as an Alternative Control Strategy, the System shall be operated in a manner that increases self-utilization of the PV array output, responds to utility rates, responds to demand response signals, and/or other strategies that achieve equal or greater benefits. The application shall include well-documented algorithms for incorporation into the compliance software for compliance credit calculations. The Executive Director may approve the proposed Alternative Control Strategy after providing an opportunity for public comment.

JA13.4 Enforcement Agency

To receive the HPWH Demand Management System compliance credit, the completed Certificate of Installation shall be a model that has been certified to the Energy Commission as qualified for the credit. This certification shall be made available for review by the local building department.

Joint Appendix JA14

Appendix JA14 – Qualification Requirements for Central Heat Pump Water Heater Systems

JA14.1 Purpose and Scope

Joint Appendix JA14 provides the qualification requirements to meet the standards for central heat pump water heater (Central HPWH) systems set forth in Title 24, Part 6, Section 170.2(d)2 and in performance standards set forth in Section 140.1 and 170.1.

JA14.2 Definitions

Basic Model means, with respect to a central HPWH, all units of a given type of product manufactured by one manufacturer; having the same primary energy source; and, which have essentially identical electrical, physical, and functional (or hydraulic) characteristics that affect energy consumption, energy efficiency, water consumption, or water efficiency.

JA14.3 Qualification Requirements

To qualify as a central HPWH for use for compliance, the central HPWH products shall be certified to the Energy Commission to meet the following requirements:

JA14.3.1 Determination of Performance Data

Manufacturers shall determine central HPWH performance data for each basic model either by testing pursuant to the requirements in (a) or by simulating pursuant to the requirements in (b) below:

(a) Testing shall be conducted in accordance with the test setup, installation, calculation procedures, and instruments described in Appendix E to Subpart G of 10 CFR Part 431 for each of the test conditions described in JA14.3.3; or

(b) Simulated performance shall be conducted using an alternative efficiency determination methods (AEDM) as described in 10 CFR part 429.70(a)-(c) to generate the performance data described in JA14.3.2. In addition, manufacturers shall only simulate the performance of other central HPWH basic models sharing the same series compressor, same type of heat exchangers, and same architecture as the tested basic model.

JA14.3.2 Performance Data Reporting

The following performance specifications shall be submitted to the Energy Commission:

a) Water heater input power;
b) Water heater output capacity; and
c) Water heater COP.

The performance data shall be provided at the following conditions:

d) Inlet ambient air temperature: Maximum, minimum, and two midpoint temperatures of the manufacturer specified operating range.
e) Inlet water temperature: Maximum, minimum, and two midpoint temperatures of the manufacturer specified operating range.
f) Outlet water temperature: Maximum, midpoint, and minimum of outlet water (setpoint) temperatures of the manufacturer specified operating range.

For conditions where defrost strategies operate, reported data shall include at least one complete defrost cycle, or alternatively, for each model submitted for approval, provide a description of the defrost strategy including method, cycle length, and process.

JA14.3.3 Basic Model Test Condition

The Central HPWH basic model shall be tested at the following conditions:

(a) Inlet ambient air temperature: If the minimum operating temperature is above 40°F, the following three test conditions are required: the DOE test Procedure condition, the minimum, and one midpoint temperatures within the manufacturer specified operating range. If the minimum operating temperature limit is below 40°F, the following four test conditions are required: the DOE test procedure condition, the minimum, and two midpoint temperatures within the manufacturer specified operating range.
(b) Two inlet water temperatures: maximum and minimum within the manufacturer specified operating range.
(c) Two outlet water temperatures: Maximum and minimum outlet water (setpoint) temperatures within the manufacturer specified operating range.

JA14.4 Design Condition Documentation Requirements

The Central HPWH system shall be capable of supplying hot water at design outlet water temperature under specified operating ranges for:

a) Minimum and maximum ambient air temperature;

b) Minimum and maximum cold-water temperature;

c) Minimum and maximum building demand at design draw and recovery conditions and duration; and

d) Recirculation loop heat loss.

Design documentation shall specify the operating conditions at which the primary heat pump water heater can supply hot water at design outlet water temperature without engaging auxiliary heating mechanism.

Appendix RA1 - Alternative Residential HERS Field Verification and Diagnostic Test Protocols

RA1.1 Alternative Protocol Approval

Field verification and diagnostic test protocols other than those described in Reference Residential Appendix RA3 are possible, and when field verification or diagnostic testing measurements can be reliably determined by methods, procedures or instrumentation other than those specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3, such alternative protocols shall be allowed if approved by the Commission. The Commission may grant such approval after reviewing submittals from the applicant. Submittals shall adhere to the application process of Title 24, Part 1 Section 10-109(j). Alternative Protocols that are approved by the Commission shall be published as an addendum to Reference Residential Appendix RA1.

RA1.1.1 Alternative Refrigerant Charge Verification Protocol Approval

The applicant for a special case refrigerant charge verification protocol shall provide information that specifies:

(a) the required instrumentation,

(b) the instrumentation accuracy,

(c) the parameters measured,

(d) the required calculations,

(e) the target values for system operating parameters for verification of optimum system operation,

(f) the allowable deviations from target values for system operating parameters, and

(g) the requirements for reporting system faults.

Manufacturers that elect to utilize an alternative protocol for compliance with refrigerant charge verification requirements in the Standards shall demonstrate in their application for approval by the Energy Commission that use of the alternative refrigerant charge verification protocol produces equipment performance at a sensible EER at AHRI Standard 210/240 standard rating conditions (80°F indoor dry-bulb, 67°F indoor wet-bulb, and 95°F outdoor dry-bulb) that deviates less than or equal to 5 percent from the sensible EER determined by laboratory testing at the AHRI Standard 210/240 standard rating conditions when the air conditioner is charged with the manufacturer's specified refrigerant charge determined by measurement of the weight of the specified refrigerant charge. The deviations from the manufacturer's target values of system operating parameters, that correspond to the maximum allowable 5 percent deviation in sensible EER shall be determined and reported to the Energy Commission by the manufacturer, and shall be utilized as the required compliance criteria for HERS Rater refrigerant charge verification. Deviations of system operating parameters from the manufacturer's target values for less than 5 percent deviation in sensible EER (tighter tolerances) may be specified by the manufacturer for use by the installing contractor.

Manufacturers using an alternative refrigerant charge verification protocols shall, upon request, provide comprehensive engineering specification documentation, installation and technical field service documentation, and user instructions documentation to installers and service personnel that utilize the procedure.

RA1.2 *Winter Setup for the Standard Charge Verification Procedure*

RA1.2.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this procedure is to verify that residential split system air conditioners and heat pumps have the required refrigerant charge and that the metering device is working as designed. The procedures only apply to ducted split system central air-cooled air conditioners and ducted split system central air-source heat pumps for which the system manufacturer has specified that this procedure may be used to verify refrigerant charge.

The Standard Charge Verification Procedure (Section RA3.2.2 of the Reference Residential Appendices) calls for the outdoor temperature to be within the manufacturer's specified range. When outdoor temperatures are below 55°F, the setup for the Standard Charge Verification Procedure must be modified in order to achieve the proper system pressure differential needed for the procedure. The Winter Setup for the Standard Charge Verification Procedure (Winter Charge Setup) allows both installers and HERS Raters to utilize the Standard Charge Verification Procedure of RA3.2.2 in the winter. Note that the Weigh-in Charging Procedure specified in Section RA3.2.3 may also be used only by the installer.

The Winter Charge Setup creates the right conditions at the unit being tested for outdoor temperatures above 37°F and below 71°F that allow the system to operate in the same range of pressure differences between the low side pressure and the high side pressure as occurs during warm outdoor temperatures.

The Winter Charge Setup is used only for units equipped with variable metering devices, which include Thermostatic Expansion Valves (TXV) and Electronic Expansion Valves (EXV) for which the manufacturer specifies subcooling as the means for determining the proper charge for the unit, including units equipped with micro-channel heat exchangers. The Winter Charge Setup achieves an appropriate high side - low side pressure differential to conduct the Standard Charge Verification Procedure, by restricting the airflow at the condenser fan outlet through the use of a Condenser Outlet Air Restrictor. Once this pressure differential is achieved, the Variable Metering Device Calculations are conducted in the same way as the variable metering device procedures described in Reference Residential Appendix RA 3.2.2.6.2. All other applicable requirements of Section RA3.2.2 remain the same and must also be completed when using the Winter Charge Setup.

Definition - Condenser Outlet Air Restrictor: A device which restricts the free area of the outlet from the condenser fan to reduce the air flow, but does not interfere with air entering the condenser coil. The amount of restriction shall be adjustable to allow the operator to vary the airflow to achieve the target refrigerant pressure difference.

[redacted]

RA1.2.2 Winter Setup for the Standard Charge Verification Procedure

a) Install the condenser outlet air restrictor on the outlet from the condenser fan:

Position the restrictor so it does not interfere with the inlet airflow to the condenser.

Start the air conditioner or heat pump in the cooling mode and restrict the outlet until the difference between the high side pressure and the low side pressure is between 160 psi and 220 psi for R-410A refrigerant and 100 to 145 psi for R-22 refrigerant.

160 psi ≤ (P_{high}, – P_{low}) ≤ 220 psi for R-410A refrigerant;
100 psi ≤ (P_{high}, – P_{low}) ≤ 145 psi for R-22 refrigerant

Allow the unit to stabilize for 15 minutes, watching the pressures to make sure the differential achieves and remains within 160 psi ≤ (P_{high}, – P_{low}) ≤ 220 psi for R-410A refrigerant

100 psi ≤ (P_{high}, – P_{low}) ≤ 145 psi for R-22 refrigerant

b) Follow the test procedures specified in the Reference Residential Appendix, Section RA3.2.2.6.2, Variable Metering Device Calculations to determine compliance.

RA1.2.3 Additional Requirements and Qualifications

The Winter Charge Setup may only be used for equipment for which the air conditioning manufacturer approves the use of the Winter Charge Setup. Refer to the Energy Commissions website for the list of split system air conditioner units approved by the manufacturers to use the Winter Charge Setup. In addition to the requirements of Section RA1.2, manufacturers may issue additional instructions/clarification for the equipment and procedures required to be used to conduct the Winter Charge Setup. These additional instruction/clarifications shall also be available on the Energy Commission website: www.energy.ca.gov/title24/.

Winter Charge Setup may be used for systems that use a target subcooling for refrigerant charge verification, including units equipped with micro-channel heat exchangers where the manufacturer specifies subcooling for measuring refrigerant charge.

Similar to the Standard Charge Verification Procedure for warm weather, the Winter Charge Setup may be used by the Installer and/or the HERS Rater.

The system shall comply with the minimum system airflow requirements specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.3.3.1.

Similar to the Standard Charge Verification Procedure for warm weather, the Winter Charge Setup requires that the return air dry bulb temperature must be maintained within the manufacturer's specification during the test, as specified in RA3.2.2. Suggestions for methods to accomplish warmer return air are posted on the Energy Commission website at the following link:

http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24/orc/hvac/Similar to the Standard Charge Measurement Procedure for warm weather, the Winter Charge Setup procedure does not relieve the installing

[redacted]

contractor from any obligations to follow manufacturers' specifications. The procedures in Section RA1.2 are used to demonstrate compliance with Title 24, Part 6 requirements for refrigerant charge verification.

[redacted]

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Residential Appendix RA2

Appendix RA2 – Residential HERS Verification, Testing, and Documentation Procedures

RA2.1 California Home Energy Rating Systems

Compliance for certain energy efficiency measures, as specified by the Commission, requires field verification and diagnostic testing of dwelling units by a certified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) Rater. The Commission approves HERS Providers, subject to the Commission's HERS regulations, which appear in the California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Sections 1670-1675. Approved HERS Providers are authorized to certify HERS Raters and are required to maintain quality control over HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing activities.

When the Certificate of Compliance documentation for a dwelling unit indicates that field verification and diagnostic testing of specific energy efficiency measures are required as a condition for complying with Title 24, Part 6, an approved HERS Provider and certified HERS Rater shall be used to conduct the field verification and diagnostic testing according to the applicable procedures in Appendix RA2. HERS Raters shall be considered special inspectors by enforcement agencies and shall demonstrate competence, to the satisfaction of the building official, for the visual inspections and diagnostic testing that they perform. As specified by California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1673(j)(2), "Providers and Raters shall be independent entities from the builder and from the subcontractor installer of energy efficiency improvements field verified or diagnostically tested." An "Independent Entity means having no financial interest in, and not advocating or recommending the use of any product or service as a means of gaining increased business with, firms or persons specified in California Code of Regulations Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Sections 1671 and 1673(j)." Third Party Quality Control Programs approved by the Commission may serve some of the functions of HERS Raters for field verification purposes as specified in Section RA2.7.

The remainder of this Appendix RA2 describes the:

(a) Measures that require field verification or diagnostic testing;

(b) Requirements for documentation and communication for HERS verification compliance processes;

(c) Responsibilities assigned to each of the parties involved in the field verification and diagnostic testing process;

(d) Requirements for procedures for installing contractors and Certificate of Installation documentation;

(e) Requirements for HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing and documentation procedures;

(f) Requirements for sampling procedures for HERS verification compliance;

(g) Requirements for Third Party Quality Control Programs;

(h) Requirements for HERS verification compliance for alterations to existing dwellings.

RA2.2 Measures that Require Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

Table RA2-1 describes the measures that require installer certification and HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing, and identifies the protocol or test procedure in the Reference Residential Appendices that shall be used for completing installer and HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing.

Table RA2-1 – Summary of Measures Requiring Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

Measure Title	Description	Procedure(s)
	Duct Measures	
Duct Sealing	Component Packages require that space conditioning ducts be sealed. If sealed and tested ducts are claimed for compliance, field verification and diagnostic testing is required to verify that approved duct system materials are utilized, and that duct leakage meets the specified criteria.	RA3.1.4.3
Duct Location, Surface Area and R-value	Compliance credit can be taken for improved duct location, surface area and R-value. Field verification is required to verify that the duct system was installed according to the design, including location, size and length of ducts, duct insulation R-value and installation of buried ducts.[1] For buried ducts measures, Duct Sealing and High Quality Insulation Installation (QII) is required.	RA3.1.4.1
Verification of low leakage ducts located entirely in conditioned space	Duct system location shall be verified by visual inspection and diagnostic testing. Compliance credit can be taken for verified duct systems with low air leakage to the outside when measured in accordance with Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.8. Field Verification for ducts in conditioned space is required. Duct sealing is required.	RA3.1.4.3.8
Low Leakage Air-handling Units	Compliance credit can be taken for installation of a factory sealed air handling unit tested by the manufacturer and certified to the Commission to have met the requirements for a Low Leakage Air-Handling Unit. Field verification of the air handler's model number is required. Duct Sealing is required.	RA3.1.4.3.9
Verification of Return Duct Design	Verification to confirm that the return duct design conform to the applicable criteria given in TABLE 150.0-B,~~ or~~ TABLE 150.0-C, TABLE 160.3-A, or TABLE 160.3-B.	RA3.1.4.4
Verification of Air Filter Device Design	Verification to confirm that the air filter devices conform to the requirements given in applicable Standards Sections 150.0(m)12 or 160.2(b)1.	RA3.1.4.5
Verification of Prescriptive Bypass Duct-Requirements	Verification to confirm zonally controlled systems comply with the bypass duct requirements in Section 150.1(c)13 or 170.2(c)3C.	RA3.1.4.6
	Air Conditioning Measures	
Improved Refrigerant Charge	Component Packages require in some climate zones that air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps be diagnostically tested in the field to verify that the system has the correct refrigerant charge. For the performance method, the Proposed Design is modeled with less efficiency if diagnostic testing and field verification is not performed. The system must also meet the prerequisite minimum System Airflow requirement.	RA3.3 RA3.2 RA1.2
Installation of Fault Indicator Display	Component Packages specify that a Fault Indicator Display can be installed as an alternative to refrigerant charge testing. The existence of a Fault Indicator Display has the same calculated benefit as refrigerant charge testing. Field verification is required.	RA3.4.2
Verified System Airflow	When compliance requires verified system airflow greater than or equal to a specified criterion, field verification and diagnostic testing is required.	RA3.3
Air-handling Unit Fan Efficacy	When compliance requires verified fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) less than or equal to a specified criterion, field verification and diagnostic testing is required.	RA3.3
Verified Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER/EER2)	Compliance credit can be taken for increased EER/EER2 by installation of specific air conditioner or heat pump models. Field verification is required.[2]	RA3.4.3 RA3.4.4.1
Verified Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio (SEER/SEER2)	HERS Rater field verification of the SEER/SEER2 rating is required for some systems.	RA3.4.3 RA3.4.4.1
Rated Heat Pump Capacity Verification	When performance compliance uses a heat pump, the rated capacity of the installed system shall be verified to be greater than or equal to the specified value.	RA3.4.4.2
Evaporatively Cooled Condensers	Compliance credit can be taken for installation of evaporatively cooled condensers. Field verification of duct leakage is required. Field verification of refrigerant charge is required. Field verification of EER/EER2 is required.	RA3.1.4.3, RA3.2 RA3.4.3. RA3.4.4.1
Variable Capacity Heat Pump (VCHP) Compliance Option	When performance compliance uses the VCHP compliance option, the system shall be field verified to confirm it meets the eligibility requirements.	RA3.4.4.3

	Ventilation Cooling Measures	
Whole House Fan	When performance compliance uses a whole house fan, the installed whole house fan airflow rate (cfm) and fan efficacy (W/cfm) shall be verified to be equal to or better than the specified values.	RA3.9
Central Fan Ventilation Cooling System	When performance compliance uses a central fan ventilation cooling system (CFVCS), the installed CFVCS ventilation airflow rate (cfm) and fan efficacy (W/cfm) shall be verified to be equal to or better than the specified values.	RA3.3.4
	Mechanical Ventilation Measures for Improved Indoor Air Quality	
Continuous Whole-Building Mechanical Ventilation Airflow	Measurement of whole-building mechanical ventilation is mandatory for newly constructed buildings.	RA3.7.4.1
Intermittent Whole-Building Mechanical Ventilation Airflow	Measurement of whole-building mechanical ventilation is mandatory for newly constructed buildings.	RA3.7.4.2
Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust Verification	Verification of kitchen local mechanical exhaust is mandatory for newly constructed buildings.	RA3.7.4.3
Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) or Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) Rated Performance Verification	When performance compliance requires verification of the HRV/ERV fan efficacy (W/cfm) or heat recovery efficiency, then the installed ventilation system shall be verified.	RA3.7.4.4
	Building Envelope Measures	
Building Envelope Air Leakage	Compliance credit can be taken for reduced building envelope air leakage. Field verification and diagnostic testing is required. Multifamily dwelling units are required to have enclosure leakage verified when supply or exhaust ventilation systems are installed.	RA3.8
Quality Insulation Installation (QII)	Compliance Software recognizes standard and improved envelope construction. Quality Insulation Installation is a prescriptive measure in all climate zones for newly constructed buildings and additions greater than 700 square feet, except low-rise multifamily buildings in Climate Zone 7. Field verification is required.	RA3.5
Quality Insulation Installation for Spray Polyurethane Foam (SPF) Insulation	A HERS Rater shall verify the installation of SPF insulation whenever R-values other than the default R-value per inch are used for compliance.	RA3.5.6
	Single Family Domestic Hot Water Measures	
Verified Pipe Insulation Credit (PIC-H)	Inspection to verify that all hot water piping in non-recirculating systems is insulated and that corners and tees are fully insulated. No piping should be visible due to insulation voids with the exception of the last segment of piping that penetrate walls and delivers hot water to the sink, appliance, etc.	RA3.6.3.
Verified Parallel Piping (PP-H)	Inspection that requires that the measured length of piping between the water heater and single central manifold does not exceed five feet	RA3.6.4
Verified Compact Hot Water Distribution System Expanded Credit (CHWDS-H-EX)	Field verification to insure that the eligibility criteria specified in RA 3.6.5 are met.	RA3.6.5
Demand Recirculation: Manual Control (RDRmc-H)	Inspection to verify that all recirculating hot water piping is insulated and that corners and tees are fully insulated. No piping should be visible due to insulation voids	RA3.6.6
Demand Recirculation: Sensor Control(RDRsc-H)	Inspection to verify that all recirculating hot water piping is insulated and that corners and tees are fully insulated. No piping should be visible due to insulation voids.	RA3.6.7
Verified Drain Water Heat Recovery System (DWHR-H)	Inspection to verify that the DWHR unit(s) and installation configuration match the compliance document and the DWHR(s) is certified to the Commission to have met the requirements.	RA3.6,9

	Multi Family Domestic Hot Water Heating Measures	
Multiple Recirculation Loop Design for DHW Systems Serving Multiple Dwelling Units	Inspection that a central DHW system serving a building with more than eight dwelling units has at least two recirculation loops, each serving roughly the same number of dwelling units. These recirculation loops may the same water heating equipment or be connected to independent water heating equipment.	RA3.6.8
Verified Drain Water Heat Recovery System (DWHR-H)	Inspection to verify that the DWHR unit(s) and installation configuration match the compliance document and the DWHR(s) is certified to the Commission to have met the requirements.	RA3.6.9

1. Note: Compliance credit for increased duct insulation R-value (not buried ducts) may be taken without field verification if the R-value is the same throughout the building, and for ducts located in crawlspaces and garages where all registers are either in the floor or within 2 feet of the floor. These two credits may be taken subject only to enforcement agency inspection.

2. Note: The requirement for verification of a high EER/EER2 does not apply to equipment rated only with an EER/EER2.

RA2.3 Documentation and Communication Requirements for HERS Verification Compliance

The building energy compliance features, HERS field verification requirements, and applicable special feature eligibility criteria shall be identified on a Certificate of Compliance that conforms to the requirements in Standards Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2. The builder or subcontractor shall submit all applicable Certificate of Installation documentation in conformance with the requirements in Standards Section 10-103(a)3 and the procedures described in RA2, and shall provide certification that the construction/installation complies with all applicable requirements on the Certificate of Compliance and complies with all applicable field verification and eligibility criteria. Field verification shall be performed by a HERS Rater and documented on applicable Certificate of Verification documentation that conforms to the requirements of Standards Section 10-103(a)5 and the procedures in RA2.

RA2.3.1 Documentation Constraints, Registration, and Verification

The performance compliance method allows for preparation of Certificate of Compliance documentation for multifamily buildings that precludes use of certain HERS verification compliance credits that would otherwise be available for compliance credit as described in Section RA2.3.1.1 below. Document registration is required for all dwelling units that utilize building energy features for which HERS verification is required as introduced in Section RA2.3.1.2 and described in the procedures in subsequent sections of RA2. Verification of electronic documentation is introduced in section RA2.3.1.3 and is applicable to many aspects of the documentation procedures described in subsequent sections of RA2.

RA2.3.1.1 Whole-Building Compliance Approach for Multifamily Buildings

For multifamily buildings, a single Certificate of Compliance may be prepared for the whole building, however *dwelling unit-specific* Certificates of Installation and *dwelling unit-specific* Certificates of Verification shall be required for each individual dwelling unit in the building. Thus, for the whole-building compliance approach in a multifamily building utilizing features that require HERS verification, the required energy compliance documentation for each dwelling unit shall consist of a copy of the whole-building Certificate of Compliance, the applicable *dwelling unit-specific* Certificates of Installation, and the applicable *dwelling unit-specific* Certificates of Verification.

When the whole-building compliance approach is utilized for a multifamily building, some energy efficiency measures that require HERS field verification shall not be used for compliance credit in performance compliance calculations. These measures require *dwelling unit-specific* information input to the compliance software, and *dwelling unit-specific* information that must be shown on the Certificate of Compliance, thus these measures cannot be properly documented using a whole-building Certificate of Compliance (which is not a *dwelling unit-specific* document type). The HERS measures that shall not be utilized for the multifamily whole-building compliance approach are:

(a) Buried Ducts credit

(b) Deeply Buried Ducts credit

(c) Reduced Duct Surface Area credit

(d) Building Envelope Sealing credit for reduced outdoor air infiltration (blower door test)

All other measures that require HERS field verification and diagnostic testing are allowed for use with the multifamily whole-building compliance approach.

RA2.3.1.2 Document Registration

For all low-rise residential buildings for which compliance requires HERS field verification, all Registered Compliance Document and Compliance Registration Package ~~compliance documentation~~ (Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, and Certificate of Verification) required for the dwelling unit shall be submitted for registration and retention to a HERS Provider data registry. When submittal of documentation to a HERS Provider data registry is required, the completed documents are referred to as registered documents, and the process of completing these documents by submitting information (Compliance Registration Package) and certification signatures to the HERS Provider data registry is called registration. Refer to Reference Joint Appendix JA1 for the definitions for HERS Provider data registry, and for registered document. Additional specification for the document registration process is given in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

RA2.3.1.3 Verification of Registered Documents

Printed paper copies or electronic copies of the completed, signed, registered Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, and Certificate of Verification documentation shall be allowed for use for required submittals to enforcement agencies, subject to verification that the information shown on the submitted document(s) conforms to the information shown on the current revision of the registered document(s) on file in the HERS Provider data registry for the applicable dwelling unit.

The HERS Provider shall make document verification services available via phone, internet, or utilization of digital technologies, to enable enforcement agency officials, builders, installation contractors, HERS Raters, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry to verify that the information shown on submitted documentation is consistent with the information shown on the current revision of the registered document on file in the HERS Provider data registry for the applicable dwelling unit.

RA2.3.2 Summary of Documentation and Communication Procedures

The documentation and communication process for measures that require field verification and diagnostic testing is summarized below. The subsequent sections of this chapter contain additional information and requirements that apply to all situations; however the section on alterations, RA2.8, applies specifically to the differences in the requirements for alterations. Section RA2.7 applies specifically to the differences in the requirements for Third Party Quality Control Programs.

(a) A Certificate of Compliance shall be prepared for each dwelling unit or building that requires a building permit. The Certificate of Compliance information shall be submitted to the HERS Provider data registry, validated, and signed by the documentation author and the building's designer or owner to register the documentation prior to submittal of the Certificate of Compliance to the enforcement agency for approval. The documentation author and the building designer or owner shall submit certification to the HERS Provider data registry electronically.

(b) The builder shall arrange for the services of a certified HERS Rater prior to installation of the measures, so that once the installation is complete the HERS Rater has ample time to complete the field verification and diagnostic testing without delaying final approval of the dwelling unit by the enforcement agency. The Builder shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the Certificate of Compliance that was approved/signed by the building designer or owner and submitted to the enforcement agency. The builder or subcontractor shall install the measure(s) that require field verification and diagnostic testing. When the installation is complete, the builder or subcontractor shall perform diagnostic testing on the installation using the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA2.5, RA3, and RA1. If testing confirms compliance, the builder or subcontractor shall submit the required information and signatures electronically to the HERS Provider data registry to register the applicable Certificate(s) of Installation, then post a copy of the applicable registered Certificate(s) of Installation at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit.

(c) The HERS Rater shall confirm that registration of the Certificate(s) of Compliance and the applicable Certificate(s) of Installation has been completed for each dwelling unit that requires HERS verification. The HERS Rater shall complete the applicable field verification and diagnostic testing as specified in Section RA2.6. The HERS Rater shall submit the required field verification and diagnostic testing information and signatures electronically to the HERS Provider data registry to register the applicable Certificate of Verification documentation.

(d) The HERS Provider shall make available registered copies of the Certificate(s) of Verification to the HERS Rater, builder, enforcement agency and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry. If a building owner is identifiable, the HERS Provider shall make available registered copies of the Certificate(s) of Verification to that person.

(e) The enforcement agency shall not approve a dwelling unit until the enforcement agency has received the required registered Certificate(s) of Verification, posted at the building site for review in conjunction with requests for final inspection for the dwelling. The HERS Provider shall make document verification services available, to enforcement agencies, builders and contractors, HERS Raters, the Energy Commission, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry. The HERS Provider shall ensure that the content and approval signatures for copies of submitted Certificate(s) of Compliance, Certificate(s) of Installation, and Certificate(s) Verification are retained as specified by Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1673(e).

RA2.4 Summary of Responsibilities

Section RA2.4 summarizes responsibilities set forth in Appendix RA2 and organizes them by the responsible party. This section is not, however, a complete accounting of the responsibilities of the respective parties.

RA2.4.1 Builder

The builder shall make arrangements for submittal of the Certificate of Compliance information and certification signatures to the HERS Provider data registry for dwelling units with features that require HERS verification. The builder shall make arrangements for the services of a certified HERS Rater prior to installation of the features, so that once the installation is complete the HERS Rater has ample time to complete the field verification and diagnostic testing without delaying final approval of the building permit by the enforcement agency. The Builder shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the Certificate of Compliance that was approved/signed by the building designer or owner and submitted to the enforcement agency.

The builder or subcontractor responsible for the installation shall complete and sign all applicable Certificates of Installation to certify that the installation work meets the requirements for compliance credit shown on the Certificate of Compliance and that all applicable field verification and diagnostic test results reported on Certificates of Installation are accurate. The builder or subcontractor shall post a copy of all applicable Certificates of Installation at the construction site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. The builder or subcontractor shall also make available to the HERS Rater copies of all applicable Certificates of Installation.

If the builder utilizes group sampling for HERS verification compliance, the builder, builder’s authorized representative, or the HERS Rater shall identify the dwelling units to be included in the sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing. The HERS Rater, with no direction from the installer or builder, shall randomly select one dwelling unit from a sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing upon receiving the builder’s or builder representative’s request for HERS verification of that group.

The builder shall arrange for copies of all applicable registered Certificates of Verification to be posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

When re-sampling reveals a failure (see Section RA2.6.4), the builder is required to offer at no charge to all building owners for occupied dwelling units in the group to complete field verification, diagnostic testing and corrective action if necessary. Building owners may decline to have field verification and diagnostic testing and corrective action completed for the dwelling unit. The builder shall report the identifying location of any dwelling unit in which the building owner declines field verification and diagnostic testing and corrective action to the HERS Provider. The builder shall take corrective action as required in all unoccupied dwelling units in the group and in occupied dwelling units in the group where building owners have accepted field verification, diagnostic testing and corrective action.

The builder shall leave in the building, for the building owner at occupancy, copies of all compliance, operating, maintenance, and ventilation information specified in applicable sections of Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103(b).

RA2.4.2 HERS Provider and Rater

The HERS Provider shall maintain a data registry with the capability to receive and store electronic data and image information provided by authorized users of the data registry sufficient to facilitate administration of all applicable document registration procedures and HERS compliance verification procedures as described in Reference Residential Appendix RA2 and Reference Joint Appendix JA7. Data registry capabilities include a secure web-based interface accessible by authorized users, and the ability to receive and process data transfer files generated by the Title 24 performance compliance software tools or other approved data input software. For sampling purposes, the HERS Provider shall maintain a list of the dwelling units in a group, the features that require Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing, the dwelling units selected for sample testing for each feature and the dwelling units that were not tested, the results of the sample testing, the dwelling units that were tested and verified as a result of re-sampling, and any corrective action taken.

For all dwelling units that require HERS verification for compliance, the HERS Provider shall retain records of all information and approval signatures for completed Certificates of Compliance, Certificates of Installation, and Certificates of Verification for a period of ten years as specified by Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1673(e).

The HERS Rater who provides field verification and diagnostic testing shall transmit the required test results and certification signatures to the HERS Provider data registry. Registered Certificates of Verification from the Provider shall be made available for the tested dwelling unit and each of the remaining untested dwelling units from a designated group for which compliance is verified based on the results of a sample test. The registered Certificates of Verification shall be made available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and to other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry.

The HERS Rater shall produce a separate Certificate of Verification for each dwelling unit that meets the requirements for compliance. The registered Certificate of Verification shall have unique HERS Provider-designated identifiers for registration number and sample group number, and shall include lot location or address, building permit number, time and date stamp, Provider logo, water mark or official seal, and indicate if the dwelling unit has been tested or if it was an untested dwelling unit approved as part of sample group. The HERS Rater shall not submit a Certificate of Verification for a dwelling unit that does not have a completed Certificate of Installation submitted by the installer as required in Section RA2.5.

If field verification and diagnostic testing on a sampled dwelling unit identifies a failure to meet the requirements for compliance credit, the HERS Rater shall report to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency that re-sampling will be required.

If re-sampling identifies another failure, the HERS Rater shall report to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency that field verification and diagnostic testing will be required for all the untested dwelling units in the group. The report shall specify the identifying location of all dwelling units that shall be fully tested.

(a) The HERS Provider shall also report to the builder once diagnostic testing and field verification has shown that the failures have been corrected in all of the dwelling units except those for which the building owner has declined field verification, diagnostic testing, and corrective action. When field verification and diagnostic testing confirm that the requirements for compliance have been met, the HERS Provider shall make available the applicable registered Certificate(s) of Verification for each dwelling unit in the group.

The HERS Provider shall file a report with the enforcement agency if there has been a failure on a re-sample within a group, explaining all actions taken (including field verification, testing, corrective actions, offers to building owners for testing and corrective action, and building owner declines of such offers) to bring into compliance dwelling units for which full testing has been required.

RA2.4.3 Third Party Quality Control Program

Third Party Quality Control Programs (TPQCP) verify the work of participating installers, collect and evaluate more detailed data than necessary for compliance, identify in real time during the installation invalid and inaccurate installer testing and noncompliant installations, and enable corrected testing with the goal of bringing installations into compliance before the installer leaves the job site. TPQCP personnel and participating TPQCPs do not sign Certificate of Verification documentation, given that they provide assistance and quality control to HERS Raters, who remain responsible for this documentation.

An approved Third Party Quality Control Program shall:

(a) Provide training to participating program installers, installing but not limited to contractors, subcontractors, and technicians, to ensure proficiency in:

  i. Quality HVAC installation procedures, common causes of failure, and corrections.

  ii. Understanding of the Standards requirements for field verification and diagnostic testing of measures, which are subject to TPQCP program procedures

  iii. Understanding all applicable specifications for field verification and diagnostic testing procedures specified in the Reference Residential Appendices.

  iv. Any applicable specialized TPQCP-specific procedures.

(b) Collect field verification and diagnostic test data (data) from participating installers for each installation completed,

(c) Confirm the location of the system undergoing testing using an electronic tracking means such as Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) technology,

(d) Provide data checking analysis to evaluate the validity and accuracy of the collected data to independently determine whether compliance has been achieved, and to uncover invalid or erroneous information,

(e) Provide real-time direction to the installer to retest and correct problems when data checking determines that compliance has not been achieved, or erroneous information is present, so that testing can be redone and corrections can be made before the installer leaves the site,

(f) Ensure the installer resubmits updated data from new testing when retesting and correction is completed,

(g) Maintain a database of all data submitted by participating TPQCP installers, and

(h) Enable Energy Commission staff to query retained TPQCP data or documents.

TPQCPs do not impose restrictions on HERS Raters or Providers that limit their independence or ability to properly perform their functions, nor do they impose restrictions on the HERS Rater's use of equipment (beyond those required by the Energy Commission).

Refer to RA2.7 for additional detail describing the roles and responsibilities and approval procedures for TPQCP.

RA2.4.4 Enforcement Agency

The enforcement agency at its discretion may require independent testing and field verification to be scheduled so that it can be completed in conjunction with the enforcement agency's required inspections, or observe the field verification and diagnostic testing performed by builders, subcontractors or the certified HERS Rater in conjunction with the enforcement agency's required inspections to corroborate the results documented on the Certificate(s) of Installation and on the Certificate(s) of Verification.

For dwelling units that have used a compliance alternative that requires field verification and diagnostic testing, the enforcement agency shall not approve a dwelling unit until the enforcement agency has received, in accordance with Title 24, Part 1 Section 10-103(a), Section 10-103(d) and the procedures in Appendix RA2, a registered copy of the Certificate of Compliance that has been completed and signed by the person responsible for the design; all applicable registered Certificates of Installation that have been completed and signed by the builder or subcontractor, and all applicable registered Certificates of Verification that have been completed and signed by the HERS Rater in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit. The HERS Provider shall make document verification services available to enforcement agencies, builders and contractors, HERS Raters, the Energy Commission, and other authorized users of the Provider data registry.

If necessary to avoid delay of approval of dwelling units completed when outside temperatures are below 55°F, the enforcement agency may approve compliance with the refrigerant charge verification requirements when installers have used the Weigh-in Charging Method described in Reference Residential Appendix RA3, Section RA3.2.3.1 and have not used the Section RA3.2.3.2 option for HERS verification compliance. This approval will be on the condition that installers submit to the enforcement agency a registered Certificate of Installation that includes a signed declaration indicating agreement to return to correct refrigerant charge if a HERS Rater determines at a later time when the outside temperature is 55°F or above, that correction is necessary. Installers must also notify homeowners that their systems have not had their charge verified. The HERS Provider shall track these projects to ensure a HERS Rater conducts the required refrigerant charge verification for all such systems. When the outdoor temperature is 55°F or above, the HERS Rater shall use the RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure, or a procedure approved by the HVAC system manufacturer and Energy Commission for the refrigerant charge verification. The HERS Rater shall report the diagnostic results on the applicable Certificate of Verification, and shall register the certificate with the HERS Provider. When refrigerant charge verification testing performed by the HERS Rater indicates adjustment to the charge is required, the HERS Provider shall notify the installer, and the builder or building owner that corrective action is required. The HERS Provider may also notify the enforcement agency that corrective action is required. All air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps that utilize the Weigh-In Method shall be verified by a HERS Rater using one of the applicable refrigerant charge verification procedures. Compliance with HERS verification requirements cannot utilize group sampling procedures when the installer utilized the Weigh-In Method.

RA2.5 *Installer Requirements - Certificate of Installation Documentation*

Certificates of Installation are required when dwelling units utilize features, materials, components, or manufactured devices that are required for compliance with the Appliance Efficiency Regulations and Title 24, Part 6. Certificates of Installation shall indicate the installed features, materials, components, or manufactured devices are in conformance with the specifications listed on the Certificate of Compliance for the dwelling. The builder or the installing subcontractor eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for construction or installation, in the applicable classification for the scope of work, shall sign and submit Certificate of Installation documentation and post a copy of the Certificate(s) at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

When the dwelling unit does not require HERS field verification for compliance, the Certificates of Installation that are posted in the field for review by the enforcement agency at final inspection are not required to be registered certificates from a HERS Provider data registry, but shall conform to all other applicable requirements of 10-103(a)3. The remainder of Section RA2.5 describes the documentation procedures for Certificates of Installation for dwelling units that require HERS verification.

RA2.5.1 Field Verification, Diagnostic Testing, and Certificate of Installation Registration

For the features, materials, components, or manufactured devices that are listed on the Certificate of Compliance indicating HERS verification is required for compliance, the builder shall arrange for the services of a certified HERS Rater prior to installation of the measures so that once the installation is complete the HERS Rater will have ample time to complete the required field verification and diagnostic testing without delaying final approval of the dwelling unit by the enforcement agency.

For all low-rise residential buildings for which compliance requires HERS field verification and diagnostic testing, the Certificate(s) of Installation shall be signed and submitted to a HERS Provider data registry as specified in Standards Section 10-103(a)3 to certify conformance with Part 6. When Standards Section 10-103(a)3 requires document registration, all Certificates of Installation that are applicable to the dwelling unit shall be registered.

When the installation of a measure is complete, the builder or the builder’s subcontractor shall perform all required field verification and diagnostic testing of the installation(s) to confirm compliance with the Standards utilizing the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3 or RA1, and submit, or make arrangements for submittal of all required Certificate of Installation information to a HERS Provider data registry. Submittal of Certificate of Installation information to the HERS Provider data registry shall be done electronically.

HERS Raters or other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry may provide *documentation author* support to facilitate the submittal of the Certificate of Installation information to the HERS Provider data registry on behalf of the builder or the builder’s subcontractor when such facilitation has been authorized by the builder or subcontractor. *Documentation authors* shall provide an electronic signature to certify the documentation is accurate and complete. The builder or subcontractor who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to take responsibility for the construction or installation, or their authorized representative as specified in Standards Section 10-103(a)3A, shall provide an electronic signature to register the Certificate of Installation, to certify the information provided on the Certificate is true and correct, and confirm that the construction or installation complies with the requirements shown on the dwelling unit's Certificate of Compliance that was approved by the enforcement agency. The builder or subcontractor shall make available a copy of the registered Certificate of Installation to the HERS Rater, and post a copy of the registered Certificate of Installation at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

RA2.6 HERS Procedures – Verification, Testing, and Sampling

At the builder’s option, HERS field verification and diagnostic testing (HERS verification) shall be completed either for each and every dwelling unit, or alternatively for a dwelling unit sample from a designated group of dwelling units in which the same measure(s) requiring HERS verification is installed in each dwelling unit in the group. If the builder elects to demonstrate compliance utilizing group sampling, all applicable procedures described in Sections RA2.6.2, RA2.6.3, and RA2.6.4 shall be followed.

RA2.6.1 HERS Procedures - General Requirements

The general requirements in RA2.6.1 are applicable to all dwelling units that require HERS verification for compliance, and shall be incorporated into procedures specified in Sections RA2.6.2, RA2.6.3, and RA2.6.4 whenever applicable.

The builder or the builder's authorized representative shall make available to the HERS Rater the names and license numbers of the subcontractors responsible for the installations in the dwelling units that require HERS verification; and a copy of the registered Certificate of Compliance that was signed and submitted by the person responsible for the building design and was approved by the enforcement agency.

The builder, builder's authorized representative, or subcontractor shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the applicable registered Certificate(s) of Installation signed and submitted by the builder or subcontractors responsible for the construction or installation as described in Section RA2.5.

Prior to performing field verification and diagnostic testing, the HERS Rater shall verify that registration of all applicable Certificate of Compliance documentation, and registration of all applicable Certificate of Installation documentation has been completed for all dwelling units for which compliance requires HERS verification. The HERS Rater shall confirm the installer's diagnostic test results and all other Certificate of Installation information indicates compliance consistent with the requirements given in the plans and specifications and registered Certificate of Compliance documents approved by the enforcement agency for the dwelling.

The HERS Rater shall perform all applicable field verification and diagnostic testing.

If the HERS Rater's field verification and diagnostic testing determines that the requirements for compliance are met, the HERS Rater shall submit, or make arrangements for submittal of the Certificate of Verification testing information to the HERS Provider data registry.

Authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry that are not certified HERS Raters may provide *documentation author* support to facilitate submittal of the Certificate of Verification information to the HERS Provider data registry on behalf of the HERS Rater when such facilitation has been authorized by the HERS Rater. *Documentation authors* shall provide an electronic signature to certify the documentation is accurate and complete.

The Certificate of Verification shall be signed by the HERS Rater who performed the field verification and diagnostic testing services to certify that the information provided on the Certificate is true and correct.

A completed signed registered copy of the Certificate of Verification shall be posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each dwelling unit. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

The HERS Provider shall make document verification services available, to enforcement agencies, builders and contractors, HERS Raters, the Energy Commission, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry.

RA2.6.2 HERS Procedures - Initial Model Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

The HERS Rater shall diagnostically test and field verify the first dwelling unit of each model within a subdivision or multifamily housing development when the builder elects to demonstrate HERS verification compliance utilizing group sampling. To be considered the same model, dwelling units shall have the same basic floor plan layout, energy design, and compliance features as shown on the Certificate of Compliance. Variations in the basic floor plan layout, energy design, compliance features, zone floor area, or zone volume, that do not change the HERS features to be tested, the heating or cooling capacity of the HVAC unit(s), or the number of HVAC units specified for the dwelling units, shall not cause dwelling units to be considered a different model. For multifamily buildings, variations in exterior surface areas caused by location of dwelling units within the building shall not cause dwelling units to be considered a different model. This initial model testing allows the builder to identify and correct any potential construction flaws or practices in advance of the build out of each model. If field verification and diagnostic testing determines that the requirements for compliance are met, the HERS Rater shall transmit the test results to the HERS Provider data registry, whereupon the Provider shall make available a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification, to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry.

RA2.6.3 HERS Procedures – Group Sample Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

Descriptions for HERS verification compliance using group sampling, and details describing procedures for sampling of a "closed" group of up to seven dwellings, and for sampling of an "open" group of up to five dwellings are described in Section RA2.6.3.

RA2.6.3.1 Designation of Groups

After the initial model field verification and diagnostic testing is completed as specified in RA2.6.2, the builder, or the builder's authorized representative shall determine a sampling procedure to be used, and shall designate the dwelling units to include in the group of dwellings that require HERS verification. The maximum number of dwelling units allowed in a sample group may range from five, to seven, to thirty as described in Sections RA2.6.3.3, RA2.6.3.4, and RA2.7 respectively.

If multiple measures requiring HERS verification are installed, each dwelling unit in a designated group shall have the same measures requiring HERS verification as the other dwelling units in the designated group. If some dwelling units have installed a different set of measures requiring HERS verification, those dwelling units shall be in a separate group.

If the dwelling units in a designated group have multiple measures that require HERS verification, sample testing for individual measures may be conducted in any of the dwelling units in the group - it is not required that all of the sample tests for all of the individual measures be completed in the same dwelling unit. Individual measures shall be allowed to be included in a group regardless of whether compliance requires one sample test, or if compliance requires more than one sample test (up to100% sample test rate) be reported for such individual measures.

Dwelling units in a designated group shall all be located within the same enforcement agency jurisdiction and subdivision or multifamily housing development. Refer also to Section RA2.8 for requirements for sample groups applicable to alterations.

If dwelling units have central forced-air space conditioning equipment that introduces outside air into the conditioned space utilizing means that connect outside air ventilation ducts directly to the dwelling unit's central forced air duct system (Central Fan-Integrated Ventilation System or CFI Ventilation System), the CFI ventilation technology shall be considered a separate measure for HERS verification sampling purposes, and dwellings with CFI ventilation systems shall be placed in separate groups from other dwelling units that do not utilize CFI ventilation technology.

RA2.6.3.2 Group Status - "Open" Groups and "Closed" Groups

Registration of the first Certificate of Installation, for the first dwelling in a sample group shall be required to "open" a new group. The date of the responsible persons registration signature for the first Certificate of Installation for the group shall establish the start date for the group. Additional dwellings may be entered into the registry, and included in an "open" group over a period of time subject to registration of the Certificate of Installation documents for each additional dwelling. However the group shall not remain "open" to receive additional dwellings for a period longer than six months after the start date of the group. A group may be "closed" at any time after the group has been "opened" at the option of the builder or builder's authorized representative, thus the size of a "closed" group may range from a minimum of one dwelling to a maximum of seven dwellings. When a group becomes classified as "closed", no additional dwellings shall be added to the group.

RA2.6.3.3 Sampling of a "Closed" Group of Up to Seven Dwellings

The following criteria shall be met as prerequisite to attaining HERS verification compliance for the group:

(a) All of the dwelling units contained in the sample group have been identified. A maximum of seven dwellings are allowed to be included in a "closed" sample group for HERS compliance.

(b) Installation of all the measures that require HERS verification has been completed in all the dwellings that are entered in the group, and registration of the Certificates of Installation for all the dwellings entered in the group has been completed.

(c) The group has been classified as a "closed" group in the Provider data registry.

(d) At the request of the builder or the builder's authorized representative, a HERS Rater shall randomly select one dwelling unit from the "closed" sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing. If the dwelling unit meets the compliance requirements, this "tested" dwelling and also each of the other "not-tested" dwellings in the group shall receive a registered Certificate of Verification.

RA2.6.3.4 Sampling of an "Open" Group of Up to Five Dwellings

The following criteria shall be met as prerequisite to attaining HERS verification compliance for the group:

(a) At least one dwelling unit from the sample group has been identified. A maximum of five dwellings are allowed to be included in an "open" sample group for HERS compliance.

(b) Installation of all the measures that require HERS verification shall be completed in all the dwellings that are entered in the group, and registration of the Certificates of Installation for all the dwellings entered in the group has been completed.

(c) At the request of the builder, or the builder's authorized representative, a HERS Rater shall randomly select one dwelling unit from those currently entered into the "open" sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing. If the dwelling unit meets the compliance requirements, the "tested" dwelling and also each of the other "not tested" dwellings currently entered into the group shall receive a registered Certificate of Verification. If less than five dwelling units have been entered into the group, the group shall be allowed to remain "open" and eligible to receive additional dwelling units. Dwelling units entered into the "open" group subsequent to the compliant HERS verification of the "tested" dwelling shall also receive a registered Certificate of

Verification as a “not tested” dwelling subject to receipt of the registered Certificate of Installation by the HERS Provider data registry for the dwelling. The group shall be “closed” when it reaches the limit of five dwellings or when the six month limit for “open” groups has been exceeded, or when the builder requests that the group be closed.

RA2.6.3.5 Additional Requirements Applicable to Group Sampling Procedures

The builder or the HERS Rater may request removal of untested dwelling units from a group by notifying the HERS Provider prior to selection of the dwelling sample that will be tested from an “open” or “closed” group and shall provide justification for the change. Removed dwelling units shall be field verified and diagnostically tested individually or shall be included in a subsequent group for sampling.

There are exceptions to the requirement to have completed Certificate of Installation data entered into the HERS Provider data registry prior to selection of the dwelling unit to be tested in a group. Some HERS measures require multiple verifications during the construction process. A sample group is not required to be closed before HERS field verification and diagnostic testing can begin for the following measures. For these measures the HERS Rater is allowed to randomly select the dwelling unit to be field verified from those that are at the proper stage of construction to enable the first of the multiple verifications to be completed.

(a) **Quality Installation of Insulation** measure requires inspection of the air barrier and inspection of the insulation behind tubs and showers at framing rough-in. Verification of the wall, floor and ceiling insulation must be completed prior to drywall installation. Attic insulation installation may require follow-up verification.

(b) **Buried Ducts** measure requires verification of the duct design prior to verification of the attic insulation.

(c) **Duct Surface Area** requires verification of the duct design prior to installation of the attic insulation.

The HERS Rater, with no direction from the installer or builder, shall randomly select one dwelling unit from a “closed” sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing upon receiving the builder’s or builder representative’s request for HERS verification of that group. Alternatively, the HERS Rater shall randomly select one dwelling unit from the dwellings currently entered into an “open” sample group upon receiving the builder’s or builder representative’s request for HERS verification of that group. The HERS Rater shall diagnostically test and field verify the selected dwelling unit. The HERS Rater shall enter the test and/or field verification results into the HERS Provider data registry regardless of whether the results indicate a pass or fail. If the test fails, then the failure must be entered into the Provider’s data registry even if the installer immediately corrects the problem. In addition, the procedures in Section RA2.6.4 shall be followed.

If field verification and diagnostic testing determines that the requirements for compliance are met, the HERS Rater shall enter the test results into the HERS Provider data registry. Whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other approved users of the HERS Provider data registry, a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification for the “tested” dwelling, and for all other “not tested” dwelling units entered in the group at the time of the sample test. The registered Certificate of Verification shall report the successful diagnostic testing results and conclusions regarding compliance for the tested dwelling unit. The registered Certificate of Verification shall also provide:

(a) Building permit number for the dwelling unit.

(b) Registration Number that conforms to the numbering convention specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

(c) Group Number that conforms to the numbering convention specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

(d) Time and date stamp of the Provider's issuance of the registered Certificate of Verification.

(e) Provider's logo, water mark, or official seal.

(f) Indication that the dwelling was a "tested" dwelling, or was a "not-tested" dwelling in a sample group.

Whenever the builder changes subcontractors who are responsible for a feature that is being diagnostically field verified and tested, the builder shall notify the HERS Rater of the subcontractor change, and terminate sampling for any affected groups. All dwelling units utilizing features that require HERS verification for compliance that were installed by previous subcontractors or were subject to verification and testing under the supervision of a previous HERS Provider, for which the builder does not have a completed Certificate of Verification, shall be individually tested or included in a separate group for sampling. Dwelling units with installations completed by new subcontractors shall be individually tested or shall be included in a new sampling group.

The HERS Rater shall not notify the builder when sample testing will occur prior to the completion of the work that is to be tested, or prior to registration of the Certificate of Installation.

The HERS Provider shall "close" any "open" group within 6 months after the earliest signature date shown on any Certificate of Installation for a dwelling entered in the group. When such group closure occurs, the HERS Provider shall notify the builder that the group has been "closed", and require that a sample dwelling shall be selected for field verification and diagnostic testing by a HERS Rater if field verification has not yet been conducted on a sample dwelling entered in the group.

RA2.6.4 HERS Procedures - Re-sampling, Full Testing and Corrective Action

"Re-sampling" refers to the procedure that requires testing of additional dwellings within a group when the initial selected sample dwelling from a group fails to comply with the HERS verification requirements.

When a failure is encountered during sample testing, the failure shall be entered into the HERS Provider data registry. Corrective action shall be taken on the failed dwelling unit and the dwelling unit shall be retested to verify that corrective action was successful. Corrective action and retesting on the dwelling unit shall be repeated until the testing indicates compliance and the successful compliance results have been entered into the HERS Provider data registry (or the dwelling unit complies using an alternative method). Whereupon, a registered Certificate of Verification for the dwelling shall be made available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry.

In addition, the HERS Rater shall conduct re-sampling to assess whether the first failure in the group is unique, or if the rest of the dwelling units in the group are likely to have similar failings.

RA2.6.4.1 Re-sampling procedures for a "closed" group of up to seven dwellings:

The HERS Rater shall randomly select for re-sampling one of the remaining untested dwelling units in the group for retesting of the feature that failed. If the failed dwelling was entered in a "closed" group, and the testing of the second randomly selected dwelling unit in the group confirms that the requirements for compliance credit are met on that unit, then the dwelling unit with the initial failure shall not be considered an indication of failure in the remaining untested dwelling units in the group. The HERS Rater shall transmit the re-sample test results to the HERS Provider registry, whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry, a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification for the remaining dwelling units in the group including the dwelling unit in the re-sample.

If field verification and diagnostic testing of the second sample results in a failure, the HERS Rater shall report the second failure to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency. All dwelling units in the group must thereafter be individually field verified and diagnostically tested to confirm compliance for the feature that failed to comply with re-sampling. In cases where corrective action would require destruction of building components, the builder may choose to reanalyze compliance and choose different measures that will achieve compliance. In this case a new Certificate of Compliance shall be completed and submitted to the HERS Provider, the HERS Rater, and the enforcement agency. Even with a new Certificate of Compliance, the dwelling unit must be individually field verified and diagnostically tested. Upon verification of compliance, the HERS Rater shall enter the test results into the HERS Provider data registry. Whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry, a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification for each individual dwelling in the group.

RA2.6.4.2 Re-sampling procedures for an "open" group of up to five dwellings:

The HERS Rater shall randomly select for re-sampling one of the remaining untested dwelling units in the group for retesting of the feature that failed. If the failed dwelling was entered in an "open" group, and there are no other untested dwellings entered in the "open" group at the time of the failed HERS verification, subsequent dwellings entered into the "open" group shall not receive a Certificate of Verification until a second dwelling in the "open" group is tested and successfully complies. If the subsequent testing of the second dwelling unit in the group confirms that the requirements for compliance credit are met on that unit, then the dwelling unit with the initial failure shall not be considered an indication of failure in the untested dwelling units in the group. The HERS Rater shall transmit the compliant re-sample test results to the HERS Provider data registry, whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry, a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification, for the re-sampled dwelling, and the remaining not yet tested dwelling units entered in the “open” group at the time of the re-sample test, and the group shall be allowed to remain open and eligible to receive additional dwelling units. Dwelling units entered into the “open” group of up to 5 dwellings following the successful HERS verification of the re-sampled dwelling shall receive a Certificate of Verification as a “not tested” dwelling subject to registration of the Certificate of Installation by the HERS Provider data registry for the dwelling.

If field verification and diagnostic testing of the second sample results in a failure, the HERS Rater shall report the second failure to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency, and the Provider shall require the “open” group to be “closed”. All remaining untested dwelling units entered in the group at the time of the re-sample must thereafter be individually field verified and diagnostically tested. In cases where corrective action would require destruction of building components, the builder may choose to reanalyze compliance and choose different measures that will achieve compliance. In this case, a new Certificate of Compliance shall be completed and submitted to the HERS Provider, the HERS Rater, and the enforcement agency. Even with a new Certificate of Compliance, the dwelling unit must be individually field verified and diagnostically tested. Upon verification of compliance, the HERS Rater shall enter the test results into the HERS Provider data registry. Whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry, a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification for each individual dwelling in the group.

RA2.6.4.3 Corrective Action

Builders shall offer to provide the necessary field verification and diagnostic testing services and any necessary corrective action at no charge to building owners (for a definition of “building owner” and of other terms used, see Reference Joint Appendix JA1) in occupied dwelling units in the group. Builders shall report to the HERS Provider the identifying location of any dwelling unit in which the building owner or occupant declines field verification and diagnostic testing and corrective action. The HERS Provider shall verify that the builder has made this offer. If a building owner of a dwelling unit declines this offer, field verification, diagnostic testing, and corrective action will not be required for that dwelling unit and the dwelling unit will no longer be considered a part of the group. If a building owner accepts this offer, the builder shall take corrective action, and the HERS Rater shall conduct field verification and diagnostic testing to verify that problems have been corrected. Upon verification of compliance, the HERS Rater shall transmit the test results to the HERS Provider data registry. Whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry, a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification for the dwelling unit.

The HERS Provider shall file a report with the enforcement agency explaining all actions taken (including field verification, diagnostic testing, corrective action, offers to building owners for testing and corrective action, and/or building owner declines of such offers) to bring into compliance dwelling units for which full testing has been required. If corrective action requires work not specifically exempted by the CMC or the CBC, the builder shall obtain a permit from the enforcement agency prior to commencement of any of the work.

Corrections to avoid reporting a failure to the HERS Provider data registry shall not be made to a sampled dwelling unit after the HERS Rater selects the sample dwelling unit. If it is evident that such corrections have been made to a sampled dwelling unit to avoid reporting a failure, field verification and diagnostic testing shall be required for 100 percent of the dwelling units in the group.

RA2.7 Third Party Quality Control Programs

The Energy Commission may approve Third Party Quality Control Programs (TPQCP) to verify the work of participating installers, collect and evaluate more detailed data than necessary for compliance, identify in real time during the installation invalid and inaccurate installer testing and noncompliant installations, and enable corrected testing with the goal of bringing installations into compliance before the installer leaves the job site. TPQCP personnel and participating TPQCP installation contractors do not have the authority to sign Certificate of Verification documentation as a HERS Rater.

RA2.7.1 Third Party Quality Control Program Responsibilities

An approved Third Party Quality Control Program shall:

a. Provide training to participating program installers (including contractors, subcontractors, and technicians) to ensure proficiency in:
   i. Quality HVAC installation procedures, common causes of failure, and corrections.
   ii. Understanding of the Standards requirements for field verification and diagnostic testing of measures, which are subject to TPQCP program procedures.
   iii. Understanding all applicable specifications for field verification and diagnostic testing procedures specified in the Reference Residential Appendices.
   iv. Any applicable specialized TPQCP-specific procedures.
b. Collect field verification and diagnostic test data (data) from participating installers for each installation completed.
c. Automatically confirm the location of the system undergoing testing using an electronic tracking means such as Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) technology if available.
d. Provide data checking analysis to evaluate the validity and accuracy of the collected data to independently determine whether compliance has been achieved. Data checking based on more detailed data than is required for showing compliance must be able to uncover invalid or erroneous information supplied by installers.
e. Provide direction to the installer to retest and correct problems when data checking determines that compliance has not been achieved. The direction to the installer shall occur in real time so that testing can be redone and corrections can be made before the installer leaves the site.
f. Ensure the installer resubmits updated data from new testing when retesting and correction is completed.

g. Maintain a database of all data submitted by all participating TPQCP installers.

h. Provide functionality that enables Energy Commission staff to query retained TPQCP data or documents.

i. TPQCP shall not impose restrictions on the HERS Rater or the HERS Provider that limit their independence, or the ability of the HERS Rater or the HERS Provider to properly perform their functions.

j. TPQCP shall not impose restrictions on the HERS Rater's use of equipment beyond those required by the Energy Commission.

RA2.7.2 Requirements for Data Collected by a Third Party Quality Control Program

TPQCP data collection shall conform to the following requirements:

a. Data shall be more detailed than the data required for showing compliance with the Standards.

b. Data shall enable the TPQCP to conduct an independent check on the validity and accuracy of the installer's claim that compliance has been achieved.

c. Data shall not be alterable by the installer to indicate that compliance has been achieved when in fact compliance has not been achieved.

RA2.7.3 HERS Provider Responsibilities

HERS Providers shall conform to the following requirements:

a. HERS Providers shall assign a HERS Rater to conduct independent field verification and diagnostic testing of the installation work performed by the participating Third Party Quality Control Program installing contractors, and to submit Certificates of Verification at the close of the sampling group.

b. HERS Providers shall notify enforcement agencies when groups close or exceed six months without closing.

c. HERS Providers shall explain, in their applications for approval by the Energy Commission, the way in which their program will work with TPQCPs.

RA2.7.4 HERS Rater Responsibilities

HERS Raters shall conform to the following requirements:

a. Complete all of the responsibilities of a HERS Rater as specified in Appendix RA2, with the exception that sampling procedures utilized for TPQCP installations shall be limited to sampling of a "closed" group as described in Section RA2.6.3. However, the sample tested shall be selected and field verified from within a group of up to thirty dwelling units.

b. HERS Raters shall be independent entities from the Third Party Quality Control Program.

c. If re-sampling is required, the HERS Rater shall perform full testing and corrective action as specified in Section RA2.6.4 with the exception that re-sampling as defined in RA2.6.4 shall be completed for a minimum of one out of every thirty dwelling units from the group.

RA2.7.5 Conflict of Interest Guidelines

The TPQCP shall meet the requirements imposed on a HERS Rater specified in the Energy Commission's HERS Program regulations (California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Sections 1670 -1675), including the requirement to be an independent entity from the builder, the HERS Provider, the HERS Rater that provides independent field verifications, and the subcontractor installer as specified by Section 1673(j). However, a Third Party Quality Control Program may have business relationships with installers participating in the program to advocate or promote the program and an installer's participation in the program, and to advocate or promote products that the Third Party Quality Control Program sells to installers as part of the Program.

RA2.7.6 Conditions of TPQCP Approval

Prior to approval by the Commission, the Third Party Quality Control Program shall provide a detailed explanation to the Commission of the following:

a. The data that is to be collected from the installers.
b. The data checking process that will be used to evaluate the validity and accuracy of the data submitted by the TPQCP installation contractors.
c. The justification for why this data checking process will provide strong assurance that the installation actually complies.
d. The detailed description of the database that will be maintained by the TPQCP, and the functionality that will allow Energy Commission staff to query retained data or documents.
e. A detailed explanation of how their data input complies with Reference Joint Appendix JA7.9.
f. A detailed description of the training that will be provided to TPQCP installers.
g. The procedures the TPQCP will follow to ensure the installer makes appropriate on-site data submittals, installation corrections.

The Third Party Quality Control Program may apply for a confidential designation for information submitted to the Energy Commission as specified in the Commission's Administrative Regulations (California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 7, Article 2, Section 2505).

RA2.7.7 Training for TPQCP Installation Contractors

As a condition to participation in the TPQCP program, all approved TPQCP installing contractors and the TPQCP installing contractor's responsible installation technicians shall be trained and confirmed to be proficient in the following:

1) Quality installation procedures.
2) The requirements of this Appendix RA2.
3) Any applicable specialized TPQCP-specific procedures.

The training requirements also apply to the installing contractor's specialty subcontractors who provide Third Party Quality Control Program services. All installation verification and diagnostic work performed in the program shall be subject to the same quality assurance procedures as required by the Energy Commission's HERS program regulations.

RA2.8 Installer Requirements and HERS Procedures for Alterations

This section on alterations describes the differences that apply to alterations. Otherwise the procedures and requirements detailed in previous sections of Appendix RA2 shall also apply to alterations. For alterations, building owners or their agents may carry out the actions that are assigned to builders in previous sections of Appendix RA2.

Applicable procedures for registration of compliance documents described in Appendix RA2 shall also apply to alterations.

When compliance for an alteration requires field verification and diagnostic testing, the building owner may choose for the field verification and diagnostic testing to be completed for the dwelling unit individually, or alternatively, as part of a designated sample group of dwelling units for which the same installing company has completed work that requires HERS verification for compliance.

When sampling is utilized for HERS verification compliance for alterations, the dwelling units in a designated sample group are not required to be located within the same enforcement agency jurisdiction. However, to enable the enforcement agency to schedule testing to accomplish the corroboration of field verification and diagnostic testing procedures performed by the building owner, subcontractors, or certified HERS Rater as described in Section RA2.4.4, the enforcement agency may require that a separate dwelling unit from the sample group that is located within its jurisdiction be tested.

The building owner or agent of the building owner shall submit, or make arrangements for submittal of the required Certificate of Compliance information to the HERS Provider data registry to complete the applicable Certificate of Compliance documentation in accordance with the requirements in Standards Section 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2.

When the enforcement agency does not require building design plans to be submitted with the application for a building permit for an alteration, the applicable registered Certificate of Compliance documentation specified in 10-103(a)1 is not required to be approved by the enforcement agency prior to issuance of a building permit, but shall be approved by the enforcement agency prior to final inspection of the dwelling unit, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections as specified in Standards Section 10-103(a)2A.

HERS Raters or other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry may provide *documentation author* support to facilitate the submittal of the required Certificate of Compliance information to the HERS Provider data registry on behalf of the building owner or agent of the building owner, when such facilitation has been authorized by the building owner or agent of the building owner. *Documentation authors* shall provide an electronic signature to certify the documentation is accurate and complete. The building owner or agent of the building owner who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to take responsibility for the design specification for the alteration shall provide an electronic signature to register the

Certificate of Compliance, to certify the information provided on the Certificate is true and correct, to certify conformance with Part 6, and shall submit the registered Certificate of Compliance to the enforcement agency for approval.

The building owner or agent shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the registered Certificate of Compliance approved by the enforcement agency.

The installer shall perform diagnostic testing and the procedures specified in Section RA2.5.

When the installation is complete, the person responsible for the performance of the installation shall complete the Certificate of Installation in accordance with the procedures specified in Section RA2.5.

The HERS Rater shall perform the applicable verification and diagnostic testing required for compliance following the procedures in Section RA2.6. If group sampling is utilized for compliance, the sampling procedures described in Section RA2.6.3 for sampling of a “closed” group of up to seven dwelling units shall be used, requiring that all dwelling units within the group have been serviced by the same installing company. The installing company may request a group for sampling that is smaller than seven dwelling units. Whenever a HERS Rater for the group is changed, a new group shall be established.

Re-sampling, full testing, and corrective action shall be completed, if necessary, as specified by Section RA2.6.4.

The enforcement agency shall not approve the alteration until the enforcement agency has received a completed Certificate of Installation as specified in Section RA2.5, and a completed Certificate of Verification as specified in Section RA2.6.

Third Party Quality Control Programs, as specified in Section RA2.7, may also be used with alterations, and shall be limited to “closed” sample group sizes of thirty dwelling units or less.

When a Third Party Quality Control Program is used, the enforcement agency may approve compliance based on the Certificate of Installation prior to registration of the Certificate of Verification where data checking has indicated that the unit complies, on the condition that a Certificate of Verification will be submitted. If the required HERS verification procedures determine that re-sampling, full testing, or corrective action is necessary, such work shall be completed.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Residential Appendix RA3

Appendix RA3 – Residential HERS Field Verification and Diagnostic Test Protocols

RA3.1 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Air Distribution Systems

RA3.1.1 Purpose and Scope

RA3.1 contains procedures for measuring the air leakage in forced air distribution systems as well as procedures for verifying duct location, duct surface area, duct R-value, return duct design, return grille design, and air filter installation.

RA3.1 applies to air distribution systems in both new and existing low-rise residential buildings.

RA3.1 provides required procedures for installers, HERS raters and others who ~~need~~ are required to perform field verification of air distribution systems.

Table RA3.1-1 is a summary of the tests and criteria included in RA3.1.

Table RA3.1-2 Provides compliance criteria for the duct leakage test protocols in Section RA3.1.4.3.

Table RA3.1-1 – Summary of Duct System Field Verification and Diagnostic Test Protocols

Verification/Diagnostic	Description	Procedure
Duct Location, Surface Area and R-value	Verify duct system was installed according to the specifications on the Certificate of Compliance or in accordance with an approved duct system design layout.	RA3.1.4.1
Verified Duct System Design	Procedure for duct system design layout approval and field verification	RA3.1.4.1.1
Duct Leakage	Verify that duct leakage is less than or equal to the compliance criteria given in Table RA3.1-2.	RA3.1.4.3
Return Duct Design	Verify compliance with the return duct and return grill sizing requirements of Table 150.0-B or Table 150.0-C).	RA3.1.4.4
Air Filter Device Design	Verify compliance with the requirements in 150(m)12.	RA3.1.4.5
Verification of Prescriptive Bypass Duct Requirements	Verification to confirm zonally controlled systems comply with the bypass duct requirements in 150.1(c)13	RA3.1.4.6
Verification of Space-Conditioning System Airflow Supply to All Habitable Spaces	Verify that all habitable spaces in the dwelling unit receive space-conditioning system airflow.	RA3.1.4.1.7
Verification of Ductless Space-Conditioning System Indoor Units Located Entirely in Conditioned Space	Verify that ductless indoor units are located entirely in conditioned space.	RA3.1.4.1.8

RA3.1.2 Instrumentation Specifications

The instrumentation for the air distribution diagnostic measurements shall conform to the following specifications:

RA3.1.2.1 Pressure Measurements

All pressure measurements shall be measured with measurement systems (i.e. sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy equal to or better than ± 1% of pressure reading or ± 0.2 Pa. (0.0008 inches water) (whichever is greater). All pressure measurements within the duct system shall be made with static pressure probes such as Dwyer A303 or equivalent.

RA3.1.2.2 Duct Leakage Measurements

Duct leakage airflow rates during duct leakage testing shall be measured with a duct leakage airflow rate measurement apparatus that has a duct leakage airflow rate measurement accuracy equal to or better than ± 3 percent of reading or ± 1 cfm (whichever is greater).

RA3.1.2.3 Calibration

All instrumentation used for duct leakage diagnostic measurements shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's calibration procedure to conform to the accuracy requirement specified in Section RA3.1.2.

RA3.1.3 Diagnostic Apparatus

RA3.1.3.1 Apparatus for Duct Pressurization and Leakage Flow Measurement

The apparatus for fan pressurization duct leakage measurements shall consist of a duct pressurization and flow measurement device meeting the specifications in Section RA3.1.2.

RA3.1.3.2 Apparatus for Duct Leakage to Outside Measurement

The apparatus for measuring duct leakage to outside shall include a fan that is capable of maintaining the pressure within the conditioned spaces in the house at 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) relative to the outdoors. The fan most commonly used for this purpose is known as a "blower door" and is typically installed within a temporary seal of an open exterior doorway.

RA3.1.3.3 Apparatus for Smoke-Test of Accessible-Duct Sealing (Existing Duct Systems)

The apparatus for determining leakage in and verifying sealing of all accessible leaks in existing duct systems provide means for introducing controllable amounts of non-toxic visual/theatrical smoke into the duct pressurization apparatus for identifying leaks in accessible portions of the duct system. The means for generating smoke shall have sufficient capacity to ensure that any accessible leaks will emit visibly identifiable smoke.

RA3.1.4 Verification and Diagnostic Procedures

This section describes the procedures used to verify compliance with the mandatory and performance compliance requirements for air distribution systems.

RA3.1.4.1 Diagnostic Duct Location, Surface Area and R-value

The performance compliance calculations allow credit for duct systems that are designed to be in advantageous locations, that have reduced duct surface areas, and/or that provide higher R-values or portions of the system. This section specifies procedures for verification of duct systems for conformance with the requirements for the performance compliance credits. When indicated on the Certificate of Compliance, the Installer shall certify compliance with the applicable procedures in RA3.1.4.1 on a Certificate of Installation, and a HERS rater shall verify compliance on a Certificate of Verification.

RA3.1.4.1.1 *Verified Duct System Design*

An installed duct system meets the Verified Duct System Design compliance criteria if it is field verified by a HERS rater to be in conformance with a duct design layout that meets all applicable duct design and documentation requirements given in Section RA3.1.4.1.1. The duct design layout shall be approved by the enforcement agency.

RA3.1.4.1.1.1 *Verified Duct System Design - Duct Design Layout*

The duct system design shall be documented on the Duct Design Layout, a scaled layout drawing that identifies the location of the space conditioning equipment, all supply and return registers/grilles, the size, R-value, and location of each duct segment. The Duct Design Layout shall incorporate all other duct details reported on the registered Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.1.4.1.1.2 *Verified Duct System Design - Compliance Criteria*

The duct system design shall be based on an industry standard design methodology such as ACCA Manual D or an equivalent, and shall take into account: the available external static pressure from the air handler, the equivalent length or pressure drop of external devices, and the pressure drop of the duct runs accounting for size, type and configuration of the ducts and fittings. The duct system shall be designed to meet the required system airflow rate with the manufacturer-specified available external static pressure for the specified system air handler at that airflow. The duct system design shall include calculations that indicate the duct system will operate at equal to or greater than 0.0292 cfm/Btu (350 cfm/12000 Btu) in cooling speed (350 cfm per nominal ton of condensing unit cooling capacity specified by the manufacturer) or, if heating only, equal to or greater than 16.8 cfm per 1000 Btu/hr furnace nominal output specified by the manufacturer.

RA3.1.4.1.1.3 *Verified Duct System Design - Duct Design Layout Approval*

The Duct Design Layout shall be included with the building design plans and the registered Certificate of Compliance submitted to the enforcement agency in conjunction with the application for the building permit. A copy of the Duct Design Layout approved by the enforcement agency shall be posted or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency, installing contractor, and HERS rater for use during the installation work and for all applicable inspections.

RA3.1.4.1.1.4 *Verified Duct System Design - Field Verification of Installation*

The location of all supply and return registers shall be verified by inspection of the interior of the dwelling unit. The location of the space conditioning equipment and the size, R-value, and location of each duct segment shall be verified by observation in the spaces where they are located. Deviations from the approved Duct Design Layout shall not be allowed without a revised a Duct Design Layout approved by the enforcement agency.

RA3.1.4.1.2 Verification of 12 Linear Feet or Less of Duct Located Outside Of Conditioned Space

A visual inspection shall confirm space conditioning systems with air handlers located outside the conditioned space have 12 linear feet or less of duct located outside the conditioned space including air handler and plenum. If the space conditioning system has more than 12 feet of duct outside of conditioned space, the system does not pass.

RA3.1.4.1.3 *Visual Verification of Ducts Located Entirely In Conditioned Space*

A visual inspection shall confirm space conditioning duct systems are located entirely in conditioned space. If any part of the space conditioning duct system is outside of conditioned space, the system does not pass.

RA3.1.4.1.4 *Verification of Duct Surface Area Reduction*

Compliance with Verified Duct System Design procedures specified in RA3.1.4.1.1 are prerequisite for compliance with the Duct Surface Area Reduction compliance credit. A visual inspection shall on confirm the installed duct system layout conforms to the Duct Design Layout.

RA3.1.4.1.5 *Verification of Buried Ducts on The Ceiling R-Value*

Compliance with Verified Duct System Design procedures specified in RA3.1.4.1.1 is prerequisite for compliance with the Buried Ducts on the Ceiling compliance credit. A visual inspection shall confirm the installed duct system layout conforms to the Duct Design Layout. This procedure shall be carried out prior to covering the ducts with insulation.

Ducts designed to be buried shall be insulated to R4.2 or greater. In addition, ducts designed to be in contact with the ceiling shall be not more than 3.5 inches from the ceiling drywall. A sign shall be hung near the attic access that displays a warning: “Caution: Buried Ducts. Markers indicate location of buried ducts.” All ducts that will be completely buried shall have vertical markers that are visible after insulation installation, placed at least every 8 feet of duct length and at the beginning and end of each duct run.

RA3.1.4.1.6 Verification of Deeply Buried Ducts R-Value

Compliance with Verified Duct System Design procedures specified in RA3.1.4.1.1 is prerequisite for compliance with the Deeply Buried Ducts compliance credit. A visual inspection shall confirm the installed duct system layout conforms to the Duct Design Layout. This procedure shall be carried out prior to covering the ducts with insulation.

Ducts designed to be buried shall be insulated to R4.2 or greater. In addition, ducts designed to be in contact with the ceiling shall be not more than 3.5 inches from the ceiling drywall. A sign shall be hung near the attic access that displays a warning: “Caution: Buried Ducts. Markers indicate location of buried ducts.” All ducts that will be completely buried shall have vertical markers that are visible after insulation installation, placed at least every 8 feet of duct length and at the beginning and end of each duct run.

RA3.1.4.1.7 *Verification of Space-Conditioning System Airflow Supply to All Habitable Spaces*

A visual inspection shall confirm that all habitable spaces in the dwelling unit receive space-conditioning system airflow either by use of a ductless space-conditioning system indoor unit located on the wall, ceiling, or floor of the habitable space, or by use of space-conditioning system air supply registers located in the habitable space that use ductwork connected from the register directly to the supply air outlet of a ducted space-conditioning system air handling unit. Refer to Standards Section 100.1 for the definition of habitable space. Transfer fans that move air from one space in the dwelling to a different space in the dwelling, but do not heat or cool the air transferred, do not meet the requirement for providing space-conditioning system airflow.

RA3.1.4.1.8 *Verification of Ductless Space-Conditioning System Indoor Units Located Entirely in Conditioned Space*

A visual inspection shall confirm that ductless indoor units are located entirely in conditioned space in accordance with the following requirements:

(a) Ductless indoor unit types that mount entirely on the interior surface of dwelling unit walls, ceilings, or floors shall be considered to be entirely in conditioned space. Penetrations in the wall, ceiling or floor surface necessary for the indoor unit refrigerant piping, condensate drain, or electrical connections shall be allowed, provided the penetrations are sealed.

(b) Ductless indoor units that penetrate the interior surface of dwelling unit walls, ceilings, or floors, and protrude through cut-out openings in the dwelling unit walls, ceilings, or floors shall be inspected to determine whether the indoor unit is installed inside both the thermal boundary and the air barrier of the dwelling according to the following criteria as applicable:

   i. Ductless indoor units that protrude through the air barrier into unconditioned spaces (including but not limited to attics, crawl spaces, garages, or outdoors) are not located entirely in conditioned space.

   ii. Ductless indoor units that protrude into indirectly conditioned spaces (including but not limited to drop ceilings, or floor assemblies in a single family or multifamily multi-story building) that are wholly inside both the thermal boundary and the air barrier of the dwelling are located entirely in conditioned space. Note: Verification at an early stage of building construction may be necessary for visual verification to be possible.

If field verification according to RA3.1.4.1.8 determines the installed system's ductless indoor units are not located entirely in conditioned space, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

RA3.1.4.2 Determining Air Handler Airflow for Calculation of Duct Leakage Rate Compliance Targets

For use in establishing the target duct leakage rate compliance criteria, the system air handler airflow shall be calculated using RA3.1.4.2.1, RA3.1.4.2.2, or RA3.1.4.2.3 as applicable.

RA3.1.4.2.1 *Default Air Handler Airflow*

Default air handler airflow may be used ~~only~~ for any one of the following conditions:

(a) for heating-only systems, or

(b)~~homes where~~when ~~the~~ a duct system is being tested ~~before~~ prior to installation of the air conditioning ~~and~~ or heating system ~~is installed~~equipment, or

(c) ~~and~~ when the space conditioning system equipment specification is not known.

~~For heating only systems the default~~Default air handler airflow shall be a calculated value equal to 0.5 CFM per ft^2 of Conditioned Floor Area.

RA3.1.4.2.2 Nominal Air Handler Airflow

Nominal air handler airflow shall be calculated according to one of the following methods as applicable:

(a) For heating-~~-~~only systems, the nominal air handler airflow shall be 21.7 CFM per kBtu/hr of rated heating output capacity.

(b) For split or packaged cooling systems with only one indoor unit~~cooling~~, the nominal air handler airflow shall be 400 CFM per nominal ton of outdoor condensing unit cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer.~~ or the heating only value, whichever is greater.~~

(c) For small duct high velocity systems, the nominal air handler airflow shall be 250 CFM per nominal ton of outdoor condensing unit cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer.

(d) For multiple-split systems that provide cooling, the nominal air handler airflow for each indoor unit shall be 350 CFM per nominal ton of indoor unit cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer.

RA3.1.4.2.3 Measured System Airflow

The system airflow shall be as measured according to a procedure in Section RA3.3.3. The system airflow can be used as the air handler airflow for the purpose of establishing duct leakage percentage.

RA3.1.4.3 Diagnostic Duct Leakage

Diagnostic duct leakage measurement is used by installers and raters to verify that total leakage meets the criteria for any sealed duct system specified in the compliance documents.

When central fan integrated (CFI) indoor air quality ventilation system air ducts, or central fan ventilation cooling system (CFVCS) air ducts connect to space conditioning system ducts, the ventilation duct branch openings shall not be sealed/taped off during space conditioning system duct leakage testing. However, the ventilation system motorized dampers that open only when ventilation airflow is required and close when ventilation airflow is not required may be closed during space conditioning system duct leakage testing.

Table RA3.1-2 summarizes the leakage test procedures that may be used to demonstrate compliance.

Table RA3.1-2 – Duct Leakage Verification and Diagnostic Test Protocols

Verification Description	User Application	Procedure(s)
Sealed and tested new duct systems in single family homes and townhomes	Installer Testing at Final HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.1
Sealed and tested new duct systems in single family homes and townhomes	Installer Testing at Rough-in, Air Handling Unit Installed	RA3.1.4.3.2 RA3.1.4.3.2.1 RA3.1.4.3.3
Sealed and tested new duct systems in single family homes and townhomes	Installer Testing at Rough-in, Air Handling Unit Not Installed	RA3.1.4.3.2 RA3.1.4.3.2.2 RA3.1.4.3.3
Sealed and tested new duct systems in multifamily homes regardless of duct system location.	Installer Testing at Final HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.1
Sealed and tested new duct systems in multifamily homes regardless of duct system location.	Installer Testing at Final HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.4
Verification of Low Leakage Air Handler with Sealed and Tested Duct System Compliance Credit	Installer Testing at Final HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.1 and RA3.1.4.3.9
Verification of low leakage ducts located entirely in conditioned space	Installer Testing HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.8
Sealed and tested altered existing duct systems	Installer Testing HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.1
Sealed and tested altered existing duct systems	Installer Testing HERS Rater Testing	RA3.1.4.3.4
Sealed and tested altered existing duct systems	Installer Testing and Inspection HERS Rater Testing and Verification	RA3.1.4.3.5 RA3.1.4.3.6 RA3.1.4.3.7

RA3.1.4.3.1 Diagnostic Duct Leakage from Fan Pressurization of Ducts

The objective of this procedure is for an installer to determine or a rater to verify the total leakage of a new or altered duct system. The total duct leakage shall be determined by pressurizing the entire duct system to a positive pressure of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) with respect to outside. The following procedure shall be used for the fan pressurization tests:

(a) Verify that the air handler, supply and return plenums and all the connectors, transition pieces, duct boots and registers are installed and sealed. The entire duct system shall be included in the total leakage test.

(b) For newly installed or altered ducts, verify that cloth backed rubber adhesive duct tape has not been used and if a platform or other building cavity used to house the air distribution system has been newly installed or altered, it contains a duct or is ducted with duct board or sheet metal.

(c) Seal all the supply registers and return grilles except for one large centrally located return grille or the air handler cabinet access panel. Floor registers on carpeted floors may be removed and the opening sealed to the floor under the carpet. If allowed by the equipment manufacturer, the air-handling unit blower compartment access panel may be sealed with an approved tape - do not use mastic or other permanent sealing material.

(d) Attach the fan flowmeter device to the duct system at the unsealed return grille or the air handler cabinet access panel. Ensure that the air filter has been removed.

(e) Install a static pressure probe at a supply register located close to the air handler, or at the supply plenum.

(f) Adjust the fan flowmeter to produce a positive 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) pressure at the supply register or the supply plenum with respect to the outside or with respect to the building space with the entry door open to the outside.

(g) Record the flow through the flowmeter; this is the leakage flow at 25 Pa (0.1 inches water).

(h) Divide the leakage flow by the total air handler airflow determined by the procedure in Section RA3.1.4.2 and convert to a percentage. If the leakage flow percentage is equal to or less than the compliance criterion required by the Standards, the system passes.

RA3.1.4.3.2 Diagnostic Duct Leakage at Rough-in Construction Stage

Installers may determine duct leakage in newly constructed buildings by using diagnostic measurements at the rough-in building construction stage prior to installation of the interior finishing. When using this measurement technique, the installer shall complete additional inspection (as described in section RA3.1.4.3.3) of duct integrity after the finishing wall has been installed. In addition, after the finishing wall is installed, spaces between the register boots and the wallboard shall be sealed. Cloth backed rubber adhesive duct tapes shall not be used to seal the space between the register boot and the wall board.

The duct leakage measurement at rough-in construction stage shall be performed using a fan pressurization device. The duct leakage shall be determined by pressurizing both the supply and return ducts to 25 Pa (0.1 inches water). The following procedure (either RA3.1.4.3.2.1 or RA3.1.4.3.2.2) shall be used:

RA3.1.4.3.2.1 *Ducts with the Air Handling Unit Installed and Connected:*

For total leakage:

(a) Verify that supply and return plenums and all the collars, connectors, transition pieces, duct boots, and return boxes have been installed. If a platform or other building cavity is used to house portions of the air distribution system, it shall contain a duct, be lined with duct board or sheet metal, and all duct connectors and transition parts shall be installed and sealed. The platform, ducts, and connectors shall be included in the total leakage test. All joints shall be inspected to ensure that no cloth backed rubber adhesive duct tape is used.

(b) Seal all the supply duct boots and return boxes except for one return duct box.

(c) Attach the fan flowmeter device at the unsealed return duct box.

(d) Insert a static pressure probe at one of the sealed supply duct boots located close to the supply plenum or at the supply plenum.

(e) Adjust the fan flowmeter to maintain a positive 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) pressure in the duct system with respect to the outside, or with respect to the building space with the entry door open to the outside.

(f) Record the flow through the flowmeter; this is the leakage flow at 25 Pa (0.1 inches water).

(g) Divide the leakage flow by the total air handler airflow determined by the procedure in Section RA3.1.4.2 and convert to a percentage. If the leakage flow percentage is less than or equal to the compliance criterion required by the Standards, the system passes.

RA3.1.4.3.2.2 *Ducts with Air Handling Unit Not Yet Installed:*

For total leakage:

(a) Verify that supply and return plenums and all the collars, connectors, transition pieces, duct boots, and return boxes have been installed. If a platform or other building cavity is used to house portions of the air distribution system, it shall contain a duct, be lined with duct board or sheet metal, and all duct connectors and transition parts shall be installed and sealed. The platform, ducts and connectors shall be included in the total leakage test. All joints shall be inspected to ensure that no cloth backed rubber adhesive duct tape is used.

(b) Supply and return leaks may be tested separately, or the supply and return plenums may be connected together using suitable temporary air-tight means to facilitate testing the total system. If the supply and return systems are to be tested separately, the opening to the supply or return plenums shall be sealed to prevent leakage unless used as the point of attachment for the fan flowmeter.

(c) Seal all the supply duct boots and/or return duct boxes except for a location where the fan flowmeter device will be attached.

(d) Attach the fan flowmeter device at the unsealed location.

(e) Insert a static pressure probe at one of the sealed supply duct boots, or return duct boxes, located at a point in the system close to the fan flowmeter.

(f) Adjust the fan flowmeter to produce a positive 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) pressure at the supply plenum with respect to the outside or with respect to the building space with the entry door open to the outside.

(g) Record the airflow through the flowmeter; this is the leakage flow at 25 Pa (0.1 inches water).

(h) If the supply and return ducts are tested separately, repeat items 4 through 6 with the flow meter attached to the unsealed return box and the static pressure probe in the return duct boxes, located at a point in the system close to the fan flowmeter, then add the two leakage rates together to get a total leakage flow.

(i) Divide the leakage flow by the total air handler airflow determined by the procedure in Section RA3.1.4.2 and convert to a percentage. If the leakage flow percentage is less than or equal to the compliance criterion required by the Standards, the system passes.

RA3.1.4.3.3 Installer Visual Inspection at Final Construction Stage

After installing the interior finishing drywall, or other finishing material, and verifying that one of the above rough-in tests was completed, the following procedure shall be used:

(a) Remove at least one supply and one return register, and verify that the spaces between the register boot and the interior finishing wall are properly sealed.

(b) If the house rough-in duct leakage test was conducted without an air handler installed, inspect the connection points between the air handler and the supply and return plenums to verify that the connection points are properly sealed.

(c) Inspect all joints to ensure that no cloth backed rubber adhesive duct tape is used.

RA3.1.4.3.4 Duct Leakage to Outside from Fan Pressurization of Ducts

The objective of this test is to determine the amount of duct leakage to outside the air barrier for the conditioned space. This measurement is utilized to verify that duct systems are located entirely within conditioned space. The procedure is also utilized to provide an alternate leakage measurement for situations when it is likely that a portion of the total duct leakage is inside the air barrier for the conditioned space. The duct leakage to outside shall be determined by pressurizing the ducts and the conditioned space of the house to 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) with respect to outside. The following procedure shall be used for the fan pressurization test of leakage to outside:

(a) Seal all the supply registers and return grilles except for one large centrally located return grille or the air handler cabinet access panel.

(b) Attach the fan flowmeter device to the duct system at the unsealed return grille or the air handler cabinet access panel.

(c) Install a static pressure probe at the supply plenum.

(d) Attach a blower door to an external doorway. If the door between the dwelling and the garage is used, the garage car-bay doors must be open.

(e) If any ducts are located in an unconditioned basement, all doors or accesses between the conditioned space and the basement shall be closed, and at least one operable door or window (if it exists) between the basement and outside shall be open during the test.

(f) If the ducts are located in a conditioned basement, any door between the basement and the remaining conditioned space shall be open, and any basement doors or windows to outside must be closed during the test.

(g) Adjust the blower door fan to provide positive 25 Pa (0.1 inches of water) pressure in the conditioned space with respect to outside.

(h) Adjust the fan/flowmeter to maintain a zero pressure difference (plus or minus 0.5Pa (.002 inches water)) between the ducts and the conditioned space, and adjust the blower door fan to maintain a positive 25 Pa (0.1 inches of water) pressure in the conditioned space with respect to outside. This step may require several iterations.

(i) Record the flow through the flowmeter; this is the duct leakage flow to outside at 25 Pa (0.1 inches water). If the leakage flow is less than or equal to the applicable compliance criteria required by the Standards, the system passes.

(j) If required for compliance, divide the leakage flow by the system air handler airflow determined by the procedure in Section RA3.1.4.2, and convert to a percentage. If the leakage flow percentage is less than or equal to the criterion required by the Standards, the system passes.

RA3.1.4.3.5 Sealing of All Accessible Leaks

For altered existing duct systems that are unable to pass either the Fan Pressurization of Ducts test (RA3.1.4.3.1), or the Duct Leakage to Outside test (RA3.1.4.3.4)), the objective of this test is to verify that all accessible leaks are sealed. The following procedure shall be used:

(a) Complete the leakage test specified in Section RA3.1.4.3.1 to measure the leakage before commencing duct sealing.

(b) Seal all accessible ducts.

(c) After sealing is complete, again use the procedure in RA3.1.4.3.1 to measure the leakage after duct sealing.

(d) Complete the Smoke Test as specified in RA3.1.4.3.6.

(e) Complete the Visual Inspection as specified in RA3.1.4.3.7.

RA3.1.4.3.6 Smoke-Test of Accessible-Duct Sealing

For altered existing ducts that fail the leakage tests, the objective of the smoke test is to confirm that all accessible leaks have been sealed. The following procedure shall be used:

(a) Inject either theatrical or other non-toxic smoke into a fan pressurization device that is maintaining a duct pressure difference of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) relative to the duct surroundings, with all grilles and registers in the duct system sealed.

(b) Visually inspect all accessible portions of the duct system during smoke injection.

(c) The system shall pass the test if one of the following conditions is met:

1. No visible smoke exits the accessible portions of the duct system.
2. Smoke only emanates from the furnace cabinet which is gasketed and sealed by the manufacturer and no visible smoke exits from the accessible portions of the duct system.

RA3.1.4.3.7 Visual Inspection of Accessible Duct Sealing

The objective of this inspection in conjunction with the smoke test (RA3.1.4.3.6) is to confirm that all accessible leaks have been sealed. Visually inspect to verify that the following locations have been sealed:

(a) Connections to plenums, evaporator coils, and other connections to the forced air unit.

(b) Refrigerant lines, p-traps and other penetrations into the forced air unit.

(c) Air handler door panel (do not use permanent sealing material, metal tape is acceptable).

(d) Register boots sealed to surrounding material at all registers and grilles.

(e) Connections between lengths of duct, as well as connections to takeoffs, wyes, tees, and splitter boxes.

RA3.1.4.3.8 Verification of Low Leakage Ducts Located Entirely In Conditioned Space

A visual inspection shall confirm the duct system location as specified by Section RA3.1.4.1.3. Additionally, ducts shall be confirmed to have less than or equal to 25 cfm leakage to outside when measured as specified by Section RA3.1.4.3.4.

RA3.1.4.3.9 Verification of Low Leakage Air-Handling Unit with Sealed and Tested Duct System

An additional performance compliance credit is available for verified low leakage ducts if a qualified low leakage air-handling unit is installed. The low leakage air-handling unit cabinet (furnace, or heat pump fan and inside coil) shall conform to the qualification requirements given in Reference Joint Appendix JA9, and shall be included in the list of low leakage air handling units published by the Energy Commission. The qualified air handler must be connected to a sealed and tested new duct system to receive the credit.

In order to comply with this credit, the duct system shall be verified to leak less than or equal to the leakage rate specified on the Certificate of Compliance using the methods in Section RA3.1.4.3.1, and the air handler manufacturer make and model number shall be verified to be a model certified to the Energy Commission as qualified for credit as a low leakage air handler.

RA3.1.4.4 Verification of Return Duct Design

Verification shall consist of a visual inspection to confirm that the duct design conforms to the criteria given in Table 150.0-B or Table 150.0-C.

RA3.1.4.5 Verification of Air Filter Device Design

Verification shall consist of a visual inspection to confirm that the air filter devices conform to the requirements given in Section 150.0(m)12.

RA3.1.4.6 Verification of Bypass Ducts for Zonally Controlled Forced Air Systems

When a zonally controlled forced air system is installed, a visual inspection shall confirm:

(a) That bypass ducts are not used to deliver conditioned supply air directly to the space conditioning system return duct airflow; or
(b) That the Certificate of Compliance indicates an allowance for use of bypass ducts.

RA3.1.4.7 Verification of Air Filter Sizing According to Face Velocity Specification

When compliance requires verification that a ducted system's indoor unit air filters have been sized in accordance with a maximum face velocity specification, the following procedure shall be used.

(a) **Indoor unit design airflow rate.** Record the design airflow rate for the indoor unit in CFM as specified by the system designer. The design airflow rate shall be equal to or greater than the minimum airflow rate required for compliance with the standards. Alternatively, if the design airflow rate for the indoor unit is not available, calculate and record the nominal air handler airflow rate for the indoor unit in accordance with the specifications in RA3.1.4.2.2.

(b) **Air filter design airflow rate**. Determine the air filter design airflow rate. For indoor units with only one filtered return air inlet, the air filter design airflow rate in CFM is equal to the indoor unit design airflow rate determined in step (a). For indoor units with more than one filtered return air inlet, the system designer shall determine what portion of the total indoor unit airflow is equal to the air filter design airflow for each air filter, ensuring that the sum total of all individual air filter design airflow rates is equal to the total indoor unit design airflow rate determined in step (a).

(c) **Air filter grille/rack sticker**. Compare the air filter design airflow rate calculated in step (b) to the design airflow rate on the filter grille or rack. Standards Section 150.0(m)12Biv requires that air filter installation locations shall have the air filter design airflow rate, and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate posted on a label/sticker, inside or near the location of the filter grille/rack such that this information will be visible to a person replacing the air filter.

If the air filter installation location does not have the required information marked on a label or sticker, the indoor unit does not comply.

(d) **Air filter maximum face velocity allowed**. Record the maximum allowable face velocity value in ft/min required for compliance for each air filter.

(e) **Minimum air filter face area allowed**. For each air filter, divide the air filter design airflow rate in ft3/min by the maximum allowable face velocity in ft/min. The result is the minimum allowable total air filter face area in ft2 for the air filter. Convert the calculated face area from square feet to square inches by multiplying the face area in square feet by 144.

Note: the air filter face area is the nominal area of the side of the air filter that is perpendicular to the direction of the airflow through the air filter.

(f) **Installed air filter nominal dimensions**. Measure and record the installed nominal length dimension in inches and nominal width dimension in inches for the side of the filter that is perpendicular to the direction of the airflow through the air filter installed in the return air grille/rack of the indoor unit. If there is more than one filtered return air inlet for the indoor unit, measure and record the length dimension and width dimension of each of the air filters.

(g) **Installed air filter face area**. For each of the filtered return air inlets for the indoor unit, multiply the nominal air filter length dimension by the nominal air filter width dimension to calculate the nominal air filter face area in square inches.

(h) **Determining compliance**. For each of the filtered return air inlets for the indoor unit, if the installed air filter face area is greater than or equal to the minimum air filter face area allowed as determined in step (e), then the air filter complies. All of the indoor unit air filters that are required be sized and verified according to a face velocity specification shall comply, otherwise the indoor unit does not comply.

RA3.1.4.8 Verification of Air Filter Pressure Drop Rating

When compliance requires field verification to confirm that a ducted system's indoor unit air filter(s) comply with a minimum clean filter pressure drop requirement, the following steps shall be followed. When there is more than one filtered return air inlet for the indoor unit, all of the indoor unit's air filter devices shall be field verified.

(a) **Indoor unit design airflow rate**. Record the design airflow rate for the indoor unit in CFM as specified by the system designer. The design airflow rate shall be equal to or greater than the minimum airflow rate required for compliance with the standards. Alternatively, if the design airflow rate for the indoor unit is not available, calculate and record the nominal air handler airflow rate for the indoor unit in accordance with the specifications in RA3.1.4.2.2.

(b) **Air filter design airflow rate**. For indoor units with only one filtered return air inlet, the air filter design airflow rate in CFM is equal to the indoor unit design airflow rate determined in step (a). For indoor units with more than one filtered return air inlet, the system designer shall determine what portion of the total indoor unit airflow is equal to the air filter design airflow for each air filter, ensuring that the sum total of all individual air filter design airflow rates is equal to the total indoor unit design airflow rate determined in step (a).

(c) **Air filter grille/rack sticker.** Standards Section 150.0(m)12Biv requires that air filter installation locations shall have the air filter design airflow rate, and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate posted on a label/sticker, inside or near the location of the filter grille/rack such that this information will be visible to a person replacing the air filter.

Field inspection shall verify that each air filter installation location has the required sticker. If the air filter installation location does not have the required sticker, the indoor unit does not comply.

(d) **Air filter manufacturer's performance rating label**. Standards section 150.0(m)12E requires that the air filter placed in the filter grille/rack shall be labeled by the air filter manufacturer to disclose the clean filter pressure drop performance determined according to ASHRAE Standard 52.2 or AHRI Standard 680. The required air filter label information includes clean filter pressure drop ratings at a range of airflow rates.

Field inspection shall verify that the air filter installed in the filter grille/rack has the required performance rating label. If an installed air filter does not have the required manufacturer's performance rating label, then the indoor unit does not comply.

(e) **Determining clean filter pressure drop compliance**. Inspection of the air filter manufacturer's performance rating label shall verify that the air filter is rated to provide a clean filter pressure drop less than or equal to the value required for compliance, at an airflow rate greater than or equal to the design airflow for the filter. Interpolation of the manufacturer's airflow and pressure drop rating values published on the air filter performance rating label is allowed when determining compliance. Field diagnostic pressure measurements of operating indoor units to determine the pressure drop of installed air filters are not required for demonstrating compliance.

If all of the indoor unit air filters are rated to operate at a pressure drop less than or equal to the value required for compliance, and at an airflow rate greater than or equal to the design airflow for the air filter, then the indoor unit complies.

RA3.2 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Refrigerant Charge for Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps

RA3.2.1 Purpose and Scope

(a) The procedures in Appendix RA3.2 are for use for residential air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps to verify the systems have the required refrigerant charge.

(b) For dwelling units with multiple air conditioners or heat pumps, the procedures shall be applied to each system separately.

(c) Appendix RA3.2 defines two procedures, the Standard Charge Verification Procedure in Section RA3.2.2 and the Weigh-in Charging procedure in Section RA3.2.3.

(d) Sections 150.1(c)7 and 150.2(b)1F specify the requirements for minimum system airflow rates to be verified in conjunction with the refrigerant charge verification.

(e) Failure to follow the manufacturer’s installation and charging instructions may result in significant refrigeration system faults that may invalidate refrigerant charge and metering device verification results. The installer shall certify that he/she has conformed to the manufacturer’s instructions and specifications for charging the system prior to proceeding with the verification procedures in this appendix.

(f) In the case where the Energy Commission has approved an alternative protocol as described in RA1, the HVAC Installer and HERS Rater may choose to perform the alternative refrigerant charge verification procedure.

RA3.2.1.1 Scope of the Standard Charge Verification Procedure (RA3.2.2)

(a) The procedures in Section RA3.2.2 are applicable to ducted split system air-cooled air conditioners and ducted split system air-source heat pumps, and may be applicable to packaged air-cooled air conditioners and packaged air-source heat pumps.

(b) The procedures in Section RA3.2.2 require verification of the applicable minimum system airflow rate across the cooling coil when refrigerant charge is verified.

(c) The procedures in Section RA3.2.2 require verification (for applicable systems) that the metering device is operating properly.

(d) The procedures in Section RA3.2.2 may be used when the outdoor air temperature is 55°F or above.

(e) When refrigerant charge verification is required for compliance, the applicable procedures in Section RA3.2.2 shall be used by the HVAC installer after installing a new HVAC system or after altering refrigerant-containing components in an existing HVAC system, and after charging the air conditioner or heat pump system in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and specifications.

(f) The applicable procedures in Section RA3.2.2 shall always be used by the HERS Rater for verification of the system's refrigerant charge when HERS verification is required for compliance unless an applicable alternate procedure is available in Reference Residential Appendix RA1, or the Standards specify the Section RA3.2.3.2 procedure (observation of weigh-in) as mandatory for compliance, or as an available option for compliance and the HVAC installer elects to use the RA3.2.3.2 procedure for HERS verification.

(g) When the procedures in Section RA3.3.3.1.5 (alternative to compliance with minimum system airflow) are utilized for compliance, HERS verification compliance shall not use group sampling.

RA3.2.1.2 Scope of the Weigh-In Charging Procedure (RA3.2.3)

(a) The procedures in Section RA3.2.3 are applicable to air-cooled air conditioners or air-source heat pumps.

(b) The weigh-in charging procedure is an acceptable method for demonstrating compliance at any outdoor temperature.

(c) Use of the Section RA3.2.3 procedure does not exempt the system from compliance with all applicable minimum airflow rate verification requirements.

(d) When the procedures in Section RA3.2.3 are utilized by the HVAC installer, HERS verification compliance shall not use group sampling.

(e) The procedures in Section RA3.2.3.1 may be used by the HVAC installer as an alternative to the Standard Charge Verification Procedure in RA3.2.2, or as an alternative to any applicable Alternative Refrigerant Charge Verification Protocol in Reference Residential Appendix RA1.

(f) The procedures in Section RA3.2.3.1 shall be used by HVAC installers when refrigerant charge verification is required for compliance when the outdoor air temperature is below 55°F, and there is no applicable alternative refrigerant charge verification protocol in Reference Residential Appendix RA1 available for use with the system for outdoor temperatures below 55°F.

(g) The procedures in Section RA3.2.3.1 shall be used by HVAC installers when refrigerant charge verification is required for compliance when the standard charge verification procedure in RA3.2.2 is not applicable to the system that must demonstrate compliance, and there is no applicable alternative refrigerant charge verification protocol in Reference Residential Appendix RA1 available for use with the system.

(h) The procedures in Section RA3.2.3.1 shall not be utilized by HERS Raters for verification of refrigerant charge.

(i) The procedures in Section RA3.2.3.2 shall be utilized by HERS Raters for verification of refrigerant charge only when the Standards specify that the RA3.2.3.2 procedure shall be used for HERS verification compliance, otherwise only when the Standards specify the RA3.2.3.2 procedure is an available option, and the HVAC installer elects to use the RA3.2.3.2 procedure for HERS verification compliance.

RA3.2.2 Standard Charge Verification Procedure

This section specifies the standard charge verification procedure. Under this procedure, the refrigerant charge is verified using the "superheat charging method" for systems with fixed metering devices, or the "subcooling charging method" for systems with thermostatic expansion valves (TXV) or electronic expansion valves (EXV).

The following sections describe the required instrumentation; required calibration for the instrumentation; required diagnostic measurements; and the required calculations to determine results that must be compared to the criteria in Table RA3.2-1 to determine compliance.

Refrigerant charge verification utilizing the procedures in Section RA3.2.2 requires compliance with a minimum airflow rate across the cooling coil at the time of charge verification, as specified by Standards Sections 150.1(c)7Aib and 150.2(b)1Fiia as applicable.

Table RA3.2-1 summarizes the standard charge verification protocols and defines the corresponding compliance criteria that shall be used by system installers and HERS Raters.

Table RA3.2-1 – Refrigerant Charge Verification Protocols and Compliance Criteria

Case	User Application	Compliance Criteria	Procedure(s)
Standard Charge Verification Procedure - Fixed Metering Device Systems	Installer Testing at Final	55°F ≤ Outdoor Air Dry-bulb Temp ≤ 115°F Return Air Dry-bulb Temp ≥ 70°F Return Air Wet-bulb Temp ≤ 76°F Superheat tolerance ±5°F of the specified target	RA3.2.2.6.1
Standard Charge Verification Procedure - Fixed Metering Device Systems	HERS Rater Testing	55°F ≤ Outdoor Air Dry-bulb Temp ≤ 115°F Return Air Dry-bulb Temp ≥ 70°F Return Air Wet-bulb Temp ≤ 76°F Superheat tolerance ±8°F of the specified target	RA3.2.2.6.1
Standard Charge Verification Procedure - Variable Metering Device Systems	Installer Testing at Final	55°F ≤ Outdoor Air Dry-bulb Temp ≤ 120°F Return Air Dry-bulb Temp ≥ 70°F Subcooling tolerance ±3°F of the manufacturer-specified target[1] Metering Device tolerance: Superheat meets the Manufacturer's specifications or 4°F ≤ Superheat ≤ 25°F	RA3.2.2.6.2
Standard Charge Verification Procedure - Variable Metering Device Systems	HERS Rater Testing	55°F ≤ Outdoor Air Dry-bulb Temp ≤ 120°F Return Air Dry-bulb Temp ≥ 70°F Subcooling tolerance ±6°F of the manufacturer-specified target[1] and Subcooling ≥2°F Metering Device tolerance: Superheat meets the Manufacturer's specifications or 3°F ≤ Superheat ≤ 26°F	RA3.2.2.6.2

Note:

1. If a manufacturer-specified subcooling target value is not available or cannot be determined, the Executive Director may provide additional guidance for compliance.

The standard charge verification procedure detailed in this section may be used to demonstrate compliance when the outdoor temperature is within the manufacturer's specified temperature range, or the outdoor temperature is 55°F or higher, after the HVAC installer has installed and charged the system in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. The return dry bulb temperature shall be maintained above 70°F during the test.

This procedure does not relieve the installing contractor from any obligation to conform to the manufacturers' specifications for installation, refrigerant charge, or system operation. This procedure is used to determine compliance with Title 24, Part 6.

RA3.2.2.1 Minimum Qualifications for this Procedure

Persons who use this procedure to demonstrate compliance with Title 24 Part 6 shall be qualified to perform the following:

(a) Obtain accurate system pressure and saturation temperature readings utilizing digital refrigeration gauges.

(b) Obtain accurate temperature readings utilizing a digital thermometer and temperature sensors.

(c) Check calibration of digital refrigerant gauges using a known reference pressure.

(d) Check calibration of digital thermometer and temperature sensors using a known reference temperature.

(e) Determine the required or best location for temperature measurements in duct systems and on refrigerant lines.

(f) Calculate the measured superheat and subcooling.

(g) Determine the required superheat, based on the conditions present at the time of the test.

(h) Determine if measured values are accurate.

RA3.2.2.2 Instrumentation Specifications

Instrumentation for the procedures described in this section shall conform to the following specifications:

RA3.2.2.2.1 Digital Temperature Measurement Specifications

Temperature measurements shall be made utilizing digital temperature measurement instrumentation (combined sensor plus device for data acquisition, processing and reporting) that shall have dual channel capability in Celsius or Fahrenheit and conform to the following specifications:

RA3.2.2.2.1.1 *Dry-bulb Air Temperature Measurements*

Air temperature measurements made of supply or return airflow and the outdoor air entering the condensing unit shall meet the following specifications:

(a) Accuracy: ± 2°F.

(b) Resolution: 0.2°F.

RA3.2.2.2.1.2 *Wet-bulb Air Temperature Measurements Using Wetted Wick*

Air temperature measurements made of return airflow using the wetted wick method shall use a temperature sensor and a clean cotton wick wetted with distilled water. Temperature measurements using this method shall meet the following specifications:

(a) Accuracy: ± 2°F.

(b) Resolution: 0.2°F.

RA3.2.2.2.1.3 *Wet-bulb air Temperature Measurements Using Digital Hygrometer Device*

Air temperature measurements made of return airflow using a digital hygrometer device shall have a probe that is a minimum of 3 inches in length, and be capable of measurements for both dry-bulb and wet-bulb temperature. Dry-bulb and wet-bulb temperature measurements made with digital hygrometer devices shall meet the following specifications:

(a) Accuracy: ± 2°F wet-bulb temperature; or a calculated wet-bulb temperature based on accuracies of ± 3% RH and ± 2.0 degree F Dry bulb temperature.

(b) Resolution: 0.2°F.

RA3.2.2.2.1.4 *Refrigerant Lines - Pipe Temperature Measurement*

Temperature measurement of suction or liquid refrigerant lines using sensor mounting styles such as pipe-clamp sensors, Velcro strap-on, or an equivalent sensor device or sensor mounting method shall meet the following specifications:

(a) Accuracy: ± 2°F.

(b) Resolution: 0.2°F.

RA3.2.2.2.2 Temperature Sensor Specifications

RA3.2.2.2.2.1 *Response Time Qualification Specification for Air Temperature Sensors*

Measurements for verification of refrigerant charge require air temperature sensors that pass the following qualifying test:

(a) Using a test enclosure or test environment that is maintained at known dry bulb temperature T1;

(b) The temperature sensor subjected to the qualifying test shall be placed outside the test enclosure or test environment until its temperature has stabilized at a drybulb temperature T2;

(c) The absolute value of (T1 minus T2) shall be greater than 40ºF; and

(d) The sensor shall have a response time that produces the accuracy specified in Section RA3.2.2.2.1 within 90 seconds of insertion into the test enclosure or test environment.

RA3.2.2.2.2.2 *Response Time and Application Specification for Pipe Temperature Sensors*

Measurements for verification of refrigerant charge require two (2) pipe temperature sensors that pass the following qualifying test:

(a) Using test pipes in six sizes (1/4” dia., 3/16” dia., 3/8” dia., 3/4” dia., 7/8” dia., 1 1/8” dia.) that are maintained at a known temperature T1 in a test enclosure or test environment that is maintained at a known dry-bulb temperature T2;

(b) The absolute value of (T1 minus T2) is greater than 40ºF;

(c) The temperature sensor subjected to the qualifying test shall be placed in the test enclosure or test environment until its temperature has is stabilized at T2;

(d) The sensor shall have a response time that produces the accuracy specified in Section RA3.2.2.2.1.4 within 90 seconds of application of the sensor to one of the test pipes; and

(e) A sensor may be used for more than one pipe size if it passes the above test for each pipe size for which it is used.

RA3.2.2.2.3 Digital Refrigerant Gauge Specifications

Refrigerant pressure measurements shall be made utilizing digital measurement instrumentation. Measurements made with digital refrigerant pressure measurement devices shall meet the following specifications

(a) Accuracy: ± 7.0 psi liquid line pressure

(b) Accuracy: ± 3.5 psi suction pressure

As an alternative, two saturation pressure measurement sensors (SPMS) may be permanently installed by the equipment manufacturer, or in a manner and location approved by the equipment manufacturer for use for measuring the saturation pressure of the refrigerant in the evaporator coil and in the condenser coil. Refer to Reference Joint Appendix JA6.2 for additional specification for SPMS.

RA3.2.2.3 Measurement Access Hole (MAH) Specification

When required for compliance by Standards Section 150.1(c)7Aia, or when return plenum measurements are necessary for compliance with refrigerant charge verification requirements, a 5/8 inch (16 mm) diameter hole shall be provided as shown in Figure RA3.2-1.

Return plenum temperature measurements shall be taken at the location specified in Figure RA3.2-1 when performing the procedures in RA3.2. The measurement access shall be sealed to prevent leakage after the measurements have been completed.

The hole location shown in Figure RA3.2-1 can be applied to any one of the four sides of the return plenum. The hole location shall be labeled "Title 24 – Return Plenum Measurement Access" in at least 12-point type.

For air-handling units with the return located entirely within conditioned space (such as when an up-flow air handler is mounted on a pedestal in a closet in the dwelling, or when the return grille is an integral part of the air-handling unit), the return plenum measurement access hole is not required, and in this case the return air temperature measurements shall be taken at the return grill when performing the procedures in RA3.2.

Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for the hole location shown in Figure RA3.2-1 shall not be required to have holes as described in Figure RA3.2-1; however if return plenum measurements are required for compliance, an alternate location that provides access for making an accurate return plenum measurement shall be used.

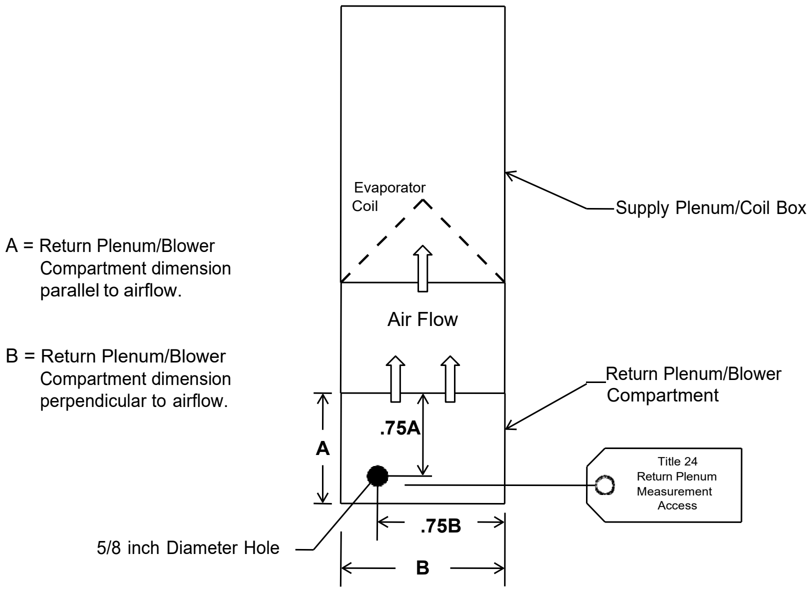


Figure RA3.2-1 Measurement Access Hole

RA3.2.2.4 Calibration

The accuracy of instrumentation shall be maintained using the following procedures. A sticker with the calibration check date shall be affixed to each instrument calibrated.

RA3.2.2.4.1 Digital Thermometer and Temperature Sensor Field Calibration Procedure

Thermometers with their temperature sensors shall be calibrated monthly to ensure that they are reading accurate temperatures.

The following procedure shall be used to check thermometer/temperature sensor calibration:

(a) Fill an insulated cup (foam) with crushed ice from distilled water. The ice shall completely fill the cup. Add distilled water to fill the cup.

(b) Insert two sensors into the center of the ice bath and attach them to the digital thermometer.

(c) Let the temperatures stabilize. The temperatures shall be 32 degrees Fahrenheit~~°F~~ (plus or minus 1 degrees Fahrenheit~~°F~~). If the temperature is off by more than 1 degrees Fahrenheit~~°F~~ make corrections according to the manufacturer's instructions. Any sensors that are off by more than 2 degrees Fahrenheit~~°F~~ shall be replaced.

(d) Switch the sensors and ensure that the temperatures read on both channels are still within plus or minus 1 degrees Fahrenheit~~°F~~ of 32 degrees Fahrenheit~~°F~~.

(e) Affix sticker with calibration check date onto sensor.

(f) Repeat the process for all sensors.

RA3.2.2.4.2 Digital Refrigerant Gauge Field Check Procedure

Refrigerant gauges shall be checked monthly to ensure that the gauges are reading the correct pressures and corresponding temperatures. The following procedure shall be used to check gauge calibration:

(a) Place a refrigerant cylinder in a stable temperature environment and let it acclimate for 4 hours minimum to stabilize to the ambient conditions.

(b) Attach a calibrated temperature sensor to the refrigerant cylinder using tape so that there is good contact between the cylinder and the temperature sensor.

(c) Insulate over the temperature sensor connection to the cylinder.

(d) Zero the low side and high side refrigerant gauges with all ports open to atmospheric pressure (no hoses attached).

(e) Re-install the hoses, attach the high side gauge to the refrigerant cylinder, and open the valves to measure the pressure in the refrigerant cylinder.

(f) Read the temperature of the sensor on the refrigerant cylinder.

(g) Using a pressure/temperature chart for the refrigerant, look up the pressure that corresponds to the temperature measured.

(h) If gauge does not read the correct pressure corresponding to the temperature, the gauge is out of calibration and needs to be recalibrated.

(i) Close the valve to the refrigerant cylinder, and bleed off a small amount of refrigerant to lower the high side pressure to give a corresponding temperature to between 45°F and 55°F.

(j) Open the valves between the high side gauge and low side gauge.

(k) If the two gauges corresponding refrigerant temperatures do not read within 1°F of each other, the low side gauge is out of calibration and needs to be recalibrated.

(l) Affix sticker with calibration check date onto refrigerant gauge.

RA3.2.2.4.3 Digital Hygrometer Calibration

Digital hygrometers shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommended procedures. When the manufacturer certifies the calibration for a limited time, the digital hygrometer shall be recalibrated according to the manufacturers required procedure when the calibration period expires.

RA3.2.2.5 Charge Verification Measurements

The following procedure shall be used to obtain measurements necessary to verify the required refrigerant charge.

(a) Follow the manufacturer's directions and adhere to the manufacturer's limitations on indoor ambient air temperature ($T_{\text{indoor air}}$) and outdoor ambient air temperature ($T_{\text{outdoor air}}$) applicable to this procedure. Ensure that the return air dry bulb temperature remains equal to or greater than 70°F prior to and while performing the measurements.

(b) Verify that a liquid line filter drier has been installed if required per outdoor condensing unit manufacturer's instructions, and installed with the proper orientation with respect to refrigerant flow, if applicable.

(c) Connect the refrigerant gauges to the service ports, taking normal precautions to not introduce air into the system.

(d) Attach one pipe temperature sensor to the suction line near the suction line (low side) service valve and attach one pipe temperature sensor to the liquid line near the liquid line (high side) service valve. The sensors should be positioned to make good contact with the surface of the refrigerant line.

(e) Attach a temperature sensor to measure the condenser entering air dry-bulb temperature. The sensor shall be placed so that it records the average condenser air entering temperature and is shaded from direct sun.

(f) Insert a dry-bulb temperature sensor into the return plenum at the "Title 24 – Return Plenum Measurement Access" detailed in Section RA3.2.2.3.

(g) Be sure that all cabinet panels that affect airflow are in place before making measurements. The temperature sensors shall remain attached to the system until the final charge is determined.

(h) Operate the air conditioner in cooling mode for 15 minutes to allow the temperatures and pressures to stabilize before taking any measurements. While the system is stabilizing, proceed with setting up the remaining temperature sensors if used.

(i) If used, place the cotton wick wet-bulb temperature sensor in distilled water, and ensure it is saturated. Do not get the dry-bulb temperature sensors wet.

(j) If the system has a fixed metering device, at 12 minutes, insert a wet-bulb temperature sensor into the return plenum at the "Title 24 – Return Plenum Measurement Access" detailed in Section RA3.2.2.3.

(k) If the system has a fixed metering device, after the system has operated for 15 minutes, and when the return plenum wet-bulb temperature has stabilized, using the temperature sensor already in place, measure and record the return (evaporator entering) air wet-bulb temperature ($T_{\text{return, wb}}$).

(l) Using the temperature sensor already in place, measure and record the return (evaporator entering) air dry-bulb temperature ($T_{\text{return, db}}$).

(m) Using the refrigerant gauge or saturation pressure measurement sensor already attached, measure and record the suction line (low side) pressure, and record the refrigerant saturation temperature corresponding to the measured low side pressure ($T_{evaporator, sat}$).

(n) Using the refrigerant gauge or saturation pressure measurement sensor already attached, measure and record the liquid line (high side) pressure, and record the refrigerant saturation temperature corresponding to the measured high side pressure ($T_{condenser, sat}$).

(o) Using the pipe temperature sensor already in place, measure and record the suction line temperature ($T_{suction,}$).

(p) Using the pipe temperature sensor already in place, measure and record the liquid line temperature (T_{liquid}).

(q) Using the dry-bulb temperature sensor already in place, measure and record the condenser (entering) air dry-bulb temperature ($T_{condenser, db}$).

The above measurements shall be used to verify the refrigerant charge as described in following sections.

RA3.2.2.6 Refrigerant Charge and Metering Device Calculations

The following steps describe the calculations to determine if the system meets the required refrigerant charge and metering device function using the measurements determined in Section RA3.2.2.5. If a system fails, then remedial actions must be taken by the HVAC system installer. Be sure to run the air conditioner for 15 minutes after the final adjustments before taking any measurements.

RA3.2.2.6.1 Fixed Metering Device Calculations - Superheat Charging Method

The Superheat Charging Method is used only for systems equipped with fixed metering devices. These include capillary tubes and piston-type metering devices.

(a) Calculate Actual Superheat as the suction line temperature minus the evaporator saturation temperature.

Actual Superheat = $T_{suction}$, – $T_{evaporator, sat}$.

(b) Determine and record the Target Superheat using Table RA3.2-2 or the manufacturer's superheat chart using the return air wet-bulb temperature ($T_{return, wb}$) and condenser air dry-bulb temperature ($T_{condenser, db}$).

(c) If a dash mark is read from Table RA3.2-2, the target superheat is less than 5°F. Note that a valid refrigerant charge verification test cannot be performed under these conditions. A severely undercharged unit will show over 9°F of superheat. However overcharged units cannot be detected from the superheat method under these conditions. The usual reason for a target superheat determination of less than 5°F is that outdoor conditions are too hot and the indoor conditions are too cool. One of the following is needed so a target superheat value can be obtained from Table RA3.2-2 either 1) turn on the space heating system and/or open the windows to warm up indoor temperature; or 2) retest at another time when conditions are different.

(d) Calculate the difference between actual superheat and target superheat (Actual Superheat - Target Superheat).

(e) In order to allow for inevitable differences in measurements, the Pass/Fail criteria are different for the Installer and the HERS Rater.

(f) For the Installer, if the difference is within the tolerance given as compliance criteria in Table RA3.2-1, then the system passes the required refrigerant charge criterion.

(g) For the HERS Rater inspecting the system, if the difference is within the criteria in Table RA3.2-1, then the system passes the required refrigerant charge criterion.

(h) For the Installer, if the system fails to meet the criteria, refrigerant needs to be added if the superheat is too high and refrigerant needs to be removed if it is too low. The installer needs to remain aware of other potential system faults. Adjust refrigerant charge and check the measurements as many times as necessary to pass the test. After the final adjustment has been made, allow the system to run 15 minutes before completing the final measurement procedure.

RA3.2.2.6.2 Variable Metering Device Calculations – Subcooling Charging Method

The Subcooling Charging Method is used for systems equipped with variable metering devices. These include Thermostatic Expansion Valves (TXV) and Electronic Expansion Valves (EXV). The amount of refrigerant is set based on the measured subcooling value, and the measured superheat value determines whether the metering device is working properly.

(a) Calculate Actual Subcooling as the condenser saturation temperature minus the liquid line temperature. Actual Subcooling = $T_{condenser,\ sat} - T_{liquid}$.

(b) Determine the Target Subcooling specified by the manufacturer.

(c) Calculate the deviation of the actual subcooling value from the target subcooling value. Subcooling Deviation = Actual Subcooling - Target Subcooling.

In order to allow for inevitable differences in measurements, the Pass/Fail criteria are different for the Installer than for the HERS Rater.

(d) If the Subcooling Deviation is within the subcooling tolerance allowed by Table RA3.2-1, then the system complies with the subcooling criterion, otherwise the system does not comply.

(e) For the HVAC installer, if the system does not comply, and if the Actual Subcooling value is greater than the Target Subcooling value, the Installer shall remove refrigerant. If the Actual Subcooling value is less than the Target Subcooling value, the Installer shall add refrigerant. The Installer shall determine whether there are other system faults that may affect the validity of the refrigerant charge verification procedure, and make any needed system repairs or adjustments to clear system faults prior to completion of the refrigerant charge verification procedure. The Installer shall adjust the refrigerant charge and check the measurements as many times as necessary to pass the test. After the final adjustment has been made, the Installer shall allow the system to run 15 minutes before completing the final measurement procedure.

(f) Calculate Actual Superheat as the suction line temperature minus the evaporator saturation temperature. Actual Superheat = $T_{suction,} – T_{evaporator,\ sat}$.

(g) If possible, determine the Superheat Range specified by the manufacturer.

(h) In order to allow for inevitable differences in measurements, the Pass/Fail criteria are different for the Installer than for the HERS Rater.

If the superheat is within the tolerance allowed by Table RA3.2-1, then the system complies with the metering device criterion, otherwise the system does not comply.

For the HVAC installer, if the system does not comply remedial actions must be undertaken to ensure the TXV or EXV is operating properly.

RA3.2.3 Weigh-In Charging Procedure

This section specifies the weigh-in charging procedure in which the weight of the required refrigerant charge is determined by using the manufacturer's specifications for a standard refrigerant charge weight and taking into account adjustment factors such as deviations in refrigerant line length and diameter. The calculated weight of refrigerant is then installed using a refrigerant scale. RA3.2.3 provides two procedures: Section RA3.2.3.1 shall be used by the HVAC installer when the weigh-in procedure is required by the Standards for compliance. Section RA3.2.3.2 shall be used by the HERS Rater when the Standards specify use of the procedure for compliance, or specify it as an optional procedure for compliance. The weigh-in charging procedure is an acceptable method for demonstrating compliance at any outdoor temperature, however if the weigh-in charging procedure is used, HERS verification of compliance cannot use group sampling.

HVAC installers shall use the weigh-in charging procedure in accordance with the space conditioning system manufacturer’s specifications.

Both the HVAC installer and the HERS Rater shall test the system airflow as specified by Standards Sections 150.1(c)7Aib and 150.2(b)1Fiia as applicable.

RA3.2.3.1 HVAC Installer - Weigh-In Charging Procedure

Split system air conditioners are shipped from the factory charged with a standard amount of refrigerant as indicated on the nameplate. The manufacturer-supplied refrigerant charge is expected to be the correct amount for the system based on a standard liquid line length and diameter. It is the responsibility of the HVAC installer to ensure that the charge is correct for each air conditioner and to adjust the charge based on liquid line dimensions that deviate from the manufacturer's standard line specification.

RA3.2.3.1.1 Procedure Options

There shall be two options for compliance using the weigh-in charging procedure:

RA3.2.3.1.1.1 *Weigh-in Charge Adjustment*

This option is applicable to a new system or existing system when a new outdoor unit is installed (with factory charge in outdoor unit). The HVAC installer shall weigh in lineset and indoor coil charge adjustment after evacuation of lineset and indoor coil. The documentation shall include the calculated charge adjustment for the lineset.

RA3.2.3.1.1.2 *Weigh-in Total Charge*

This option is applicable to all systems. The installer shall weigh in the total system charge after refrigerant recovery and evacuation of the entire system. The total system charge includes the nameplate charge for the outdoor unit and any adjustment for the lineset dimensions and indoor coil in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The documentation shall include the nameplate charge and the calculated lineset adjustment.

RA3.2.3.1.2 Minimum Qualifications for this Procedure

Persons who use this procedure to demonstrate compliance with Title 24, Part 6 shall be qualified to perform the following:

(a) Calculate the correct system charge based on the Manufacturer's standard charge and adjustments to the standard charge based on lineset dimensions and indoor coil.

(b) Obtain accurate refrigerant charge weight.

RA3.2.3.1.3 Instrumentation Specifications

Instrumentation for the procedures described in this section shall conform to the following specifications:

RA3.2.3.1.3.1 *Refrigerant Scale*

An electronic refrigerant scale having an accuracy equal to or better than ±0.5 oz or ± 0.5% of the measured value shall be used.

RA3.2.3.1.4 Calibration

The accuracy of instrumentation shall be maintained using the following procedures. A sticker with the calibration check date shall be affixed to each instrument calibrated.

RA3.2.3.1.4.1 *Refrigerant Scale*

Refrigerant scales shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommended procedures. When the manufacturer certifies the calibration for a limited time, the refrigerant scale shall be recalibrated according to the manufacturers required procedure when the calibration period expires.

RA3.2.3.1.5 Weigh-in Procedure

The weigh-in procedure shall be performed in accordance with all manufacturer specifications to confirm:

(a) Liquid line filter drier has been installed if required per outdoor condensing unit manufacturer's instructions, and installed with the proper orientation with respect to refrigerant flow, if applicable.

(b) The system is braised with dry nitrogen in the lines and indoor coil.

(c) The system is evacuated to 500 microns or less and, when isolated, rises no more than 300 microns over five minutes.

(d) The lineset correction is calculated based on the length and diameter of the lineset.

(e) The indoor coil correction to refrigerant weight is used if it is supplied by the manufacturer.

(f) The amount of charge calculated for the lineset correction (and indoor coil correction if available) is added or removed, or the total charge based on the lineset, indoor coil, and standard label charge is installed.

The HVAC Installer shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the manufacturer's specifications for these procedures have been met.

RA3.2.3.2 HERS Rater - Observation of Weigh-In Charging Procedure

When the Standards indicate this procedure is required, or is an option for compliance, the HERS Rater shall coordinate with the HVAC Installer to observe the weigh-in charging procedure.

HERS Rater shall observe and confirm:

(a) The system is evacuated to 500 microns or less and, when isolated, rises no more than 300 microns over five minutes.

(b) The lineset correction is calculated based on the length and diameter of the lineset, including the liquid line filter drier if required per outdoor condensing unit manufacturer instructions.

(c) The indoor coil correction to refrigerant weight is used if it is supplied by the manufacturer.

(d) The installer adds or removes the amount of charge calculated for the lineset correction or installs the total charge based on lineset, indoor coil, and standard label charge.

Table RA3.2-2 Target Superheat (Suction Line Temperature - Evaporator Saturation Temperature)

Return Air Wet-Bulb Temperature (°F) (T return, wb)

-	-	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76
Condenser Air Dry-Bulb Temperature (°F) (T condenser, db)	55	8.8	10.1	11.5	12.8	14.2	15.6	17.1	18.5	20.0	21.5	23.1	24.6	26.2	27.8	29.4	31.0	32.4	33.8	35.1	36.4	37.7	39.0	40.2	41.5	42.7	43.9	45.0
	56	8.6	9.9	11.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	19.	21.	22.	24.	25.	27.	28.	30.	31.	33.	34.	35.	37.	38.	39.	41.	42.	43.	44.
	57	8.3	9.6	11.	12.	13.	15.	16.	17.	19.	20.	22.	23.	25.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	34.	35.	36.	38.	39.	40.	41.	43.	44.
	58	7.9	9.3	10.	12.	13.	14.	16.	17.	19.	20.	21.	23.	24.	26.	27.	29.	30.	32.	33.	34.	36.	37.	38.	40.	41.	42.	43.
	59	7.5	8.9	10.	11.	13.	14.	15.	17.	18.	20.	21.	22.	24.	25.	27.	28.	30.	31.	32.	34.	35.	36.	38.	39.	40.	42.	43.
	60	7.0	8.4	9.8	11.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	19.	21.	22.	23.	25.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	33.	35.	36.	37.	39.	40.	41.	42.
	61	6.5	7.9	9.3	10.	12.	13.	14.	16.	17.	19.	20.	21.	23.	24.	26.	27.	29.	30.	31.	33.	34.	35.	37.	38.	39.	41.	42.
	62	6.0	7.4	8.8	10.	11.	13.	14.	15.	17.	18.	20.	21.	22.	24.	25.	27.	28.	29.	31.	32.	34.	35.	36.	38.	39.	40.	42.
	63	5.3	6.8	8.3	9.7	11.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	19.	20.	22.	23.	25.	26.	27.	29.	30.	32.	33.	34.	36.	37.	39.	40.	41.
	64	-	6.1	7.6	9.1	10.	12.	13.	14.	16.	17.	19.	20.	21.	23.	24.	25.	27.	28.	30.	31.	33.	34.	35.	37.	38.	39.	41.
	65	-	5.4	7.0	8.5	10.	11.	12.	14.	15.	17.	18.	19.	21.	22.	23.	25.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	33.	35.	36.	38.	39.	40.
	66	-		6.3	7.8	9.3	10.	12.	13.	15.	16.	18.	19.	20.	22.	23.	24.	26.	27.	29.	30.	32.	33.	34.	36.	37.	39.	40.
	67	-	-	5.5	7.1	8.7	10.	11.	13.	14.	16.	17.	18.	20.	21.	22.	24.	25.	27.	28.	30.	31.	33.	34.	35.	37.	38.	39.
	68	-	-	-	6.3	8.0	9.5	11.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	19.	20.	22.	23.	25.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	33.	35.	36.	38.	39.
	69	-	-	-	5.5	7.2	8.8	10.	11.	13.	14.	16.	17.	19.	20.	21.	22.	24.	26.	27.	29.	30.	32.	33.	34.	36.	37.	39.
	70	-	-	-	-	6.4	8.1	9.7	11.	12.	14.	15.	17.	18.	19.	20.	22.	23.	25.	27.	28.	30.	31.	33.	34.	35.	37.	38.
	71	-	-	-	-	5.6	7.3	8.9	10.	12.	13.	15.	16.	17.	19.	20.	21.	23.	24.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	34.	35.	36.	38.
	72	-	-	-	-	-	6.4	8.1	9.8	11.	12.	14.	15.	17.	18.	19.	21.	22.	24.	25.	27.	29.	30.	32.	33.	35.	36.	37.
	73	-	-	-	-	-	5.6	7.3	9.0	10.	12.	13.	15.	16.	17.	19.	20.	22.	23.	25.	26.	28.	30.	31.	33.	34.	36.	37.
	74	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.5	8.2	9.9	11.	13.	14.	15.	17.	18.	20.	21.	23.	24.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	34.	35.	37.
	75	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.6	7.4	9.2	10.	12.	13.	15.	16.	18.	19.	21.	22.	24.	25.	27.	29.	30.	32.	33.	35.	36.
	76	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.6	8.4	10.	11.	13.	14.	16.	17.	18.	20.	22.	23.	25.	27.	28.	30.	31.	33.	34.	36.
	77	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.7	7.5	9.3	11.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	20.	21.	23.	24.	26.	28.	29.	31.	32.	34.	36.
	78	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.7	8.5	10.	11.	13.	14.	16.	17.	19.	21.	22.	24.	26.	27.	29.	30.	32.	34.	35.
	79	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.9	7.7	9.5	11.	12.	14.	15.	17.	18.	20.	22.	23.	25.	27.	28.	30.	32.	33.	35.
	80	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.9	8.7	10.	12.	13.	15.	16.	18.	20.	21.	23.	25.	26.	28.	29.	31.	33.	34.
	81	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.0	7.9	9.7	11.	12.	14.	16.	17.	19.	21.	22.	24.	26.	27.	29.	31.	32.	34.
	82	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.2	7.1	8.9	10.	12.	13.	15.	17.	18.	20.	22.	24.	25.	27.	29.	30.	32.	34.
	83	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.3	8.2	9.9	11.	13.	14.	16.	18.	20.	21.	23.	25.	26.	28.	30.	32.	33.
	84	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.5	7.4	9.2	10.	12.	14.	16.	17.	19.	21.	23.	24.	26.	28.	29.	31.	33.
	85	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.6	8.5	10.	11.	13.	15.	17.	19.	20.	22.	24.	26.	27.	29.	31.	32.
	86	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.8	7.8	9.6	11.	13.	15.	16.	18.	20.	22.	23.	25.	27.	29.	30.	32.
	87	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.0	7.0	8.9	10.	12.	14.	16.	18.	19.	21.	23.	25.	26.	28.	30.	32.
	88	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.3	8.2	10.	12.	13.	15.	17.	19.	21.	22.	24.	26.	28.	30.	31.
	89	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.5	7.5	9.4	11.	13.	15.	17.	18.	20.	22.	24.	26.	27.	29.	31.

Shaded area requires return plenum temperature of 70°F or higher.

Table RA3.2-2 Target Superheat (Suction Line Temperature - Evaporator Saturation Temperature)

		Return Air Wet-Bulb Temperature (°F) (T return, wb)																										
		50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76
Condenser Air Dry-Bulb Temperature (°F) (T condenser, db)	90	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.8	8.8	10.9	12.8	14.6	16.5	18.3	20.1	22.0	23.8	25.6	27.5	29.3	31.1
	91	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.1	8.1	10.3	12.2	14.1	15.9	17.8	19.7	21.5	23.4	25.2	27.1	28.9	30.8
	92	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.4	7.5	9.8	11.7	13.5	15.4	17.3	19.2	21.1	22.9	24.8	26.7	28.5	30.4
	93	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.8	9.2	11.1	13.0	14.9	16.8	18.7	20.6	22.5	24.4	26.3	28.2	30.1
	94	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.2	8.7	10.6	12.5	14.4	16.3	18.2	20.2	22.1	24.0	25.9	27.8	29.7
	95	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.6	8.1	10.0	12.0	13.9	15.8	17.8	19.7	21.6	23.6	25.5	27.4	29.4
	96	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	7.5	9.5	11.4	13.4	15.3	17.3	19.2	21.2	23.2	25.1	27.1	29.0
	97	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	7.0	8.9	10.9	12.9	14.9	16.8	18.8	20.8	22.7	24.7	26.7	28.7
	98	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.4	8.4	10.4	12.4	14.4	16.4	18.3	20.3	22.3	24.3	26.3	28.3
	99	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.8	7.9	9.9	11.9	13.9	15.9	17.9	19.9	21.9	24.0	26.0	28.0
	100	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.3	7.3	9.3	11.4	13.4	15.4	17.5	19.5	21.5	23.6	25.6	27.7
	101	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.8	8.8	10.9	12.9	15.0	17.0	19.1	21.1	23.2	25.3	27.3
	102	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.2	8.3	10.4	12.4	14.5	16.6	18.6	20.7	22.8	24.9	27.0
	103	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.7	7.8	9.9	11.9	14.0	16.1	18.2	20.3	22.4	24.5	26.7
	104	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.2	7.2	9.3	11.5	13.6	15.7	17.8	19.9	22.1	24.2	26.3
	105	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.7	8.8	11.0	13.1	15.2	17.4	19.5	21.7	23.8	26.0
	106	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.2	8.3	10.5	12.6	14.8	17.0	19.1	21.3	23.5	25.7
	107	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.7	7.9	10.0	12.2	14.4	16.6	18.7	21.0	23.2	25.4

	108	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.2	7.4	9.5	11.7	13.9	16.1	18.4	20.6	22.8	25.1
	109	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.9	9.1	11.3	13.5	15.7	18.0	20.2	22.5	24.7
	110	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.4	8.6	10.8	13.1	15.3	17.6	19.9	22.1	24.4
	111	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.9	8.1	10.4	12.6	14.9	17.2	19.5	21.8	24.1
	112	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5.4	7.6	9.9	12.2	14.5	16.8	19.1	21.5	23.8
	113	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	7.2	9.5	11.8	14.1	16.4	18.8	21.1	23.5
	114	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.7	9.0	11.4	13.7	16.1	18.4	20.8	23.2
	115	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.2	8.6	10.9	13.3	15.7	18.1	20.5	22.9

RA3.3 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Forced Air System Airflow Rate, Fan Watt Draw, and Determination of Fan Efficacy.

RA3.3 contains procedures for:

(a) Verification of improved system airflow rate (cfm) in ducted split system and packaged space conditioning systems serving low-rise residential buildings.

(b) Verification of reduced fan power (Watt) draw achieved through improved air distribution system design, including more efficient motors and ducts that have less resistance to airflow.

(c) Determination of fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) utilizing simultaneous measurement of system Watt draw and airflow rate.

RA3.3.1 Instrumentation Specifications

The instrumentation for the diagnostic measurements shall conform to the following specifications:

RA3.3.1.1 Pressure Measurements

All pressure measurements shall be performed with measurement systems (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of ± 1% of pressure reading or ± 0.2 Pa (.0008 inches water) (whichever is greater). All pressure measurements within the duct system shall be made with static pressure probes such as Dwyer A303 or equivalent.

When required for compliance with Standards Section 150.0(m)13A, or when supply plenum pressure measurements are used for plenum pressure matching or flow grid measurements, a 5/16 inch (8 mm) diameter hole for a static pressure probe (HSPP) or a permanently affixed static pressure probe (PSPP) shall be provided as shown in Figure RA3.3-1.

When supply plenum pressure measurements are used for plenum pressure matching or flow grid measurements, the supply plenum pressure measurement shall be taken at the supply plenum measurement access location as shown in Figure RA3.3-1.

The hole location shown in Figure RA3.3-1 can be applied to any one of the four sides of the coil box or supply plenum. The hole location shall be labeled "Title 24 – Supply Plenum Measurement Access" in at least 12-point type.

Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for the hole location shown in Figure RA3.3-1 shall not be required to have holes as described in Figure RA3.3-1; however if supply plenum pressure measurements are required for compliance, an alternate location that provides access for making an accurate supply plenum pressure measurement shall be used.

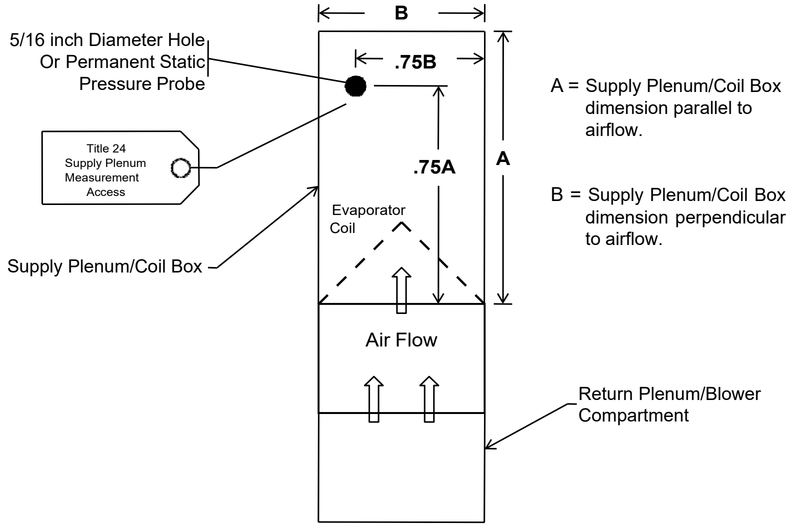


Figure RA3.3-1 Hole for the Placement of a Static Pressure Probe (HSPP) or Permanently Installed Static Pressure Probe (PSPP)

RA3.3.1.2 Airflow Rate Measurements

All measurements of system airflow rates shall be made with an airflow rate measurement apparatus (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of ± 7% of reading or ± 5 cfm whichever is greater.

RA3.3.1.3 Fan Watt Draw Measurements

All measurements of air handler Watt draws shall be made with true power measurement systems (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of ± 2% of reading or ± 10 watts whichever is greater.

RA3.3.2 Apparatus

RA3.3.2.1 System Airflow Rate Measurement Apparatus

Forced air system airflow rate shall be measured using one of the apparatuses listed in Section RA3.3.2. The apparatus shall produce airflow rate measurements that conform to the accuracy requirements specified in Section RA3.3.1.2 for measurements of residential forced air system airflow at system return grilles of single and multiple return duct systems.

The airflow rate measurement apparatus manufacturers shall publish in their product documentation, specifications for how their airflow measurement apparatuses are to be used for accurately measuring residential system airflow at system return grilles of single and multiple return duct systems.

The airflow measurement apparatus manufacturers shall certify to the Energy Commission that use of the apparatus in accordance with the specifications given in the manufacturer's product documentation will produce measurement results that are within the accuracy required by Section RA3.3.1.2.

For the airflow measurement apparatuses that are certified to the Commission as meeting the accuracy required by Section RA3.3.1.2, the following information will be posted on the Energy Commission website, making the information available to all people involved in the airflow verification compliance process:

(a) The product manufacturers' model numbers for the airflow measurement apparatuses.

(b) The product manufacturers' product documentation that gives the specifications for use of the airflow measurement apparatuses to accurately measure residential system airflow at system return grilles of single and multiple return duct systems.

A manufacturer's certification to the Commission of the accuracy of the airflow measurement apparatus, and submittal to the Commission of the product documentation that specifies the proper use of the airflow measurement apparatus to produce accurate airflow rate measurements shall be prerequisites for allowing the manufacturer's airflow measurement apparatus to be used for conducting the system airflow verification procedures in Section RA3.3 for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

RA3.3.2.1.1 Fan Flowmeter

The apparatus for measuring the system airflow rate shall consist of a duct pressurization and airflow measurement device (subsequently referred to as a fan flowmeter) that meets all applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.3.1, and a static pressure measurement device that meets the specifications in Section RA3.3.1.1. The fan flowmeter shall be attached at the inlet to a return duct from the conditioned space. If the system is not a multi-zoned automatic dampered system, the fan flowmeter may be attached at the air handler blower compartment door as an alternative to placement at the inlet to a return duct from conditioned space. The fan flowmeter shall be attached at a point where all the airflow through the system will flow through it. When the air handler blower compartment door attachment alternative is used, an air barrier must be placed between the return duct system and the air handler inlet(s). All registers shall be in their normal operating condition. The static pressure probe shall be fixed to the supply plenum at the location specified in Section RA3.3.1.1 so that it is not moved during this test.

RA3.3.2.1.2 Flow Grid

The apparatus for measuring the system airflow rate shall consist of a flow measurement device (subsequently referred to as a flow grid) that meets all applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.3.1 and a digital pressure measurement device that meets the specifications in Section RA3.3.1.1. The flow grid shall be attached at a point where all the fan airflow will flow through the flow grid. All registers shall be in their normal operating condition. The static pressure probe shall be fixed to the supply plenum at the location specified in Section RA3.3.1.1 so that it is not moved during this test.

RA3.3.2.1.3 Powered Flow Capture Hood

A powered and pressure balanced flow capture hood (subsequently referred to as a Powered Flow Hood[1]) that has the capability to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (.0008 inches water) and meets the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.3.1 may be used to verify the system airflow rate at the return grille(s) if the powered flow hood has a flow capture area at least as large as the return grille in all dimensions. The fan adjustment needed to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (.0008 inches water) shall be provided by either an automatic control or a manual control operated in accordance with the apparatus manufacturer's instructions specified in the manufacturer's product documentation. All supply registers shall be in their normal operating position. Measurement(s) shall be taken at the return grille(s).

RA3.3.2.1.4 Traditional Flow Capture Hood

A traditional flow capture hood[2] meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.3.1 may be used to verify the system airflow rate at the return grille(s) if the device has a capture area at least as large as the return grille in all dimensions. All registers shall be in their normal operating position. Measurement(s) shall be taken at the return grille(s).

RA3.3.2.2 Air Handler Watt Draw Measurement Apparatus

The air handler watt draw shall be measured using one of the following apparatuses.

RA3.3.2.2.1 Portable Watt Meter

The apparatus for measuring the air handler watt draw shall consist of a wattmeter meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.3.1. The measuring device shall be attached to measure the air handler fan watt draw. All registers and blower access panel(s) shall be in their normal operating condition.

When required to measure fan watt draw in packaged and heat pump units, it is recommended to use portable true power clamp-on meters to provide flexibility for isolating the correct fan wires serving in packaged or heat pump units. Note: Higher voltage clamp-on meters may be required for packaged and heat pump units.

RA3.3.2.2.2 Utility Revenue Meter

The apparatus for measuring the air handler watt draw shall consist of the utility revenue meter meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.3.1 and a stopwatch that provides

---

[1] Also known as "active" flow hood, or "fan assisted" flow hood.

[2] Also known as "non-powered" flow hood, "standard" flow hood, "commercially available" flow hood, or "passive" flow hood.

measurements in units of seconds. All registers and blower access panel(s) shall be in their normal operating condition.

RA3.3.2.2.3 Digital Utility Revenue Meter

The apparatus for measuring the air handler watt draw shall consist of the digital utility revenue meter meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.3.1 that provides direct digital display of the Watt draw. All registers and blower access panel(s) shall be in their normal operating condition.

RA3.3.3 Procedures

RA3.3.3.1 System Airflow Rate Measurement Procedures

When required for compliance, the installed system's airflow shall be diagnostically tested using one of the methods specified in this section.

For systems utilizing an intentional ducted ventilation airflow from outside the conditioned space into the return system, the outside airflow may be included in the system airflow if that flow occurs in all operating modes of the HVAC system.

Diagnostic system airflow rate measurement values shall be converted to fan cfm/ton by dividing the measured system airflow rate (Qah) by the nominal tons of condensing unit cooling capacity for the air conditioner.

The measured airflow rate shall be expressed in cubic feet per minute of standard air (standard air has a density of 0.075 lb/ft^3). When the airflow measurement is made at altitudes significantly different from sea level or at temperatures significantly different from 70°F, the airflow indicated on the device gauge may differ from the standard CFM by as much as 15 percent. Corrections from indicated to standard CFM shall be made using the procedure specified by the airflow measurement device manufacturer.

RA3.3.3.1.1 System Airflow Rate Measurement Using Plenum Pressure Matching and Fan Flowmeter

This system airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures:

(a) If the fan flowmeter is to be connected to the air handler outside the conditioned space, then the door or access panel between the conditioned space and the air handler location shall be opened.

(b) With the system fan on at the maximum speed used in the installation (the cooling speed when air conditioning is present), measure the pressure difference (in Pa) between the supply plenum and the conditioned space (Psp). Psp is the target pressure to be maintained during the system airflow tests. Place the pressure probe in the Supply Pressure Measurement Location described in Section RA3.3.1.1. Adjust the probe to achieve the highest pressure and then firmly attach the probe to ensure that it does not move during the system airflow test.

(c) If the fan flowmeter is to be connected to the air handler at the access, block the return duct system from the plenum upstream of the air handler fan and the fan flowmeter. Filters are often located in an ideal location for this blockage.

(d) Attach the fan flowmeter to the duct system at the inlet to one return duct from the conditioned space with the grille and filter removed (if there is more than one system return grille, block off all return grilles other than the one used for this measurement. Alternatively the fan flowmeter may be placed at the air handler.

(e) Turn on the system fan and the fan flowmeter, adjust the fan flowmeter until the pressure between supply plenum and conditioned space matches Psp.

(f) Record the flow through the fan flowmeter (Qah, cfm) - this is the diagnostic system airflow. In some systems, system fan and fan flowmeter combinations may not be able to produce enough flow to reach Psp. In this case record the maximum flow (Qmax, cfm) and pressure (Pmax) between the supply plenum and the conditioned space. The following equation shall be used to correct measured system flow and pressure (Qmax and Pmax) to operating condition at operating pressure (Psp).

Equation RA3.3-1 Air Handler Flow

Qah = Qmax x (Psp/Pmax) ^0.5

RA3.3.3.1.2 System Airflow Rate Measurement Using Flow Grid

The system airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures:

(a) With the system fan on at the maximum speed used in the installation (the cooling speed when air conditioning is present), measure the pressure difference (in Pa) between the supply plenum and the conditioned space (Psp). Place the pressure probe in the Supply Pressure Measurement Location described in Section RA3.3.1.1. Adjust the probe to achieve the highest pressure and then firmly attach the probe to ensure that it does not move during the system airflow test.

(b) The flow grid shall be attached at a point where all the system air flows through the flow grid. If there are multiple return grilles in the duct system, flow grids may be used to measure airflow at the return grilles, but only by installing a flow grid in each return grill and making simultaneous measurements of all return grill airflows.

(c) Re-measure the system operating pressure with the flow grid in place.

(d) Measure the airflow through the flow grid (Qgrid) and the test pressure (Ptest). If multiple flow grids are used Qgrid is the sum of the flows through each of the flow grids.

(e) The following equation for air handler flow shall be used to correct flow through the flow grid and pressure (Qgrid and Ptest) to operating condition at operating pressure (Psp).

Equation RA3.3-2 Air Handler Flow

Qah = Qgrid x (Psp/Ptest) ^0.5

RA3.3.3.1.3 System Airflow Rate Measurement Using Powered Flow Capture Hood

The system airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures; all registers shall be fully open, and the air filter shall be installed. Turn on the system fan at the cooling speed and measure the airflow at the return grille(s) with a calibrated powered flow hood to determine the total system return airflow. Operation of the powered flow hood shall conform to the specifications in the manufacturer's product documentation. For multiple return systems, the total system return airflow (Qah, cfm) shall be the sum of the airflow measurements at each of the system's return grilles.

RA3.3.3.1.4 System Airflow Rate Measurement Using Traditional Flow Capture Hood

The system airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures; all registers shall be fully open, and the air filter shall be installed. Turn on the system fan at the cooling speed and measure the airflow at the return grille(s) with a calibrated traditional flow capture hood to determine the total system return airflow. For multiple return systems, the total system return airflow (Qah, cfm) shall be the sum of the airflow measurements at each of the system's return grilles.

RA3.3.3.1.5 Alternative to Compliance with Minimum System Airflow Requirements for Altered Systems

When an altered space conditioning system is unable to demonstrate compliance with the applicable minimum system airflow rate across the cooling coil required for refrigerant charge verification compliance, the system shall instead comply with Section RA3.3.3.1.5.1 below. If the remedial actions in Section RA3.3.3.1.5.1 fail to bring the system into compliance with the applicable minimum system airflow rate, the installer shall complete the refrigerant charge verification utilizing the highest system airflow rate attainable.

RA3.3.3.1.5.1 *Remedial Actions*

The installer shall attempt to correct non-compliant system airflow by performing the following remedial actions:

a) Check to determine that the air filter media is clean. If the air filter media is dirty, then replace it with clean filter media.

b) Open all registers and dampers and remove any obstructions.

c) Replace crushed, blocked or restricted ducts if possible.

d) Check to determine that the evaporator coil is clean, or that there are no obstructions to airflow through the evaporator coil. If the evaporator coil is dirty or blocked with debris, if possible, clean the evaporator coil using a method approved by the manufacturer.

e) Set the air handler fan to high speed for cooling, and ensure that the blower wheel and motor are operating properly, within manufacturer’s specifications.

f) Check to determine whether the return duct system or return filter grille is sized too small for the installed system. If the return duct or return grille is sized too small, if possible, perform applicable alterations work on the return duct system or return grille in order to improve the system airflow rate.

When performing these remedial actions determines that there is a fault, a corrective action shall be performed if possible. In many cases, airflow can be improved by adding a return duct and filter grille, or enlarging the existing return duct or filter grille. Alteration of the return duct system is an alternative that shall be considered if applicable to the existing system, and if other remedial actions do not improve the airflow. Alteration of the return duct system to bring the system airflow rate into compliance is expected to be attainable for systems with ducts in an attic space with sufficient clearances for accommodating improvements to the return duct system.

RA3.3.3.1.5.2 *Installer Compliance*

For each of the listed remedial actions, the HVAC installer shall certify that the remedial action was performed, and indicate whether the action was completed successfully or was not completed successfully. When a remedial action was not completed successfully the installer shall indicate on the installation certificate the reason the action was not completed successfully.

RA3.3.3.1.5.3 *HERS Rater Compliance*

The HERS Rater shall review the information submitted on the installation certificate and perform follow-up communications with the HVAC installer or the homeowner. The system complies if the HERS Rater determines the remedial actions have been performed, and the information reported on the installation certificate is valid.

RA3.3.3.2 Air Handler Fan Watt Draw Measurement Procedures

The diagnostic air handler watt draw shall be measured using one of the following methods:

RA3.3.3.2.1 Air Handler Watt Draw Measurement Using Portable Watt Meter

The air handler watt draw measurement shall be performed using the following procedures; all registers shall be fully open, and the air filter shall be installed. Turn on the system fan at the maximum speed used in the installation (usually the cooling speed when air conditioning is present; usually the cooling speed with outdoor air introduction if ventilation is provided through the return duct system) and measure the fan watt draw (Wfan).

When required to measure fan watt draw in packaged and heat pump units, it is recommended to use portable true power clamp-on meters to provide flexibility for isolating the correct fan wires serving in packaged or heat pump units. Note: Higher voltage clamp-on meters may be required for packaged and heat pump units.

RA3.3.3.2.2 Air Handler Watt Draw Measurement Using Utility Revenue Meter

The air handler watt draw measurement shall be performed using the following procedures; all registers shall be fully open, and the air filter shall be installed. Turn on the system fan at the maximum speed used in the installation (usually the cooling speed when air conditioning is present; usually the cooling speed with outdoor air introduction if ventilation is provided through the return duct system) and turn off every circuit breaker except the one exclusively serving the air handler. Record the Kh factor on the revenue meter, count the number of full revolutions of the meter wheel over a period exceeding 90 seconds. Record the number of revolutions (Nrev) and time period (trev, seconds). Compute the air handler watt draw (Wfan) using the following formula:

Equation RA3.3-3 Air Handler Fan Watt Draw Wfan = (Kh x Nrev x 3600) / trev

Return all circuit breakers to their original positions.

RA3.3.3.2.3 Air Handler Watt Draw Measurement Using Digital Utility Revenue Meter

The air handler watt draw measurement shall be performed using the following procedures; all registers shall be fully open, and the air filter shall be installed. Turn on the system fan at the maximum speed used in the installation (usually the cooling speed when air conditioning is present; usually the cooling speed with outdoor air introduction if ventilation is provided through the return duct system) and turn off every circuit breaker except the one exclusively serving the air handler. Read the Watt draw from the digital utility meter digital display. Return all circuit breakers to their original positions.

RA3.3.3.3 Determination of Forced Air System Fan Efficacy

Demonstrating compliance with fan efficacy requirements requires simultaneous measurement of the system airflow rate using Section RA3.3.3.1 procedures and fan Watt draw using Section RA3.3.3.2 procedures. The results of the simultaneous airflow rate and fan Watt draw measurements are used for calculation of a value for the forced air system fan efficacy as follows:

(a) The measured value for fan Watt draw (Watt) shall be divided by the measured value for airflow rate (cfm) to determine the fan efficacy (Watt/cfm).

RA3.3.3.4 Determining Compliance with Fan Efficacy or System Airflow Requirements

Compliance with the requirements for improved airflow or for improved fan efficacy both require simultaneous measurement of airflow and fan Watts. The simultaneous measurements shall be used to calculate the following values used to determine compliance:

RA3.3.3.4.1 Airflow Calculation (cfm/ton)

For packaged systems, and for split systems with only one indoor unit, the ~~The~~ measured value for airflow (cfm) shall be converted to cfm per ton by dividing the measured system airflow rate by the nominal tons of condensing unit cooling capacity ~~for the air conditioner~~.

For indoor units of multiple-split systems, the measured value for airflow in cfm shall be converted into cfm per ton by dividing the measured indoor unit airflow rate by the nominal tons of indoor unit cooling coil capacity.

RA3.3.3.4.2 Fan Efficacy Calculation (Watt/cfm)

The measured value for fan Watt draw (Watt) shall be divided by the measured value for airflow rate (cfm) to determine the fan efficacy (Watt/cfm).

RA3.3.3.4.3 Compliance Criteria

In order to comply with either the fan efficacy requirement, or the system airflow requirement, the following criteria shall be met:

(a) The system airflow (cfm/ton) shall meet or exceed the system airflow compliance criteria specified in the Standards or on the Certificate of Compliance as applicable.

(b) The calculated value for fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) shall be equal to or less than the fan efficacy compliance criterion specified in the Standards or on the Certificate of Compliance as applicable.

RA3.3.4 Verification of Central Fan Ventilation Cooling Systems (CFVCS)

When field verification and diagnostic testing of a central fan ventilation cooling system is required for compliance credit for the performance standards set forth in Standards Section 150.1(b), the CFVCS shall be verified according to the procedures in this section.

RA3.3.4.1 CFVCS Airflow Rate Measurements.

The CFVCS airflow shall be verified according to the applicable procedures specified in RA3.3.3.1, to measure and record the following system airflow rates:

a. The system airflow at high fan speed as required for compliance with Standards Section 150.0(m)13.

b. The system airflow rate at the speed used for ventilation cooling as specified on the Certificate of Compliance for the CFVCS.

RA3.3.4.2 CFVCS Air Handler Fan Watt Draw Measurements.

The CFVCS airflow shall be verified according to the applicable procedures specified in RA3.3.3.2, to measure and record the following system airflow Watt draw values:

a. The system Watt draw at high fan speed as required for compliance with Standards Section 150.0(m)13.

b. The system Watt draw at the speed used for ventilation cooling as specified on the Certificate of Compliance for the CFVCS.

RA3.3.4.3 Determination of CFVCS Fan Efficacy

Demonstrating compliance with fan efficacy requirements requires simultaneous measurement of the system airflow rate using Section RA3.3.4.1 procedures and fan Watt draw using Section RA3.3.4.2 procedures. The results of the simultaneous airflow rate and fan Watt draw measurements shall be used for calculation of a value for the forced air system fan efficacy as follows:

a. The measured value for fan Watt draw (Watt) at high fan speed shall be divided by the measured value for airflow rate (cfm) at the high fan speed to determine the fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) for the CFVCS at high fan speed.

b. The measured value for fan Watt draw (Watt) at the ventilation fan speed shall be divided by the measured value for airflow rate (cfm) at the ventilation fan speed to determine the fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) for the CFVCS at ventilation fan speed.

RA3.3.4.4 Determining Compliance with Fan Efficacy and System Airflow Requirements

Compliance with the requirements for airflow rate and fan efficacy require that the Watt draw and airflow rate measurements are made simultaneously at both high speed and ventilation speed. The simultaneous measurements shall be used to calculate the following values used to determine compliance:

RA3.3.4.4.1 Fan Efficacy Calculation (Watt/cfm)

The measured value for fan Watt draw (Watt) shall be divided by the measured value for airflow rate (cfm) to determine the fan efficacy (Watt/cfm).

RA3.3.4.5 Compliance Criteria

In order for the CFVCS to comply, the requirements in both subsections a and b below shall be met:

a. The system airflow (cfm/ton) shall meet or exceed the system airflow compliance criteria specified on the Certificate of Compliance at both the high fan speed, and the ventilation fan speed.

b. The calculated value for fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) shall be equal to or less than the fan efficacy compliance criterion specified on the Certificate of Compliance at both the high fan speed, and the ventilation fan speed.

RA3.4 Field Verification of Installed HVAC System Components and Devices

RA3.4.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of these procedures is to verify that residential space cooling systems and heat pumps have the required components to achieve the energy efficiency claimed in the compliance documents. The procedures apply when a Fault Indicator Display (FID) is specified for split system equipment, or when an HSPF/HSPF2, SEER/SEER2, or EER/EER2 higher than the default is claimed. For dwelling units with multiple systems, the procedures shall be applied to each system separately.

The installer shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the components required for compliance have been installed.

RA3.4.2 Fault Indicator Display (FID) Verification Procedure

The FID verification procedure shall consist of visual inspection to confirm that the FID is installed on the system, and that the manufacturer has certified to the Energy Commission that the FID model meets the applicable requirements of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. In addition, the space conditioning system shall comply with the procedures specified in Sections RA3.4.2.1, or RA3.4.2.2, or RA3.4.2.3.

RA3.4.2.1 Verification of installation of a FID with "self diagnostic reporting" functionality when outdoor air temperature is less than 55F

The space conditioning system installer shall use the weigh-in charging procedure in Section RA3.2.3.1 to comply with refrigerant charge requirements. HERS verification compliance for the refrigerant charge requirement shall be satisfied by visual inspection to confirm the system has a FID installed, and confirming the installed FID "self diagnostic reporting function" indicates FID sensors and internal processes are operating within the FID device's specified design parameters.

RA3.4.2.2 Verification of Installation of a FID that does not have "self diagnostic reporting" functionality when outdoor air temperature is less than 55F

The space conditioning system installer shall use the weigh-in charging procedure in Section RA3.2.3.1 to comply with the refrigerant charge requirements, and HERS verification compliance for the refrigerant charge requirement shall be delayed until a time when the outdoor air temperature is equal to or greater than 55F, at which time the procedure in RA3.4.2.3 shall be performed.

RA3.4.2.3 Verification of Installation of a FID when the outdoor air temperature is equal to or greater than 55F

When the outdoor air temperature is warmer than 55F, the space conditioning system installer shall use either the standard charge verification procedure specified in RA3.2.2, the weigh-in charging procedure specified in RA3.2.3.1, or an approved alternative procedure as specified in RA1, to comply with the refrigerant charge verification requirement. HERS verification compliance for the refrigerant charge requirement shall be validation of the FID installation when the outdoor air temperature is warm enough for the installed FID to perform a valid refrigerant charge test according to the FID manufacturer specification. The HERS Rater verification shall consist of operating the air conditioner in cooling mode for at least 15 minutes and performing a visual inspection to verify the FID reports the system is operating within acceptable parameters, or otherwise reports a system fault. If the FID reports that there is a system fault, the system does not comply with the refrigerant charge verification requirement.

RA3.4.3 Time Delay Relay Verification Procedure

When a system rating specification includes a time delay relay, the installation of the time delay relay shall be verified.

The procedure shall be:

(a) Turn the thermostat down until the compressor and indoor fan are both running.

(b) Turn the thermostat up so the compressor stops running.

(c) Verify that the indoor fan continues to run for at least 30 seconds.

RA3.4.4 HVAC System Verification Procedures

This section defines procedures for field verification of installed HVAC systems.

RA3.4.4.1 Rated Space Conditioning System Equipment Verification Procedure

When installation of specific matched system equipment is necessary for compliance with requirements for higher than minimum values for system HSPF/HSPF2, SEER/SEER2, or EER/EER2, the installed system equipment shall be verified according to the procedure specified in this section. The verification shall utilize certified rating data from the AHRI Directory of Certified Product Performance at http://www.ahridirectory.org or another directory of certified product performance ratings approved by the Energy Commission for determining compliance.

The procedure shall consist of visual verification of installation of the following system equipment components and confirmation that the installed equipment is rated to achieve the required HSPF/HSPF2, SEER/SEER2 or EER/EER2 rating:

(a) The manufacturer name and the model number of the outdoor unit or package unit.

(b) The manufacturer name and the model number of the inside coil if applicable.

(c) The name of the product directory used to certify the system performance.

(d) The certification number of the installed system if certification numbers for listed products are published by the product directory.

(e) The HSPF/HSPF2, SEER/SEER2 or EER/EER2 value published by the product directory.

(f) The manufacturer name and the model of the furnace or air handler when a specific furnace or air handler is necessary to achieve the SEER/SEER2, or EER/EER2 rating.

(g) The specified metering device when a specific refrigerant metering device (such as a TXV or an EXV) is necessary to achieve the high efficiency rating.

(h) When a system rating specification includes a time delay relay, the installation of the time delay relay shall be verified according to the procedure in Section 3.4.3.

RA3.4.4.2 Rated Heat Pump Capacity Verification Procedure

When heat pump systems are installed, and verification of the installed heat pump system capacity is required, the installed heat pump equipment shall be verified according to the procedure specified in this section. The verification shall utilize certified rating data from the AHRI Directory of Certified Product Performance at http://www.ahridirectory.org or another directory of certified product performance ratings approved by the Energy Commission for determining compliance (product directory).

The procedure shall consist of visual verification of the model numbers of the installed system equipment and confirmation that the installed equipment is rated to provide the required heating capacity:

(a) Record the manufacturer name and the model number of the outdoor unit or package unit.

(b) Record the manufacturer name and the model number of the inside coil if applicable.

(c) Record the name of the product directory used to certify the system performance.

(d) Record the certification number of the installed system if certification numbers for listed products are published by the product directory.

(e) Record the system's rated heating capacity at 47 degrees F published by the product directory.

(f) Record the system's rated heating capacity at 17 degrees F if the value is published by the product directory.

If the installed system rated heating capacities at 47 degrees F and 17 degrees F are equal to or greater than the values specified on the Certificate of Compliance, the system complies. If the product directory does not publish capacity ratings at 17F, then compliance with capacity at 17F is not required.

RA3.4.4.3 Variable Capacity Heat Pump Performance Compliance Option Eligibility Verification

When a performance certificate of compliance indicates a space conditioning system requires verification of the variable capacity heat pump (VCHP) compliance option eligibility requirements, the installed VCHP system shall be field verified to confirm compliance with the eligibility requirements as specified in this subsection RA3.4.4.3.

If field verification determines the VCHP does not comply with all eligibility requirements in this section, then the dwelling in which the VCHP is installed shall not be eligible to claim the VCHP performance compliance credit for that space conditioning system.

Compliance with Section 150.0(m)11 (Duct System Sealing and Leakage Testing) is not required for systems that use this VCHP performance compliance option. However, there are requirements to verify that VCHP system indoor unit ducts are located entirely in conditioned space that are specified as eligibility requirements for this compliance option.

Compliance with Section 150.0(m)13 is not required for systems that use this VCHP performance compliance option. However there are requirements for verification of minimum airflow rates for VCHP system indoor units that are specified as eligibility requirements for this compliance option.

(a) **Low-static system certification for ducted systems.** The manufacturer of ducted indoor units shall certify to the Energy Commission that the system is a VCHP that meets the definition of a low-static system as defined in 10 CFR Parts 429 and 430, Docket No. EERE–

2016–BT–TP–0029, Federal Register Vol. 82, No. 3, January 5, 2017). The manufacturer's model number(s) shall be included in listings of certified-to-the-Energy Commission low-static pressure VCHP systems which will be published on the Energy Commission's website.

If the installed VCHP system has ducted indoor units, then verification of the Energy Commission listings of certified VCHP systems shall confirm the installed system is included in the Energy Commission listings of certified low static systems.

If the VCHP model is not included in the Energy Commission listings of certified low static systems, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(b) **Non-continuous default fan operation certification for ducted systems**. The manufacturer may elect to certify to the Energy Commission that their ducted indoor unit + outdoor unit combination does not operate the indoor unit fan continuously by default. This certification is required in order to receive credit for the non-continuous fan operation component of the VCHP compliance option credit.

If the installed VCHP system has ducted indoor units, and the certificate of compliance indicates credit has been taken for non-continuous default fan operation, then visual inspection of the Energy Commission listings of certified VCHP systems shall confirm the installed system is included in the Energy Commission listings and the certification indicates the system is a type with indoor units that does not run the fan continuously during periods when there is no call for conditioning.

If the model is not included in the Energy Commission listings of certified low static systems as a type with indoor units that does not run the fan continuously during periods when there is no call for conditioning, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

A revised certificate of compliance may be submitted to the enforcement agency that does not specify credit for non-continuous default fan operation.

(c) **Refrigerant charge verification**. The installed system shall have refrigerant charge verified in accordance with applicable procedures in RA3.2, as specified in Standards Sections 150.1(c)7A and 150.2(b)1Fii, or 150.2(b)1Fiii.

If the system does not meet the refrigerant charge verification requirements, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(d) **Low leakage ducts located entirely in conditioned space verification**. Ducted indoor units shall be verified in accordance with the Verified Low Leakage Ducts in Conditioned Space procedure in Section RA3.1.4.3.8.

If the system does not meet the RA3.1.4.3.8 requirements, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(e) **Ductless space conditioning system indoor units located entirely in conditioned space verification**. Ductless systems shall be verified in accordance with the ductless space conditioning system indoor units located entirely in conditioned space procedure in

RA3.1.4.1.8 to visually confirm ductless indoor units are located entirely in conditioned space.

If the system is not considered to be entirely in conditioned space according to RA3.1.4.1.8 requirements, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(f) **Space-Conditioning System Airflow Supply to All Habitable Spaces**. Field verification according to the procedure in RA3.1.4.1.7 shall confirm that airflow is supplied to all habitable spaces in a dwelling that specifies use of the VCHP compliance option.

If space conditioning system airflow is not supplied to all habitable spaces in the dwelling as determined by the procedure in RA3.1.4.1.7, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(g) **Wall mounted thermostat in zones > 150 ft2**. Field verification according to the procedure in RA3.4.5 shall confirm that VCHP space conditioning zones in the dwelling that are greater than 150 ft2 are controlled by a permanently installed wall-mounted thermostat.

If a zone area served by an indoor unit is greater than 150 ft2, and the indoor unit is not controlled by a permanently installed wall-mounted thermostat located in the zone served by the indoor unit as determined according to the procedure in RA3.4.5, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(h) **Non-continuous fan operation - field verification**. If non-continuous indoor unit fan operation is specified for improved compliance credit for ducted VCHP systems in the CBECC-Res model, and thus the certificate of compliance indicates field verification of non-continuous indoor unit fan operation is required, then the system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in RA3.4.6 to confirm that the installed system's indoor unit + outdoor unit combination does not operate the fan continuously when the system thermostat is not calling for conditioning.

If field verification according to RA3.4.6 determines the installed system's indoor unit + outdoor unit combination operates the fan continuously when the system thermostat is not calling for conditioning, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

A revised certificate of compliance may be submitted to the enforcement agency that does not specify credit for non-continuous default fan operation.

(i) **Minimum airflow rate verification**. Each new ducted indoor unit shall have airflow verified in accordance with the procedures in RA3.3 to confirm the airflow at full capacity in cooling mode is equal to or greater than 350 cfm/ton of nominal cooling capacity. 300 cfm/ton shall be verified for altered systems if required for compliance with the refrigerant charge verification procedure.

For indoor units of single-split systems, the measured value for airflow in cfm shall be converted into cfm per ton by dividing the measured indoor unit airflow rate by the nominal tons of outdoor unit cooling capacity.

For indoor units of multiple-split systems, the measured value for airflow in cfm shall be converted into cfm per ton by dividing the measured indoor unit airflow rate by the nominal tons of indoor unit cooling capacity.

If the indoor unit does not meet or exceed the 350 cfm/ton minimum airflow rate required for new systems, or the 300 cfm/ton required for altered systems meeting the refrigerant charge minimum airflow rate, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(j) **Air filter sizing**. Ducted low-static VCHP indoor units with any length of duct shall have the air filters for the return air inlets verified to confirm the air filter sizing conforms to the procedures in i or ii below as applicable.

i. Nominal 2-inch or greater depth air filters shall be sized by the system designer to accommodate a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 0.1 inch wc at the air filter's design airflow rate. Field verification of the system designers sizing methodology shall not be required for nominal 2-inch or greater depth air filters, however verification that the installed 2-inch or greater depth air filter is rated to meet a clean filter pressure drop of less than or equal to 0.1 inch wc at the air filter's design airflow rate shall conform to the procedures in RA3.1.4.8.

If any of the indoor unit's applicable nominal 2-inch or greater depth air filters fails to meet the maximum 0.1 inch wc. clean filter pressure drop requirement as verified according to the procedure in RA3.1.4.8, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

ii. Nominal one-inch minimum depth air filters shall be allowed if the filter face area is sized based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft. per minute at the air filter design airflow rate according to the procedures in RA3.1.4.7.

All of the indoor unit air filters that are required to be sized and verified according to a face velocity specification shall comply with this subsection ii. If any of the indoor unit's applicable nominal 1-inch depth air filters has a face area less than the required face area determined according to the procedures in RA3.1.4.7, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

(k) **Air filter maximum pressure drop**. Ducted low-static VCHP indoor units with any length of duct shall have the air filters for the return air inlets verified according to the procedures in RA3.1.4.8 to confirm the air filter is rated to provide a clean filter pressure drop less than or equal to 0.1 inch wc., at an airflow rate greater than or equal to the air filter's design airflow rate.

If verification of the indoor unit's air filters according to the procedures in RA3.1.4.8 determines that one or more of the air filters does not provide clean filter pressure drop less than or equal to 0.1 inch wc., at an airflow rate greater than or equal to the air filter's design airflow rate, then the system does not comply with the VCHP compliance option eligibility requirements.

RA3.4.5 Verification of Wall-Mounted Thermostat

When compliance requires verification that a wall-mounted thermostat has been installed to control a space conditioning system's indoor unit operation, the system's indoor unit thermostat(s) shall be verified according to the following procedures. If a system has more than one indoor unit, then all of the system's indoor unit thermostats shall be verified according to this procedure.

(a) If the conditioned floor area (ft2) of the zone served by an indoor unit is not a criterion for determining the compliance requirement for wall-mounted thermostats, then skip to subsection (b) below.

Otherwise, if the conditioned floor area (ft2) of the zone served by an indoor unit is a criterion for determining the compliance requirements for wall-mounted thermostats in the zone, then record the value in square feet for conditioned floor area served by the indoor unit.

  i. If the zone area size (ft2) criterion indicates that a wall-mounted thermostat is not required for the zone, then the indoor unit complies and no further thermostat verification is required for the zone served by the indoor unit.

  ii. If the zone area size (ft2) criterion indicates that a wall-mounted thermostat is required for the zone, then perform the remaining steps (b) and (c).

(b) If possible, locate the wall-mounted thermostat that controls the indoor unit, and verify whether or not the thermostat controls the indoor unit by setting the thermostat to a cooling setpoint that is less than the room temperature, or alternatively by setting the thermostat to a heating setpoint that is greater than the room temperature.

If there is no wall-mounted thermostat installed in the zone that controls the indoor unit, then the indoor unit does not comply.

If there is a wall-mounted thermostat installed that controls the indoor unit, but it is not located within the zone served by the indoor unit, then the indoor unit does not comply.

(c) For a wall-mounted thermostat installed in the zone that controls the indoor unit located in step (b), by visual inspection determine if the thermostat is mounted permanently to the wall. Wall-mounted brackets or other means that facilitate non-permanent attachment of handheld thermostats to the wall do not meet this requirement.

If the thermostat is not permanently mounted to the wall, then the indoor unit does not comply.

RA3.4.6 Verification of Non-Continuous Indoor Unit Fan Operation

When compliance requires field verification that an installed space conditioning system indoor unit does not operate the air distribution fan during periods when the space does not require heating or cooling, the system's indoor unit operation shall be field verified according to the following procedures. If a system has more than one indoor unit, then all of the system's applicable indoor units shall be verified according to this procedure.

(a) If possible, locate the manufacturer's indoor unit + outdoor unit combination in the Energy Commission listing of systems that have been certified by the manufacturer as systems that do not operate the air distribution fan during periods when the space does not require heating or cooling, which is located at: https://www.energy.ca.gov/rules-and-regulations/building-energy-efficiency/manufacturer-certification-building-equipment.

Record the result of the search for the system model(s). If the manufacturer's indoor unit + outdoor unit combination is not included in the CEC listing, then the indoor unit does not comply.

(b) Switch the system to heating mode.

(c) Switch on the heating system by setting the thermostat to a setpoint that is greater than the room temperature.

(d) Verify the thermostat activates the indoor unit airflow.

(e) Switch off the heating system by setting the thermostat to a setpoint that is less than the room temperature.

(f) Verify the indoor unit air circulation fan does not operate when the compressor is off, except for a fan overrun (fan off delay) of less than 10 minutes that may occur at the end of the compressor on cycle.

(g) Switch the system to cooling mode.

(h) Switch on the cooling system by setting the thermostat to a setpoint that is less than the room temperature.

(i) Verify the thermostat activates the indoor unit airflow.

(j) Switch off the cooling system by setting the thermostat to a setpoint that is greater than the room temperature.

(k) Verify the indoor unit air circulation fan does not operate the indoor fan when the compressor is off, except for a fan overrun (fan off delay) of less than 10 minutes that may occur at the end of the compressor on cycle.

If the system does not operate the indoor unit air distribution fan(s) during periods when the spaces served by the system do not require heating or cooling to meet the thermostat setpoint, then the system complies.

RA3.5 Quality Insulation Installation Procedures

RA3.5.1 Purpose and Scope

RA3.5 is a procedure for verifying the quality of insulation installation and air leakage control used in low-rise residential buildings. This procedure is to be followed by the insulation installer and a qualified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) rater must verify its conformance for meeting the requirements of Sections 150.1(c), and 110.7of the Standards.

The procedure applies to wood and metal construction of framed and non-framed envelope assemblies. Framed assemblies include wall stud cavities, roof/ceiling assemblies, and floors typically insulated with: (1) batts of mineral fiber and mineral wool; (2) loose-fill materials of mineral fiber, mineral wool, and cellulose; (3) spray polyurethane foam; and, (4) rigid board sheathing materials. Non-framed assemblies include wall, roof/ceiling, and floors constructed of structural insulated panels and insulated concrete forms.

Note 1: For newly constructed buildings, this procedure applies to the entire thermal envelope of the building. In many instances, residential homes will use several types of insulation material, even in the same framed assembly. Each insulation material and the integrity of air leakage control for the building's entire thermal envelope must be verified by the HERS rater for the home to comply with the Standards.

Note 2: Structural bracing, tie-downs, and framing of steel or specialized framing used to meet structural requirements of the California Building Code (CBC) are allowed. These areas shall be called out on the building plans with diagrams and/or specific design drawings indicating the R-value amount and fastening method to be used. All structural framing areas shall be insulated in a manner that resists thermal bridging from the outside to the inside of the assembly separating conditioned from unconditioned space. The insulation and air barrier integrity shall be verified by the HERS rater.

RA3.5.2 Definitions

Continuous Air Barrier	A combination of interconnected materials and assemblies joined and sealed together to provide a continuous barrier to air leakage through the building envelope separating conditioned from unconditioned space, or adjoining conditioned spaces of different occupancies or uses. An air barrier is required in all thermal envelope assemblies to limit air movement between unconditioned/outside spaces and conditioned/inside spaces and must meet one of the following: 1. Using individual materials that have an air permeance not exceeding 0.004 cfm/ft^2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. w.g. (1.57 psf) (0.02 L/s.m^2 at 75 pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178; or 2. Using assemblies of materials and components that have an average air leakage not to exceed 0.04 cfm/ft^2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in.

	w.g (1.57 psf) (0.2 L/s.m^2 at 75 pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357, ASTM E1677, ASTM E1680 or ASTM E283; or 3. Testing the completed building and demonstrating that the air leakage rate of the building envelope does not exceed 0.40 cfm/ft^2 at a pressure differential of 0.3 in w.g. (1.57 psf) (2.0 L/s.m^2 at 75 pa) in accordance with ASTM E779 or an equivalent approved method. Individual materials and assemblies of materials that can demonstrate compliance with the air barrier testing requirements must be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions and a HERS rater shall verify the integrity of the installation. Below are example materials meeting the air permeance testing performance levels of 1 above. Manufacturers of these and other product types must provide a specification or product data sheet showing compliance to the ASTM testing requirements to be considered as an air barrier. -- Plywood – minimum 3/8 inch -- Oriented strand board – minimum 3/8 inches -- Extruded polystyrene insulation board – minimum ½ inch -- Foil-back polyisocyanurate insulation board – minimum ½ inch -- Extruded polystyrene insulation board – minimum ½ inch -- Foil backed urethane foam insulation (1 inch) -- Closed cell spray polyurethane foam with a minimum density of 2.0 pcf and a minimum thickness of 2.0 inches -- Open cell spray polyurethane foam with a minimum density of 0.4 to1.5 pcf and a minimum thickness of 5½ inches -- Exterior or interior gypsum board - minimum 1/2 inch -- Cement board - minimum 1/2 inch -- Built up roofing membrane -- Modified bituminous roof membrane -- Particleboard - minimum1/2 inch -- Fully adhered single-ply roof membrane -- Portland cement/sand parge, or gypsum plaster minimum 5/8 inch -- Cast-in-place and precast concrete -- Fully grouted uninsulated and insulated concrete block masonry -- Sheet steel or aluminum

Air-tight	Limiting the passage of air either in or out of the building envelope. Note: Thermal envelope assemblies (such as wall assemblies) shall be built to minimize air movement. Air movement brings unconditioned air and moisture through or into the assembly. For these procedures, air-tight shall be defined as an assembly or air barrier with all openings caulked, or sealed with minimally expansive foam, or taping/sealing of adjoining surfaces of air barrier materials and assemblies.
Compression	The improper placement of insulation in an assembly that results in an installation less than the product's nominal thickness. Batt insulation should be “lofted” and loose-fill and spray foam material properly field applied to the manufacturer’s specified density to achieve its full R-value. Limited compression is allowed at plumbing, vents, and other obstructions and in cavities of non-standard framing. Compression of insulation in these situations is limited to no more than 30% of its' nominal thickness.
Delaminated	Separation of the insulation's full thickness to facilitate it's installation around or between obstructions. Batt and blanket insulation are often split or delaminated to fit around electrical wires and plumbing runs through a wall cavity to prevent voids, or compression of the insulation. The delamination must ensure that the full thickness of the insulation is installed between the obstruction and the finish material covering the framing. For example, an electrical wire located one-third of the distance from the front of the cavity should have batt insulation delaminated so that two-thirds of the batt is installed towards the outside wall surface and one-third is installed towards the inside wall surface from the wire.
Draft Stops	A material, device or construction installed to prevent the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of building components, such as crawl spaces, floor/ceiling assemblies, wall assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies and attics. Note: Draft stops are important components of the air barrier and shall be air-tight. Fire blocks constructed of porous insulation materials cannot serve as draft stops since they are not air tight.
Friction Fit	A means of installing insulation within the framed cavity without the use of mechanical fasteners such that the material's full thickness in all directions is sufficient to keep the material in its intended position. In standard framing dimensions of 2x4 and 2x6 @ 16" oc and 24" oc batt and blanket insulation materials have enough side-to-side frictional force to hold the insulation in place without any other means of attachment. Note: Friction fitting of faced batt and blanket insulation, with or without an attachment flange, is allowed provided the insulation's installation integrity can be maintained.

Gaps	Uninsulated areas at the edge of insulation where insulation is not in contact with framing members or other materials at the edge of the insulation. Gaps occur when insulation length and width is too short for the cavity. Gaps in insulation are avoidable and are not permitted.
Hard Covers	Building materials, such as plywood or gypboard, which become part of the ceiling air barrier. Note: Hard covers shall be installed above areas where there is a drop ceiling. For example, a home with 10 ft ceilings may have an entry closet with a ceiling lowered to 8 ft. In this case, a hard cover is installed at the 10 ft level above the entry closet. Hard covers become part of the ceiling air barrier and shall be air-tight.
Inset Stapling	A method of attaching faced batt or blanket insulation to wood framing, where the flange of the insulation facing is pushed inside the face of the framing member and stapled. This method causes a void between the insulation and the air barrier. In windy areas installers often staple the flanges of faced batts to the sides of the stud to assure that the insulation remains in place until covered with drywall, particularly on the wall between the house and the garage where there isn't any exterior sheathing to help keep the insulation in place. The void created by the flange inset shall not extend more than two inches from the stud on each side.
Insulation Types--Framed Assemblies	There are four basic types of insulation, or insulation "systems", installed in residential buildings and their use varies based on the design and type of construction: 1. **Batt and Blanket**: Batt and blanket insulation is made of mineral fiber and mineral wool -- either processed fiberglass, rock or slag wool -- and is used to insulate below floors, above ceilings, below roofs, and within walls. 2. **Loose-fill**: Loose-fill insulation includes loose fibers or fiber pellets that are blown into building cavities or attics using special equipment. Loose-fill insulations typically are produced using mineral fiber, mineral wool, or cellulose. They are installed in walls, floors, attics and below roofs using a dry-pack process or a moist-spray technique, and may include a netting material. 3. **Rigid Board**: Rigid board insulation sheathing is made from fiberglass, expanded polystyrene (EPS), extruded polystyrene (XPS), polyisocyanurate (PIR), or polyurethane (PUR). This type of insulation is used for above roof decks, exterior walls, cathedral ceilings, basement walls, as perimeter insulation at concrete slab edges, and to insulate special framing situations such as window and door headers, and around metal seismic bracing. Rigid board insulation may also be integral to exterior siding materials. 4. **Spray Polyurethane Foam (SPF)**: A two-part liquid foamed plastic (such as polyurethane or modified urethane) material formed by the reaction of

	an isocyanurate and a polyol that uses a blowing agent to develop a cellular structure when spray applied onto a substrate. SPF insulation is a two-component reactive system mixed at a spray gun or a single-component system that cures by exposure to humidity. The liquid is sprayed through a nozzle into wall, roof/ceiling, and floor cavities. SPF insulation can be formulated to have specific physical properties (i.e., density, compressive strength, fire resistance and R-value). There are two types of SPF insulation: a. *Low Density Open-Cell SPF (ocSPF) Insulation*: A spray applied polyurethane foam insulation having an open cellular structure resulting in an installed nominal density of 0.4 to 1.5 pounds per cubic foot (pcf). b. *Medium Density Closed-Cell SPF (ccSPF) Insulation*: A spray applied polyurethane foam insulation having a closed cellular structure resulting in an installed nominal density of greater than 1.5 to less than 2.5 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).
Insulation Types--Non-framed Assemblies	There are two basic types of insulation used and their use varies based on the design and type of construction: 1. **Structural Insulated Panel (SIP):** A composite building material consisting of an insulating layer of rigid polymer foam sandwiched between two layers of structural board. The board can be sheet metal, plywood, cement or oriented strand board (OSB) and the foam is either expanded polystyrene foam (EPS), extruded polystyrene foam (XPS) or polyurethane (PUR) foam. SIPs combine several components of conventional building, such as studs and joists, insulation, vapor barrier and air barrier. They can be used for many different applications, such as exterior walls, roofs, floors, and foundation systems. 2. **Insulated Concrete Form (ICF):** A system of formwork for concrete that stays in place as permanent building insulation and is used for cast-in-place, reinforced above and below-grade concrete walls, floors, and roofs. ICFs are interlocking modular units that can be dry-stacked (without mortar) and filled with concrete as a single concrete masonry unit (CMU). ICFs lock together externally and have internal metal or plastic ties to hold the outer layer(s) of insulation to create a concrete form for the structural walls, roof/ceilings, or floors of a building. ICFs are manufactured from several materials including: expanded and extruded polystyrene foam, polyurethane foam, cement-bonded wood fiber, and cement-bonded polystyrene beads.
Minimally Expansive Foam Sealing Material	A single-component polyurethane foam system typically formulated in a handheld can or portable container to seal and fill construction gaps and crevasses, holes, and cracks without distorting adjacent framing. These

	materials are not used for insulation purposes, rather as agents for air sealing of gaps and crevasses that are too small to be insulated.
Net Free-Area	The net free-area of a vent cover is equal to the total vent opening less the interference to airflow caused by a screen or louver used for ventilation. Screened or louvered vent opening covers are typically marked by the manufacturer with the "net free-area." For example a 22.5 in. by 3.5 in. eave vent screen with a total area of 78.75 square inches may have a net free-area of only 45 square inches.
Non-Standard Framing	Standard framing consists of installation of framing members spaced at regular intervals (16" or 24" on center), where batt insulation products can be installed to the full dimensional width of the cavity between framing members. Non-Standard framing may include multiple framing members, framing members at unusual spacing, additional blocking within cavity, structural columns or beams, or metal structural connections that alter the cavity depth or width.
Voids & Air Spaces	An uninsulated space within an enclosed building assembly created where the assembly has been insulated by partial filling of the framed cavity. The partial fill results in an air space (void) between the insulation surface and the assembly's exterior or interior layers which form the assembly's air barrier.

RA3.5.3 BATT AND BLANKET INSULATION

These procedures detail the installation and inspection protocols necessary to qualify for Quality Insulation Installation (QII) of batt and blanket insulation. These procedures must be field verified before the building construction permit is finalized.

These procedures are to be followed by the insulation installer and a qualified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) rater must verify its conformance to meet the requirements of Sections 150.1(c)1E or 170.2(a)6, and 110.7 of the Standards.

RA3.5.3.1 Thermal Specification

This insulation type is manufactured in different widths, lengths, and thicknesses and is available with or without a facing. Faced batts and blanket insulation material are also available with or without an attachment flange. Specific product R-values are readily available from the manufacturer for the specific materials being installed and the R-value of the product is marked on the face of the product (faced or unfaced material). The installed insulation must meet the R-value stated on the compliance documentation.

RA3.5.3.1.1 Requirements for Walls, Roof/Ceilings and Floors

(a) Materials shall comply with, and be installed in conformance with, all applicable building codes for building. California Building Code (including, but not limited to, California Electric Code Section 719) and installed to meet all applicable fire codes.

(b) Materials shall meet California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 4, Article 3, listed in the California Department of Consumer Affairs Consumer Guide and Directory of Certified Insulating Materials.

(c) Materials shall comply with flame spread rating and smoke density requirements of Chapter 26 and Section 706 of the Title 24, Part 2: all installations with exposed facings must use fire retardant facings which have been tested and certified not to exceed a flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a smoke development index (SDI) of 450. Insulation facings that do not touch a ceiling, wall, or floor surface, and faced batts on the undersides of roofs with an air space between the ceiling and facing are considered exposed applications.

(d) Materials shall be installed according to manufacturer specifications and instructions.

(e) Batt and blanket insulation shall be correctly sized to fit snugly at the sides and ends.

(f) Batt and blanket insulation shall be installed so that they will be in contact with the air barrier.

(g) Where necessary, batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to fit properly - there shall be no gaps, nor shall the insulation be doubled-over or compressed.

(h) When batt and blanket insulation are cut to fit a non-standard cavity, they shall be snuggly fitted to fill the cavity without compression.

(i) Batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to butt-fit around wiring and plumbing, or be split (delaminated) so that one layer can fit behind the wiring or plumbing, and one layer fit in front.

RA3.5.3.1.2 R-value Measurement Equipment

The HERS rater shall verify the installed thickness of insulation in all assemblies and locations on walls, roof/ceilings, and floors, and to ensure that insulation levels and installation integrity meet the R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

RA3.5.3.1.3 Certificates

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. All Insulation Certificates of Installation signed by the insulation installer shall be provided stating the installation is consistent with the Certificate of Compliance, plans and specifications for which the building permit was issued. The insulation installer shall complete all applicable sections of the Certificate of Installation form and attach a product specification or data sheet for every insulation material used.

RA3.5.3.1.4 Certificates and Availability

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. The Insulation Certificate of Installation, with insulation material labels or specification/data sheets attached, signed by the insulation installer, shall be available on the building site for each of the HERS rater's verification inspections. Note: The HERS rater cannot verify compliance credit without these completed forms.

RA3.5.3.2 Wall Insulation

(a) Wall stud cavities shall be caulked, foamed or otherwise sealed to provide a substantially air-tight envelope to the outdoors, attic, garage and crawl space. All plumbing and wiring penetrations through the top and bottom plates and electrical boxes that penetrate the sheathing shall be sealed. All gaps in the air barrier shall be caulked, taped, or sealed with minimally expansive foam.

(b) Bottom plates of framed and non-framed assemblies shall be sealed to the ground subfloor or slab, and above ground subfloor.

(c) Insulation shall uniformly fill the cavity side-to-side, top-to-bottom, and front-to-back.

(d) Batt insulation shall fill the cavity by friction fitting, inset or face stapling of flanges of faced batts, or by other support methods as necessary.

(e) Batt and blanket insulation shall be installed to fill the cavity and be in contact with the sheathing on the back and the wallboard on the front - no gaps or voids.

Exception to RA3.5.3.2(e): Batt insulation with flanges that are inset stapled to the side of the stud, the surface of the batt facing the occupied space must be flush with the face of the cavity (or protrude beyond) except for the portions of the batt that are less than two inches from the side of the stud.

(f) When batt and blanket insulation are cut to fit a non-standard framing, they shall be snuggly fitted to fill the cavity with limited compression.

(g) Batt insulation shall be cut to butt-fit around wiring and plumbing, or be split (delaminated) so that one layer can be fit behind the wiring or plumbing, and one layer fit in front. The layers must be proportional to the obstruction's position in the cavity to avoid compression and voids.

RA3.5.3.2.1 Narrow-Framed Cavities

(a) Non-standard width cavities shall be filled with insulation to snuggly fit into the space, or with minimally expansive foam sealing material.

(b) Narrow spaces less than 1 inch in width at windows and door jambs, shall be filled with minimally expansive foam sealing. In cases where the manufacturer's warranty would be void if minimally expansive foam is used to seal the gap between the window frame or door jamb, the cavity must be airtight and batt insulation cut to width and snuggly fitted (with limited compression) in the space.

(c) Narrow spaces less than 2 inches in width, such as between studs at building corners, and at the intersection of interior partition walls to exterior walls, shall be filled with insulation snuggly fitted in the space, or with minimally expansive foam sealing.

RA3.5.3.2.2 Special Situations--Installation Prior to Exterior Sheathing or Lath

(a) Hard to access wall stud cavities, such as corner channels, wall intersections, and behind tub/shower enclosures shall be insulated to the proper R-value. In most cases this can only be completed prior to the installation of the tub/shower enclosure, the exterior sheathing, or the exterior stucco lath.

(b) An air barrier shall be installed on the inside of the exterior wall(s) directly adjacent to the tub/shower enclosure.

RA3.5.3.2.3 Special Situations--Obstructions

(a) Insulation shall be delaminated or cut to fit around wiring, plumbing, vents, and other obstructions with limited compression. Compression of insulation in these situations is limited to ≤ 30% of its nominal thickness.

(b) Insulation shall be placed between the sheathing and the rear of electrical boxes and other obstructions that are not as deep as the cavity (i.e. communications boxes, medicine cabinets).

(c) In cold climates, where water pipes may freeze (such as Climate Zones 2, 11-14 and 16) pipes shall have at least 1/2 of the insulation between the water pipe and towards the outside surface of the exterior wall. As much insulation as possible shall be placed between the pipe and the outside (without compression), and remaining insulation shall be placed between the pipe and the interior assembly material.

RA3.5.3.2.4 Special Situations--Rim Joists

(a) All rim-joists shall be insulated to the same R-value as the adjacent walls.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps, voids, or compression.

RA3.5.3.2.5 Special Situations--Kneewalls and Skylight Shafts

(a) Framing for kneewalls and skylight shafts that separate conditioned from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps or compression.

(c) Steel-framed kneewalls and skylight shafts, external surfaces of steel studs shall meet or exceed the mandatory minimum insulation requirements and be covered with continuous insulation unless otherwise specified on the Certificate of Compliance using correct U-factors from Joint Appendix JA4, Table 4.3.4 (or U-factors approved by the Commission Executive Director).

(d) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

(e) The house side of the insulation shall be in contact with the drywall or other wall finish.

(f) The insulation shall be supported so that it will not fall down by either friction fitting to the framing, inset or face stapling of flanges, or using other support such as netting.

(g) Insulation for all kneewall and skylight shafts shall be completely enclosed by vertical and horizontal framing, including horizontal plates at top and bottom of the insulation.

RA3.5.3.2.6 Special Situations--HVAC/Plumbing Closet

Walls of interior closets for HVAC and/or water heating equipment, which require combustion air venting, shall be insulated to at least the same R-value as other demising walls (i.e., walls separating conditioned space and attached garage), or as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.3.2.7 Special Situations--Double Walls and Framed Bump-Outs

(a) Insulation shall fill the entire cavity; or, an additional air barrier shall be installed inside the double wall or bump-out and in contact with the insulation so that the insulation fills the cavity formed with the additional air barrier.

(b) Entire double walls and framed bump-outs shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.3.2.8 Special Situations--Structural Bracing, Tie-downs, Steel Structural Framing

(a) Framing and bracing used for structural purposes shall be identified on plan documents with diagrams and/or design drawings.

(b) Insulation shall be installed in a manner that minimizes heat loss/gain due to thermal bridging through the structural framing assembly.

(c) Insulation shall be applied to fully enclose and/or adhere to all sides and ends of structural assembly framing that separate conditioned from unconditioned space.

(d) The structural portions of assemblies shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.3.2.9 Special Situations--Window and Door Headers

(a) All single-member window and door headers shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3 for a 2x4 framing, or equivalent width, and a minimum of R-5 for all other assemblies. Insulation is to be placed between the interior face of the header and inside surface of the interior wall finish.

(b) No header insulation is required for single-member headers that are the same width as the wall, provided that the entire wall has at least R-2 insulation.

RA3.5.3.2.10 Special Situations--Gable Ends in Unvented Attics

(a) In unvented attics, where insulation is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, framing for gable ends that separate the unvented attic from the exterior or unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value of the adjacent exterior wall construction as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.3.3 Roof/Ceilings

(a) Batt and blanket insulation shall be correctly sized to fit snugly at the sides and ends.

(b) Batt and blanket insulation shall be installed to be in contact with the air barrier.

(c) Where necessary, batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to fit properly - there shall be no gaps, nor shall the insulation be doubled-over or compressed.

(d) When batt and blanket insulation are cut to fit a non-standard cavity, they shall be snuggly fitted to fill the cavity with limited compression.

(e) Batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to butt-fit around wiring and plumbing, or be split (delaminated) so that one layer can fit behind the wiring or plumbing, and one layer fit in front.

(f) Batt and blanket insulation that is thicker than the framing depth shall be installed so that the insulation expands to touch adjacent insulation over each framing member.

(g) Hard covers or draft stops shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers or draft stops are missing or incomplete, they shall be completed before insulation is installed.

(h) Baffles shall be placed at eaves or soffit vents of vented attics to keep insulation from blocking eave ventilation and prevent air movement under the insulation. The required net free-ventilation shall be maintained.

(i) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as airtight with leakage less than 2.0 cfm @ 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

(j) Insulation shall cover all recessed lighting fixtures. Fixtures that are not rated for insulation contact (IC), and air-tight, shall be removed and/or replaced.

(k) Facings and insulation shall be kept away from combustion appliance flues in accordance with flue manufacturer's installation instructions or labels on the flue.

RA3.5.3.3.1 Special Situations--Enclosed Rafter Ceilings

(a) In vented rafter ceilings, an air space shall be maintained between the insulation and roof sheathing as specified by California Building Code, Sections 1203.2 and R806.3, or as specified by the local building department.

(b) Insulation installed in unvented rafter ceilings or to the underside of unvented roofs with an attic below shall have an R-value conforming to compliance documentation and the air barrier shall be uniform across the transition of roof to wall. The insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.3.3.2 RESERVED

RA3.5.3.3.3 Special Situations--HVAC Platform

(a) Batt and blanket insulation shall be placed below all platforms or cat-walks used for HVAC equipment installation and access.

(b) Batt and blanket insulation shall be installed so that they will be in contact with the air barrier.

(c) Batt and blanket insulation shall be installed under HVAC platform to the full depth and rated R-value as specified on the Certificate of Compliance, without gaps or compression. If necessary, HVAC platform shall be raised to accommodate ceiling insulation.

RA3.5.3.3.4 Special Situations--Attic Access

Permanently attach rigid board insulation or batt or blanket insulation with the appropriate R-value to the access door using adhesive or mechanical fastener. The bottom of the attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage of conditioned air to the unconditioned attic.

RA3.5.3.3.5 Special Situations--Below Roof Deck Insulation (Vented and Unvented Attics)

(a) Below roof deck insulation consisting of batts that nominally fill the cavity space between roof framing members shall be stapled, or supported with cabling, tension rods, or other support measures which maintain the batt uniformly against the roof deck with limited compression. Batts with facing directed to the attic space shall be face stapled. Inset stapling of underside batts is not allowed. Batts supported with cabling, tensions rods, or other methods supporting the batt from below shall be supported at intervals less than or equal to 16", and no further than 8" from the end of the batt. Batts that are directly stapled through the insulation material to the roof deck should maintain the batt uniformly against the roof deck with limited compression.

(b) When the batt thickness nominally exceeds the depth of the roof framing members, full-width batts must be used and the batt shall be secured as described in (a). Full depth insulation coverage at the bottom of the roof framing member is not required as part of the QII inspection process.

(c) For vented attics, below deck batt or blanket insulation shall be installed in a manner that does not obstruct eave, ridge, or eyebrow vents to allow for adequate attic ventilation. The required net free ventilation area of all eave and roof vents shall be maintained. Eave vent baffles shall be installed to prevent air movement under or into the batt.

RA3.5.3.3.6 RESERVED

RA3.5.3.4 Raised Floors

(a) Batt and blanket insulation shall be correctly sized to fit snugly at the sides and ends.

(b) Batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to fit properly without gaps. Insulation shall not be doubled-over or compressed.

(c) Batt and blanket insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier - usually the subfloor.

RA3.5.3.4.1 Homes with Floors Over Garage

(a) Batt and blanket insulation shall be correctly sized to fit snugly at the sides and ends, but not be so large as to buckle.

(b) Batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to fit properly without gaps. Insulation shall not be doubled-over or compressed.

(c) Batt and blanket insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier - usually the subfloor.

(d) On floors that are over garages, or where there is an air space between the insulation and the subfloor, the rim joist shall be insulated.

(e) Batt and blanket insulation shall be cut to butt-fit around wiring and plumbing, or be split (delaminated) so that one layer can fit behind the wiring or plumbing, and one layer fit in front.

(f) Faced batts or blankets shall be placed toward the living space and be in contact with the underside of the floor sheathing. Continuous support shall be provided to keep the facing in contact with the floor sheathing. The insulation shall be properly supported by stapling of flanges, netting or other method approved by the manufacturer for the product.

(g) Batt and blanket insulation shall be properly supported to avoid gaps, voids, and compression.

RA3.5.3.4.2 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage

The separation between conditioned space (house) and the garage shall be insulated to create a continuous thermal barrier. All rim and band joists adjoining conditioned space shall be air tight and insulated.

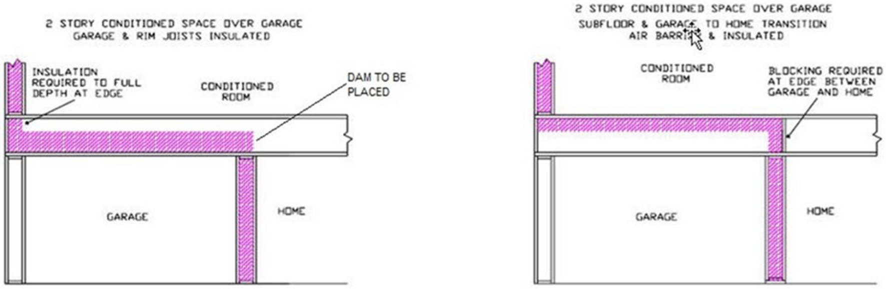


Figure RA3.5-1 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage – Batt and Blanket Insulation

RA3.5.3.4.3 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage

The band joist where the garage transitions to an attic above conditioned space shall have an air barrier installed in contact with the edge of the attic insulation.

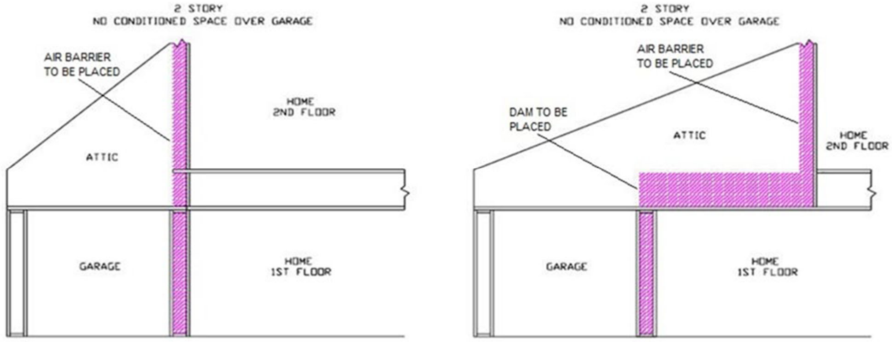


Figure RA3.5-2 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage – Batt and Blanket Insulation

RA3.5.4 LOOSE FILL INSULATION

These procedures detail the installation and inspection protocols necessary to qualify for Quality Insulation Installation (QII) of loose-fill insulation. These procedures must be field verified before the building construction permit is finalized.

These procedures are to be followed by the insulation installer and a qualified Home Energy System (HERS) rater must verify conformance to meet the requirements of Sections 150.1(c)1E or 170.2(a)6, and 110.7 of the Standards.

RA3.5.4.1 Thermal Specification

This insulation type is manufactured to be blown or sprayed into framed cavity walls, floors, and ceilings. It is installed with or without a net depending on the loose-fill type or in special installations where netting is required, such as below a roof deck or under floors. Its overall R-value is dependent on the installed density and installed thickness. Specific product R-values are readily available from the manufacturer for the specific materials being installed. R-value and coverage chart of the product is typically marked on the bag which the insulation was drawn from and from the manufacturer's product data sheet or product specification information. The installed insulation must meet the R-value stated on the compliance documentation.

RA3.5.4.1.1 Requirements for Walls, Roof/Ceilings and Floors

(a) Materials shall comply with, and be installed in conformance with, all applicable building codes for building. California Building Code (including, but not limited to, California Electric Code Section 719) and installed to meet all applicable fire codes.

(b) Materials shall meet California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 4, Article 3, listed in the California Department of Consumer Affairs Consumer Guide and Directory of Certified Insulating Materials.

(c) Materials shall comply with flame spread rating and smoke density requirements of Chapter 26 and Section 706 of the Title 24, Part 2: all installations with exposed facings must use fire retardant facings which have been tested and certified not to exceed a flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a smoke development index (SDI) of 450. Insulation facings that do not touch a ceiling, wall, or floor surface, and faced batts on the undersides of roofs with an air space between the ceiling and facing are considered exposed applications.

(d) Materials shall be installed according to manufacturer specifications and instructions.

(e) Hard covers or draft stops shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers or draft stops are missing or incomplete, they shall be completed before insulation is installed.

(f) Required eave ventilation shall not be obstructed - the net free-ventilation area of the eave vent shall be maintained.

(g) Eave vent baffles shall be installed to prevent air movement under or into the batt.

(h) Insulation shall cover all recessed lighting fixtures. If the fixtures are not rated for insulation contact (IC) and air tight, the fixtures shall be replaced.

(i) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as airtight with leakage less than 2.0 cfm @ 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

(j) Loose-fill insulation shall be must completely fill the framed cavity.

(k) Loose-fill insulation shall be installed so that they will be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.4.1.2 R-value Measurement Equipment

The HERS rater shall measure the installed thickness and density of insulation in at least 6 random locations on walls, roof/ceilings and floors (i.e., 6 measurements per opaque surface type: wall, roof/ceiling or floor) to ensure minimum thickness levels and the installed density meets the R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation. For walls, measurement areas shall include low and high areas of the insulated assembly and the HERS rater shall verify density measurements are consistent with the manufacturer's coverage chart.

RA3.5.4.1.3 Certificates

(a) All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. All Insulation Certificates of Installation signed by the insulation installer shall be provided stating the installation is consistent with the Certificate of Compliance, plans and specifications for which the building permit was issued. The insulation installer shall complete all applicable sections of the Certificate of Installation form and attach a bag label or a manufacturer's coverage chart for every different type of loose-fill insulation material used.

(b) For loose-fill insulation, compliance information shall include the minimum installed weight-per-square-foot (or the minimum weight per cubic foot) consistent with the manufacturer's labeled installed-design-density for the desired R-value, and the number of inches required to achieve the desired R-value.

RA3.5.4.1.4 Certificates and Availability

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. The Insulation Certificate of Installation, with insulation material bag labels or coverage charts attached, signed by the insulation installer, shall be available on the building site for each of the HERS rater's verification inspections. Note: The HERS rater cannot verify compliance credit without these completed forms.

RA3.5.4.2 Wall Insulation

(a) Wall stud cavities shall be caulked, foamed or otherwise sealed to provide a substantially air-tight envelope to the outdoors, attic, garage and crawl space. Special attention shall be paid to plumbing and wiring penetrations through the top plates, electrical boxes that penetrate the sheathing, and the sheathing seal to the bottom plate. All gaps in the air barrier shall be caulked, or sealed with expansive or minimally expansive foam.

(b) Bottom plates of framed and non-framed assemblies shall be sealed to the ground subfloor or slab, and above ground subfloor.

(c) Insulation shall uniformly fill the cavity side-to-side, top-to-bottom, and front-to-back.

(d) Loose fill insulation shall be installed to fill the cavity and be in contact with the sheathing on the back and the wallboard on the front - no gaps or voids.

(e) Loose fill wall insulation shall be installed to fit around wiring, plumbing, and other obstructions.

(f) Non-standard-width cavities shall be filled with insulation fitted into the space without excessive compression.

(g) The installer shall certify on the Certificate of Installation forms that the manufacturer's minimum weight-per-square-foot requirement has been met.

RA3.5.4.2.1 Narrow-Framed Cavities

(a) Non-standard width cavities shall be filled with insulation to snuggly fit into the space, or with minimally expansive foam sealing material.

(b) Narrow spaces less than 1 inch in width at windows and door jambs, shall be filled with minimally expansive foam sealing. In cases where the manufacturer's warranty would be void if minimally expanding foam is used to seal the gap between the window frame or door jamb, the cavity must be airtight and filled with insulation snuggly fitted (with limited compression) in the space.

(c) Narrow spaces less than 2 inches in width, such as between studs at building corners, and at the intersection of interior partition walls to exterior walls, shall be filled with insulation snuggly fitted in the space, or with minimally expansive foam sealing.

RA3.5.4.2.2 Special Situations--Installation Prior to Exterior Sheathing or Lath

(a) Hard to access wall stud cavities, such as; corner channels, wall intersections, and behind tub/shower enclosures shall be insulated to the proper R-value. In most cases this can only be completed prior to the installation of the tub/shower enclosure, the exterior sheathing, or the exterior stucco lath.

(b) An air barrier shall be installed on the inside of the exterior wall(s) directly adjacent to the tub/shower enclosure.

RA3.5.4.2.3 Special Situations--Obstructions

(a) Insulation shall completely fill around wiring and plumbing without compression.

(b) Insulation shall fill between the sheathing and the rear of electrical boxes and phone boxes.

(c) In cold climates, where water pipes may freeze (such as Climate Zones 2, 11-14 and 16) pipes shall have at least 1/2 of the insulation between the water pipe and towards the outside surface of the exterior wall. As much insulation as possible shall be placed between the pipe and the outside (without compression), and remaining insulation shall be placed between the pipe and the interior assembly material.

RA3.5.4.2.4 Special Situations--Rim Joists

(a) All rim-joists shall be insulated to the same R-value as the adjacent walls.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps, voids, or excessive compression.

RA3.5.4.2.5 Special Situations--Kneewalls and Skylight Shafts

(a) Framing for kneewalls and skylight shafts that separate conditioned from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps or compression.

(c) Steel-framed kneewalls and skylight shafts, shall meet or exceed the mandatory minimum insulation requirements and external surfaces of steel studs shall be covered with continuous insulation unless otherwise specified on the Certificate of Compliance using correct U-factors from Joint Appendix JA4, Table 4.3.4 (or U-factors approved by the Commission Executive Director).

(d) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

(e) The house side of the insulation shall be in contact with the drywall or other wall finish.

(f) The insulation shall be supported so that it will not fall down by using support such as netting.

(g) Insulation for all kneewall and skylight shafts shall be completely enclosed by vertical and horizontal framing, including horizontal plates at top and bottom of the insulation.

RA3.5.4.2.6 Special Situations--HVAC/Plumbing Closet

Walls of interior closets for HVAC and/or water heating equipment, which require combustion air venting, shall be insulated to at least the same R-value as other demising walls (i.e., walls separating conditioned space and attached garage), or as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.4.2.7 Special Situations--Double Walls and Framed Bump-Outs

(a) Insulation shall fill the entire cavity; or, an additional air barrier shall be installed inside the double wall or bump-out and in contact with the insulation so that the insulation fills the cavity formed with the additional air barrier.

(b) Entire double walls and framed bump-outs shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.4.2.8 Special Situations--Structural Bracing, Tie-downs, Steel Structural Framing

(a) Framing and bracing used for structural purposes shall be identified on plan documents with diagrams and/or design drawings.

(b) Insulation shall be installed in a manner that restricts thermal bridging through the structural framing assembly.

(c) Insulation shall be applied to fully enclose and/or adhere to all sides and ends of structural assembly framing that separate conditioned from unconditioned space.

(d) The structural portions of assemblies shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.4.2.9 Special Situations--Window and Door Headers

(a) All single-member window and door headers shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3 for a 2x4 framing, or equivalent width, and a minimum of R-5 for all other assemblies. Insulation is to be placed between the interior face of the header and inside surface of the interior wall finish.

(b) No header insulation is required for single-member headers that are the same width as the wall, provided that the entire wall has at least R-2 insulation.

RA3.5.4.2.10 Special Situations--Gable Ends in Unvented Attics

(a) In unvented attics, where insulation is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, framing for gable ends that separate the unvented attic from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value of the adjacent exterior wall construction as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.4.2.11 Roof/Ceilings

(a) Hard covers or draft stops shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers or draft stops are missing or incomplete, they shall be completed before insulation is installed or the entire drop area shall be filled with loose-fill insulation level with the rest of the attic.

(b) Baffles shall be placed at eaves or soffit vents of vented attics to keep insulation from blocking eave ventilation and prevent air movement under or into the insulation. The required net free-ventilation shall be maintained.

(c) Attic rulers appropriate to the material shall be installed and evenly distributed throughout the attic to verify depth: one ruler for every 250 square feet and clearly readable from the attic access. Attic rulers shall be scaled to read inches of insulation and the R-value installed.

(d) Insulation shall be applied underneath and on both sides of obstructions such as cross-bracing and wiring.

(e) Insulation shall be applied all the way to the outer edge of the wall top plate.

(f) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as airtight with leakage less than 2.0 cfm @ 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

(g) Insulation shall cover recessed lighting fixtures. Fixtures that are not rated for insulation contact (IC), and air tight, shall be removed and/or replaced.

(h) Insulation shall be kept away from combustion appliance flues in accordance with flue manufacturer's installation instructions or labels on the flue.

(i) Insulation shall be blown to a uniform thickness throughout the attic with all areas meeting or exceeding the insulation manufacturer's minimum requirements for depth and weight-per-square-foot.

(j) The installer shall certify on the Certificate of Installation forms that the manufacturer's minimum weight-per-square-foot requirement has been met.

(k) The HERS rater shall verify that the manufacturer's minimum weight-per-square-foot requirement has been met for attics insulated with loose-fill insulation. Verification shall be determined using the methods of the Insulation Contractor’s Association of America (ICAA) Technical Bulletin #17 or #33 except that only one sample shall be taken in the area that appears to have the least amount of insulation. The rater shall record the weight-per-square-foot of the sample on the Certificate of Verification.

(l) The HERS rater shall verify that the manufacturer’s minimum insulation thickness has been installed. For cellulose insulation, this verification shall take into account the time that has elapsed since the insulation was installed. At the time of installation, the insulation shall be greater than or equal to the manufacturer’s minimum initial insulation thickness. If the HERS rater does not verify the insulation thickness at the time of installation, and if the insulation has been in place less than fourteen days, the insulation thickness shall be greater than the manufacturer’s minimum required thickness to achieve the given R-value at the time of installation, less 1/2 inch to account for settling. If the insulation has been in place for fourteen days or more, the insulation thickness shall be greater than or equal to the manufacturer's minimum required settled thickness to achieve the given R-value.

RA3.5.4.2.12 Special Situations--Enclosed Rafter Ceilings

(a) An air space shall be maintained between the insulation and roof sheathing as specified by California Building Code Sections 1203.2 and R806.2, or as specified by the local building department.

(b) Insulation installed in unvented rafter ceilings or to the underside of unvented roofs with an attic below shall have an R-value conforming to compliance documentation and the air barrier shall be uniform across the transition of roof to wall. The insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.4.2.13 RESERVED

RA3.5.4.2.14 Special Situations--HVAC Platform

(a) Loose-fill insulation shall be placed below any platform or cat-walk for HVAC equipment installation and access.

(b) Loose-fill insulation shall be installed so that it will be in contact with the air barrier.

(c) Loose-fill insulation shall be installed under HVAC platform to the full depth and rated R-value as specified on the Certificate of Compliance, without gaps or compression. If necessary, HVAC platform shall be raised to accommodate ceiling insulation.

RA3.5.4.2.15 Special Situations--Attic Access

Permanently attach rigid board insulation or batt or blanket insulation with the appropriate R-value to the access door using adhesive or mechanical fastener. The bottom of the attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage of conditioned air to the unconditioned attic.

RA3.5.4.2.16 Special Situations--Below Roof Deck Insulation (Vented and Unvented Attics)

(a) Below roof deck loose-fill insulation shall be netted and installed per manufacturer's specifications.

(b) For vented attics, below deck loose-fill insulation shall be installed in a manner that does not obstruct soffit, eave, ridge or eyebrow vents to allow for adequate attic ventilation. Netting shall be installed in a manner that allows for the required net free area of soffit, eave, gable, and roof vents to be maintained after being filled. Eave vent baffles shall be installed to prevent air movement under or into the insulation.

(c) Netting shall be installed to seal around conduit, plumbing, roof penetrations and all other obstructions that penetrate the netting.

(d) Loose-fill insulation shall be installed uniformly in the netted cavity side-to-side, top-to-bottom, and front-to-back and be in continuous contact with the roof sheathing. Loose-fill insulation shall be installed to fit around wiring, conduit, plumbing, and other obstructions.

(e) The installer shall certify on the Certificate of Installation compliance documents that the manufacturer's minimum weight-per-square-foot requirement has been met.

(f) The HERS Rater shall verify that the manufacturer's minimum insulation thickness and specified R-value has been installed.

(g) The HERS Rater shall verify the minimum weight-per-square-foot requirement has been met. Verification shall be determined using manufacturer's recommended verification procedures. The HERS Rater shall record the weight-per-square-foot of the sample on the Certificate of Verification.

(h) Box netted installations are where netting is suspended from the top of roofing framing member, or top chord, to provide a fill depth that completely encloses the top chord, creating a uniform insulation layer of loose-fill insulation across the entire underside of the roof deck. For these installations, netted insulation cavity thickness shall be uniform and meet the minimum insulation thickness.

(i) For draped netted installations, where netting is attached directly to the bottom of the roof framing member, the HERS Rater shall verify that average insulation depth in the cavity meets the depth as specified by the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.4.3 Raised Floors

(a) Loose-fill insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier - usually the subfloor.

(b) Loose-fill insulation shall completely fill around wiring and plumbing.

(c) Loose-fill insulation shall be properly supported where necessary to avoid sagging, gaps, voids, and compression.

RA3.5.4.3.1 Homes with Floors Over Garage

(a) Loose-fill insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier - usually the subfloor.

(b) On floors that are over garages, or where there is an air space between the insulation and the subfloor, the rim joist shall be insulated.

(c) Loose-fill insulation shall completely fill around wiring and plumbing.

(d) Loose-fill insulation shall be properly supported to avoid sagging, gaps, voids, and compression.

RA3.5.4.3.2 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage

The separation between conditioned space (house) and the garage shall be insulated with fully supported loose-fill insulation to create a continuous thermal barrier. All rim and band joists adjoining conditioned space shall be air tight and insulated.

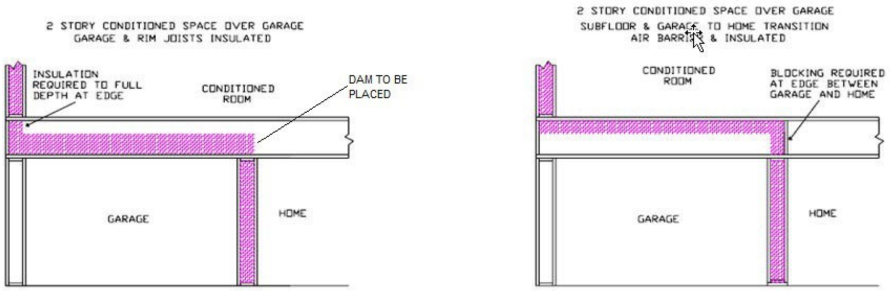


Figure RA3.5-3 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage – Loose Fill Insulation

RA3.5.4.3.3 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage

The band joist where the garage transitions to an attic above conditioned space shall have an air barrier installed in contact with the edge of the attic insulation.

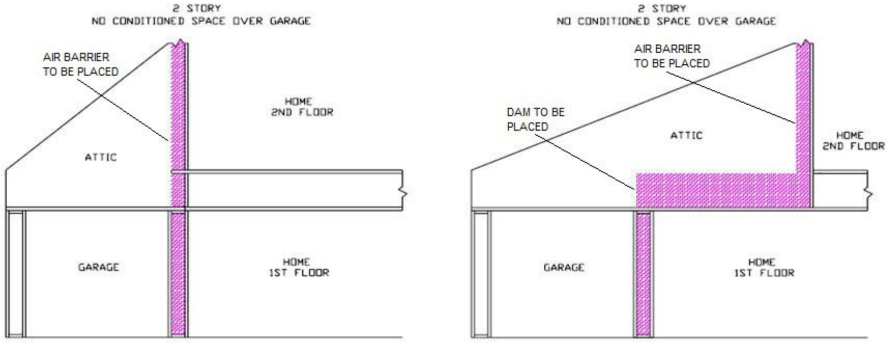


Figure RA3.5-4 Homes with No Conditioned Space over Garage – Loose Fill Insulation

RA3.5.5 RIGID BOARD INSULATION

These procedures detail the installation and inspection protocols necessary to qualify for Quality Insulation Installation (QII) of rigid board insulation sheathing material. These procedures must be field verified before the building construction permit is finalized.

These procedures are to be followed by the insulation installer and a qualified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) rater must verify its conformance for meeting the requirements of Sections 150.1(c)1E or 170.2(a)6, and 110.7 of the Standards.

RA3.5.5.1 Thermal Specification

This insulation type is manufactured of different materials and is in sheet or board form. Rigid board insulation materials are typically used on the exterior side of framed wall assemblies and over the top of exterior roof decks. These products also may be used for special situations in rafter spaces of cathedral ceilings, floors, at floor rim joists, and within or on the outside of window and door headers. This insulation type may also be integral to exterior siding materials. Rigid board insulation material most often is used in conjunction with other insulation materials installed within the framed cavity. The R-value is dependent on the type of material and its thickness. Specific product R-values are readily available from the manufacturer for the specific materials being installed. R-value of the product is typically marked on the product. The installed insulation must meet the R-value stated on the compliance documentation.

(a) Requirements for Walls, Ceilings and Floors Materials shall comply with, and be installed in conformance with, all applicable building codes for building. California Building Code (including, but not limited to, California Electric Code Section 719) and installed to meet all applicable fire codes.

(b) Materials shall meet California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 4, Article 3, listed in the California Department of Consumer Affairs Consumer Guide and Directory of Certified Insulating Materials.

(c) Materials shall comply with flame spread rating and smoke density requirements of Chapter 26 and Section 706 of the Title 24, Part 2: all installations with exposed facings must use fire retardant facings which have been tested and certified not to exceed a flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a smoke development index (SDI) of 450. Insulation facings that do not touch a ceiling, wall, or floor surface, and faced batts on the undersides of roofs with an air space between the ceiling and facing are considered exposed applications.

(d) Materials shall be installed according to manufacturer specifications and instructions.

(e) Rigid board insulation shall be attached according to the manufacturer's specifications.

(f) Rigid board insulation may be used as the air barrier provided it has been tested to conform to the air barrier performance conditions of the Standards.

RA3.5.5.1.1 R-value Measurement Equipment

The HERS raters shall verify the installed thickness of insulation in all assemblies and locations on walls, roof/ceilings, and floors, and to ensure that insulation levels and installation integrity meet the R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

RA3.5.5.1.2 Certificates

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. All Insulation Certificates of Installation signed by the insulation installer shall be provided stating the installation is consistent with the Certificate of Compliance, plans and specifications for which the building permit was issued. The insulation installer shall also complete the applicable sections of the Certificate of Installation form and attach a product specification or data sheet for every insulation material used.

RA3.5.5.1.3 Certificates and Availability

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. The Insulation Certificate of Installation, with insulation material labels or specification/data sheets attached, signed by the insulation installer, shall be available on the building site for each of the HERS rater's verification inspections. Note: The HERS rater cannot verify compliance credit without these completed forms.

RA3.5.5.2 Wall Insulation

(a) Wall stud cavities shall be caulked, foamed or otherwise sealed to provide a substantially air-tight envelope to the outdoors, attic, garage and crawl space. All plumbing and wiring penetrations through the top and bottom plates and electrical boxes that penetrate the sheathing shall be sealed. All gaps in the air barrier shall be caulked, or sealed with minimally expansive foam.

(b) Bottom plates of framed and non-framed assemblies shall be sealed to the ground subfloor or slab, and above ground subfloor.

(c) Installation shall uniformly fit across the plane of the wall and taping and/or caulking of all joints and seams of the insulation shall be maintained to be considered as the air barrier.

RA3.5.5.2.1 Narrow-Framed Cavities

(a) Non-standard with cavities shall be filled with insulation to snuggly fit into the space, or with minimally expansive foam sealing material.

(b) Narrow spaces less than 1 inch in width at windows and door jambs, shall be filled with minimally expansive foam sealing material. In cases where the manufacturer's warranty would be void if minimally expanding foam is used to seal the gap between the window frame or door jamb, the cavity must be airtight and filled with insulation snuggly fitted in the space.

(c) Narrow spaces less than 2 inches in width, such as between studs at building corners, and at the intersection of interior partition walls to exterior walls, shall be filled with insulation snuggly fitted in the space, or with minimally expansive foam sealing.

RA3.5.5.2.2 Special Situations--Installation Prior to Exterior Sheathing or Lath

(a) Hard to access wall stud cavities, such as corner channels, wall intersections, and behind tub/shower enclosures shall be insulated to the proper R-value. In most cases this can only be completed prior to the installation of the tub/shower enclosure, the exterior sheathing, or the exterior stucco lath.

(b) An air barrier shall be installed on the inside of the exterior wall(s) directly adjacent to the tub/shower enclosure.

RA3.5.5.2.3 Special Situations--Obstructions

(a) Penetrations and obstructions to the insulation shall be completely caulked and sealed.

(b) Insulation shall fill between the sheathing and the rear of electrical boxes and phone boxes.

RA3.5.5.2.4 Special Situations--Rim Joists

(a) All rim-joists shall be insulated to the same R-value as the adjacent walls.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps and voids.

RA3.5.5.2.5 Special Situations--Kneewalls and Skylight Shafts

(a) Framing for kneewalls and skylight shafts that separate conditioned from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

(b) Steel-framed kneewalls and skylight shafts shall meet or exceed the mandatory minimum insulation requirements and external surfaces of steel studs shall be covered with continuous insulation unless otherwise specified on the Certificate of Compliance using correct U-factors from Joint Appendix JA4, Table 4.3.4 (or U-factors approved by the Commission Executive Director).

(c) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.5.2.6 Special Situations--HVAC/Plumbing Closet

Walls of interior closets for HVAC and/or water heating equipment, which require combustion air venting, shall be insulated to at least the same R-value as other demising walls (i.e., walls separating conditioned space and attached garage), or as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.5.2.7 Special Situations--Double Walls and Framed Bump-Outs

(a) Insulation shall fill the entire cavity; or, an additional air barrier shall be installed inside the double wall or bump-out and in contact with the insulation so that the insulation fills the cavity formed with the additional air barrier.

(b) Entire double walls and framed bump-outs shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.5.2.8 Special Situations--Structural Bracing, Tie-downs, Steel Structural Framing

(a) Framing and bracing used for structural purposes shall be identified on plan documents with diagrams and/or design drawings.

(b) Insulation shall be installed in a manner that restricts thermal bridging through the structural framing assembly.

(c) Insulation shall be applied to fully enclose and/or adhere to all sides and ends of structural assembly framing that separate conditioned from unconditioned space.

(d) The structural portions of assemblies shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.5.2.9 Special Situations--Window and Door Headers

(a) All single-member window and door headers shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3 for a 2x4 framing, or equivalent width, and a minimum of R-5 for all other assemblies. Insulation is to be placed between the interior face of the header and inside surface of the interior wall finish wall material.

(b) No header insulation is required for single-member headers that are the same width as the wall, provided that the entire wall has at least R-2 insulation.

RA3.5.5.2.10 Special Situation--Gable Ends in Unvented Attics

(a) In unvented attics, where insulation is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, framing for gable ends that separate the unvented attic from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value of the adjacent exterior wall construction as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.5.3 Roof/Ceilings

(a) Baffles shall be placed at eaves or soffit vents of vented attics to keep insulation from blocking eave ventilation and prevent air movement under the insulation. The required net free-ventilation shall be maintained.

(b) Hard covers or draft stops shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers or draft stops are missing or incomplete, they shall be completed before insulation is installed.

(c) Rigid board insulation installed above the roof deck shall be applied to the outer edge of the plane of the wall top plate.

(d) Insulation shall cover all recessed lighting fixtures. If the fixtures are not rated for insulation contact (IC) and air tight, the fixtures shall be removed and/or replaced.

(e) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as airtight with air leakage less than 2.0 cfm @ 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

RA3.5.5.3.1 Special Situations--Enclosed Rafter Ceilings

(a) An air space shall be maintained between the insulation and roof sheathing as specified by California Building Code Section 1203.2 and R806.2, or as specified by the local building department.

(b) Insulation installed in unvented rafter ceilings or to the underside of unvented roofs with an attic below shall have an R-value conforming to compliance documentation and the air barrier shall be uniform across the transition of roof to wall. The insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.5.3.2 RESERVED

RA3.5.5.3.3 Special Situations--HVAC Platform

Insulation shall be placed below any platform or cat-walk for HVAC equipment installation and access.

RA3.5.5.3.4 Special Situations--Attic Access

Permanently attach rigid board insulation or batt or blanket insulation with the appropriate R-value to the access door using adhesive or mechanical fastener. The bottom of the attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage of conditioned air to the unconditioned attic.

RA3.5.5.4 Raised Floors

Rigid board insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier - usually the subfloor.

RA3.5.5.4.1 Homes with Floors Over Garage

(a) Rigid board insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier - usually the subfloor.

(b) On floors that are over garages, or where there is an air space between the insulation and the subfloor, the rim joist shall be insulated.

RA3.5.5.4.2 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage

The separation between conditioned space (house) and the garage shall be insulated with fully supported rigid board insulation to create a continuous thermal barrier. All rim and band joists adjoining conditioned space shall be air tight and insulated.

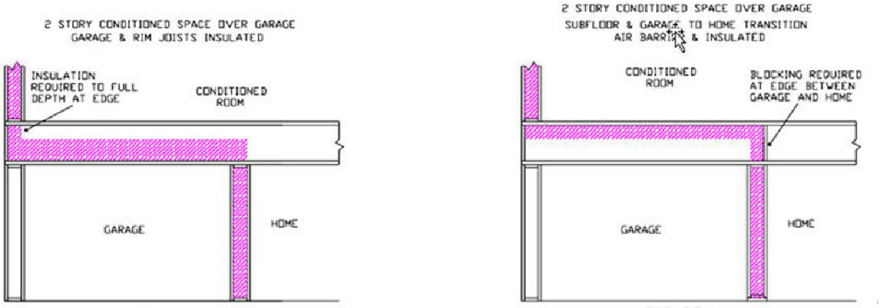
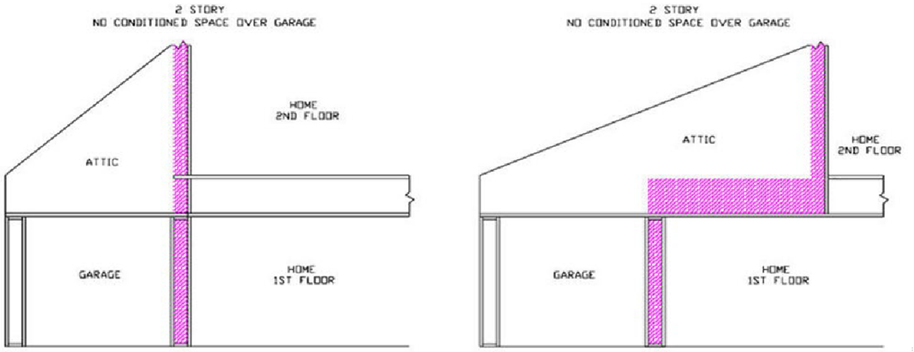


Figure RA3.5-5 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage – Rigid Board Insulation

RA3.5.5.4.3 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage

The band joist where the garage transitions to an attic above conditioned space shall have an air barrier installed in contact with the edge of the attic insulation.



Picture of *Picture o*

Figure RA3.5-6 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage – Rigid Board Insulation

RA3.5.6 SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM INSULATION

These procedures detail the installation and inspection protocols necessary to qualify for Quality Insulation Installation (QII) of spray polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation. These procedures must be field verified before the building construction permit is finalized.

These procedures are to be followed by the insulation installer and a qualified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) rater must verify its conformance for meeting the requirements of Sections 150.1(c) and 110.7of the Standards.

These procedures apply to two types of SPF used as building insulation: medium-density closed cell SPF (ccSPF) and low-density open cell SPF (ocSPF). Most often, the same procedures will apply to both ccSPF and ocSPF. However, in some construction situations the procedures will be different.

NOTE: SPF insulation shall be field verified using these procedures whenever R-values other than the default R-value per inch are used for compliance (see *"R-value"* in sections RA3.5.6.1.1 and RA3.5.6.1.2 below).

RA3.5.6.1 Thermal Specification

RA3.5.6.1.1 ccSPF

A spray applied polyurethane foam insulation having a closed cellular structure resulting in an installed nominal density of 1.5 to less than 2.5 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

R-value: The total R-value shall be calculated based on the nominal required thickness of the insulation multiplied by a thermal resistivity of 5.8 per inch. The R-value of ccSPF insulation shall meet or exceed the installed thickness specified in Table 3.5-1 below.

Alternatively, the total R-value may be calculated based on the thickness of insulation multiplied by the "tested R-value per inch" as ~~listed in the Table of R-values or R-value Chart from the manufacturer's current ICC Evaluation Service Report (ESR) that shows compliance with~~

~~*Acceptance Criteria for Spray-Applied Foam Plastic Insulation--AC377*~~certified by the Department of Consumer Affairs, Bureau of ~~Electronics and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation~~Household Goods and Services. Supporting documentation showing the certified R-value per inch shall be made available at the site for verification and noted on the Certificate of Installation. Based on this calculation, the overall assembly U-factor shall be determined by selecting the assembly type, framing configuration, and cavity insulation from the appropriate Reference Joint Appendix JA4 table or other approved method specified in Section JA4 of the Reference Appendices.

The R-value of the installed insulation shall be based on the verified thickness at an R-value of 5.8 per inch unless ~~an ESR~~supporting documentation is provided ~~with compliance documentation~~ that verifies use of other values. Approved compliance software shall make appropriate adjustments to account for the R-value and U-factor effects of the ccSPF assembly.

Nominal Thickness: ccSPF sprayed into framed cavities or on flat surfaces will expand with variable thicknesses, visibly appearing as undulations on the surface of the insulation. The average thickness of the foam insulation must meet or exceed the required R-value. Depressions in the foam insulation’s surface shall not be greater than 1/2-inch of the required thickness at any given point of the surface area being insulated.

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ccSPF insulation is not required to fill the cavities of framed assemblies provided the installed thickness of insulation conforms to compliance documentation and that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 2.0 inches away from the framing for ccSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Air Barrier: ccSPF installed as an air barrier shall be a minimum of 2.0 inches in thickness; alternatively, ccSPF insulation shall be installed at a thickness that meets an air permeance no greater than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential when tested in accordance to ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

RA3.5.6.1.2 Open Cell Spray Foam (ocSPF)

A spray applied polyurethane foam insulation having an open cellular structure resulting in an installed nominal density of 0.4 to less than 1.5 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

R-value: The total R-value shall be calculated based on the nominal required thickness of the insulation multiplied by a thermal resistivity of 3.6 per inch. The R-value of ocSPF insulation shall meet or exceed the installed thickness specified in Table 3.5-1 below.

Alternatively, the total R-value may be calculated based on the thickness of insulation multiplied by the "tested R-value per inch" as certified by the Department of Consumer Affairs, Bureau of ~~Electronics and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation~~Household Goods and Services. Supporting documentation showing the certified R-value per inch shall be made available at the site for verification and noted on the Certificate of Installation~~listed in the Table of R-values or R-value Chart from the manufacturer's current International Code Council (ICC) Evaluation Service Report (ESR) that shows compliance with~~ ~~*Acceptance Criteria for Spray-Applied*~~

~~Foam Plastic Insulation--AC377~~. Based on this calculation, the overall assembly U-factor shall be determined by selecting the assembly that matches the assembly type, framing configuration, and cavity insulation from the appropriate Reference Joint Appendix JA4 table or other approved method specified in Section JA4 of the Reference Appendices.

The R-value of the installed insulation shall be based on the verified thickness at an R-value of 3.6 per inch unless ~~an ESR~~supporting documentation is provided ~~with compliance documentation~~ that verifies use of other values. Approved compliance software shall make appropriate adjustments to account for the R-value and U-factor effects of the ocSPF assembly.

Nominal Thickness: ocSPF sprayed into framed cavities or on flat surfaces will expand with variable thicknesses, visibly appearing as undulations on the surface of the insulation. The average thickness of the foam insulation must meet or exceed the required R-value. Depressions in the foam insulation surface shall not be greater than 1/2-inch of the required thickness provided these depressions do not exceed 10% of the surface area being insulated.

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ocSPF insulation shall completely fill cavities of 2x4 inch framing or less. Cavities greater than 2x4 inch framing dimensions may be filled to the thickness that meets the required R-value used for compliance provided that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 5.5 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Air Barrier: ocSPF installed as an air barrier shall be a minimum of 5.5 inches in thickness; alternatively, ocSPF insulation shall be installed at a thickness that meets an air permeance no greater than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential when tested in accordance to ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

Table RA3.5-1: Required Thickness (inches) of SPF Insulation to Achieve Specified R-values

Equivalent R-Values for SPF insulation	**11**	**13**	**15**	**19**	**21**	**22**	**25**	**30**	**38**
Required thickness of ccSPF insulation @ R5.8/inch	2.00	2.25	2.75	3.50	3.75	4.00	4.50	5.25	6.75
Required thickness of ocSPF insulation @ R3.6/inch	3.0	3.5	4.2	5.3	5.8	6.1	6.9	8.3	10.6

RA3.5.6.1.3 Requirements for Walls, Ceilings and Floors

(a) Materials shall comply with, and be installed in conformance with, all applicable building codes for building. California Building Code (including, but not limited to, California Electric Code Section 719) and installed to meet all applicable fire codes.

(b) Materials shall meet California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 4, Article 3, listed in the California Department of Consumer Affairs Consumer Guide and Directory of Certified Insulating Materials.

(c) Materials shall comply with flame spread index and smoke developed index requirements of the CBC, Title 24, Part 2, Section 2603.5.4.

(d) The installer shall determine and the HERS rater shall verify that the manufacturer's nominal insulation thickness has been installed and certified and that all requirements of the Certificate of Verification have been met.

(e) The installer shall determine and the HERS rater shall verify that insulation is in substantial contact with the assembly air barrier. When SPF insulation is being used to provide air barrier control, the SPF insulation must cover and be in contact with the entire surface of the framing, filling the cavity to a distance away from the framing specified in "Filling of Framed Assemblies" above.

(f) SPF insulation shall be applied by SPF applicators trained and experienced in the use and maintenance of high-pressure, plural-component equipment. SPF applicators shall be certified by the SPF insulation manufacturer for the application of SPF insulation systems.

(g) SPF insulation shall be spray-applied to fully adhere to assembly framing, floor and ceiling the joists, and other framing surfaces within the construction cavity. When multiple layers of SPF material are applied, each foam lift (i.e. spray application) shall have adhesion at substrate and foam interfaces. SPF insulation shall not exhibit areas that:

1. Have voids or gaps in the uniformity of the insulation
2. Are extremely soft or spongy
3. Show the presence of liquid
4. Have blistering between lifts
5. Show differences in coloration of adjacent foam layers
6. Indicate the presence of other materials between lifts

(h) SPF insulation shall be installed in conformance with the manufacturer's specifications, recommendations and temperature/humidity limitations.

(i) Substrates to which SPF insulation is applied shall be secure and free of surface moisture, frost, grease, oils, dirt, dust or other contaminants that would adversely affect SPF adhesion.

(j) SPF insulation shall meet all provisions of the CBC Title 24, Parts 2 and 2.5. SPF shall be separated from occupied spaces by an approved thermal barrier, such as 0.5 inch gypsum wallboard or other approved material, or show equivalence through testing in accordance with CBC, Title 24, Part 2, Section 2603, and Part 2.5, Section R316.

(k) SPF insulation may be used as the air barrier provided it has been tested to conform to the air barrier performance conditions of the Standards.

RA3.5.6.1.4 R-value Measurement Equipment

(a) The HERS rater shall measure the installed thickness of insulation in at least 6 random locations on walls, roof/ceilings and floors (i.e., 6 measurements per opaque surface type: wall, roof/ceiling or floor) to ensure minimum thickness levels necessary to meet the R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation. Measurement areas shall include low and high areas of the SPF insulated surface.

(b) Probes for inspection of installed thickness of SPF insulation. The insulation thickness shall be verified by using a probe, gauge or device capable of measuring the installed thickness of insulation. A pointed measurement probe or other gauge or device, capable of penetrating the full thickness of the insulation, shall be used having measurements marked by at least one-eighth inch increments. Insulation thickness measurement probes and gauges or devices shall be accurate to within ±1/8 inch and shall be designed and used in a manner to cause minimal damage to the insulation.

RA3.5.6.1.5 Certificates

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. The Insulation Certificates of Installation shall be signed by the SPF applicator stating that the installation is consistent with the Certificate of Compliance, plans and specifications for which the building permit was issued shall be provided. The SPF applicator shall also ~~attach a R-value chart or an ICC ESR showing compliance with AC377 for each SPF insulation material used~~make available supporting documentation showing the certified R-value per inch.

RA3.5.6.1.6 Certificates and Availability

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. All compliance documentation shall be completed, signed by the SPF applicator, and a measuring probe or similar device shall be available at the building site for the HERS rater's verification inspection. Note: The HERS rater shall not verify compliance credit without these completed forms.

RA3.5.6.2 Wall Insulation

(a) SPF insulation shall be applied to provide an air-tight envelope to the outdoors and between adjoining cavity surfaces of conditioned and unconditioned space, such as the: attic, garage, and crawl space. Special attention shall be paid to plumbing and wiring penetrations through the top plates and bottom plate framing, and electrical boxes that penetrate the sheathing and the sheathing seal to the top and bottom plate framing.

(b) Bottom plates of framed and non-framed assemblies shall be sealed to the ground subfloor or slab, and above ground subfloor.

(c) SPF insulation installation shall uniformly cover the cavity side-to-side and end-to-end and shall be installed to cover and form an air barrier on the framing at the top, bottom and sides of each cavity.

NOTE:

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ccSPF insulation is not required to fill the cavities of framed assemblies provided the installed thickness of insulation conforms to compliance documentation and that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 2.0 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ocSPF insulation shall completely fill cavities of 2x4 inch framing or less. Cavities greater than 2x4 inch framing dimensions may be filled to the thickness that meets the required R-value used for compliance provided that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 5.5 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Air Barrier: ccSPF installed as an air barrier shall be 2.0 inches in thickness. ocSPF installed as an air barrier shall be a minimum of 5.5 inches in thickness. Alternatively, ccSPF and ocSPF insulation shall be installed at a thickness that meets an air permeance no greater than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential when tested in accordance to ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

RA3.5.6.2.1 Narrow-Framed Cavities

(a) Non-standard width cavities shall be filled with SPF insulation at a depth consistent with the SPF thickness required to achieve the specified R-value.

(b) Narrow spaces less than 1 inch in width at windows and door jambs, shall be filled with minimally expansive foam sealing material or SPF insulation. In cases where the manufacturer's warranty would be void if minimally expanding foam is used to seal the gap between the window frame or door jamb, the cavity must be airtight and filled with a different insulation product snuggly fitted (with limited compression) in the space.

(c) Narrow spaces less than 2 inches in width, such as between studs at building corners and at the intersection of interior partition walls, shall be filled with insulation snuggly fitted into the space, with minimally expansive foam, or SPF insulation.

RA3.5.6.2.2 Special Situations--Installation Prior to Exterior Sheathing or Lath

(a) Hard to access wall stud cavities, such as corner channels, wall intersections, and behind tub/shower enclosures shall be insulated to the proper R-value. In most cases, this can only be completed prior to the installation of the tub/shower enclosure, the exterior sheathing, or the exterior stucco lath.

(b) An air barrier shall be installed on the inside of the exterior wall(s) directly adjacent to the tub/shower enclosure.

RA3.5.6.2.3 Special Situations--Obstructions

(a) SPF insulation shall be applied to fully seal around wiring and plumbing.

(b) SPF insulation shall be applied to fully seal between the sheathing and the rear of electrical boxes and telephone boxes.

(c) In cold climates, where water pipes may freeze (Climate Zones 14 and 16), pipes shall have at least 2/3 of the insulation between the water pipe and the outside surface of the exterior wall. If the pipe is near the exterior finish assembly layers, as much insulation as possible shall be placed between the pipe and the exterior assembly material.

RA3.5.6.2.4 Special Situations--Rim Joists

(a) All rim-joists shall be insulated to the same R-Value as the adjacent walls.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps or voids.

RA3.5.6.2.5 Special Situations--Kneewalls and Skylight Shafts

(a) Framing for kneewalls and skylight shafts that separate conditioned from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

(b) Kneewalls within conditioned space do not need to be insulated.

(c) Steel-framed kneewalls and skylight shafts shall meet or exceed the mandatory minimum insulation requirements and external surfaces of steel studs shall be covered with continuous insulation unless otherwise specified on the Certificate of Compliance using correct U-factors from Joint Appendix JA4, Table 4.3.4 (or U-factors approved by the Commission Executive Director).

(d) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

(e) The house side of the insulation shall be in contact with the drywall or other wall finish.

(f) Insulation for all kneewall and skylight shafts shall be completely enclosed by vertical and horizontal framing, including horizontal plates at top and bottom of the insulation.

(g) SPF insulation shall be installed without gaps.

(h) SPF insulation shall be fully adhered and self-supporting so that it will remain in place.

NOTE:

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ccSPF insulation is not required to fill the cavities of framed assemblies provided the installed thickness of insulation conforms to compliance documentation and that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 2.0 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Filling of Framed Assemblies: ocSPF insulation shall completely fill cavities of 2x4 inch framing or less. Cavities greater than 2x4 inch framing dimensions may be filled to the thickness that meets the required R-value used for compliance provided that the bottom and top plates of vertical framing and both ends of horizontal framing, including band and rim joists, are sprayed to completely fill the cavity adjacent to and in contact with the framing to a distance of 5.5 inches away from the framing for ocSPF insulation, or filled to the thickness meeting ASTM testing as an air barrier.

Air Barrier: ccSPF installed as an air barrier shall be 2.0 inches in thickness. ocSPF installed as an air barrier shall be a minimum of 5.5 inches in thickness. Alternatively, ccSPF and ocSPF insulation shall be installed at a thickness that meets an air permeance no greater than 0.02 L/s-m^2 at 75 Pa pressure differential when tested in accordance to ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.

RA3.5.6.2.6 Special Situations--HVAC/Plumbing Closet

Walls of interior closets for HVAC and/or water heating equipment that require combustion air venting, shall be insulated to at least the same R-value as the other demising walls (i.e., walls separating conditioned space and attached garage), or as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.6.2.7 Special Situations--Double Walls and Framed Bump-Outs

(a) Insulation shall fill the entire cavity; or, an additional air barrier shall be installed inside the double wall or bump-out and in contact with the insulation so that the insulation fills the cavity formed with the additional air barrier.

(b) Entire double walls and framed bump-outs shall be air tight.

RA3.5.6.2.8 Special Situations--Structural Bracing, Tie-downs, Steel Structural Framing

(a) Framing and bracing used for structural purposes shall be identified on plan documents with diagrams and/or design drawings.

(b) Insulation shall be installed in a manner that restricts thermal bridging through the structural framing assembly.

(c) Insulation shall be applied to fully enclose and/or adhere to all sides and ends of structural assembly framing that separate conditioned from unconditioned space.

(d) The structural portions of assemblies shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.6.2.9 Special Situations--Window and Door Headers

(a) All single-member window and door headers shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3 for a 2x4 framing, or equivalent width, and a minimum of R-5 for all other assemblies. Insulation is to be placed between the interior face of the header and inside surface of the interior wall finish.

(b) No header insulation is required for single-member headers that are the same width as the wall, provided that the entire wall has at least R-2 insulation.

RA3.5.6.2.10 Special Situations--Gable Ends in Unvented Attics

(a) In unvented attics, where insulation is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, framing for gable ends that separate the unvented attic from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value of the adjacent exterior wall construction as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.6.3 Roof/Ceilings

(a) SPF insulation shall be applied to fully adhere to the substrate of the ceiling or roof deck.

(b) SPF insulation shall be applied to fully adhere to the joist and other framing faces to form a complete air seal within the construction cavity.

(c) SPF insulation shall be spray-applied to fully adhere to and seal around wiring and plumbing.

(d) Hard covers shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers, they shall be in place before insulation is installed.

(e) In vented attics, required eave ventilation shall not be obstructed; the net free-ventilation area of the eave vent shall be maintained.

(f) In unvented attics where SPF is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, all gable end areas shall be insulated to the same R-value as the walls and as specified on compliance documentation. It is not necessary to place hard covers over drop ceilings and interior wall cavities in this situation.

(g) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as airtight with leakage less than 2.0 cfm @ 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

(h) SPF insulation shall not be applied directly to recessed ~~lighting fixtures~~luminaires unless the recessed ~~fixture~~ luminaire is rated for SPF insulation contact (SPCL~~IC~~) appropriate for use with polyurethane spray foam in accordance with NEMA LE 7-2015. Recessed light fixtures not rated for SPF insulation contact (~~IC~~SPCL) and insulated with SPF insulation shall be ~~protected from ignition by a combination of one or more of the following methods: (1) be covered with a minimum of 1.5 inches of mineral fiber insulation, or (2) be enclosed in a box fabricated from 1/4 inch plywood, 18 gauge metal, or 3/8 inch hard board or gypboard. The exterior of the box may then be insulated with SPF provided: (1) the SPF insulation is covered with an approved ignition barrier coating tested and supported by an ICC Evaluations Service Report (ESR) or code compliance research report approved by the local agency; or (2) the exposed condition of the SPF insulation is supported by testing with an ICC ESR or research report approved by the local building department.~~separated from the spray foam by a suitable barrier or box as directed in NEMA LSD 57-2018. In a cathedral ceiling installation, where SPF is applied above the luminaire, but not encasing it with foam, the luminaire shall have a minimum ½-inch air space between the two components.

(i) SPF insulation shall be kept away from combustion appliance flues in accordance with flue manufacturers' installation instructions or labels on the flue for clearance.

RA3.5.6.3.1 Special Situations--Enclosed Rafter Ceilings

SPF insulation installed in unvented rafter ceilings or to the underside of unvented roofs with an attic below shall have an R-value conforming to compliance documentation and the air barrier shall be uniform across the transition of roof to wall. The insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.6.3.2 Special Situations--Attics and Cathedral Ceilings

In attics where entry is made for the service of utilities, SPF shall be protected from ignition in accordance with CBC, Part 2, Section 2603, and Part 2.5, Section R316~~ or the SPF assembly must have been tested in accordance with ICC Evaluation Service Acceptance Criteria AC377~~.

RA3.5.6.3.3 Special Situations--HVAC Platform

A minimum of 3 inches of ccSPF insulation or 5.3 inches of ocSPF shall be placed below any platform or cat-walk access ways installed in vented attics for HVAC equipment or other needs. The overall assembly R-value shall meet the required R-values specified in the compliance documentation.

RA3.5.6.3.4 Special Situations--Attic Access

A minimum of 3 inches of ccSPF or 5.3 inches of ocSPF insulation shall be applied to the access door assuring good adhesion to the door surface. Alternatively, permanently attach rigid foam or batt insulation with adhesive or mechanical fastener. The overall assembly R-value shall meet the required values specified in the compliance documentation.

RA3.5.6.4 Raised Floors

(a) SPF insulation shall be spray-applied to fully adhere to the bottom side of the floor sheathing.

(b) SPF insulation shall uniformly cover the cavity side-to-side and end-to-end.

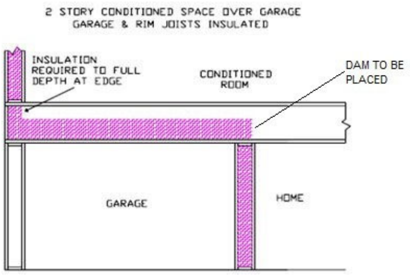
RA3.5.6.4.1 Homes with Floors Over Garage

(a) SPF insulation shall be spray-applied to fully adhere to the bottom side of the floor sheathing.

(b) SPF insulation installation shall uniformly cover the cavity side-to-side and end-to-end.

RA3.5.6.4.2 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage

The separation between conditioned space (house) and the garage shall be insulated by spraying SPF insulation to create a continuous thermal barrier. All rim and band joists adjoining conditioned space shall be air tight and insulated.



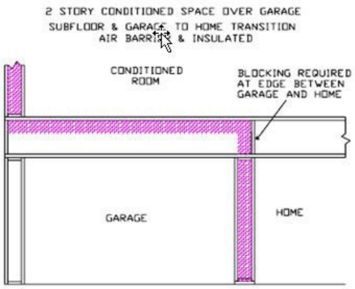


Figure RA3.5-7 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage – Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation

RA3.5.6.4.3 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage

The band joist where the garage transitions to an attic above conditioned space shall have an air barrier installed in contact with the edge of the attic insulation.

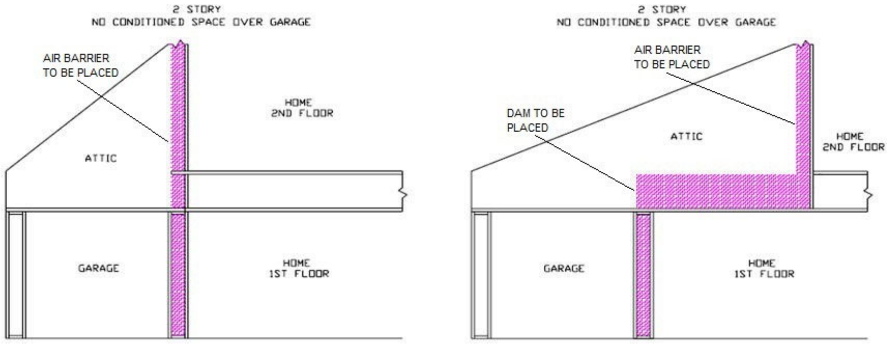


Figure RA3.5-8 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage – Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation

RA3.5.7 STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANEL (SIP)

These procedures detail the installation and inspection protocols necessary to qualify for Quality Insulation Installation (QII) of Structural Insulated Panel (SIP) systems. These procedures must be field verified before the building construction permit is finalized.

These procedures are to be followed by the SIP installer and a qualified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) rater must verify its conformance for meeting the requirements of Sections 150.1(c) and 110.7 of the Standards.

RA3.5.7.1 Thermal Specification

This insulation type is a composite building material manufactured with an internal insulating layer of rigid insulation of sheet or board material, or from cured spray polyurethane foam insulation material. The internal insulation is sandwiched between two layers of structural board, usually referred to as a "panel." The result is "panelized" construction versus traditional framed construction. SIPs combine several components of conventional building, such as studs and joists, insulation, vapor retarder and air barrier. They can be used for different applications, such as exterior walls, roofs, and floors. Examples of common SIP sizes are panels ranging in length from 4x8 feet to 4x24 feet and having core thickness of 3 1/2 inches to 11 1/2 inches, depending on the manufacturer. Panels are typically cut at the manufacturing facility to precisely fit the building's design characteristics. Openings for windows and doors are cut into one or more panels, and often small chases are provided within the internal insulation for electrical wiring and plumbing.

SIPs can be used for the entire building envelope or for individual assemblies, such as for just walls or just floors. In these situations, the SIP system will used in conjunction with other traditional insulation materials installed within cavities of framed assemblies. The R-value of a SIP is dependent on the type of material used internally for insulation and the overall thickness of the panel. Specific product R-values are readily available from the manufacturer and for the specific materials being installed. The R-value of the product is typically marked on the product. The installed insulation must meet the R-value stated on the compliance documentation.

RA3.5.7.1.1 Requirements for Walls, Ceilings and Floors

(a) Materials shall comply with, and be installed in conformance with, all applicable building codes for building. California Building Code (including, but not limited to, California Electric Code Section 719) and installed to meet all applicable fire codes.

(b) Materials shall meet California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 4, Article 3, listed in the California Department of Consumer Affairs Consumer Guide and Directory of Certified Insulating Materials.

(c) Materials shall comply with flame spread rating and smoke density requirements of Chapter 26 and Section 706 of the Title 24, Part 2: all installations with exposed facings must use fire retardant facings which have been tested and certified not to exceed a flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a smoke development index (SDI) of 450. Insulation facings that do not touch a ceiling, wall, or floor surface, and faced batts on the undersides of roofs with an air space between the ceiling and facing are considered exposed applications.

(d) Materials shall be installed according to manufacturer specifications and instructions.

(e) SIP systems are considered an air barrier; however extension of the air barrier shall be made across all interconnections of panels, at window and door openings, and at all adjoining surfaces of different panel areas (i.e., where SIP walls adjoin the floor and roof/ceiling).

RA3.5.7.1.2 R-value Measurement Equipment

The HERS raters shall verify the installed thickness of insulation in all SIP panels and locations on walls, roof/ceilings, and floors, and to ensure that insulation levels and installation integrity meet the R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

RA3.5.7.1.3 Certificates

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. An Insulation Certificate of Installation signed by the installer shall be provided that states the installation is consistent with the Certificate of Compliance, plans and specifications for which the building permit was issued.
The SIP installer shall also complete the applicable sections of the Certificate of Installation form and attach a product specification or data sheet for every insulation material used.

RA3.5.7.1.4 Certificates and Availability

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. The Insulation Certificate of Installation, with insulation material labels or specification/data sheets attached, signed by the SIP installer, shall be available on the building site for each of the HERS rater's verification inspections. Note: The HERS rater cannot verify compliance credit without these completed forms.

RA3.5.7.2 Wall Insulation

(a) Connections of wall panels shall be sealed, caulked, foamed, or taped (i.e., SIP tape) to provide a substantially air-tight envelope to the outdoors, attic, garage and crawl space. All plumbing and wiring penetrations through the top and bottom of panels, and electrical boxes that penetrate the SIP sheathing shall be sealed. All gaps in the air barrier shall be caulked, or sealed with minimally expansive foam or taped (i.e., SIP tape).

(b) Bottom connections of wall panels shall be sealed to the ground subfloor or slab, and above ground subfloor.

(c) Insulation shall uniformly fit across the plane of the wall and taping (i.e., SIPs tape), caulking or sealing of all joints and seams of panel joints (i.e., spline connections) shall be maintained to be considered as the air barrier.

RA3.5.7.2.1 Special Situations--Obstructions

(a) Penetrations and obstructions to the SIP shall be completely caulked and sealed.

(b) Insulation shall fill between the sheathing and the rear of electrical boxes and phone boxes.

RA3.5.7.2.2 Special Situations--Rim Joists

(a) All rim-joists shall be insulated to the same R-value as the adjacent walls.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps and voids.

RA3.5.7.2.3 Special Situations--Kneewalls and Skylight Shafts

(a) Framing for kneewalls and skylight shafts that separate conditioned from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

(b) Steel-framed kneewalls and skylight shafts, shall meet or exceed the mandatory minimum insulation requirements and external surfaces of steel studs shall be covered with insulation unless otherwise specified on the Certificate of Compliance using correct U-factors from Joint Appendix JA4, Table 4.3.4 (or U-factors approved by the Commission Executive Director).

(c) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.7.2.4 Special Situations--HVAC/Plumbing Closet

Walls of interior closets for HVAC and/or water heating equipment, which require combustion air venting, shall be insulated to at least the same R-value as the other demising walls (i.e., walls separating conditioned space and attached garage), or as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.7.2.5 Special Situations--Double Walls and Framed Bump-Outs

(a) Insulation shall fill the entire cavity; or, an additional air barrier shall be installed inside the double wall or bump-out and in contact with the insulation so that the insulation fills the cavity formed with the additional air barrier.

(b) Entire double walls and framed bump-outs shall be air tight.

RA3.5.7.2.6 Special Situations--Structural Bracing, Tie-downs, Steel Structural Framing

(a) Framing and bracing used for structural purposes shall be identified on plan documents with diagrams and/or design drawings.

(b) Insulation shall be installed in a manner that restricts thermal bridging through the structural framing assembly.

(c) Insulation shall be applied to fully enclose and/or adhere to all sides and ends of structural assembly framing.

(d) The structural portions of assemblies shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.7.2.7 Special Situations--Window and Door Headers

All single-member window and door headers shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3 for a 2x4 framing, or equivalent width, and a minimum of R-5 for all other assemblies. Insulation is to be placed between the exterior face of the header and inside surface of the finish wall material.

RA3.5.7.2.8 Special Situations—Gable Ends in Unvented Attics

(a) In unvented attic, where insulation is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, framing for gable ends that separate the unvented attic from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value of the adjacent exterior wall construction as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.7.3 Roof/Ceilings

(a) Baffles shall be placed at eaves or soffit vents of vented attics to keep insulation from blocking eave ventilation and prevent air movement under the insulation. The required net free-ventilation shall be maintained.

(b) Hard covers or draft stops shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers or draft stops are missing or incomplete, they shall be completed before insulation is installed.

(c) In traditional framed attics, required eave ventilation shall not be obstructed for conventional attics – the net free-ventilation area of the eave vent shall be maintained. Eave vent baffles shall be installed to prevent air movement under or into the ceiling insulation of conventional attics.

(d) Insulation shall cover all recessed lighting fixtures. If the fixtures are not rated for zero clearance insulation contact (IC) and air tight, the fixture shall be removed and/or replaced.

(e) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as air tight with leakage less than 2.0 cfm at 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

RA3.5.7.3.1 Special Situations--Attics and Cathedral Ceilings

Insulation installed in unvented rafter ceilings or to the underside of unvented roofs with an attic below shall have an R-value conforming to compliance documentation and the air barrier shall be uniform across the transition of roof to wall. The insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.7.3.2 Special Situations--HVAC Platform

Insulation shall be placed below any platform or cat-walk for HVAC equipment installation and access, as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.7.3.3 Special Situations--Attic Access

Permanently attach rigid board insulation, batt or blanket insulation, or SIP with the appropriate R-value to the access door using adhesive or mechanical fastener. The bottom of the attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage of conditioned air to the unconditioned attic.

RA3.5.7.4 Raised Floors

SIPs air barrier shall be maintained through use of SIP tape, or sealing and caulking between panels and at all spline joints.

RA3.5.7.4.1 Homes with Floors Over Garage

On floors that are over garages, the rim joist shall be insulated.

RA3.5.7.4.2 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage

The separation between conditioned space (house) and the garage shall be insulated to create a continuous thermal barrier. All rim and band joists adjoining conditioned space shall be air tight and insulated.

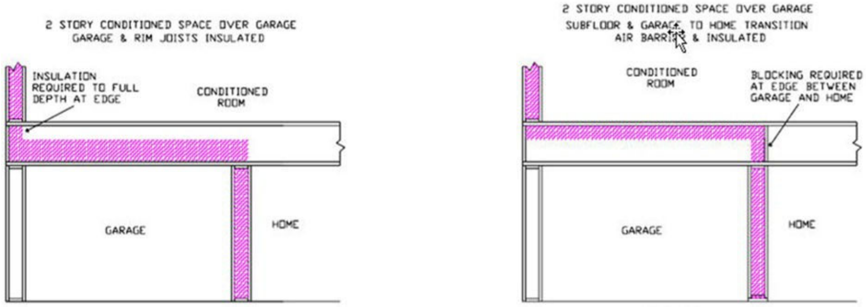


Figure RA3.5-9 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage – Structural Insulated Panel (SIP)

RA3.5.7.4.3 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage

The band joist where the garage transitions to an attic above conditioned space shall have an air barrier installed in contact with the edge of the attic insulation.

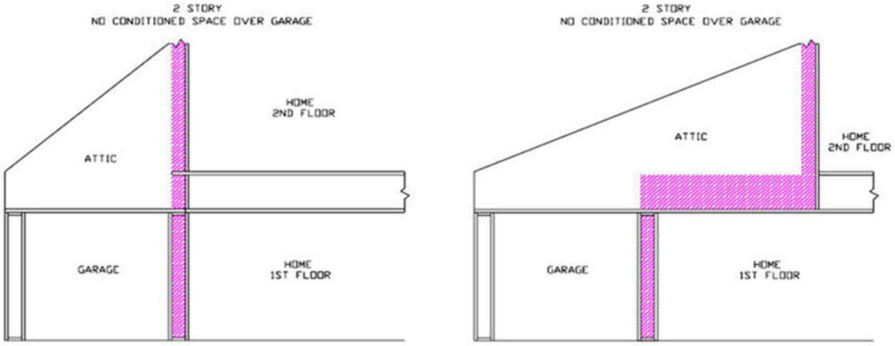


Figure RA3.5-10 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage – Structural Insulated Panel (SIP)

RA3.5.8 INSULATED CONCRETE FORM (ICF)

These procedures detail the installation and inspection protocols necessary to qualify for Quality Insulation Installation (QII) of insulated concrete forms (ICFs). These procedures must be field verified before the building construction permit is finalized.

These procedures are to be followed by the insulation installer and a qualified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) rater must verify its conformance for meeting the requirements of Sections 150.1(c) and 110.7 of the Standards.

RA3.5.8.1 Thermal Specification

Conventional concrete and concrete masonry unit (CMU) walls, floors and roofs can be insulated on the inside, on the outside, or have insulation between two layers of concrete (i.e., sandwich panel walls/block walls). ICFs are typically single forming masonry blocks with insulation to improve the thermal resistance of the material. ICFs are manufactured in conventional CMU dimensions of 6 inch, 8 inch, 10 inch, and larger widths. Insulated concrete forms (ICFs) typically have a layer of insulation located: (1) within the inner core of the concrete masonry unit; or, (2) on one or all sides surrounding an inner core of concrete.

A similar type of insulated concrete form system is autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) which has an air void matrix rather than sand and gravel commonly used in conventional concrete. The density range of AAC is 30 to 50 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) compared to conventional concrete used with ICFs with a density of approximately 80 to 140 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

The R-value of ICFs is dependent on the type of insulation material used and its thickness. Insulation used within the inner core of ICFs can be: (1) poured-in-place vermiculite or perlite; (2) foamed-in-place spray polyurethane foam insulation material; or, (3) standard molded insulation inserts of rigid board insulation material. Insulation used to make up one or more of the outer layers of the ICF is a rigid board insulation material. Specific product R-values are readily available from the manufacturer for the specific materials being installed. R-value of the product is typically marked on the product. The installed insulation must meet the R-value stated on the compliance documentation.

RA3.5.8.1.1 Requirements for Walls, Ceilings and Floors

(a) Materials shall comply with, and be installed in conformance with, all applicable building codes for building. California Building Code (including, but not limited to, California Electric Code Section 719) and installed to meet all applicable fire codes.

(b) Materials shall meet California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 4, Article 3, listed in the California Department of Consumer Affairs Consumer Guide and Directory of Certified Insulating Materials.

(c) Materials shall comply with flame spread rating and smoke density requirements of Chapter 26 and Section 706 of the Title 24, Part 2: all installations with exposed facings must use fire retardant facings which have been tested and certified not to exceed a flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a smoke development index (SDI) of 450. Insulation facings that do not touch a ceiling, wall, or floor surface, and faced batts on the undersides of roofs with an air space between the ceiling and facing are considered exposed applications.

(d) Materials shall be installed according to manufacturer specifications and instructions.

(e) ICF systems are considered an air barrier; however extension of the air barrier shall be made across all interconnections of window and door openings, and at all adjoining surfaces of exterior envelope assemblies of different materials (i.e., where ICF walls adjoin framed floors and roof/ceilings).

RA3.5.8.1.2 R-value Measurement Equipment

The HERS raters shall verify the installed type and thickness of insulation in the ICF system being used for walls, roof/ceilings, and floors, and to ensure that insulation levels and installation integrity meet the R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

RA3.5.8.1.3 Certificates

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. An Insulation Certificate of Installation signed by the installer shall be provided that states the installation is consistent with the Certificate of Compliance, plans and specifications for which the building permit was issued. The ICF installer shall also complete the applicable sections of the Certificate of Installation form and attach a product specification or data sheet for every insulation material used.

RA3.5.8.1.4 Certificates and Availability

All provisions of Residential Appendix RA2 shall be met. The Insulation Certificate of Installation, with insulation material labels or specification/data sheets attached, signed by the ICF installer, shall be available on the building site for each of the HERS rater's verification inspections. Note: The HERS rater cannot verify compliance credit without these completed forms.

RA3.5.8.2 Wall Insulation

(a) Connections of ICF walls shall be grouted and sealed meeting manufacturer's specifications. All plumbing and wiring penetrations through the top and bottom of the ICF, and electrical boxes that penetrate the plane of the ICF shall be sealed. All gaps between interconnecting envelope assemblies of different materials shall have air barrier caulked, or sealed with minimally expansive foam or taped.

(b) Bottom connections of ICFs shall be sealed to the ground subfloor or slab, and above ground subfloor.

(c) Insulation shall uniformly fit across the plane of the wall and taping, caulking or sealing of all joints and seams of the ICF shall be maintained to be considered as the air barrier.

RA3.5.8.2.1 Special Situations--Obstructions

(a) Penetrations and obstructions to the ICF shall be completely caulked and sealed.

(b) Insulation shall fill between the sheathing and the rear of electrical boxes and phone boxes.

RA3.5.8.2.2 Special Situations--Rim Joists

(a) All rim-joists shall be insulated to the same R-value as the adjacent walls.

(b) The insulation shall be installed without gaps and voids.

RA3.5.8.2.3 Special Situations--Kneewalls and Skylight Shafts

(a) Framing for kneewalls and skylight shafts that separate conditioned from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value specified on the Certificate of Compliance, and all other required compliance documentation.

(b) Steel-framed kneewalls and skylight shafts, shall exceed the mandatory minimum insulation requirements and external surfaces of steel studs shall be covered with insulation unless otherwise specified on the Certificate of Compliance using correct U-factors from Joint Appendix JA4, Table 4.3.4 (or U-factors approved by the Commission Executive Director).

(c) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.8.2.4 Special Situations--HVAC/Plumbing Closet

Walls of interior closets for HVAC and/or water heating equipment, which require combustion air venting, shall be insulated to at least the same R-value as the other demising walls (i.e., walls separating conditioned space and attached garage), or as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

RA3.5.8.2.5 Special Situations--Double Walls and Framed Bump-Outs

(a) Insulation shall fill the entire cavity; or, an additional air barrier shall be installed inside the double wall or bump-out and in contact with the insulation so that the insulation fills the cavity formed with the additional air barrier.

(b) Entire double walls and framed bump-outs shall be air tight.

RA3.5.8.2.6 Special Situations--Structural Bracing, Tie-downs, Steel Structural Framing

(a) Framing and bracing used for structural purposes shall be identified on plan documents with diagrams and/or design drawings.

(b) Insulation shall be installed in a manner that restricts thermal bridging through the structural framing assembly.

(c) Insulation shall be applied to fully enclose and/or adhere to all sides and ends of structural assembly framing.

(d) The structural portions of assemblies shall be air-tight.

RA3.5.8.2.7 Special Situations--Window and Door Headers

All window and door headers shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3 between the exterior face of the header and inside surface of the finish wall material.

RA3.5.8.2.8 Special Situation—Gable Ends in Unvented Attics

(a) In unvented attics, where insulation is applied directly to the underside of the roof deck, framing for gable ends that separate the unvented attic from unconditioned space shall be insulated to meet or exceed the wall R-value of the adjacent exterior wall construction as specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The backside of air permeable insulation exposed to the unconditioned attic space shall be completely covered with a continuous air barrier.

RA3.5.8.3 Roof/Ceilings

(a) Baffles shall be placed at eaves or soffit vents of vented attics to keep insulation from blocking eave ventilation and prevent air movement under the insulation. The required net free-ventilation shall be maintained.

(b) Hard covers or draft stops shall be placed over all drop ceiling areas and interior wall cavities to keep insulation in place and stop air movement. If hard covers or draft stops are missing or incomplete, they shall be completed before insulation is installed.

(c) In traditional framed attics, required eave ventilation shall not be obstructed for conventional attics - the net free-ventilation area of the eave vent shall be maintained. Eave vent baffles shall be installed to prevent air movement under or into the ceiling insulation of conventional attics.

(d) Insulation shall cover all recessed lighting fixtures. If the fixtures are not rated for insulation contact (IC) and air tight, the fixtures shall be removed and/or replaced.

(e) All recessed light fixtures that penetrate the ceiling shall be listed for zero clearance insulation contact (IC), have a label that certifies it as airtight with leakage less than 2.0 cfm @ 75 Pa when tested to ASTM E283, and shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the light's housing and the ceiling.

RA3.5.8.3.1 Special Situations--Attics and Cathedral Ceilings

Insulation installed in unvented rafter ceilings or to the underside of unvented roofs with an attic below shall have an R-value conforming to compliance documentation and the air barrier shall be uniform across the transition of roof to wall. The insulation shall be in contact with the air barrier.

RA3.5.8.3.2 Special Situations--HVAC Platform

Insulation shall be placed below any platform or cat-walk for HVAC equipment installation and access.

RA3.5.8.3.3 Special Situations--Attic Access

Permanently attach rigid board insulation, batt or blanket insulation with the appropriate R-value to the access door using adhesive or mechanical fastener. The bottom of the attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage of conditioned air to the unconditioned attic.

RA3.5.8.4 Raised Floors

The outer and inner face, and all joints of the ICF air barrier, shall be maintain through use of tape, or sealing and caulking as needed.

RA3.5.8.4.1 Homes with Floors Over Garage

On floors that are over garages, the rim joist shall be insulated.

RA3.5.8.4.2 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage

The separation between conditioned space (house) and the garage shall be insulated to create a continuous thermal barrier. All rim and band joists adjoining conditioned space shall be air tight and insulated.

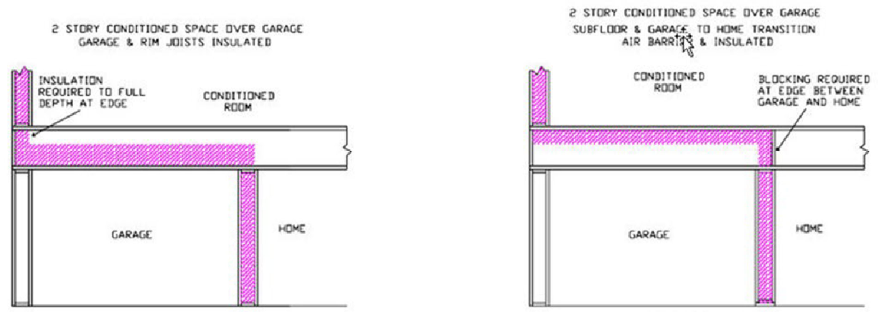


Figure RA3.5-11 Homes with Conditioned Space Over Garage – Insulated Concrete Form (ICF)

RA3.5.8.4.3 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage

The band joist where the garage transitions to an attic above conditioned space shall have an air barrier installed in contact with the edge of the attic insulation.

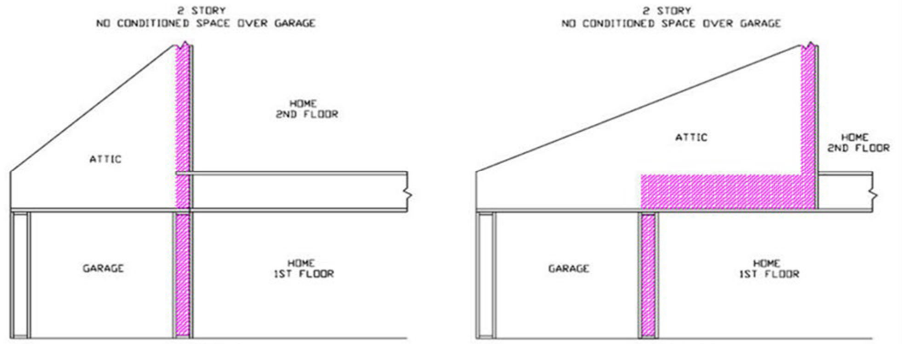


Figure RA3.5-12 Homes with No Conditioned Space Over Garage – Insulated Concrete Form (ICF)

RA3.6 *Field Verification of Water Heating Systems*

RA3.6.1 Purpose and Scope

Water Heating HERS field verification offers credits for improved performance in terms of “quality” pipe insulation installation, for the installation of field-verified hot water distribution systems that are more compact and therefore perform better than typical hot water distribution systems and for the installation of specific circulation strategies. The listed HERS measures can be completed on a sampling basis.

RA3.6.2 HERS-Verified Pipe Insulation Requirements for all Hot Water Distribution Systems

Unless otherwise stated, insulation must meet the requirements specified in §150.0(j). Pipe insulation shall fit tightly to the pipe and all elbows and tees shall be fully insulated. No piping should be visible due to insulation voids with the exception of the last segment of piping that penetrates walls and delivers hot water to the sink, appliance, etc. All domestic hot water piping shall be insulated as specified in Section 609.11 of the California Plumbing Code. In addition, the following piping conditions shall have a minimum insulation wall thickness of 1 inch:

(a) The first five feet of cold water piping from storage gas water heaters.

(b) All hot water piping with a nominal diameter between 3/4 inch (19 millimeter) and 1 inch.

(c) All hot water piping less than 3/4 inch in diameter that is associated with a domestic hot water recirculation system or leading to the kitchen fixtures.

(d) All underground hot water piping.

1. In addition, all piping below grade must be installed in a waterproof and non-crushable casing or sleeve that allows for installation, removal and replacement of the enclosed pipe and insulation. The internal cross-section or diameter of the casing or sleeve shall be large enough to allow for insulation of the hot water piping.

(e) Piping from the heating source to storage tank or between tanks.

Pipe insulation may be omitted where hot water distribution piping is buried within attic, crawlspace or wall insulation, as described below: In attics and crawlspaces the insulation shall completely surround the pipe with at least 1 inch of insulation and the pipe shall be completely covered with at least 4 inches of insulation further away from the conditioned space. In walls, the insulation must completely surround the pipe with at least 1 inch of insulation. If burial within the insulation does not meet these specifications, then this exception does not apply, and the section of pipe not meeting the specifications must be insulated as specified in §150.0(j).

RA3.6.3 HERS-Verified Pipe Insulation Credit (PIC-H)

The visual inspection shall verify that all hot water piping is insulated. This credit can only be taken for trunk and branch hot water distribution systems. Specific installation requirements include:

1. The HERS rater shall verify that all hot water piping is insulated in accordance with the provisions in RA3.6.2 HERS-Verified Pipe Insulation Requirements for all Hot Water Distribution Systems.

RA3.6.4 HERS-Verified Central Parallel Piping (PP-H)

This measure expands on the requirements for parallel piping systems that use one or more central manifolds with individual runs from the manifold to each point of use. Visual inspection shall verify that all supply lines of the parallel piping system meet the specific installation requirements listed below:

(a) The measured length of pipe from the water heater to each central manifold shall not exceed 5 feet (measured to the nearest half foot).

(b) The hot water distribution system piping from the manifold to the fixtures and appliances must take the most direct path. For example, in a house with more than 1-story and the water heater in the garage, this requirement would exclude running hot water supply piping from the manifold to the attic, and then running the line back down to a first floor point of use.

  1. The hot water distribution piping must be separated by at least two inches from any other hot water supply piping, and at least six inches from any cold water supply piping.

(c) The HERS inspector shall also verify that other hot water piping is insulated and installed to meet the requirements of RA3.6.2.

RA3.6.5 HERS-Verified Compact Hot Water Distribution System Expanded Credit (CHWDS-H-EX)

To meet the Compact Hot Water Distribution System Expanded Credit eligibility requirements, the requirements in RA4.4.6 must be met. In addition, the following HERS field verifications are required:

(a) No hot water piping larger than 1 inch diameter is allowed,

(b) Length of 1 inch diameter piping is limited to 8 ft or less,

(c) Two and three story buildings cannot have hot water distribution piping in the attic, unless the water heater is also located in the attic, and

(d) Eligible recirculating systems must be HERS-Verified Demand Recirculation: Manual Control conforming to RA4.4.17.

RA3.6.6 HERS Verified Demand Recirculation; Manual Control (R-DRmc-H)

Demand controlled recirculation systems shall operate “on-demand”, meaning that pump operation shall be initiated shortly prior to the hot water draw. The recirculation pump can be located external to the water heater or be integral to the water heater. The controls shall operate on the principal of shutting off the pump with a sensed rise in pipe temperature (Delta-T). For this HERS verification process, a manual switch is required.

Verification shall include:

(a) More than one circulation loop may be installed. Each loop shall have its own pump and controls.

(b) Verify that the pump, demand controls and thermo-sensor are present. Manual switches shall be located in the kitchen, all bathrooms, and any hot water fixture location that is at least 20 feet (measured along the hot water piping) from the water heater.

(c) Manual controlled systems may be activated by wired or wireless button mechanisms. Verify that manual controls have standby power of 1 watt or less.

(d) Verify that pump and control placement for the demand recirculation meets one of the following criteria:

1. When a dedicated return line has been installed the pump, controls and thermo-sensor are installed at the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop (typically under a sink); or
2. The pump and controls are installed on the return line near the water heater and the thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location as close to the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop as possible (typically under a sink), or
3. When the cold water line is used as the return, the pump, demand controls and thermosensor shall be installed in an accessible location at the end of supply portion of the hot water distribution line (typically under a sink).

(e) Verify that a check valve is installed in the recirculation loop to prevent unintentional circulation of the water (thermo-siphoning) and back flow when the system is not operating. This check valve may be included with the pump.

(f) The HERS inspector shall also verify that the supply portion of each circulation loop, the first five feet of branches off the loop and the dedicated return line are insulated based on the conductivity range in TABLE 120.3-A, the insulation level shall be selected from the fluid temperature range based on the thickness requirements in TABLE 120.3-A and the insulation shall be installed in accordance with RA3.6.2. Other hot water piping shall meet the requirements of §150.0(j) and be installed in accordance with RA3.6.2. Insulation is not required on the cold water line when it is used as the return.

(g) The hot water distribution system piping from the water heater(s) to the fixtures and appliances must take the most direct path. For example, in a house with more than 1-story and the water heater in the garage, this requirement would exclude running hot water supply piping from the water heater to the attic, and then running the line back down to a first floor point of use.

(h) Verify that manual controls initiate pump operation by pressing one of the manual controls and observing that the pump turns on and then shuts off in accordance with one of the two methods listed:

1. After the pump has been activated, the controls shall allow the pump to operate until the water temperature at the thermo-sensor rises not more than 10ºF (5.6 ºC) above the initial temperature of the water in the pipe, or
2. The controls shall not allow the pump to operate when the temperature in the pipe exceeds 102ºF (38.9 ºC).

(i) Verify that the controls have a feature that limits pump operation to a maximum of 5 minutes following any activation. This is provided in the event that the normal means of shutting off the pump have failed.

(j) The manufacturer(s) of the recirculation pump and the controls shall provide installation and operation instructions that provide details of the operation of the pump and controls and such instructions shall be available at the jobsite for inspection.

RA3.6.7 HERS-Verified Demand Recirculation: Sensor Control (RDRsc-H)

Demand controlled recirculation systems shall operate "on-demand", meaning that pump operation shall be initiated shortly prior to the hot water draw. The recirculation pump can be located external to the water heater or be integral to the water heater. The controls shall operate on the principal of shutting off the pump with a sensed rise in pipe temperature (Delta-T). For this HERS verification process a sensor control is used to activate the pump rather than a manual control.

Verification shall include:

(a) More than one circulation loop may be installed. Each loop shall have its own pump and controls.

(b) Verify that the pump, demand controls and thermo-sensor are present. Sensor controls shall be located in the kitchen, bathrooms, and any hot water fixture location that is at least 20 feet (measured along the hot water piping) from the water heater.

(c) Sensor controlled systems may be activated by wired or wireless mechanisms, including motion sensors, door switches and flow switches.

(d) Verify that sensors controls have standby power of 1 watt or less.

(e) Verify that pump and control placement for the demand recirculation meets one of the following criteria:

  1. When a dedicated return line has been installed the pump, controls and thermo-sensor are installed at the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop (typically under a sink); or
  2. The pump and controls is installed on the return line near the water heater and the thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location as close to the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop as possible (typically under a sink), or
  3. When the cold water line is used as the return, the pump, demand controls and thermosensor shall be installed in an accessible location at the end of supply portion of the hot water distribution line (typically under a sink).

(f) Verify that a check valve is installed in the recirculation loop to prevent unintentional circulation of the water (thermo-siphoning) and back flow when the system is not operating. This check valve may be included with the pump.

(g) The hot water distribution system piping from the water heater(s) to the fixtures and appliances must take the most direct path. For example, in a house with more than 1-story and the water heater in the garage, this requirement would exclude running hot water supply piping from the water heater to the attic, and then running the line back down to a first floor point of use.

(h) The HERS inspector shall also verify that the supply portion of each circulation loop, the first five feet of branches off the loop and the dedicated return line are insulated based on the conductivity range in TABLE 120.3-A, the insulation level shall be selected from the fluid temperature range based on the thickness requirements in TABLE 120.3-A and the insulation shall be installed in accordance with RA3.6.2. Other hot water piping shall meet the requirements of §150.0(j) and be installed in accordance with RA3.6.2. Insulation is not required on the cold water line when it is used as the return.

(i) Verify that sensor controls initiate pump operation by activating one of the sensor controls and observing that the pump turns on and then shuts off in accordance with one of the two methods listed.

1. After the pump has been activated, the controls shall allow the pump to operate until the water temperature at the thermo-sensor rises not more than 10ºF (5.6 ºC) above the initial temperature of the water in the pipe, or
2. The controls shall not allow the pump to operate when the temperature in the pipe exceeds 102ºF (38.9 ºC).

(j) Verify that the controls have a feature that limits pump operation to a maximum of 5 minutes following any activation. This is provided in the event that the normal means of shutting off the pump have failed.

(k) The manufacturer(s) of the recirculation pump and the controls shall provide installation and operation instructions that provide details of the operation of the pump and controls and such instructions shall be available at the jobsite for inspection.

RA3.6.8 HERS-Multiple Recirculation Loop Design for DHW Systems Serving Multiple Dwelling Units

The visual inspection shall verify that a central DHW system serving a building with more than eight dwelling units has at least two recirculation loops, each serving roughly the same number of dwelling. Unique building sections may have additional recirculation loops. These recirculation loops may be connected to the same water heating equipment or be connected to independent water heating equipment. The HERS inspector shall verify that there are at least two recirculation loops each serving roughly the same number of dwelling units. Unique sections of the building may have separate loops. Ideally each loop will have its own pump and controls.

RA3.6.9 HERS-Verified Drain Water Heat Recovery System (DWHR-H)

A HERS inspection is required to obtain this credit. All DWHR unit(s) shall be certified to the Energy Commission according to the following requirements:

(a) Vertical DWHR unit(s) shall be compliant with CSA B55.2, and tested and labeled in accordance with CSA B55.1 or IAPMO IGC 346-2017. Sloped DWHR unit(s) shall be compliant with IAPMO PS 92, and tested and labeled with IAPMO IGC 346-2017.

(b) The DWHR unit(s) shall have a minimum rated effectiveness of 42 percent.

The HERS inspector shall verify that:

(a) The make, model, and CSA B55.1 or IAPMO IGC 346-2017 rated effectiveness of the DWHR unit(s) shall match the compliance documents. The DWHR unit(s) shall also be verified as a model certified to the Energy Commission as qualified for credit as a DWHR unit(s).

(b) The installation configuration (e.g. equal flow, unequal flow to the water heater, or unequal flow to the showers) and the percent of served shower fixtures shall match the compliance documents.

(c) For water heating system serving a single dwelling, the DWHR system shall, at the minimum, recover heat from the master bathroom shower and must at least transfer that heat either back to all the respective showers or the water heater.

(d) For central water heating system serving multiple dwellings, the DWHR system shall, at the minimum, recover heat from half the showers located above the first floor and must at least transfer that heat either back to all the respective showers or the water heater.

(e) The DWHR unit(s) shall be installed within 1 degrees of the rated slope. Sloped DWHR shall have a minimum lengthwise slope of 1 degree. The lateral level tolerance shall be within plus or minus 1 degree.

(f) The installation shall comply with any applicable California Plumbing Code requirements.

RA3.7 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Mechanical Ventilation Systems

RA3.7.1 Purpose and Scope

RA3.7 contains procedures for verification of heat recovery efficiency and fan efficacy, and for measuring the airflow rate ~~in~~ for mechanical ventilation systems ~~to confirm compliance with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.2~~.

RA3.7 is applicable to mechanical ventilation systems in residential dwelling units.

RA3.7 provides required procedures for installers, HERS raters and others who are required to perform field verification of mechanical ventilation systems for compliance with Part 6.

Table RA3.7-1 – Summary of Verification and Diagnostic procedures

Diagnostic	Description	Procedure
Whole-Building Mechanical Ventilation Airflow **–** ~~Continuous Operation~~	~~Verify that~~Verification of whole-building ventilation system ~~complies with the~~ airflow rate. Continuous Operation ~~required by ASHRAE Standard 62.2.~~	RA3.7.4.1 ~~Continuous Operation~~
Whole-Building Mechanical Ventilation Airflow **–** ~~Intermittent Operation~~	~~Verify that~~Verification of whole-building ventilation system ~~complies with the~~ airflow rate. Intermittent Operation ~~required by ASHRAE Standard 62.2.~~	RA3.7.4.2~~.Intermittent Operation~~
Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust	Verification of vented range hood airflow rate or capture efficiency	RA3.7.4.3
Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) or Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) Rated Performance Verification	Verification of the HRV/ERV fan efficacy (W/cfm) or heat recovery efficiency.	RA3.7.4.4

RA3.7.2 Instrumentation Specifications

The instrumentation for the air distribution diagnostic measurements shall conform to the following specifications:

RA3.7.2.1 Pressure Measurements

All pressure measurements shall be measured with measurement systems (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy equal to or better than ± 1% of pressure reading or ± 0.2 Pa (0.0008 inches water) (whichever is greater). All pressure measurements within the duct system shall be made with static pressure probes such as Dwyer A303 or equivalent.

RA3.7.2.2 Airflow Rate Measurements

All measurements of ventilation fan airflow rate shall be made with an airflow rate measurement apparatus (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy equal to or better than ± 10% of reading. The apparatus shall have an accuracy specification that is applicable to the airflow rates that must be verified utilizing the procedures in Section RA3.7.4. Airflows shall be measured at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals/grilles or outlet terminals/grilles.

RA3.7.2.3 Calibration

All instrumentation used for mechanical ventilation system airflow rate diagnostic measurements shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's calibration procedure to ensure the airflow measurement apparatus conforms to the accuracy requirement specified in Section RA3.7.2.2.

RA3.7.3 Diagnostic Apparatus for Measurement of Ventilation System Airflow

Ventilation system airflow rate shall be measured using one of the apparatuses listed in Section RA3.7.3. The apparatus shall produce airflow rate measurements that conform to the accuracy requirements specified in Section RA3.7.2 for measurements of residential mechanical ventilation system airflow at system inlet or outlet terminals, grilles, or registers for single or multiple branch ventilation duct systems.

The airflow rate measurement apparatus manufacturers shall publish in their product documentation, specifications for how their airflow measurement apparatuses are to be used for accurately measuring residential mechanical ventilation system airflow at system inlet or outlet terminals, grilles or registers of single or multiple branch ventilation systems.

The airflow measurement apparatus manufacturers shall certify to the Energy Commission that use of the apparatus in accordance with the specifications given in the manufacturer's product documentation will produce measurement results that are within the accuracy required by Section RA3.7.2.2.

For the airflow measurement apparatuses that are certified to the Commission as meeting the accuracy required by Section RA3.7.2.2, the following information shall be posted on the Energy Commission website, making the information available to all people involved in the airflow verification compliance process:

(a) The product manufacturers' model numbers for the airflow measurement apparatuses.

(b) The product manufacturers' product documentation that gives the specifications for use of the airflow measurement apparatuses to accurately measure residential mechanical ventilation system airflow at system inlet or outlet terminals, grilles or registers of single or multiple branch ventilation systems.

A manufacturer's certification to the Commission of the accuracy of the airflow measurement apparatus, and submittal to the Commission of the product documentation that specifies the proper use of the airflow measurement apparatus to produce accurate airflow rate measurements shall be prerequisites for allowing the manufacturer's airflow measurement apparatus to be used for conducting the system airflow verification procedures in Section RA3.7 for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

RA3.7.3.1 Residential Mechanical Exhaust Airflow Measurement Device

A flowmeter designed for measurement of residential exhaust airflows that meets the applicable instrument accuracy specifications in RA3.7.2 may be used to measure the mechanical exhaust ventilation airflow.

RA3.7.3.2 Powered Flow Capture Hood Airflow Measurement Device

A powered and pressure balanced flow capture hood (subsequently referred to as a Powered Flow Hood[3]) that has the capability to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (0.0008 inches water) and meets the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.7.2 may be used to verify the ventilation airflow rate if the powered flow hood has a flow capture area at least as large as the ventilation system inlet or outlet, terminal, register, or grille in all dimensions. The fan adjustment needed to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (0.0008 inches water) shall be provided by either an automatic control or a manual control operated in accordance with the apparatus manufacturer's instructions specified in the manufacturer's product documentation.

RA3.7.3.3 Traditional Flow Capture Hood

A traditional flow capture hood[4] meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.7.2 may be used to verify the ventilation system airflow rate if the non-powered flow hood has a capture area at least as large as the ventilation system inlet or outlet terminal, register or grille in all dimensions.

RA3.7.4 <u>Procedures</u>

This section describes the procedures used to verify Mechanical ventilation system airflow.

RA3.7.4.1 Mechanical Ventilation Airflow Rate Measurement - Continuous Operation

If multiple fans are specified to operate simultaneously to provide the total required ventilation airflow, the measurements shall be made with all applicable fans operating simultaneously.

RA3.7.4.1.1 Supply and Exhaust Ventilation Systems

(a) A flow measuring device that meets the applicable instrumentation requirements given in Section RA3.7.2, and RA3.7.3 shall be used to measure the ventilation airflow(s).

(b) Measure and record the ventilation airflow(s).

(c) If the measured total airflow is greater than or equal to the ventilation airflow rate required by the Standards or the Certificate of Compliance, the mechanical ventilation system complies. Otherwise the mechanical ventilation system does not comply, and corrective action shall be taken.

RA3.7.4.1.2 Balanced Ventilation Systems

(a) A flow measuring device that meets the applicable instrumentation requirements given in Section RA3.7.2, and RA3.7.3 shall be used to measure the ventilation airflows.

(b) Confirm that both the supply side and the exhaust side of the balanced system operate simultaneously in response to a shared system control.

---

[3] Also known as "active" flow hood, or "fan assisted" flow hood.

[4] Also known as “non-powered flow hood, "standard" flow hood, "commercially available" flow hood, or "passive" flow hood.

(c) Measure the airflow rate for the exhaust side of the system.

(d) Measure the airflow rate for the supply side of the system.

(e) Calculate the percent difference between the exhaust and supply airflow rates.

(f) Calculate the average of the exhaust and the supply airflow rates.

(g) If the exhaust and supply airflow rates are within 20% of each other, and the average of the exhaust and supply airflow rates is greater than or equal to the airflow rate required by the Standards or the Certificate of Compliance, the balanced ventilation system complies. Otherwise, the system does not comply, and corrective action shall be taken.

(h) If the balanced system is an HRV or ERV and compliance with a recovery efficiency or fan efficacy specification is required, then also perform the verification specified in RA3.7.4.4.

RA3.7.4.2 Mechanical Ventilation Airflow Rate Measurement - Intermittent Operation

The Executive Director may approve intermittent mechanical ventilation systems, devices, or controls for use for compliance with field verification and diagnostic testing requirements for mechanical ventilation airflow, subject to a manufacturer providing sufficient evidence to the Executive Director that the installed mechanical ventilation systems, devices, or controls will provide at least the minimum ventilation airflow required by the Standards, and subject to consideration of the manufacturer's proposed field verification and diagnostic test protocol for the ventilation system(s). Ventilation airflow of systems with multiple operating modes shall be tested in all modes designed to comply with the required ventilation airflows.

Approved systems, devices, or controls, and field verification and diagnostic test protocols for intermittent mechanical ventilation systems shall be listed in directories published by the Energy Commission.

RA3.7.4.3 Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust - Vented Range Hood Verification

The verification shall utilize certified performance rating data from the Home Ventilating Institute (HVI) Certified Home Ventilating Products Directory at https://hvi.org/proddirectory/index.cfm, the Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers (AHAM) Certified Products Directory at https://www.aham.org/AHAM/What_We_Do/Kitchen_Range_Hood_Certification, or another directory of certified product performance ratings approved by the Energy Commission for determining compliance. The verification procedure shall consist of visual inspection of the installed kitchen range hood to verify and record the following information:

(a) The manufacturer name and model number.

(b) The model is listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other CEC-approved ~~D~~directory.

(c) The rated airflow value or rated capture efficiency value listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other CEC-approved directory.

(d) The sound rating value listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other CEC-approved directory.

(e) If the value for the rated airflow or rated capture efficiency given in the directory is greater than or equal to the airflow or capture efficiency requirements specified in the Standards, and if the value for the sone rating given in the directory is less than or equal to the sone rating requirements specified in Standards, then the kitchen range hood complies.~~, o~~Otherwise the kitchen range hood does not comply. If the kitchen range hood is not listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other CEC-approved directory, then the system does not comply.

RA3.7.4.4 Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) or Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) Rated Performance Verification

The verification shall utilize certified performance rating data from the Home Ventilating Institute (HVI) Certified Home Ventilating Products Directory at https://hvi.org/proddirectory/index.cfm, or another directory of certified product performance ratings approved by the Energy Commission for determining compliance. The verification procedure shall consist of visual inspection of the installed system to verify and record the following information:

1. Record the manufacturer make and model from the installed system nameplate.

2. Verify the model is listed in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory.

3. If compliance with a fan efficacy performance rating (w/cfm) is required, then determine ~~look up~~ and record the fan efficacy rating for the installed model using the model details in the energy ratings in the HVI, or other CEC-approved directory in accordance with steps a, b, and c below.

   a. Record the required ventilation airflow (cfm) for the installed HRV/ERV as specified on the certificate of compliance.

   b. From the energy ratings in the HVI or other CEC approved directory, determine, and record the rated Power Consumed (Watts) at 32 degrees Fahrenheit, at the closest Net Airflow (cfm) listed in the directory that is greater than or equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Alternatively, linear interpolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees Fahrenheit shall be allowed if the interpolated value is calculated based on a Net Airflow (cfm) that is equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Interpolation shall be in accordance with equation RA3.7-1. Extrapolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees Fahrenheit shall not be allowed.

Equation RA3.7-1 $pc = pc1 + [(na - na1) / (na2 - na1)] X (pc2 - pc1)$

where:

na is the known value for Net Airflow equal to the ventilation airflow required on the certificate of compliance,

pc is the unknown value for Power Consumed (Watts) at 32 degrees Fahrenheit.

na1 and pc1 are the closest rated values at 32 degrees Fahrenheit for Net Airflow (cfm) and Power Consumed (Watts) respectively that are below the known na value.

na2 and pc2 are the closest rated values at 32 degrees Fahrenheit for Net Airflow (cfm) and Power Consumed (Watts) respectively that are above the known na value.

c. Divide the value for Power Consumed (Watts) recorded in step b, by the Net Airflow (cfm) used in step b to determine the Power Consumed.

4. If compliance with a sensible recovery efficiency (SRE) performance rating (%) is required, then determine~~look up~~ and record the ~~sensible recovery efficiency~~SRE rating for the installed model using the model details in the energy ratings in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory in accordance with steps a, and b below.

   a. Record the required ventilation airflow (cfm) for the installed HRV/ERV as specified on the certificate of compliance.

   b. From the energy ratings in the HVI or other CEC approved directory, determine, and record the rated SRE (%) at 32 degrees Fahrenheit, at the closest Net Airflow (cfm) listed in the directory that is greater than or equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Alternatively, linear interpolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees Fahrenheit shall be allowed if the interpolated value is calculated based on a Net Airflow (cfm) that is equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Interpolation shall be in accordance with equation RA3.7-2. Extrapolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees Fahrenheit shall not be allowed.

Equation RA3.7-2 $sre = sre1 + [(na – na1) / (na2 – na1)] X (sre2 – sre1)$

where:

na is the known value for Net Airflow equal to the ventilation airflow required on the certificate of compliance,

sre is the unknown value for SRE at 32 degrees Fahrenheit.

na1 and sre1 are the closest rated values at 32 degrees Fahrenheit for Net Airflow (cfm) and SRE respectively that are below the known na value.

na2 and sre2 are the closest rated values at 32 degrees Fahrenheit for Net Airflow (cfm) and SRE respectively that are above the known na value.

5. Determining Compliance.

   a. If the value determined for SRE by one or both of the alternatives in step 4~~given in the directory for sensible recovery efficiency~~ for the installed system is greater than or equal to the ~~sensible recovery efficiency~~SRE required for compliance, then the system complies with the sensible recovery efficiency rating requirement. Otherwise the system does not comply.

   b. If the value determined for fan efficacy (W/cfm) by one or both of the alternatives in step 3~~given in the directory for fan efficacy~~ for the installed system is less than or equal to the fan efficacy required for compliance, then the system complies with the fan efficacy rating requirement. Otherwise, the system does not comply.

c. If compliance with both fan efficacy and sensible recovery efficiency ratings are required, then both ratings shall comply at the same Net Airflow (cfm), otherwise the system does not comply.

d. If the system is not listed in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory, then the system does not comply.

RA3.8 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Air Leakage of Building Enclosures and Dwelling Unit Enclosures

RA3.8.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this test procedure is to measure the air leakage rate through a building enclosure or a dwelling unit enclosure.

The measurement procedure shall be based on the specifications of Residential Energy Services Network's (RESNET) Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building, Dwelling Unit, and Sleeping Unit Enclosures~~,~~; Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems~~,~~; and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems (ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380~~-2016~~2019) (RESNET 380) as further specified in Subsections RA3.8.2, RA3.8.3, RA3.8.4 below.

This enclosure leakage procedure is applicable to:

- Single family building enclosures
- Multifamily dwelling unit enclosures

RA3.8.2 Instrument Specifications

The instrumentation for the enclosure leakage measurements shall conform to the specifications in RESNET 380 Section ~~3~~4.1.

RA3.8.3 Enclosure Leakage Measurement Procedures

The enclosure leakage measurement procedure shall conform to the following specifications:

(a) The procedure for preparation of the building or dwelling unit for testing shall conform to the applicable requirements in RESNET 380 Section ~~3~~4.2.

~~When compliance with Standards Section 150.0(o)1Eii maximum dwelling unit enclosure leakage rate is required to be verified, the test shall be conducted with the dwelling unit as if it were exposed to the outdoor air on all sides, top and bottom by opening doors and windows of adjacent dwelling units.~~

(b) The procedure for installation of the test apparatus, and preparations for measurement shall conform to the applicable requirements in RESNET 380 Section ~~3~~4.3.

If compliance requires the results of the test ~~will~~ to be reported in cubic feet per minute per ft^2 of dwelling unit enclosure surface area at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) ~~(CFM50) per ft^2 of~~

~~dwelling unit enclosure area~~ (CFM50/ft^2 of enclosure), the dwelling unit~~'s~~ enclosure interior surface area in ft^2 (compartmentalization boundary area) shall be recorded. ~~(i.e. the~~ Note: the compartmentalization boundary area is the sum of the interior surface areas of the dwelling unit enclosure walls between dwelling units, exterior walls, ceiling, and floor~~)~~.

(c) The procedure for the conduct of the enclosure leakage test shall conform to the One-Point Airtightness Test specified in RESNET 380 Section 4~~3~~.4.1.

RA3.8.4 Determination of Test Results

The results of the test shall be determined as follows:

(a) The leakage airflow in CFM50 determined by the One-Point Airtightness Test specified in RESNET 380 Section 4~~3~~.4.1 shall be adjusted using RESNET 380 Section 4~~3~~.5.1, equation (5a).

(b) If ~~required for~~ compliance requires the results of the test to be reported in air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) (ACH50), the leakage results determined by RESNET 380 Section 4~~3~~.5.1, equation (5a) ~~s~~hall be converted to ACH50 ~~air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) (ACH50)~~ using RESNET 380 Section ~~3~~4.5.2, equation (7a).

(c) If ~~required for~~ compliance requires the results of the test to be reported in CFM50/ft^2 of enclosed~~,~~ the leakage results determined by RESNET 380 Section ~~3~~4.5.1, equation (5a) shall be converted to CFM50/ft^2 of ~~dwelling unit~~ enclosure using RESNET 380 Section 4.5.2, equation 10~~area by dividing CFM50 by the dwelling unit's interior surface area in ft^2 (i.e. the sum of the area of walls between dwelling units, exterior walls, ceiling, and floor)~~.

RA3.8.5 Determining Compliance

If the applicable value(s) for CFM50, ACH50, or CFM50/ft^2 of ~~dwelling unit~~ enclosure ~~area~~ determined in Section RA3.8.4 are less than or equal to the enclosure leakage compliance criterion specified by the Standards or the Certificate of Compliance, the enclosure complies. Otherwise the enclosure does not comply.

RA3.9 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Whole House Fans (WHF)

RA3.9.1 Purpose and Scope

RA3.9 contains procedures for:

(a) Measurement of WHF airflow rate to confirm compliance with the airflow rate requirements specified in the performance standards set forth in Standards section 150.1(b).

(b) Measurement of WHF Watt draw.

(c) Calculation of WHF efficacy (w/cfm) utilizing simultaneous measurement of WHF Watt draw and airflow rate.

RA3.9.2 Instrument Specifications

The instrumentation for the diagnostic measurements shall conform to the following specifications:

RA3.9.2.1 Pressure Measurement

All pressure measurements shall be performed with measurement systems (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of ± 1% of pressure reading or ± 0.2 Pa (.0008 inches water) (whichever is greater).

RA3.9.2.2 Airflow Rate Measurements

All measurements of WHF airflow rates shall be made with an airflow rate measurement apparatus (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of ± 7% of reading or ± 5 cfm whichever is greater.

RA3.9.2.3 Fan Watt Draw Measurements

All measurements of WHF watt draws shall be made with true power measurement systems (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of ± 2% of reading or ± 10 watts whichever is greater.

RA3.9.3 WHF Airflow Rate Measurement Apparatus

WHF airflow rate shall be measured using one of the apparatuses listed in Section RA3.9.3. The apparatus shall produce airflow rate measurements that conform to the accuracy requirements specified in Section RA3.9.2 for measurements of residential WHFs.

The airflow rate measurement apparatus manufacturers shall publish in their product documentation, specifications for how their airflow measurement apparatuses are to be used for accurately measuring WHF airflow rates.

The airflow measurement apparatus manufacturers shall certify to the Energy Commission that use of the apparatus in accordance with the specifications given in the manufacturer's product documentation will produce measurement results that are within the accuracy required by Section RA3.9.2.

For the airflow measurement apparatuses that are certified to the Commission as meeting the accuracy required by Section RA3.9.2, the following information will be posted on the Energy Commission website, making the information available to all people involved in the airflow verification compliance process:

(a) The product manufacturers' model numbers for the airflow measurement apparatuses.

(b) The product manufacturers' product documentation that gives the specifications for use of the airflow measurement apparatuses to accurately measure WHF airflow.

A manufacturer's certification to the Commission of the accuracy of the airflow measurement apparatus, and submittal to the Commission of the product documentation that specifies the proper use of the airflow measurement apparatus to produce accurate airflow rate measurements shall be prerequisites for allowing the manufacturer's airflow measurement apparatus to be used for conducting the system airflow verification procedures in Section RA3.9 for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

RA3.9.3.1 Fan Flowmeter

The apparatus for measuring the system airflow rate shall consist of a building pressurization and airflow measurement device (subsequently referred to as a fan flowmeter) that meets all applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.9.2 ~~RA3.3.1~~, and a static pressure measurement device that meets the specifications in Section RA3.9.2.1. The fan flowmeter shall be attached at the inlet to a WHF from the conditioned space. The fan flowmeter shall be attached at a point where all the airflow through the system will flow through it. All WHF dampers shall be in their normal operating condition. The static pressure probe(s) shall be fixed to locations inside and outside the dwelling such that they will not be moved during this test.

RA3.9.3.2 Powered Flow Capture Hood

A powered and pressure balanced flow capture hood (subsequently referred to as a Powered Flow Hood[5]) that has the capability to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (.0008 inches water) and meets the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.9.2 may be used to verify the system airflow rate at the WHF inlet if the powered flow hood has a flow capture area at least as large as the WHF inlet in all dimensions. The fan adjustment needed to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (.0008 inches water) shall be provided by either an automatic control or a manual control operated in accordance with the apparatus manufacturer's instructions specified in the manufacturer's product documentation. All WHF dampers shall be in their normal operating position. Measurement(s) shall be taken at the inlet of the WHF.

RA3.9.3.3 Traditional Flow Capture Hood

A traditional flow capture hood[6] meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section RA3.9.2.2 may be used to verify the system airflow rate at the WHF inlet if the device has a capture area at least as large as the WHF inlet grille in all dimensions. All WHF dampers shall be in their normal operating position. Measurement(s) shall be taken at the inlet of the WHF.

RA3.9.3.4 WHF Watt Draw Measurement Apparatus

The air handler watt draw shall be measured using one of the following apparatuses.

RA3.9.3.5 Portable Watt Meter

The apparatus for measuring the WHF watt draw shall consist of a wattmeter meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.3.1. The measuring device shall be attached to measure the WHF watt draw. All WHF dampers shall be in their normal operating condition.

---

[5] Also known as "active" flow hood, or "fan assisted" flow hood.

[6] Also known as "non-powered" flow hood, "standard" flow hood, "commercially available" flow hood, or "passive" flow hood.

When required to measure fan watt draw on WHF equipment that is wired directly to an electrical junction box, it is recommended to use portable true power clamp-on meters to provide flexibility for isolating the correct fan wires serving the WHF.

RA3.9.3.6 Utility Revenue Meter

The apparatus for measuring the WHF watt draw shall consist of a utility revenue meter meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.9.2.3 and a stopwatch that provides measurements in units of seconds. All WHF dampers and access panels shall be in their normal operating condition.

RA3.9.3.7 Digital Utility Revenue Meter

The apparatus for measuring the WHF watt draw shall consist of a digital utility revenue meter meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in RA3.3.1 that provides direct digital display of the watt draw. All WHF dampers and access panels shall be in their normal operating condition.

RA3.9.4 Procedures

RA3.9.4.1 WHF Airflow Rate Measurement Procedures

When required for compliance, the installed WHF airflow shall be diagnostically tested using one of the methods specified in this section.

The measured airflow rate shall be expressed in cubic feet per minute of standard air (standard air has a density of 0.075 lb/ft³). When the airflow measurement is made at altitudes significantly different from sea level or at temperatures significantly different from 70°F, the airflow indicated on the device gauge may differ from the standard CFM by as much as 15 percent. Corrections from indicated to standard CFM shall be made using the procedure specified by the airflow measurement device manufacturer.

When multiple WHFs are used to comply with the required WHF airflow rate for the dwelling unit, all WHFs in the dwelling unit shall be operated simultaneously and the sum of the airflow rate measurements of the simultaneously operating WHFs for the dwelling shall be determined.

When flow capture hood devices are used, the capture area shall be at least as large as the WHF inlet grille in all dimensions.

WHF airflow shall be measured with the dwelling unit window openings configured such that when the WHF(s) are operating, a dwelling unit pressure of negative 10 Pa ± 5 Pa with reference to (WRT) outside is attained. This is the WHF operating pressure (WHF-OP).

RA3.9.4.1.1 WHF Airflow Rate Measurement Using Attic Pressure Matching and Fan Flowmeter

(a) Open the window(s) that are typically opened during WHF operation.

(b) Place a pressure sensing probe/tube in the attic. If necessary, use a suitable means such as cardboard sheets and tape to facilitate sealing off the access opening between the attic and the dwelling unit's conditioned space to allow the pressure sensing probe/tube to be inserted into the attic space without crimping or restricting the pressure sensing probe/tube. There shall be no leakage of air from the attic through the attic access opening into the dwelling unit during this verification procedure.

(c) Attach the attic pressure sensing tube to a digital pressure gage such that it will measure the pressure difference between the dwelling unit conditioned space and the attic.

(d) Turn on all WHFs required to meet the dwelling unit WHF airflow rate required for compliance. If applicable, adjust multiple WHFs or variable speed WHFs to operate at a total airflow rate greater than or equal to the WHF airflow rate required for compliance.

(e) Adjust the dwelling unit window openings to bring the dwelling unit to the WHF-OP of negative 10 Pa ± 5 Pa WRT outside.

(f) Measure and record the pressure difference (Pa) between the attic and the dwelling unit conditioned space (P_{attic}) while the dwelling unit is at the WHF-OP.

(g) Turn off the WHF.

(h) Do not change the window openings. The same dwelling unit window opening configuration used to establish the WHF-OP used for the measurement in step (f) shall be used for the pressure matching procedure specified below.

(i) Attach the fan flowmeter to the inlet grille of the WHF. The fan flowmeter's capture enclosure or ductwork shall cover the WHF intake grille completely.

(j) Turn on all WHFs that were used during the measurement in step (f). The speed of the WHFs shall be the same as used for the measurement in step (f).

(k) Turn on the fan flowmeter. Adjust the fan flowmeter speed until the pressure difference (Pa) between the attic and the dwelling unit conditioned space matches P_{attic} determined in step (f).

(l) Record the flow through the fan flowmeter. When multiple WHFs are used to meet the required airflow, repeat steps (g) through (l) for each WHF, then sum the airflow measurements for all WHFs to arrive at the total WHF airflow for the dwelling unit.

~~WHF Airflow Rate Measurement Using Pressure Matching and Fan Flowmeter.~~

(a) ~~The WHF airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures:~~

(b) ~~Set up a blower door (BD) as you would for a dwelling unit air infiltration test using negative pressure. Cap off the BD fan. Use one-minute time averaging for pressure and airflow measurements to minimize any wind affects.~~

(c) ~~Open the window(s) that are typically opened during WHF operation.~~

(d) ~~Turn on all WHFs required to meet the dwelling unit WHF airflow rate. Adjust multiple or variable speed WHFs to operate at an airflow rate that will be greater than or equal to the rate required for compliance.~~

(e) ~~Adjust the dwelling unit window openings to bring the dwelling unit to the WHF-OP of negative 10 Pa ± 5 Pa WRT outside.~~

(f) ~~Measure and record the actual dwelling unit depressurization attained (Pa) WRT outside at the WHF-OP.6) Turn off the WHF and seal the WHF inlet opening(s). The WHF system dampers may be used to seal the WHF inlet opening(s) if the dampers close tightly and will not leak.~~

(g) ~~Do not change the window openings. The same dwelling unit window opening configuration used to establish the WHF-OP shall be used for the BD measurements specified below.~~

(h) ~~Remove the BD fan cover.~~

(i) ~~Increase the BD fan speed to match the WHF-OP measured in step 5 above.~~

(j) ~~Record the BD air flow which is also the WHF air flow.~~

RA3.9.4.1.2 WHF Airflow Rate Measurement Using Powered Flow Capture Hood

The WHF airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures:

(a) Open the window(s) that are typically opened during WHF operation.

(b) Turn on all WHFs required to meet the dwelling unit WHF airflow rate. Adjust multiple or variable speed WHFs to operate at an airflow rate that will be greater than or equal to the rate required for compliance.

(c) Adjust the dwelling unit window openings to bring the dwelling unit to the WHF-OP of negative 10 Pa ± 5 Pa WRT outside.

(d) Measure the airflow rate(s) at the inlet grille(s) in accordance with RA3.9.3.2 with a calibrated powered flow hood to determine the total WHF airflow for the dwelling unit.

No part of the WHF intake shall be blocked or masked off to accommodate an undersized hood.

Operation of the powered flow hood shall conform to the specifications in the manufacturer's product documentation.

RA3.9.4.1.3 WHF Airflow Rate Measurement Using Traditional Flow Capture Hood

The WHF airflow measurement shall be performed using the following procedures.

(a) Open the window(s) that are typically opened during WHF operation.

(b) Turn on all WHFs required to meet the dwelling unit WHF airflow rate. Adjust multiple or variable speed WHFs to operate at an airflow rate that will be greater than or equal to the rate required for compliance.

(c) Adjust the dwelling unit window openings to bring the dwelling unit to the WHF-OP of negative 10 Pa ± 5 Pa WRT outside.

(d) Measure the airflow rate(s) at the inlet grille(s) with a calibrated traditional flow capture hood to determine the total WHF airflow for the dwelling unit.

No part of the WHF intake shall be blocked or masked off to accommodate an undersized hood.

Operation of the flow hood shall conform to the specifications in the manufacturer's product documentation.

RA3.9.4.2 WHF Fan Watt Draw Measurement Procedures

When multiple WHFs are used to comply with the required WHF watt draw for the dwelling unit, all WHFs in the dwelling unit shall be operated simultaneously and the sum of the watt draw measurements of the simultaneously operating WHFs for the dwelling shall be determined.

When required for compliance, the WHF watt draw shall be measured using one of the following methods:

RA3.9.4.2.1 WHF Watt Draw Measurement Using Portable Watt Meter

The WHF watt draw measurement shall be performed using the following procedures.

(a) The WHF(s) shall be operating at the WHF-OP used for the airflow rate measurement procedures specified in Section RA3.9.4.1.

(b) Measure the watt draw(s) to determine the total WHF watt draw for the dwelling unit.

When measuring watt draw of units that are wired directly to an electrical junction box, it is recommended to use portable true power clamp-on meters to provide flexibility for isolating the correct fan wires.

RA3.9.4.2.2 WHF Watt Draw Measurement Using Utility Revenue Meter

The WHF watt draw measurement shall be performed using the following procedures.

(a) Turn off every circuit breaker except the one exclusively serving the WHF(s).

(b) The WHF(s) shall be operating at the WHF-OP used for the airflow rate measurement procedures specified in Section RA3.9.4.1.

(c) Record the Kh factor on the revenue meter, count the number of full revolutions of the meter wheel over a period exceeding 90 seconds.

(d) Record the number of revolutions (Nrev) and time period (trev, seconds).

(e) Using the following equation, compute the WHF watt draw (Wfan).

Equation RA3.9-1 WHF Fan Watt Draw Wfan = (Kh x Nrev x 3600) / trev

(f) Return all circuit breakers to their original positions.

RA3.9.4.2.3 WHF Watt Draw Measurement Using Digital Utility Revenue Meter

The WHF watt draw measurement shall be performed using the following procedures:

(a) Turn off every circuit breaker except the one exclusively serving the WHF(s).

(b) The WHF(s) shall be operating at the WHF-OP used for the airflow rate measurement procedures specified in Section RA3.9.4.1.

(c) Read the Watt draw from the digital utility meter digital display.

(d) Return all circuit breakers to their original positions.

RA3.9.4.3 Determination of WHF Efficacy

Demonstrating compliance with WHF efficacy requirements requires simultaneous measurement of the WHF airflow rate using Section RA3.9.4.1 procedures and fan watt draw using Section RA3.9.4.2 procedures. The results of the simultaneous airflow rate and fan Watt draw measurements are used for calculation of a value for the WHF efficacy as follows:

RA3.9.4.3.1 Fan Efficacy Calculation (watt/cfm)

The measured value for fan watt draw (watt) shall be divided by the measured value for airflow rate (cfm) to determine the fan efficacy (watt/cfm).

RA3.9.4.4 WHF Compliance Criteria

In order for the WHF to comply, the requirements in both subsections (a) and (b) below shall be met.

(a) The measured WHF airflow (cfm) shall meet or exceed the WHF airflow compliance criterion specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) The calculated value for fan efficacy (watt/cfm) shall be less than or equal to the WHF efficacy compliance criterion specified on the Certificate of Compliance.

Appendix RA4 – Eligibility Criteria for Energy Efficiency Measures

RA4.1 *Purpose and Scope*

This appendix contains the eligibility requirements which must be met when any of the following features are installed to achieve compliance with the residential building energy efficiency standards. Building Envelope Measures.

RA4.2 *Envelope Measures*

RA4.2.1 Radiant Barriers

Radiant barriers shall meet specific eligibility and installation criteria to be modeled by any compliance software and receive energy credit for compliance with the Building Energy Efficiency Standards for low-rise residential buildings.

The emittance of the radiant barrier shall be less than or equal to 0.05 as tested in accordance with ASTM C1371 or ASTM E408.

Installation shall conform to ASTM C1158 (Standard Practice for Installation and Use of Radiant Barrier Systems (RBS) in Building Construction), ASTM C727 (Standard Practice for Installation and Use of Reflective Insulation in Building Constructions), ASTM C1313 (Standard Specification for *Sheet Radiant Barriers for Building Construction Applications*), and ASTM C1224 (*Standard Specification for Reflective Insulation for Building Applications*), and the radiant barrier shall be securely installed in a permanent manner with the shiny side facing down toward the interior of the building (ceiling or attic floor). Moreover, radiant barriers shall be installed at the top chords of the roof truss/rafters in any of the following methods:

(a) Draped over the truss/rafter (the top chords) before the upper roof decking is installed.

(b) Spanning between the truss/rafters (top chords) and secured (stapled) to each side.

(c) Secured (stapled) to the bottom surface of the truss/rafter (top chord). A minimum air space shall be maintained between the top surface of the radiant barrier and roof decking of not less than 1.5 inches at the center of the truss/rafter span.

(d) Attached [laminated] directly to the underside of the roof decking. The radiant barrier shall be laminated and perforated by the manufacturer to allow moisture/vapor transfer through the roof deck.

(e) In addition, the radiant barrier shall be installed to cover all gable end walls and other vertical surfaces in the attic.

RA4.2.1.1 For Prescriptive Compliance: The attic shall be ventilated to:

(a) Provide a minimum free ventilation area of not less than one square foot of vent area for each 300 ft² of attic floor area.

(b) Provide no less than 30 percent upper vents.

(c) Ridge vents or gable end vents are recommended to achieve the best performance. The material should be cut to allow for full airflow to the venting.

(d) The product shall meet all requirements for California certified insulation materials [radiant barriers] of the Department of Consumer Affairs, Bureau of ~~Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation~~Household Goods and Services, as specified by CCR, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-13, Standards for Insulating Material.

(e) The use of a radiant barrier shall be listed in the Special Features and Modeling Assumptions listings of the Certificate of Compliance and described in detail in the Residential ACM Manual Conform to the radiant barrier manufacturer's instructions.

RA4.2.2 Fenestration Including Dynamic Glazing

For each manufactured fenestration products including dynamic glazing a temporary NFRC Label or a temporary Default Label will be attached to each fenestration product. The labels shall remain attached to the fenestration product until the building inspector verifies the efficiencies.

Before installation the installer or responsible party shall fill out the Installation Certificate form for the fenestration including dynamic glazing and verify the efficiencies (e.g. U-factor and SHGC) matches the Certificate of Compliance and the building plans. A copy of the Installation Certificate shall remain at the job site and a copy given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

RA4.2.2.1 Installer Shall Verify:

(a) Name of the manufacture, brand name, model matches building plans or energy compliance forms;

(b) That each manufactured fenestration product shall be provided with a temporary NFRC Label Certificate or a Default Label to identify the thermal performance (e.g. U-factor, and SHGC) of each fenestration product being installed;

(c) Identify the azimuth orientation in degrees or in cardinal orientation for each of the installed fenestration products and annotated on the Installation Certificate;

(d) If no NFRC Label is included on the fenestration, then verify with the Responsible Person of the building construction or enforcement agency to ensure the fenestration product used actually meets or exceeds the energy specifications;

(e) For dynamic glazing; to ensure reliable proper control operation, the controls shall be installed and verified to meet manufactures operation specifications. A copy of the User Manual shall be provided to the building owner;

(f) The installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Installation Certificate and signed copy of the Installation Certificate(s) shall remain at the job site; and

(g) A copy shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

RA4.2.2.2 Window Film

These procedures detail the installation protocols necessary for window films. Each window film product to be installed is provided with a temporary NFRC Label on the box to identify the thermal performance efficiencies (e.g. U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC), and Visible Transmittance (VT)). The labels shall be located at the job site for verification by the enforcement agency. In addition, the responsible person or the installer shall fill out the Installation Certificate and shall verify the thermal performance efficiencies of each window film to be installed matches the energy Certificate of Compliance documentation and the building plans orientation schedule. A copy of the Installation Certificates shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records along with other window film information.

RA4.2.2.2.1 Window Film Documentation at Occupancy

(a) The IWFA ~~Visual Quality Standards for Applied Window Film~~Architectural Visual Inspection Standard Window Film (dated ~~January 1, 2015~~August 21, 2018), a copy can be obtained through www.iwfa.com;

(b) A sample (8” x 10”) of the film installed with a copy of its Performance Specification Sheet attached; and

(c) A 15 or more year Warranty Certificate(s) shall be given to the building owner.

RA4.2.2.3 The Responsible Person or Installer Shall Verify Before Installation;

(a) Name of the manufacture, brand name, model matches building plans or energy compliance forms;

(b) From the building plans or energy compliance documentation identify the azimuth orientation in degrees or in cardinal orientation for each of the window film to be installed to ensure the correct window film type is installed in the appropriate orientation;

(c) Verify the temporary NFRC label on the box for each window film’s U-factor, Solar Heat Gain (SHGC) and Visible Transmittance (VT) matches the energy compliance documentation and building plans;

(d) List the NFRC Certified Product Directory (CPD) identification number provided on the label on the Installation Certificate form;

(e) If no NFRC Label is included on the box or identification of the window film, then verify with the Responsible Person of the building construction or enforcement agency to ensure the window film used actually meets or exceeds the energy specifications;

(f) Installation of window films shall follow the International Window Film Association (IWFA) ~~Visual Quality Standards for Applied Window Film~~Architectural Visual Inspection Standards Window Film (dated ~~January 1, 2015~~August 21, 2018); and,

(g) After the installation, the installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Installation Certificate.

RA4.2.2.4 Documentation at Occupancy

The following documentation shall be made available to the building owner at occupancy:

(a) Completed and signed Installation Certificate form(s);

(b) A 10 or more year Warranty Certificate(s) shall be given to the building owner for fenestration products other than window films.

RA4.3 HVAC Measures

RA4.3.1 Evaporatively-Cooled Condensing Units

To ensure reliable energy savings and proper operation and control, the evaporatively-cooled condensing unit shall conform to the requirements in section RA4.3.1.

The HERS verifications and eligibility testing listed in sections RA4.3.1.1 and RA4.3.1.2 shall be completed, certified by the HVAC installer on the Certificate of Installation, and verified by a HERS Rater on the Certificate of Verification.

The builder or installer shall provide a Certificate of Compliance that reports the use of an evaporatively-cooled condensing unit for determining performance standards compliance, that requires HERS verification of the system equipment, duct sealing, and refrigerant charge for compliance as described in Section RA4.3.1.1.

RA4.3.1.1 HERS Verification

The following shall be verified by a HERS rater and reported on a Certificate of Verification for the system:

(a) EER at 95 ° F dry bulb and 75 ° F wet bulb temperature is listed with ARI (generally called EERa).

(b) EER at 82 ° F dry bulb and 65 ° F wet bulb temperature is submitted to ARI and published by the manufacturer in accordance with ARI guidelines (generally called EERb).

(c) Presence of TXV is verified, if the ARI certified EERs are based on equipment with TXVs.

(d) Ducts are tested and sealed in all installations of this equipment according to applicable requirements in Section RA3.1.

(e) Proper refrigerant charge or presence of Fault Indicator Display (FID) is verified if compliance credit is taken for this measure when TXVs are not installed.

RA4.3.1.2 Eligibility Testing Eligibility Testing

The installing contractor shall complete the following eligibility testing and document the results on the applicable Certificate of Installation.

(a) Verify that there is water in the water casing.

(b) Switch on the cooling system by setting the thermostat below the room temperature.

(c) Verify that the water pump starts running when the system is turned on.

(d) When the water pump is running, verify that all the condenser coils are wet.

(e) Verify that the high pressure trip for the compressor is set (per manufacturer's specifications) at or below 300 psig for R22 Refrigerant and at or below the saturation pressure corresponding to a temperature of 131^0 F for all other refrigerants.

(f) Turn off the water supply to the water casing, drain the water from the sump, and verify that the water pump and the compressor trip.

(g) Verify that the condenser coils have a corrosion resistant coating and that the water casing is made up of corrosion resistant material.

(h) Verify that the electrolytic protection is installed.

(i) Verify that a blow-down pump is installed for periodic blow-down to remove solids from the water casing.

(j) Verify that the operation of this pump is automatic based on compressor run time or the conductivity of the water in the casing.

(k) Verify that the water casing is sloped downward towards the blow-down pump location to facilitate removal of solids.

(l) Drift eliminators must be installed to reduce the loss of water to less than 0.002% of the recirculated water (as per test method CTI-HBIK Std.140 or other approved procedure).

(m) Condensate water must be routed to the evaporative condenser sump, unless it is not practical i.e. the fan coil and condenser not separated by conditioned space.

(n) Condenser must have a certification from the manufacturer that water consumption is less than .15 gph per ton of capacity.

(o) Water connection is made with tubing no large than ¼ inch diameter.

(p) Overflow from the unit is not connected directly to the sewer drain (son in the event of a water float failure an overflow condition can be more easily detected) or another means of determining an overflows condition is provided.

(q) The system has a backup solenoid water shutoff control or no spill sump.

RA4.3.2 Evaporative Cooling

Qualifying equipment is limited to either indirect-direct or indirect evaporative coolers. Direct evaporative coolers and indirect or indirect-direct evaporative coolers that do not meet the following eligibility criteria shall not be used.

RA4.3.2.1 Eligibility Testing

The installing contractor shall complete the following eligibility testing and document the results on the applicable Certificate of Installation.

(a) Eligible equipment shall be listed under Title 20 Appliance Standards.

(b) The equipment manufacturer shall certify to the Commission that water use does not exceed 7.5 gallons per ton hour based on the Title 20 Appliance Standards testing criteria.

(c) Equipment shall be permanently installed (no window or portable units).

(d) Installation shall provide for automatic relief of supply air from the house with maximum air velocity through the relief dampers not exceeding 800 fpm (at the Title 20 rated airflow). Pressure relief dampers and ductwork shall be distributed to provide adequate airflow through all habitable rooms. For installations with an attic, ceiling dampers shall be installed to relieve air into the attic, and then to outside through attic vents. For installations without an attic, sidewall relief dampers are acceptable.

(e) To minimize water consumption, bleed systems shall not be allowed.

(f) A water quality management system (either “pump out” or conductivity sensor) is required. “Pump out” systems can either be integral to the evaporative cooler or they can be accessories that operate on a timed interval. The time interval between dumps shall be set to a minimum of six hours of cooler operation. Longer intervals are encouraged if local water quality allows.

RA4.4 Water Heating Measures

RA4.4.1 Proper Installation of Pipe Insulation

Unless otherwise stated, insulation must meet the requirements specified in §150.0(j). Pipe insulation shall fit tightly to the pipe and all elbows and tees shall be fully insulated. No piping should be visible due to insulation voids with the exception of the last segment of piping that penetrates walls and delivers hot water to the sink, appliance, etc. All domestic hot water piping shall be insulated as specified in Section 609.11 of the California Plumbing Code. ~~In addition, the following piping conditions shall have a minimum insulation wall thickness of 1 inch:~~
~~The first five feet of hot and cold water piping from storage gas water heaters.~~
~~All hot water piping of 3/4" diameter or greater.~~
~~All piping from the water heater to kitchen sinks and dishwasher.~~
~~(d) All underground hot water piping~~
~~In addition, all piping below grade must be installed in a waterproof and non-crushable casing or sleeve that allows for installation, removal and replacement of the enclosed pipe and insulation. The internal cross-section or diameter of the casing or sleeve shall be large enough to allow for insulation of the hot water piping.~~
~~(e) Piping from the heating source to storage tank or between tanks.~~

Pipe insulation may be omitted where hot water distribution piping is buried within attic, crawlspace or wall insulation, as described below: In attics and crawlspaces the insulation shall completely surround the pipe with at least 1 inch of insulation and the pipe shall be completely covered with at least 4 inches of insulation further away from the conditioned space. In walls, the insulation must completely surround the pipe with at least 1 inch of insulation. If burial within the insulation does not meet these specifications, then this exception does not apply, and the section of pipe not meeting the specifications must be insulated as specified in §150.0(j).

RA4.4.2 The Standard Distribution System (STD)

The Standard Distribution System design requires that hot water distribution piping meets the requirements of Proper Installation of Pipe Insulation R4.4.1.

RA4.4.3 Reserved for future use

RA4.4.4 Central Parallel Piping (PP)

This hot water distribution system is comprised of one or more manifolds located relatively close to the water heater and pipes running from the manifold to individual fixtures and appliances. The manifolds may have valves for each pipe running from the manifold to individual fixtures and appliances. These valves must be readily accessible in accordance with the plumbing code. The measured length of pipe from the water heater each central manifold shall not exceed 15 feet (measured to the nearest half foot).

The hot water distribution system piping from the manifold to the fixtures and appliances must take the most direct path. For example, in a house with more than 1-story and the water heater in the garage, this requirement would exclude running hot water supply piping from the manifold to the attic, and then running the line back down to a first floor point of use.

The hot water distribution piping must be separated by at least two inches from any other hot water supply piping, and at least six inches from any cold water supply piping or the hot water supply piping must be insulated based on the conductivity range in TABLE 120.3-A and the insulation level shall be selected from the fluid temperature range based on the thickness requirements in TABLE 120.3-A.

Other hot water piping shall be insulated to a level that meets the requirements of §150.0(j) and be installed in accordance with Proper Installation of Pipe Insulation R4.4.1.

RA4.4.5 Point of Use (POU)

This measure requires that all hot water fixtures in the dwelling unit, with the exception of a stand-alone tub must use no more pipe per run than defined in Table 4.4.5. To meet this requirement most houses will require multiple water heaters.

Table 4.4.5

Size Nominal (Inch)	**Length of Pipe (feet)**
3/8”	15
1/2”	10
3/4”	5

(a) Measurements shall be made to the nearest half foot.

(b) If a combination of piping is used in a single run then one half the allowed length of each size is the maximum installed length.

(c) The hot water distribution system piping from the water heater(s) to the fixtures and appliances must take the most direct path. For example, in a house with more than 1-story and the water heater in the garage, this requirement would exclude running hot water supply piping from the manifold to the attic, and then running the line back down to a first floor point of use.

(d) Hot water piping shall be insulated to a level that meets the requirements of §150.0(j) and be installed in accordance with Proper Installation of Pipe Insulation R4.4.1.

RA4.4.6 Compact Hot Water Distribution System (CHWDS)

To receive the Compact Hot Water Distribution System credit (available for single family homes and multifamily dwellings served by individual water heaters), plan calculations must be completed that demonstrate that the water heater to fixture proximity is more compact than a threshold criteria that is defined based on the dwelling unit conditioned floor area and number of stories. Compactness is characterized by calculating the “Weighted Distance” from the water heater to key fixtures and the threshold criteria is identified by the “Qualification Distance”. (The Qualification Distance is calculated directly by the ACM.) Determination of the Weighted Distance for a particular floor plan is dependent on whether it is a non-recirculating or a recirculating distribution system, with the recirculation option only available for single family homes.

Calculation of the Weighted Distance varies depending on the type of system being installed. The calculation is based on a equation with modifications based on the distribution system type. In each case the basis of the calculation is the plan-view, straight line distance from the water heater to the center of the further use point fixture in three locations of the dwelling unit, two of which are the master bathroom and the kitchen. It is calculated using the following equation:

Weighted_Distance = x * d_MasterBath + y * d_Kitchen + z * d_FurthestThird

Where:

x, y, and z = Weighted Distance coefficients (unitless), see Table 4.4.6-1.

d_MasterBath = The plan view, straight line distance from the water heater to the furthest fixture served by that water heater in the master bathroom (feet).

d_Kitchen = The plan view, straight line distance from the water heater to the furthest fixture served by that water heater in the kitchen (feet).

d_FurthestThird = The plan view, straight line distance from the water heater to the furthest fixture served by that water heater in the furthest room[7] in the dwelling unit (feet).

---

[7] Because the Master Bath and Kitchen have unique separate terms, the d_FurthestThird fixture must located in neither of these rooms. The laundry room is excluded, and shall not be used as the furthest third fixture. In multifamily cases where there is not another qualifying use point, the d_FurthestThird term equals zero.

Table 4.4.6-1: Weighted Distance Coefficients

Distribution System	**x**	**y**	**z**
Non-Recirculating	0.4	0.4	0.2
Recirculating	0.0	0.0	1.0

Note that the calculations are only based on horizontal plan view distance measurements from the center of the water heater to the center of the use point in the designated location[8]. Vertical pipe run lengths (for example, the vertical distance from the first to second floor) is neglected in the calculations. Use points that are located on floors different than the water heater would have their location translated to the floor where the water heater is located.

In single family homes with multiple water heaters, the Weighted Distance “z term” calculation is performed for each water heater to arrive at a FurthestThird term averaged over each of the “n” water heaters installed. For a non-recirculating distribution system, the resulting Weighted Distance calculation would include the Master Bath, the Kitchen and an average of the FurthestThird term for each of the installed water heaters. (For recirculating systems, similarly the FurthestThird term would represent an average across the “n” water heaters.)

The Qualification Distance is a function of conditioned floor area (CFA), number of stories, and number of installed water heaters. The Qualification Distance for systems with multiple water heaters is identified by using the equation for the appropriate distribution system (recirculation or non-recirculation), and dividing by the number of water heaters installed as shown in the Equation below:

Qualification Distance = (a + b * CFA) / n

Where:

a, b = Qualification distance coefficients (unitless), see Table 4.4.6-2,
CFA = Conditioned floor area of the dwelling unit (ft^2), and
n = Number of water heaters in the dwelling unit (unitless).

Table 4.4.6-2: Coefficients for the Qualification Distance Calculation

	Coefficient a		**Coefficient b**	
Building Type	**Non-Recirculating**	**Recirculating**	**Non-Recirculating**	**Recirculating**
Single Family				
One story	10	22.7	0.0095	0.0099
Two story	15	11.5	0.0045	0.0095
Three story	10	0.5	0.0030	0.014

---

[8] For example, a shower/tub combination would take the measurement from the fixture supply outlet of the shower/tub, while a two sink lavatory in the master bath would take the measurement from the fixture supply outlet of the lavatory furthest from the water heater.

Multifamily				
One story	7.5	n/a	0.0080	n/a
Two or more story	7.5	n/a	0.0050	n/a

RA4.4.7 Recirculation Systems

RA4.4.7.1 Installation requirements for all recirculation systems

The supply portion of each circulation loop, the first five feet of branches off the loop and the dedicated return line are insulated based on the conductivity range in TABLE 120.3-A and the insulation level shall be selected from the fluid temperature range based on the thickness requirements in TABLE 120.3-A and the insulation shall be installed in accordance with Proper Installation of Pipe Insulation. Other hot water piping shall meet the requirements of §150.0(j) and be installed in accordance with Proper Installation of Pipe Insulation R4.4.1.

A check valve shall be installed in the recirculation loop to prevent unintentional circulation of the water (thermo-siphoning) and back flow when the system is not operating. This check valve may be included with the pump.

The hot water distribution system piping from the water heater(s) to the fixtures and appliances must take the most direct path. For example, in a house with more than 1-story and the water heater in the garage, this requirement would exclude running hot water supply piping from the water heater to the attic, and then running the line back down to a first floor point of use.

The recirculation pump can be located external to the water heater or be integral to the water heater.

The manufacturer(s) of the recirculation pump and the controls shall provide installation and operation instructions that provide details of the operation of the pump and controls and such instructions shall be available at the jobsite for inspection.

RA4.4.8 Recirculation with non-demand controls (R-ND)

All recirculation controls with the exception of demand recirculation control systems fall under this category.

(a) More than one circulation loop may be installed. Each loop shall have its own pump and controls.

(b) The active control shall be either: timer, temperature, or time and temperature. Timers shall be set to less than 24 hours. The temperature sensor shall be connected to the piping and to the controls for the pump.

RA4.4.9 Demand Recirculation; Manual Control (R-DRmc)

Demand controlled recirculation systems shall operate “on-demand”, meaning that pump operation shall be initiated shortly prior to the hot water draw. The controls shall operate on the principal of shutting off the pump with a sensed rise in pipe temperature (Delta-T). For this measure a manual switch is used to activate the pump.

(a) More than one circulation loop may be installed. Each loop shall have its own pump and controls.

(b) Manual controls shall be located in the kitchen, bathrooms, and any hot water fixture location that is at least 20 feet (measured along the hot water piping) from the water heater.

(c) Manual controlled systems may be activated by wired or wireless mechanisms, Manual controls shall have standby power of 1 watt or less.

(d) Pump and demand control placement meets one of the following criteria.

1. When a dedicated return line has been installed the pump, demand controls and thermo-sensor are installed at the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop (typically under a sink); or

2. The pump and demand controls are installed on the return line near the water heater and the thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location as close to the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop as possible (typically under a sink), or

3. When the cold water line is used as the return, the pump, demand controls and thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location at the end of supply portion of the hot water distribution line (typically under a sink).

(e) Insulation is not required on the cold water line when it is used as the return.

(f) Demand controls shall be able to shut off the pump in accordance with one of the following two methods:

   1. After the pump has been activated, the controls shall allow the pump to operate until the water temperature at the thermo-sensor rises not more than 10ºF (5.6 ºC) above the initial temperature of the water in the pipe, or

   2. The controls shall not allow the pump to operate when the temperature in the pipe exceeds 102ºF (38.9 ºC).

(g) The controls shall limit pump operation to a maximum of 5 minutes following any activation. This is provided in the event that the normal means of shutting off the pump have failed.

RA4.4.10 Demand Recirculation; Sensor Control (RDRsc)

Demand controlled recirculation systems shall operate “on-demand”, meaning that pump operation shall be initiated shortly prior to the hot water draw. The controls shall operate on the principal of shutting off the pump with a sensed rise in pipe temperature (Delta-T). For this measure a sensor control is used to activate the pump rather than a manual control.

(a) More than one circulation loop may be installed. Each loop shall have its own pump and controls.

(b) Sensor controls shall be located in the kitchen, bathrooms, and any hot water fixture location that is at least 20 feet (measured along the hot water piping) from the water heater.

(c) Sensor controlled systems may be activated by wired or wireless mechanisms, including motion sensors, door switches and flow switches. Sensors controls shall have standby power of 1 watt or less.

(d) Pump and demand control placement meets one of the following criteria.

1. When a dedicated return line has been installed the pump, demand controls and thermo-sensor are installed at the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop (typically under a sink); or
2. The pump and demand controls are installed on the return line near the water heater and the thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location as close to the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop as possible (typically under a sink), or
3. When the cold water line is used as the return, the pump, demand controls and thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location at the end of supply portion of the hot water distribution line (typically under a sink).

(e) Insulation is not required on the cold water line when it is used as the return.

(f) Demand controls shall be able to shut off the pump in accordance with one of the following two methods:

1. After the pump has been activated, the controls shall allow the pump to operate until the water temperature at the thermo-sensor rises not more than 10ºF (5.6 ºC) above the initial temperature of the water in the pipe, or

2. The controls shall not allow the pump to operate when the temperature in the pipe exceeds 102ºF (38.9 ºC).

(g) The controls shall limit pump operation to a maximum of 5 minutes following any activation. This is provided in the event that the normal means of shutting off the pump have failed.

RA4.4.11 Multiple Dwelling Units: Recirculation Temperature Modulation Control

A recirculation temperature modulation control shall reduce the hot water supply temperature when hot water demand is determined to be low by the control system. The control system may use a fixed control schedule or dynamic control schedules based measurements of hot water demand. The daily hot water supply temperature reduction, which is defined as the sum of temperature reduction by the control in each hour within a 24-hour period, shall be more than 50 degrees Fahrenheit to qualify for the energy savings credit.

Recirculation systems shall also meet the requirements of §110.3.

RA4.4.12 Multiple Dwelling Units: Recirculation Continuous Monitoring Systems

Systems that qualify as a recirculation continuous monitoring systems for domestic hot water systems serving multiple dwelling units shall record no less frequently than hourly measurements of key system operation parameters, including hot water supply temperatures, hot water return temperatures, and status of gas valve relays of water heating equipment. The continuous monitoring system shall automatically alert building operators of abnormalities identified from monitoring results.

Recirculation systems shall also meet the requirements of §110.3.

RA4.4.13 Multiple Dwelling Units: Demand Recirculation

Demand controlled recirculation systems shall operate "on-demand", meaning that pump operation shall be initiated shortly prior to, or by a hot water draw. The controls shall operate on the principal of shutting off the pump with a sensed rise in pipe temperature (Delta-T). For this measure sensor or manual controls may be used to activate the pump(s).

(a) Manual or sensor controls shall be installed and if powered, have standby power of 1 watt or less. Controls may be located in individual units or on the loop. Controls may be activated by wired or wireless mechanisms, including buttons, motion sensors, door switches and flow switches.

(b) Pump and control placement shall meet one of the following criteria:

1. When a dedicated return line has been installed the pump, controls and thermo-sensor are installed at the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop; or

2. The pump and controls are installed on the dedicated return line near the water heater and the thermo-sensor is installed in an accessible location as close to the end of the supply portion of the recirculation loop as possible, or

3. When the cold water line is used as the return, the pump, demand controls and thermosensor shall be installed in an accessible location at the end of supply portion of the hot water distribution line (typically under a sink).

(c) Insulation is not required on the cold water line when it is used as the return.

(d) Demand controls shall be able to shut off the pump in accordance with these three methods:
   1. After the pump has been activated, the controls shall allow the pump to operate until the water temperature at the thermo-sensor rises not more than 10ºF (5.6 ºC) above the initial temperature of the water in the pipe, or
   2. The controls shall not allow the pump to operate when the temperature in the pipe exceeds 102ºF (38.9 ºC).
   3. The controls shall limit pump operation to a maximum of 10 minutes following any activation. This is provided in the event that the normal means of shutting off the pump have failed.

Recirculation systems shall also meet the requirements of §110.3.

RA4.4.14 HERS-Verified Pipe Insulation Credit (PIC-H)

Consistent with the requirements of RA4.4.1, this measure requires a HERS inspection to verify that all hot water piping is insulated correctly.

RA4.4.15 HERS-Verified Parallel Piping (PP-H)

Consistent with the requirements of RA4.4.4 this measure requires a HERS inspection to verify that the length of pipe between the water heater and each central manifold does not exceed 5 feet and to verify pipe insulation.

RA4.4.16 HERS-Verified Compact Hot Water Distribution System Expanded Credit (CHWDS-H-EX)

A HERS inspection is required in order to obtain this credit. To meet the Compact Hot Water Distribution System Expanded Credit eligibility requirements, the requirements in RA4.4.6 must be met. In addition, the following HERS field verifications are required:

(a) No hot water piping >1” diameter piping is allowed,

(b) Length of 1” diameter piping is limited to 8 ft or less,

(c) Two and three story buildings cannot have hot water distribution piping in the attic, unless the water heater is also located in the attic and,

(d) Eligible recirculating systems must be HERS-Verified Demand Recirculation: Manual Control conforming to RA4.4.17.

RA4.4.17 HERS-Verified Demand Recirculation: Manual Control (RDRmc-H)

~~Consistent with the requirement of RA4.4.7.3, t~~This measure shall include~~s~~ a visual HERS inspection to verify that the demand pump, manual controls and thermo-sensor are present and operating properly.

RA4.4.18 HERS-Verified Demand Recirculation: Sensor Control (RDRsc-H)

~~Consistent with the requirement of RA4.4.6.4 t~~This measure shall include~~s~~ a visual HERS inspection to verify that the demand pump, sensor controls and thermo-sensor are present and operating properly.

RA4.4.19 HERS-Verified Multiple Recirculation Loops for DHW Systems Serving Multiple Dwelling Units

Central DHW systems serving a building with more than eight dwelling units shall have at least two recirculation loops, each serving roughly the same number of dwelling units. Unique building sections may have additional recirculation loops. These recirculation loops may be connected to the same water heating equipment or be connected to independent water heating equipment. This credit may be taken in combination with recirculation system~~ defined in RA 4.4.7.5 through RA 4.4.7.7~~.

RA4.4.20 Solar Water Heating Systems

Solar water-heating systems and/or collectors shall be certified and rated by the Solar Rating and Certification Corporation (SRCC), the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Research and Testing (IAPMO R&T), or by a listing agency that is approved by the Executive Director.

To use collectors with the SRCC OG-100 certification and rating, the installed system shall meet the following eligibility criteria:

(a) Include all of the features modeled and generated in the Commission approved solar savings fraction calculation.

(b) The collectors shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions.

(c) The collectors shall be located in a position that is not shaded by adjacent buildings or trees between 9:00 AM and 3:00 PM (solar time) on December 21.

To use a solar water-heating system with the SRCC OG-300 certification and rating, the installed system shall meet the following eligibility criteria:

(a) The collectors shall face within 35 degrees of south and be tilted at a slope of at least 3:12.

(b) The system shall be installed in the exact configuration for which it was rated. The system shall have the same collectors, pumps, controls, storage tank and backup water heater fuel type as the rated condition.

(c) The system shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions.

(d) The collectors shall be located in a position that is not shaded by adjacent buildings or trees between 9:00 AM and 3:00 PM (solar time) on December 21.

RA4.4.21 HERS-Verified Drain Water Heat Recovery System (DWHR-H)

A HERS inspection is required to obtain this credit. All DWHR unit(s) shall be certified to the Energy Commission according to the following requirements:

(a) Vertical DWHR unit(s) shall be compliant with CSA B55.2, and tested and labeled in accordance with CSA B55.1 or IAPMO IGC 346-2017. Sloped DWHR unit(s) shall be compliant with IAPMO PS 92, and tested and labeled with IAPMO IGC 346-2017.

(b) The DWHR unit(s) shall have a minimum rated effectiveness of 42 percent.

The HERS inspector shall verify that:

(a) The make, model, and CSA B55.1 or IAPMO IGC 346-2017 rated effectiveness of the DWHR unit(s) shall match the compliance documents. The DWHR unit(s) shall also be verified as a model certified to the Energy Commission as qualified for credit as a DWHR unit(s).

(b) The installation configuration (e.g. equal flow, unequal flow to the water heater, or unequal flow to the showers) and the percent of served shower fixtures shall match the compliance documents.

(c) For water heating system serving a single dwelling, the DWHR system shall, at the minimum, recover heat from the master bathroom shower and must at least transfer that heat either back to all the respective showers or the water heater.

(d) For central water heating system serving multiple dwellings, the DWHR system shall, at the minimum, recover heat from half the showers located above the first floor and must at least transfer that heat either back to all the respective showers or the water heater.

(e) The DWHR unit(s) shall be installed within 1 degrees of the rated slope. Sloped DWHR shall have a minimum lengthwise slope of 1 degree. The lateral level tolerance shall be within plus or minus 1 degree.

(f) The installation shall comply with any applicable California Plumbing Code requirements.

RA4.5 Other Measures

RA4.5.1 Controlled Ventilation Crawlspace (CVC)

Drainage. Proper enforcement of site engineering and drainage, and emphasis on the importance of proper landscaping techniques in maintaining adequate site drainage, is critical.

Ground Water And Soils. Local ground water tables at maximum winter recharge elevation should be below the lowest excavated site foundation elevations. Sites that are well drained and that do not have surface water problems are generally good candidates for this stem-wall insulation strategy. However, the eligibility of this alternative insulating technique is entirely at the enforcement agency officials' discretion. Where disagreements exist, it is incumbent upon the applicant to provide sufficient proof that site drainage strategies (e.g., perimeter drainage techniques) will prevent potential problems.

Ventilation. All crawl space vents must have automatic vent dampers to receive this credit. Automatic vent dampers must be shown on the building plans and installed. The dampers should be temperature actuated to be fully closed at approximately 40°F and fully open at approximately 70°F. Cross ventilation consisting of the required vent area reasonably distributed between opposing foundation walls is required.

Foam Plastic Insulating Materials. Foam plastic insulating materials must be shown on the plans and installed when complying with the following requirements:

Fire Safety—CBC Section 719. Products shall be protected as specified. Certain products have been approved for exposed use in under floor areas by testing and/or listing.

Direct Earth Contact—Foam plastic insulation used for crawl-space insulation having direct earth contact shall be a closed cell water resistant material and meet the slab-edge insulation requirements for water absorption and water vapor transmission rate specified in the mandatory measures.

Vapor Retarder: A Class I or Class II vapor retarder shall be placed over the earth floor of the crawl space to reduce moisture entry and protect insulation from condensation, as specified in the exception to Section 150.0(d).

RA4.5.2 Sunspace

The installation of a sunspace can be a very beneficial energy features in many parts of California. However, if orientation fenestration area or fenestration performance values are installed that to not match compliance documentation then the performance of a sunroom can have significant negative energy impacts. Another critical components of sunroom is ventilation. Sunrooms must have the ability to vent to the outside and to provide airflow to the rest of the house. If any of these components are not present in the actual installation the performance documentation should be reviewed carefully.

RA4.5.3 Multiple Orientations Compliance

When all orientations are used to document compliance as allowed under Section 150.1(c)4 EXCEPTION, the following guidelines shall be meet. Compliance for multifamily or subdivisions that is based upon multiple orientation the annual energy consumption for each specific design (including the reverse images of that design) must be calculated in each of the four cardinal orientations: true north, true east, true south and true west. With this option, a dwelling unit plan must be modeled using the identical combination of energy features and levels in each orientation, and must comply with the energy budget in each case. All of the orientation must either use the reversed plan or the original/standard to demonstrate compliance.

If the dwelling unit have unique designs or energy features the dwelling unit plan must be modeled using the worst-case condition for the energy features that the plan may contain (e.g. highest glazing percentage, least overhangs, largest wall surface area, and with exterior walls instead of party walls if applicable). See Reference Residential Appendix RA 2.6.1 for information that describes how to determine when a dwelling is considered to be a unique model. Each unique dwelling plan must also be modeled separately for each unique floor level. The option of modeling each individual dwelling unit, with its unique characteristics separately according to its actual orientation is always an acceptable alternative.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Appendix NA1 – Nonresidential HERS Verification, Testing, and Documentation Procedures

NA1.1*California Home Energy Rating Systems*

Appendix NA1 provides direction for communication and documentation processes that must be completed for compliance with the HERS verification requirements for multifamily dwelling units (dwelling units), and for HERS verification of duct sealing of HVAC systems covered by §120.4(g)~~140.4(l)1~~, §141.0(b)2Dii, and §141.0(b)2E (systems) that require field verification and diagnostic testing by a certified Home Energy Rating System (HERS) Rater, using the testing procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2. The Commission approves HERS Providers, subject to the Commission's HERS Program regulations, which appear in the California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Sections 1670-1675. Approved HERS Providers are authorized to certify HERS Raters and maintain quality control over field verification and diagnostic testing.

When the Certificate of Compliance indicates that field verification and diagnostic testing of specific energy efficiency measures are required as a condition for compliance with Title 24, Part 6, an approved HERS Provider and certified HERS Rater shall be used to conduct the field verification and diagnostic testing according to the applicable procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2. HERS Providers and HERS Raters shall be considered special inspectors by enforcement agencies~~,~~ and shall demonstrate competence to the satisfaction of the enforcement agency, for field verifications and diagnostic testing. As specified by California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1673(j)(2), HERS Providers and HERS Raters shall be independent entities from the builder or subcontractor installer of the energy efficiency improvements being field verified or diagnostically tested. An "Independent Entity means having no financial interest in, and not advocating or recommending the use of any product or service as a means of gaining increased business with, firms or persons specified in CCR Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Sections 1671 and 1673(j).". Third Party Quality Control Programs approved by the Commission may serve some of the functions of HERS Raters for field verification and diagnostic testing purposes as specified in NA1.7. Also, Acceptance Test Technicians may serve the function of a HERS Rater for field verification and diagnostic testing purposes as specified in NA1.9.

The remainder of Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1 describes the:

(a) Requirements for documentation and communication for HERS verification compliance processes;

(b) Responsibilities assigned to each of the parties involved in the field verification and diagnostic testing process;

(c) Requirements for procedures for installing contractors and Certificate of Installation documentation;

(d) Requirements for HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing and documentation procedures;

(e) Requirements for sampling procedures for HERS verification compliance;

(f) Requirements for Third Party Quality Control Programs;

(g) Requirements for HERS verification compliance for alterations to existing buildings.

Table NA1-1 describes the measures that require installer certification and HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing~~,~~ and identifies the protocol or test procedure in the Reference Nonresidential Appendices that shall be used for completing installer and HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing.

Table NA1-1 – Summary of Measures Requiring Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

Measure Title	Description	Procedure(s)
	Duct Measures	
Duct Sealing	Component Packages require that space conditioning ducts be sealed. If sealed and tested ducts are claimed for compliance, field verification and diagnostic testing is required to verify that approved duct system materials are utilized, and that duct leakage meets the specified criteria.	NA2.1.4.2
	Mechanical Ventilation Measures	
Dwelling-Unit Mechanical Ventilation Airflow – Continuous Operation	Verify that whole-building ventilation system complies with the airflow rate required by ASHRAE Standard 62.2.	NA2.2.4.1
Dwelling-Unit Mechanical Ventilation Airflow – Intermittent Operation	Verify that whole-building ventilation system complies with the airflow rate required by ASHRAE Standard 62.2.	NA2.2.4.2
Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust Verification	Verify using certified performance rating data from the HVI Directory or the AHAM Directory for determining that the kitchen exhaust system complies with listed requirements.	NA2.2.4.1.4
Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) or Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) Rated Performance Verification	Verify that HRV or ERV system meets or exceeds the performance required for compliance.	NA2.2.4.1.5
	Building Envelope Measure	
Building Envelope Air Leakage	The purpose of this test procedure is to measure the air leakage rate through a ~~high-rise residential~~ multifamily dwelling unit enclosures measured in cubic feet per minute	NA2.3

NA1.2 *Documentation and Communication Requirements for HERS Verification Compliance*

The required building energy compliance features and the required field verification and diagnostic testing procedures shall be identified on a Certificate of Compliance completed in accordance with the requirements in Standards Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2. The builder or subcontractor shall complete all applicable Certificate of Installation documentation in accordance with the requirements in Standards Section 10-103(a)3 and the procedures described in NA1, and shall provide certification that the construction or installation complies with the applicable requirements on the Certificate of Compliance and all applicable field verification and eligibility criteria. The person responsible for the acceptance testing shall perform the required field verification and diagnostic testing and report the results on the Certificate of Acceptance documentation submitted in accordance with the requirements in Standards Section 10-103(a)4 and the procedures described in NA1, and shall provide certification that the construction or installation information reported on the Certificates of Installation are consistent with applicable requirements on the Certificate of Compliance. A certified HERS Rater shall perform all applicable HERS field verification and diagnostic testing and report the results on the applicable Certificate of Verification documentation submitted in accordance with the requirements of Standards Section 10-103(a)5 and the procedures in NA1.

NA1.2.1 Compliance Document Registration and Verification

Document registration requirements are introduced in Section NA1.2.1.1 and further described in the procedures in subsequent sections of NA1. Verification of electronic documentation is introduced in Section NA1.2.1.2 and is applicable to many aspects of the documentation procedures described in subsequent sections of Nonresidential Appendix NA1.

NA1.2.1.1 Document Registration Terminology and Effective Dates for Registration Requirements

When submittal of documentation to a Data Registry is required by applicable sections of Standards Section 10-103(a), the completed documents are referred to as registered documents, and the process of completing these documents by submitting information and certification signatures to the Data Registry is called registration. Refer to Reference Joint Appendix JA1 for additional terminology for Data Registries, registered documents and registration Providers. Additional specification for the document registration process is given in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Data Registry is a web service with a user interface and database maintained by a Registration Provider that complies with the applicable requirements in Reference Joint Appendix JA7, with guidance from the Data Registry Requirements Manual, and provides for registration of residential or nonresidential compliance documentation used for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

Residential Data Registry is a Data Registry that is maintained by a HERS Provider that provides for registration, when required by Part 6, of all residential compliance documentation and the nonresidential Certificate of Verification.

Nonresidential Data Registry is a Data Registry that is maintained by a Registration Provider approved by the Commission that provides for registration, when required by Part 6, of all nonresidential compliance documentation. However, nonresidential Data Registries may not provide for registration of nonresidential Certificates of Verification.

Registration Provider is an organization that administers a Data Registry service that conforms to the requirements in Reference Joint Appendix JA7 and may conform to the guidance given in the Data Registry Requirements Manual.

NA1.2.1.1.1 Document Registration requirements

Contingent upon the approval of Nonresidential Data Registry(s) by the Commission, for all nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels and motels, when designated to allow use of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6:

(a) All Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, and Certificate of Acceptance documentation and Compliance Registration Package shall be submitted for registration and retention to an approved Nonresidential Data Registry. When submittal of documentation to a Data Registry is required, the completed documents are referred to as registered documents, and the process of completing these documents by submitting information and certification signatures to the Data Registry is called registration.

(b) All Certificate of Verification documents for applicable HERS measures are required to be submitted for registration and retention to an approved Residential Data Registry.

All submittals to the Data Registries shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

NA1.2.1.2 Verification of Registered Documents

When document registration is required, printed paper copies or electronic copies of the applicable completed, signed, registered compliance documentation shall be allowed for use for required submittals to enforcement agencies, subject to verification that the information shown on the submitted document(s) conforms to the information shown on the current revision of the registered document(s) on file in the Data Registry for the building.

The document registration Provider shall make document verification services available via phone, internet, or utilization of digital technologies, to enable enforcement agency officials, builders, installation contractors, HERS Raters, and other authorized users of the Data Registry to verify that the information shown on submitted documentation is consistent with the information shown on the current revision of the registered document on file in the Data Registry for the applicable building.

NA1.2.2 Summary of Documentation and Communication Procedures

The documentation and communication process for measures that require field verification and diagnostic testing is summarized below. The subsequent sections of this chapter contain additional information and requirements that apply to all situations; however the section on alterations, NA1.8, applies specifically to the differences in the requirements for alterations. NA1.7 applies specifically to the differences in the requirements for Third Party Quality Control Programs.

(a) The documentation author and the principal mechanical designer shall complete the compliance documents for the building.

(b) The documentation author or the principal mechanical designer shall provide a signed Certificate of Compliance to the builder that indicates duct sealing with HERS Rater diagnostic testing and field verification is required for compliance.

(c) The builder or principal mechanical designer shall make arrangements for transmittal of a signed copy of the Certificate of Compliance, for units that require HERS verification, to a

HERS Provider. The builder shall also arrange for the services of a certified HERS Rater prior to installation of the duct system, so that once the installation is complete the HERS Rater has ample time to complete the field verification and diagnostic testing without delaying final approval of occupancy by the enforcement agency. The builder or principal mechanical designer shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the Certificate of Compliance that was approved/signed by the principal designer/owner and submitted to the enforcement agency.

(d) The builder or subcontractor shall install the duct system(s) that requires field verification and diagnostic testing. The builder or the installing subcontractor shall perform diagnostic testing according to the procedures specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.4 and NA2.

(e) When the installation is complete, the builder or the installing subcontractor shall complete and sign the Certificate of Installation, and Certificate of Acceptance, and post a copy of the completed signed Certificates at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. The builder or subcontractor shall also provide a signed copy of the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance to the HERS Rater.

(f) The HERS Rater shall confirm that the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance has been completed as required, and that the installer's diagnostic test results and all other Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance information shows compliance consistent with the requirements given in the plans and specifications and Certificate of Compliance approved by the local enforcement agency for the building.

(g) The HERS Rater shall complete the field verification and diagnostic testing as specified in NA1.6 and shall enter the test results into the HERS Provider Data Registry.

(h) The HERS Provider shall make available copies of the Certificate of Verification to the HERS Rater, builder, and the HERS Rater shall arrange to have a copy of the completed signed Certificate of Verification posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

(i) The enforcement agency shall not approve a building t for occupancy until the enforcement agency has received a completed signed copy of the Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, and the Certificate of Verification at the building site in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

(j) The Registration Providers shall make document verification services available, via phone or internet communications interface, to the enforcement agency, builders and contractors, HERS Raters, the Energy Commission, and other authorized users of the Data Registry. The HERS Provider shall ensure that the Certificate of Verification information and approval signatures are retained as specified by Title 20 Section 1673(e).

NA1.3 *Summary of Responsibilities*

Section NA1.3 summarizes responsibilities set forth in Appendix NA1 and organizes them by the responsible party**.** This section is not, however, a complete accounting of the responsibilities of the respective parties.

NA1.3.1 Builder

The builder shall make arrangements for submittal of a copy of the Certificate of Compliance, for buildings with features requiring HERS verification, to the HERS Provider. The builder shall make arrangements for the services of a certified HERS Rater prior to installation of the features, so that once the installation is complete the HERS Rater has ample time to complete the field verification and diagnostic testing without delaying final approval of occupancy for the building permit by the enforcement agency. The builder shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the Certificate of Compliance that was approved/signed by the principal designer or owner and submitted to the enforcement agency.

The builder's employees or subcontractors responsible for the installation shall perform diagnostic testing, as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.4, NA1.5 and NA2, and shall complete and sign the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance to certify the diagnostic testing results and that the installation work meets the requirements for compliance as shown on the Certificate of Compliance. The builder or subcontractor shall post a copy of the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance at the construction site for review by the enforcement agency, in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. The builder or subcontractor shall also make available a completed signed copy of the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance to the HERS Rater.

If the builder chooses to utilize group sampling for HERS verification compliance, the builder, the builder's authorized representative, or the HERS Rater shall identify the units to be included in the sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing. The HERS Rater, with no direction from the installer or builder, shall randomly select one duct system from a sample group for field verification and diagnostic testing upon receiving the builder's or builder representative's request for HERS verification of that group. The builder or the HERS Rater shall arrange for registered copies of all Certificates of Verification to be posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection for each individual system. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

The builder shall leave in the building, for the building owner at occupancy, copies of all compliance, operating, maintenance, and ventilation information specified in applicable sections of Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103(b).

NA1.3.2 HERS Provider and Rater

The HERS Provider shall maintain a Data Registry with the capability to receive and store electronic data and image information provided by authorized users of the Data Registry sufficient to facilitate administration the of HERS compliance verification procedures and documentation procedures as described in NA1 and Joint Appendix JA7. Data Registry capabilities include a secure web-based interface accessible by authorized users, and the ability to receive and process data transfer files as specified by Reference Joint Appendix JA7. The HERS Provider shall maintain a list of the buildings in the group from which sampling is drawn, the units selected for sampling, the units sampled and the results of the sampling, the units selected for re-sampling, the units that have been tested and verified as a result of re-sampling, and the corrective action taken.

The HERS Provider shall retain records of all information and approval signatures for completed Certificates of Compliance, Certificates of Installation, and Certificates of Verification for a period of ten years as specified by Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1673(e).

The HERS Rater providing the diagnostic testing and verification shall transmit the test results to the Data Registry. Registered Certificates of Verification from the Provider shall be made available for the tested dwelling unit and each of the remaining untested dwelling units from a designated group for which compliance is verified based on the results of a sample test. The registered Certificates of Verification shall be made available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and to other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry.

The HERS Rater shall produce a separate Certificate of Verification for each system that meets the diagnostic requirements for compliance. The registered Certificate of Verification shall have unique HERS Provider-designated identifiers for registration number, and sample group number, and shall include the lot location, building permit number, time and date stamp of issuance of the certificate, Provider logo or seal, and indicate if the space conditioning unit has been “tested or if it was a “not tested” unit approved as part of sample group. The HERS Rater shall not provide a Certificate of Verification for a building with a space conditioning unit that does not have a completed signed Certificate of Installation as specified in Section NA1.4 and Certificate of Acceptance as specified in Section NA1.5.

If field verification and diagnostic testing on a sampled space conditioning unit identifies a failure to meet the requirements for compliance credit, the HERS Rater shall report to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency that re-sampling will be required.

If re-sampling identifies another failure, the HERS Rater shall report to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency that corrective action, diagnostic testing, and field verification will be required for all the untested space conditioning units in the group. The report shall identify each space conditioning unit that shall be fully tested and corrected.

The HERS Provider shall also report to the builder when diagnostic testing and field verification has shown that the failures have been corrected for all of the space conditioning units.

When individual space conditioning unit testing and verification confirms that the requirements for compliance have been met, the HERS Provider shall make available to the builder and the enforcement agency a registered copy of the Certificate of Verification for each space conditioning unit in the group.

The HERS Provider shall file a report with the enforcement agency if there has been a sample group failure, explaining all actions taken (including field verification, testing, and corrective actions) to bring into compliance space conditioning units for which full testing has been required.

NA1.3.3 Third-Party Quality Control Program

Third Party Quality Control Programs (TPQCP) verify the work of participating installers, collect and evaluate more detailed data than necessary for compliance, identify in real time during the installation invalid and inaccurate installer testing and noncompliant installations, and enable corrected testing with the goal of bringing installations into compliance before the installer leaves the job site. TPQCP personnel and participating TPQCPs do not sign Certificate of Verification documentation, given that they provide assistance and quality control to HERS Raters, who remain responsible for this documentation.

An approved Third Party Quality Control Program shall:

(a) Provide training to participating program installers, installing but not limited to contractors, subcontractors, and technicians, to ensure proficiency in:

  i. Quality HVAC installation procedures, common causes of failure, and corrections.

  ii. Understanding of the Standards requirements for field verification and diagnostic testing of measures, which are subject to TPQCP program procedures.

  iii. Understanding all applicable specifications for field verification and diagnostic testing procedures specified in the Reference Residential Appendices.

  iv. Any applicable specialized TPQCP-specific procedures.

(b) Collect field verification and diagnostic test data (data) from participating installers for each installation completed,

(c) Confirm the location of the system undergoing testing using an electronic tracking means such as Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) technology,

(d) Provide data checking analysis to evaluate the validity and accuracy of the collected data to independently determine whether compliance has been achieved, and to uncover invalid or erroneous information,

(e) Provide real-time direction to the installer to retest and correct problems when data checking determines that compliance has not been achieved, or erroneous information is present, so that testing can be redone and corrections can be made before the installer leaves the site,

(f) Ensure the installer resubmits updated data from new testing when retesting and correction is completed,

(g) Maintain a database of all data submitted by participating TPQCP installers, and

(h) Enable Energy Commission staff to query retained TPQCP data or documents.

TPQCPs do not impose restrictions on HERS Raters or Providers that limit their independence or ability to properly perform their functions, nor do they impose restrictions on the HERS Rater's use of equipment (beyond those required by the Energy Commission).

Refer to NA1.7 for additional detail describing the roles and responsibilities and approval procedures for TPQCP.

NA1.3.4 Enforcement Agency

The enforcement agency, at its discretion, may require independent testing and field verification to be scheduled so that it can be completed in conjunction with the enforcement agency's required inspections. The enforcement agency may also require that it observe the diagnostic testing and field verification performed by builders or subcontractors and the certified HERS Rater in conjunction with the enforcement agency's required inspections to corroborate the results documented on the Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, and the Certificate of Verification.

For buildings for which field verification and diagnostic testing is required for compliance, the enforcement agency shall not approve a building for occupancy until the enforcement agency has received a completed Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance that has been signed by the builder/owner or installing subcontractor, and a completed registered copy of the Certificate of Verification that has been made available by the HERS Provider Data Registry. The Certificates shall be posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

NA1.4 *Installer Requirements –Certificate of Installation Documentation*

Certificates of Installation are required for all buildings and shall include the required compliance information for all of the installed space conditioning systems in the building that must comply. When compliance requires HERS verification, the builder's employees or subcontractors shall perform diagnostic testing according to the procedures specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2, and verify that the measures meet the requirements for compliance shown on the Certificate of Compliance. The owner or installer shall complete a Certificate of Installation and sign the certificate to certify that the installation work meets the requirements for compliance.

A signed copy of the Certificate of Installation shall be posted at the job site for review by the enforcement agency, in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. A copy shall be provided to the HERS Rater.

When the Standards do not require the Certificate of Installation to be registered, the Certificates of Installation that are posted in the field for review by the enforcement agency at final inspection are not required to be registered certificates from a Data Registry, but shall conform to all other applicable requirements of 10-103(a)3.

NA1.5*Acceptance Procedures - Certificate of Acceptance Documentation*

~~Certificates of Acceptance for duct testing are required for applicable efficiency measures in the building.~~ When compliance requires acceptance testing, the acceptance test Field Technician shall perform the required field verification and diagnostic testing according to the procedures specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2, and verify that the work meets the requirements for compliance as shown on the Certificate of Compliance. The owner or installer shall complete a

Certificate of Installation and sign the certificate to certify that the installation work meets the requirements for compliance credit.

A signed copy of the Certificate of Acceptance shall be posted at the job site for review by the enforcement agency, in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. A copy shall be provided to the HERS Rater.

When the Standards do not require the Certificate of Acceptance to be registered, the Certificates of Acceptance that are posted in the field for review by the enforcement agency at final inspection are not required to be registered certificates from a Data Registry, but shall conform to all other applicable requirements of 10-103(a)4.

NA1.6 *HERS Procedures – Verification, Testing, and Sampling*

At the builder's or owner's option, HERS field verification and diagnostic testing shall be completed either for each system or dwelling unit, or alternatively for a sample from a designated group of systems or dwelling units. Field verification and diagnostic testing for compliance shall use the diagnostic procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2. If the builder or owner elects to demonstrate HERS verification compliance utilizing group sampling, the applicable procedures described in NA1.6.2, NA1.6.3 and NA1.6.4 shall be followed.

NA1.6.1 HERS Procedures - General Requirements

The general requirements in NA1.6.1 are applicable to all measures that require HERS verification for compliance, and shall be incorporated into procedures specified in Sections NA1.6.2, NA1.6.3, and NA1.6.4 whenever applicable.

The builder or subcontractor shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the Certificate of Compliance approved/signed by the system designer/builder or owner, a copy of the Certificate of Installation as described in NA1.4, and a copy of the Certificate of Acceptance as described in NA1.5. Prior to performing field verification and diagnostic testing, the HERS Rater shall confirm that the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance have been completed as required, and that the installer's diagnostic test results and all other Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance information indicate compliance consistent with the Certificate of Compliance.

The HERS Rater shall perform all applicable field verification and diagnostic testing.

If field verification and diagnostic testing determines that the requirements for compliance are met, the HERS Rater shall submit or make arrangements for submittal of the Certificate of Verification information to the HERS Provider data registry.

Authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry that are not certified HERS Raters may provide *documentation author* support to facilitate submittal of the Certificate of Verification information to the HERS Provider data registry on behalf of the HERS Rater when such facilitation has been authorized by the HERS Rater. *Documentation authors* shall provide an electronic signature to the Data Registry to certify the documentation is accurate and complete.

The Certificate of Verification shall be electronically signed by the HERS Rater who performed the field verification and diagnostic testing services to certify that the information provided on the Certificate is true and correct.

A completed signed registered copy of the Certificate of Verification shall be posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry.

The HERS Provider shall make document verification services available, to enforcement agencies, builders and contractors, HERS Raters, the Energy Commission, and other authorized users of the HERS Provider data registry.

NA1.6.2 HERS Procedures - Initial Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

The HERS Rater shall diagnostically test and field verify the first system or dwelling unit of each building when the builder elects to demonstrate HERS verification compliance utilizing group sampling. This initial testing allows the builder to identify and correct any potential construction flaws or practices in advance of subsequent further installations. If field verification and diagnostic testing determines that the requirements for compliance are met, the HERS Rater shall transmit the test results to the HERS Provider registry, whereupon the Provider shall make available a copy of the registered Certificate of Verification to the HERS Rater, the builder, and the enforcement agency.

NA1.6.3 HERS Procedures -– Group Sample Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing

After the initial field verification and diagnostic testing is completed, the builder or the HERS Rater shall identify a group of up to seven individual systems or dwelling units in the building from which a sample will be selected and identify the names and license numbers of the subcontractors responsible for the installations requiring field verification and diagnostic testing. The date the first system or dwelling unit in the group is identified shall establish the start date for the new opened sample group. The HERS Provider shall recorded and track the start date for each sample group.

If dwelling units have multiple measures requiring HERS verification installed, each dwelling unit in a designated group shall have the same measures requiring HERS verification as the other dwelling units in the designated group. If some dwelling units have installed a different set of measures requiring HERS verification, those dwelling units shall be in a separate group.

If the dwelling units in a designated group have multiple measures that require HERS verification, sample testing for individual measures may be conducted in any of the dwelling units in the group - it is not required that all of the sample tests for all of the individual measures be completed in the same dwelling unit. Individual measures shall be allowed to be included in a group regardless of whether compliance requires one sample test, or if compliance requires more than one sample test (up to100% sample test rate) be reported for such individual measures.

If dwelling units have central forced-air space conditioning equipment that introduces outside air into the conditioned space utilizing means that connect outside air ventilation ducts directly to the dwelling unit's central forced air duct system (Central Fan-Integrated Ventilation System or CFI

Ventilation System), the CFI ventilation technology shall be considered a separate measure for HERS verification sampling purposes, and dwellings with CFI ventilation systems shall be placed in separate groups from other dwelling units that do not utilize CFI ventilation technology.

For newly constructed buildings, systems or dwelling units in a designated group shall all be located within the same enforcement agency jurisdiction. Refer to Section NA1.8 for requirements for sample groups applicable to alterations.

The HERS Rater shall verify that a Certificate of Compliance a Certificate of Installation, and a Certificate of Acceptance have been completed for each unit having features requiring HERS verification. The HERS Rater shall also confirm that the Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance have been completed as required, and that the field technician's diagnostic test results and all other Certificate of Acceptance information shows compliance consistent with the Certificate of Compliance. The group shall be closed prior to selection of the sample that will be field verified and diagnostically tested.

The builder or the HERS Rater may request removal of units from the group by notifying the HERS Provider prior to selection of the sample that will be tested and shall provide justification for the change. Removed units which are installed shall either be field verified and diagnostically tested individually or shall be included in a subsequent group for sampling.

The HERS Rater, with no direction from the installer, builder, or owner shall randomly select one system or dwelling unit from the "closed" group for field verification and diagnostic testing upon receiving the builder's or builder representative's request for HERS verification of that group. The HERS Rater shall enter the test and/or field verification results into the Data Registry regardless of whether the results indicate a pass or fail. If the test fails then the failure must be entered into the Provider's Data Registry even if the installer immediately corrects the problem. In addition, the procedures in NA1.6.4 shall be followed.

If field verification and diagnostic testing determines that the requirements for compliance are met, the HERS Rater shall enter the test results into the Data Registry. Whereupon, the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency and other approved users of the Data Registry, a copy of the registered Certificate of Verification for the "tested" system or dwelling unit and a Certificate of Verification shall also be provided for each "not tested" system or dwelling unit in the sample group. The Certificate of Verification shall report the successful diagnostic testing results and conclusions regarding compliance for the "tested" system or dwelling unit. The Certificate of Verification shall also provide:

(a) Building permit number for the unit.

(b) Registration Number – that conforms to the numbering convention specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

(c) Group Number – that conforms to the numbering convention specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

(d) Time and date stamp of the Provider's issuance of the registered Certificate of Verification.

(e) Provider's logo, water mark, or official seal.

(f) Indication that the conditioning unit was a “tested” unit, or was a “not tested” unit from the sample group.

The registered Certificate of Verification shall not be provided for measures that have not yet been installed.

Whenever the builder changes subcontractors who are responsible for installation of the systems or dwelling unit measures, the builder shall notify the HERS Rater of the subcontractor change, and terminate sampling for any affected group. All units requiring HERS Rater field verification and diagnostic testing for compliance that were installed by previous subcontractors or were subject to field verification and diagnostic testing under the supervision of a previous HERS Provider, for which the builder does not have a completed Certificate of Verification, shall either be individually tested or included in a separate group for sampling. Systems or dwelling units completed by new subcontractors shall either be individually tested or shall be included in a new separate group for sampling.

The HERS Rater shall not notify the builder when sample testing will occur prior to the completion of the work that is to be tested, or prior to entry of the data from the Certificate of Installation.

The HERS Provider shall close a group within 6 months after the group was started/opened. When such group closure occurs, the HERS Provider shall notify the builder or contractor and HERS Rater that the group has been closed, and a sample shall be selected for field verification and diagnostic testing.

NA1.6.4 HERS Procedures - Re-sampling, Full Testing and Corrective Action

“Re-sampling” refers to the procedure that requires testing of additional systems or dwelling units within a group when the selected sample from a group fails to comply with the HERS verification requirements.

When a failure is encountered during sample testing, the failure shall be entered into the Provider’s Data Registry. Corrective action shall be taken on the failed system and then retested to verify that corrective action was successful. Corrective action and retesting on the system shall be repeated until the testing indicates compliance and the results have been entered into the Data Registry, whereupon, a registered Certificate of Verification for the system shall be made available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the Data Registry.

In addition, the HERS Rater shall conduct re-sampling to assess whether the first failure in the group is unique or if the rest of the units in the group are likely to have similar failings.

NA1.6.4.1 Re-sampling procedures for a “closed” group

The HERS Rater shall randomly select for re-sampling one of the remaining untested systems or dwelling units in the group for testing.

If testing in the re-sample confirms that the requirements for compliance credit are met, then the system or dwelling unit with the failure shall not be considered an indication of failure in the other units in the group. The HERS Rater shall transmit the re-sample test results to the Data Registry, whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the Data Registry, a copy of the registered Certificate of

Verification for each of the remaining units in the group including the dwelling unit in the re-sample.

If field verification and diagnostic testing of the second sample results in a failure, the HERS Rater shall report the second failure to the HERS Provider, the builder, and the enforcement agency. All systems or dwelling units in the group must thereafter be individually field verified and diagnostically tested.

NA1.6.4.2 Corrective Action

The builder shall take corrective action on any system or dwelling unit in the group that failed to comply when tested. In cases where corrective action would require destruction of building components, and the performance compliance method is used, the builder may choose to reanalyze compliance and choose different measures that will achieve compliance. In this case a new Certificate of Compliance shall be completed and submitted to the HERS Provider, the HERS Rater and the enforcement agency. The HERS Rater shall conduct field verification and diagnostic testing for each of these measures to verify that problems have been corrected and that the requirements for compliance have been met. Upon verification of compliance, the HERS Rater shall enter the test results into the Data Registry. Whereupon the Provider shall make available to the HERS Rater, the builder, the enforcement agency, and other authorized users of the Data Registry a copy of the registered Certificate of Verification for each individual unit in the group.

The HERS Provider shall file a report with the enforcement agency explaining all action taken (including field verification, diagnostic testing, and corrective action,) to bring into compliance systems or dwelling units for which full testing has been required. If corrective action requires work not specifically exempted by the CMC or the CBC, the builder shall obtain a permit from the enforcement agency prior to commencement of any of the work.

Corrections to avoid reporting a failure to the Data Registry shall not be made to a sampled or re-sampled feature after the HERS Rater selects the sample feature, or during the course of HERS testing of the unit. If it becomes evident that such corrections have been made to a sampled or re-sampled feature to avoid reporting a failure, field verification and diagnostic testing shall be required to be performed on 100 percent of the individual systems or dwelling units in the group.

NA1.7*Third Party Quality Control Programs*

The Energy Commission may approve Third Party Quality Control Programs (TPQCP) to verify the work of participating installers, collect and evaluate more detailed data than necessary for compliance, identify in real time during the installation invalid and inaccurate installer testing and noncompliant installations, and enable corrected testing with the goal of bringing installations into compliance before the installer leaves the job site. TPQCP personnel and participating TPQCP installation contractors do not have the authority to sign Certificate of Verification documentation as a HERS Rater.

NA1.7.1 Third Party Quality Control Program Responsibilities

An approved Third Party Quality Control Program shall:

(a) Provide training to participating program installers (including contractors, subcontractors, and technicians) to ensure proficiency in:

   i. Quality HVAC installation procedures, common causes of failure, and corrections.

   ii. Understanding of the Standards requirements for field verification and diagnostic testing of measures, which are subject to TPQCP program procedures

   iii. Understanding all applicable specifications for field verification and diagnostic testing procedures specified in the Reference Residential Appendices.

   iv. Any applicable specialized TPQCP-specific procedures.

(b) Collect field verification and diagnostic test data (data) from participating installers for each installation completed.

(c) Automatically confirm the location of the system undergoing testing using an electronic tracking means such as Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) technology if available.

(d) Provide data checking analysis to evaluate the validity and accuracy of the collected data to independently determine whether compliance has been achieved. Data checking based on more detailed data than is required for showing compliance must be able to uncover invalid or erroneous information supplied by installers.

(e) Provide direction to the installer to retest and correct problems when data checking determines that compliance has not been achieved. The direction to the installer shall occur in real time so that testing can be redone and corrections can be made before the installer leaves the site.

(f) Ensure the installer resubmits updated data from new testing when retesting and correction is completed.

(g) Maintain a database of all data submitted by all participating TPQCP installers.

(h) Provide functionality that enables Energy Commission staff to query retained TPQCP data or documents.

(i) TPQCP shall not impose restrictions on the HERS Rater or the HERS Provider that limit their independence, or the ability of the HERS Rater or the HERS Provider to properly perform their functions.

(j) TPQCP shall not impose restrictions on the HERS Rater’s use of equipment beyond those required by the Energy Commission.

NA1.7.2 Requirements for Data Collected by a Third Party Quality Control Program

TPQCP data collection shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) Data shall be more detailed than the data required for showing compliance with the Standards.

(b) Data shall enable the TPQCP to conduct an independent check on the validity and accuracy of the installer’s claim that compliance has been achieved.

(c) Data shall not be alterable by the installer to indicate that compliance has been achieved when in fact compliance has not been achieved.

NA1.7.3 HERS Provider Responsibilities

HERS Providers shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) HERS Providers shall assign a HERS Rater to conduct independent field verification and diagnostic testing of the installation work performed by the participating Third Party Quality Control Program installing contractors, and to submit Certificates of Verification at the close of the sampling group.

(b) HERS Providers shall notify enforcement agencies when groups close or exceed six months without closing.

(c) HERS Providers shall explain, in their applications for approval by the Energy Commission, the way in which their program will work with TPQCPs.

NA1.7.4 HERS Rater Responsibilities

HERS Raters shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) Complete all of the responsibilities of a HERS Rater as specified in Appendix NA1, with the exception that sampling procedures utilized for TPQCP installations shall be limited to sampling of a “closed” group as described in Section NA1.6. However, the sample tested shall be selected and field verified from within a group of up to thirty dwelling units.

(b) HERS Raters shall be independent entities from the Third Party Quality Control Program.

(c) If re-sampling is required, the HERS Rater shall perform full testing and corrective action as specified in Section NA1.6 with the exception that re-sampling shall be completed for a minimum of one out of every thirty dwelling units from the group.

NA1.7.5 Conflict of Interest Guidelines

The TPQCP shall meet the requirements imposed on a HERS Rater specified in the Energy Commission’s HERS Program regulations (California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 4, Article 8, Sections 1670 -1675), including the requirement to be an independent entity from the builder, the HERS Provider, the HERS Rater that provides independent field verifications, and the subcontractor installer as specified by Section 1673(j). However, a Third Party Quality Control Program may have business relationships with installers participating in the program to advocate or promote the program and an installer’s participation in the program, and to advocate or promote products that the Third Party Quality Control Program sells to installers as part of the Program.

NA1.7.6 Conditions of TPQCP Approval

Prior to approval by the Commission, the Third Party Quality Control Program shall provide a detailed explanation to the Commission of the following:

(a) The data that is to be collected from the installers.

(b) The data checking process that will be used to evaluate the validity and accuracy of the data submitted by the TPQCP installation contractors.

(c) The justification for why this data checking process will provide strong assurance that the installation actually complies.

(d) ~~The~~ A~~a~~ detailed description of the database that will be maintained by the TPQCP, and the functionality that will allow Energy Commission staff to query retained data or documents.

(e) A detailed explanation of how their data input complies with Reference Joint Appendix JA7.9.

(f) A detailed description of the training that will be provided to TPQCP installers.

(g) The procedures the TPQCP will follow to ensure the installer makes appropriate on-site data submittals, installation corrections.

The Third Party Quality Control Program may apply for a confidential designation for information submitted to the Energy Commission as specified in the Commission's Administrative Regulations (California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Division 2, Chapter 7, Article 2, Section 2505).

NA1.7.7 Training for TPQCP Installation Contractors

As a condition to participation in the TPQCP program, all approved TPQCP installing contractors and the TPQCP installing contractor's responsible installation technicians shall be trained and confirmed to be proficient in the following:

(a) Quality installation procedures.

(b) The requirements of this Appendix.

(c) Any applicable specialized TPQCP-specific procedures.

The training requirements also apply to the installing contractor's specialty subcontractors who provide Third Party Quality Control Program services. All installation verification and diagnostic work performed in the program shall be subject to the same quality assurance procedures as required by the Energy Commission's HERS program regulations.

NA1.8 *Installer Requirements and HERS Procedures for Alterations*

This section on alterations describes the differences that apply to alterations. Otherwise the procedures and requirements detailed in previous sections of NA1 shall also apply to alterations. For alterations, building owners or their agents may carry out the actions that are assigned to builders in previous sections of Appendix NA1.

Applicable procedures for registration of compliance documents described in Appendix NA1 shall also apply to alterations.

When compliance for an alteration requires diagnostic testing and field verification, the building permit applicant may choose for the testing and field verification to be completed for the permitted system or dwelling unit alone, or alternatively as part of a designated sample group of space conditioning systems for which the same installing company has completed work that requires field verification and diagnostic testing for compliance.

When sampling is utilized for HERS verification compliance for alterations, the buildings in a designated sample group are not required to be located within the same enforcement agency jurisdiction. However, to enable the enforcement agency to schedule testing to accomplish the corroboration of field verification and diagnostic testing procedures performed by builders, subcontractors, or certified HERS Raters as described in Section NA1.3.4, the enforcement agency may require that a separate system from the sample group that is located within its jurisdiction be tested.

The building permit applicant shall submit or make arrangements for submittal of the required Certificate of Compliance information to the HERS Provider and complete the applicable Certificate of Compliance documentation in accordance with the requirements in Standards Section 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2.

When the enforcement agency does not require building design plans to be submitted with the application for a building permit for an alteration, any applicable registered Certificate of Compliance documentation specified in 10-103(a)1 is not required to be approved by the enforcement agency prior to issuance of a building permit, but shall be approved by the enforcement agency prior to final inspection of the dwelling unit, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections as specified in Standards Section 10-103(a)2A.

HERS Raters or other authorized users of the Data Registry may provide *documentation author* support to facilitate the submittal of any required Certificate of Compliance information to the enforcement agency on behalf of the building owner or agent of the building owner, when such facilitation has been authorized by the building owner or agent of the building owner. The building owner or agent of the building owner who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to take responsibility for the design specification for the alteration shall sign the Certificate of Compliance, to certify the information provided on the Certificate is true and correct, to certify conformance with Part 6, and shall submit the Certificate of Compliance to the enforcement agency for approval.

The building permit applicant or building owner or agent shall make available to the HERS Rater a copy of the registered Certificate of Compliance approved by the enforcement agency.

The installer or field technician shall perform diagnostic testing and the procedures specified in Reference nonresidential Appendix NA1.4 and NA2.

When the installation is complete, the person responsible for the installation shall complete and sign the Certificate of Installation, and post a copy at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. The owner or subcontractor shall also provide a completed signed copy of the Certificate of Installation to the HERS Rater.

The field technician responsible for performing the acceptance test on the system shall complete the Certificate of Acceptance. The Certificate of Acceptance shall be signed by the system designer or installing contractor who is responsible for the system performance. A copy of the completed signed Certificate shall be posted at the building site for review by the enforcement agency in conjunction with requests for final inspection. Alternatively, contingent upon approval of a Nonresidential Data registry, the enforcement agency may elect to view the certificates on an approved Data Registry. The owner or subcontractor shall also provide a completed signed copy of the Certificate of Installation to the HERS Rater.

The HERS Rater shall verify that the Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, and Certificate of Acceptance have been completed for each unit having features requiring HERS verification, and that the field technician’s diagnostic test results and all other Certificate of Acceptance information shows compliance consistent with the Certificate of Compliance for the system.

If group sampling is utilized for compliance, the HERS Rater shall define a group of up to seven systems or dwelling units for sampling purposes, requiring that all systems or dwelling units within the group have been installed by the same company. The installing company may request a group for sampling that is smaller than seven systems or dwelling units. Whenever the HERS Rater for an installing company is changed, a new group shall be established.

Re-sampling, full testing and corrective action shall be completed if necessary as specified in NA1.6.4. For alterations, the installing company shall offer to complete field verification and diagnostic testing and any necessary corrective action at no charge to building owners in the group.

The enforcement agency shall not approve the alteration until the enforcement agency has received a completed Certificate of Installation as specified in NA1.4, Certificate of Acceptance as specified in Section NA1.5, and a copy of the registered Certificate of Verification as specified in NA1.6.

Third Party Quality Control Programs, as specified in NA1.7, may also be used with alterations. When a Third Party Quality Control Program is used, the enforcement agency may approve compliance based on the Certificate of Installation prior to completion of the Certificate of Verification, where data checking has indicated that the unit complies, on the condition that a Certificate of Verification will be submitted if the required HERS verification procedures determine that re-sampling, full testing or corrective action is necessary, such work shall be completed.

NA1.9 *Acceptance Test Technicians Alternative Procedure*

When ~~This section describes the instance when~~ HERS field verification and diagnostic testing is required to be performed in accordance with NA1 and NA2 procedures, ~~may~~ compliance with HERS verification may alternatively be satisfied ~~with the~~by a certified Acceptance Test Technician (ATT) according to the requirements specified in this section.~~completion of the relevant test procedure by a certified Acceptance Test Technician (ATT) and the requirements of the Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider (ATTCP).~~

NA1.9.1 ~~Duct Leakage~~Field Verification by the Acceptance Test Technician

Under this alternative procedure, when the Certificate of Compliance indicates that HERS field verification and diagnostic testing ~~of duct leakage~~ is required as a condition for compliance with Title 24, Part 6, a certified ATT may perform the ~~duct leakage~~ verification to satisfy the condition of compliance, at the discretion of the enforcement agency. Systems verified under this procedure are not eligible for use of the sampling procedures described in NA1.6.

NA1.9.2 Certificate of Acceptance Documentation

The ATT shall perform the required field verification and diagnostic testing according to the procedures specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2, and verify that the work meets the requirements for compliance as shown on the Certificate of Compliance. The owner or installer shall complete a Certificate of Installation and sign the certificate to certify that the installation work meets the requirements for compliance credit.

The ATT ~~must~~ shall sign a copy of the Certificate of Acceptance and submit a copy to the approved ATTCP. The acceptance procedures for the Certificate of Acceptance shall conform to the requirements in NA1.5.

A signed copy of the Certificate of Acceptance shall be posted at the job site for review by the enforcement agency, in conjunction with requests for final inspection in accordance with NA1.3.4.

The Certificate of Acceptance that is posted in the field for review by the enforcement agency at final inspection shall conform to all applicable requirements of 10-103(a)4.

NA1.9.3 ~~Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider (ATTCP) Responsibilities~~

~~To be approved by the Energy Commission, an ATTCP must submit an additional application demonstrating all the following, in addition to all the requirements of Title 24, Part 1, Section 103.2(c):~~

~~a. The ATTCP shall be approved and in good standing with the Energy Commission in accordance with Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.2.~~

~~b. The ATTCP shall maintain, or cause to be maintained by suitable contractual requirements, an electronic database approved by the Energy Commission that can record and hold for no less than five years duct leakage acceptance test compliance documentation as performed by its own certified ATTs.~~

~~c. The ATTCP shall be capable of providing a print copy of each completed duct leakage acceptance test to the ATT that performed the test.~~

  ~~i. The copy shall bear the logo or other identifying insignia as approved by the Energy Commission on all pages of each duct leakage acceptance test compliance document.~~

  ~~ii. The ATTCP shall provide a means of electronic verification of any duct leakage acceptance test compliance document to the enforcement agency having jurisdiction in accordance with NA 1.3.4.~~

~~d. The ATTCP shall allow the Energy Commission access to its electronic system with the authority to visually inspect all records.~~

~~e. The ATTCP shall provide all summary reports regarding the duct leakage acceptance test compliance documents as requested by the Energy Commission.~~

~~f. The ATTCP shall provide all training, testing, and oversight necessary to certify ATTs to perform the acceptance test as required in NA7.5.3 and NA2 in conjunction with this alternative procedure.~~

  ~~i. All training and testing materials must comply with the applicable requirements in Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.2 and must be approved by the Energy Commission.~~

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Nonresidential Appendix NA2

Appendix NA2 – Nonresidential HERS Field Verification and Diagnostic Test Procedures

NA2.1 *Procedures for Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Air Distribution Systems*

NA2.1.1 Purpose and Scope

1. NA2.1 contains procedures for field verification and diagnostic testing for air leakage in single zone, constant volume, nonresidential air distribution systems serving zones with 5000 ft² of conditioned floor area or less as required by Standards section 141.0(b)2Dii~~140.4(l)1~~.
2. NA2.1 procedures are applicable to new space conditioning systems in newly constructed buildings and to new or altered space conditioning systems in existing buildings.
3. NA2.1 procedures shall be used by installers, HERS Raters, and others who are required to perform field verification of air distribution systems ~~as required by~~in accordance with NA1 procedures and Standards Section 120.4(g) and 141.0(b)2D~~140.4(l)1~~.
4. Table NA2.1-1 provides a summary of the duct leakage verification and diagnostic test protocols included in Section NA2.1, and the compliance criteria.

NA2.1.2 Instrumentation Specifications

The instrumentation for the air distribution diagnostic measurements shall conform to the following specifications:

NA2.1.2.1 Pressure Measurements

All pressure measurements shall be measured with measurement systems (i.e. sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy of plus or minus 0.2 Pa. All pressure measurements within the duct system shall be made with static pressure probes, Dwyer A303 or equivalent.

NA2.1.2.2 Duct Leakage Measurements

All measurements of duct leakage airflow shall have an accuracy of plus or minus 3 percent of measured airflow or better using digital gauges.

NA2.1.2.3 Calibration

All instrumentation used for duct leakage diagnostic measurements shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's calibration procedure to conform to the accuracy requirement specified in Section NA2.1.2.

NA2.1.3 Diagnostic Apparatus

NA2.1.3.1 Apparatus for Duct Pressurization and Leakage Flow Measurement

The apparatus for duct system pressurization and duct system leakage measurements shall consist of a duct system pressurization and leakage airflow measurement device meeting the specifications in Section NA2.1.2.

NA2.1.3.2 Apparatus for Smoke-Test of Accessible-Duct Sealing (Existing Duct Systems)

The apparatus for determining leakage in and verifying sealing of all accessible leaks in existing duct systems provide means for introducing controllable amounts of non-toxic visual or theatrical smoke into the duct pressurization apparatus for identifying leaks in accessible portions of the duct system. The means for generating smoke shall have sufficient capacity to ensure that any accessible leaks will emit visibly identifiable smoke.

NA2.1.4 Verification and Diagnostic Procedures

NA2.1.4.1 Nominal Air Handler ~~-~~Airflow

Nominal air handler airflow shall be calculated according to one of the following methods as applicable:

(a) For heating-only systems, the nominal air handler airflow shall be 21.7 CFM per kBtu/hr of rated heating output capacity.

(b) For split or packaged cooling systems with only one indoor unit, the nominal air handler airflow shall be 400 CFM per nominal ton of outdoor condensing unit cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer.

(c) For small duct high velocity systems, the nominal air handler airflow shall be 250 CFM per nominal ton of outdoor condensing unit cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer.

(d) For multiple-split systems that provide cooling, the nominal air handler airflow for each indoor unit shall be 350 CFM per nominal ton of indoor unit cooling capacity as specified by the manufacturer.

~~The nominal air handler airflow used to determine the target leakage rate for compliance for an air conditioner or heat pump shall be 400 cfm per rated ton of cooling capacity. Nominal air handler airflow for heating-only system furnaces shall be based on 21.7 cfm per kBtu/hr of rated heating output capacity.~~

NA2.1.4.2 Diagnostic Duct Leakage

Diagnostic duct leakage measurement shall be used by installers and HERS Raters to verify that duct leakage meets the compliance criteria for sealed duct systems for which field verification and diagnostic testing is required. Table NA2.1-1 summarizes the ~~leakage criteria and the~~ diagnostic test procedures that shall be used to demonstrate compliance.

Table NA2.1-1 – Duct Leakage Verification and Diagnostic Test Protocols~~ and Compliance Criteria~~

Case	User and Application	~~Leakage Compliance Criteria, (% of Nominal Air Handler Airflow)~~	Procedure(s)
Sealed and tested new duct systems	Installer Testing HERS Rater Testing	~~6%~~	NA2.1.4.2.1
Sealed and tested altered existing duct systems	Installer Testing HERS Rater Testing	~~15%~~	NA2.1.4.2.1
Sealed and tested altered existing duct systems	Installer Testing and Inspection HERS Rater Testing and Verification	~~Fails Leakage Test but All Accessible Ducts are Sealed~~ ~~Inspection and Smoke Test with 100% Verification~~	NA2.1.4.2.2 NA2.1.4.2.3 NA2.1.4.2.4

NA2.1.4.2.1 Diagnostic Duct Leakage from Fan Pressurization of Ducts

The objective of this procedure is for an installer to determine and a HERS Rater to verify the leakage of a new or altered duct system. The duct leakage shall be determined by pressurizing the entire duct system ducts to 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) with respect to outside. The following procedure shall be used for the fan pressurization tests:

(a) Verify that the air handler, supply and return plenums and all the connectors, transition pieces, duct boots, and registers are installed, and ensure the following locations have been sealed:

1. Connections to plenums and other connections to the air-handling unit.
2. Refrigerant line and other penetrations into the air-handling unit.
3. Air handler access door or panel (do not use permanent sealing material, metal tape is acceptable).

The entire duct system including the air- handler shall be included in the test.

(b) For newly installed or altered ducts, verify that cloth backed rubber adhesive duct tape has not been used.

(c) Temporarily seal all the supply registers and return grilles, except for one large centrally located return grille or the air handler cabinet access door or panel. Verify that all outside air dampers and/or economizers are sealed prior to pressurizing the system.

(d) Attach the fan flowmeter device to the duct system at the unsealed return grille or the air handler cabinet access door or panel.

(e) Install a static pressure probe at a supply register located close to the air handler, or at the supply plenum.

(f) Adjust the fan flowmeter to produce a positive 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) pressure at the supply register or the supply plenum with respect to the outside or with respect to the building space with the entry door open to the outside.

(g) Record the flow through the flowmeter, this is the duct leakage flow at 25 Pa (0.1 inches water).

(h) Divide the duct leakage flow by the nominal air handler airflow determined by the procedure in Section NA2.1.4.1 and convert to a percentage. If the duct leakage flow percentage is equal to or less than the target compliance criterion from Table NA2.1-1, the system passes.

NA2.1.4.2.2 Sealing of All Accessible Leaks

For altered existing duct systems that are unable to pass the leakage test in Section NA2.1.4.2.1, the objective of this test is to verify that all accessible leaks are sealed. The following procedure shall be used:

(a) Complete the leakage test specified in Section NA2.1.4.2.1.

(b) Seal all accessible ducts.

(c) After sealing is complete, again use the procedure in NA2.1.4.2.1 to measure the leakage after duct sealing.

(d) Complete the Smoke Test as specified in NA2.1.4.2.3.

(e) Complete the Visual Inspection as specified in NA2.1.4.2.4.

All duct systems that fail to pass the leakage test specified in Section NA2.1.4.2.1 shall be tested and inspected by a HERS Rater to verify that all accessible ducts have been sealed and damaged ducts have been replaced. Compliance with HERS verification requirements shall not utilize group sampling procedures when the installer used the Sealing of All Accessible Leaks procedure in Section NA2.1.4.2.2.

NA2.1.4.2.3 Smoke-Test of Accessible-Duct Sealing

For altered existing ducts that fail the leakage tests, the objective of the smoke test is to confirm that all accessible leaks have been sealed. The following procedure shall be used:

(a) Inject either theatrical or other non-toxic smoke into a fan pressurization device that is maintaining a duct pressure difference of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) relative to the duct surroundings, with all grilles and registers in the duct system sealed.

(b) Visually inspect all accessible portions of the duct system during smoke injection.

(c) The system shall pass the test if one of the following conditions is met:

  1. No visible smoke exits the accessible portions of the duct system.
  2. Smoke only emanates from the furnace cabinet which is gasketed and sealed by the manufacturer and no visible smoke exits from the accessible portions of the duct system.

NA2.1.4.2.4 Visual Inspection of Accessible Duct Sealing

For altered existing duct systems that are unable to pass the leakage test in Section NA2.1.4.2.1, the objective of this inspection in conjunction with the smoke test (Section NA2.1.4.2.3) is to confirm that all accessible leaks have been sealed. Visually inspect to verify that the following locations have been sealed:

(a) Connections to plenums and other connections to the air-handling unit.

(b) Refrigerant line and other penetrations into the air-handling unit.

(c) Air handler access door or panel (do not use permanent sealing material, metal tape is acceptable).

(d) Register boots sealed to surrounding material.

(e) Connections between lengths of duct, as well as connections to takeoffs, wyes, tees, and splitter boxes.

NA2.2*Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Mechanical Ventilation Systems*

NA2.2.1 *Purpose and Scope*

NA2.2. contains procedures for verification of heat recovery efficiency and fan efficacy, and for measuring the airflow rate ~~in~~ for mechanical ventilation systems.~~ to confirm compliance with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.2~~.

NA2.2. is applicable to mechanical ventilation systems in high-rise residential dwelling units.

NA2.2. provides required procedures for installers, HERS raters and others who are required to perform field verification of mechanical ventilation systems for compliance with Part 6.

Table NA2.2--1 – Summary of Verification and Diagnostic procedures

Diagnostic	Description	Procedure
Dwelling-Unit Mechanical Ventilation Airflow~~—~~ ~~Continuous Operation~~	~~Verify the~~Verification of the dwelling unit ventilation system ~~complies with the~~ airflow rate. Continuous Operation~~ required by ASHRAE Standard 62.2~~.	NA2.2.4.1~~ Continuous Operation~~
Dwelling-Unit Mechanical Ventilation Airflow~~—~~ ~~Intermittent Operation~~	~~Verify~~ Verification of the dwelling unit ventilation system ~~complies with the~~ airflow rate. Intermittent Operation~~ required by ASHRAE Standard 62.2~~.	NA2.2.4.2.~~Intermittent Operation~~
Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust Verification	Verification of vented range hood airflow rate or capture efficiency	NA2.2.4.1.4
Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) or Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) Rated Performance Verification	Verification of the HRV/ERV fan efficacy (W/cfm) or heat recovery efficiency.	NA2.2.4.1.5

NA2.2.2 Instrumentation Specifications

The instrumentation for the air distribution diagnostic measurements shall conform to the following specifications:

NA2.2.2.1 Pressure Measurements

All pressure measurements shall be measured with measurement systems (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy equal to or better than ± 1% of pressure reading or ± 0.2

Pa (0.0008 inches water) (whichever is greater). All pressure measurements within the duct system shall be made with static pressure probes such as Dwyer A303 or equivalent.

NA2.2.2.2 Airflow Rate Measurements

All measurements of ventilation fan airflow rate shall be made with an airflow rate measurement apparatus (i.e., sensor plus data acquisition system) having an accuracy equal to or better than ± 10% of reading. The apparatus shall have an accuracy specification that is applicable to the airflow rates that must be verified utilizing the procedures in Section NA2.2.4.

NA2.2.2.3 Calibration

All instrumentation used for mechanical ventilation system airflow rate diagnostic measurements shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's calibration procedure to ensure the airflow measurement apparatus conforms to the accuracy requirement specified in Section NA2.2.2.2.

NA2.2.3 Diagnostic Apparatus for Measurement of Ventilation System Airflow

Ventilation system airflow rate shall be measured using one of the apparatuses listed in Section NA2.2.3. The apparatus shall produce airflow rate measurements that conform to the accuracy requirements specified in Section NA2.2.2 for measurements of high-rise residential mechanical ventilation system airflow at system inlet or outlet terminals, grilles or registers for single or multiple branch ventilation duct systems.

The airflow rate measurement apparatus manufacturers shall publish in their product documentation, specifications for how their airflow measurement apparatuses are to be used for accurately measuring residential mechanical ventilation system airflow at system inlet or outlet terminals, grilles or registers of single or multiple branch ventilation systems.

The airflow measurement apparatus manufacturers shall certify to the Energy Commission that use of the apparatus in accordance with the specifications given in the manufacturer's product documentation will produce measurement results that are within the accuracy required by Section NA2.2.2.2.

For the airflow measurement apparatuses that are certified to the Commission as meeting the accuracy required by Section NA2.2.2.2, the following information shall be posted on the Energy Commission website, making the information available to all people involved in the airflow verification compliance process:

(a) The product manufacturers' model numbers for the airflow measurement apparatuses.

(b) The product manufacturers' product documentation that gives the specifications for use of the airflow measurement apparatuses to accurately measure high-rise residential mechanical ventilation system airflow at system inlet or outlet terminals, grilles or registers of single or multiple branch ventilation systems.

A manufacturer's certification to the Commission of the accuracy of the airflow measurement apparatus, and submittal to the Commission of the product documentation that specifies the proper use of the airflow measurement apparatus to produce accurate airflow rate measurements shall be prerequisites for allowing the manufacturer's airflow measurement apparatus to be used for conducting the system airflow verification procedures in Section NA2.2 for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

NA2.2.3.1 High-Rise Residential Mechanical Exhaust Airflow Measurement Device

A flowmeter designed for measurement of high-rise residential exhaust airflows that meets the applicable instrument accuracy specifications in NA2.2.2.2 may be used to measure the mechanical exhaust ventilation airflow.

NA2.2.3.2 Powered Flow Capture Hood Airflow Measurement Device

A powered and pressure balanced flow capture hood (subsequently referred to as a Powered Flow Hood[1]) that has the capability to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (0.0008 inches water) and meets the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section NA2.2.2.2 may be used to verify the ventilation airflow rate if the powered flow hood has a flow capture area at least as large as the ventilation system inlet or outlet terminal, register, or grille in all dimensions. The fan adjustment needed to balance the flow capture static pressure difference between the room and the flow capture hood enclosure to 0.0 ± 0.2 Pa (0.0008 inches water) shall be provided by either an automatic control or a manual control operated in accordance with the apparatus manufacturer's instructions specified in the manufacturer's product documentation.

NA2.2.3.3 Traditional Flow Capture Hood

A traditional flow capture hood[2] meeting the applicable instrumentation specifications in Section NA2.2.2.2 may be used to verify the ventilation system airflow rate if the non-powered flow hood has a capture area at least as large as the ventilation system inlet or outlet terminal, register or grille in all dimensions.

NA2.2.4 Procedures

This section describes the procedures used to verify Mechanical ventilation system airflow.

NA2.2.4.1 Mechanical Ventilation Airflow Rate Measurement - Continuous Operation

If multiple fans are specified to operate simultaneously to provide the total required ventilation airflow, the measurements shall be made with all applicable fans operating simultaneously.

NA2.2.4.1.1 Supply and Exhaust Ventilation Systems

a) A flow measuring device that meets the applicable instrumentation requirements specified in Section NA2.2.3.2, and NA2.2.3.3 shall be used to measure the ventilation airflow(s).

---

[1] Also known as "active" flow hood, or "fan assisted" flow hood.

[2] Also known as “non-powered flow hood, "standard" flow hood, "commercially available" flow hood, or "passive" flow hood.

b) Measure and record the ventilation airflow(s).

c) If the measured total airflow is greater than or equal to the ventilation airflow rate required by the Standards or the Certificate of Compliance, the mechanical ventilation system complies. Otherwise the mechanical ventilation system does not comply, and corrective action shall be taken.

NA2.2.4.1.2 Balanced Ventilation Systems

a) A flow measuring device that meets the applicable instrumentation requirements given in Section NA2.2.3.2 and NA2.2.3.3 shall be used to measure the ventilation airflows.

b) Confirm that both the supply side and the exhaust side of the balanced system operate simultaneously in response to a shared system control.

c) Measure the airflow rate for the exhaust side of the system.

d) Measure the airflow rate for the supply side of the system.

e) Calculate the percent difference between the exhaust and supply airflow rates.

f) Calculate the average of the exhaust and the supply airflow rates.

g) If the exhaust and supply airflow rates are within 20% of each other, and the average of the exhaust and supply airflow rates is greater than or equal to the airflow rate required by the Standards or the Certificate of Compliance, the balanced ventilation system complies. Otherwise, the system does not comply, and corrective action shall be taken.

h) If the balanced system is an HRV or ERV and compliance with a recovery efficiency or fan efficacy specification is required, then also perform the verification specified in NA2.2.4.1.5.

NA2.2.4.1.3 Mechanical Ventilation Airflow Rate Measurement - Intermittent Operation

The Executive Director may approve intermittent mechanical ventilation systems, devices, or controls for use for compliance with field verification and diagnostic testing requirements for mechanical ventilation airflow, subject to a manufacturer providing sufficient evidence to the Executive Director that the installed mechanical ventilation systems, devices, or controls will provide at least the minimum ventilation airflow required by the Standards, and subject to consideration of the manufacturer's proposed field verification and diagnostic test protocol for the ventilation system(s). Ventilation airflow of systems with multiple operating modes shall be tested in all modes designed to comply with the required ventilation airflows.

Approved systems, devices, or controls, and field verification and diagnostic test protocols for intermittent mechanical ventilation systems shall be listed in directories published by the Energy Commission.

NA2.2.4.1.4 Kitchen Local Mechanical Exhaust - Vented Range Hood Verification

The verification shall utilize certified performance rating data from the Home Ventilating Institute (HVI) Certified Home Ventilating Products Directory at https://hvi.org/proddirectory/index.com, ~~or~~ the Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers (AHAM) Certified Products Directory at https://www.aham.org/AHAM/What_We_Do/Kitchen_Range_Hood_Certification, or another directory of certified product performance ratings approved by the Energy Commission for determining compliance. The verification procedure shall consist of visual inspection of the installed kitchen range hood to verify and record the following information:

a) The manufacturer name and model number.

b) The model is listed in the HVI or AHAM or other approved ~~D~~directory.

c) The rated airflow value or rated capture efficiency value listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other approved directory.

d) The sound rating value listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other approved directory.

e) If the value for the rated airflow or rated capture efficiency given in the directory is greater than or equal to the airflow or capture efficiency requirements specified in the Standards, and if the value for the sone rating given in the directory is less than or equal to the sone rating requirements specified in the Standards, then the kitchen range hood complies.~~, o~~Otherwise, the kitchen range hood does not comply. If the kitchen range hood is not listed in the HVI, AHAM, or other CEC-approved directory, then the system does not comply.

NA2.2.4.1.5 Heat Recovery Ventilation (HRV) or Energy Recovery Ventilation (ERV) Rated Performance Verification

The verification shall utilize certified performance rating data from the Home Ventilating Institute (HVI) Certified Home Ventilating Products Directory at https://hvi.org/proddirectory/index.com, or another directory of certified product performance ratings approved by the Energy Commission for determining compliance. The verification procedure shall consist of visual inspection of the installed system to verify and record the following information:

1. Record the manufacturer make and model from the installed system nameplate.

2. Verify the model is listed in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory.

3. If compliance with a fan efficacy performance rating (w/cfm) is required, then determine~~look up~~ and record the fan efficacy rating for the installed model using the model details in the energy ratings in the in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory in accordance with steps a, b, and c below.

a. Record the required ventilation airflow (cfm) for the installed HRV/ERV as specified on the certificate of compliance.

b. From the energy ratings in the HVI or other CEC approved directory, determine, and record the rated Power Consumed (Watts) at 32 degrees F, at the closest Net Airflow (cfm) listed in the directory that is greater than or equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Alternatively, linear interpolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees F shall be allowed if the interpolated value is calculated based on a Net Airflow (cfm) that is equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Interpolation shall be in accordance with equation NA2.2-1. Extrapolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees F shall not be allowed.

Equation NA2.2-1 $pc = pc1 + [(na - na1) / (na2 - na1)] X (pc2 - pc1)$

where:

na is the known value for Net Airflow equal to the ventilation airflow required on the certificate of compliance,

pc is the unknown value for Power Consumed (Watts) at 32 degrees F.

na1 and pc1 are the closest rated values at 32F for Net Airflow (cfm) and Power Consumed (Watts) respectively that are below the known na value.

na2 and pc2 are the closest rated values at 32F for Net Airflow (cfm) and Power Consumed (Watts) respectively that are above the known na value.

c. Divide the value for Power Consumed (Watts) recorded in step b, by the Net Airflow (cfm) used in step b to determine the Power Consumed.

4. If compliance with a sensible recovery efficiency (SRE) performance rating (%) is required, then ~~look up~~determine and record the ~~sensible recovery efficiency~~SRE rating for the installed model using the model details in the energy ratings in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory in accordance with steps a, and b below.

a. Record the required ventilation airflow (cfm) for the installed HRV/ERV as specified on the certificate of compliance.

b. From the energy ratings in the HVI or other CEC approved directory, determine, and record the rated SRE (%) at 32 degrees F, at the closest Net Airflow (cfm) listed in the directory that is greater than or equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Alternatively, linear interpolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees F shall be allowed if the interpolated value is calculated based on a Net Airflow (cfm) that is equal to the ventilation airflow (cfm) required on the certificate of compliance. Interpolation shall be in accordance with equation NA2.2-2. Extrapolation of the directory ratings at 32 degrees F shall not be allowed.

Equation NA2.2-2 $sre = sre1 + [(na - na1) / (na2 - na1)] X (sre2 - sre1)$

where:

na is the known value for Net Airflow equal to the ventilation airflow required on the certificate of compliance,

sre is the unknown value for SRE at 32 degrees F.

na1 and sre1 are the closest rated values at 32F for Net Airflow (cfm) and SRE respectively that are below the known na value.

na2 and sre2 are the closest rated values at 32F for Net Airflow (cfm) and SRE respectively that are above the known na value.

5. Determining compliance.

a. If the value determined for SRE by one or both of the alternatives in step 4 ~~given in the directory for sensible recovery efficiency~~ for the installed system is greater than or equal to the ~~sensible recovery efficiency~~SRE required for compliance, then the system complies with the sensible recovery efficiency rating requirement. Otherwise the system does not comply.

b. If the value determined for fan efficacy (W/cfm) by one or both of the alternatives in step 3 ~~given in the directory for fan efficacy~~ for the installed system is less than or equal to the fan efficacy required for compliance, then the system complies with the fan efficacy rating requirement. Otherwise, the system does not comply.

c. If compliance with both fan efficacy and sensible recovery efficiency ratings are required, then both ratings shall comply at the same Net Airflow (cfm), otherwise the system does not comply.

d. If the system is not listed in the HVI or other CEC-approved directory, then the system does not comply.

NA2.3 *Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Multifamily Dwelling Unit Enclosures*

NA2.3.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this test procedure is to measure the air leakage rate through a dwelling unit enclosure.

The measurement procedure shall be based on the specifications of Residential Energy Services Network's (RESNET) Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building, Dwelling Unit, and Sleeping Unit Enclosures~~,~~; Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems~~,~~; and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems (ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380-~~2016~~2019) (RESNET 380) as further specified in Subsections NA2.3.2, NA2.3.3, NA2.3.4 below.

This enclosure leakage procedure is applicable to Multifamily dwelling unit enclosures.

NA2.3.2 Instrument Specifications

The instrumentation for the enclosure leakage measurements shall conform to the specifications in RESNET 380 Section ~~3.1~~4.1.

NA2.3.3 Enclosure Leakage Measurement Procedures

The enclosure leakage measurement procedure shall conform to the following specifications:

1) The procedure for preparation of the building or dwelling unit for testing shall conform to the applicable requirements in RESNET 380 Section ~~3.2~~4.2.

   ~~When compliance with Standards Section 120.1(b)2Aivb2 maximum dwelling unit enclosure leakage rate is required to be verified, the test shall be conducted with the~~

~~dwelling unit as if it were exposed to the outdoor air on all sides, top and bottom by opening doors and windows of adjacent dwelling units.~~

2) The procedure for installation of the test apparatus, and preparations for measurement shall conform to the applicable requirements in RESNET 380 Section ~~3.3~~4.3.

   If compliance requires the results of the test ~~will~~ to be reported in cubic feet per minute per ft^2 of dwelling unit enclosure surface area at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) ~~(CFM50) per ft^2 of dwelling unit enclosure area~~(CFM50/ft^2 of enclosure), the dwelling ~~unit's~~ unit enclosure interior surface area in ft^2 (compartmentalization boundary area) shall be recorded.

   Note: the compartmentalization boundary area is the~~(i.e. the~~ sum of the interior surface areas of the dwelling unit enclosure walls between dwelling units, exterior walls, ceiling, and floor~~)~~.

3) The procedure for the conduct of the enclosure leakage test shall conform to the One-Point Airtightness Test specified in RESNET 380 Section ~~3.4.1~~4.4.1.

NA2.3.4 Determination of Test Results

The results of the test shall be determined as follows:

1) The leakage airflow in CFM50 determined by the One-Point Airtightness Test specified in RESNET 380 Section ~~3.4.1~~4.4.1 shall be adjusted using RESNET 380 Section ~~3.5.1~~4.5.1, equation (5a).
2) If ~~required for~~ compliance requires the results of the test to be reported in air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) (ACH50), the leakage results determined by RESNET 380 Section ~~3.5.1~~4.5.1, equation (5a) shall be converted to ~~air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) (ACH50)~~ACH50 using RESNET 380 Section ~~3.5.2~~4.5.2, equation (7a).
3) If ~~required for~~ compliance requires the results of the test to be reported in CFM50/ft2 of enclosure, the leakage results determined by RESNET 380 Section ~~3.5.1~~4.5.1, equation (5a) shall be converted to CFM50/ft^2 of ~~dwelling unit~~ enclosure using RESNET 380 Section 4.5.2, equation 10.~~area by dividing CFM50 by the dwelling unit's interior surface area in ft^2 (i.e. the sum of the area of walls between dwelling units, exterior walls, ceiling, and floor).~~

NA2.3.5 Determining Compliance

If the applicable value(s) for CFM50, ACH50, or CFM50/ft^{2}of dwelling unit enclosure area determined in Section NA2.3.4 are less than or equal to the enclosure leakage compliance criterion specified by the Standards or the Certificate of Compliance, the enclosure complies. Otherwise the enclosure does not comply.

~~Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Whole Building Air Leakage~~

~~Purpose and Scope~~

~~The purpose of this test procedure is to measure the air leakage rate through a building envelope.~~

~~This enclosure leakage procedure is applicable to nonresidential buildings.~~

~~Buildings that have less than 10,000 ft^2 of conditioned floor area may perform the whole-building air leakage test in accordance with Residential Energy Services Network (RESNET)/ANSI/ICC3 380-2019 Guidelines and RA3.8, rather than those in NA2.4.2-2.4.7.~~

~~Buildings that have more than 50,000 ft^2 of conditioned floor area, a sectional test method of co-pressurizing representative test floors and taking data from the specific floors is permitted when following the procedures in Sections NA2.4.2-2.4.7. Representative test floors must meet the following conditions as adopted from ASHRAE 90.1-2019 Exceptions to 5.4.3.1.1:~~

~~The entire floor area of all stories that have any spaces directly under a roof.~~

~~The entire floor area of all stories that have a building entrance or loading dock.~~

~~Representative above-grade wall sections of the building totaling at least 25% of the wall area enclosing the remaining conditioned space. Floor areas in parts a) and b) shall not be included in the 25%.~~

~~When interpreting the data and determining the final air leakage rate, the measured air leakage is area-weighted by the surface areas of the building envelope.~~

~~The measurement procedure shall be based on the specifications of ASTM E3158 by blower door fan assembly (architectural only) and multi-point regression testing as further specified in Sections NA2.4.2, NA2.4.3, NA2.4.4. NA2.4.5, NA2.4.6, NA2.4.7 below.~~

~~Instrument Specifications~~

~~The instrumentation for the enclosure leakage measurements shall conform to the specifications in ASTM E3158.~~

~~Pre-Test Inspection (to occur the day before testing day)~~

~~Visually review the building for completion of air barrier components.~~

~~Meet with electrical and mechanical (or controls) subcontractors to review electrical needs for testing equipment and shutdown/sealing plan for mechanical systems and ductwork.~~

~~Contractor to provide dedicated electrical service for running of fans during the air leakage testing (minimum of 1 non-GFCI circuit 120V/20A per fan required).~~

~~Review weather forecasts and verify appropriate test conditions.~~

~~**NA2.4.3 Pre-Test Set Up (To be performed by General Contractor)**~~

~~Seal all intentional penetrations where they penetrate the air barrier (i.e. louvers, vents, etc.).~~

~~Fill plumbing traps with water. Toilets, sinks, floor drains, waterless urinals must be primed. Airtight caps on drains are acceptable.~~

~~Shut off the HVAC system – or leave in “pilot” mode (to avoid introducing air movement that is not included in the calculations). Any automated pressure relief dampers must either be disabled, sealed or set to a pressure well above 75 Pa.~~

~~Disable combustion equipment or leave in “pilot” position.~~

~~Seal all intentional openings in building envelope so that they are air-tight. Acceptable sealing materials include but are not limited to carpet protection plastic, adhesive grill mask and tape and plastic (4 mil poly sheeting or thicker). Intentional openings include, but are not limited to, the following:~~

~~Supply air intakes~~

~~Make-up air and other intakes/louvers~~

~~Exhaust ducts/vents/louvers~~

~~Plumbing exhausts~~

~~Pressure relief dampers or louvers~~

~~Fume hoods~~

~~Other exhaust vents (kitchen, bathroom, dryer, etc.)~~

~~Any other locations where air leakage can occur within the mechanical system during inactive periods~~

~~Any other intentional opening in the building envelope other than doors and operable windows~~

~~Close and lock exterior windows and doors. Close any vents within window frames.~~

~~Prop interior doors open to create a single uniform zone.~~

~~Where drop ceilings are installed in a location that constitutes a barrier to air flow between the testing equipment and the plane of air tightness of the space being tested, remove ceiling tiles at a rate of one per 500 ft2 to prevent movement of tiles during test and to ensure a uniform pressure within plenum space. Additional tiles can be removed to ensure a uniform pressure distribution in the plenum space.~~

~~Install exterior electrical box caps (if applicable).~~

~~NA2.4.4 Run Preliminary Test~~

~~Pressurize the building to 75 Pa to approximate if building is expected to pass test and to confirm that pre-test set up is complete and that temporary sealing stays in place while under pressure.~~

~~NA2.4.5 Enclosure Measurement Procedures~~

~~Pressurization Test~~

~~Reference ASTM E3158-18 for Whole Building Air Leakage Testing.~~

~~Record interior and exterior weather conditions.~~

~~Record average wind speeds.~~

~~Record interior and exterior temperatures before the testing begins.~~

~~Record site elevation in feet above sea level.~~

~~Measure bias pressures with fans off and covered.~~

~~Perform a multi-point pressurization test from at least +25 to +50 Pa (leakage is reported at 75 Pa, as attained or extrapolated).~~

~~Record a minimum of 5 points between minimum and maximum induced pressures.~~

~~Measure bias pressures at end of multi-point test with fans off and covered.~~

~~Record interior and exterior temperatures.~~

~~If the pressure exponent n is less than 0.45 or greater than 1.0 per Section 9.5.1 of ASTM E3158-18, then the pressurization test is invalid and shall be repeated.~~

~~Depressurization Test~~

~~Reverse direction of fans.~~

~~Measure bias pressures with fans off and covered.~~

~~Perform a multi-point depressurization test from at least -25 to -50 Pa (optional).~~

~~Record a minimum of 5 points between minimum and maximum induced pressures.~~

~~Measure bias pressures at end of multi-point test with fans off and covered.~~

~~Record interior and exterior temperatures after the testing is complete.~~

~~If the pressure exponent n is less than 0.45 or greater than 1.0 per Section 9.5.1 of ASTM 3158-18, then the depressurization test is invalid and shall be repeated.~~

~~NA2.4.6 Determination of Test Results~~

~~Calculate the building envelope air leakage in accordance with guidelines in ASTM E3158-18 multi-point regression tests or the relevant building envelope area when testing in sections.~~

~~If the building envelope air leakage rate exceeds 0.4 cfm/ft^2 but is less than 0.6 cfm/ft^2, a visual inspection of the air barrier shall be conducted in accordance with NA2.4.7. Any leaks observed should be sealed where such sealing can be made without destruction of existing building components. An additional report identifying the corrective actions taken to seal air leaks should be submitted to the building owner and code official, and any further requirement to meet the air leakage rate will be waived.~~

~~If the building envelope air leakage rate exceeds 0.6 cfm/ft^2, a visual inspection of the air barrier shall be conducted in accordance with NA 2.4.7, and any leaks noted should be repaired. The building will then be re-tested until either the building envelope air leakage rate less than 0.4 cfm/ft^2, or the building envelope air leakage rate is in the range of 0.4 cfm/ft^2 but is less than 0.6 cfm/ft^2 and a visual inspection and repair program is executed.~~

~~Exception to NA2.4.6-3.~~ ~~Alterations where less than 100% of the wall area is being altered or additions that are an extension of the existing air barrier, if the building is tested in accordance with the procedures for whole building air leakage in NA2.4 and the tested leakage rate exceeds 0.6 cfm/ft^2 of building shell area at 75 pa, a Visual Inspection and Diagnostic Evaluation shall been completed in accordance with NA2.4.7 and all observed leaks shall be sealed where such sealing can be made without destruction of existing building components. An additional report identifying the corrective actions taken to seal air leaks should be submitted to the building owner and code official, and any further requirement to meet the air leakage rate will be waived.~~

~~NA2.4.7 Visual Inspection and Diagnostic Evaluation of Air Leakage After Test Failure~~

~~Visual Inspection~~

~~Ensure that all temporary seals and covers for intentional openings such as at louvers, exhaust/intake vents, fireplaces, and rooftop units are properly sealed and not damaged or loosened during the construction.~~

~~Ensure that all plumbing traps are filled with water.~~

~~Ensure that all operable windows, trickle-vents, and doors are properly shut and locked.~~

~~Ensure that all mechanical systems are shut-off and any mechanical dampers set to the closed position.~~

~~Diagnostic Evaluation~~

~~Identify locations with air leakage using infrared thermography or smoke pens in accordance with ASTM E1186-17, while the building is maintained at a minimum 25 Pa pressure (during pressurization) or –25 Pa (during depressurization). The following locations shall be evaluated:~~

~~The perimeter of windows and doors.~~

~~Around operable window hardware and door hardware~~

~~Penetrations through the roof, wall, and floor assemblies along the plane of the intended air-barrier.~~

~~Electrical outlets located on exterior-facing walls.~~

~~Lighting and other electrical penetrations through the roof level ceiling.~~

~~Above- and below-grade vestibules.~~

~~Stairs leading to unconditioned space.~~

~~NA2.4.8 Reporting~~

~~Generate report in accordance with ASTM E3158 reporting instructions.~~

~~The report shall include information on the tested building envelope area, conditioned floor area, conditioned air-by-volume, stories above grade, and air leakage rates.~~

~~Results shall be reported at the upper 95 percent confidence interval.~~

~~Verification of Continuous Air Barrier~~

~~An independent third-party verification shall be conducted in accordance with the following requirements:~~

~~A design review shall be conducted to verify and document compliance with the requirements Section 140.3(a)9, specifically:~~

~~All air barrier components are identified on construction documents~~

~~All joints, interconnections, and penetrations of the continuous air barrier components are identified on construction documents~~

~~The continuous air barrier extends on all surfaces of the building envelope (walls, roof, and lowest floor)~~

~~The continuous air barrier is designed to resist positive and negative pressures from wind, stack effect, and mechanical ventilation.~~

~~The compliance documents indicate the intent to verify the continuous air barrier by way of on-site visual inspection.~~

~~Inspection shall occur during construction when the continuous air barrier is accessible for a visual inspection. The entire continuous air barrier shall be inspected. The third-party entity conducting the verification shall coordinate with the construction team to schedule site visits such that the entire continuous air barrier is verified.~~

~~Inspection of the continuous air barrier materials and assemblies shall verify the following are installed correctly:~~

~~Transitions to adjacent air barrier systems – including but not limited to roof parapet transitions, glazed framing systems to adjacent framed wall assemblies transitions, plaza waterproofing to podium transitions, vertical wall to soffit transitions~~

~~Detailing of penetrations through air barrier systems.~~

~~Building assemblies used as ducts or plenums~~

~~Contractor internal quality control/quality assurance~~

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Nonresidential Appendix NA3

Appendix NA3 – Fan Motor Efficiencies

Table NA3-~~1~~1 – Fan Motor Efficiencies (< 1 HP)

Nameplate or Brake Horsepower	Standard Fan Motor Efficiency	NEMA* High Efficiency	Premium Efficiency
1/20	40%	…	…
1/12	49%	…	…
1/8	55%	…	…
1/6	60%	…	…
1/4	64%	…	…
1/3	66%	…	…
1/2	70%	76.0%	80.0%
3/4	72%	77.0%	84.0%

NOTE: For default drive efficiencies, see Nonresidential ACM Reference Manual

*NEMA - Proposed standard using test procedures.

Minimum NEMA efficiency as specified by test IEEE 112b Rating Method.

Table NA3~~-2~~-2 – Fan Motor Efficiencies (1 HP and over)

Open Motors Enclosed Motors

	~~Open Motors~~				~~Enclosed Motors~~			
Motor Horsepower	2 pole 3600 rpm	4 pole 1800 rpm	6 pole 1200 rpm	8 pole 900 rpm	2 pole 3600 rpm	4 pole 1800 rpm	6 pole 1200 rpm	8 pole 900 rpm
1	77.0	85.5	82.5	74.0	77.0	85.5	82.5	74.0
1.5	84.0	86.5	86.5	75.5	84.0	86.5	87.5	77.0
2	85.5	86.5	87.5	85.5	85.5	86.5	88.5	82.5
3	85.5	89.5	88.5	86.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	84.0
5	86.5	89.5	89.5	87.5	88.5	89.5	89.5	85.5
7.5	88.5	91.0	90.2	88.5	89.5	91.7	91.0	85.5
10	89.5	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2	91.7	91.0	88.5
15	90.2	93.0	91.7	89.5	91.0	92.4	91.7	88.5
20	91.0	93.0	92.4	90.2	91.0	93.0	91.7	89.5
25	91.7	93.6	93.0	90.2	91.7	93.6	93.0	89.5
30	91.7	94.1	93.6	91.0	91.7	93.6	93.0	91.0
40	92.4	94.1	94.1	91.0	92.4	94.1	94.1	91.0
50	93.0	94.5	94.1	91.7	93.0	94.5	94.1	91.7
60	93.6	95.0	94.5	92.4	93.6	95.0	94.5	91.7
75	93.6	95.0	94.5	93.6	93.6	95.4	94.5	93.0
100	93.6	95.4	95.0	93.6	94.1	95.4	95.0	93.0
125	94.1	95.4	95.0	93.6	95.0	95.4	95.0	93.6
150	94.1	95.8	95.4	93.6	95.0	95.8	95.8	93.6
200	95.0	95.8	95.4	93.6	95.4	96.2	95.8	94.1
250	95.0	95.8	95.4	94.5	95.8	96.2	95.8	94.5
300	95.4	95.8	95.4		95.8	96.2	95.8	
350	95.4	95.8	95.4		95.8	96.2	95.8	—
400	95.8	95.8	95.8		95.8	96.2	95.8	
450	95.8	96.2	96.2		95.8	96.2	95.8	
500	95.8	96.2	96.2		95.8	96.2	95.8	

Nonresidential Appendix NA4

Appendix NA4 – Compliance Procedures for Relocatable Public School Buildings

NA4.1*Purpose and Scope*

This document describes the compliance procedures that shall be followed when the whole building performance approach is used for relocatable public school buildings. Relocatable public school buildings are constructed (manufactured) at a central location and could be shipped and installed in any California climate zone. Furthermore, once they arrive at the school site, they could be positioned so that the windows face in any direction. The portable nature of relocatable classrooms requires that a special procedure be followed for showing compliance when the whole building performance method is used. Compliance documentation for relocatable public school buildings will be reviewed by the Division of the State Architect (DSA).

NA4.2*The Plan Check Process*

The Division of the State Architect is the enforcement agency for relocatable public school buildings. Since relocatables are manufactured in batches, like cars or other manufactured products, the plan check and approval process occurs in two phases. The first phase is when the relocatable manufacturer completes design of a model or modifies a model. At this point, complete plans and specifications are submitted to the DSA; DSA reviews the plans for compliance with the energy standards and other California Building Code (CBC) requirements; and a “pre-check” (PC) design approval is granted. Once the PC design is approved, a school district or the manufacturer may file an “over-the-counter” application with DSA to construct one or more relocatables. The over-the-counter application is intended to be reviewed quickly, since the PC design has already been pre-checked. The over-the-counter application is the building permit application for construction and installation of a relocatable at a specific site, and includes the approved PC design drawings as well as site development plans for the proposed site where the relocatable will be installed. An over-the-counter application also is required for the construction of a stockpile of one or more relocatables based on the approved PC design drawings. Stockpiled relocatables are stored typically at the manufacturer’s yard until the actual school site is determined where the relocatable will be installed. Another over-the-counter application is required to install a previously stockpiled relocatable at which time site development plans for the proposed site are checked.

The effective date for all buildings subject to the energy standards is the date of permit application. If a building permit application is submitted on or after the effective date, then the new energy standards apply. For relocatable classrooms, the date of the permit application is the date of the over-the-counter application, not the date of the application for PC design approval. The PC design is only valid until the code changes.

NA4.3 *The Compliance Process*

Like other nonresidential buildings, the standard design for relocatable public school buildings is defined by the prescriptive requirements. In the case of relocatables, there are two choices of prescriptive criteria:

(a) Table 140.3-D in the Standards may be used for relocatable school buildings that can be installed in any climate zone in the state. In this case, the compliance is demonstrated in climates 14, 15, and 16 and this is accepted as evidence that the classroom will comply in all climate zones. These relocatables will have a permanent label that allows it to be used anywhere in the state as specified in Section 140.3(a)8 of the Standards.

(b) Table 140.3-B in the Standards may be used for relocatable school buildings that are to be installed in only specific climate zones. In this case, compliance is demonstrated in each climate zone for which the relocatable has been designed to comply. These relocatables will have a permanent label that identifies in which climate zones it may be installed as specified in Section 140.3(a)8 in the Standards. It is not lawful to install the relocatable in other climate zones.

The building envelope of the standard design has the same geometry as the proposed design, including window area and position of windows on the exterior walls, and meets the prescriptive requirements specified in Section 140.3. Lighting power for the standard design meets the prescriptive requirements specified in Section 140.6. The HVAC system for the standard design meets the prescriptive requirements specified in Section 140.4. The system typically installed in relocatables is a single-zone packaged heat pump or furnace. Most relocatable school buildings do not have water heating systems, so this component is neutral in the analysis. Other modeling assumptions such as equipment loads are the same for both the proposed design and the standard design and are specified in the Nonresidential ACM Reference Manual.

Manufacturers shall certify compliance with the standards and all compliance documentation shall be provided. If the manufacturer chooses to comply using Table 140.3-B in the Standards for compliance in only specific climate zones, then the manufacturers shall indicate the climates zones for which the classroom will be allowed to be located as specified in Section 140.3(a)8 of the Standards.

Since relocatable public school buildings could be positioned in any orientation, it is necessary to perform compliance calculations for multiple orientations. Each model with the same proposed design energy features shall be rotated through 8 different orientations either in climate zones 14, 15 and 16 for relocatables showing statewide compliance or in the specific climate zones that the manufacturer proposes for the relocatable to be allowed to be installed, i.e., the building with the same proposed design energy features is rotated in 45 degree increments and shall comply in each case. Approved compliance programs shall automate the rotation of the building and reporting of the compliance results to insure it is done correctly and uniformly and to avoid unnecessary documentation.

NA4.4*Documentation*

The program shall present the results of the compliance calculations in a format similar to Table NA4-4. For each of the cases (8orientations times number of climates), the Time Dependent Valuation (TDV) energy for the *Standard Design* and the *Proposed Design* are shown (the energy features of the *Proposed Design* shall be the same for all orientations). The final column shows the compliance margin, which is the difference between the TDV energy for the *Proposed Design* and the *Standard Design*. Approved compliance programs shall scan the data presented in the Table NA4-4 format and prominently highlight the case that has the smallest compliance margin. Complete compliance documentation shall be submitted for the building and energy features that achieve compliance in all of the climate zones and orientations as represented by the case with the smallest margin. DSA may require that compliance documentation for other cases also be submitted; showing that the *Proposed Design* building and energy features are identical to the case submitted, in each orientation and climate zone. Table NA4-4 shows rows for climate zones 14, 15, and 16, which are the ones used when the criteria of Table 140.3-D in the Standards is used to show compliance throughout the state. If the criteria of Table 140.3-B in the Standards is used, then rows shall be added to the table for each climate zone for which the manufacturer wants the relocatable to be allowed to be installed.

Table NA4-1 – Summary of Compliance Calculations Needed for Relocatable Classrooms

			TDV Energy	
Climate Zone	Azimuth	Proposed Design	Standard Design	Compliance Margin
14	30			
	75			
	120			
	165			
	210			
	255			
	300			
	345			
15	30			
	75			
	120			
	165			
	210			
	255			
	300			
	345			
16	30			
	75			
	120			
	165			
	210			
	255			
	300			
	345			

NA4.5 *Optional Features*

Relocatable classrooms may come with a variety of optional features, like cars. A school district can buy the “basic model” or it can pay for options. Many of the optional features do not affect energy efficiency and are not significant from the perspective of energy code compliance. Examples include floor finishes (various grades of carpet or tiles), casework, and ceiling and wall finishes. Other optional features do affect energy performance such as window construction, insulation, lighting systems, lighting controls, HVAC ductwork, HVAC equipment, and HVAC controls.

When a manufacturer offers a relocatable classroom model with a variety of options, it is necessary to identify those options that affect energy performance and to show that the model complies with any combination of the optional features. Most of the time, optional energy features are upgrades that clearly improve performance. If the basic model complies with the Standards, then adding any or all of the optional features would improve performance. The following are examples of optional features that are clear upgrades in terms of energy performance:

(a) HVAC equipment that has both a higher SEER and higher EER than the equipment in the basic model.

(b) Lighting systems that result in less power than the basic model.

(c) Lighting controls, such as ~~occupancy~~ occupant sensors, that are recognized by the standards and for which power adjustment factors in Table 140.6-A are published in Section 140.6.

(d) Windows that have both a lower SHGC and lower U-factor (limited to relocatables that do not take credit for daylighting).

(e) Wall, roof or floor construction options that result in a lower U-factor than the basic model.

For energy code compliance purposes, it is necessary to show that every variation of the relocatable classroom that is offered to customers will comply with the Standards. There are two approaches for achieving this, as defined below:

1. **Basic Model Plus Energy Upgrades Approach.** The simplest approach is to show that the basic model complies with the Standards and that all of the options that are offered to customers are clear energy upgrades that would only improve performance. As long as each and every measure in the basic model is met or exceeded by the energy upgrades, the relocatable classroom will comply with the Standards.

   While clear upgrades are obvious in most cases, the following are some examples of options that are not energy upgrades, for which additional analysis would be needed to show compliance that every combination of options comply.

   (a) HVAC equipment that has a higher SEER, but a lower EER.

   (b) Windows that lower SHGC but increase U-factor, or vice versa.

   (c) Insulation options that reduce the U-factor for say walls, but increase it for the roof.

   (d) Any other combination of measures that results in the performance of anyone measure being reduced in comparison to a complying basic model.

2. **Modeling of Every Combination Approach.** A more complex whole building performance approach is required when a model is available with options which in combination may or may not comply. In this case every combination of options shall be modeled, and the specific combinations that comply shall be determined and only those combinations shall be allowed. This approach, while possible, requires considerably more effort on the part of the relocatable manufacturer and its energy consultant. It also places a greater burden on DSA when they issue the over-the-counter building permit for the PC design that only allows specific combinations of energy options. DSA would have to examine the specific optional features that are proposed with the over-the-counter application and make sure that the proposed combination of measures achieves compliance.

The manufacturer or its energy consultant would need to prepare a table or chart that shows all of the acceptable combinations that achieve compliance. This chart could be quite complex, depending on the number of optional features that are offered.

Table NA4-5 is intended to illustrate the complexity that could be involved in modeling of every combination of energy features. It shows a list of typical optional features that would affect energy performance. In this example, there are two possible for each of the eight options, e.g. the feature is either there or not (in an actual case there could be a different number of options and a different number of states for any option). In the example any one of the features could be combined with any of the others. The number of possible combinations in this example is two (the number of states) to the eighth power (the number of measures that have two states). The number of possible options is then 2^8 or 256. This is the number of combinations that would need to be modeled in order to determine which combination of optional features achieves compliance.

Table NA4-2 – Examples of Optional Features for Relocatable Classrooms

	Options Offered	States	
1	Efficient lighting option	Yes/No	
2	High efficiency heat pump	Yes/No	
3	Improved wall insulation	Yes/No	
4	Improved roof insulation	Yes/No	
5	~~Occupancy~~ Occupant sensor for lighting	Yes/No	
6	Low-e windows	Yes/No	
7	Skylights	Yes/No	
8	Daylighting Controls	Yes/No	

Nonresidential Appendix NA5

Appendix NA5 –Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Whole Building Air Leakage

Commented [BZ1]: Reduced infiltration

~~NA2.4 Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing of Whole Building Air Leakage~~

NA~~2.4~~5.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this test procedure is to measure the air leakage rate through a building envelope.

1. This enclosure leakage procedure is applicable to nonresidential buildings.
    a. Buildings that have less than 10,000 ft^2 of conditioned floor area may perform the whole-building air leakage test in accordance with Residential Energy Services Network (RESNET)/ANSI/ICC3 380-2019 Guidelines and RA3.8, rather than those in ~~NA2.4~~NA5.2-7.
    ~~b. Buildings that have more than 50,000 ft^2 of conditioned floor area, a sectional test method of co-pressurizing representative test floors and taking data from the specific floors is permitted when following the procedures in Sections NA2.4NA5.2-7. Representative test floors must meet the following conditions as adopted from ASHRAE 90.1-2019 Exceptions to 5.4.3.1.1:~~
        ~~i. The entire floor area of all stories that have any spaces directly under a roof.~~
        ~~ii. The entire floor area of all stories that have a building entrance or loading dock.~~
        ~~iii. Representative above-grade wall sections of the building totaling at least 25% of the wall area enclosing the remaining conditioned space. Floor areas in parts a) and b) shall not be included in the 25%.~~
        ~~iv. When interpreting the data and determining the final air leakage rate, the measured air leakage is area-weighted by the surface areas of the building envelope.~~
2. The measurement procedure shall be based on the specifications of ASTM E3158 by blower door fan assembly (architectural only) and multi-point regression testing as further specified in Sections ~~NA2.4~~NA5.2, ~~NA2.4~~NA5.3, ~~NA2.4~~NA5.4. ~~NA2.4~~NA5.5, ~~NA2.4~~NA5.6, ~~NA2.4~~NA5.7 below.

~~NA2.4~~NA5.2 Instrument Specifications

The instrumentation for the enclosure leakage measurements shall conform to the specifications in ASTM E3158.

~~NA2.4~~NA5.3 Pre-Test Inspection (to occur the day before testing day)

1. Visually review the building for completion of air barrier components.
2. Meet with electrical and mechanical (or controls) subcontractors to review electrical needs for testing equipment and shutdown/sealing plan for mechanical systems and ductwork.
3. Contractor to provide dedicated electrical service for running of fans during the air leakage testing (minimum of 1 non-GFCI circuit 120V/20A per fan required).
4. Review weather forecasts and verify appropriate test conditions.

~~NA2.4~~NA5.3 Pre-Test Set Up (To be performed by General Contractor)

1. Seal all intentional penetrations where they penetrate the air barrier (i.e. louvers, vents, etc.).
2. Fill plumbing traps with water. Toilets, sinks, floor drains, waterless urinals must be primed. Airtight caps on drains are acceptable.
3. Shut off the HVAC system – or leave in “pilot” mode (to avoid introducing air movement that is not included in the calculations). Any automated pressure relief dampers must either be disabled, sealed or set to a pressure well above 75 Pa.
4. Disable combustion equipment or leave in “pilot” position.
5. Seal all intentional openings in building envelope so that they are air-tight. Acceptable sealing materials include but are not limited to carpet protection plastic, adhesive grill mask and tape and plastic (4 mil poly sheeting or thicker). Intentional openings include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. Supply air intakes
    b. Make-up air and other intakes/louvers
    c. Exhaust ducts/vents/louvers
    d. Plumbing exhausts
    e. Pressure relief dampers or louvers
    f. Fume hoods
    g. Other exhaust vents (kitchen, bathroom, dryer, etc.)
    h. Any other locations where air leakage can occur within the mechanical system during inactive periods
    i. Any other intentional opening in the building envelope other than doors and operable windows

6. Close and lock exterior windows and doors. Close any vents within window frames.
7. Prop interior doors open to create a single uniform zone.
8. Where drop ceilings are installed in a location that constitutes a barrier to air flow between the testing equipment and the plane of air tightness of the space being tested, remove ceiling tiles at a rate of one per 500 ft2 to prevent movement of tiles during test and to ensure a uniform pressure within plenum space. Additional tiles can be removed to ensure a uniform pressure distribution in the plenum space.
9. Install exterior electrical box caps (if applicable).

~~NA2.4~~NA5.4 Run Preliminary Test

Pressurize the building to 75 Pa to approximate if building is expected to pass test and to confirm that pre-test set up is complete and that temporary sealing stays in place while under pressure.

~~NA2.4~~NA5.5 Enclosure Measurement Procedures

Pressurization Test

1. Reference ASTM E3158-18 for Whole Building Air Leakage Testing.
2. Record interior and exterior weather conditions.
3. Record average wind speeds.
4. Record interior and exterior temperatures before the testing begins.
5. Record site elevation in feet above sea level.
6. Measure bias pressures with fans off and covered.
7. Perform a multi-point pressurization test from at least +25 to +50 Pa (leakage is reported at 75 Pa, as attained or extrapolated).
8. Record a minimum of 5 points between minimum and maximum induced pressures.
9. Measure bias pressures at end of multi-point test with fans off and covered.
10. Record interior and exterior temperatures.
11. If the pressure exponent n is less than 0.45 or greater than 1.0 per Section 9.5.1 of ASTM E3158-18, then the pressurization test is invalid and shall be repeated.

Depressurization Test

1. Reverse direction of fans.
2. Measure bias pressures with fans off and covered.
3. Perform a multi-point depressurization test from at least -25 to -50 Pa (optional).
4. Record a minimum of 5 points between minimum and maximum induced pressures.
5. Measure bias pressures at end of multi-point test with fans off and covered.
6. Record interior and exterior temperatures after the testing is complete.

7. If the pressure exponent n is less than 0.45 or greater than 1.0 per Section 9.5.1 of ASTM 3158-18, then the depressurization test is invalid and shall be repeated.

~~NA2.4~~NA5.6 Determination of Test Results

1. Calculate the building envelope air leakage in accordance with guidelines in ASTM E3158-18 multi-point regression tests or the relevant building envelope area when testing in sections.
2. If the building envelope air leakage rate exceeds 0.4 cfm/ft^2 but is less than 0.6 cfm/ft^2, a visual inspection of the air barrier shall be conducted in accordance with NA5.7. Any leaks observed should be sealed where such sealing can be made without destruction of existing building components. An additional report identifying the corrective actions taken to seal air leaks should be submitted to the building owner and code official, and any further requirement to meet the air leakage rate will be waived.
3. If the building envelope air leakage rate exceeds 0.6 cfm/ft^2, a visual inspection of the air barrier shall be conducted in accordance with NA 5.7, and any leaks noted should be repaired. The building will then be re-tested until either the building envelope air leakage rate less than 0.4 cfm/ft^2, or the building envelope air leakage rate is in the range of 0.4 cfm/ft^2 but is less than 0.6 cfm/ft^2 and a visual inspection and repair program is executed.

Exception to ~~NA2.4~~NA5.6 3. Alterations where less than 100% of the wall area is being altered or additions that are an extension of the existing air barrier, if the building is tested in accordance with the procedures for whole building air leakage in ~~NA2.4~~NA5 and the tested leakage rate exceeds 0.6 cfm/ft^2 of building shell area at 75 pa, a Visual Inspection and Diagnostic Evaluation shall been completed in accordance with ~~NA2.4~~NA5.7 and all observed leaks shall be sealed where such sealing can be made without destruction of existing building components. An additional report identifying the corrective actions taken to seal air leaks should be submitted to the building owner and code official, and any further requirement to meet the air leakage rate will be waived.

~~NA2.4~~NA5.7 Visual Inspection and Diagnostic Evaluation of Air Leakage After Test Failure

Visual Inspection

1. Ensure that all temporary seals and covers for intentional openings such as at louvers, exhaust/intake vents, fireplaces, and rooftop units are properly sealed and not damaged or loosened during the construction.
2. Ensure that all plumbing-traps are filled with water.
3. Ensure that all operable windows, trickle-vents, and doors are properly shut and locked.
4. Ensure that all mechanical systems are shut-off and any mechanical dampers set to the closed position.

Diagnostic Evaluation

5. Identify locations with air leakage using infrared thermography or smoke pens in accordance with ASTM E1186-17, while the building is maintained at a minimum 25 Pa

pressure (during pressurization) or –25 Pa (during depressurization). The following locations shall be evaluated:

- a. The perimeter of windows and doors.
- b. Around operable window hardware and door hardware
- c. Penetrations through the roof, wall, and floor assemblies along the plane of the intended air-barrier.
- d. Electrical outlets located on exterior-facing walls.
- e. Lighting and other electrical penetrations through the roof level ceiling.
- f. Above- and below-grade vestibules.
- g. Stairs leading to unconditioned space.

NA~~2.4~~5.8 Reporting

1. Generate report in accordance with ASTM E3158 reporting instructions.
2. The report shall include information on the tested building envelope area, conditioned floor area, conditioned air-by-volume, stories above grade, and air leakage rates.
3. Results shall be reported at the upper 95 percent confidence interval.

~~NA5.5 9 Verification of Continuous Air Barrier~~

~~An independent third-party verification shall be conducted in accordance with the following requirements:~~

~~1. A design review shall be conducted to verify and document compliance with the requirements Section 140.3(a)9, specifically:~~
    - ~~a. All air barrier components are identified on construction documents~~
    - ~~b. All joints, interconnections, and penetrations of the continuous air barrier components are identified on construction documents~~
    - ~~c. The continuous air barrier extends on all surfaces of the building envelope (walls, roof, and lowest floor)~~
    - ~~d. The continuous air barrier is designed to resist positive and negative pressures from wind, stack effect, and mechanical ventilation.~~
    - ~~e. The compliance documents indicate the intent to verify the continuous air barrier by way of on-site visual inspection.~~

~~2. Inspection shall occur during construction when the continuous air barrier is accessible for a visual inspection. The entire continuous air barrier shall be inspected. The third-party entity conducting the verification shall coordinate with the construction team to schedule site visits such that the entire continuous air barrier is verified.~~

~~3. Inspection of the continuous air barrier materials and assemblies shall verify the following are installed correctly:~~

  - ~~a. Transitions to adjacent air barrier systems – including but not limited to roof parapet transitions, glazed framing systems to adjacent framed wall assemblies transitions, plaza waterproofing to podium transitions, vertical wall to soffit transitions~~
  - ~~b. Detailing of penetrations through air barrier systems.~~
  - ~~c. Building assemblies used as ducts or plenums~~
  - ~~d. Contractor internal quality control/quality assurance~~

~~(This page intentionally left blank.)~~

Nonresidential Appendix NA6

Appendix NA6 – Alternate Default Fenestration Procedure to Calculate Thermal Performance

NA6.1 *Scope*

This procedure provides for non-rated site-built skylights, and alterations to fenestration ~~up to 1,000 ft^2 (other than a repair or replacement glass)~~ (i.e., repairs or replacement of glass), with an option to comply with the Energy Standards. The Center of Glass (COG) values are required to be used in Equation NA6-1, NA6-2 and NA6-3 and shall be determined by the manufacturers in accordance with NFRC procedures. A copy of the manufacturer cut sheets or data sheet shall be provided identifying the COG values as an attachment with the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance.

(a) NONRESIDENTIAL AND MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS FOUR STORIES OR GREATER

For Nonresidential cases, the Alternative Default Fenestration Procedure option is available for up to 200 ft^2 of site-built skylight area, and alterations to vertical fenestration ~~up to 200 ft^2 in area, other than existing, repair or replacement glass, the Alternate Default Fenestration Procedure shall be used when no NFRC Label Certificate is available~~. The manufacturer cut sheet or data sheet shall be used to identify the COG values for the U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient ($SHGC_C$) and Visible Transmittance (VT_C). If unable to determine center of glass information, the alternative Energy Commissions Default Tables in Section 110.6 of the Energy Standards must be used to determine the appropriate fenestration default values. The values listed in Table 110.6-A for U-factors and Table 110.6-B for SHGC values are whole fenestration product values. Since there is no default Visible Transmittance value available, the alternative is $VT_C = 1.0$; this will be used to determine the total fenestration product, VT_T, which includes the glass and frame of the fenestration.

For Nonresidential, the altered fenestration (other than a repair) shall meet the values listed in Table 141.0-A unless the altered glass area meets the Exception to Section 141~~0~~.0~~1~~(b)2A in the Energy Standards. If the altered fenestration or glass alone is not rated by NFRC then the Alternate Default Fenestration Procedure can be used. ~~similar to Nonresidential up to 200 ft^2 as described above.~~

(b) RESIDENTIAL AND MULTIFAMILY BUILDINGS THREE STORIES OR LESS

For Residential cases, the Alternate Default Fenestration Procedure option is available only when nonrated site-built fenestration is being installed in a residential dwelling. For Residential site-built fenestration up to 250 ft^2 in area or 5% times the conditioned floor area (CFA), whichever is greater shall meet Sections §110.6(a)2 and §110.6(a)3.

The Alternate Default Fenestration calculated values are typically less efficient than those listed in the Prescriptive Approach in Table 150.1-A and Table 150.1-B of the Energy Standards. The Visible Transmittance (VT) value is not required to meet residential energy compliance. If unable to acquire center of glass (COG) thermal performance values from the manufacturer, then the Energy Commissions Default Tables shall be used; Table 110.6-A for U-factors and Table 110.6-B for SHGC values and documented on the on a self-produced manufactured default label. The default label shall be attached to the unrated fenestration product. An example of the label can be found in the Residential Compliance Manual.

(c) DOCUMENTATION

1. The Energy Commission's Fenestration Label Certificate form for nonresidential application shall be used to document the Alternate Default Fenestration calculated values for each non-rated site-built fenestration unit; or
2. For residential, a manufactured Default Label attached to each non-rated site-built fenestration unit.

The equations listed below are to be used for only for unrated site-built fenestration that meets the requirements in either item 1 or 2 above.

NA6.2 *Default U-factor*

Equation NA6-1

$$U_T = C_1 + (C_2 X U_c)$$

Where:

U_T = U-factor ~~I~~s the Total Performance of the fenestration including glass and frame

C_1 = Coefficient selected from Table NA6-6

C_2 = Coefficient selected from Table NA6-6

U_C = Center of glass U-factor calculated in accordance with NFRC 100 Section 4.5.3.1 (http://www.nfrc.org/software.aspx) ~~http://www.nfrc.org/software.aspx~~

Table NA6-6 – U-factor Coefficients

Product Type	Frame Type	C_1	C_2
Site-Built Vertical Fenestration	Metal	0.311	0.872
Site-Built Vertical Fenestration	Metal Thermal Break	0.202	0.867
Site-Built Vertical Fenestration	Non-Metal	0.202	0.867
Skylights with a Curb	Metal	0.711	1.065
Skylights with a Curb	Metal Thermal Break	0.437	1.229
Skylights with a Curb	Non-Metal	0.437	1.229
Skylights with no Curb (Deck Mounted)	Metal	0.310	0.878
Skylights with no Curb (Deck Mounted)	Metal Thermal Break	0.195	0.882
Skylights with no Curb (Deck Mounted)	Non-Metal	0.310	0.878

NA6.3 *Default Solar Heat Gain Coefficient, SHGC*

The SHGC of the fenestration product shall be calculated using the following equation:

Equation NA6-2

$$SHGC_T = 0.08 + (0.86 \text{ x } SHGC_c)$$

Where:

$SHGC_T$ = SHGC Is the Total Performance of the fenestration including glass and frame

$SHGC_C$ = Center of glass SHGC calculated in accordance with NFRC 200 Section 4.5.1.1 http://www.nfrc.org/software.aspx

NA6.4 *Default Visible Transmittance, VT*

Equation NA6-3 - VT of Center of Glass (COG) calculation

$$VT_T = VT_F \times VT_C$$

Where:

VT_T = Is the Total Performance of the fenestration including glass and frame

VT_F = 0.53 for projecting windows, such as casement and awning windows

VT_F = 0.67 for operable or sliding windows

VT_F = 0.77 for fixed or non-operable windows

VT_F= 0.88 for curtain wall/storefront, Site-built and manufactured non-curb mounted skylights

VT_F = 1.0 for Curb Mounted manufactured Skylights

VT_C = Center of glass VT is calculated in accordance with NFRC 200 Section 4.5.1.1 or NFRC 202 for Translucent Products or NFRC 203 for Tubular Daylighting Devices and Hybrid Tubular Daylighting Devices or ASTM E972 (http://www.nfrc.org/software.aspx)

NA6.5 *Responsibilities for Compliance*

This section describes the responsibilities of energy consultants, designers, architects, builders, installers, and enforcement agencies when using the procedures of this appendix.

NA6.5.1 Energy Consultants, Designers, Architects

The person with responsibility for preparing the compliance documentation shall establish the inputs from the following:

(a) The center of glass U-factor, SHGC and VT shall be taken from manufacturers’ literature and determined using methods consistent with NFRC 100, NFRC 200, NFRC 202 and NFRC 203 procedures.

(b) The frame type (Metal, Metal Thermal Break, Non-metal) shall be verified from manufacturers’ literature and through observations of frame sections provided by the manufacturer.

For the Prescriptive Overall Compliance Method, the calculated values shall be entered on the prescriptive Certificate of Compliance form. In addition the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance Label Certificate must be also filled and located at the project site location in according to Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.

For the Performance Compliance Approach, the calculated values shall be entered and documented on the Performance Certificates of Compliance. In addition the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance Label Certificate must be filled and located at the project site location in according to Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.

For both the prescriptive and performance compliance method, the building plans shall contain a window schedule that lists the calculated values in which matches the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance form or improved thermal performance values than listed on the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance form. The specifications of the windows shall be consistent with the values used in this procedure, e.g. frame type glazing product, etc.

Permit applications must include fenestration U-factor, SHGC and VT values documentation for the building plan checker. This documentation must include a copy of the manufacturer's documentation showing the Glazing Type information (center of glass U-factor, center of glass SHGC, center of glass VT, number of panes, coatings and the frame type (frame material type, presence of thermal breaks, and identification of structural glazing (glazing with no frame)) that is used to determine U_T, $SHGC_T$, and VT_T. If the proposed design uses multiple fenestration products, manufacturer's documentation for each fenestration product shall be attached to the plans. Manufacturer's documentation must be provided for each unique combination of glazing and frame used for compliance and shall be located at the project's location.

If mixed fenestration is included in the compliance analysis, then the compliance submittal must clearly identify which are certified fenestration products, and which are non-certified fenestration products. In nonresidential buildings, ~~N~~non-certified fenestration products are limited to 200 ft^2 of skylight area and altered vertical fenestration.~~less than 1,000 ft² for commercial buildings or up to~~ In residential buildings, non-certified fenestration products are limited to 250 ft^2 in area, or 0.5% of the CFA, whichever is greater~~, for residential buildings~~.

The manufacturer's documentation and calculations for each product must be included in the submittal, and either the Prescriptive Certificate of Compliance or Performance Certificate of Compliance form must be included on the building plans. All non-certified fenestration products, including skylights, require a completed Fenestration Certificate of Compliance.

NA6.5.2 Builder and Installer Responsibilities

The builder must ensure that the fenestration (glass and frame) documentation showing the U factor, SHGC, and VT used for determining compliance is provided to the installer. The builder is responsible for ensuring that the persons preparing compliance documentation are specifying products the builder intends to install. The builder is responsible for ensuring that the installer installs glass with thermal performance equal to or better than the thermal performance used for energy compliance and that the frame type installed is the same as that used for compliance. The builder also must ensure that the field inspector for the enforcement agency is provided with manufacturer's documentation attached to each Energy Commission's Fenestration Certificate of Compliance Label Certificate showing the thermal performance and method of determining thermal performance for the actual fenestration products installed. The builder should verify that these fenestration products are clearly shown on the building plans before fenestration products are purchased and installed. A copy of the manufacturer's documentation and Fenestration Certificate of Compliance shall be located at the project location.

NA6.5.3 Enforcement Agency Responsibilities

NA6.5.3.1 Plan Checker

The enforcement agency plan checker or reviewer is responsible for ensuring that the plans identify all site-built fenestration and skylights occasionally residential site-built fenestration will be used and also identified on the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance form. The plan checker shall ensure that site-built fenestration and skylights using the alternate default procedure shall meet the following:

(a) Confirm that U-factors, SHGC and VT (for Commercial use only) values are clearly shown on the window schedules on the plans and documented on the energy compliance forms, and

(b) Confirm that manufacturer documentation of the Glazing Type and Frame Type has been provided for the each of the fenestration products using the procedure of this appendix and documents the Center of Glass values; and

(c) Verify the building meets the non-certified fenestration requirement (~~less than 1,000 ft^2 for commercial, or~~ Nonresidential: up to 200 ft^2 of skylight area, or an altered vertical fenestration; Residential: up to 250 ft^2 in area, or 0.5% of the CFA, whichever is greater ~~for Residential~~); and

(d) For Nonresidential, confirm that ~~an~~ Fenestration Certificate of Compliance Label Certificate has been completed for each non-rated site-built fenestration product, or for Residential, verify that the non-rated site-built fenestration efficiencies match the building plans and energy compliance forms.

NA6.5.3.2 Enforcement Agency Inspector

(a) For Residential up to 250 ft^2 in area or 0.5% of the CFA, whichever is greater, of non-rated site-built fenestration is allowed. The inspector should verify the manufacturer's label attached to each residential site-built fenestration product to ensure that it matches with residential energy compliance forms.

(b) For Nonresidential ~~no greater than 1,000 ft^2 of~~up to 200 ft^2 of skylight area and altered vertical site-built fenestration ~~is~~are allowed for this alternative procedure. The field inspector is responsible for ensuring that the U-factor, SHGC and VT for the installed fenestration match the building plans and energy compliance forms. Inspection of the Commission's Fenestration Certificate of Compliance Label Certificate shall match each of the Prescriptive Certificate of Compliance form or the Performance Certificate of Compliance forms for the installed site-built fenestration product.

Nonresidential Appendix NA7

Appendix NA7 – Installation and Acceptance Requirements for Nonresidential Buildings and Covered Processes

NA7.1 *Purpose and Scope*

This appendix defines acceptance procedures that must be completed on certain controls and equipment before the installation is deemed to be in compliance with the Standards. These requirements apply to all newly installed equipment for which there are acceptance requirements in new and existing buildings. The procedures apply to nonresidential, high-rise residential, hotel/motel buildings and covered processes as defined by the California Energy Commission’s Energy Efficiency Standards for Nonresidential Buildings (Standards). The purpose of the acceptance tests is to assure:

(a) The presence of equipment or building components according to the specifications in the compliance documents.

(b) Installation quality and proper functioning of the controls and equipment to meet the intent of the design and the Standards.

Modifications and additions to these acceptance requirements needed to improve clarity or to better ensure proper installation and functionality may be approved by the Energy Commission.

NA7.2 *Introduction*

Acceptance requirements are defined as implementation of targeted inspection checks and functional and performance testing to determine whether specific building components, equipment, systems, and interfaces between systems conform to the criteria set forth in the Standards and to related construction documents (plans or specifications). Acceptance requirements improve code compliance effectiveness and help meet the expected level of performance.

Acceptance testing is not intended to take the place of commissioning or test and balance procedures that a building owner might incorporate into a building project. It is an adjunct process focusing only on demonstrating compliance with the Standards.

Third-party review of the information provided on Certificate of Acceptance documentation is not required, with one exception: duct leakage diagnostic test results for some constant volume space conditioning systems serving less than 5,000 square feet of conditioned floor area are required to be verified by a certified HERS Rater as specified in Standards Section 120.4(g)~~140.4(l)1~~.

NA7.3 *Roles and Responsibilities*

Individuals who perform the field testing and verification work, and provide the information required for completion of the Certificate of Acceptance documentation are not required to be licensed professionals. The person who signs the Certificate of Acceptance document to certify compliance with the acceptance requirements shall be licensed as specified in Standards Section 10-103(a)4.

NA7.3.1 Responsible Person

The Certificate of Acceptance shall be signed by the person who is in charge of the acceptance testing for the scope of work identified on the Certificate of Acceptance. The *Responsible Person* shall be a licensed professional who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions code in the applicable classification, to take responsibility for the aspects of the system design, construction, or installation applicable to the scope of work identified on the Certificate of Acceptance. The *Responsible Person* shall review the information on the Certificate of Acceptance document and sign the document to certify compliance with the acceptance requirements. The *Responsible Person* shall assume responsibility for the acceptance testing work performed by the *Field Technician* agent(s) or employee(s), and if necessary shall interview the person who performed the acceptance test work in order to ascertain whether the testing work reported on the Certificate of Acceptance was completed as reported and is consistent with the *Responsible Person's* expectation. The *Responsible Person* may also perform the required acceptance testing work, and in that case shall also sign as the *Field Technician* on the Certificate of Acceptance document.

NA7.3.2 Field Technician

The *Field Technician* is responsible for performing the acceptance test procedures and documenting the results on the Certificate of Acceptance document. The *Field Technician* shall sign the Certificate of Acceptance to certify that the information provided on the Certificate of Acceptance is true and correct. Field Technicians shall be certified Acceptance Test Technicians (ATT) when required by Sections 10-103.1 or 10-103.2.

NA7.3.3 Documentation Author

Documentation Authors who provide administrative support for document preparation for Certificate of Acceptance documentation shall sign a declaration statement on the documents they prepare to certify the information provided on the documentation is accurate and complete.

NA7.3.4 Enforcement Agency

The Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency in order to receive the final Certificate of Occupancy. The enforcement agency shall have the authority to require the *Responsible Person* and *Field Technician* to demonstrate competence, to its satisfaction.

NA7.4 *Building Envelope Acceptance Tests*

NA7.4.1 Fenestration

Each fenestration product shall provide an NFRC Label Certificate or the Commission's Fenestration Certificate to identify the thermal performance (e.g. U-factor, SHGC, and VT) of each fenestration product being installed. The labels shall be located at the job site for verification by the enforcement agency. In addition, the responsible party shall fill out the Fenestration Acceptance Certificate. The responsible party shall verify the thermal performance of each specified fenestration product being installed matches the label certificate, energy compliance documentation and building plans. A copy of the certificate shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

NA7.4.1.1 Elements Requiring Verification:

The responsible party shall verify the following:

(a) The thermal performance for each fenestration product matches the building plans, energy compliance documentation, and the label certificate; and

(b) The delivery receipt or purchase order matches the delivered fenestration product(s); and

(c) Verify the NFRC Label Certificate is filled out and includes an NFRC's Certified Product Directory (CPD) number and a Certificate Number (when the Component Modeling Approach Label is submitted).

(d) For non-rated fenestration verify Fenestration Certificate of Compliance is completely filled.

(e) The Certificate of Acceptance form is completed and signed.

NA7.4.1.2 Required Documentation

(a) NFRC Product Label Certificate:

1. The Component Modeling Approach (CMA) Label Certificate can list a single or multiple fenestration products, each with its own CPD number on the left column and verified for authenticity by contacting NFRC or
2. The Certificate Number for each CMA Label Certificate can be verified for authenticity by contacting NFRC or
3. Commission's Fenestration Label Certificate:
4. The Fenestration Certificate of Compliance is used to document Fenestration products not certified or rated by NFRC by using the Commission's Default Table values in §110.6- A and Table 110.6-B or the calculated values as indicated Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

(b) Purchase Order or Receipt:

1. A copy of the purchase order or a detailed payment receipt shall be used to cross reference with the NFRC Product Label Certificate CPD number or the Fenestration Certificate of Compliance values; and
2. The purchase order or a detailed payment receipt should match the energy compliance documentation and the building plans.

(c) Fenestration Building Plans:

1. The building plans shall list in a schedule for each fenestration product to be installed in the building.

(d) Certificate of Acceptance Form:

1. The acceptance form shall be filled out by the responsible party and signed; and
2. The signed Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to enforcement agency or field inspector; and
3. A copy of the Certificate of Acceptance shall be given to the building owner.

NA7.4.2 Window Films

NA7.4.2.1 Procedures

These procedures detail the installation and verification protocols necessary to meet acceptance requirements of window films. Each window film product shall be provided with a temporary NFRC Label on the box to identify the thermal performance (e.g. U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient(SHGC), and Visible Transmittance (VT)) of each window film product being installed. The labels, an Energy Commission Default Fenestration Certificate of Compliance form or an NFRC label, shall be located at the job site for verification by the enforcement agency. In addition, the responsible person shall fill out the Installation Certificate and the Certificate of Acceptance, Fenestration Acceptance Certificate. The responsible person shall verify the thermal performance of each window film to be installed matches the energy Certificate of Compliance documentation and building plans. A copy of the Installation and Acceptance certificate shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

NA7.4.2.2 The Responsible Person or Installer Shall Meet the Following Protocols before Installation:

(a) Verify the name of the manufacture or brand name matches with building plans;

(b) From the building plans or energy compliance forms, identify the azimuth orientation in degrees or in cardinal orientation for each of the window film to be installed to ensure the correct window film specifications are installed in the appropriate orientation;

(c) Verify the temporary NFRC label on the box for each window film's U-factor, Solar Heat Gain (SHGC) and Visible Transmittance (VT) matches the energy compliance Certificate of Installation documentation and building plans, if the U-factor and SHGC values do not match refer back to the Responsible Person of the building construction or enforcement agency. Energy recompliance may have to be done and building plans updated;

(d) Verify the NFRC Window Film Label Certificate is filled out and includes an NFRC's Certified Product Directory (CPD) number;

(e) List the NFRC Certified Product Directory (CPD) identification (ID) number provided on the label on the Certificate of Installation form;

(f) If no NFRC Label is included on the box or identification of the window film then verify with the Responsible Person of the building construction or enforcement agency to ensure the window film is actually meets or exceeds the energy specifications before installation;

(g) Installation of window films shall follow the **International Window Film Association** (IWFA) Visual Quality Standards for Applied Window Film (dated January 1, 2015); and

(h) After the installation the installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Certificate of Installation. A signed copy of the Certificate(s) of Installation shall remain at the job site for verification by the building inspector.

NA7.4.2.3 Field Technician or Responsible Person Shall Meet the Following Protocols After Installation:

(a) Verify the Certificate of Installation and the Declaration Statement is signed before inspection; and

(b) The window film(s) label on the box matches the Certificate of Installation and building plan's schedule, U-factor, SHGC, and VT for each of the installed window films; and

(c) If any of the acceptance procedures fails, refer back to the Responsible Person, Installer, or the enforcement agency for correction; and, after correction verify failed procedures have been corrected and re-inspect again; and

(d) After window film inspection, complete all parts of the Certificate of Acceptance, including the signature of the Declaration Statements; and

(e) Provide certificates and additional copies to the builder, enforcement agency and building owner at occupancy.

NA7.4.2.4 Documentation at Occupancy:

The following documentation shall be made available to the responsible party of construction or building owner at occupancy;

(a) A completed and signed Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance, form(s);

(b) The IWFA Visual Quality Standards for Applied Window Film (dated January 1, 2015), a copy can be obtained through www.iwfa.com;

(c) A sample (8" by 10") of the film installed with a copy of its Performance Specification Sheet attached; and

(d) 15 or more year Warranty Certificate(s).

~~A 15 or more year Warranty Certificate(s).~~

NA7.4.3 Dynamic Glazing

NA7.4.3.1 Procedures

These procedures detail the installation and verification protocols necessary to meet acceptance requirements of dynamic glazing. Each dynamic glazing product shall be provided with a temporary NFRC Label on the glazing or an NFRC Label Certificate to identify the thermal performance (e.g. U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient(SHGC), and Visible Transmittance (VT)) of each product being installed. The NFRC label certificate shall be located at the job site for verification by the enforcement agency. In addition, the responsible person shall fill out the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance, Fenestration Acceptance Certificate. The responsible person shall verify 1) the dynamic glazing to be installed matches the energy Certificate of Compliance documentation and building plans. A copy of the Installation and Acceptance certificate shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

NA7.4.3.2 The Responsible Person or Installer Shall Meet the Following Protocols before Installation:

(a) Verify the dynamic glazing matches with building plans and Energy Compliance forms;

(b) From the building plans or energy compliance forms, identify the azimuth orientation in degrees or in cardinal orientation for each of the dynamic glazing to be installed to ensure the correct dynamic glazing specifications or model are installed in the appropriate orientation;

(c) Verify dynamic glazing controls if applicable matches the building plans schedule;

(d) Verify NFRC's Certified Product Directory (CPD) number if applicable;

(e) If no NFRC Label Form is included, then the default values of Table 110.6-A and 110.6-B in Section 110.6 of the Standards are being specified;

(f) Installation of dynamic glazing shall meet the manufacturer's installation instructions;

(g) After the installation the installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Installation Certificate of Installation. A signed copy of the Certificate(s) of Installation shall remain at the job site for verification by the building inspector.

NA7.4.3.3 Field Technician or Responsible Person Shall Meet the Following Protocols After Installation:

(a) Verify the Certificate of Installation and the Declaration Statement is signed before inspection of the installation; and

(b) When controls are installed with the dynamic glazing, it should be verified that it meets the exact operation specifications of the dynamic glazing installation, functional and testing instructions.

(c) After dynamic glazing inspection is complete, ensure the Certificate of Acceptance form is completed and including the signature of the Declaration Statements; and

(d) Provide certificates and additional copies to the builder, enforcement agency and building owner at occupancy.

NA7.4.3.4 Documentation at Occupancy:

The following documentation shall be made available to the responsible party of construction or building owner at occupancy;

(a) A completed and signed Certificate of Installation and Certificate of Acceptance, form(s);

  1. If supplied by the manufacturer, a copy of the manufacturer's warranty and user manual.

NA7.4.4 Clerestories for PAF

NA7.4.4.1 Procedures

These procedures detail the installation and verification protocols necessary to meet acceptance requirements of clerestory fenestrations for PAF. In addition, the responsible person shall fill out the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance. The responsible person shall verify the clerestory fenestration to be installed matches the energy compliance documentation (Certificate of Compliance) and building plans. A copy of the Installation and Acceptance certificate shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

For buildings with up to seven (7) clerestory fenestration units claiming the Clerestory Fenestration PAF, all clerestory fenestration units shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) clerestory fenestration units claiming the PAF, random sampling may be done to select the seven clerestory fenestration units. If any of the clerestory fenestration units in the sample group or seven clerestory fenestration units fails the acceptance test, another group of seven clerestory fenestration units must be tested.

NA7.4.4.2 The Responsible Person or Installer Shall Meet the Following Protocols before Installation:

(a) Verify the height of the clerestory fenestration's head height and glazing height match the building plans;

(b) Installation of clerestory fenestration shall meet the manufacturer's installation instructions;

(c) After the installation the installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Certificate of Installation. A signed copy of the Certificate(s) shall remain at the job site for verification by the building inspector.

NA7.4.4.3 Field Technician or Responsible Person Shall Meet the Following Protocols After Installation:

(a) Verify the Certificate of Installation and the Declaration Statement is signed before inspection of the installation; and

(b) If operable shading is installed on the clerestory fenestration, verify that the clerestory fenestration shading is controlled separately from other fenestration shading control.

(c) After clerestory fenestration inspection is completed, complete the Certificate of Acceptance Test and sign the Declaration Statements of the certificate; and

(d) Provide certificates and additional copies to the builder, enforcement agency and building owner at occupancy.

NA7.4.4.4 Documentation at Occupancy:

The following documentation shall be made available to the responsible party of construction or building owner at occupancy;

(a) A completed and signed copy of the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance Test, form(s);

(b) If supplied by the manufacturer, a copy of the manufacturer’s warranty and user manual.

NA7.4.5 Interior and Exterior Horizontal Slats ~~for PAF~~

NA7.4.5.1 Procedures

These procedures detail the installation and verification protocols necessary to meet acceptance requirements of interior and exterior horizontal slats for PAF. In addition, the responsible person shall fill out the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance. The responsible person shall verify the horizontal slat to be installed matches the energy compliance documentation (Certificate of Compliance) and building plans. A copy of the Installation and Acceptance certificate shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

For buildings with up to and including seven (7) horizontal slat assemblies claiming the Interior and Exterior Horizontal Slats for PAF or RSHGC for exterior horizontal slats, all horizontal slat assemblies shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) horizontal slat assemblies claiming ~~the PAF~~, random sampling may be done to select the seven horizontal slat assemblies. If any of the horizontal slat assemblies in the sample group or seven horizontal slat assemblies fails the acceptance test, another group of seven horizontal slat assemblies must be tested.

Each horizontal slat assembly shall be provided with documentation of visible reflectance testing per ASTM E903 and may come with documentation of visible transmittance testing per ASTM E1175. The documentation shall be located at the job site for verification by the enforcement agency.

NA7.4.5.2 The Responsible Person or Installer Shall Meet the Following Protocols before Installation:

(a) Verify the horizontal (not diagonal or vertical) distance from the front edge of the slat to the back edge of the slat matches the building plans;

(b) Verify the vertical (not diagonal or horizontal) distance from the lowest edge of the slat to the highest edge of the slat below it matches the building plans;

(c) Verify there is a factory installed label permanently affixed and prominently located at a mounting point of the slat to the building;

(d) Verify the visible reflectance on the ASTM E903 test results matches the building plans;

(e) If the horizontal slat surfaces are not opaque and free of perforations, verify that the horizontal slat's ASTM E1175 test results matches the building plans;

(f) Installation of horizontal slats shall meet the manufactures installation instructions; and

(g) After the installation the installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Certificate of Installation. A signed copy of the Certificate(s) shall remain at the job site for verification by the building inspector.

NA7.4.5.3 Field Technician or Responsible Person Shall Meet the Following Protocols After Installation:

(a) Verify the Certificate of Installation and the Declaration Statement is signed before inspection of the installation;

(b) Verify that horizontal slats are permanently mounted;

(c) If the horizontal slats extend beyond each side of the window jamb, then verify the extension matches the length shown on the building plans;

(d) If the horizontal slats do not extend beyond each side of the window jamb, then verify that the horizontal slats are entirely within the window rough opening or that fins at the window jambs match the building plans;

(e) Verify that horizontal slat assemblies extend the entire height of the window;

(f) Verify that exterior horizontal slats are horizontal or slope downwards from the window and that interior horizontal slats are horizontal or slope upwards from the window;

(g) After horizontal slats inspection is completed, complete the Certificate of Acceptance Test and sign the Declaration Statements of the certificate; and

(h) Provide certificates and additional copies to the builder, enforcement agency and building owner at occupancy.

NA7.4.5.4 Documentation at Occupancy:

The following documentation shall be made available to the responsible party of construction or building owner at occupancy;

(a) A completed and signed copy of the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance Test, form(s);

(b) If supplied by the manufacturer, a copy of the manufacturer’s warranty and user manual;~~.~~

(c) ASTM E903 test results and, if applicable, ASTM E1175 results should also be retained by the building owner.

NA7.4.6 Interior and Exterior Light Shelves for PAF

NA7.4.6.1 Procedures

These procedures detail the installation and verification protocols necessary to meet acceptance requirements of interior and exterior light shelves for PAF. In addition, the responsible person shall fill out Certificate of Acceptance. The responsible person shall verify the light shelf to be installed matches the energy compliance documentation (Certificate of Compliance) and building plans. A copy of the Installation and Acceptance certificate shall be given to the building owner and the enforcement agency for their records.

For buildings with up to seven (7) light shelf units claiming the Interior and Exterior Light Shelves for PAF, all light shelf units shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) light shelf units claiming the PAF, random sampling may be done to select the seven light shelf units. If any of the light shelf units in the sample group or seven light shelf units fails the acceptance test, another group of seven light shelf units must be tested.

Each interior light shelf shall be provided with documentation of visible reflectance testing per ASTM E903. Exterior light shelves may be provided with documentation of visible reflectance testing per ASTM E903. The documentation shall be located at the job site for verification by the enforcement agency.

NA7.4.6.2 The Responsible Person or Installer Shall Meet the Following Protocols before Installation:

(a) Verify the horizontal (not diagonal or vertical) distance from the front edge of the interior light shelf to the back edge of the light shelf matches the building plans;

(b) Verify the vertical (not diagonal or horizontal) distance from the highest edge of the interior light shelf to the top of the clerestory window above it matches the building plans;

(c) Verify the visible reflectance on the ASTM E903 test results of the interior light shelf matches the building plans;

(d) If there is an exterior light shelf:

1. Verify the horizontal (not diagonal or vertical) distance from the front edge of the exterior light shelf to the back edge of the exterior light shelf matches the building plans;
2. verify the vertical (not diagonal or horizontal) distance from the lowest edge of the exterior light shelf to the sill of the window below it matches the building plans;

3. If the exterior light shelf is less than two feet below the clerestory window sill, verify the visible reflectance on the ASTM E903 test results matches the building plans;

(e) Verify that light shelves are installed at the height specified in the building plans ;

(f) Installation of light shelves shall meet the manufacturer's installation instructions;

(g) After the installation the installer completes and signs the Declaration Statement on the Certificate of Installation. A signed copy of the Certificate(s) shall remain at the job site for verification by the building inspector.

NA7.4.6.3 Field Technician or Responsible Person Shall Meet the Following Protocols After Installation:

(a) Verify the Certificate of Installation and the Declaration Statement is signed before inspection of the installation; and

(b) If there is any window area below the interior light shelf on the same floor, then verify there is an exterior light shelf above that window area.

(c) Verify that that the light shelf is permanently mounted;

(d) Verify the light shelf extends beyond each side of the window jamb by the length shown on the building plans;

(e) Verify that interior light shelves are horizontal;

(f) If there is an exterior light shelf, verify that the exterior light shelf is horizontal or slopes downwards from the window;

(g) If operable shading is installed on the clerestory window, then verify the clerestory window shading is controlled separately from shading serving other vertical fenestration;

(h) After light shelves inspection is completed, complete the Certificate of Acceptance Test and sign the Declaration Statements of the certificate; and

(i) Provide certificates and additional copies to the builder, enforcement agency and building owner at occupancy.

NA7.4.6.4 Documentation at Occupancy:

The following documentation shall be made available to the responsible party of construction or building owner at occupancy;

(a) A completed and signed copy of the Certificate of Installation and the Certificate of Acceptance Test, form(s);

(b) If supplied by the manufacturer, a copy of the manufacturer's warranty and user manual;~~.~~

(c) ASTM E 903 test results and, if applicable, ASTM E1175 results should also be retained by the building owner.

NA7.5 *Mechanical Systems Acceptance Tests*

NA7.5.1 Outdoor Air

NA7.5.1.1 Variable Air Volume Systems Outdoor Air Acceptance

NA7.5.1.1.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Sensor used to control outdoor air flow is either factory calibrated or field calibrated.

(b) Attach calibration certification or results.

(c) Dynamic damper control is being used to control outside air.

(d) Specify the type of dynamic control being utilized to control outside air.

(e) Specify the method of delivering outside air to the unit.

(f) Pre-occupancy purge has been programmed for the 1-hour period immediately before the building is normally occupied.

NA7.5.1.1.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: If the system has an outdoor air economizer, force the economizer high limit to disable economizer control (e.g. for a fixed drybulb high limit, lower the setpoint below the current outdoor air temperature).

Step 2: Adjust supply airflow to achieve design airflow or maximum airflow at full cooling. Verify and document the following:

(a) Measured outside airflow reading is within 10 percent of the total ventilation air called for in the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) Outside air damper position stabilizes within 5 minutes.

Step 3: Adjust supply airflow to either the sum of the minimum zone airflows, full heating, or 30 percent of the total design airflow. Verify and document the following:

(a) Measured outside airflow reading is within 10 percent of the total ventilation air called for in the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) Outside air damper position stabilizes within 5 minutes.

Step 4: Restore system to “as-found” operating conditions

NA7.5.1.2 Constant Volume System Outdoor Air Acceptance

NA7.5.1.2.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) System is designed to provide a fixed minimum OSA when the unit is on.

(b) Specify the method of delivering outside air to the unit.

(c) Pre-occupancy purge has been programmed for the 1-hour period immediately before the building is normally occupied.

(d) Minimum position is marked on the outside air damper.

(e) The system has means of maintaining the minimum outdoor air damper position.

NA7.5.1.2.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: If the system has an outdoor air economizer, force the economizer to the minimum position and stop outside air damper modulation (e.g. for a fixed drybulb high limit, lower the setpoint below the current outdoor air temperature).

(a) Measured outside airflow reading is within 10 percent of the total ventilation air called for in the Certificate of Compliance.

NA7.5.2 Constant-Volume, Single-Zone, Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps

NA7.5.2.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Thermostat is located within the space-conditioning zone that is served by the HVAC system.

(b) Thermostat meets the temperature adjustment and dead band requirements of Standards §120.2(b).

(c) Occupied, unoccupied, and holiday schedules have been programmed as specified by the facility’s schedule.

(d) Pre-occupancy purge has been programmed to meet the requirements of Standards §120.1(d)2.

NA7.5.2.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Disable economizer and demand control ventilation systems (if applicable).

Step 2: Simulate a heating demand during the occupied condition. Verify and document the following:

(a) Supply fan operates continually.

(b) The unit provides heating.

(c) No cooling is provided by the unit.

(d) Outside air damper is at minimum position.

Step 3: Simulate operation in the dead band during occupied condition. Verify and document the following:

(e) Supply fan operates continually.

(f) Neither heating nor cooling is provided by the unit.

(g) Outside air damper is at minimum position.

Step 4: Simulate cooling demand during occupied condition. Lock out economizer (if applicable). Verify and document the following:

(h) Supply fan operates continually.

(i) The unit provides cooling.

(j) No heating is provided by the unit.

(k) Outside air damper is at minimum position.

Step 5: Simulate operation in the dead band during unoccupied mode. Verify and document the following:

(l) Supply fan is off.

(m) Outside air damper is fully closed.

(n) Neither heating nor cooling is provided by the unit.

Step 6: Simulate heating demand during unoccupied conditions. Verify and document the following:

(o) Supply fan is on (either continuously or cycling).

(p) Heating is provided by the unit.

(q) No cooling is provided by the unit.

(r) Outside air damper is either closed or at minimum position.

Step 7: Simulate cooling demand during unoccupied condition. Lock out economizer (if applicable). Verify and document the following:

(s) Supply fan is on (either continuously or cycling).

(t) Cooling is provided by the unit.

(u) No heating is provided by the unit.

(v) Outside air damper is either closed or at minimum position.

Step 8: Simulate manual override during unoccupied condition. Verify and document the following:

(w) System operates in “occupied” mode.

(x) System reverts to “unoccupied” mode when manual override time period expires.

Step 9: Restore economizer and demand control ventilation systems (if applicable), and remove all system overrides initiated during the test.

NA7.5.3 Air Distribution Systems

NA7.5.3.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing on new duct systems, verify and document the following:

(a) Duct connections meet the requirements of Standards §120.4.

(b) Specify choice of drawbands.

(c) Flexible ducts are not constricted in any way.

(d) Duct leakage tests shall be performed before access to ductwork and connections are blocked.

(e) Joints and seams are properly sealed according to the requirements of Standards §120.4.

(f) Joints and seams are not sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive tape unless used in combination with Mastic and drawbands. Cloth backed tape may be used if tape has been approved by the CEC. Ducts are fully accessible for testing.

(g) Insulation R-Values meet the minimum requirements of §120.4(a).Insulation is protected from damage and suitable for outdoor service if applicable as specified by Standards §120.4(f).

Prior to Functional Testing on all new and existing duct systems, visually inspect to verify that the following locations have been sealed:

(h) Connections to plenums and other connections to the forced air unit;

(i) Refrigerant line and other penetrations into the forced air unit;

(j) Air handler door panel (do not use permanent sealing material, metal tape is acceptable);

(k) Register boots sealed to surrounding material; and

(l) Connections between lengths of duct, as well as connections to takeoffs, wyes, tees, and splitter boxes.

NA7.5.3.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Perform duct leakage test as specified by Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2 to verify the duct leakage conforms to the requirements of Standards §120.4(g)~~140.4(l)1~~ and §141.0(b)2Dii.

Step 2: Obtain HERS Rater field verification as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1. Or at the discretion of the enforcement agency, field verification may be satisfied by the ATT as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.9.

NA7.5.4 Air Economizer Controls and Exhaust Air Heat Recovery

NA7.5.4.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Economizer or heat recovery bypass high limit shutoff control complies with Table 140.4-E of Section140.4(e)2.

(b) If the high-limit control is fixed dry-bulb or fixed enthalpy + fixed dry-bulb, it shall have an adjustable setpoint.

(c) Economizer or heat recovery bypass lockout control sensor is located to prevent false readings.

(d) Sensor performance curve is provided by factory with economizer or heat recovery bypass instruction material.

(e) Sensor output value measured during sensor calibration is plotted on the performance curve.

(f) Economizer or heat recovery bypass damper moves freely without binding.

    1. Indicate if bypass control is achieved through heat/energy recovery wheel rotation speed modulation as means other than air dampers,

(g) Economizer or heat recovery bypass has control systems, including two-stage or electronic thermostats, that cycle compressors off when economizers or heat recovery bypass can provide partial cooling.

(h) Economizer reliability features are present as specified by Standards Section 140.4(e)2D.

    1. Indicate N/A for heat recovery bypass.

(i) Economizer inlet damper is designed to modulate up to 100 percent open, and return air damper to 100 percent closed, without over-pressurizing the building.

    1. Indicate N/A for heat recovery bypass.

(j) For systems with DDC controls lockout sensor(s) are either factory calibrated or field calibrated.

(k) For systems with non-DDC controls, manufacturer's startup and testing procedures have been applied.

(l) The economizer has been certified to the Energy Commission as specified by Section 140.4(e)2Diii.

    1. Indicate N/A for heat recovery bypass.

NA7.5.4.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Disable demand control ventilation systems (if applicable).

Step 2: Enable the economizer and simulate a cooling demand large enough to drive the ~~economizer~~ system into full economizer cooling mode (e.g., the economizer or heat recovery bypass is fully open. Verify and document the following:

(a) Economizer or heat recovery bypass damper is 100 percent open and return air damper is 100 percent closed.

    1. If bypass is achieved through heat/energy recovery wheel rotation speed modulation, wheel speed is fully stopped.

(b) All applicable fans and dampers operate as intended to maintain building pressure.

(c) The unit heating is disabled (if unit has heating capability).

Step 3: Disable the economizer and simulate a cooling demand. Verify and document the following:

(d) Economizer damper closes to its minimum position.

(e) All applicable fans and dampers operate as intended to maintain building pressure.

(f) The unit heating is disabled (if unit has heating capability).

(g) Indicate N/A for this step for heat recovery bypass.

Step 4: If unit has heating capability, simulate a heating demand and set the economizer so that it is capable of operating (i.e. actual outdoor air conditions are below lockout setpoint). Verify the following:

For economizer systems

(h) The economizer is at minimum position.

(i) Return air damper opens.

For HRV/ERV or DOAS systems:

(j) Heat recovery bypass control modulates bypass damper/wheel speed to control temperature setpoint

Step 5: Turn off the unit. Verify and document the following:

(k) Economizer damper closes completely.

(l) Indicate N/A for this step for heat recovery bypass.

Step 6: Restore demand control ventilation systems (if applicable) and remove all system overrides initiated during the test.

NA7.5.5 Demand Control Ventilation (DCV) Systems

NA7.5.5.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Carbon dioxide control sensor is factory calibrated as specified by §120.1(d)4.

(b) The sensor is located in the high density space between 3 ft and 6 ft above the floor or at the anticipated level of the occupants' heads.

(c) DCV control setpoint is at or below the CO_2 concentration permitted by §120.1(d)4~~.~~C.

NA7.5.5.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Disable economizer controls.

Step 2: Simulate a signal at or slightly above the CO_2 concentration setpoint required by §120.1(d)4~~.~~C. Verify and document the following:

(a) For single zone units, outdoor air damper modulates open to satisfy the total ventilation air called for in the Certificate of Compliance.

(b) For multiple zone units, the zone damper (or outdoor air damper when applicable) modulates open to satisfy the zone ventilation requirements.

Step 3: Simulate signal well below the CO_2 setpoint. Verify and document the following:

(c) For single zone units, outdoor air damper modulates to the design minimum value.

(d) For multiple zone units, the zone damper (or outdoor air damper when applicable) modulates to satisfy the reduced zone ventilation requirements.

Step 4: Restore economizer controls and remove all system overrides initiated during the test.

Step 5: With all controls restored, apply CO_2 calibration gas at a concentration slightly above the setpoint to the sensor. Verify that the outdoor air damper modulates open to satisfy the total ventilation air called for in the Certificate of Compliance.

NA7.5.6 Supply Fan Variable Flow Controls

NA7.5.6.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Supply fan includes device(s) for modulating airflow, such as variable speed drive or electrically commutated motor.

(b) For multiple zone systems:

1. Discharge static pressure sensors are either factory calibrated or field-calibrated.
2. The static pressure location, setpoint, and reset control meets the requirements of §140.4(c)2.A and §140.4(c)2.B.

NA7.5.6.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Simulate demand for full design airflow. Verify and document the following:

(a) Supply fan controls modulate to increase capacity.

(b) For multiple zone systems, supply fan maintains discharge static pressure within +/-10 percent of the current operating setpoint.

(c) Supply fan controls stabilize within a 5 minute period.

Step 2: Simulate demand for reduced or minimum airflow. Verify and document the following:

(d) Supply fan controls modulate to decrease capacity.

(e) Current operating setpoint has decreased (for systems with DDC to the zone level).

(f) For multiple zone systems, supply fan maintains discharge static pressure within +/-10 percent of the current operating setpoint.

(g) Supply fan controls stabilize within a 5 minute period.

Step 3: Restore system to correct operating conditions.

NA7.5.7 Valve Leakage Test

NA7.5.7.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Valve and piping arrangements were installed as specified by the design drawings.

NA7.5.7.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: For each of the pumps serving the distribution system, dead head the pumps using the discharge isolation valves at the pumps. Document the following:

(a) Record the differential pressure across the pumps.

(b) Verify that this is within 5 percent of the submittal data for the pump.

Step 2: Reopen the pump discharge isolation valves. Automatically close all valves on the systems being tested. If 3-way valves are present, close off the bypass line. Verify and document the following:

(c) The valves automatically close.

(d) Record the pressure differential across the pump.

(e) Verify that the pressure differential is within 5 percent of the reading from Step 1 for the pump that is operating during the valve test.

Step 3: Restore system to correct operating conditions.

NA7.5.8 Supply Water Temperature Reset Controls

NA7.5.8.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Supply water temperature sensors have been either factory or field calibrated.

NA7.5.8.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Change reset control variable to its maximum value. Verify and document the following:

(a) Chilled or hot water temperature setpoint is reset to appropriate value.

(b) Verify that actual supply temperature changes to within 2 percent of the new setpoint.

Step 2: Change reset control variable to its minimum value. Verify and document the following:

(c) Chilled or hot water temperature setpoint is reset to appropriate value.

(d) Verify that actual supply temperature changes to within 2 percent of the new setpoint.

Step 3: Restore reset control variable to automatic control. Verify and document the following:

(e) Chilled or hot water temperature set-point is reset to appropriate value.

(f) Verify that actual supply temperature changes to within 2 percent of the new setpoint.

NA7.5.9 Hydronic System Variable Flow Controls

NA7.5.9.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The static pressure location, setpoint, and reset control meets the requirements of the Standards Section 140.4(k)6B.

(b) Pressure sensors are either factory or field calibrated.

NA7.5.9.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Modulate control valves to reduce water flow to 50 percent of the design flow or less, but not lower than the pump minimum flow. Verify and document the following:

(a) Pump operating speed decreases (for systems with DDC to the zone level).

(b) Current operating setpoint has not increased (for all other systems that are not DDC).

(c) System pressure is within 5 percent of current operating setpoint.

(d) System operation stabilizes within 5 minutes after test procedures are initiated.

Step 2: Open control valves to increase water flow to a minimum of 90 percent design flow. Verify and document the following:

(e) Pump speed increases.

(f) Pumps are operating at 100 percent speed.

(g) System pressure is greater than the setpoint in Step 1.

(h) System pressure is either within ±5 percent of current operating setpoint. System operation stabilizes within 5 minutes after test procedures are initiated.

Step 3: Restore system to correct operating conditions.

NA7.5.10 Automatic Demand Shed Control Acceptance

NA7.5.10.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Acceptance Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) That the EMCS interface enables activation of the central demand shed controls.

NA7.5.10.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Engage the global demand shed system. Verify and document the following:

(a) That the cooling setpoint in non-critical spaces increases by the proper amount.

(b) That the cooling setpoint in critical spaces do not change.

Step 2: Disengage the global demand shed system. Verify and document the following:

(c) That the cooling setpoint in non-critical spaces return to their original values.

(d) That the cooling setpoint in critical spaces do not change.

NA7.5.11 Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) for Packaged Direct-Expansion Units

NA7.5.11.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Verify fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) hardware is installed on HVAC unit.

(b) Verify the FDD system matches the make and model reported on the design drawings.

(c) Verify the following air temperature sensors are permanently installed:

1. Outside air.
2. Supply air.
3. Return air.

(d) Verify the controller has the capability of displaying the value of the following parameters:

1. Air temperatures: outside air, supply air, return air.

(e) Verify the controller provides system status by indicating the following conditions:

1. Free cooling available.
2. Economizer enabled.
3. Compressor enabled.
4. Heating enabled.
5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.

NA7.5.11.2 Functional Testing

For each HVAC unit to be tested, complete the following:

NA7.5.11.2.1 Functional Testing for Air Temperature Sensor Failure/Fault

Step 1: Verify the FDD system indicates normal operation.

Step 2: Disconnect outside air temperature sensor from unit controller. Verify and document the following:

(a) FDD system reports a fault.

Step 3: Connect outside air temperature sensor to unit controller. Verify and document the following:

(b) FDD system indicates normal operation.

NA7.5.11.2.2 Functional Testing for Excess Outside Air

Step 1: Coordinate this test with NA7.5.1 Outdoor Air.

(a) If NA7.5.1 Outdoor Air passes, verify FDD system indicates normal operation.

NA7.5.11.2.3 Functional Testing for Economizer Operation

Step 1: Interfere with normal unit operation so test NA7.5.4 Air Economizer Controls fails by immobilizing the outdoor air economizer damper according to manufacturer's instructions.

(a) After NA7.5.4 Air Economizer Controls fails, verify FDD system reports a fault.

Step 2: Successfully complete and pass NA7.5.4 Air Economizer Controls.

(b) After NA7.5.4 Air Economizer Controls passes, verify FDD system reports normal operation.

NA7.5.12 Automatic Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) for Air Handling Units and Zone Terminal Units.

NA7.5.12.1 Construction Inspection for Air Handling Units

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

a) Verify on the submittal documents or sensor specifications that locally installed supply air, outside air, and return air (if applicable) temperature sensors have an accuracy of ±2ºF over the range of 40ºF to 80ºF.

NA7.5.12.2 Functional Testing for Air Handling Unit Economizers

Testing of each AHU with FDD controls shall include the following tests.

(a) Bypass alarm delays.

Step 1: If applicable, bypass alarm delays to ensure that faults generate alarms immediately.

(b) Sensor failure:

Step 1: Disconnect local supply air temperature sensor from unit controller.

Step 2: Verify that the FDD system reports a fault.

Step 3: Connect SAT sensor to the unit controller.

Step 4: Verify that FDD indicates normal system operation and clear all faults and alarms.

Step 5: If the outside air temperature sensor is local, disconnect the local OAT from the unit controller.

Step 6: Verify that the FDD system reports a fault.

Step 7: Connect the local OAT sensor to the unit controller.

Step 8: Verify that FDD indicates normal system operation and clear all faults and alarms.

(c) Inappropriate economizing:

Step 1: Override the operating state to occupied heating mode by overriding zone thermostat(s) to create a heating demand and overriding the OAT sensor below the low limit lockout.

Step 2: From the control system workstation, override the economizer dampers to 100 percent outdoor air.

Step 3: Verify that a fault is reported at the control workstation.

Step 4: Remove the economizer damper override and verify that the control system indicates normal system operation.

Step 5: Remove all overrides and clear all faults and alarms.

Step 6: Override the operating state to economizer-only cooling mode by overriding zone thermostat(s) to create a cooling demand and overriding the OAT sensor so that free cooling is available.

Step 7: From the control system workstation, override the economizer dampers to 0 percent outdoor air.

Step 8: Verify that a fault is reported at the control workstation.

Step 9: Remove the economizer damper override and verify that the control system indicates normal system operation.

Step 10: Remove all overrides and clear all faults and alarms.

(d) Reinstate alarm delay.

Step 1: Reinstate alarm delays to ensure that faults generate alarms as before step (a), if applicable.

NA7.5.12.3 Functional Testing for Air Handling Unit Valves

(a) Bypass alarm delays

Step 1: If applicable, bypass alarm delays to ensure that faults generate alarms immediately

(b) Valve/actuator fault:

Step 1: Override the operating state to occupied cooling mode by overriding zone thermostat(s) to create a cooling demand and overriding the OAT sensor to 90ºF.

Step 2: From the control system workstation, override the heating coil valves to the full open position (100 percent~~%~~ heating mode).

Step 3: Verify flow through the valve by differential temperature or differential pressure method.

Step 4: Verify that a fault is reported at the control workstation.

Step 5: Remove the heating coil valve override and verify that the control system indicates normal system operation.

Step 6: Remove all overrides and clear all faults and alarms.

Step 7: Override the operating state to occupied heating mode by overriding zone thermostat(s) to create a heating demand and overriding the OAT sensor to 40ºF.

Step 8: From the control system workstation, override the cooling coil valve to the full open position (100 percent~~%~~ cooling mode).

Step 9: Verify flow through the valve by differential temperature or differential pressure method.

Step 10: Verify that a fault is reported at the control workstation.

Step 11: Remove the cooling coil valve override and verify that the control system indicates normal system operation.

Step 12: Remove all overrides and clear all faults and alarms.

(c) Reinstate alarm delay.

Step 1: Reinstate alarm delays to ensure that faults generate alarms as before Step (a), if applicable.

NA7.5.12.4 Functional Testing for Zone Terminal Units

Testing shall be performed on one of each type of terminal unit (VAV box) in the project. A minimum of 5 percent of the terminal boxes shall be tested.

(a) Sensor drift/failure:

Step 1: Disconnect the tubing to the differential pressure sensor of the VAV box.

Step 2: Verify that control system detects and reports the fault.

Step 3: Reconnect the sensor and verify proper sensor operation.

Step 4: Verify that the control system does not report a fault.

(b) Damper/actuator fault:

1. Damper stuck open.

   Step 1: Command the damper to be fully open (room temperature above setpoint).

   Step 2: Disconnect the actuator to the damper.

   Step 3: Adjust the cooling setpoint so that the room temperature is below the cooling setpoint to command the damper to the minimum position. Verify that the control system reports a fault.

   Step 4: Reconnect the actuator and restore to normal operation.

2. Damper stuck closed.

   Step 1: Set the damper to the minimum position.

Step 2: Disconnect the actuator to the damper.

Step 3: Set the cooling setpoint below the room temperature to simulate a call for cooling. Verify that the control system reports a fault.

Step 4: Reconnect the actuator and restore to normal operation.

(c) Valve/actuator fault (For systems with hydronic reheat):

Step 1: Command the reheat coil valve to (full) open.

Step 2: Disconnect power to the actuator. Set the heating setpoint temperature to be lower than the current space temperature, to command the valve closed. Verify that the fault is reported at the control workstation.

Step 3: Reconnect the actuator and restore normal operation.

(d) Feedback loop tuning fault (unstable airflow):

Step 1: Set the integral coefficient of the box controller to a value 50 times the current value.

Step 2: The damper cycles continuously and airflow is unstable. Verify that the control system detects and reports the fault.

Step 3: Reset the integral coefficient of the controller to the original value to restore normal operation.

(e) Disconnected inlet duct:

Step 1: From the control system workstation, commands the damper to full closed, then disconnect power to the actuator and verify that a fault is reported at the control workstation.

(f) Discharge air temperature sensor:

Step 1: Adjust zone setpoints to drive the box from dead band to full heating.

Step 2: Verify that in heating, the supply air temperature resets up to the maximum setpoint while the airflow is maintained at the dead band flow rate.

Step 3: Verify that after the supply air temperature is reset up to the maximum setpoint, the airflow rate then increases up to the heating maximum flow rate in order to meet the heating load.

NA7.5.13 Distributed Energy Storage DX AC Systems Acceptance Tests[3]

These acceptance requirements apply only to constant or variable volume, direct expansion (DX) systems with distributed energy storage (DES/DXAC). These acceptance requirements are in addition to those for other systems or equipment such as economizers, packaged equipment, etc.

---

[3] From AEC, Distributed Energy Storage for Direct-Expansion Air Conditioners, January 27, 2005

NA7.5.13.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Performance Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The water tank is filled to the proper level.

(b) The water tank is sitting on a foundation with adequate structural strength.

(c) The water tank is insulated and the top cover is in place.

(d) The DES/DXAC is installed correctly (refrigerant piping, etc.).

(e) Verify that the correct model number is installed and configured.

NA7.5.13.2 Equipment Testing

Step 1: Simulate cooling load during daytime period (e.g. by setting time schedule to include actual time and placing thermostat cooling set-point below actual temperature). Verify and document the following:

(a) Supply fan operates continually.

(b) If the DES/DXAC has cooling capacity, DES/DXAC runs to meet the cooling demand (in ice melt mode).

(c) If the DES/DXAC has no ice and there is a call for cooling, the DES/DXAC runs in direct cooling mode.

Step 2: Simulate no cooling load during daytime condition. Verify and document the following:

(d) Supply fan operates as specified by the facility thermostat or control system.

(e) The DES/DXAC and the condensing unit do not run.

Step 3: Simulate no cooling load during morning shoulder time period. Verify and document the following:

(f) The DES/DXAC is idle.

Step 4: Simulate a cooling load during morning shoulder time period. Verify and document the following:

(g) The DES/DXAC runs in direct cooling mode.

NA7.5.13.3 Calibrating Controls

Set the proper time and date, as specified by manufacturer’s installation manual for approved installers.

NA7.5.14 Thermal Energy Storage (TES) Systems

The following acceptance tests apply to thermal energy storage systems that are used in conjunction with chilled water air conditioning systems.

NA7.5.14.1 Eligibility Criteria

The following types of TES systems are eligible for compliance credit:

(a) Chilled Water Storage

(b) Ice-on-Coil Internal Melt

(c) Ice-on-Coil External Melt

(d) Ice Harvester

(e) Brine

(f) Ice-Slurry

(g) Eutectic Salt

(h) Clathrate Hydrate Slurry (CHS)

(i) Cryogenic

(j) Encapsulated (e.g. Ice Balls)

The following Certificate of Compliance information for both the chiller and the storage tank shall be provided on the plans to document the key TES System parameters and allow plan check comparison to the inputs used in the compliance software.

Chiller:

(k) Brand and Model

(l) Type (Centrifugal, Reciprocating, Other)

(m) Heat Rejection Type (Air, Water, Other)

(n) Charge Mode Capacity (Tons)

(o) Discharge Mode Capacity (Tons)

(p) Discharge Mode Efficiency (kW/Ton or EER)

(q) Charge Mode Efficiency (kW/Ton or EER)

(r) Fluid Type and Percentage

Storage Tank:

(s) Brand and Model

(t) Number of Tanks

(u) Storage Capacity per Tank (ton-hours)

(v) Storage Rate (tons)

(w) Minimum Charging Temperature

(x) Discharge Rate (tons)

NA7.5.14.2 Functional Testing

Acceptance testing also shall be conducted and documented on the Certificate of Acceptance in two parts:

In the TES System Design Verification part, the installing contractor shall certify the following information, which verifies proper installation of the TES System consistent with system design expectations:

(a) Chiller(s) start-up procedure has been completed.

(b) System fluid test and balance has been completed.

(c) Air separation and purge has been completed.

(d) Fluid (e.g. glycol) has been verified at the concentration and type indicated on the design documents.

(e) The TES system has been fully charged at least once and the charge duration noted.

(f) The system has been partially discharged at least once and the discharge duration noted.

(g) The system is in a partial charge state in preparation for step 2 tests.

(h) The schedule of operation has been activated as designed.

(i) Mode documentation describes the state of system components in each mode of operation.

In the TES System Controls and Operation Verification part, the installing contractor also shall complete the following acceptance testing to ensure the TES System is controlled and operates consistent with the compliance simulation. The installing contractor shall convey the results of the testing to the enforcement agency using the Certificate of Acceptance.

(a) Verify that the TES system and the chilled water plant is controlled and monitored by an energy management system (EMS).

(b) Indicate the method of simulation that will be used during the test. Either manual selection of each operating mode or the use of an EMS by inputting the schedule as indicated by the designer.

(c) Storage/charge mode. Manually select storage mode. Verify that the TES system stores energy. If scheduled, input the time interval that would result in storage/charge mode. Verify that the TES system stores energy.

(d) End of charge signal. Simulate a full storage charge by changing the (manufacturer recommended) thermal storage end of charge output sensor to the EMS. Verify that the storage charging has stopped.

(e) Discharge mode. Generate a call for cooling. Manually select storage only discharge mode. Verify that the TES system starts discharging with the compressors off. Return to the off/secured mode. If scheduled, input the time interval that would result in discharge mode and verify that the storage starts discharging with the compressors off.

(f) Mechanical cooling only mode. Generate a call for cooling. Manually select mechanical cooling only mode and verify that the storage does not discharge and the cooling load is met by the compressor only. Return to the off/secure mode. If scheduled, input the time interval that would result in mechanical cooling only mode and verify that the storage does not discharge and the cooling load is met by the compressor only.

(g) Discharge and mechanical cooling mode. Generate a call for cooling. Manually select discharge and mechanical cooling mode and verify that the TES system discharges with the compressor sharing the load. If scheduled, input the time interval that would result in discharge and mechanical cooling mode and verify that the storage starts discharging with the compressor sharing the load.

(h) Off/storage-secured mode. Manually select the off/storage-secured mode and verify that the storage does not discharge and all compressors are off, regardless of the presence of calls for cooling. If scheduled, input the time interval that would result in off/storage-secured mode and verify that the storage does not discharge and all compressors are off, regardless of the presence of calls for cooling.

(i) Charge plus cool mode. If provisions for this mode have been made by the system designer, verify that the tank(s) can be charged while serving an active cooling load, simulated by generating a call for cooling and entering the charge mode either manually or by time schedule. If the system disallows this mode of operation, verify that the energy storage is disallowed or discontinued while an active cooling load is present.

NA7.5.15 Supply Air Temperature Reset Controls

The following acceptance tests apply to supply air temperature reset controls.

NA7.5.15.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Supply air temperature reset controls are installed as specified by the requirements of the Section 140.4(f).

(b) All system air temperature sensors are factory or field calibrated within 2% of a calibrated reference temperature sensor. Attach a copy of the calibration certificate or field verification results.

(c) Document current supply air temperature.

NA7.5.15.2 Functional Testing

(a) Check to make sure that chilled and hot water coils, if used, are not already fully open and calling for maximum cooling/heating. If this is the case, reverse Steps 1 and 2 and/or change the setpoint range as necessary to conduct this test.

(b) Identify the reset controller parameter.

Step 1: During occupied mode, adjust the reset control parameter to decrease the supply air temperature (to the lower supply temperature limit). Verify and document the following:

(a) Supply air temperature controls modulate as intended.

(b) Actual supply air temperature decreases to meet the new setpoint within ±2ºF.

(c) Supply air temperature stabilizes within 15 minutes.

Step 2: During occupied mode, adjust the reset control parameter to increase the supply air temperature (to the upper supply temperature limit). Verify and document the following:

(a) Supply air temperature controls modulate as intended.

(b) Actual supply air temperature increases to meet the new setpoint within ±2ºF.

(c) Supply air temperature stabilizes within 15 minutes.

Step 3: Restore reset control parameter to automatic control. Verify and document the following:

(a) Supply air temperature controls modulate as intended.

(b) Actual supply air temperature changes to meet the new setpoint within ±2ºF.

(c) Supply air temperature stabilizes within 15 minutes.

NA7.5.16 Condenser Water Supply Temperature Reset Controls

The following acceptance tests apply to condenser water temperature reset controls.

NA7.5.16.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Condenser water supply system, control system, and temperature control sequence, including condenser water supply high and low limits, are available and documented in the building documents.

(b) Cooling tower fan motors are operational, and cooling tower fan speed controls (e.g. VSDs) are installed, operational, and connected to cooling tower fan motors as specified by Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) start-up manuals and sequence of operation.

(c) Cooling tower fan control sequence, including tower design wetbulb temperature and approach, is available and documented in the building documents.

(d) The following temperature sensors are installed as specified by the plans: outdoor air dry-bulb, outdoor air wet-bulb, entering condenser water, and leaving chilled water. Note any discrepancies.

(e) All ambient dry bulb temperature, relative humidity, and pressure sensors used by controller are factory calibrated within 2% of a calibrated reference sensor. Attach a copy of calibration certificate or field verification results.

(f) Document the current outdoor air dry bulb and wet bulb temperatures, entering condenser water temperature, and leaving chilled water temperature readings from the control system.

NA7.5.16.2 Functional Testing

(a) The system cooling load must be sufficiently high to run the test. If necessary, artificially increase the evaporator load to perform the functional tests, or wait until a time of stable chiller operation. If necessary, reverse Steps 1 and 2 in the test based on atmospheric conditions and buildings loads.

(b) If testing in cold ambient conditions, ensure that freeze protection controls are installed and functional to prevent equipment damage.

(c) If the actual control sequence differs significantly from that implied by the tests and/or has already been tested during the building commissioning process, attach a description of the control sequence, a description of the tests that were done to verify the system operates according to the sequence, the test results, and a plot of associated trend data.

(d) Identify the reset control parameter.

Step 1: Adjust the reset control parameter to decrease the condenser water supply temperature toward the lower supply temperature limit. Allow time for the system to stabilize. Verify and document the following:

(a) Condenser water supply temperature controls modulate as intended.

(b) Actual condenser water supply temperature decreases to meet the new setpoint within ±2ºF.

(c) Cooling tower fan(s) stage properly and/or adjust speed accordingly to meet higher setpoint.

(d) Chiller load amperage decrease.

Step 2: Adjust the reset control parameter to increase the condenser water supply temperature toward the upper supply temperature limit.

Verify and document the following:

(e) Condenser water supply temperature controls modulate as intended.

(f) Actual condenser water supply temperature increases to meet the new setpoint within ±2ºF.

(g) Cooling tower fan(s) stage properly and/or adjust speed accordingly to meet the lower setpoint.

(h) Chiller load amperage increase.

Step 3: Restore reset control parameter to automatic control. Verify and document the following:

(i) Condenser water supply temperature controls modulate as intended.

(j) Actual condenser water supply temperature changes to meet the new setpoint.

(k) Cooling tower fan(s) and chiller(s) stage properly and/or adjust speed accordingly to return to normal operation and meet the setpoint.

NA7.5.17 Occupied Standby

NA7.5.17.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional Testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Confirm that all spaces served by the zone are eligible to be in occupied standby mode as specified in Section §120.2(e)3.

(b) Verify that the occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor is placed so that it can detect occupants in the space without obstruction. Repeat for all spaces served by the zone.

(c) Confirm that the mechanical system is controlled by an independent signal if the occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor also controls the lighting.

~~(b) Confirm that the space is designated as elgible to be in occupied standby mode as specified in Section §120.2(e)3.~~

NA7.5.17.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Put the zone in occupied mode (i.e., adjust the occupancy schedule)

Step 2: Physically occupy the space and confirm that the ~~occupancy~~ occupant sensor detect the presence of an occupant in the zone.

Step 3: Adjust the thermostatic control so that the ~~system~~ space temperature is within the deadband.

Step 4: Confirm that the zone is supplied with minimum ventilation.

Step 5: Adjust setpoint outside of occupied heating/cooling ~~deadmand~~ deadband but inside the occupied standby deadband. Confi~~o~~rm the zone is in heating or cooling mode.

Step 6: Physically vacate all spaces served by the zone.

Step 7: For space conditioning systems that also provide ventilation to the zone, ~~Confirm~~ confirm that within 5 minutes of occupant sensing controls indicating that the zone is unoccupied~~being vacated~~ the setpoint is setup or setback and the zone is within the occupied standby deadband. Occupant sensing controls may have a time delay of up to 20 minutes before indicating the space is unoccupied and occupant sensing zone controls may allow up to an additional 5-minute time delay after occupant sensing controls have indicated all rooms served by the zone are unoccupied before resetting zone temperature setpoints and shutting off zone ventilation air).

Step 8: Confirm that no ventilation is being supplied to the space with the occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor.

Step 9: Put the zone in pre-occupancy ventilation mode (i.e. adjust the occupancy schedule to one hour prior to normal scheduled occupancy).

Step 10: Physically vacate all spaces served by the zone.

Commented [YJW2]: Multizone occupant sensing (occupied-standby).
Grammatical error. It should read "5-minute time delay" instead of "5 minute time delay".

Step 11: Confirm that within 5 minutes of occupant sensing controls indicating that all spaces served by the zone are unoccupied, the zone is supplied with pre-occupancy ventilation rate of Section 120.1(d)2: either the minimum rate of outdoor air required by Section 120.1(c) or three complete air changes is supplied to the zone during the one hour period immediately before the zone is scheduled to be occupied. (See Step 7 concerning maximum occupant sensing control time delay).

Step 12: Occupy a space served by the zone during the one hour immediately prior to scheduled occupancy. Confirm that the zone is supplied with pre-occupancy ventilation rate of Section 120.1(d)2.

Step ~~9~~13: Restore the system to normal operation.

NA7.6 *Indoor Lighting Controls* ~~*Control*~~ *Acceptance* ~~*Requirements*~~*Tests*

~~Lighting control acceptance testing shall be performed on:~~

~~(a) Automatic Daylighting Controls complying with Section 130.1(d).~~

~~(b) Shut-off Controls complying with Section 130.1(c).~~

~~(c) Demand Responsive Controls in accordance with Section 130.1(e).~~

NA7.6.1 Automatic Daylighting Controls Acceptance Tests

NA7.6.1.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional testing, verify and document the following:

~~Verify that automatic daylighting controls qualify as one of the required control types, are installed, and fully functional in accordance with each applicable requirement in Section 130.1(d), and list each specific exception claimed, from Section 130.1(d).~~(a) The daylit zones are shown on plans documents.

~~(b)~~ The general lighting in skylit daylit zones, primary sidelit daylit zones and secondary sidelit daylit zones is controlled by automatic daylighting controls. In parking garages, the general lighting in the combined primary and secondary sidelit daylit zones is controlled by automatic daylighting controls.

~~(c)~~ The automatic daylighting controls provide separate control for luminaires in each type of daylit zone. General lighting in overlapping skylit daylit zone and a sidelit daylit zone are controlled as part of the skylit zone. General lighting in both a primary sidelit daylit zone and secondary sidelit daylit zone are controlled as part of the primary sidelit daylit zone.

~~(d)~~ All photosensors are not readily accessible to unauthorized personnel.

NA7.6.1.2 Functional Testing - Sampling

All photocontrols serving more than 5,000 ft² of daylit area shall undergo functional testing. Photocontrols that are serving smaller spaces may be sampled as follows:

For buildings with up to five (5) photocontrols, all photocontrols shall be tested. For buildings with more than five (5) photocontrols, sampling may be done on spaces with similar sensors and cardinal orientations of glazing; sampling shall include a minimum of one (1) photocontrol for each group of up to five (5) additional photocontrols. If the first photocontrol in the sample group passes the functional test, the remaining ~~building spaces~~photocontrols in the sample group also pass. If the first photocontrol in the sample group fails the functional test, the rest of the photocontrols in the group shall be tested. If any tested photocontrol fails the functional test, it shall be repaired, replaced or adjusted until it passes the test.

For each photocontrol to be tested, ~~do the following:~~

~~Test~~test each group of lights controlled separately by the photocontrol according to the ~~following~~ protocol in NA7.6.1.~~2.1~~4 and NA7.6.1.~~2.2~~5. In all interior spaces other than parking garages, ~~a~~ separate tests ~~shall be~~are conducted for daylighting control of the primary sidelit daylit zone

~~separate from~~and for daylight control of the secondary sidelit daylit zone. In parking garages, the tests are conducted on daylighting controls that control the combined area of the primary and secondary sidelit daylit zone.

NA7.6.1.3 ***RESERVED***

NA7.6.1.4 **Continuous Dimming Control Systems Functional Testing**

~~This requirement is for systems that have more than 10 levels of controlled light output in a given zone~~Continuous dimming control systems provide more than 10 levels of controlled light output per zone.

(a) **Reference Location**. Identify the minimum daylight~~ing~~ location in the controlled zone (Reference Location) for each daylit zone type (skylit, primary sidelit, and secondary sidelit) in the space. This can be identified using either the illuminance method or the distance method and will be used for illuminance measurements in subsequent tests. For parking garages, the reference location should always be the farthest edge of the secondary sidelit daylit zone away from the opening or glazing.

Illuminance Method

~~Turn OFF controlled lighting and measure daylight illuminance within zones illuminated by controlled luminaires.~~

~~Identify the~~The Reference Location ~~; this~~ is the task location with lowest daylight illuminance in the zone illuminated by controlled luminaires.

Turn off controlled lighting and measure daylight illuminance within zones illuminated by controlled luminaires. (Note: turn the controlled lighting back on before proceeding to the No Daylight Test)

~~This location will be used for illuminance measurements in subsequent tests.~~

Distance Method

~~Identify~~ The Reference Location is the task location within the zone illuminated by controlled luminaires that is farthest away from daylight sources. ~~This is the Reference Location and will be used for illuminance measurements in subsequent tests.~~

(b) **No ~~daylight~~ Daylight ~~test~~Test**. Simulate or provide conditions without daylight. Verify and document the following:

1. Document the reference illuminance at the Reference Location, which is the electric lighting illuminance level at the Reference Location ~~(identified in NA7.6.1.2.1(a))~~.
2. Automatic daylight control system ~~provides appropriate control so that electric lighting system is providing~~turns on all controlled lighting to full light output (full design output, or full programmed output) unless it has been documented, such as in design documents, that continuous dimming luminaires have been intentionally tuned to less than full light output~~otherwise specified by design documents.~~ ~~For lighting system with institutional tuning of NA7.6.4, include documentation for luminaires claiming the power adjustment factors (PAF) for institutional tuning.~~

3. ~~Document the reference illuminance, which is the electric lighting illuminance level at the reference location identified in Step 1.~~
4. Light output is stable with no ~~discernable~~ visible flicker.

(c) **Full ~~daylight~~ Daylight ~~test~~Test**. ~~Simulate or p~~Simulate or provide bright conditions where the daylight illuminance is greater than 150 percent of the reference illuminance (measured during the No Daylight Test~~ from NA7.6.1.2.2(b)~~). Alternatively, provide simulated bright conditions by shining a bright light into the daylight sensor. Verify and document the following:

1. The controlled ~~L~~lighting power reduction is at least ~~65~~ 90 percent under fully dimmed conditions for non-parking garage locations. For parking garages, the controlled lighting power reduction is 100 percent under fully dimmed conditions.
2. ~~and light output is stable with no discernable flicker.~~
3. Only luminaires in daylit zones are affected by daylight control~~.~~ . If the daylighting control systems~~s~~ controls ~~lighting~~ luminaires outside of the daylight zones including those behind obstructions~~ as described in Section 130.1(d)1~~, the control system is not compliant.
4. ~~If a Power Adjustment Factor is claimed for Daylight Dimming plus OFF controls in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2H, compliant systems shall automatically turn OFF the luminaires that are receiving this credit. This portion of the full daylight test does not apply to lighting systems that are not claiming a Power Adjustment Factor for Daylight Dimming plus OFF controls.~~If a Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) is claimed for daylight continuous dimming plus off controls in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2H; a ~~complaint~~compliant system shall automatically turn off the luminaires in order to pass the Full Daylight Test for daylight continuous dimming plus off controls. This portion of the Full Daylight Test does not apply to lighting systems that are not claiming a PAF for daylight continuous dimming plus off controls.

(d) **Partial ~~daylight~~ Daylight ~~test~~Test**. Simulate or provide daylight conditions where illuminance ~~(fc) from~~ provided only by daylight only at the Reference Location is between 60 and 95 percent of Reference Illuminance measured during the No Daylight Test~~ from NA7.6.1.2.2(b)(fc) documented in Step 2~~. Verify and document the following:

1. Measure that the combined ~~illuminance of~~ daylight and controlled electric lighting ~~(fc)~~illuminance at the ~~reference~~ Reference ~~location~~ Location is no less than the ~~electric lighting illuminance (fc)~~reference illuminance measured at this location during the ~~no~~ No D~~d~~aylight ~~test~~ Test~~documented in Step (d)2~~.
2. ~~Measure~~ Verify that the combined ~~illuminance of~~ daylight and controlled electric lighting~~ (fc)~~ illuminance at the Reference Location is no greater than 150 percent of the reference illuminance~~ (fc) documented in Step (d)2~~.
3. Light output is stable with no ~~discernable~~ visible flicker.

   (Note: only luminaires in daylit zones are affected by daylight control)

(e) **Alternate Partial Daylight Test**. When outdoor horizontal illuminance is at least 4,000 fc and where illuminance from daylight only at the Reference Location (Partial Daylight Illuminance) is no greater than 80 percent of Reference Illuminance measured at this location during the No Daylight Test. Measure the outdoor horizontal illuminance level and the daylight illuminance level, and do not proceed until the aforementioned illuminance criteria are met.

Verify and document the following:

1. Measure the Partial Daylight Illuminance at the Reference Location. This can be measured by turning the electric lighting off. (Turn the electric lighting back on before proceeding to next step.)
2. Measure the combined daylight and controlled electric lighting at the Reference Location.
3. This alternate partial daylight test is passed if the measured illuminance value (from Step 2) is no less than the Reference Illuminance measured at this location during the no daylight test and no greater than Partial Daylight Combined Illuminance Maximum (PDCIM).

   In other words, the measured value must be within the following range in order to pass this test.

   Reference Illuminance (from the no daylight test) ≤ measured illuminance value (from Step 2) ≤ PDCIM,

   where PDCIM = Reference Illuminance (from the no daylight test) + 0.40 x Daylight Illuminance (from Step 1)
4. Light output is stable with no visible flicker.
5. Only luminaires in daylit zones are affected by daylight control.

NA7.6.1.5

NA7.6.1.6 Stepped Switching or Stepped Dimming Control Systems Functional Testing

~~This requirement is for systems that have~~Stepped switching or stepped dimming control systems provide no more than 10 discrete steps of control of light output.

~~If the control has 3 steps of control or less, conduct the following tests for all steps of control. If the control has more than 3 steps of control, testing 3 steps of control is sufficient for showing compliance.~~

~~Identify the minimum daylighting location(s) in the controlled zone. (Reference Location). This can be identified using either the illuminance method or the distance method.~~

~~*Illuminance Method*~~

~~Turn OFF controlled lighting and measure daylight illuminances within a zone illuminated by controlled luminaires.~~

~~Identify the reference location; this is the task location with lowest daylight illuminance in the zone illuminated by controlled luminaires. This location will be used for illuminance measurements in subsequent tests.~~

~~Turn controlled lights back ON.~~

~~*Distance Method*~~

~~Identify the task location within the zone illuminated by controlled luminaires that is farthest away from daylight sources. This is the reference location and will be used for illuminance measurements in subsequent tests.~~

(a) **Reference Location**. Identify the minimum daylight location in the controlled zone (Reference Location) for each daylit zone type (skylit, primary sidelit, and secondary sidelit) in the space. This can be identified using either the illuminance method or the distance method and will be used for illuminance measurements in subsequent tests. For parking garages, the reference location should always be the farthest edge of the secondary sidelit daylit zone away from the opening or glazing.

Illuminance Method

The Reference Location is the task location with lowest daylight illuminance in the zone illuminated by controlled luminaires.

Turn off controlled lighting and measure daylight illuminance within zones illuminated by controlled luminaires. (Note: turn the controlled lighting back on before proceeding to the No Daylight Test)

Distance Method

The Reference Location is the task location within the zone illuminated by controlled luminaires that is farthest away from daylight sources

(b) **No daylight test**. Simulate or provide conditions without daylight ~~for a stepped switching or stepped dimming control system~~. Verify and document the following:

~~1.~~ Document the reference illuminance, which is the electric lighting illuminance level at the Reference Location ~~(identified in NA7.6.1.2.2(a))~~.

~~2. If the control is manually adjusted (not self commissioning), make note of the time delay and override time delay or set time delay to minimum setting. This condition shall be in effect through step 4.~~

~~3. Automatic daylight control system turns ON all stages of controlled lights unless it is documented that multi-level luminaires have been "tuned" to less than full output and providing design illuminance (fc) levels.~~

~~4. Stepped dimming control system provides reduced flicker over the entire operating range as specified by §110.9.~~

~~5.~~ ~~Document the reference illuminance which is the electric lighting illuminance level measured at the reference location identified in Step 1.~~ Automatic daylight control system turns on all stages of controlled lighting to full light output unless it has been documented, such as in design documents, that ~~continuous~~ dimming luminaires have been intentionally tuned to less than full light output. ~~For lighting system with institutional tuning of NA7.7.5.2~~6.4~~, include documentation for luminaires claiming the power adjustment factors (PAF) for institutional tuning~~.

~~6.~~ Light output is stable with no visible flicker.

(c) **Full daylight test**. Simulate or provide bright conditions where the daylight illuminance is greater than 150 percent of the reference illuminance (measured during the No Daylight Test ~~from NA7.6.1.2.1(b)~~). Alternatively, provide simulated bright conditions by shining a bright light into the daylight sensor. Verify and document the following:

~~1.~~ When daylight illuminance is greater than 150 percent of the design illuminance, lighting power reduction is at least 90 percent under fully dimmed conditions for non-parking garage locations. For parking garages, the lighting power reduction is 100 percent under fully dimmed conditions

~~2.~~ ~~(Light output is stable with no visible flicker.)~~RESERVED

~~3.~~ Only luminaires in daylit zones are affected by daylight control. If the daylighting control system controls luminaires outside of the daylight zones including those behind obstructions, the control system is not compliant.

~~4.~~ ~~If a Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) is claimed for daylight dimming plus off controls in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2H; a complaint system shall automatically turn off the luminaires in order to pass the Full Daylight Test for daylight dimming plus off controls. This portion of the Full Daylight Test does not apply to lighting systems that are not claiming a PAF for daylight dimming plus off controls~~

~~**1. Lighting power reduction of controlled luminaires is at least 65 percent.**~~

~~**2. Only luminaires in daylit zones (toplit zone, primary sidelit zone and secondary sidelit zone) are affected by daylight control. If the daylighting controls control lighting outside of the daylight zones including those behind obstructions as described in Section 130.1(d)1, the control system is not compliant.**~~

(d) **Partial daylight test**. If the control system has one (1) to three (3) steps of control between on and off, test all control steps between on and off. If the control system has more than three (3) steps between on and off, testing three (3) control steps between on and off is sufficient to demonstrate compliance. If the control system has zero (0) steps between on and off, the partial daylight test is not necessary. For stepped switching control systems, steps in a controlled zone are achieved by turning some luminaires or groups of luminaires on or off without any steps between on and off.

For each control stage that is tested in this step, the control stages with lower setpoints than the stage tested are left ON and those stages of control with higher setpoints are dimmed or controlled off. Simulate or provide conditions so that each control stage turns on and off or dims. Verify and document the following for each control stage:

~~1.~~ ~~Document the total daylight and electric lighting illuminance level measured at its reference location just after the stage of control dims or shuts off a stage of lighting:~~

~~2.~~ Measure that the combined daylight and controlled electric lighting illuminance at the Reference Location is no less than the reference illuminance measured at this location during the No Daylight Test.

~~3.~~ Verify that the combined daylight and controlled electric lighting illuminance at the Reference Location is no greater than 150 percent of the reference illuminance.

~~4.~~ Light output is stable with no visible flicker.(Note: only luminaires in daylit zones are affected by daylight control) ~~The total measured illumination shall be no less than the reference illuminance measured at this location during the no daylight test documented in Step 2.~~

~~A. The total measured illumination shall be no greater than 150 percent of the reference illuminance.~~

~~5.~~ The control stage shall not cycle on and off or cycle between dim and undimmed while daylight illuminance remains constant.

~~6. Only luminaires in daylit zones (toplit zone, primary sidelit zone, and secondary sidelit zone) are affected by daylight control.~~

(e) ~~Verify time delay.~~

~~1. Verify that time delay automatically resets to normal mode within 60 minutes.~~

~~2. Set normal mode time delay to at least three minutes.~~

~~3. Confirm that there is a time delay of at least 3 minutes between the time when illuminance exceeds the setpoint for a given dimming stage and when the control dims or switches off the controlled lights.~~

NA7.6.2 Shut-off Controls Acceptance Tests

NA7.6.2.1 ~~General Requirements~~

~~Verify that the shut-off control qualifies as one of the required control types, is installed, and is fully functional in accordance with each applicable requirement in Section 130.1(c), or~~

~~***that the application meets one of the exceptions. List each specific exception claimed, from Section 130.1(c).***~~

~~*Occupancy*~~ Occupant Sensing Lighting Controls Construction Inspection

~~NA7.6.2.1.1 Construction Inspection~~

Prior to Functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The occupant sensing lighting controls are shown on plan documents and are installed.

(b) ~~Occupancy sensor has been located to minimize false signals:~~.

(c) Occupant sensing lighting control is ~~No closer than four (4) feet~~installed per manufacturer's instructions to minimize false triggering- such as to install an occupancy sensor away from ~~a~~ HVAC diffusers to avoid probable false triggering.

(d) ~~Passive infrared sensor pattern does not enter into adjacent zones.~~

(e) ~~Occupancy sensors do not encounter any obstructions that could adversely affect desired performance.~~

~~Ultrasonic occupancy sensors do not emit audible sound.~~

NA7.6.2.2 Occupant Sensing Lighting Controls Functional Testing - Sampling

~~NA7.6.2.2.1 Occupancy Sensing Lighting Control Functional testing~~

For buildings with up to seven (7) ~~occupancy~~ occupant sensors, all occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensors shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensors, sampling may be done on spaces with similar sensors and space geometries; sampling shall include a minimum of 1 occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor for each group of up to 7 additional occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensors. If the first occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor in the sample group passes the acceptance test, the remaining building spaces in the sample group also pass. If the first occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor in the sample group fails the acceptance test the rest of the occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensors in that group must be tested. If any tested occupant ~~occupancy~~ sensor fails it shall be repaired, replaced or adjusted until it passes the test.

For buildings with up to seven multi-zone occupant sensors, all occupant sensors shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven multi-zone occupant sensors, sampling may be done on the space to choose up seven multi-zone occupant sensors from the space and all seven multi-zone occupant sensors shall be tested.

NA7.6.2.3 Occupant Sensing Lighting Controls Functional Testing

This requirement applies to areas where occupant sensing controls are required to comply with Section 130.1(c) with the exception of Section 130.1(c)6D.

For each sensor to be tested do the following:

(a) **Unoccupied Test**. ~~For a representative sample of building spaces, s~~Simulate an unoccupied condition in the controlled space. Verify and document the following:

1. ~~Lights controlled by~~The ~~occupancy~~ occupant ~~sensors~~ sensing control turn the controlled lighting off or partially-off ~~within a maximum of~~ in 20 minutes or less from the start of an unoccupied condition. In addition:
    a. For partial-on occupant sensing controls, occupant sensing controls and vacancy sensing controls, the controlled lighting is turned off in unoccupied condition.
    b. In the partially off state, partial off occupant sensing controls automatically reduce lighting power by at least 50 percent, or automatically reduce in one of the following:
        i. For warehouses with metal halide or high pressure sodium lighting, reduce lighting power by at least 40 percent;
        ii. For aisle ways and open areas in warehouses in which the installed lighting power is 80 percent or less of the value allowed under the Area Category Method, reduce lighting power by at least 40 percent;
        iii. For corridors and stairwells that provide access to guestrooms and dwelling units of high-rise residential buildings and hotel/motels in which the installed lighting power is 80 percent or less of the valued allowed under the Area Category Method, reduce lighting power by at least 40 percent.
    c. For occupant sensing controls in parking garages, parking areas, and loading and unloading areas, the control has at least one control step between 20 to 50 percent of the design lighting power, or the controls has at least one control step between 20 to 60 percent of the design lighting power - for the controls serving metal halide luminaires with a lamp plus ballast mean system efficacy of 75 lumens per watt. In the partially off state, partial off occupant sensing controls automatically reduce lighting power by one control step.
        ~~i.~~
2. **~~The occupant sensor does not trigger a false "on" from movement in an area adjacent to the space containing the controlled luminaires or from HVAC operation.~~**
3. **~~Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.~~**

(b) **Occupied Test.** ~~For a representative sample of building spaces, s~~Simulate an occupied condition in the controlled space. Verify and document the following:

1. Status indicator or annunciator operates correctly.
2. ~~Lights controlled by occupancy sensors turn on i~~Immediately upon an occupied condition:
        a. The occupant sensing control or partial off occupant sensing control turns on controlled lighting; or

   b. The vacancy sensing control indicate a space is occupied and the controlled lighting can be turned~~, OR sensor indicates space is "occupied" and lights are turned~~ on manually~~ (automatic OFF and manual ON control strategy)~~; or~~.~~

   c. The partial-on occupant sensing control automatically turns on the controlled lighting at between 50 to 70 percent of controlled lighting power. After the partial-on stage, manual switches can be activated to turn on the controlled lighting at full controlled lighting power.

NA7.6.2.4 Multi-Zone Occupant Sensing Lighting Controls Functional Testing

This requirement applies to areas where multi-zone occupant sensing controls are required to comply with Section 130.1(c)6D for offices larger than 250 square feet.

(a) **Occupied Control Zone Test**. Simulate an occupied condition in the control zone controlled by the occupant sensor. Verify and document the following:

1. Simulate an occupancy in a control zone. Immediately upon occupancy of the control zone, the occupant sensors turn on controlled lighting.
2. Measure the illuminance at a location in the control zone where the light output is from the controlled lighting at full light output.
3. Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.
4. Status indicator or annunciator operates properly.

(b) **Unoccupied Control Zone Test.** In offices where two or more occupant sensors to create more than one control zones, simulate an unoccupied condition in the control zone controlled by the occupant sensor. Confirm that at least one other control zone within the office is occupied. Verify and document the following:

1. ~~Within a maximum of~~In 20 minutes or less from the start of the unoccupied condition in the control zone, the occupant sensor uniformly reduces light output of the controlled lighting.
2. Measure the illuminance at the same location as in Step (a)~~1~~. Verify that the light output during unoccupancy is no more than 20 percent of the full light output measured in Step (a)1.
3. The occupant sensing control does not trigger a false on from movement outside of the control zone or from HVAC operation.

   (Informational note: The field of view of occupant sensors in the adjacent control zones in offices greater than 250 square feet may overlap, but the field of view should stay away from an adjacent enclosed spaces that is not part of the large office, like conference rooms, and private offices.)
4. Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.

(c) Control Zone Size Test**.** Follow the procedures described in either Method 1 or Method 2 below.

Method 1: Simulate an unoccupied condition in the control zone controlled by the occupant sensor while standing in an adjacent control zone. Determine the “edge” of the control zone controlled by the occupant sensor by moving toward the occupant sensor until the lights controlled by the occupant sensor turn on as in Step (a)~~1~~ to simulate an occupied condition for that control zone. Measure, determine and document the following:

1. Measure the distance (in feet) from the “edge” of the control zone to the spot that is directly below the occupant sensor. This is the radius of the control zone.
2. Determine the area of the control zone by using the formula: Area = π*radius2.
3. The area of the control zone must be less than or equal to 600 square feet.

Method 2: Simulate an unoccupied condition for the entire office space. Verify and document the following:

1. Walk thru the space and count the number of zones of lighting turned on automatically as walking thru the space.
2. Document the number of zones being turned on. Determine the size of the office in square footage from construction plans or from other information source.
3. Divide the size of the office by the number of zones. This calculated value is the assessed control zone size (in square feet).
4. If the value is less than or equal to 600 square feet, it passes the test. Otherwise, it fails the test.

(d) Unoccupied Office Test. Simulate an unoccupied condition in all control zones controlled by all occupant sensors in the office. Verify and document the following:

~~Within a maximum of~~ In 20 minutes or less from the start of the unoccupied condition of the entire office, all general lighting in the office shall turn off.

~~3.~~

NA7.6.2.5 Automatic Time Switch Lighting Controls Construction Inspection

~~NA7.6.2.5.1 Construction Inspection~~

Prior to Functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The automatic time switch controls are shown on plan documents and are installed.

(b) Automatic time switch control is programmed with acceptable weekday, weekend, and holiday (if applicable) schedules.

(c) Document for the ~~owner~~ automatic time switch programming including weekday, weekend, holiday schedules as well as all set-up and preference program settings.

(d) ~~Verify t~~The correct time and date is properly set in the time switch.

(e) ~~Verify t~~The battery back-up (if applicable) is installed and energized.

(f) Manual ~~Override~~ override time limit is set to no more than 2 hours.

(g) Manual ~~Override~~ override switches located remotely from area with controlled luminaires ~~have annunciator lights~~allow the user to see the controlled luminaires or have a visual~~ly~~ signal or display showing the current state of the controlled luminaires.

NA7.6.2.6 Automatic Time Switch Lighting Controls Functional Testing

~~NA7.6.2.6.1 Automatic Time Switch Lighting Control Functional testing~~

(a) Occupied Test. Simulate an occupied condition in the controlled space. Verify and document the following:

1. ~~All lights can be~~The automatic time switch control turns ~~turned~~ on ~~and off by their respective area control switch~~the controlled lighting.
2. ~~Verify the switch only operates lighting in the enclosed space (ceiling-height partitioned area) in which the switch is located.~~
3. ~~For the area controlled by an automatic time-switch control with a time-override located in and for the area, verify the lighting can be turned on manually by initiating the time-override and the lighting is configured to remain ON for no more than 2 hours.~~
4. ~~For the area controlled by an automatic time-switch control with an automatic holiday shut-OFF feature, verify the lighting in the area can be turned off automatically by initiating the holiday shut-OFF.~~
5. ~~For the area controlled by an automatic time-switch control with manual-ON mode configured, verify the lighting in the area can be turned ON manually when it is manually activated.~~

(b) Unoccupied Test. Simulate an unoccupied condition in the controlled space. Verify and document the following:

1. The automatic time switch control turns off ~~All~~ all ~~non-exempt~~controlled lighting ~~turn off in accordance with the programmed time switch schedules~~.
2. During test, for the area controlled by an automatic time-switch control with a configured automatic holiday shut-OFF, the controlled lighting can be turned off automatically by the holiday shut-OFF. For exempt areas, the lighting is not required to be configured with automatic holiday shut-OFF.
3. For the area controlled by an automatic time-switch control with a time-override located in and for the area, verify the lighting can be turned on manually by initiating the time-override and the lighting is configured to remain ON for no more than 2 hours. For exempt areas, the lighting can be configured to remain ON for more than 2 hours and until the next scheduled shut off occurs.

~~Manual override switch allows only the lights in the enclosed space (ceiling height partitioned) where the override switch is located to turn on or remain on until the next scheduled shut off occurs.~~

NA7.6.3 Demand Responsive Controls Acceptance Tests

NA7.6.3.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to Functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The demand responsive control is setup to communicate in one of the following communication protocols: Wi-Fi, ZigBee, BACnet, Ethernet or other wired or wireless bi-directional communication pathway~~hard wiring~~. ~~(That the demand responsive control is capable of receiving a demand response signal directly or indirectly through another device and that it complies with the~~ requirements ~~in~~ of Section 110.12). The demand responsive controls is setup to communicate for the functional testing of NA7.6.3.2. ~~130.1(e).~~

~~If the demand response signal is received from another device (such as an EMCS), that system must itself be capable of receiving a demand response signal from a utility meter or other external source.~~

NA7.6.3.2 Functional Testing

There are three methods to verify the reduction in lighting power due to the demand responsive lighting controls. For methods 1 and 2, buildings with up to seven (7) enclosed spaces requiring demand responsive lighting controls, all spaces shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) enclosed spaces requiring demand responsive lighting controls, sampling may be done on additional spaces with similar lighting systems; sampling shall include a minimum of 1 enclosed space for each group of up to 7 additional enclosed spaces. If the first enclosed space with a demand responsive lighting control in the sample group passes the acceptance test, the remaining building spaces in the sample group also pass. If the first enclosed space with a demand responsive lighting control in the sample group fails the acceptance test the rest of the enclosed spaces in that group must be tested. If any tested demand responsive lighting control system fails it shall be repaired, replaced or adjusted until it passes the test. Method 3 tests the entire facility at once, does not require sampling, but requires the facility lighting to be disaggregated from other end-use loads.

Test the reduction in lighting power due to the demand responsive lighting control using one of the following three ~~two~~ methods.

NA7.6.3.2.1 Method 1: Illuminance Measurement. Measure the reduction in illuminance in enclosed spaces required to meet Section 110.12(c)~~130.1(b)~~, as follows:

(a) In each space, select one location for illuminance measurement. The preferred measurement location is not in a skylit or primary sidelit area so that the illuminance meter is not in direct view of window or skylight. ~~The chosen location must not be in a skylit or primary sidelit area. When placed at the location, the illuminance meter must not have a direct view of a window or skylight.~~ If this is not possible, perform the test at a time and location at which daylight illuminance provides less than half of the design illuminance. Mark each location to ensure that the illuminance meter can be accurately located.

(b) Full output test

1. Using the manual switches/dimmers in each space, set the lighting system to full output. Note that for lighting system that has been task tuned, override the controls to allow the lighting system to go to full output. Note also that the lighting in areas with photocontrols or occupant ~~occupancy~~/vacancy sensors may be at less than full output, or may be off.
2. Take one illuminance measurement at each location, using an illuminance meter.
3. Simulate a demand response condition using the demand responsive control.
4. Take one illuminance measurement at each location with the electric lighting system in the demand response condition.
5. Calculate the area-weighted average reduction in illuminance in the demand response condition, compared with the full output condition. The area-weighted reduction must be at least 15%~~ but must not reduce the combined illuminance from electric light and daylight to less than 50% of the design illuminance in any individual space~~.

(c) Minimum output test

1. Determine illuminance at minimum output condition:
    i. Using the manual switches/dimmers in each space, set the lighting system to minimum output (but not off). Note that the lighting in areas with photocontrols or occupant ~~occupancy~~/vacancy sensors may be at more than minimum output, or may be off.
    ii. Take one illuminance measurement at each location, using an illuminance meter.
2. Determine illuminance at demand response condition:
    i. Simulate a demand response condition using the demand responsive control.
    ii. Take one illuminance measurement at each location with the electric lighting system in the demand response condition.
3. Determine compliance:
    i. In each space, the illuminance in the demand response condition must not be less than the illuminance in the minimum output condition (but not turned off)~~or 50% of the design illuminance, whichever is less~~.

EXCEPTION: In daylit spaces, the illuminance in the demand response condition may reduce below the minimum output conditio~~n, but in the demand response condition~~

~~the combined illuminance from daylight and electric light must be at least 50% of the design illuminance~~.

NA7.6.3.2.2 Method 2: Current measurement. Measure the reduction in electrical current in spaces required to meet Section 110.12~~130.1(b)~~, as follows:

(a) At the lighting circuit panel, select at least one lighting circuit that serves spaces required to meet Section 110.12~~130.1(e)~~.

(b) Full output test

1. Using the manual switches/dimmers in each space, set the lighting system to full output. Note that the lighting in areas with photocontrols or occupant ~~occupancy~~/vacancy sensors may be at less than full output, or may be off.
2. Take one electric current measurement for each selected circuit.
3. Simulate a demand response condition using the demand responsive control.
4. Take one illuminance measurement at each location with the electric lighting system in the demand response condition.
5. Add together all the circuit currents, and calculate the reduction in current in the demand response condition, compared with the full output condition. The combined reduction must be at least 15%~~ but must not reduce the output of any individual circuit by more than 50%~~.

(c) Minimum output test

1. Using the manual switches/dimmers in each space, set the lighting system to minimum output (but not off). Note that the lighting in areas with photocontrols or occupant ~~occupancy~~/vacancy sensors may be at more than minimum output, or may be off.
2. Take one electric current measurement for each selected circuit.
3. Simulate a demand response condition using the demand responsive control.
4. Take one electric current measurement for each selected circuit with the electric lighting system in the demand response condition.
5. In each space, the electric current in the demand response condition must not be less than ~~50% or~~ the electric current in the minimum output condition~~, whichever is less~~.

   EXCEPTION: Circuits that supply power to the daylit portion of enclosed spaces as long as lighting in non-daylit portions of the enclosed space.

NA7.6.3.2.3 Method 3: Full facility current measurement. Measure the reduction in electrical current of the full facility on the lighting end-use disaggregated circuit for spaces that are required to meet Section 110.12, as follows:

(a) At the circuit panel, select the circuit that serves the lighting load of the entire facility.

(b) Full output test

1. Using the facility lighting controls, set the lighting system to full output. Note that the lighting in areas with photocontrols or occupant /vacancy sensors may be at less than full output or may be off.
2. Take one electric current measurement on the circuit. This is your pre-event current.
3. Simulate a demand response condition using the demand responsive control.
4. Take one electric current measurement on the circuit. This is your post-event current.
5. Calculate the difference between the pre-event current and the post-event current to determine your wattage reduction.
6. Divide the wattage reduction by the total design wattage of lighting required to meet Section 110.12. The percent reduction in wattage must be at least 15%.

(c) Minimum output test

1. Using the facility controls, set the lighting system to minimum output (but not off). Note that the lighting in areas with photocontrols or occupant /vacancy sensors may be at more than minimum output or may be off.
2. Take one electric current measurement on the circuit. This is your pre-event current.
3. Simulate a demand response condition using the demand responsive control.
4. Take one electric current measurement on the circuit. This is you post event current.
5. The post-event current must not be less than the pre-event current in the minimum output condition.

NA7.6.4 Institutional Tuning Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) Acceptance Tests

For buildings with up to seven (7) enclosed areas claiming the institutional tuning PAF (power adjustment factor), all areas shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) areas claiming this PAF, random sampling may be done on seven of the larger enclosed areas with tuned dimming systems. If any of the areas in the sample group of seven areas fails the acceptance test, another group of seven areas must be tested. If any tested system fails, it shall be tuned until it passes the test.

NA7.6.4.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The construction documents specify which lighting systems shall have their maximum light output or maximum power draw set to no greater than 85 percent of full light output or full power draw.

(b) The controls or the methods of controlling the maximum output of luminaires is such that the maximum light output of the controlled lighting system can be limited and that normal operation of the controlled lighting does not override the maximum light output.

(c) The controls are not readily accessible to unauthorized personnel.

NA7.6.4.2 Functional Testing

For each area to be tested, follow the procedures in Method 1 or Method 2 below:

(a) The acceptance test technician shall either observe the first seven (7) systems being successfully tuned or shall verify systems that have already been tuned using the sampling protocol described in NA7.6.4.

(b) If the acceptance test technician is observing the tuning of the system, the party responsible for the tuning shall certify that the remainder of the system is tuned in a similar manner.

NA7.6.4.2.1 Method 1: Observation of the Systems During Institutional Tuning

Step 1: Determination of maximum power or light output prior to institutional tuning

(a) Set all lighting controls to provide maximum output of the tested system without applying the limits specified for institutional tuning.

(b) Measure the full light output at a location where the illuminance is due to the controlled lighting, or measure the power draw of the controlled lighting. Current measurements may be used instead of power measurements.

Step 2: Institutional Tuning and Post-tuning Measurement

(a) Apply the limits specified for institutional tuning to the lighting system. Do not alter any other control settings.

(b) Verify the light or power reduction after institutional tuning by measuring the light output at the same location as in Step 1 or measure the power draw of the same circuit as in Step 1. Current measurements may be used instead of power measurements.

(c) If the light output or power draw measured in Step 2(b) is 85% or less of the light output or power draw measured in Step 1(b), the system passes this test; otherwise the system fails this test.

NA7.6.4.2.2 Method 2: Verification of Systems Already Tuned

Step 1: Measurement of tuned lighting system

(a) Set all lighting controls except institutional tuning controls to provide maximum output of tested system. Controls set to maximum light output include but not limited to: manual dimmers, multilevel occupant sensing, and automatic daylighting controls.

(b) Measure full light output at location where most of the illuminance is due to the controlled lighting or measure power draw of the controlled lighting. Current measurements may be used instead of power measurements.

Step 2: Measurement of lighting system with institutional tuning overriden

(a) Reset institutional tuning controls to allow full light output. Set all lighting controls to provide maximum output of tested system including but not limited to: institution tuning control, manual dimmers, multilevel occupant sensing, and automatic daylighting controls.

(b) Measure full light output at the same location as in Step 1 or measure the power draw of the same circuit as in Step 1. Current measurements may be used instead of power measurements.

(c) If the light output or power draw measured in Step 1(b) is 85% or less of the light output or power draw measured in Step 2(b), the system passes this test; otherwise the system fails this test.

Step 3: Restore Institutional Tuning settings

(a) If the tested system passed the test in Step 2, restore the institutional tuning settings.

NA7.6.5 Demand Responsive Controls – Controlled Receptacles

NA 7.6.5.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) That the demand responsive control is capable of receiving a demand response signal directly or indirectly through another device and that it complies with the requirements in Section ~~130.1(e)~~110.12.

(b) If the demand response signal is received from another device (such as an EMCS), that system must itself be capable of receiving a demand response signal from a utility meter or other external source.

(c) Verify that demand responsive controlled receptacles are installed.

(d) Verify if the receptacle has a permanent and durable marking for controlled receptacles or circuits to differentiate them from uncontrolled receptacles or circuits.

(e) Verify the receptacle is controlled by an automatic shut-off control.

NA 7.6.5.2 Functional Test

NA 7.6.5.2.1

For buildings with up to seven (7) enclosed spaces requiring demand responsive controlled receptacles, an Acceptance Test Technician shall test all spaces.

For buildings with more than seven (7) enclosed spaces requiring demand responsive lighting controls:

1. An Acceptance Test Technician may either:
    a. test all of the spaces; or
    b. test seven spaces and sample the additional spaces; with each sample to include a minimum of 1 enclosed space for each sample group of up to 7 additional enclosed spaces.
2. If the first enclosed space with a demand responsive controlled receptacle in a sample group passes the acceptance test, the remaining building spaces in the sample group also

pass. If the first enclosed space with a demand responsive controlled receptacle in the sample group fails, the Acceptance Test Technician shall test rest of the enclosed spaces in that group.

NA 7.6.5.2.2

If any tested demand responsive controlled receptacle fails, it shall be repaired, replaced or adjusted until it passes the test.

NA 7.6.5.2.3

The acceptance test for each demand responsive controlled receptacle includes testing the reduction in receptacle power due to the demand responsive control using both of the following methods:

ON Test

1. Trigger the shut off control to turn the demand responsive controlled receptacle ON, or if the receptacle has a manual control turn the receptacle ON.
2. Verify each controlled outlet has full voltage (125 V~~v~~) present.
3. Simulate a DR condition.
4. Verify at each controlled outlet that zero voltage (0 V) is present (deenergized).
5. Verify the controlled receptacle cannot be overridden to turn ON by the automatic shut-off controls or any manual control.
6. Simulate a normal condition (non-DR condition).
7. Verify each controlled outlet has full voltage (125~~v~~ V) present.

OFF Test

1. Trigger the automatic shut-off control to turn the demand responsive controlled receptacle OFF or if the receptacle has an ON/OFF button, manually turn the receptacle OFF.
2. Verify at each controlled outlet that zero voltage (0 V) is present (deenergized).
3. Simulate a DR condition.
4. Verify at each controlled outlet that zero voltage (0 V) is present (deenergized).
5. Verify that the demand responsive controlled receptacle cannot be overridden to turn ON by automatic shut-off controls or any manual control.
6. Simulate a normal condition (non-DR condition).
7. Verify each controlled outlet has zero voltage (0 V) present.

NA7.7*Indoor Lighting Controls Installation ~~Requirements~~Verifications*

~~Lighting control installation inspection shall be performed on:~~

~~Lighting control systems installed to comply with Section 110.9(b).~~

~~(a) Energy Management Control System installed to comply with Section 130.0(e).~~

~~(b) All line-voltage track lighting integral current limiters in accordance with Section 110.9 and Section 130.0.~~

~~(c) All dedicated line-voltage track lighting supplementary overcurrent protection panels in accordance with Section 110.9 and Section 130.0.~~

~~(d) Interlocked lighting systems serving an area in accordance with Section 140.6(a)1.~~

~~(e) Lighting controls installed to earn a Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2.~~

~~(f) Lighting for a Videoconferencing Studio in Accordance with Exception to Section 140.6(c)2Gvii.~~

NA7.7.1 Lighting Control Systems Installed to Comply with Section 110.9(b)

NA7.7.1.1 Installation Inspection

If a lighting control required by Title 24, Part 6 is a field assembled system consisting of two or more components, verify the system components meet all of the requirements for each lighting control type, in accordance with Section 110.9, On the approved installation compliance form, identify, list, and verify each type of lighting control system as follows:

(a) Separately identify and list each type of lighting control system. When there are identical lighting control systems in a single building, identical lighting control system may be listed together.

(b) Identify and list all requirements for the type of self-contained lighting control device for which the lighting control system is installed to function as, in accordance with Section 110.9 and in accordance with the Title 20 Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

(c) Verify the lighting control system complies with all of the applicable requirement as listed.

(d) If the lighting control system does not meet all applicable requirements, the installation fails.

NA7.7.2 Energy Management Control System (EMCS) Installed in Accordance with Section 130.0(e)~~1(f)~~

NA7.7.2.1 Installation ~~Requirements~~Inspection

(a) The EMCS shall be separately tested for each respective lighting control system for which it is installed to function as.

(b) List and verify functional compliance with all applicable requirements in accordance with applicable Sections 110.9, 130.1, 130.2 ~~through 130.5~~and Section 160.5.

(c) If applicable, list and verify functional compliance with all applicable requirements for all applications for which the EMCS is installed to function as, in accordance with appliable Section 140.6 and 170.2(e)2 thru 4.

(d) If applicable, list and verify functional compliance with all applicable requirements for all applications for which the EMCS is installed to function as, in accordance with applicable Section 140.7 and 170.2(e)6.

(e) If applicable, list and verify functional compliance with all applicable requirements for all applications for which the EMCS is installed to function as, in accordance with applicable Section 150(k) and 160.5(a).

NA7.7.2.2 RESERVED

NA7.7.3 RESERVED

NA7.7.4 Interlocked Lighting Systems Serving an Area in Accordance with Section 140.6(a)1 and 170.2(e)2A

NA7.7.4.1 Installation Inspection

Verify and document the following:

(a) The space qualifies only as one or more the following types: Auditorium, convention center, conference room, multipurpose room, or theater, in accordance with the definitions of those space types in Section 100.1.

(b) There are no more than two interlocked lighting systems serving the space.

(c) The two lighting systems are interlocked with a non-programmable double throw switch to prevent simultaneous operation, in accordance with applicable Section 140.6(a)1 and 170.2(e)2A.

(d) If all of the above items ~~in~~ are not true, the installation fails, and all connected lighting in the space shall be counted as part of the total installed lighting power.

~~Lighting Controls Installed to Earn a Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) in Accordance with Section 140.6(a)2~~

~~Construction Inspection for all PAFs except Institutional Tuning~~

~~Verify and document the following:~~

~~(a) Separately list all requirements for each PAF that is claimed in accordance with Sections 110.9, and 140.6(a)2, and Table 140.6-A.~~

~~(b) Verify the installation complies with all applicable requirements in accordance with Sections 110.9, and 140.6(a)2, and Table 140.6-A.~~

(c) ~~**If all of the above in not true for a specific PAF, the installation fails, and that specific PAF cannot be used.**~~

(d) ~~**For lighting systems that are claiming a PAF for daylight dimming plus OFF control in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2H, the system must successfully complete the functional performance test in Section NA 7.6.1.2.1, and in addition during the Full Daylight Test the controls shall automatically turn OFF the luminaires that are receiving the daylight dimming plus OFF PAF credit.**~~

~~Acceptance Test for Institutional Tuning~~

~~**For buildings with up to seven (7) enclosed areas claiming the Institutional Tuning PAF (power adjustment factor), all areas shall be tested. For buildings with more than seven (7) areas claiming this PAF, random sampling may be done on seven of the larger enclosed areas with tuned dimming systems. If any of the areas in the sample group of seven areas fails the acceptance test, another group of seven areas must be tested. If any tested system fails, it shall be tuned until it passes the test.**~~

~~**NA7.7.4.1.1** Construction Inspection of Institutional Tuning~~

~~**Prior to Functional testing, verify and document the following:**~~

(a) ~~**The controls or the methods of controlling the maximum output of luminaires is such that the maximum light output of the controlled lighting system can be limited and that normal operation of the controlled lighting does not override the maximum light output.**~~

(b) ~~**The controls are not readily accessible to unauthorized personnel.**~~

~~**NA7.7.4.1.2** Functional testing of Institutional Tuning~~

~~**For each area to be tested, do the following:**~~

(a) ~~**The acceptance test technician shall either observe the first seven (7) systems being successfully tuned or shall verify systems that have already been tuned using the sampling protocol described in NA7.7.6.2.**~~

(b) ~~**If the acceptance test technician is observing the tuning of the system, the party responsible for the tuning shall certify that the remainder of the system is tuned in a similar manner.**~~

~~Observation of the systems during Institutional Tuning~~

~~**Step 1: Determination of maximum power or output prior to Institutional Tuning**~~

(a) ~~**Set all lighting controls to provide maximum output of the tested system without applying the limits specified for institutional tuning.**~~

(b) ~~**Measure the full light output at a location where the illuminance is due to the controlled lighting, or measure the power draw of the controlled lighting.**~~

~~**Step 2: Institutional Tuning and Post-tuning Measurement**~~

~~**(a) Apply the limits specified for institutional tuning to the lighting system. Do not alter any other control settings.**~~

~~**(b) Verify the light or power reduction after institutional tuning by measuring the light output at the same location as in Step 1 or measure the power draw of the same circuit as in Step 1.**~~

~~**(c) If the light output or power draw measured in Step 2(b) is 85% or less of the light output or power draw measured in Step 1(b), the system passes this test; otherwise the system fails this test.**~~

~~Verification of systems already tuned~~

~~**Step 1: Measurement of tuned lighting system**~~

~~**(a) Set all lighting controls except Institutional Tuning controls to provide maximum output of tested system. Controls set to maximum light output include but not limited to: manual dimmers, multilevel occupancy sensing, and automatic daylighting controls.**~~

~~**(b) Measure full light output at location where most of the illuminance is due to the controlled lighting or measure power draw of the controlled lighting.**~~

~~**Step 2: Measurement of lighting system with Institutional Tuning overriden**~~

~~**(a) Reset Institutional Tuning controls to allow full light output. Set all lighting controls to provide maximum output of tested system including but not limited to: Institution Tuning control, manual dimmers, multilevel occupancy sensing, and automatic daylighting controls.**~~

~~**(b) Measure full light output at the same location as in Step 1 or measure the power draw of the same circuit as in Step 1.**~~

~~**(c) If the light output or power draw measured in Step 1(b) is 85% or less of the light output or power draw measured in Step 2(b), the system passes this test; otherwise the system fails this test.**~~

~~**Step 3: Restore Institutional Tuning settings**~~

~~**(a) If tested system passed the test in Step 2, restore Institutional Tuning settings.**~~

NA7.7.5 Lighting Controls Installed to Earn a Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) in Accordance with Section 140.6(a)2 and 170.2(e)2B

NA7.7.5.1 Construction Inspection for all PAFs except Institutional Tuning

Verify and document the following:

(e) Separately list all requirements for each PAF that is claimed in accordance with applicable Sections 110.9, and 140.6(a)2, ~~and~~ Table 140.6-A, 170.2(e)2B, and Table 170.2-L.

(f) Verify the installation complies with all applicable requirements in accordance with applicable Sections 110.9, and 140.6(a)2, ~~and~~ Table 140.6-A, 170.2(e)2B, and Table 170.2-L.

(g) If all of the above items ~~in~~ are not true for a specific PAF, the installation fails, and that specific PAF cannot be used.

(h) For lighting systems that are claiming a PAF for daylight continuous dimming plus OFF control in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2H and 170.2(e)2Bviii, the system must successfully complete the functional performance test in Section NA 7.6.1.~~2.1~~3, and in addition during the Full Daylight Test the controls shall automatically turn OFF the luminaires that are receiving the daylight continuous dimming plus OFF PAF credit.

NA7.7.6 Lighting for a Videoconferencing Studio in Accordance with ~~Exception to~~ Section 140.6(c)2Gvii~~(a)3T~~

NA7.7.6.1 Installation Inspection

Verify and document the following:

(a) The videoconferencing studio is using only the Area Category Method for compliance. The extra lighting allowance shall not be taken when using the Complete Building Method or Tailored Method of compliance.

(b) The videoconferencing studio is a room with permanently installed videoconferencing cameras, audio equipment, and playback equipment for both audio-based and video-based two-way communication between local and remote sites.

(c) General lighting is switched in accordance with Table 130.1-A.

(d) Wall wash lighting is separately switched from the general lighting system.

(e) All of the lighting is controlled by a multiscene programmable control system (scene preset control system).

(f) If all of the above is not true, the installation fails, and the extra wattage for videoconferencing studio lighting cannot be used.

NA7.8 *Outdoor Lighting Controls Acceptance ~~Test~~ Tests*

~~Verify that outdoor lighting controls qualify as one of the required control types, are installed, and are fully functional in accordance with each applicable requirement in Section 130.2(c), or that the application meets one of the exceptions. List each specific exception claimed, from Section 130.2(c).~~

NA7.8.1 Motion Sensing~~or Construction Inspection~~Controls Acceptance Tests

NA7.8.1.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to f~~F~~unctional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) The motion sensing controls are shown on plan documents and are installed.

(b) Motion ~~Sensor~~ sensor ~~has been~~is located to minimize false signals.

~~(c) Sensor is not triggered by motion outside of adjacent area.~~

(d) Desired sensor coverage is not blocked by obstructions that could adversely affect performance.

NA7.8.1.2 Functional Testing

For building sites with up to seven (7) ~~outdoor~~ motion sensors, all ~~outdoor~~ motion sensors shall be tested. For ~~buildings~~ sites with more than seven (7) ~~outdoor~~ motion sensors ~~for outdoor lighting system~~, sampling may be done on outdoor areas with similar sensors that cover similar unobstructed areas; sampling shall include a minimum of 1 ~~outdoor~~ motion sensor for each group of up to 7 additional ~~outdoor~~ motion sensors.

If the first sensor in the sample group passes the acceptance test, the remaining outdoor areas in the sample group also pass. If the first motion sensor in the sample group fails the acceptance test, the rest of the sensors in that group shall be tested and any failed sensor in the sample group shall be repaired or replaced and retested until the sensor passes the test.

Step 1: Simulate motion in area under ~~lights~~ luminaire controlled by the motion sensor. Verify and document the following:

(a) Status indicator operates correctly.

(b) ~~Lights~~ Luminaires controlled by sensors turn on immediately upon entry into the area lit by the controlled ~~lights~~ luminaires near the sensor.

(c) Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.

Step 2: Simulate no motion in area with lighting controlled by the motion sensor.

Verify and document the following:

(a) ~~Lights~~ The controlled luminaires are turned off or the lighting power of each controlled luminaire ~~by the sensor reduces light output~~is reduced by at least 50 percent and no more than 90 percent within a maximum of ~~30~~ 15 minutes from the start of an unoccupied condition.

(b) The sensor does not trigger a false "on" from movement outside of the controlled area.

(c) Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.

NA7.8.2 Photocontrols ~~Construction Inspection~~Acceptance Tests

NA7.8.3.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following:

The photocontrols are shown on plan documents and are ~~is~~ installed.

NA7.8.3.2 Functional Testing

For building sites with up to seven (7) photosensors, all photosensors shall be tested. For sites with more than seven (7) photosensors, sampling may be done on outdoor areas with similar photosensors that cover similar unobstructed areas; sampling shall include a minimum of 1 photosensors for each group of up to 7 additional photosensors.

If the first photosensors in the sample group passes the acceptance test, the remaining outdoor areas in the sample group also pass. If the first photosensors in the sample group fails the acceptance test, the rest of the photosensors in that group shall be tested and any failed

photosensors in the sample group shall be repaired or replaced and retested until the photosensors passes the test. ~~Photocontrol Functional Testing~~

Verify and document the following:

~~(a)~~ (a) During daytime simulation, all controlled ~~outdoor lights~~ luminaires are turned off.

(b~~b~~) During nighttime simulation, all controlled ~~outdoor lights~~ luminaires are turned on.

NA7.8.3 RESERVED~~Astronomical Time-Switch Control Construction Inspection~~

~~Prior to Functional Testing, confirm and document the following:~~

~~(a) Verify the astronomical time-switch control is installed.~~

~~(b) Verify the astronomical time switch control is programmed with ON schedule and OFF schedule that matches the schedules in the construction documents. If the schedule is unknown, verify that the programmed schedule matches the default schedule where the OFF schedule is from midnight to 6am and the ON schedule is all other night time hours, seven days per week.~~

~~(c) Demonstrate and document for the lighting control programming including ON schedule and OFF schedule, for weekday, weekend, and holidays (if applicable).~~

~~(d) Verify the correct time and date is properly set in the control.~~

NA7.8.4 RESERVED~~Astronomical Time-Switch Control Functional Testing~~

~~Verify and document the following:~~

~~(a) During daytime simulation, all controlled outdoor lighting is turned OFF.~~

~~(b) During nighttime simulation, all controlled outdoor lighting is turned ON in accordance with the astronomical schedule.~~

~~(c) During nighttime simulation, power of controlled outdoor lights is turned OFF or reduced by at least 50 percent in accordance with the programmed schedule.~~

NA7.8.5 Automatic Scheduling Controls ~~Construction Inspection~~Acceptance Tests

NA7.8.5.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to f~~F~~unctional t~~T~~esting, confirm and document the following:

(a) ~~Verify the~~The automatic scheduling controls are shown on plan documents and are ~~is~~ installed.

(b) ~~Verify the~~The control is programmed with ~~ON~~ on schedules and ~~OFF~~ off schedule that matches the schedules in the construction documents. If the schedule is unknown, ~~verify~~ confirm that the programmed schedule matches the default schedule where the ~~OFF~~ off schedule is from midnight to 6am and the ~~ON~~ on schedule is all other night time hours, seven days per week.

(c) ~~Demonstrate and document for t~~The lighting control programming including both ~~ON~~ on schedule and ~~OFF~~ off schedule, for weekday, weekend, and holidays (if applicable).

(d) ~~Verify the~~The correct time and date is properly set in the control.

~~Prior to Functional Testing for occupancy-based control type, verify and document the following:~~

~~(a) Sensor has been located to minimize false signals.~~

~~(b) Sensor is not triggered by motion outside of adjacent area.~~

~~(c) Desired sensor coverage is not blocked by obstructions that could adversely affect performance.~~

NA7.8.5.2 ~~Automatic Scheduling Control Functional Testing~~Functional Testing

Verify and document the following:

(a) During daytime simulation, all controlled ~~outdoor lighting~~ luminaires are ~~is~~ turned ~~OFF~~off.

(b) During nighttime simulation with the programmed occupied period, all controlled ~~outdoor~~ luminaires are ~~lighting is~~ turned ~~ON~~on ~~in accordance with the programmed schedule~~.

(c) During nighttime simulation with the programmed unoccupied period, ~~power of~~the controlled ~~lighting~~ luminaires ~~is~~ are turned ~~OFF~~ off or the lighting power of controlled luminaires is reduced by at least 50 percent and no more than 90 percent~~in accordance with the programmed schedule~~.

~~For automatic scheduling control used in conjunction with motion sensing control, verify and document the following:~~

~~(a) During daytime simulation, all controlled outdoor lighting is turned off.~~

~~(b) Simulate motion in area under the luminaire controlled by the motion sensing control. Verify and document the following:~~

  ~~i. Status indicator operates correctly.~~

  ~~ii. Luminaires controlled by the sensor turn on immediately upon entry into the area lit be the controlled luminaires near the motion sensing control.~~

  ~~iii. Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.~~

~~(c) During simulation of normally occupied schedule, simulate no occupancy in area with lighting controlled by the motion sensing control. Verify and document the following:~~

  ~~i. The outdoor lighting power controlled by the motion sensing control is reduced by at least 50 percent within a maximum of 15 minutes from the start of an unoccupied condition. Fraction of light output reduction is an acceptable proxy for reduction in lighting power.~~

  ~~ii. Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.~~

~~(d) During simulation of normally unoccupied schedule, simulate no occupancy in area with lighting controlled by the motion sensing control. Verify and document the following:~~

- ~~i. The outdoor lighting power controlled by the motion sensing control is reduced by at least 50 percent within a maximum of 15 minutes from the start of an unoccupied condition. Fraction of light output reduction is an acceptable proxy for reduction in lighting power.~~
- ~~ii. Signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control.~~

NA7.9*RESERVED*

NA7.10 *Refrigerated Warehouse Refrigeration System Acceptance Tests*

The measurement devices used to verify the refrigerated warehouse controls shall be calibrated once every two years using a NIST traceable reference. The calibrated measurement devices to be used in these acceptance tests are called the "standard" and shall have the following measurement tolerances: The temperature measurement devices shall be calibrated to +/- 0.7°F between -30°F and 200°F. The pressure measurement devices shall be calibrated to +/- 2.5 psi between 0 and 500 psig. The relative humidity (RH) measurement devices shall be calibrated to +/- 1% between 5% and 90% RH.

NA7.10.1 Electric Resistance Underslab Heating System

NA7.10.1.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following for all electric resistance underslab heating systems:

(a) Verify that summer on-peak period is programmed into all underslab heater controls to meet the requirements of Section 120.6(a)2.

NA7.10.1.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Using the control system, lower slab temperature setpoint. Verify and document the following using an electrical test meter:

(a) The underslab electric resistance heater is off.

Step 2: Using the control system, raise the slab temperature setpoint. Verify and document the following using an electrical test meter:

(b) The underslab electric resistance heater is on.

Step 3: Using the control system, change the control system’s time and date corresponding to the local utility’s summer on-peak period. If control system only accounts for time, set system time corresponding to the local utility’s summer on-peak period. Verify and document the following using an electrical test meter:

(c) The underslab electric resistance heater is off.

Step 4: Restore system to correct schedule and control setpoints.

NA7.10.2 Evaporators and Evaporator Fan Motor Variable Speed Control

NA7.10.2.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, document the following on all evaporators:

(a) All refrigerated space temperature sensors used for control are verified to read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using a temperature standard.

(b) All refrigerated space humidity sensors used for control are verified to read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using a humidity standard.

(c) All refrigerated space temperature and humidity sensors are verified to be mounted in a location away from direct evaporator discharge air draft.

(d) Verify that all fans motors are operational and rotating in the correct direction.

(e) Verify that fan speed control is operational and connected to evaporator fan motors.

(f) Verify that all speed controls are in “auto” mode.

NA7.10.2.2 Functional Testing

Conduct and document the following functional tests on all evaporators.

Step 1: Measure current space temperature or humidity. Program this temperature or humidity as the test temperature or humidity setpoint into the control system for the functional test steps. Allow 5 minutes for system to normalize.

Step 2: Using the control system, lower test temperature or humidity setpoint in 1 degree or 1% RH increments below any control dead band range until:

(a) Evaporator fan controls modulate to increase fan motor speed.

(b) Evaporator fan motor speed increases in response to controls.

(c) Verify and document the above.

Step 3: Using the control system, raise the test temperature or humidity setpoint in 1 degree or 1% RH increments above any control dead band range until fans go to minimum speed. Verify and document the following:

(d) Evaporator fan controls modulate to decrease fan motor speed.

(e) Evaporator fan motor speed decreases in response to controls.

(f) Minimum fan motor control speed (rpm or percent of full speed).

Step 4: Restore control system to correct control setpoints.

NA7.10.3 Condensers and Condenser Fan Motor Variable Speed Control

NA7.10.3.1 Evaporative Condensers and Condenser Fan Motor Variable Speed Control

NA7.10.3.1.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, document the following:

(a) Verify the minimum condensing temperature control setpoint is at or below 70°F.

(b) Verify the master system controller saturated condensing temperature input is the temperature equivalent reading of the condenser pressure sensor.

(c) Verify all drain leg pressure regulator valves are set below the minimum condensing temperature/pressure setpoint.

(d) Verify all receiver pressurization valves, such as the outlet pressure regulator (OPR), are set lower than the drain leg pressure regulator valve setting.

(e) Verify all condenser inlet and outlet pressure sensors read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using a pressure standard.

(f) Verify all ambient dry bulb temperature sensors used by controller read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using a temperature standard.

(g) Verify all relative humidity sensor used by controller read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using RH standard.

(h) Verify all temperature sensors used by the controller are mounted in a location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

(i) Verify that all sensor readings used by the condenser controller convert or calculate to the correct conversion units at the controller (e.g., saturated pressure reading is correctly converted to appropriate saturated temperature; dry bulb and relative humidity sensor readings are correctly converted to wet bulb temperature, etc.).

(j) Verify that all fan motors are operational and rotating in the correct direction.

(k) Verify that all condenser fan speed controls are operational and connected to condenser fan motors to operate in unison the fans serving a common condenser loop.

(l) Verify that all speed controls are in “auto” mode.

NA7.10.3.1.2 Functional Testing

Note: The system cooling load must be sufficiently high to run the test. Artificially increase evaporator loads or decrease compressor capacity (manually turn off compressors, etc.) as may be required to perform the Functional Testing.

Step 1: Override any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality before performing functional tests.

Step 2:

(a) Document current outdoor ambient air dry bulb and wet bulb temperatures, relative humidity and refrigeration system condensing temperature/condensing pressure readings from the control system.

(b) Calculate and document the temperature difference (TD), defined as the difference between the wet bulb temperature and the refrigeration system saturated condensing temperature (SCT).

(c) Document current head pressure control setpoint.

Step 3: Using the desired condenser fan motor cycling or head pressure control strategy, program into the control system a setpoint equal to the reading or calculation obtained in Step 2. This will be referred to as the “test setpoint.” Allow 5 minutes for condenser fan speed to normalize.

Step 4: Using the control system, raise the test setpoint in 1 degree (or 3 psi) increments until the condenser fan control modulates to minimum fan motor speed. Verify and document the following:

(d) Fan motor speed decreases.

(e) All condenser fan motors serving common condenser loop decrease speed in unison in response to controller output.

(f) Minimum fan motor control speed (rpm or percent of full speed).

(g) If the refrigeration system is already operating at minimum saturated condensing temperature/head pressure, reverse Steps 4 and 5.

Step 5: Using the control system, lower the test setpoint in 1 degree (or 3 psi) increments until the condenser fan control modulates to increase fan motor speed. Verify and document the following:

(h) Fan motor speed increases.

(i) All condenser fan motors serving common condenser loop increase speed in unison in response to controller output.

Step 6: Document the current minimum condensing temperature setpoint. Using the control system, change the minimum condensing temperature setpoint to a value greater than the current operating condensing temperature. Verify and document the following:

(j) Condenser fan controls modulate to decrease capacity.

(k) All condenser fans serving common condenser loop modulate in unison.

(l) Condenser fan controls stabilize within a 5 minute period.

Step 7: Using the control system, reset the system head pressure controls, fan motor controls and minimum condensing temperature control setpoint to original settings documented in Steps 3 and 6.

Step 8: Restore any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality. Reset the minimum condensing temperature setpoint to the value documented in Step 6.

NA7.10.3.2 Air-Cooled Condensers and Condenser Fan Motor Variable Speed Control

Conduct and document the following functional tests on all air-cooled condensers.

NA7.10.3.2.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, document the following:

(a) Verify that the minimum condensing temperature control setpoint is at or below 70°F.

(b) Verify that the master system controller saturated condensing temperature input is the temperature equivalent reading of the condenser pressure sensor.

(c) Verify all drain leg pressure regulator valves are set below the minimum condensing temperature/pressure setpoint.

(d) Verify all receiver pressurization valves, such as the outlet pressure regulator (OPR), are set lower than the drain leg pressure regulator valve setting.

(e) Verify all condenser inlet and outlet pressure sensors read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using a pressure standard.

(f) Verify all ambient dry bulb temperature sensors used by controller read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using temperature standard.

(g) Verify all temperature sensors used by the controller are mounted in a location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

(h) Verify that all sensor readings used by the condenser controller convert or calculate to the correct conversion units at the controller (e.g., saturated pressure reading is correctly converted to appropriate saturated temperature, etc.)

(i) Verify that all fan motors are operational and rotating in the correct direction.

(j) Verify that all condenser fan speed controls are operational and connected to condenser fan motors to operate in unison the fans serving a common condenser loop.

(k) Verify that all speed controls are in “auto” mode.

NA7.10.3.2.2 Functional Testing

Note: The system cooling load must be sufficiently high to run the test. Artificially increase evaporator loads or decrease compressor capacity (manually turn off compressors, etc.) as may be required to perform the Functional Testing.

Step 1: Override any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality before performing functional tests.

Document current outdoor ambient air dry bulb temperature and refrigeration system condensing temperature/condensing pressure readings from the control system.

Step 2: Calculate and document the temperature difference (TD), defined as the difference between the dry bulb temperature and the refrigeration system saturated condensing temperature (SCT).

Document current head pressure control setpoint.

Step 3: Using the desired condenser fan motor cycling or head pressure control strategy, program into the control system a setpoint equal to the reading or calculation obtained in Step 2.

This will be referred to as the “test setpoint.” Allow 5 minutes for condenser fan speed to normalize.

Step 4: Using the control system, raise the test setpoint in 1 degree (or 3 psi) increments until the condenser fan control modulates to minimum fan motor speed. Verify and document the following:

(a) Fan motor speed decreases.

(b) All condenser fan motors serving common condenser loop decrease speed in unison in response to controller output.

(c) Minimum fan motor control speed (rpm or percent of full speed).

(d) If the refrigeration system is already operating at minimum saturated condensing temperature/head pressure, reverse Steps 4 and 5.

Step 5: Using the control system, lower the test setpoint in 1 degree (or 3 psi) increments until the condenser fan control modulates to increase fan motor speed. Verify and document the following:

(a) Fan motor speed increases.

(b) All condenser fan motors serving common condenser loop increase speed in unison in response to controller output.

Step 6: Document current minimum condensing temperature setpoint. Using the control system change the minimum condensing temperature setpoint to a value greater than the current operating condensing temperature. Verify and document the following:

(a) Condenser fan controls modulate to decrease capacity.

(b) All condenser fans serving common condenser loop modulate in unison.

(c) Condenser fan controls stabilize within a 5 minute period.

Step 7: Using the control system, reset the system head pressure controls, fan motor controls and minimum condensing temperature control setpoint to original settings documented in Steps 3 and 6.

Step 8: Restore any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality. Reset the minimum condensing temperature setpoint to the value documented in Step 6.

NA7.10.3.3 Adiabatic Condensers and Condenser Fan Motor Variable Speed Control

Conduct and document the following functional tests on all adiabatic condensers.

NA7.10.3.3.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, document the following:

(a) Verify the control system minimum Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT) setpoint is at or below 70°F.

(b) Verify the control system maximum SCT setpoint (if used) is at or near the system design SCT.

(c) Verify accuracy of refrigerant pressure-temperature conversions and consistent use of either temperature or pressure for the controlled variable setpoint in the control system.

(d) Verify the discharge pressure sensor (or condenser pressure if used) reads accurately, using a National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) traceable reference pressure gauge or meter. At the minimum, the discharge pressure sensor accuracy shall be verified at two different pressures within the typical operating range. Calibrate if needed. Replace if outside manufacturers recommended calibration range.

(e) Verify the ambient dry bulb temperature using a NIST traceable instrument, including verification of at least two different ambient readings. Calibrate if needed. Replace if outside manufacturer’s recommended calibration range.

(f) Verify all ambient dry bulb temperature sensors are not mounted in direct sunlight or is provided within a suitable solar shield.

(g) Verify that all sensor readings used by the condenser controller convert or calculate to the correct conversion units and are displayed at the controller (e.g., observed pressure reading is correctly converted to appropriate saturated temperature, etc.)

(h) Verify that all fan motors are operational and rotating in the correct direction.

(i) Verify that all condenser fan speed controls operate automatically in response to changes in both pressure (SCT) and ambient temperature.

NA7.10.3.3.2 Functional Testing

Note: The system cooling load must be sufficiently high, and ambient conditions sufficiently below design, to operate with all condenser fans in operation and observe controls in average conditions. Be cognizant of weather conditions in scheduling testing and, if necessary and possible, arrange to artificially increase or decrease evaporator loads in order to perform the Functional Testing at typical system conditions. The functional test shall be performed in dry mode.

Step 1: Verify mechanical controls and other strategies will not affect tests.

(a) Verify condenser pressure low-limit holdback and/or bypass regulating valves, if any, are set below the minimum SCT setpoint. Condenser pressure controls valves will cause fans to operate at 100% speed if they are not set below the minimum SCT value. In warm weather, this may require setting out of range, and deferring valve settings until cold weather allows valves to be adjusted.

(b) Turn off any heat reclaim controls and any intermittent defrost pressure offset strategies that would affect condenser setpoint control.

(c) Document adiabatic mode switching setpoints, if necessary for test temporarily change the adiabatic mode setpoint such that the condenser operates in dry mode. Verify that the adiabatic pads are completely dry before beginning tests.

Step 2: Operate in control range and verify

(a) Verify the condenser control value is operating in the variable setpoint control range, i.e. above the minimum SCT setpoint and below the maximum SCT setpoint.

    i. If necessary, increase or decrease the system load.

    ii. If necessary, during low load or low ambient conditions with system observed at the minimum SCT, temporarily adjust the minimum SCT to a lower value, if the refrigeration system design will allow, or increase the control TD to result in a higher control value.

(b) Observe control operation for at least 30 minutes to confirm stable control operation, as shown by condenser fan speed varying as compressor capacity changes, and not ranging from maximum to minimum fan speed or constant “hunting”. If required, adjust control response setpoints to achieve stable operation. Since condenser control settings require fine-tuning over time, this is often accomplished using control system history or visual trends, showing one hourly and daily operation.

Step 3: Identify control Temperature Difference

(a) Record the current outdoor ambient air dry bulb and refrigeration system condensing temperature/condensing pressure readings from the control system. Note whether discharge pressure or a dedicated condenser pressure sensor is used for condenser pressure control.

(b) Document current head pressure control setpoints, including the Temperature Difference (TD) setpoint.

   (c) Calculate and record the actual observed TD, defined as the difference between the dry bulb temperature and the refrigeration system SCT.

   (d) Confirm agreement between the current control system TD setpoint and the observed TD. If values are different, address and correct controls system methods.

Step 4: Test adjusted control Temperature Difference (Setpoint1).

(a) Enter a smaller TD value into the control system sufficient enough to cause an observable response, such as 1 to 2 degrees smaller, but not small enough to cause the system to operate continuously at 100% fan speed. Record this value as TD Test Setpoint 1.

(b) Observe change in control system operation which should include an increase in fan speed and a decrease in condensing temperature.

(c) Allow time for the control system to achieve stable operation.

(d) Document current head pressure control setpoints, including the TD setpoint.

(e) Calculate and record the actual observed TD, defined as the difference between the wet bulb temperature and the refrigeration system SCT.

(f) Confirm agreement between the current control system TD setpoint and the observed TD. If values are different, address and correct control system methods.

Step 5: Test adjusted control Temperature Difference (Setpoint2) Enter a TD value into the control system that is different from TD Test Setpoint1, sufficient enough to cause an observable response. Record this value a TD Test Setpoint2.

(a) Observe change in control system operation which should include an increase in fan speed and a decrease in condensing temperature.

(b) Allow time for the control system to achieve stable operation.

(c) Record the current outdoor ambient dry bulb temperature.

(d) Record the current refrigeration system condensing temperature/condensing pressure readings from the control system.

(e) Document current head pressure control setpoints, including the TD setpoint.

(f) Calculate and record the actual observed TD, defined as the difference between the dry bulb temperature and the refrigeration system SCT.

(g) Confirm agreement between the current control system TD setpont and the observed TD. If values are different, address and correct control system methods.

Step 6: Document current minimum condensing temperature setpoint. Using the control system change the minimum condensing temperature setpoint to a value greater than the current operating condensing temperature. Verify and document the following:

(a) Condenser fan controls modulate to decrease capacity.

(b) All condenser fans serving common condenser loop modulate in unison.

(c) Condenser fan controls stabilize within a 5 minute period.

Step 7: Using the control system, reset the system head pressure controls, fan motor controls and minimum condensing temperature control setpoint to original settings documented in Steps 3 and 6.

Step 8: Restore any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality. Reset the minimum condensing temperature setpoint to the value documented in Step 6.

NA7.10.4 Variable Speed Screw Compressors

Conduct and document the following functional tests on all variable-speed screw compressors.

NA7.10.4.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, document the following:

(a) Verify all single open-drive screw compressors dedicated to a suction group have variable speed control.

(b) Verify all compressor suction and discharge pressure sensors read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using a standard.

(c) Verify all input or control temperature sensors used by controller read accurately (or provide an appropriate offset) using temperature standard.

(d) Verify that all sensor readings used by the compressor controller convert or calculate to the correct conversion units at the controller (e.g., saturated pressure reading is correctly converted to appropriate saturated temperature, etc.).

(e) Verify that all compressor speed controls are operational and connected to compressor motors.

(f) Verify that all speed controls are in “auto” mode.

(g) Verify that compressor panel control readings for “RPMs,” “% speed,” “kW”, and “amps” match the readings from the PLC or other control systems.

(h) Verify that compressor nameplate data is correctly entered into the PLC or other control system.

NA7.10.4.2 Functional Testing

Note: The system cooling load must be sufficiently high to run the test. Artificially increase or decrease evaporator loads (add or shut off zone loads, change setpoints, etc.) as may be required to perform the Functional Testing.

Step 1: Override any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality before performing functional tests.

Step 2: Measure and document the current compressor operating suction pressure and saturated suction temperature.

Step 3: Document the suction pressure/saturated suction temperature setpoint. Program into the control system a target setpoint equal to the current operating condition measured in Step 2. Allow 5 minutes for system to normalize. This will be referred to as the "test suction pressure/saturated suction temperature setpoint."

Step 4: Using the control system, raise the test suction setpoint in 1 psi increments until the compressor controller modulates to decrease compressor speed. Verify and document the following:

(a) Compressor speed decreases.

(b) Compressor speed continues to decrease to minimum speed.

(c) Any slide valve or other unloading means does not unload until after the compressor has reached its minimum speed (RPM).

Step 5: Using the control system, lower the test suction setpoint in 1 psi increments until the compressor controller modulates to increase compressor speed. Verify and document the following:

(d) Any slide valve or other unloading means first goes to 100 percent before compressor speed increases from minimum.

(e) Compressor begins to increase speed.

(f) Compressor speed continues to increase to 100 percent.

Step 6: Using the control system, program the suction target setpoints back to original settings as documented in Step 3.

Step 7: Restore any heat reclaim, floating suction pressure, floating head pressure and defrost functionality.

NA7.11 *Commercial Kitchen Exhaust System Acceptance Tests*

NA7.11.1 Kitchen Exhaust Systems with Type I Hood Systems

The following acceptance tests apply to commercial kitchen exhaust systems with Type I exhaust hoods. All Type I exhaust hoods used in commercial kitchens shall be tested.

NA7.11.1.1 Construction Inspection

Step 1: Verify exhaust and replacement air systems are installed, power is installed and control systems such as demand control ventilation are calibrated.

Step 2: For kitchen/dining facilities having total Type 1 and Type II kitchen hood exhaust airflow rates greater than 5,000 cfm, calculate the maximum allowable exhaust rate for each Type 1 hood as specified by Table 140.9-A.

NA7.11.1.2 Functional Testing at Full Load Conditions

The following acceptance test applies to systems with and without demand control ventilation exhaust systems. These tests shall be conducted at full load conditions.

Step 1: Operate all sources of outdoor air providing replacement air for the hoods.

Step 2: Operate all sources of recirculated air providing conditioning for the space in which the hoods are located.

Step 3: Operate all appliances under the hoods at operating temperatures.

Step 4: Verify that the thermal plume and smoke is completely captured and contained within each hood at full load conditions by observing smoke or steam produced by actual cooking operation and/or by visually seeding the thermal plume using devices such as smoke candles or smoke puffers. Smoke bombs shall not be used (note: smoke bombs typically create a large volume of effluent from a point source and do not necessarily confirm whether the cooking effluent is being captured). For some appliances (e.g., broilers, griddles, fryers), actual cooking at the normal production rate is a reliable method of generating smoke). Other appliances that typically generate hot moist air without smoke (e.g., ovens, steamers) need seeding of the thermal plume with artificial smoke to verify capture and containment.

Step 5: Verify that space pressurization is appropriate (e.g. kitchen is slightly negative relative to adjacent spaces and all doors open/close properly).

Step 6: Verify that each Type 1 hood has an exhaust rate that is below the maximum allowed.

Step 7: Make adjustments as necessary until full capture and containment and adequate space pressurization are achieved and maximum allowable exhaust rates are not exceeded. Adjustments may include:

(a) Adjust exhaust hood airflow rates.

(b) Add hood side panels.

(c) Add rear seal (back plate).

(d) Increase hood overhang by pushing equipment back.

(e) Relocate supply outlets to improve the capture and containment performance.

Step 8: Measure and record final exhaust airflow rate per Type 1 hood.

NA7.11.1.3 Functional Testing for Exhaust Systems with Demand Control Ventilation

The following additional acceptance test shall be performed on all exhaust hoods with demand control ventilation exhaust systems.

Step 1: Turn off all kitchen hoods, makeup air and transfer systems.

Step 2: Turn on one of the appliances on the line and bring to operating temperature. Confirm that:

(a) DCV system automatically switches from off to the minimum flow setpoint.

(b) The minimum flow setpoint does not exceed the larger of:

1. 50% of the design flow, or
2. The ventilation rate required as specified by Section 120.1.

(c) The makeup air and transfer air system flow rates modulate as appropriate to match the exhaust rate.

(d) Appropriate space pressurization is maintained.

Step 3: Press the timed override button. Confirm that system ramps to full speed and back to minimum speed after override times out.

Step 4: Operate all appliances at typical conditions. Apply sample cooking products and/or utilize smoke puffers as appropriate to simulate full load conditions. Confirm that:

(e) DCV system automatically ramps to full speed.

(f) Hood maintains full capture and containment during ramping to and at full-speed.

(g) Appropriate space pressurization is maintained.

NA7.12 *Parking Garage Ventilation System Acceptance Tests*

NA7.12.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following tests prior to the functional testing:

(a) Carbon monoxide control sensor is factory-calibrated as specified by Section 120.6(c).

(b) The sensor is located in the highest expected concentration location in its zone as specified by Section 120.6(c).

(c) Control setpoint is at or below the CO concentration permitted by Section 120.6(c).

NA7.12.2 Functional Testing

Conduct the following tests with garage ventilation system operating in occupied mode and with actual garage CO concentration well below setpoint.

Step 1: With all sensors active and all sensors reading below 25 ppm, observe that fans are at minimum speed and fan motor demand is no more than 30 percent of design wattage.

Step 2: Apply CO span gas with a concentration of 30 ppm, and a concentration accuracy of +/-2%, one by one to 50% of the sensors but no more than 10 sensors per garage and to at least one sensor per proximity zone. For each sensor tested observe:

(a) CO reading is between 25 and 35 ppm.

(b) Ventilation system ramps to full speed when span gas is applied.

(c) Ventilation system ramps to minimum speed when span gas is removed.

Step 3: Temporarily override the programmed sensor calibration/replacement period to 5 minutes.

(d) Wait 5 minutes and observe that fans ramp to full speed and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Restore calibration/replacement period.

Step 4: Temporarily place the system in unoccupied mode and override the programmed unoccupied sensor alarm differential from 30% for 4 hours to 1% for 5 minutes. Wait 5 minutes and observe that fans ramp to full speed and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Restore programming.

Step 5: Temporarily override the programmed occupied sensor proximity zone alarm differential from 30% for 4 hours to 1% for 5 minutes. Wait 5 minutes and observe that fans ramp to full speed and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Restore programming.

NA7.13 *Compressed Air System Acceptance Tests*

NA7.13.1 Compressed Air Control System

Acceptance tests for compressed air controls in accordance with Section 120.6(e)2.

NA7.13.1.1 Construction Inspection

~~Prior to functional testing, a compressed air system must v~~Verify and document the following prior to functional testing:

(a) Size (hp), rated capacity (acfm), and control type of each air compressor.

(b) Total ~~online~~ system capacity (the sum of the individual capacities).

(c) System operating pressure.

(d) Compressor(s) designated as trim compressors.

(e) Method for observing and recording the states of each compressor in the system, which shall include at least the following states:

Off

Unloaded

Partially loaded

Fully loaded

Short cycling (loading and unloading more often than once per minute)

Blow off (venting compressed air at the compressor itself)

NA7.13.1.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: As specified by the test methods outlined in the Construction Inspection, verify that these methods have been employed, so that the states of the compressors and the current air demand (as measured by a flow sensor or otherwise inferred by system measurements) can be observed and recorded during testing.

Step 2: Run the compressed air supply system steadily at as close to the expected operational load range as can be practically implemented, for a duration of at least 10 minutes.

Step 3: Observe and record the states of each compressor and the current air demand during the test.

Step 4: Confirm that the combinations of compressors states meet the following criteria:

(a) No compressor exhibits short-cycling (loading and unloading more often than once per minute).

(b) No compressor exhibits blowoff (venting compressed air at the compressor itself).

(c) For new systems, the trim compressors shall be the only compressors partially loaded, while the base compressors will either be fully loaded or off by the end of the test.

NA7.13.2 Compressed Air Monitoring

Acceptance tests for compressed air monitoring installed in accordance with Section 120.6(e)3.

NA7.13.2.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following monitoring system capabilities prior to functional testing:

(a) Measurement of header or compressor discharge pressure.

(b) Measurement of amps or power of each compressor.

(c) Measurement or determination of airflow in cfm.

(d) Data logging of pressure, power, airflow, and calculated compressed air system specific efficiency in kW/100 cfm at intervals of 5 minutes or less.

(e) Maintained data storage.

(f) Visual trending display of each recorded point, load, and specific efficiency.

NA7.13.2.2 Functional Testing

Verify and document the following monitoring system capabilities:

(a) Data observed during test is being recorded to a log file that can be opened and viewed to see trend of airflow, power, and specific efficiency in at least 5 minute intervals.

(d) Airflow and compressor power data vary with loading and unloading of the compressor within typical performance expectations. Measurements should be observed across various loading, whether manually varied in response to actual operational loads.

NA7.14 *Elevator Lighting and Ventilation Controls*

NA7.14.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following prior to functional testing:

a) The occupancy sensor has been located to minimize false signals, and the elevator cab does not have any obstructions that could adversely affect the sensor's performance.

b) For PIR sensors, the sensor pattern does not enter into the elevator lobby.

c) For ultrasonic sensors, the sensor does not emit audible sound.

Note that some elevators are able to use weight sensors to provide occupancy sensing. In this case, document that the elevator uses weight sensing to provide occupant sensing and proceed to the functional test.

NA7.14.2 Functional Testing

For each elevator cab being tested, confirm the following:

a) Verify that the lighting and ventilation controlled inside the elevator cab turn off after 15 minutes from the start of an unoccupied condition.

b) Verify that the signal sensitivity is adequate to achieve desired control. The sensor should not detect motion in the elevator lobby.

c) Verify that lighting and ventilation immediately turn "on" when an unoccupied condition becomes occupied.

d) Verify that the lighting and ventilation will not shut off when occupied. Stand in the elevator with the door closed and wait 15 minutes to confirm that the lighting and ventilation remain on.

NA7.15 *Escalator and Moving Walkway Speed Control*

NA7.15.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following prior to functional testing:

a) Variable speed drive is installed on the escalator.

b) Occupancy sensor has been located to minimize false signals.

c) Occupancy sensors do not trigger from pedestrians on adjacent escalators.

d) Occupancy sensors do not encounter any obstructions that could adversely affect desired performance.

e) Ultrasonic occupancy sensors do not emit audible sound

NA7.15.2 Functional Testing

For each escalator or moving walkway being tested, confirm the following:

a) Verify the amount of time necessary to ride the entire length of the escalator while standing still.

b) Stand away from the escalator. After being in an unoccupied condition for more than three times the length of time for a full ride, the escalator should slow down.

c) Approach the escalator entrance while in an unoccupied condition from multiple angles to ensure passenger detection cannot be bypassed.

d) Verify the slow speed setting is 10 ft/min.

e) Verify the full speed setting is below 100 ft/min.

f) Verify the acceleration and deceleration of speed changes. The acceleration shall not exceed 1 ft/sec sq.

g) Approach the escalator in an unoccupied condition at an average walking pace. The escalator should reach full speed before boarding.

h) Approach the escalator in an unoccupied condition at an average walking pace. The escalator should reach full speed before boarding. An alarm should signal to alert that the pedestrian is approaching in the wrong direction.

NA7.16 *Lab Exhaust Ventilation System Acceptance Test*

NA7.16.1 Construction Inspection for Wind Speed/Direction Control

Verify and document the following prior to functional testing:

(a) Wind speed and direction sensor is factory-calibrated (with calibration certificate) or field calibrated, as specified by Section 140.9(c)3C.

(b) The sensor is located in a location and at a height that is outside the wake region of nearby structures and experiences similar wind conditions to the free stream environment above the exhaust stacks as specified by Section 140.9(c)3C.

(c) The sensor is installed in close proximity to the fan that it will control so that it captures a representative wind speed/direction reading.

(d) The sensor is wired correctly to the controls to ensure proper control of volume flow rate.

(e) Wind speed/direction look-up table has been established and matches dispersion analysis results.

(f) Verify the methodology to measure volume flow rate:

1. Airflow sensor.
2. Static pressure as proxy.
3. Fan speed to volume flow rate curve.
4. Other.

NA7.16.2 Functional Testing for Wind Speed/Direction Control

Step 1: Simulate the minimum look-up table wind speed by either covering the sensor or overriding the curve points so the current wind speed is below the speed correlating to minimum volume flow rate at the stack.

(a) With all sensors active and all sensors reading below the minimum wind speed, observe minimum volume flow rate at the stack.

(b) Restore all curve points.

Step 2: Simulate a mid-range wind speed from the look-up table by either inducing a wind current, with an air speed accuracy of +/- 2%, or overriding the curve points so the current wind speed correlates to a mid-range volume flow rate at the stack.

(a) With all sensors active and all sensors reading a mid-range wind speed, observe corresponding mid-range volume flow rate at the stack.

(b) Restore all curve points.

Step 3: Simulate the maximum look-up table wind speed by either inducing a wind current, with an air speed accuracy of +/- 2%, or overriding the curve points so the current wind speed correlates to the maximum volume flow rate at the stack.

(a) With all sensors active and all sensors reading above the maximum wind speed, observe maximum volume flow rate at the stack.

(b) Restore all curve points.

Step 4: Temporarily override the programmed sensor calibration/replacement period to 5 minutes. Wait 5 minutes and observe that minimum volume flow rate at the stack is that at worst-case wind conditions and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Restore calibration/replacement period.

Step 5: Simulate sensor failure by disconnecting the sensor. Observe that minimum volume flow rate at the stack is that at worst-case wind conditions and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Reconnect sensor.

NA7.16.3 Construction Inspection for ~~Contaminent~~Contaminant Control

Verify and document the following tests prior to functional testing:

(a) Contaminant sensor is factory-calibrated (with calibration certificate) or field calibrated, as specified by Section 140.9(c)3D.

(b) The sensor is located within each exhaust plenum as specified by Section 140.9(c)3D.

(c) The sensor is wired correctly to the controls to ensure proper control of volume flow rate.

(d) Contaminant concentration threshold has been established and matches dispersion analysis results.

(e) Verify the methodology to measure volume flow rate:

1. Airflow sensor
2. Static pressure as proxy
3. Fan speed to volume flow rate curve
4. Other

(f) If multiple sensors are present, ensure fan is controlled based on the highest concentration reading.

NA7.16.4 Functional Testing For Contaminant Control

Step 1: Ensure no contaminant event is present. Simulate minimum exhaust air demand in all lab spaces.

Verify that the volume flow rate at the stack is at or above the minimum non-event value.

Step 2: Increase exhaust air demand at the lab spaces.

Verify that the volume flow rate at the stack is at or above the minimum non-event value.

Step 3: Simulate minimum exhaust air demand in all lab spaces. Simulate a contaminant event.

Verify that the volume flow rate at the stack is at or above the minimum event value.

Step 4: Increase exhaust air demand at the lab spaces.

Verify that the volume flow rate at the stack is at or above the minimum event value.

Step 5: Temporarily override the programmed sensor calibration/replacement period to 5 minutes. Wait 5 minutes and observe that minimum volume flow rate at the stack is that of a contaminant event and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Restore calibration/replacement period.

Step 6: Simulate sensor failure by disconnecting the sensor. Observe that minimum volume flow rate at the stack is that of a contaminant event and an alarm is received by the facility operators. Reconnect sensor.

NA7.17 *Fume Hood Automatic Sash Closure System Acceptance Test*

NA7.17.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following prior to functional testing:

a) The fume hood sash zone presence sensor has a valid factory calibration certificate.

b) Each fume hood sash obstruction sensor has a valid factory calibration certificate.

c) Presence sensor has been located and adjusted to minimize false signals.

d) Presence sensor pattern does not enter adjacent zones.

e) Sash obstruction sensor has been installed per manufacturer instructions.

f) Presence sensor has been installed per manufacturer instructions.

NA7.17.2 Functional Testing

For each sash closure control system to be tested, perform the following:

a) Test auto close operation. Verify and document the following:

   1. Open the sash to maximum position or sash stop, whichever is lower.
   2. Vacate zone presence sensor range to simulate unoccupied state and confirm that sash closes automatically to minimum, closed position within 5 minutes.
   3. Verify that the presence sensor does not trigger a false signal from movement in an area adjacent to the space containing the controlled sash.

b) Confirm that the manual controls are operational. Verify and document the following:

   Open Test

   1. If equipped, disable any auto open control mode.
   2. Close sash to its minimum, closed position and confirm that it does not open automatically with triggering of the zone presence sensor.
   3. If equipped, open the sash using a push button, foot pedal, or similar mechanism, confirming that the sash raises to the maximum position or sash stop. Otherwise, manually open the sash by hand.

   Closed Test

   1. If equipped, press the button that closes the sash and ensure that the sash closes to the minimum, closed height. Otherwise close by hand.
   2. If equipped, while the sash is closing, trigger the stop button, verify the sash stops immediately when the stop button is activated.

c) Confirm that the sash object detection controls are operational. Verify and document the following:

   1. Open the sash to its maximum position or sash stop, whichever is lower.

2. Place a transparent object in the pathway of the sash and simulate an unoccupied state by vacating the zone presence sensor range. Verify that the sash does not close automatically on the object within the closing time delay setting (maximum of 5 minutes).
3. Open the sash to its maximum position or sash stop, whichever is lower, without any obstructions in the path of the sash.
4. Simulate an unoccupied state by vacating the zone presence sensor range. When the sash begins to automatically close, insert a transparent object into the path of the sash and verify that the sash stops before contacting the object.

d) Confirm that net downward force is not more than 10 pounds when closing. Verify and document the following:

1. Disable object detection controls.
2. Place scale in sash opening of fume hood.
3. Close sash manually.
4. Sash closing force shall not exceed 10 pounds as measured by scale.
5. Repeat test with sash closing initiated by vacancy being detected by presence sensor.

NA7.18 ***~~High-Rise Residential Dwelling Unit~~ Multifamily Building Acceptance Tests***

NA7.18.1 Dwelling Unit Ventilation ~~Airflow~~ System Acceptance

NA7.18.1.1 Dwelling Unit Ventilation Acceptance

NA7.18.1.1.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

a) System is designed to provide ~~a fixed minimum~~ the required outside air when the unit is operating.

b) Specify the ventilation system type, such as balanced, supply or exhaust.

c) Specify the method of control.

d) Confirm the kitchen range hood is ventilated to outside.

e) Record the kitchen range hood manufacturer name and equipment model number

f) Confirm the kitchen range hood is HVI certified to perform in compliance.

g) Confirm HRV or ERV equipment is HVI certified to perform in compliance

NA7.18.1.1.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Perform the required dwelling unit mechanical ventilation ~~airflow~~ system verification procedure as specified by Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.2 to verify the dwelling unit ventilation ~~airflow~~ systems conform~~s~~ to the requirements of Section 160.2(b)2.~~Standards §120.1(b)2.~~

Step 2: Obtain HERS Rater field verification as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.

NA7.18.2 Dwelling Unit ~~Envelope~~ Enclosure Leakage Acceptance

NA7.18.2.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

a) Confirm the pressure boundary wall, ceiling, and floor penetrations are sealed.

b) Confirm all gaps around windows and doors are sealed.

c) Confirm all chases are sealed at floor level using a hard cover and the hard cover is sealed.

NA7.18.2.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Perform the dwelling unit envelope air leakage procedure as specified by Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.3 to verify the dwelling unit ventilation airflow conforms to the requirements of Section 160.2(b)2.~~Standards §120.1(b)2.~~

Step 2: Obtain HERS Rater field verification as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.

NA7.18.3 Central Ventilation System Duct Leakage Acceptance

The objective of this procedure is to verify the leakage of a new central ventilation duct system that serves multiple dwelling units and provides continuous airflows or is part of a balanced ventilation system. The duct leakage shall be determined by pressurizing the entire duct system ducts to 50 Pa (0.2 inches water) with respect to outside for ducts serving more than six dwelling units, and to 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) with respect to outside for ducts serving two to six dwelling units. The following procedure shall be used for the fan pressurization tests:

Test procedure, based on ATSM 1554 Method D – Total duct leakage test.

NA7.18.3.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

a) Confirm windows and other openings are open to connect the building to the outside.

b) Confirm HVAC dampers are in their normal operating positions (NOP).

NA7.18.3.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Measure and record environmental data at the beginning and conclusion of each test including ambient temperature, indoor temperature and barometric pressure.

Step 2: Install static pressure probe in main plenum pointing into airstream induced by the test. If the test fan is on the roof, the static pressure probe will need to be connected to the measurement device at the test site with a tube long enough to make the connection.

Step 3: If the test fan is mounted inside, with the building open to the outside, use the building as reference pressure. If the test fan is located on the roof, use the outside as the reference pressure.

Step 4: Attach the test fan to the duct system

a) For roof top and wall mounted exhaust systems, remove the fan from the curb or opening and seal the test fan to the curb following test equipment manufacturer's instructions, making sure the dampers are open (NOP).

b) Alternatively, the test fan may be applied to a grille opening on the inside of the building following test equipment manufacturer's instructions.

Step 5: Temporarily seal the system including:

a) All of the grilles on the system using masking tape and air impermeable sheeting or duck mask made for this application.

b) Air handler access door or panel (do not use permanent sealing material, metal tape is acceptable).

c) For systems with an air handler with supply and return plenums, the entire duct system including the air- handler shall be included in the test.

Step 6: Adjust the test fan speed to maintain 25 Pa or 50 Pa at the static pressure probe location.

Step 7: Record the air flow (CFM) and temperature.

Step 8: Determine the nominal fan airflow using the product specifications of the installed equipment for the design static pressure.

Step 9: Divide the duct leakage flow by the nominal fan flow and convert to a percentage. If the duct leakage flow percentage is equal to or less than the target compliance criterion of 6% leakage the system passes.

The leakage test can be conducted at rough-in or after the grilles or registers are installed. If the leakage test is conduct at rough-in, the spaces between the grille or register boots and the wallboard shall be sealed, and at least one grille or register must be removed to verify proper sealing.

For compliance with the leakage requirements in Section 160.2(b)2Ci, an ATT shall identify a group of up to three central ventilation duct systems in the building from which a sample will be selected for testing.

NA7.18.4 Rated Central Ventilation System Heat Recovery or Energy Recovery Acceptance

The objective of this procedure is to verify the heat recovery ventilation (HRV) or energy recovery ventilation (ERV) requirement in multifamily buildings for compliance with Section 170.2(c)3Bvb, a central ERV/HRV serving multiple dwelling units.

NA7.18.4.1 Construction Inspection

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

a) Confirm the total design ventilation airflow rate for the dwelling units served by the central ventilation system as required by Section 160.2(b)2Av.

b) Visually confirm that an ERV/HRV is installed and record the make and model.

NA7.18.4.2 Functional Testing

Step 1: Verify that the ERV/HRV can provide the airflow rate that meets the design ventilation airflow rate by checking its product specifications.

Step 2: Verify that the ERV/HRV's nominal sensible recovery efficiency is 67 percent or greater, by checking its product specifications or databases such as HVI, AHRI, etc.

Step 3: Verify that the ERV/HRV can meet the fan power requirements of Section 170.2(c), by checking its product specifications or databases such as HVI, AHRI, etc.

Step 4: Verify that the ERV/HRV has a recovery bypass or free cooling function by visual inspection and checking its product specifications. Verify that its recovery bypass or free cooling control capabilities meet the requirements in Section 170.2, Table 170.2-G.

Step 5: Conduct functional testing of the bypass function according to NA7.5.4.

NA7.19 Steam Trap Fault Detection Acceptance Tests

NA7.19.1 Steam Trap Fault Detection

Acceptance tests for steam trap fault detection in accordance with Section 120.6(i).

NA7.19.1.1 Construction Inspection

Verify and document the following steam trap system capabilities prior to functional testing:

a) Distribution system steam trap arrangement and connected steam line operating pressure subject to 120.6(i) were installed as designed including the presence of monitoring equipment, strainer, and blow-off valve.

b) Visual confirmation of the central steam trap monitoring system installation, operation and programmed as designed.

c) Confirm the central steam trap monitoring system displays status of all installed steam trap sensors with a descriptive label or cross-references to a look-up table with location of sensor.

NA7.19.1.2 Functional Testing

For steam systems with up to seven (7) steam traps required to have fault detection in accordance with Section 120.6(i), all steam traps would be tested. For steam systems with more than seven (7) steam traps; sampling would include a minimum of 1 steam trap for each group of up to 7 additional steam traps. If the first steam trap in the sample group passes the acceptance test, the remaining steam traps in the sample group also pass. If the first steam trap in a sample group fails, the rest of the steam traps in that group must be tested. If any tested steam trap fault detection sensor fails it must be repaired, replaced, or adjusted until it passes the test.

For each fault detection sensor, test the following:

Step 1: Identify the status of the steam trap and note if the steam line is operational or non-operational at the time of the functional test.

Step 2: Confirm that central steam trap monitoring system is receiving a signal that reflects the status of the steam trap.

Step 3: Generate a fault at the steam trap sensor for each tested steam trap.

Step 4: Verify that the central steam trap monitoring system detects the fault and reports the fault detection to the operator.

Step 5: Reconnect steam trap sensor and verify the fault detection sensor is communicating with the central steam trap monitoring system.

Step 6: Verify that central steam trap monitoring system does not report a fault.

NA7.20 Transcritical CO_2 Systems Acceptance Tests

NA7.20.1 Transcritical CO_2 Gas Cooler and Gas Cooler Fan Motor Variable Speed Control for Refrigerated Warehouses and Commercial Refrigeration

The purpose of these tests is to confirm proper operation of gas cooler control, including variable speed fan operation and variable setpoint control logic, which are both important elements of floating head pressure control, with the intent to operate with the lowest total system energy (considering both compressors and gas cooler fan power) through the course of the year.

Note: transcritical CO_2 refrigeration systems are unique in that they can operate in one of two modes: subcritical operation and supercritical operation. Subcritical operation generally occurs during periods where ambient conditions are below 75F to 80F, where high pressure CO_2 vapor will condense in the gas cooler and the refrigeration system will operate analogous to other mechanical refrigeration systems (rejecting heat at a constant pressure and temperature). Supercritical operation generally occurs during periods where ambient conditions are above 75F to 80F, where the high pressure CO_2 vapor will not condense (or partially condense) in the gas cooler, and pressure and temperature can vary semi-independently during the heat rejection process. Because these two modes of operation are based on ambient conditions, it may not be possible for the field technician to observe both subcritical and supercritical control strategies during a single acceptance test.

The field technician shall perform either the functional test outlined in NA7.20.1.1.2 or NA7.20.1.1.3 depending on the ambient conditions and resulting system operating mode at the time of the test. The construction inspection must be completed regardless of ambient conditions.

The following test methods are general in nature, with the understanding that refrigeration systems are commonly custom designed, with many design choices, as well as varying load profiles. For all of these reasons, a thorough understanding of both refrigeration system design and refrigeration control system operation is necessary to effectively conduct these tests.

The measurement devices used to verify the refrigeration system controls shall be calibrated to a NIST traceable reference, with a calibration reference dated within the past two years. The calibrated measurement devices to be used in these acceptance tests are called the "standard" and shall have the following measurement tolerances: The temperature measurement devices shall be calibrated to +/- 0.7°F between -30°F and 200°F. The pressure measurement devices shall be calibrated to +/- 7.5 psi between 0 and 1500 psig.

-

NA7.20.1.1 Air-Cooled and Adiabatic Gas Coolers and Gas Cooler Fan Motor Variable Speed Control

Conduct and document the following functional tests on all air-cooled and adiabatic gas coolers.

-

NA7.20.1.1.1 *Construction Inspection*

Prior to functional testing, verify and document the following:

(a) Verify the control system minimum saturated condensing temperature (SCT) setpoint is at or below 60°F. If the design saturated suction temperature (SST) of the intermediate suction group is greater than or equal to 30°F, verify the control system SCT setpoint is at or below 70°F.

(b) Verify accuracy of refrigerant pressure-temperature conversions and consistent use of either temperature or pressure for the controlled variable setpoint in the control system.

1. The condensing temperature has an equivalent pressure during subcritical operation.
2. Either pressure or temperature may be used in the control system as the controlled variable to maintain gas cooler pressure (condensing temperature) during subcritical operation, as long as the setpoint value is similarly expressed in pressure or temperature.
3. Documentation may be achieved through pictures of control system screens or control system documentation, supported by sample calculations of observed pressures or temperatures and associated conversion values, as available in the control system interface.

(c) Verify the gas cooler outlet temperature sensor reads accurately, using a NIST traceable instrument, including verification of at least two different gas cooler outlet readings. Calibrate if needed. Replace if outside manufacturer's recommended calibration range. If multiple gas coolers are installed in parallel, ensure sensor is installed on the common header.

(d) Verify the discharge pressure sensor (or gas cooler pressure if used) reads accurately, using a NIST traceable reference pressure gauge or meter, and with pressure checked for at least two pressures within the typical operating range. Calibrate if needed. Replace if outside manufacturers recommended calibration range.

(e) Verify the ambient dry bulb temperature using a NIST traceable instrument, including verification of at least two different ambient readings. Calibrate if needed. Replace if outside manufacturer's recommended calibration range. If the ambient dry bulb temperature sensor is installed between the adiabatic pad and the gas cooler coil for adiabatic gas coolers, verification must be performed when operating in "dry" mode.

(f) Verify the ambient dry bulb temperature is not mounted in direct sunlight or is provided with a suitable solar shield. The ambient dry bulb temperature sensor may be installed between the adiabatic pad and the gas cooler coil for adiabatic gas coolers and is referred to as the precool air temperature sensor.

(g) Verify that all sensor readings used by the gas cooler controller display correct values at the controller, as well as derived values (e.g., observed pressure is correctly converted saturation temperature for CO_2)

(h) Verify that all fan motors are operational and rotating in the correct direction.

(i) Verify that gas cooler fan speed controls are operational and controlling all gas cooler fan motors in unison.

(j) Verify that all speed controls operate automatically in response to changes in pressure, gas cooler outlet temperature, and ambient dry bulb or precool air temperature.

(k) Verify the installation of the gas cooler holdback valve, which may be located near the inlet of the intermediate pressure vessel or near the outlet of the gas cooler.

NA7.20.1.1.2 *Functional Testing (Option A: Subcritical Operation)*

Planning: The system cooling load must be sufficiently high, and ambient conditions sufficiently below the critical point, to operate subcritically with all gas cooler fans in operation and observe controls in average conditions. Account for weather conditions in scheduling testing by, if necessary, artificially increasing or decreasing evaporator loads in order to perform the Functional Testing at typical system conditions.

Step 1: Verify mechanical controls and other strategies will not affect tests

(a) Turn off any heat reclaim controls and any intermittent defrost pressure offset strategies that would affect gas cooler setpoint control.

(b) If testing an adiabatic gas cooler, adjust setpoints to ensure that the gas cooler stays in “dry” mode or “precool” mode consistently throughout the test.

Step 2: Operate in control range and verify stable control

(a) Verify the gas cooler control value is operating in the variable setpoint control range, i.e. above the minimum SCT setpoint and below the maximum SCT setpoint.

- If necessary, increase or decrease the system load.
- If necessary, during low load or low ambient conditions with system observed at the minimum SCT, temporarily adjust the minimum SCT to a lower value, if the refrigeration system design will allow, or increase the control TD to result in a higher control value.

(b) Observe control operation for at least 30 minutes to confirm stable control operation, as shown by gas cooler fan speed varying as compressor capacity changes, and not ranging from maximum to minimum fan speed or constant “hunting”. If required, adjust control response setpoints to achieve stable operation. **Note**: Since gas cooler control settings require fine-tuning over time, this is often accomplished using control system history or visual trends, showing one hourly and daily operation.

Step 3: Identify control TD

(a) Record the current outdoor ambient air dry bulb or precool air temperature and refrigeration system condensing temperature/condensing pressure readings from the control system. Note whether discharge pressure or a dedicated gas cooler pressure sensor is used for gas cooler pressure control.

(b) Document current head pressure control setpoints, including the TD setpoint.

(c) Calculate and record the actual observed temperature difference (TD), defined as the difference between the ambient dry bulb temperature or precool air temperature and the refrigeration system saturated condensing temperature (SCT).

(d) Confirm agreement between the current control system TD setpoint and the observed TD. If values are different, address and correct control system methods.

Step 4: Test adjusted control TD

(a) Enter a smaller TD value into the control system, sufficient to cause an observable response, such as 1-2 degrees smaller, but not small enough to cause system to operate continuously at 100% fan speed. Record this value as TD Test Setpoint 1.

(b) Observe change in control system operation which should include an increase in fan speed and a decrease in condensing temperature.

(c) Allow time for the control system to achieve stable operation.

(d) Document current head pressure control setpoints, including the TD setpoint.

(e) Calculate and record the actual observed temperature difference (TD), defined as the difference between the ambient dry bulb or precool air temperature and the refrigeration system saturated condensing temperature (SCT).

(f) Confirm agreement between the current control system TD setpoint and the observed TD. If values are different, address and correct control system methods.

(g) Perform the above test sequence with a second TD value, recorded as TD Test Setpoint 2, and record the same values above to confirm agreement between the current control system TD setpoint and the observed TD. If needed perform corrective actions and repeat testing until variable setpoint control can be confirmed and documented.

Step 5: Verify and document all fans operate in unison down to minimum SCT

(a) Document that all fans are in operation, fan speed, actual SCT and control system minimum SCT setpoint, by recording control system screens or trends along with observations.

  1. In cool weather and/or light loads, this may be the observed operation during testing without need to manipulate system setpoints.
  2. In warmer weather and/or higher loads, the control system minimum SCT value can be increased slowly to a value equal to, and then above, the current operating condition, in order to observe the fans operating in unison and fan speeds dropping as the minimum SCT setpoint is achieved.

Step 6: Restore setpoints

(a) Restore any heat reclaim or defrost functionality that was turned off to allow testing.

(b) Reset the minimum condensing temperature setpoint if it was adjusted during Step 5.

(c) Reset adiabatic mode controls to original values.

NA7.20.1.1.3 Functional Testing (Option B: Supercritical Operation)

Planning: Ambient conditions must be sufficiently above the critical point to operate supercritically. Account for weather conditions in scheduling testing by, if necessary, artificially increasing or decreasing evaporator loads in order to perform the Functional Testing at typical system conditions.

Step 1: Verify mechanical controls and other strategies will not affect tests

(a) Turn off any heat reclaim controls and any intermittent defrost pressure offset strategies that would affect gas cooler setpoint control.

(b) If testing an adiabatic gas cooler, adjust setpoints to ensure that the gas cooler stays in "dry" mode or "precool" mode consistently throughout the test.

Step 2: Operate in supercritical mode and verify pressure control

(a) Observe operation for at least 30 minutes or reference control system history or visual trends to verify the gas cooler holdback valve modulates its opening in response to changes in ambient dry bulb or precool air temperature resulting in a change in gas cooler pressure. Fan speeds are allowed to operate fixed at 100% to maximize the temperature reduction of the outlet gas or modulate to maintain a temperature difference between the ambient dry bulb or precool air temperature and the gas cooler outlet temperature. Reference the original equipment manufacturer operating manual or sequence of operation descriptions to confirm the observed variation in the pressure setpoint is consistent with the design control strategy.

Step 3: Restore setpoints

(a) Restore any heat reclaim or defrost functionality that was turned off to allow testing.

(b) Reset adiabatic mode controls to original values.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

Nonresidential Appendix NA8

Appendix NA8 –Luminaire Power

NA8.1*Luminaire Power*

The following tables contain a limited list of lamp and ballast combinations. These tables provide an alternate voluntary option to the provision in Section 130(c) for determining luminaire power for any lamp and ballast combination specifically listed in Appendix NA8. This appendix is not intended to list all possible lamp and ballast combinations, and shall not to be used to determine luminaire power for any lighting system not specifically listed in this appendix.

Table NA8-1 – Fluorescent U-Tubes

Type	Lamps - Number	Lamps - Designation	Ballasts - Number	Ballasts - Designation	Ballasts - Description	System Watts
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	1	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	39
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	2	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	62
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	3	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	92
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	1	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	33
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	2	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	64
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	3	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	93
2 ft. Fluorescent U-Tube T8	4	FB31T8/F32T8U	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	116

NO = ballast factor 85 to 100%

Table NA8-2 – Fluorescent Linear Lamps T5

~~Type~~	~~Lamps - Number~~	~~Lamps Designation~~	~~Ballasts - Number~~	~~Ballasts - Designation~~	~~Ballasts - Description~~	~~System Watts~~
Type	Lamps - Number	Lamps Designation	Ballasts - Number	Ballasts - Designation	Ballasts - Description	System Watts
~23” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (14W)	1	F14T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	18
~23” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (14W)	2	F14T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	34
~34.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (21W)	1	F21T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	27
~34.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (21W)	2	F21T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	50
~46” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (28W)	1	F28T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	30
~46” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (28W)	2	F28T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	60
~58.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (35W)	1	F35T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	40
~58.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 (35W)	2	F35T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	78
~23” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (24W)	1	F24T5HO	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	29
~23” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (24W)	2	F24T5HO	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	55
~34.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output(39W)	1	F39T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	43
~34.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output(39W)	2	F39T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	85
~46” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (54W)	1	F54T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	62
~46” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (54W)	2	F54T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	121
~46” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (54W)	1	F54T5	1	ELECT DIM	Elect. Dimming	63
~46” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (54W)	2	F54T5	1	ELECT DIM	Elect. Dimming	125
~57.5” Fluorescent Program Start T5 High Output (80W)	1	ºF80T5	1	ELECT	Elect. Program Start BF=1	90

Table NA8-3 – Fluorescent Rapid Start T-8

Type	Lamps - Number	Lamps - Designation	Ballasts Number	Ballasts - Designation	Ballasts - Description	System Watts	
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W) Electronic Ballasts	1	F17T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	22
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W) Electronic Ballasts	2	F17T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	33
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W) Electronic Ballasts	3	F17T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	53
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W) Electronic Ballasts	3	F17T8	2	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	55
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W) Electronic Ballasts	4	F17T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	63
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W)	1	F17T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	20
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W)	2	F17T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	37
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W)	3	F17T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	56
	2 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (17W)	4	F17T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	69
	3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	1	F25T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	27
	3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	2	F25T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	48
	3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	3	F25T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	68

3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	4	F25T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	89
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	1	F25T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	24
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	2	F25T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	41
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	3	F25T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	59
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	4	F25T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	76
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	1	F25T8	1	ELECT HO	Electronic High Output	29
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	2	F25T8	1	ELECT HO	Electronic High Output	51
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	3	F25T8	1	ELECT HO	Electronic High Output	74
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	1	F25T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	25
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	2	F25T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	49
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	3	F25T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	76
3 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (25W) Electronic Ballasts	4	F25T8	1	ELECT DIM	Electronic Dimming	96

Table NA8-3 (continued) – Fluorescent Rapid Start T-8

4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	1	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	29
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	2	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	54
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	3	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	79
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	4	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	104
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	1	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	27
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	2	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	48
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	3	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	70
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	4	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	91
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	1	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO EE	EE Normal Output	33
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	2	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO EE	Energy efficiency Normal Output	52
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	3	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO EE	Energy efficiency Normal Output	77
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	4	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT NO EE	Energy efficiency Normal Output	101
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	1	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO EE	EE Reduced Output	28
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	2	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO EE	EE Reduced Output	45
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	3	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO EE	EE Reduced Output	66
4 foot Fluorescent Instant Start T8 (“Energy Saving” 30W)	4	F32T8/30ES	1	ELECT RO EE	EE Reduced Output	88

Table NA8-3 (continued) – Fluorescent Rapid Start T-8

4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	1	F32T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	32
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	62
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	93
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	4	F32T8	1	ELECT NO	Electronic Normal Output	114
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	1	F32T8	1	EE NO	EE Normal Output	35
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	EE NO	EE Normal Output	55
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	EE NO	EE Normal Output	82
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	4	F32T8	1	EE NO	EE Normal Output	107
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	1	F32T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	29
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	51
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	76
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	4	F32T8	1	ELECT RO	Electronic Reduced Output	98
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	ELECT HO	Electronic High Output	77
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	ELECT HO	Electronic High Output	112
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	1	F32T8	1	EE RO	EE Reduced Output	30
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	EE RO	EE Reduced Output	48
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	EE RO	EE Reduced Output	73
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	4	F32T8	1	EE RO	EE Reduced Output	96
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	ELECT TL	Electronic Two Level (50 & 100%)	65
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	1	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM1	Electronic Dimming	35
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM1	Electronic Dimming	68
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM1	Electronic Dimming	102
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	1	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM2	Electronic Dimming	33
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	2	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM2	Electronic Dimming	64
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	3	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM2	Electronic Dimming	93
4 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (32W)	4	F32T8	1	ELECT DIM2	Electronic Dimming	116
5 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (40W)	1	F40T8	1	ELECT	Electronic	46

5 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (40W)	2	F40T8	1	ELECT	Electronic	79
5 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 (40W)	3	F40T8	1	ELECT	Electronic	112

RO = ballast factor 70 to 85% NO = ballast factor 85 to 100% HO = ballast factor >100%

Table NA8-4 – Fluorescent Rapid Start High Output (HO) T8, 8 ft

Type	Lamps - Number	Lamps - Designation	Ballasts - Number	Ballasts - Designation	Ballasts - Description	System Watts	Comment	
	8 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 High Output (86W)	1	F96T8/HO	1	ELECT	Electronic	88	
	8 foot Fluorescent Rapid Start T8 High Output (86W)	2	F96T8/HO	1	ELECT	Electronic	160	

HO = ballast factor >100%

Table NA8-5 – High Intensity Discharge

~~Type~~	~~Lamps - Number~~	~~Lamps - Designation~~	~~Ballasts Number~~	~~Ballasts - Designation~~	~~Ballasts - Description~~	~~System Watts~~	~~Comment~~
Type	Lamps - Number	Lamps - Designation	Ballasts Number	Ballasts - Designation	Ballasts - Description	System Watts	Comment
Metal Halide	1	M35/39	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	58	
Metal Halide	1	M35/39	1	ELECT	Electronic	44	
Metal Halide	1	M50	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	67	
Metal Halide	1	M50	1	ELECT	Electronic	58	
Metal Halide	1	M70	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	95	
Metal Halide	1	M70	1	ELECT	Electronic	86	
Metal Halide	1	M100	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	130	
Metal Halide	1	M100	1	ELECT	Electronic	110	
Metal Halide	1	M150	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	185	
Metal Halide	1	M150	1	ELECT	Electronic	168	
Metal Halide	1	M175	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	208	
Metal Halide	1	M175	1	ELECT	Electronic	194	
Metal Halide	1	M200	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	232	
Metal Halide	1	M250	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	295	
Metal Halide	1	M250	1	ELECT	Electronic	269	
Metal Halide	1	M320	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	368	
Metal Halide	1	M320	1	ELECT	Electronic	343	
Metal Halide	1	M360	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	422	
Metal Halide	1	M400	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	452	
Metal Halide	1	M400	1	ELECT	Electronic	430	
Metal Halide	1	M450	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	508	
Metal Halide	1	M750	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	818	
Metal Halide	1	M1000	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	1080	
Metal Halide	1	M1500	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	1605	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S35	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	47	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S50	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	66	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S70	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	91	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S100	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	128	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S150	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	188	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S200	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	230	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S250	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	295	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S400	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	464	
High Pressure Sodium	1	S1000	1	MAG STD	Mag. Stand.	1100	

Table NA8-6 –12 Volt Tungsten Halogen Lamps Including MR16, Bi-pin, AR70, AR111, PAR36

(Shall NOT apply to track lighting systems)

Type	Lamps - Number	Lamps - Designation	Ballasts - Number	Ballasts - Designation	Ballasts - Description	System Watts	Comment	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	20 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	23	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	25 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	28	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	35 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	38	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	37 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	41	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	42 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	45	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	50 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	54	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	65 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	69	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	71 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	75	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	75 watt lamp	1	ELECT	Electronic Power Supply	80	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	20 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	24	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	25 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	29	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	35 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	39	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	37 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	42	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	42 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	46	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	50 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	55	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	65 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	70	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	71 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	76	
	High Pressure Sodium	1	75 watt lamp	1	MAG	Mag. Transformer	81	

(This page intentionally left blank.)